AFSA ADVANCED PROGRAMME IN ALTERNATIVE DISPUTE RESOLUTION

ISSUED IN COLLABORATION WITH THE UNIVERSITY OF PRETORIA

INTERNATIONAL COMMERCIAL ARBITRATION

PROF DAVID BUTLER

MATERIALS BINDER

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa 1st Floor, Grindrod Tower,
8a Protea Place, Sandton South Africa | +27 11 320-0600 | selina@arbitration.co.za | https://arbitration.co.za/

INDEX

NO.	SECTIONS	PAGES
1	**SECTION 1:** INTERNATIONAL ARBITRATION ACT 15 OF 2017 (ENGLISH TEXT)	3
2	**SECTION 2:** AFSA INTERNATIONAL ARBITRATION RULES 2021	40
3	**SECTION 3:** UNCITRAL ARBITRATION RULES (2010) ENGLISH	67
4	**SECTION 4:** UNCITRAL ARBITRATION RULES (2021) & EXPEDITED ARBITRATION RULES	105
5	**SECTION 5:** UNCITRAL MODEL LAW (ORIGINAL TEXT 1985)	186
6	**SECTION 6:** UNCITRAL MODEL LAW 1985 WITH AMENDMENTS ADOPTED 2006	217
7	**SECTION 7:** UNCITRAL MODEL LAW AMENDMENTS 2006	268
8	**SECTION 8:** NEW YORK CONVENTION	274
9	**SECTION 9:** ICCA JUDGES GUIDE (SECOND EDITION)	299
10	**SECTION 10:** NY CONVENTION UNCITRAL SECRETARIAT GUIDE	473

Note: "All materials are updated for 2025"

SECTION 1

INTERNATIONAL ARBITRATION ACT 15 OF 2017

AFSA

The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

BACK TO INDEX

ACT

To provide for the incorporation of the Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, as adopted by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law, into South African law; to provide anew for the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards; to repeal the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards Act, 1977; to amend the Protection of Businesses Act, 1978, so as to delete an expression; and to provide for matters connected therewith.

(English text signed by the President)
(Assented to 19 December 2017)

PARLIAMENT of the Republic of South Africa enacts as follows:—

ARRANGEMENT OF SECTIONS

CHAPTER 1
GENERAL PROVISIONS

1. Definitions
2. Interpretation
3. Objects of Act
4. Exclusion of Act 42 of 1965
5. Act binds public bodies

CHAPTER 2
INTERNATIONAL COMMERCIAL ARBITRATION

6. Model Law to have force of law
7. Matters subject to international commercial arbitration
8. Interpretation of Model Law
9. Immunity of arbitrators and arbitral institutions
10. Consolidation of arbitral proceedings and concurrent hearings
11. Confidentiality of arbitral proceedings
12. Right to conciliation process
13. Application of UNCITRAL Conciliation Rules

CHAPTER 3
RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF ARBITRATION AGREEMENTS AND FOREIGN ARBITRALAWARDS

14. Definitions
15. Determination of juridical seat of arbitration
16. Recognition and enforcement of arbitration agreements and foreign arbitral awards
17. Evidence to be produced by party seeking recognition or enforcement
18. Refusal of recognition or enforcement
19. Savings

CHAPTER 4
TRANSITIONALAND OTHER PROVISIONS

20. Transitional provisions
21. Repeal or amendment of laws
22. Short title and commencement

SCHEDULE 1

UNCITRAL MODEL LAW ON INTERNATIONAL COMMERCIAL ARBITRATION

[Editorial Note: A Table of Contents for the Model Law will be found on pages 9-10]

SCHEDULE 2

UNCITRAL CONCILIATION RULES

SCHEDULE 3

CONVENTION ON THE RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF FOREIGN ARBITRALAWARDS

SCHEDULE 4

LAWS REPEALED OR AMENDED

CHAPTER 1
GENERAL PROVISIONS

Definitions

1. In this Act, unless the context otherwise indicates—

''arbitration agreement'' means an arbitration agreement referred to in article 7 of the Model Law;

''conciliation'' includes mediation;

''Constitution'' means the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996;

''Model Law'' means the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration adopted by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law on 21 June 1985, as amended by the said Commission on 7 July 2006 and as adapted in Schedule 1;

''public body'' includes—

(a) any department of state or administration in the national or provincial sphere of government or any municipality in the local sphere of government; or

(b) any other functionary or institution when—

(i) exercising a power or performing a duty in terms of the Constitution or a provincial constitution; or

(ii) exercising a public power or performing a public function in terms of any legislation.

''Republic'' means the Republic of South Africa; and

''UNCITRAL'' means the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law.

Interpretation

2. A word or expression used in Chapter 2 of this Act bears the same meaning as it has in the Model Law, unless inconsistent with the context and the Constitution.

Objects of Act

3. The objects of the Act are to—

(a) facilitate the use of arbitration as a method of resolving international commercial disputes;

(b) adopt the Model Law for use in international commercial disputes;

(c) facilitate the recognition and enforcement of certain arbitration agreements and arbitral awards; and

(d) give effect to the obligations of the Republic under the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards (1958), the text of which is set out in Schedule 3 to this Act, subject to the provisions of the Constitution.

Exclusion of Act 42 of 1965

4. (1) Subject to subsection (2), the Arbitration Act, 1965 (Act No. 42 of 1965), is not applicable to an arbitration agreement, arbitral award or reference to arbitration covered by this Act.

(2) Section 2 of the Arbitration Act, 1965, applies for purposes of Chapter 3 of this Act.

Act binds public bodies

5. This Act, subject to the provisions of section 13 of the Protection of Investment Act, 2015 (Act No. 22 of 2015), binds public bodies and applies to any international commercial arbitration in terms of an arbitration agreement to which a public body is a party.

CHAPTER 2

INTERNATIONAL COMMERCIALARBITRATION

Model Law to have force of law

6. The Model Law applies in the Republic subject to the provisions of this Act.

Matters subject to international commercial arbitration

7. (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, any international commercial dispute which the parties have agreed to submit to arbitration under an arbitration agreement and which relates to a matter which the parties are entitled to dispose of by agreement may be determined by arbitration, unless—

(a) such a dispute is not capable of determination by arbitration under any law of the Republic; or

(b) the arbitration agreement is contrary to the public policy of the Republic.

(2) Arbitration may not be excluded solely on the ground that an enactment confers jurisdiction on a court or other tribunal to determine a matter falling within the terms of an arbitration agreement.

Interpretation of Model Law

8. The material to which an arbitral tribunal or a court may refer in interpreting this Chapter and the Model Law includes relevant reports of UNCITRAL and its secretariat.

Immunity of arbitrators and arbitral institutions

9. (1) An arbitrator is not liable for any act or omission in the discharge or purported discharge of that arbitrator's functions as arbitrator unless the act or omission is shown to have been done in bad faith.

(2) An arbitral or other institution, authority or person designated or requested by the parties, or another arbitral institution to appoint an arbitrator, is not liable for any act or omission in the

discharge of that function or any other function in relation to an arbitration unless the act or omission is shown to have been done in bad faith.

(3) An institution, authority or person referred to in subsection (2) by whom an arbitrator is appointed or nominated is not liable, by reason of having appointed or nominated such arbitrator, for any act or omission of such arbitrator in the discharge or purported discharge of the functions of the arbitrator.

(4) The provisions of this section also apply, with the changes required by the context, to—

(a) the employees of an arbitrator or persons appointed by the arbitral tribunal; or

(b) the officers and employees of an arbitral or other institution, authority or person referred to in subsection (2).

Consolidation of arbitral proceedings and concurrent hearings

10. (1) The parties to an arbitration agreement may agree that—

(a) the arbitral proceedings be consolidated with other arbitral proceedings; or

(b) concurrent hearings be held, on such terms as may be agreed.

(2) The arbitral tribunal may not order consolidation of arbitral proceedings or concurrent hearings unless the parties agree.

Confidentiality of arbitral proceedings

11. (1) Arbitration proceedings to which a public body is a party are held in public, unless for compelling reasons, the arbitral tribunal directs otherwise.

(2) Where the arbitration is held in private, the award and all documents created for the arbitration which are not otherwise in the public domain must be kept confidential by the parties and tribunal, except to the extent that the disclosure of such documents may be required by reason of a legal duty or to protect or enforce a legal right.

Right to conciliation process

12. Parties to an arbitration agreement may refer a dispute covered by the arbitration agreement to conciliation, before or after referring the dispute to arbitration, subject to the terms of the agreement.

Application of UNCITRAL Conciliation Rules

13. The parties to an arbitration agreement who intend to settle their dispute by conciliation may, subject to this Act, agree to use the UNCITRAL Conciliation Rules set out in Schedule 2 to this Act.

CHAPTER 3

RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF ARBITRATION AGREEMENTS AND FOREIGN ARBITRALAWARDS

Definitions

14. In this Chapter, unless the context otherwise indicates—

(a) **''certified copy''** means a copy authenticated in a manner in which foreign documents must be authenticated to enable them to be produced in any court;

(b) **''Convention''** means the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 1958, the text of which is set out in Schedule 3;

(c) **''court''** means any Division of the High Court referred to in section 6(1) of the Superior Courts Act, 2013 (Act No. 10 of 2013), or any local seat thereof having jurisdiction; and

(d) **''foreign arbitral award''** means an arbitral award made in the territory of a state other than the Republic.

Determination of juridical seat of arbitration

15. For the purposes of this Chapter an award is deemed to be made at the juridical seat of arbitration determined in accordance with the provisions of articles 20(1) and 31(3) of the Model Law.

Recognition and enforcement of arbitration agreements and foreign arbitral awards

16. (1) Subject to section 18 an arbitration agreement and a foreign arbitral award must be recognised and enforced in the Republic as required by the Convention, subject to this Chapter.

(2) A foreign arbitral award is binding between the parties to that foreign arbitral award, and may be relied upon by those parties by way of defence, set-off or otherwise in any legal proceedings.

(3) A foreign arbitral award must, on application, be made an order of court and may then be enforced in the same manner as any judgment or order of court, subject to the provisions of this section and sections 17 and 18.

(4) Article 8 of the Model Law applies, with the necessary changes, to arbitration agreements referred to in subsection (1).

Evidence to be produced by party seeking recognition or enforcement

17. A party seeking the recognition or enforcement of a foreign arbitral award must produce—

(a) (i) the original award and the original arbitration agreement in terms of which an award was made, authenticated in a manner in which foreign documents must be authenticated to enable them to be produced in any court; or

(ii) a certified copy of that award and of that agreement; and

(b) a sworn translation of the arbitration agreement or arbitral award authenticated in a manner in which foreign documents must be authenticated for production in court, if the agreement or award is in a language other than one of the official languages of the Republic: Provided that the court may accept other documentary evidence regarding the existence of the foreign arbitral award and arbitration agreement as sufficient proof where the court considers it appropriate to do so.

Refusal of recognition or enforcement

18. (1) A court may only refuse to recognise or enforce a foreign arbitral award if—

(a) the court finds that—

(i) a reference to arbitration of the subject matter of the dispute is not permissible under the law of the Republic; or

(ii) the recognition or enforcement of the award is contrary to the public policy of the Republic; or

(b) the party against whom the award is invoked, proves to the satisfaction of the court that—

(i) a party to the arbitration agreement had no capacity to contract under the law applicable to that party;

(ii) the arbitration agreement is invalid under the law to which the parties have subjected it, or where the parties have not subjected it to any law, the arbitration agreement is invalid under the law of the country in which the award was made;

(iii) that he or she did not receive the required notice regarding the appointment of the arbitrator or of the arbitration proceedings or was otherwise not able to present his or her case;

(iv) the award deals with a dispute not contemplated by, or not falling within the terms of the reference to arbitration, or contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the reference to arbitration, subject to the provisions of subsection (2);

(v) the constitution of the arbitration tribunal or the arbitration procedure was not in accordance with the relevant arbitration agreement or, if the agreement does not provide for such matters, with the law of the country in which the arbitration took place; or

(vi) the award is not yet binding on the parties, or has been set aside or suspended by a competent authority of the country in which, or under the law of which, the award was made.

(2) An award which contains decisions on matters not submitted to arbitration may be recognised or enforced to the extent that it contains decisions on matters submitted to arbitration which can be separated from those on matters not so submitted.

(3) If an application for the setting aside or suspension of an award has been made to a competent authority referred to in subsection (1)*(b)*(vi), the court where recognition or enforcement is sought may, if it considers it appropriate—

(a) adjourn its decision on the enforcement of the award; and

(b) on the application of the party claiming enforcement of the award, order the other party to provide suitable security.

Savings

19. The provisions of this Chapter do not affect any other right to rely upon or to enforce a foreign arbitral award, including the right conferred by article 35 of the Model Law.

CHAPTER 4

TRANSITIONALAND OTHER PROVISIONS

Transitional provisions

20. (1) Chapter 2 of this Act applies to international commercial arbitration agreements whether they entered into force before or after the commencement of Chapter 2 of this Act and to every arbitration under such an agreement but this section does not apply to arbitral proceedings which commenced before Chapter 2 of this Act came into force.

(2) For purposes of this section, the date of commencement of the arbitration proceedings is the date upon which the parties agree as the date on which the arbitral proceedings commenced or failing such agreement, on the date of receipt by the respondent of a request for the dispute to be referred to arbitration.

(3) Chapters 2 and 3 of this Act apply to every arbitral award whether it was made before or after the date of commencement of such Chapters, but—

(a) proceedings for the enforcement of an arbitral award under the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards Act, 1977 (Act No. 40 of 1977); or

(b) proceedings for the enforcement, setting aside or remittal of an award under the Arbitration Act, 1965 (Act No. 42 of 1965),

which commenced before Chapters 2 and 3 of this Act came into force, continue until they are concluded as if Chapters 2 and 3 of this Act had not commenced.

Repeal or amendment of laws

21. The laws referred to in Schedule 4 are repealed or amended to the extent set out in the third column thereof.

Short title and commencement

22. This Act is called the International Arbitration Act, 2017.

Schedule 1

UNCITRAL Model Law on

International Commercial Arbitration

(As adopted by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law on 21 June 1985, with amendments as adopted by the said Commission on 7 July 2006, subject to certain adaptations set out below)

Contents

UNCITRAL MODEL LAWON INTERNATIONAL COMMERCIALARBITRATION

Chapter I. General provisions
Article 1. Scope of application
Article 2. Definitions and rules of interpretation
Article 2A. International origin and general principles
Article 3. Receipt of written communications
Article 4. Waiver of right to object
Article 5. Extent of court intervention
Article 6. Court for certain functions of arbitration assistance and supervision

Chapter II. Arbitration agreement
Article 7. Definition and form of arbitration agreement
Article 8. Arbitration agreement and substantive claim before court
Article 9. Arbitration agreement and interim measures by court

Chapter III. Composition of arbitral tribunal
Article 10. Number of arbitrators
Article 11. Appointment of arbitrators
Article 12. Grounds for challenge
Article 13. Challenge procedure
Article 14. Failure or impossibility to act
Article 15. Appointment of substitute arbitrator

Chapter IV. Jurisdiction of arbitral tribunal
Article 16. Competence of arbitral tribunal to rule on its jurisdiction

Chapter IVA. Interim measures
Section 1. *Interim* measures
Article 17. Power of arbitral tribunal to order interim measures
Article 17A. Conditions for granting interim measures

Section 2 Provisions applicable to interim measures
Article 17D. Modification, suspension, termination
Article 17E. Provision of security
Article 17F. Disclosure
Article 17G. Costs and damages

Section 3. Recognition and enforcement of interim measures
Article 17H. Recognition and enforcement
Article 17I. Grounds for refusing recognition or enforcement

Section 4. Court-ordered interim measures
Article 17J. Court-ordered interim measures

Chapter V. Conduct of arbitral proceedings
Article 18. Equal treatment of parties
Article 19. Determination of rules of procedure
Article 20. Judicial seat of arbitration
Article 21. Commencement of arbitral proceedings
Article 22. Language
Article 23. Statements of claim and defence
Article 24. Hearings and written proceedings
Article 25. Default of a party
Article 26. Expert appointed by arbitral tribunal
Article 27. Court assistance in taking evidence

Chapter VI. Making of award and termination of proceedings
Article 28. Rules applicable to substance of dispute
Article 29. Decision-making by panel of arbitrators
Article 30. Settlement
Article 31. Form and contents of award
Article 32. Termination of proceedings
Article 33. Correction and interpretation of award; additional award

Chapter VII. Recourse against award
Article 34. Application for setting aside as exclusive recourse against arbitral award

Chapter VIII. Recognition and enforcement of awards
Article 35. Recognition and enforcement
Article 36. Grounds for refusing recognition or enforcement

UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration

(As adopted by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law on 21 June 1985, with amendments as adopted by the said Commission on 7 July 2006, subject to certain adaptations set out below)

CHAPTER I. GENERAL PROVISIONS

Article I. Scope of application

(1) This Law applies to international commercial arbitration, subject to any agreement in force between the Republic and any other State or States.

(2) The provisions of this Law, except articles 8, 9, 17H, 17I, 17J, 35 and 36, apply only if the juridical seat of arbitration is in the territory of the Republic.

(3) An arbitration is international if:

(a) the parties to an arbitration agreement have, at the time of the conclusion of that agreement, their places of business in different States; or

(b) one of the following places is situated outside the State in which the parties have their places of business:

(i) the place of arbitration if determined in, or pursuant to, the arbitration agreement;

(ii) any place where a substantial part of the obligations of the commercial relationship is to be performed or the place with which the subject-matter of the dispute is most closely connected; or

(c) the parties have expressly agreed that the subject matter of the arbitration agreement relates to more than one country.

(4) For the purposes of paragraph (3) of this article:

(a) if a party has more than one place of business, the place of business is that which has the closest relationship to the arbitration agreement;

(b) if a party does not have a place of business, reference is to be made to his or her habitual residence.

(5) This Law shall not affect any other law of the Republic by virtue of which certain disputes may not be submitted to arbitration or may be submitted to arbitration only according to provisions other than those of this Law.

Article 2. Definitions and rules of interpretation

For the purposes of this Law:

(a) ‘‘arbitration’’ means any arbitration whether or not administered by a permanent arbitral institution;

(b) ‘‘arbitral tribunal’’ means a sole arbitrator or a panel of arbitrators;

(c) ‘‘court’’ means a court referred to in article 6(1) and includes, where appropriate, a body or organ of the judicial system of a foreign State;

(d) where a provision of this Law, except article 28, leaves the parties free to determine a certain issue, such freedom includes the right of the parties to authorize a third party, including an institution, to make that determination;

(e) where a provision of this Law refers to the fact that the parties have agreed or that they may agree or in any other way refers to an agreement of the parties, such agreement includes any arbitration rules referred to in that agreement;

(f) where a provision of this Law, other than in articles 25*(a)* and 32(2)*(a)*, refers to a claim, it also applies to a counter-claim, and where it refers to a defence, it also applies to a defence to such counter-claim.

Article 2 A. International origin and general principles

(1) In the interpretation of this Law, regard is to be had to its international origin and to the need to promote uniformity in its application and the observance of good faith.

(2) Questions concerning matters governed by this Law which are not expressly settled in it are to be settled in conformity with the general principles on which this Law is based.

Article 3. Receipt of written communications

(1) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties:

(a) any written communication is deemed to have been received if it is delivered to the addressee personally or if it is delivered at his or her place of business, habitual residence or mailing address; if none of these can be found after making a reasonable inquiry, a written communication is deemed to have been received if it is sent to the addressee's last-known place of business, habitual residence or mailing address by registered letter or any other means which provides a record of the attempt to deliver it;

(b) the communication is deemed to have been received on the day it is so delivered.

(2) The provisions of this article do not apply to communications in court proceedings.

Article 4. Waiver of right to object

A party who knows that any provision of this Law from which the parties may derogate or any requirement under the arbitration agreement has not been complied with and yet proceeds with the arbitration without stating his or her objection to such non-compliance without undue delay or, if a time-limit is provided therefor, within such period of time, shall be deemed to have waived his or her right to object.

Article 5. Extent of court intervention

In matters governed by this Law, no court shall intervene except where so provided in this Law.

Article 6. Court for certain functions of arbitration assistance and supervision

(1) Subject to paragraph (2), the functions referred to in articles 11(3), 11(4), 13(3), 14, 16(3) and 34(2) shall be performed by—

(a) the High Court within the area of jurisdiction of which the arbitration is being, or is to be, or was held;

(b) the division with jurisdiction over a South African party, or if there is no South African party, the Gauteng Division of the High Court seated in Johannesburg, if the place within the Republic where the arbitration is to take place has not yet been determined, until such place is determined.

(2) For purposes of article 8, ''court'' includes a magistrate's court.

CHAPTER II ARBITRATION AGREEMENT

Article 7. Definition and form of arbitration agreement

(1) ‘‘Arbitration agreement’’ is an agreement by the parties to submit to arbitration all or certain disputes which have arisen or which may arise between them in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not. An arbitration agreement may be in the form of an arbitration clause in a contract or in the form of a separate agreement.

(2) The arbitration agreement shall be in writing.

(3) An arbitration agreement is in writing if its content is recorded in any form, whether or not the arbitration agreement or contract has been concluded orally, by conduct, or by other means.

(4) The requirement that an arbitration agreement be in writing is met by an electronic communication if the information contained therein is accessible so as to be useable for subsequent reference.

(5) For purposes of paragraph (4), ‘‘electronic communication’’ means any communication that the parties make by means of data messages, and ‘‘data message’’ means information generated, sent, received or stored by electronic, magnetic, optical or similar means, including, but not limited to, electronic data interchange (EDI), electronic mail, telegram, telex or telecopy.

(6) Furthermore, an arbitration agreement is in writing if it is contained in an exchange of statements of claim and defence in which the existence of an agreement is alleged by one party and not denied by the other.

(7) The reference in a contract to any document containing an arbitration clause constitutes an arbitration agreement in writing, provided that the reference is such as to make that clause part of the contract.

Article 8. Arbitration agreement and substantive claim before court

(1) A court before which an action is brought in a matter which is the subject of an arbitration agreement shall, if a party so requests not later than when submitting his or her first statement on the substance of the dispute, stay those proceedings and refer the parties to arbitration unless it finds that the agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed.

(2) Where an action referred to in paragraph (1) of this article has been brought, arbitral proceedings may nevertheless be commenced or continued, and an award may be made, while the issue is pending before the court.

Article 9. Arbitration agreement and interim measures by court

(1) It is not incompatible with an arbitration agreement for a party to request, before or during arbitral proceedings, from a court an interim measure of protection and for a court to grant such measure.

(2) The court has the powers contained in article 17J to grant interim measures in relation to arbitration proceedings.

CHAPTER III. COMPOSITION OF ARBITRAL TRIBUNAL

Article 10. Number of arbitrators

(1) The parties are free to determine the number of arbitrators.

(2) Failing such determination, the number of arbitrators shall be one.

Article 11. Appointment of arbitrators

(1) No person shall be precluded by reason of his or her nationality from acting as an arbitrator, unless otherwise agreed by the parties.

(2) The parties are free to agree on a procedure of appointing the arbitrator or arbitrators, subject to the provisions of paragraphs (4) and (5) of this article.

(3) Failing such agreement,

(a) in an arbitration with three arbitrators, each party shall appoint one arbitrator, and the two arbitrators thus appointed shall appoint the third arbitrator; if a party falls to appoint the arbitrator within thirty days of receipt of a request to do so from the other party, or if the two arbitrators fail to agree on the third arbitrator within thirty days of their appointment, the appointment shall be made, upon request of a party, by the court specified in article 6;

(b) in an arbitration with a sole arbitrator, if the parties are unable to agree on the arbitrator, he or she shall be appointed, upon request of a party, by the court specified in article 6.

(4) Where, under an appointment procedure agreed upon by the parties,

(a) a party fails to act as required under such procedure, or

(b) the parties, or two arbitrators, are unable to reach an agreement expected of them under such procedure, or

(c) a third party, including an institution, fails to perform any function entrusted to it under such procedure,

any party may request the court specified in article 6 to take the necessary measure, unless the agreement on the appointment procedure provides other means for securing the appointment.

(5) A decision on a matter entrusted by paragraph (3) or (4) of this article to the court specified in article 6 shall be subject to no appeal. The court, in appointing an arbitrator, shall have due regard to any qualifications required of the arbitrator by the agreement of the parties and to such considerations as are likely to secure the appointment of an independent and impartial arbitrator and, in the case of a sole or third arbitrator, shall take into account as well the advisability of appointing an arbitrator of a nationality other than those of the parties.

Article 12. Grounds for challenge

(1) When a person is approached in connection with his or her possible appointment as an arbitrator, he or she shall disclose any circumstances likely to give rise to justifiable doubts as to his or her impartiality or independence. An arbitrator, from the time of his or her appointment and throughout the arbitral proceedings, shall without delay disclose any such circumstances to the parties unless they have already been informed of them by him or her.

(2) An arbitrator may be challenged only if circumstances exist that give rise to justifiable doubts as to his or her impartiality or independence, or if he or she does not possess qualifications agreed to by the parties. A party may challenge an arbitrator appointed by him or her, or in whose appointment he or she has participated, only for reasons of which he or she becomes aware after the appointment has been made.

(3) For purposes of paragraph (2), ‘‘justifiable doubts’’ require substantial grounds for contending that a reasonable apprehension of bias would be entertained by a reasonable person in possession of the correct facts.

Article 13. Challenge procedure

(1) The parties are free to agree on a procedure for challenging an arbitrator, subject to the provisions of paragraph (3) of this article.

(2) Failing such agreement, a party who intends to challenge an arbitrator shall, within fifteen days after becoming aware of the constitution of the arbitral tribunal or after becoming aware of any circumstance referred to in article 12(2), send a written statement of the reasons for the challenge to the arbitral tribunal. Unless the challenged arbitrator withdraws from office or the other party agrees to the challenge, the arbitral tribunal shall decide on the challenge.

(3) If a challenge under any procedure agreed upon by the parties or under the procedure of paragraph (2) of this article is not successful, the challenging party may request, within thirty days after having received notice of the decision rejecting the challenge, the court specified in article 6 to decide on the challenge, which decision shall be subject to no appeal; while such a request is pending, the arbitral tribunal, including the challenged arbitrator, may continue the arbitral proceedings and make an award.

Article 14. Failure or impossibility to act

(1) If an arbitrator becomes *de jure* or *de facto* unable to perform his or her functions or for other reasons fails to act without undue delay, his or her mandate terminates if he or she withdraws from office or if the parties agree on the termination. Otherwise, if a controversy remains concerning any of these grounds, any party may request the court specified in article 6 to decide on the termination of the mandate, which decision shall be subject to no appeal.

(2) If, under this article or article 13(2), an arbitrator withdraws from his or her office or a party agrees to the termination of the mandate of an arbitrator, this does not imply acceptance of the validity of any ground referred to in this article or article 12(2).

Article 15. Appointment of substitute arbitrator

Where the mandate of an arbitrator terminates under article 13 or 14 or because of withdrawal from office for any other reason or because of the revocation of his or her mandate by agreement of the parties or in any other case of termination of his or her mandate, a substitute arbitrator shall be appointed according to the rules that were applicable to the appointment of the arbitrator being replaced.

CHAPTER IV. JURISDICTION OF ARBITRAL TRIBUNAL

Article 16. Competence of arbitral tribunal to rule on its jurisdiction

(1) The arbitral tribunal may rule on its own jurisdiction, including any objections with respect to the existence or validity of the arbitration agreement. For that purpose, an arbitration clause which forms part of a contract shall be treated as an agreement independent of the other terms of the contract. A decision by the arbitral tribunal that the contract is null and void shall not entail *ipso jure* the invalidity of the arbitration clause.

(2) A plea that the arbitral tribunal does not have jurisdiction shall be raised not later than the submission of the statement of defence. A party is not precluded from raising such a plea by the fact that he or she has appointed, or participated in the appointment of, an arbitrator. A plea that the arbitral tribunal is exceeding the scope of its authority shall be raised as soon as the matter alleged to be beyond the scope of its authority is raised during the arbitral proceedings. The arbitral tribunal may, in either case, admit a later plea if it considers the delay justified.

(3) The arbitral tribunal may rule on a plea referred to in paragraph (2) of this article either as a preliminary question or in an award on the merits. If the arbitral tribunal rules on such plea as a preliminary question, any party may request, within thirty days after having received notice of that ruling, the court specified in article 6 to decide the matter, which decision shall be subject to no appeal; while such a request is pending, the arbitral tribunal may continue the arbitral proceedings and make an award.

CHAPTER IVA. INTERIM MEASURES

Section 1. Interim measures

Article 17. Power of arbitral tribunal to order interim measures

(1) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the arbitral tribunal may, at the request of a party, grant interim measures.

(2) An interim measure includes any temporary measure, whether in the form of an award or in another form, by which, at any time prior to the issuance of the award by which the dispute is finally decided, the arbitral tribunal orders a party to:

(a) Maintain or restore the *status quo* pending determination of the dispute;

(b) Take action that would prevent, or refrain from taking action that is likely to cause, current or imminent harm or prejudice to the arbitral process itself;

(c) Provide a means of preserving assets out of which a subsequent award may be satisfied;

(d) Preserve evidence that may be relevant and material to the resolution of the dispute; or

(e) Provide security for costs.

(3) A measure referred to in paragraph (2)*(e)* may only be ordered against a claiming or counter-claiming party.

Article 17A. Conditions for granting interim measures

(1) The party requesting an interim measure under article 17(2)*(a)*, *(b)*, *(c)* or *(e)* shall satisfy the arbitral tribunal that:

(a) Harm not adequately reparable by an award of damages is likely to result if the measure is not ordered, and such harm substantially outweighs the harm that is likely to result to the party against whom the measure is directed if the measure is granted; and

(b) There is a reasonable possibility that the requesting party will succeed on the merits of the claim. The determination on this possibility shall not affect the discretion of the arbitral tribunal in making any subsequent determination.

(2) With regard to a request for an interim measure under article 17(2)*(d)*, the requirements in paragraphs (1)*(a)* and *(b)* of this article shall apply only to the extent the arbitral tribunal considers appropriate.

Section 2. Provisions applicable to interim measures

Article 17D. Modification, suspension, termination

The arbitral tribunal may modify, suspend or terminate an interim measure it has granted, upon application of any party or, in exceptional circumstances and upon prior notice to the parties, on the arbitral tribunal's own initiative.

Article 17E. Provision of security

The arbitral tribunal may require the party requesting an interim measure to provide appropriate security in connection with the measure.

Article 17F. Disclosure

The arbitral tribunal may require any party promptly to disclose any material change in the circumstances on the basis of which the measure was requested or granted.

Article 17G. Costs and damages

The party requesting an interim measure shall be liable for any costs and damages caused by the measure to any party if the arbitral tribunal later determines that, in the circumstances, the measure should not have been granted. The arbitral tribunal may award such costs and damages at any point during the proceedings.

Section 3. Recognition and enforcement of interim measures

Article 17H. Recognition and enforcement

(1) An interim measure issued by an arbitral tribunal shall be recognized as binding and, unless otherwise provided by the arbitral tribunal, enforced upon application to the competent court, irrespective of the country in which it was issued, subject to the provisions of article 17I.
(2) The party who is seeking recognition or enforcement of an interim measure shall promptly inform the court of any termination, suspension or modification of that interim measure.
(3) The court referred to in paragraph (1) where recognition or enforcement is sought may, if it considers it proper, order the requesting party to provide appropriate security if the arbitral tribunal has not already made a determination with respect to security or where such a decision is necessary to protect the rights of third parties.

Article 17I. Grounds for refusing recognition or enforcement

(1) Recognition or enforcement of an interim measure may be refused only:
(a) At the request of the party against whom it is invoked if the court is satisfied that:
(i) Such refusal is warranted on the grounds set forth in article 36(1)*(a)*(i), (ii), (iii) or (iv); or
(ii) The arbitral tribunal's decision with respect to the provision of security in connection with the interim measure issued by the arbitral tribunal has not been complied with; or
(iii) The interim measure has been terminated or suspended by the arbitral tribunal or, where so empowered, by the court of the State in which the arbitration takes place or under the law of which that interim measure was granted; or
(b) If the court finds that:
(i) The interim measure is incompatible with the powers conferred upon the court unless the court decides to reformulate the interim measure to the extent necessary to adapt it to its own powers and procedures for the purposes of enforcing that interim measure and without modifying its substance; or
(ii) Any of the grounds set forth in article 36(1)*(b)*(i) or (ii), apply to the recognition and enforcement of the interim measure.

(2) Any determination made by the court on any ground in paragraph (1) of this article shall be effective only for the purposes of the application to recognize and enforce the interim measure. The court where recognition or enforcement is sought shall not, in making that determination, undertake a review of the substance of the interim measure.

Section 4 Court-ordered interim measures

Article 17J. Court-ordered interim measures

(1) The court, at the request of a party, shall have the same powers in relation to arbitration proceedings, irrespective of whether its juridical seat is in the territory of the Republic, as it has for the purposes of proceedings before that court to make—

(a) orders for the preservation, interim custody or sale of any goods which are the subject matter of the dispute;

(b) an order securing the amount in dispute but not an order for security for costs;

(c) an order appointing a liquidator;

(d) any other orders to ensure that any award which may be made in the arbitral proceedings is not rendered ineffectual by the dissipation of assets by the other party; or

(e) an interim interdict or other interim order.

(2) The court shall not grant an order in terms of paragraph (1) of this article unless—

(a) the arbitral tribunal has not yet been appointed and the matter is urgent;

(b) the arbitral tribunal is not competent to grant the order; or

(c) the urgency of the matter makes it impractical to seek such order from the arbitral tribunal,

and the court shall not grant any such order where the arbitral tribunal, being competent to grant the order, has already determined the matter.

(3) The decision of the court upon any request made in terms of paragraph (1) of this article shall not be subject to appeal.

(4) The court shall have no powers to grant interim measures other than those contained in this article.

CHAPTER V. CONDUCT OF ARBITRAL PROCEEDINGS

Article 18. Equal treatment of parties

The parties shall be treated with equality and each party shall be given a reasonable opportunity of presenting his or her case.

Article 19. Determination of rules of procedure

(1) Subject to the provisions of this Law, the parties are free to agree on the procedure to be followed by the arbitral tribunal in conducting the proceedings.

(2) Failing such agreement, the arbitral tribunal may, subject to the provisions of this Law, conduct the arbitration in such manner as it considers appropriate. The power conferred upon the arbitral tribunal includes the power to determine the admissibility, relevance, materiality and weight of any evidence.

Article 20. Juridical seat of arbitration

(1) The parties are free to agree on the juridical seat of arbitration. Failing such agreement, the juridical seat of arbitration shall be determined by the arbitral tribunal having regard to the circumstances of the case, including the convenience of the parties.
(2) Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (1) of this article, the arbitral tribunal may, unless otherwise agreed by the parties, meet at any geographic location it considers appropriate for consultation among its members, for hearing witnesses, experts or the parties, or for inspection of goods, other property or documents.

Article 21. Commencement of arbitral proceedings

Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the arbitral proceedings in respect of a particular dispute commence on the date on which a request for that dispute to be referred to arbitration is received by the respondent.

Article 22. Language

(1) The parties are free to agree on the language or languages to be used in the arbitral proceedings. Failing such agreement, the arbitral tribunal shall determine the language or languages to be used in the proceedings. This agreement or determination, unless otherwise specified therein, shall apply to any written statement by a party, any hearing and any award, decision or other communication by the arbitral tribunal.
(2) The arbitral tribunal may order that any documentary evidence shall be accompanied by a translation into the language or languages agreed upon by the parties or determined by the arbitral tribunal.

Article 23. Statements of claim and defence

(1) Within the period of time agreed by the parties or determined by the arbitral tribunal, the claimant shall state the facts supporting his or her claim, the points at issue and the relief or remedy sought, and the respondent shall state his or her defence in respect of these particulars, unless the parties have otherwise agreed as to the required elements of such statements. The parties may submit with their statements all documents they consider to be relevant or may add a reference to the documents or other evidence they will submit.
(2) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, either party may amend or supplement his or her claim or defence during the course of the arbitral proceedings, unless the arbitral tribunal considers it inappropriate to allow such amendment having regard to the delay in making it.

Article 24. Hearings and written proceedings

(1) Subject to any contrary agreement by the parties, the arbitral tribunal shall decide whether to hold oral hearings for the presentation of evidence or for oral argument, or whether the proceedings shall be conducted on the basis of documents and other materials. However, unless the parties have agreed that no hearings shall be held, the arbitral tribunal shall hold such hearings at an appropriate stage of the proceedings, if so requested by a party.
(2) The parties shall be given sufficient advance notice of any hearing and of any meeting of the arbitral tribunal for the purposes of inspection of goods, other property or documents.
(3) All statements, documents or other information supplied to the arbitral tribunal by one party shall be communicated to the other party. Also any expert report or evidentiary document

on which the arbitral tribunal may rely in making its decision shall be communicated to the parties.

Article 25. Default of a party

Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, if, without showing sufficient cause—

(a) the claimant fails to communicate his or her statement of claim in accordance with article 23(1), the arbitral tribunal shall terminate the proceedings;

(b) the respondent fails to communicate his or her statement of defence in accordance with article 23(1), the arbitral tribunal shall continue the proceedings without treating such failure in itself as an admission of the claimant's allegations;

(c) any party fails to appear at a hearing or to produce documentary evidence, the arbitral tribunal may continue the proceedings and make the award on the evidence before it.

Article 26. Expert appointed by arbitral tribunal

(1) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the arbitral tribunal—

(a) may appoint one or more experts to report to it on specific issues to be determined by the arbitral tribunal;

(b) may require a party to give the expert any relevant information or to produce, or to provide access to, any relevant documents, goods or other property for his or her inspection.

(2) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, if a party so requests or if the arbitral tribunal considers it necessary, the expert shall, after delivery of his or her written or oral report, participate in a hearing where the parties have the opportunity to put questions to him or her and to present expert witnesses in order to testify on the points at issue.

Article 27. Court assistance in taking evidence

(1) The arbitral tribunal or a party with the approval of the arbitral tribunal may request from a competent court assistance in taking evidence. The court may execute the request within its competence and according to its rules on taking evidence.

(2) For purposes of paragraph (1)—

(a) the Registrar of the Division of the High Court or the clerk of a magistrate's court in whose area of jurisdiction the arbitration takes place may, on the application of the arbitral tribunal or a party, with the approval of the arbitral tribunal, issue a subpoena to compel the attendance of a witness before an arbitral tribunal to give evidence or to produce documents; and

(b) the Division of the High Court shall, for the purposes of the arbitral proceedings, have the same powers as it has for the purposes of proceedings before that court to make an order for the issue of a commission or request for taking evidence out of its jurisdiction.

CHAPTER VI. MAKING OF AWARD AND TERMINATION OF PROCEEDINGS

Article 28. Rules applicable to substance of dispute

(1) The arbitral tribunal shall decide the dispute in accordance with such rules of law as are chosen by the parties as applicable to the substance of the dispute. Any designation of the law or legal system of a given State shall be construed, unless otherwise expressed, as directly referring to the substantive law of that State and not to its conflict of laws rules.

(2) Failing any designation by the parties, the arbitral tribunal shall apply the law determined by the conflict of laws rules which it considers applicable.
(3) The arbitral tribunal shall decide *ex aequo et bono* or as *amiable compositeu*r only if the parties have expressly authorized it to do so.
(4) In all cases, the arbitral tribunal shall decide in accordance with the terms of the contract and shall take into account the usages of the trade applicable to the transaction.

Article 29. Decision-making by panel of arbitrators

In arbitral proceedings with more than one arbitrator, any decision of the arbitral tribunal shall be made, unless otherwise agreed by the parties, by a majority of all its members. However, questions of procedure may be decided by a presiding arbitrator, if so authorized by the parties or all members of the arbitral tribunal.

Article 30. Settlement

(1) If, during arbitral proceedings, the parties settle the dispute, the arbitral tribunal shall terminate the proceedings and, if requested by the parties and not objected to by the arbitral tribunal, record the settlement in the form of an arbitral award on agreed terms.
(2) An award on agreed terms shall be made in accordance with the provisions of article 31 and shall state that it is an award. Such an award has the same status and effect as any other award on the merits of the case.

Article 31. Form and contents of award

(1) The award shall be made in writing and shall be signed by the arbitrator or arbitrators. In arbitral proceedings with more than one arbitrator, the signatures of the majority of all members of the arbitral tribunal shall suffice, provided that the reason for any omitted signature is stated.
(2) The award shall state the reasons upon which it is based, unless the parties have agreed that no reasons are to be given or the award is an award on agreed terms under article 30.
(3) The award shall state its date and the juridical seat of arbitration as determined in accordance with article 20(1). The award shall be deemed to have been made at the juridical seat.
(4) After the award is made, a copy signed by the arbitrators in accordance with paragraph (1) of this article shall be delivered to each party.
(5) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties and subject to article 28, the arbitral tribunal may award interest on such basis and on such terms as the tribunal considers appropriate and fair in the circumstances, also having regard to the currency in which the award was made, commencing not earlier than the date on which the cause of action arose and ending not later than the date of payment.
(6) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the award of costs in connection with the reference and the award shall be in the discretion of the arbitral tribunal, which may specify the party entitled to costs, the party who shall pay the costs, the amount of costs or the method of determining that amount, and the manner in which the costs shall be paid.
(7) In exercising its discretion under paragraph (6) of this article, the tribunal may take into account the extent to which each party has conducted the arbitration in an expeditious and cost-effective manner.

Article 32. Termination of proceedings

(1) The arbitral proceedings are terminated by the final award or by an order of the arbitral tribunal in accordance with paragraph (2) of this article.

(2) The arbitral tribunal shall issue an order for the termination of the arbitral proceedings when:

(a) the claimant withdraws his or her claim, unless the respondent objects thereto and the arbitral tribunal recognizes a legitimate interest on his or her part in obtaining a final settlement of the dispute;

(b) the parties agree on the termination of the proceedings; or

(c) the arbitral tribunal finds that the continuation of the proceedings has for any other reason become unnecessary or impossible.

(3) The mandate of the arbitral tribunal terminates with the termination of the arbitral proceedings, subject to the provisions of articles 33 and 34(4).

Article 33. Correction and interpretation of award; additional award

(1)Within thirty days of receipt of the award, unless another period of time has been agreed upon by the parties:

(a) a party, with notice to the other party, may request the arbitral tribunal to correct in the award any errors in computation, any clerical or typographical errors or any errors of similar nature;

(b) if so agreed by the parties, a party, with notice to the other party, may request the arbitral tribunal to give an interpretation of a specific point or part of the award.

If the arbitral tribunal considers the request to be justified, it shall make the correction or give the interpretation within thirty days of receipt of the request. The interpretation shall form part of the award.

(2) The arbitral tribunal may correct any error of the type referred to in paragraph (1)*(a)* of this article on its own initiative within thirty days of the date of the award.

(3) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, a party, with notice to the other party, may request, within thirty days of receipt of the award, the arbitral tribunal to make an additional award as to claims presented in the arbitral proceedings but omitted from the award. If the arbitral tribunal considers the request to be justified, it shall make the additional award within sixty days.

(4) The arbitral tribunal may extend, if necessary, the period of time within which it shall make a correction, interpretation or an additional award under paragraph (1) or (3) of this article.

(5) The provisions of article 31 shall apply to a correction or interpretation of the award or to an additional award.

CHAPTER VII. RECOURSE AGAINST AWARD

Article 34. Application for setting aside as exclusive recourse against arbitral award

(1) Recourse to a court against an arbitral award may be made only by an application for setting aside in accordance with paragraphs (2) and (3) of this article.

(2) An arbitral award may be set aside by the court specified in article 6 only if:

(a) the party making the application furnishes proof that:

(i) a party to the arbitration agreement referred to in article 7 was under some incapacity; or the said agreement is not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of the Republic; or

(ii) the party making the application was not given proper notice of the appointment of an arbitrator or of the arbitral proceedings or was otherwise unable to present his or her case; or

(iii) the award deals with a dispute not contemplated by or not falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration, provided that, if the decisions on matters submitted to arbitration can be separated from those not so submitted, only that part of the award which contains decisions on matters not submitted to arbitration may be set aside; or

(iv) the composition of the arbitral tribunal or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties, unless such agreement was in conflict with a provision of this Law from which the parties cannot derogate, or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with this Law; or

(b) the court finds that:

(i) the subject-matter of the dispute is not capable of settlement by arbitration under the law of the Republic; or

(ii) the award is in conflict with the public policy of the Republic.

(3) An application for setting aside may not be made after three months have elapsed from the date on which the party making that application had received the award or, if a request had been made under article 33, from the date on which that request had been disposed of by the arbitral tribunal, unless the party making the application can prove that he or she did not know and could not, within that period, by exercising reasonable care, have acquired knowledge by virtue of which an award is liable to be set aside under paragraph (5)*(b)* of this article, in which event the period shall commence on the date when such knowledge could have been acquired by exercising reasonable care.

(4) The court, when asked to set aside an award, may, where appropriate and so requested by a party, suspend the setting aside proceedings for a period of time determined by it in order to give the arbitral tribunal an opportunity to resume the arbitral proceedings or to take such other action as in the arbitral tribunal's opinion will eliminate the grounds for setting aside.

(5) For the purposes of avoiding any doubt, and without limiting the generality of paragraph (2)*(b)*(ii) of this article, it is declared that an award is in conflict with the public policy of the Republic if—

(a) a breach of the arbitral tribunal's duty to act fairly occurred in connection with the making of the award which has caused or will cause substantial injustice to the applicant; or

(b) the making of the award was induced or affected by fraud or corruption.

CHAPTER VIII. RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF AWARDS

Article 35. Recognition and enforcement

(1) An arbitral award, irrespective of the country in which it was made, shall be recognized as binding and, upon application in writing to the competent court, shall be enforced subject to the provisions of this article and of article 36.

(2) The party relying on an award or applying for its enforcement shall supply the original award or a copy thereof and if the award is not made in an official language of the Republic a translation thereof into such language.

Article 36. Grounds for refusing recognition or enforcement

(1) Recognition or enforcement of an arbitral award, irrespective of the country in which it was made, may be refused only:

(a) at the request of the party against whom it is invoked, if that party furnishes to the competent court where recognition or enforcement is sought proof that:

(i) a party to the arbitration agreement referred to in article 7 was under some incapacity; or the said agreement is not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of the country where the award was made; or

(ii) the party against whom the award is invoked was not given proper notice of the appointment of an arbitrator or of the arbitral proceedings or was otherwise unable to present his or her case; or

(iii) the award deals with a dispute not contemplated by or not falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or it contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration, provided that, if the decisions on matters submitted to arbitration can be separated from those not so submitted, that part of the award which contains decisions on matters submitted to arbitration may be recognized and enforced; or

(iv) the composition of the arbitral tribunal or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with the law of the country where the arbitration took place; or

(v) the award has not yet become binding on the parties or has been set aside or suspended by a court of the country in which, or under the law of which, that award was made; or

(b) if the court finds that:

(i) the subject-matter of the dispute is not capable of settlement by arbitration under the law of the Republic; or

(ii) the recognition or enforcement of the award would be contrary to the public policy of the Republic.

(2) If an application for setting aside or suspension of an award has been made to a court referred to in paragraph (l)*(a)*(v) of this article, the court where recognition or enforcement is sought may, if it considers it proper, adjourn its decision and may also, on the application of the party claiming recognition or enforcement of the award, order the other party to provide appropriate security.

(3) For the purposes of avoiding any doubt, and without limiting the generality of paragraph (1)*(b)*(ii) of this article, it is declared that the recognition or enforcement of an award is contrary to the public policy of the Republic if—

(a) a breach of the arbitral tribunal's duty to act fairly occurred in connection with the making of the award which has caused or will cause substantial injustice to the party resisting recognition or enforcement; or

(b) the making of the award was induced or affected by fraud or corruption.

SCHEDULE 2

UNCITRAL CONCILIATION RULES

Approved by Resolution 35/52 of the General Assembly on 4 December 1980

APPLICATION OF THE RULES

Article 1

(1) These Rules apply to conciliation of disputes arising out of or relating to a contractual or other legal relationship where the parties seeking an amicable settlement of their dispute have agreed that the UNCITRAL Conciliation Rules apply.
(2) The parties may agree to exclude or vary any of these Rules at any time.
(3) Where any of these Rules is in conflict with a provision of law from which the parties cannot derogate, that provision prevails.

COMMENCEMENT OF CONCILIATION PROCEEDINGS

Article 2

(1) The party initiating conciliation sends to the other party a written invitation to conciliate under these Rules, briefly identifying the subject of the dispute.
(2) Conciliation proceedings commence when the other party accepts the invitation to conciliate. If the acceptance is made orally, it is advisable that it be confirmed in writing.
(3) If the other party rejects the invitation, there will be no conciliation proceedings.
(4) If the party initiating conciliation does not receive a reply within thirty days from the date on which he sends the invitation, or within such other period of time as specified in the invitation, he may elect to treat this as a rejection of the invitation to conciliate. If he so elects, he informs the other party accordingly.

NUMBER OF CONCILIATORS

Article 3

There shall be one conciliator unless the parties agree that there shall be two or three conciliators. Where there is more than one conciliator, they ought, as a general rule, to act jointly.

APPOINTMENT OF CONCILIATORS

Article 4

(1) *(a)* In conciliation proceedings with one conciliator, the parties shall endeavour to reach agreement on the name of a sole conciliator.
(b) In conciliation proceedings with two conciliators, each party appoints one conciliator.
(c) In conciliation proceedings with three conciliators, each party appoints one conciliator. The parties shall endeavour to reach agreement on the name of the third conciliator.
(2) Parties may enlist the assistance of an appropriate institution or person in connection with the appointment of conciliators. In particular—

(a) a party may request such an institution or person to recommend the names of suitable individuals to act as conciliator; or

(b) the parties may agree that the appointment of one or more conciliators be made directly by such an institution or person.

In recommending or appointing individuals to act as conciliator, the institution or person shall have regard to such considerations as are likely to secure the appointment of an independent and impartial conciliator and, with respect to a sole or third conciliator, shall take into account the advisability of appointing a conciliator of a nationality other than the nationalities of the parties.

SUBMISSION OF STATEMENTS TO CONCILIATOR

Article 5

(1) The conciliator, upon his appointment, requests each party to submit to him a brief written statement describing the general nature of the dispute and the points at issue.
Each party sends a copy of his statement to the other party.

(2) The conciliator may request each party to submit to him a further written statement of his position and the facts and grounds in support thereof, supplemented by any documents and other evidence that such party deems appropriate. The party sends a copy of his statement to the other party.

(3) At any stage of the conciliation proceedings the conciliator may request a party to submit to him such additional information as he deems appropriate.

REPRESENTATION AND ASSISTANCE

Article 6

The parties may be represented or assisted by persons of their choice. The names and addresses of such persons are to be communicated in writing to the other party and to the conciliator; such communication is to specify whether the appointment is made for purposes of representation or of assistance.

ROLE OF CONCILIATOR

Article 7

(1) The conciliator assists the parties in an independent and impartial manner in their attempt to reach an amicable settlement of their dispute.

(2) The conciliator will be guided by principles of objectivity, fairness and justice, giving consideration to, among other things, the rights and obligations of the parties, the usages of the trade concerned and the circumstances surrounding the dispute, including any previous business practices between the parties.

(3) The conciliator may conduct the conciliation proceedings in such a manner as he considers appropriate, taking into account the circumstances of the case, the wishes the parties may express, including any request by a party that the conciliator hear oral statements, and the need for a speedy settlement of the dispute.

(4) The conciliator may, at any stage of the conciliation proceedings, make proposals for a settlement of the dispute. Such proposals need not be in writing and need not be accompanied by a statement of the reasons therefor.

ADMINISTRATIVE ASSISTANCE

Article 8

In order to facilitate the conduct of the conciliation proceedings, the parties, or the conciliator with the consent of the parties, may arrange for administrative assistance by a suitable institution or person.

COMMUNICATION BETWEEN CONCILIATOR AND PARTIES

Article 9

(1) The conciliator may invite the parties to meet with him or may communicate with them orally or in writing. He may meet or communicate with the parties together or with each of them separately.
(2) Unless the parties have agreed upon the place where meetings with the conciliator are to be held, such place will be determined by the conciliator, after consultation with the parties, having regard to the circumstances of the conciliation proceedings.

DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION

Article 10

When the conciliator receives factual information concerning the dispute from a party, he discloses the substance of that information to the other party in order that the other party may have the opportunity to present any explanation which he considers appropriate. However, when a party gives any information to the conciliator subject to a specific condition that it be kept confidential, the conciliator does not disclose that information to the other party.

CO-OPERATION OF PARTIES WITH CONCILIATOR

Article 11

The parties will in good faith co-operate with the conciliator and, in particular, will endeavour to comply with requests by the conciliator to submit written materials, provide evidence and attend meetings.

SUGGESTIONS BY PARTIES FOR SETTLEMENT OF DISPUTE

Article 12

Each party may, on his own initiative or at the invitation of the conciliator, submit to the conciliator suggestions for the settlement of the dispute.

SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT

Article 13

(1) When it appears to the conciliator that there exist elements of a settlement which would be acceptable to the parties, he formulates the terms of a possible settlement and submits them to the parties for their observations. After receiving the observations of the parties, the conciliator may reformulate the terms of a possible settlement in the light of such observations.

(2) If the parties reach agreement on a settlement of the dispute, they draw up and sign a written settlement agreement. If requested by the parties, the conciliator draws up, or assists the parties in drawing up, the settlement agreement.[1]

(3) The parties by signing the settlement agreement put an end to the dispute and are bound by the agreement.

1 The parties may wish to consider including in the settlement agreement a clause that any dispute arising out of or relating to the settlement agreement shall be submitted to arbitration.

CONFIDENTIALITY

Article 14

The conciliator and the parties must keep confidential all matters relating to the conciliation proceedings. Confidentiality extends also to the settlement agreement, except where its disclosure is necessary for purposes of implementation and enforcement.

TERMINATION OF CONCILIATION PROCEEDINGS

Article 15

The conciliation proceedings are terminated:

(a) By the signing of the settlement agreement by the parties, on the date of the agreement; or

(b) By a written declaration of the conciliator, after consultation with the parties, to the effect that further efforts at conciliation are no longer justified, on the date of the declaration; or

(c) By a written declaration of the parties addressed to the conciliator to the effect that the conciliation proceedings are terminated, on the date of the declaration; or

(d) By a written declaration of a party to the other party and the conciliator, if appointed, to the effect that the conciliation proceedings are terminated, on the date of the declaration.

RESORT TO ARBITRAL OR JUDICIAL PROCEEDINGS

Article 16

The parties undertake not to initiate, during the conciliation proceedings, any arbitral or judicial proceedings in respect of a dispute that is the subject of the conciliation proceedings, except that a party may initiate arbitral or judicial proceedings where, in his opinion, such proceedings are necessary for preserving his rights.

COSTS

Article 17

(1) Upon termination of the conciliation proceedings, the conciliator fixes the costs of the conciliation and gives written notice thereof to the parties. The term ‘‘costs’’ includes only:

(a) The fee of the conciliator which shall be reasonable in amount;

(b) The travel and other expenses of the conciliator;

(c) The travel and other expenses of witnesses requested by the conciliator with the consent of the parties;

(d) The cost of any expert advice requested by the conciliator with the consent of the parties;

(e) The cost of any assistance provided pursuant to articles 4, paragraph (2)*(b)*, and 8 of these Rules.

(2) The costs, as defined above, are borne equally by the parties unless the settlement agreement provides for a different apportionment. All other expenses incurred by a party are borne by that party.

DEPOSITS

Article 18

(1) The conciliator, upon his appointment, may request each party to deposit an equal amount as an advance for the costs referred to in article 17, paragraph (1) which he expects will be incurred.

(2) During the course of the conciliation proceedings the conciliator may request supplementary deposits in an equal amount from each party.

(3) If the required deposits under paragraphs (1) and (2) of this article are not paid in full by both parties within thirty days, the conciliator may suspend the proceedings or may make a written declaration of termination to the parties, effective on the date of that declaration.

(4) Upon termination off the conciliation proceedings, the conciliator renders an accounting to the parties of the deposits received and returns any unexpended balance to the parties.

ROLE OF CONCILIATOR IN OTHER PROCEEDINGS

Article 19

The parties and the conciliator undertake that the conciliator will not act as an arbitrator or as a representative or counsel of a party in any arbitral or judicial proceedings in respect of a dispute that is the subject of the conciliation proceedings. The parties also undertake that they will not present the conciliator as a witness in any such proceedings.

ADMISSIBILITY OF EVIDENCE IN OTHER PROCEEDINGS

Article 20

The parties undertake not to rely on or introduce as evidence in arbitral or judicial proceedings, whether or not such proceedings relate to the dispute that is the subject of the conciliation proceedings:

(a) Views expressed or suggestions made by the other party in respect of a possible settlement of the dispute;

(b) Admissions made by the other party in the course of the conciliation proceedings;
(c) Proposals made by the conciliator;
(d) The fact that the other party had indicated his willingness to accept a proposal for settlement made by the conciliator.

MODEL CONCILIATION CLAUSE

Where, in the event of a dispute arising out of or relating to this contract, the parties wish to seek an amicable settlement of that dispute by conciliation, the conciliation shall take place in accordance with the UNCITRAL Conciliation Rules as at present in force.
(The parties may agree on other conciliation clauses.)

SCHEDULE 3

CONVENTION ON THE RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF FOREIGN ARBITRALAWARDS

(Done at New York, June 10, 1958; entry into force June 7, 1959; published in 330 U.N.T.S. 38 (1959), no. 4739.)

Article 1

1. This Convention shall apply to the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards made in the territory of a State other than the State where the recognition and enforcement of such awards are sought, and arising out of differences between persons, whether physical or legal. It shall also apply to arbitral awards not considered as domestic awards in the State where their recognition and enforcement are sought.

2. The term ‘‘arbitral awards’’ shall include not only awards made by arbitrators appointed for each case but also those made by permanent arbitral bodies to which the parties have submitted.

3. When signing, ratifying or acceding to this Convention, or notifying extension under article X hereof, any State may on the basis of reciprocity declare that it will apply the Convention to the recognition and enforcement of awards made only in the territory of another Contracting State. It may also declare that it will apply the Convention only to differences arising out of legal relationships whether contractual or not, which are considered as commercial under the national law of the State making such declaration.

Article II

1. Each Contracting State shall recognize an agreement in writing under which the parties undertake to submit to arbitration all or any differences which have arisen or which may arise between them in respect of a defined relationship, whether contractual or not, concerning a subject matter capable of settlement by arbitration.

2. The term ‘‘agreement in writing’’ shall include an arbitral clause in a contract or an arbitration agreement, signed by the parties or contained in an exchange of letters or telegrams.

3. The court of a Contracting State, when seized of an action in a matter in respect of which the parties have made an agreement within the meaning of this article, shall, at the request of one of the parties, refer the parties to arbitration, unless it finds that the said agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed.

Article III

Each Contracting State shall recognize arbitral awards as binding and enforce them in accordance with the rules of procedure of the territory where the award is relied upon, under the conditions laid down in the following articles. There shall not be imposed substantially more onerous conditions or higher fees or charges on the recognition or enforcement of arbitral awards to which this Convention applies than are imposed on the recognition or enforcement of domestic arbitral awards.

Article IV

1. To obtain the recognition and enforcement mentioned in the preceding article, the party applying for recognition and enforcement shall, at the time of the application, supply:

(a) the duly authenticated original award or a duly certified copy thereof;

(b) the original agreement referred to in article II or a duly certified copy thereof.

2. If the said award or agreement is not made in an official language of the country in which the award is relied upon, the party applying for recognition and enforcement of the award shall produce a translation of these documents into such language. The translation shall be certified by an official or sworn translator or by a diplomatic or consular agent.

Article V

1. Recognition and enforcement of the award may be refused, at the request of the party against whom it is invoked, only if that party furnishes to the competent authority where the recognition and enforcement is sought, proof that:

(a) the parties to the agreement referred to in article II were, under the law applicable to them, under some incapacity, or the said agreement is not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of the country where the award was made; or

(b) the party against whom the award is invoked was not given proper notice of the appointment of the arbitrator or of the arbitration proceedings or was otherwise unable to present his case; or

(c) the award deals with a difference not contemplated by or not falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or it contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration, provided that, if the decisions on matters submitted to arbitration can be separated from those not so submitted, that part of the award which contains decision on matters submitted to arbitration may be recognized and enforced; or

(d) the composition of the arbitral authority or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties, or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with the law of the country where the arbitration took place; or

(e) the award has not yet become binding on the parties, or has been set aside or suspended by a competent authority of the country in which, or under the law of which, that award was made.

2. Recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award may also be refused if the competent authority in the country where recognition and enforcement is sought finds that:

(a) the subject matter of the difference is not capable of settlement by arbitration under the law of that country; or

(b) the recognition or enforcement of the award would be contrary to the public policy of that country.

Article VI

If an application for the setting aside or suspension of the award has been made to a competent authority referred to in Article V paragraph (1)*(e)*, the authority before which the award is sought to be relied upon may, if it considers it proper, adjourn the decision on the enforcement

of the award and may also, on the application of the party claiming enforcement of the award, order the other party to give suitable security.

Article VII

1. The provisions of the present Convention shall not affect the validity of multilateral or bilateral agreements concerning the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards entered into by the Contracting States nor deprive any interested party of any right he may have to avail himself of an arbitral award in the manner and to the extent allowed by the law or the treaties of the country where such award is sought to be relied upon.

2. The Geneva Protocol on Arbitration Clauses of 1923 and the Geneva Convention on the Execution of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 1927 shall cease to have effect between Contracting States on their becoming bound and to the extent that they become bound, by this Convention.

Article VIII

1. This Convention shall be open until 31 December 1958 for signature on behalf of any Member of the United Nations and also on behalf of any other State which is or hereafter becomes a member of any specialized agency of the United Nations, or which is or hereafter becomes a party to the Statute of the International Court of Justice, or any other State to which an invitation has been addressed by the General Assembly of the United Nations.

2. This Convention shall be ratified and the instrument of ratification shall be deposited with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

Article IX

1. This Convention shall be open for accession to all States referred to in article VIII.

2. Accession shall be effected by the deposit of an instrument of accession with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

Article X

1. Any State may, at the time of signature, ratification or accession, declare that this Convention shall extend to all or any of the territories for the international relations of which it is responsible. Such a declaration shall take effect when the Convention enters into force for the State concerned.

2. At any time thereafter any such extension shall be made by notification addressed to the Secretary-General of the United Nations and shall take effect as from the ninetieth day after the day of receipt by the Secretary-General of the United Nations of this notification, or as from the date of entry into force of the Convention for the State concerned, whichever is the later.

3. With respect to those territories to which this Convention is not extended at the time of signature, ratification or accession, each State concerned shall consider the possibility of taking the necessary steps in order to extend the application of this Convention to such territories, subject, where necessary for constitutional reasons, to the consent of the Governments of such territories.

Article XI

1. In the case of a federal or non-unitary State, the following provisions shall apply:
   (a) With respect to those articles of this Convention that come within the legislative jurisdiction of the federal authority, the obligations of the federal Government shall to this extent be the same as those of Contracting States which are not federal States;
   (b) With respect to those articles of this Convention that come within the legislative jurisdiction of constituent states or provinces which are not, under the constitutional system of the federation, bound to take legislative action, the federal Government shall bring such articles with a favourable recommendation to the notice of the appropriate authorities of constituent states or provinces at the earliest possible moment;
   (c) A federal State party to this Convention shall, at the request of any other Contracting State transmitted through the Secretary-General of the United Nations, supply a statement of law and practice of the federation and its constituent units in regard to any particular provision of this Convention, showing the extent to which effect has been given to that provision by legislative or other action.

Article XII

1. This Convention shall come into force on the ninetieth day following the date of deposit of the third instrument of ratification or accession.

2. For each State ratifying or acceding to this Convention after the deposit of the third instrument of ratification or accession, this Convention shall enter into force on the ninetieth day after deposit by such State of its instrument of ratification or accession.

Article XIII

1. Any Contracting State may denounce this Convention by a written notification to the Secretary-General of the United Nations. Denunciation shall take effect one year after the date of receipt of the notification by the Secretary-General.

2. Any State which has made a declaration or notification under article X may, at any time thereafter, by notification to the Secretary-General of the United Nations, declare that this Convention shall cease to extend to the territory concerned one year after the date of the receipt of the notification by the Secretary-General.

3. This Convention shall continue to be applicable to arbitral awards in respect of which recognition or enforcement proceedings have been instituted before the denunciation takes effect.

Article XIV

A Contracting State shall not be entitled to avail itself of the present Convention against other Contracting States except to the extent that it is itself bound to apply the Convention.

Article XV

The Secretary-General of the United Nations shall notify the States contemplated in article VIII of the following:

(a) Signature and ratifications in accordance with article VIII;
(b) Accessions in accordance with article IX;
(c) Declarations and notifications under articles I, X and XI;
(d) The date upon which this Convention enters into force in accordance with article XII;
(e) Denunciations and notifications in accordance with article XIII.

Article XVI

1. This Convention, of which the Chinese, English, French, Russian and Spanish texts shall be equally authentic, shall be deposited in the archives of the United Nations.

2. The Secretary-General of the United Nations shall transmit a certified copy of this Convention to the States contemplated in article VIII.

SCHEDULE 4

LAWS REPEALED OR AMENDED

Act No. and Year	Short title	Extent of repeal or amendment
Act No. 40 of 1977	Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards Act, 1977	The whole.
Act No. 99 of 1978	Protection of Businesses Act, 1978	**Amendment of the long title, section 1, section 1D and section 1G of Act 99 of 1978** The long title, section 1, section 1D and section 1G of the Protection of Businesses Act are hereby amended by the deletion of the expression **''arbitration award/awards''** where it occurs.
Act No. 1 of 1986	Carriage of Goods by Sea Act, 1986	The substitution for section 3 of Act 1 of 1986 of the following section: ''**Jurisdiction of courts** 3. (1) Notwithstanding any purported ouster of jurisdiction, exclusive jurisdiction clause or agreement to refer any dispute to arbitration, and notwithstanding the provisions of the Arbitration Act, 1965 (Act No. 42 of 1965), **[and of]** section 7(1)*(b)* of the Admiralty Jurisdiction Regulation Act, 1983 (Act No. 105 of 1983) and the International Arbitration Act, 2017, any person carrying on business in the Republic and the consignee under, or holder of, any bill of lading, waybill or like document for the carriage of goods to a destination in the Republic or to any port in the Republic, whether for final discharge or for discharge or for discharge for further carriage, may bring any action relating to the carriage of the said goods or any such bill of lading, waybill or document in a competent court in the Republic. (2) The provisions of subsection (1) of this section shall not apply to arbitration proceedings to be held in the Republic which are subject to the provisions of the **[Arbitration Act, 1965]** arbitration laws of the Republic.''.

SECTION 2

AFSA INTERNATIONAL ARBITRATION RULES

AFSA

The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

BACK TO INDEX

AFSA International Arbitration Rules

Table of Contents

ARTICLE 1: AFSA 1
ARTICLE 2: The Court 1
ARTICLE 3: Request for Arbitration 1
ARTICLE 4: Answer to the Request and Any Counterclaim 2
ARTICLE 5: Written Communications and Calculation of Time Limits 3
ARTICLE 6: Nomination, Confirmation and Appointment of Arbitrators 4
ARTICLE 7: Appointment of Sole Arbitrator 4
ARTICLE 8: Appointment of Three Arbitrators 4
ARTICLE 9: Arbitrator Appointments in Cases Involving Three or More Parties 5
ARTICLE 10: Expedited Procedure 5
ARTICLE 11: Emergency Arbitrator 6
ARTICLE 12: Early Dismissal 7
ARTICLE 13: Challenge or Removal of Arbitrators 7
ARTICLE 14: Replacement of an Arbitrator 8
ARTICLE 15: Arbitral Tribunal's Powers and Conduct of the Arbitral Proceedings 8
ARTICLE 16: Administrative Secretary 9
ARTICLE 17: Written Statements 10
ARTICLE 18: Seat of Arbitration 10
ARTICLE 19: Applicable Law 11
ARTICLE 20: Language of Arbitration 11
ARTICLE 21: Hearings 11
ARTICLE 22: Fact and Expert Witnesses 11
ARTICLE 23: Tribunal Experts 12
ARTICLE 24: Interim Measures 12
ARTICLE 25: Security for Costs 13
ARTICLE 26: Party Representatives 13
ARTICLE 27: Third-Party Funding 14
ARTICLE 28: Multiple Contracts 14
ARTICLE 29: Joinder and Intervention 15
ARTICLE 30: Consolidation 16
ARTICLE 31: Jurisdiction and Authority 17
ARTICLE 32: Deposits 18
ARTICLE 33: Awards 19
ARTICLE 34: Correction and Interpretation of Awards and Additional Awards 19
ARTICLE 35: Arbitration Costs and Legal Costs 20
ARTICLE 36: Confidentiality and Publication of Award 20
ARTICLE 37: Limitation of Liability 21
ARTICLE 38: General Provisions 21
ANNEX 1: The Constitution of the AFSA International Court 21
ANNEX 2: General Guidelines for Party Representatives 24
ANNEX 3: Schedule of Costs 24

PREAMBLE

Where the parties have agreed in whatsoever manner for arbitration under the Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa ("AFSA") Rules, or for arbitration administered by AFSA, they shall be taken to have agreed that any arbitration between them shall be conducted in accordance with the AFSA International Arbitration Rules in effect on the date upon which the arbitration commences (the "Commencement Date"), unless the parties have specifically chosen the AFSA Commercial Rules or AFSA determines that the dispute is a domestic one. These AFSA International Arbitration Rules comprise this Preamble, the Articles, together with the Annexes to the AFSA International Arbitration Rules and the Schedule of Costs (collectively, the "Rules").

The present Rules shall come into force on 1 June 2021 (the "Effective Date").

ARTICLE 1: AFSA

AFSA is the body responsible for the administration of disputes in accordance with the Rules, and other procedures or rules agreed upon by the parties. AFSA is composed of an AFSA International Board (the "Board"), an AFSA International Court (the "Court") and an AFSA International Secretariat (the "Secretariat") led by its Secretary-General (the "Secretary-General"). Detailed provisions regarding the Board, Court and Secretariat are set out in Annex 1.

ARTICLE 2: The Court

1. The Court does not itself decide the merits of disputes submitted to AFSA under the Rules. It supervises the administration of the resolution of disputes by arbitral tribunals and performs its functions in accordance with the Rules.
2. The functions of the Court under the Rules shall be performed in its name by either (i) the President of the Court; or (ii) any of its Vice-Presidents; or (iii) by a division of three or more members of the Court appointed by its President.
3. The Court is assisted in its work by the Secretariat. All communications in the arbitration to the Court shall be addressed to the Secretary-General.
4. The decisions of the Court are confidential and need not contain any reasons.
5. The decisions of the Court shall be final and binding, unless otherwise directed by the Court. To the extent permitted by any applicable law, the parties shall be taken to have waived any right of appeal or review in respect of any decision of the Court to any state court or other legal authority. If such appeal or review takes place due to mandatory provisions of any applicable law or otherwise, the Court may determine whether or not the arbitration should continue, notwithstanding such appeal or review.

ARTICLE 3: Request for Arbitration

1. Any party wishing to commence an arbitration under the Rules (the "Claimant") shall deliver to the Secretariat a written request for arbitration (the "Request"), containing or accompanied by:
   (a) the full name, description and contact details (including postal address, email address, and telephone number) of the Claimant for the purpose of receiving delivery of all documentation in the arbitration; and the same particulars of the Claimant's authorised representatives (if any) and of all other parties to the arbitration (to the extent possible);

(b) a copy of the arbitration agreement(s) invoked by the Claimant to support its claim, together with a copy of any documentation in which those terms are contained and to which the Claimant's claim relates;

(c) a statement summarising the nature and circumstances of the dispute giving rise to the arbitration, its estimated monetary value, the transaction(s) at issue and the reliefs sought by the Claimant against any other party to the arbitration (each such other party being here separately described as a "Respondent");

(d) a statement of any procedural matters for the arbitration (such as the seat of arbitration, the language(s) of the arbitration, the number of arbitrators, their qualifications and identities) upon which the parties have already agreed in writing or in respect of which the Claimant makes any proposal under the arbitration agreement;

(e) the full name, postal address, email address, and telephone number of the arbitrator nominated by the Claimant (if applicable); and

(f) confirmation that the registration fee prescribed in the Schedule of Costs has been or is being paid to AFSA.

2. The Request (including all accompanying documents) may be submitted to the Secretariat in electronic form.

3. The date of receipt by the Secretariat of the Request shall be treated as the Commencement Date for all purposes, subject to AFSA's actual receipt of the registration fee. Without actual receipt of such payment, the Request shall be treated by the Secretariat as not having been delivered and the arbitration as not having been commenced.

4. The Claimant shall, at the same time as it delivers the Request to the Secretariat, deliver a copy of the Request to the other parties to the arbitration, and shall notify the Secretariat that it has been or is being delivered to the other parties to the arbitration by one or more means justified specifically in such notification, to be supported then or as soon as possible thereafter by documentary proof satisfactory to the Secretariat of actual delivery or, if actual delivery is demonstrated to be impossible to the Secretariat's satisfaction, sufficient information as to any other effective form of service.

ARTICLE 4: Answer to the Request and Any Counterclaim

1. Within 30 days from the receipt of the Request, the Respondent shall deliver to the Secretariat a written answer to the Request (the "Answer"), containing or accompanied by:

(a) the Respondent's full name and all contact details (including postal address, email address, and telephone number) for the purpose of receiving delivery of all documentation in the arbitration and the same particulars of its authorised representatives (if any);

(b) confirmation or denial of all or part of the claim advanced by the Claimant in the Request, including any jurisdiction objections;

(c) insofar as not already covered in the Request, a statement summarising the nature and circumstances of the dispute, its estimated monetary amount or value, the transaction(s) at issue and the defence advanced by the Respondent;

(d) a statement summarising the nature and circumstances of any counterclaim against any Claimant or any cross-claim against any other Respondent (both referred to as "Counterclaim"), specifying the relief sought and, where possible, an initial quantification of the amount of the Counterclaim;

(e) a response to any procedural matters contained in the Request under Article 3(1)(d), including the Respondent's own statement relating to the seat of arbitration, the language(s) of the arbitration, the number of arbitrators, their qualifications and identities and any other procedural matter upon which the parties have already agreed in writing or in respect of which the Respondent makes any proposal under the arbitration agreement; and

(f) the full name, postal address, email address, and telephone number of the arbitrator nominated by the Respondent (if applicable).

2. The Respondent shall, at the same time as it delivers the Answer to the Secretariat, send a copy of the Answer to the other parties to the arbitration, and shall notify the Secretariat that it has done so, specifying the mode of service employed and the date of service.

3. The Answer (including all accompanying documents) may be submitted to the Secretariat in electronic form.

4. The Claimant shall submit an answer to any Counterclaim within 30 days from the date of receipt of the Counterclaim. The provisions of this Article apply by analogy to the answer to the Counterclaim.

ARTICLE 5: Written Communications and Calculation of Time Limits

1. Any written communication by the Court, the Secretariat or any party may be delivered by any appropriate means that provides a record of its delivery or transmission, including by hand or by registered postal or courier service, or by facsimile, email, or in any other manner ordered by the arbitral tribunal (the "Arbitral Tribunal"). Electronic means of delivery or transmission are preferred.

2. After the constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal, all communications shall take place directly between the Arbitral Tribunal and the parties, with the Secretariat copied on all such communications.

3. Unless otherwise ordered by the Arbitral Tribunal, any written communication pursuant to the Rules shall be deemed to be received if:

   (a) communicated to the address, facsimile number and/or email address communicated by the addressee or its representative in the arbitration; or

   (b) in the absence of (a), communicated to the address, facsimile number and/or email address specified in any applicable agreement between the parties or regularly used in the parties' previous dealings; or

   (c) in the absence of (a) and (b), communicated to any address, facsimile number and/or email address which the addressee holds out to the public at the time of such communication; or

   (d) in the absence of (a)–(c), communicated to any last known address, facsimile number and/or email address of the addressee.

4. A written communication shall be deemed received on the earliest day it is delivered in accordance with Article 5(1). Such time shall be determined with reference to the recipient's time zone.

5. Where a written communication is being communicated to more than one party, or more than one arbitrator, such written communication shall be deemed received when it is communicated pursuant to Article 5(1) to the last intended recipient.

6. Unless otherwise ordered by the Arbitral Tribunal, for the purpose of calculating a period of time, such period shall begin to run on the day following the day when a written communication is received. If this day is an official holiday or a non-business day at the place of the party against whom the calculation of time applies, the period of time shall commence on the first following business day. If the last day of such period is an official holiday or a non-business day at the place of receipt, the period shall be extended until the first business day which follows. Official holidays or non-business days occurring during the running of the period of time shall be included in calculating that time period.

7. Except as provided in the Rules, the Secretariat may amend the period of time provided for in the Rules, as well as any time limits it has set, irrespective of whether any such time limits have expired or not.

8. Prior to the constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal, unless the parties agree otherwise, no party or its representative shall deliberately initiate or attempt to initiate any unilateral contact relating to the arbitration with any arbitrator or candidate to be designated as arbitrator by a party, except to advise the

candidate of the general nature of the dispute or to obtain information about the candidate's qualifications, availability, impartiality or independence.

9. After the constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal, no party or its representative shall deliberately initiate or attempt to initiate any unilateral contact relating to the arbitration or the parties' dispute with any member of the Arbitral Tribunal.

ARTICLE 6: Nomination, Confirmation and Appointment of Arbitrators

1. A sole arbitrator shall be appointed under the Rules unless the parties have otherwise agreed in writing or it appears to the Court that the dispute is such as to warrant the appointment of more than one arbitrator.
2. In all cases, the arbitrators nominated by the parties, or by any third person including by the arbitrators already appointed, shall be subject to confirmation by the Secretary-General.
3. Arbitrators shall be and remain impartial and independent of the parties during the arbitration.
4. Before confirmation, each arbitrator shall provide to the Secretariat a signed statement of acceptance, availability, impartiality and independence. The arbitrator shall disclose in writing to the Secretariat any circumstances likely to give rise in the mind of any party to justifiable doubts as to the arbitrator's impartiality or independence. The Secretariat will share any such disclosure with the parties and any other members of the Arbitral Tribunal.
5. After confirmation, an arbitrator shall immediately disclose in writing to the Secretariat, the parties and any other members of the Arbitral Tribunal any circumstances likely to give rise in the mind of any party to any justifiable doubts as to the arbitrator's impartiality or independence that may arise or come to his or her notice during the arbitration.
6. The Arbitral Tribunal shall be constituted as soon as practicable after the Commencement Date.
7. The Secretary-General in confirming, or the Court in appointing, arbitrators shall take into account any agreement of the parties regarding the constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal. They may also take into account the nature and circumstances of the dispute, the applicable law, the seat and language of the arbitration and any other relevant circumstances.
8. Where the parties are of different nationalities, a sole arbitrator or the presiding arbitrator shall not have the same nationality as any party unless the parties agree otherwise.
9. Members of the Court are not eligible to be appointed by the Court as arbitrators, although they may be nominated as arbitrators by the parties, or selected as president of the Arbitral Tribunal by the parties or other two arbitrators.

ARTICLE 7: Appointment of Sole Arbitrator

Where the dispute shall be resolved by a sole arbitrator, the parties may, by agreement, nominate a sole arbitrator for confirmation pursuant to Article 6(2). If the parties fail to nominate a sole arbitrator within 30 days from Commencement Date, or any other time limit agreed by the parties or fixed by the Secretariat, the sole arbitrator shall be appointed by the Court.

ARTICLE 8: Appointment of Three Arbitrators

1. Where the dispute shall be resolved by three arbitrators, each party shall nominate in the Request and the Answer, respectively, one arbitrator for confirmation pursuant to Article 6(2). If a party fails to nominate an arbitrator, the appointment shall be made by the Court.

2. The third arbitrator, who will act as president of the Arbitral Tribunal, shall be appointed by the Court, unless the parties have agreed upon another procedure for such appointment, in which case the nomination will be subject to confirmation pursuant to Article 6(2). Should such procedure not result in a nomination within 30 days from the nomination or appointment of the co-arbitrators or any other time limit agreed by the parties or fixed by the Secretariat, the third arbitrator shall be appointed by the Court.

ARTICLE 9: Arbitrator Appointments in Cases Involving Three or More Parties

1. Where each party may nominate an arbitrator and there are multiple Claimants or multiple Respondents, the Claimants, jointly, and the Respondents, jointly, shall nominate an arbitrator for confirmation by the Secretary-General.
2. In the absence of such a joint nomination, the Court may appoint each member of the Arbitral Tribunal and designate one of them to act as presiding arbitrator.

ARTICLE 10: Expedited Procedure

1. Prior to the constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal, a party may apply to the Secretariat for the arbitral proceedings to be conducted in accordance with this Article, where:
   (a) the amount in dispute representing the aggregate of any claim, Counterclaim (or set-off defence) does not exceed the equivalent amount of 500.000 USD; or
   (b) the parties so agree.
2. The party applying for the arbitral proceedings to be conducted in accordance with the Expedited Procedure under this Article shall, at the same time as it files an application for the arbitral proceedings to be conducted in accordance with the Expedited Procedure with the Secretariat, send a copy of the application to the other party and shall notify the Secretariat that it has done so, specifying the mode of service employed and the date of service.
3. Where a party has filed an application with the Secretariat under this Article, and where the Court, after considering the views of the parties, grants the application, the arbitral proceeding shall be conducted in accordance with the Expedited Procedure as follows:
   (a) the Secretariat may abbreviate any time limits under the Rules;
   (b) the Court may, notwithstanding any contrary provision of the arbitration agreement, appoint a sole arbitrator;
   (c) the Arbitral Tribunal shall decide on the basis of documentary evidence only, unless it decides that it is appropriate to hold one or more hearings;
   (d) the final award shall be communicated within six months from the date when the Secretariat transmitted the case file to the Arbitral Tribunal, unless in exceptional circumstances, the Secretariat extends the time for making such award;
   (e) the Arbitral Tribunal may state the reasons upon which the award is based in summary form, unless the parties have agreed that no reasons are to be given.
4. By agreeing to arbitration under the Rules, the parties agree that this Article 11 shall take precedence over any contrary terms of the arbitration agreement.
5. Upon application by a party, and after giving the parties the opportunity to be heard, the Arbitral Tribunal may, having regard to any further information as may subsequently become available, and in consultation with the Secretariat, order that the arbitral proceedings shall no longer be conducted in accordance with the Expedited Procedure. Where the Arbitral Tribunal decides to grant an application under this Article, the arbitration shall continue to be conducted by the Arbitral Tribunal.

ARTICLE 11: Emergency Arbitrator

1. A party that needs urgent interim or conservatory measures that cannot await the constitution of an Arbitral Tribunal ("Emergency Measures") may make an application for such measures before, concurrent with, or following the filing of a Request, but prior to the constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal, to the Secretariat for the appointment of an arbitrator to conduct emergency proceedings pending the constitution or expedited constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal (the "Emergency Arbitrator").
2. The provisions of the Rules applicable to members of the Arbitral Tribunals shall apply *mutatis mutandis* to Emergency Arbitrators, unless provided otherwise.
3. The application for an Emergency Arbitrator under Article 11(1) shall be made to the Secretariat in writing, communicated to all other parties to the arbitration in accordance with any of the means specified in Article 5(1) of the Rules. The application shall set out:
   (a) the names and (in so far as known) the addresses and email addresses of the parties and of their representatives;
   (b) the specific grounds for requiring the appointment of an Emergency Arbitrator;
   (c) the specific claim, with reasons, for Emergency Measures;
   (d) any relevant agreement and the arbitration agreement upon which the application is made; and
   (e) confirmation that copies of the application and any supporting materials included with it have been or are being communicated simultaneously to all other parties to the arbitration and the means of doing so.
4. The application under Article 11(1) shall be accompanied by payment of the non-refundable administration fees and the requisite deposits under the Rules towards the Emergency Arbitrator's fees and expenses for proceedings pursuant to the Schedule of Costs. After the appointment of the Emergency Arbitrator, the Secretariat may increase in exceptional circumstances the amount of deposits requested from the party making the application. If the additional deposits are not paid within the time limit set by the Secretariat, the application shall be considered withdrawn.
5. If the parties have agreed on a seat of arbitration, such seat shall be the seat of the emergency proceedings. Failing such an agreement, the seat of the emergency proceedings before the Emergency Arbitrator shall be Johannesburg (South Africa), without prejudice to the Arbitral Tribunal's determination of the seat of the arbitration under Article 18.
6. If the parties have agreed on the language of the arbitration, such language shall be the language of the emergency proceedings before the Emergency Arbitrator. Failing such an agreement, the language of the emergency proceedings before the Emergency Arbitrator shall be English, without prejudice to the Arbitral Tribunal's determination of the language of the arbitration under Article 20.
7. If the Secretary General accepts the application under Article 11(1), the Court shall seek to appoint an Emergency Arbitrator within 48 hours of receipt by the Secretariat of such Application and payment of the administration fee and deposits. Article 7 shall apply to such appointment. For the avoidance of doubt, the Emergency Arbitrator shall comply with the requirements under Articles 6, 6(3) and (4).
8. An Emergency Arbitrator may not act as an arbitrator in any future arbitration relating to the dispute, unless otherwise agreed by the parties.
9. The Emergency Arbitrator may conduct the emergency proceedings in any manner determined by the Emergency Arbitrator to be appropriate.
10. The Emergency Arbitrator shall establish a procedural timetable for the emergency proceedings within two days from the transmission of the file to the Emergency Arbitrator.
11. The Emergency Arbitrator shall decide the claim for Emergency Measures as soon as possible, but no later than 14 days following the Emergency Arbitrator's appointment. This deadline may only be extended by the Court in exceptional circumstances or by the written agreement of all parties to the emergency proceedings.

12. The Emergency Arbitrator may make any decision or order (the "Emergency Decision") which the Arbitral Tribunal could make under the arbitration agreement. The Emergency Decision shall be made in writing with reasons in summary form.
13. The Emergency Arbitrator shall communicate the Emergency Decision to the parties in writing with copy to the Secretariat.
14. The costs associated with any Application pursuant to this Article may be initially apportioned by the Emergency Arbitrator, subject to the power of the Arbitral Tribunal to determine finally the apportionment of such costs.
15. Any Emergency Decision may be confirmed, varied, discharged or revoked, in whole or in part, by order or award made by the Arbitral Tribunal, once constituted, upon application by any party or upon its own initiative.
16. This Article shall not prejudice any party's right to apply for any interim or conservatory measures from a competent authority at any time.
17. The emergency proceedings before the Emergency Arbitrator shall be terminated if a Request has not been submitted to the Secretariat before or within seven days of the Secretariat's receipt of the Application, unless the Emergency Arbitrator extends this time limit.
18. This Article shall not apply if either (i) the parties have concluded their arbitration agreement before the Effective Date and the parties have not agreed in writing to "opt in" to this Article; or (ii) the parties have agreed in writing at any time to "'opt out"' of this Article.

ARTICLE 12: Early Dismissal

1. A party may apply to the Arbitral Tribunal for the early dismissal of a claim or defence on the basis that:
   (a) a claim or defence is manifestly without legal merit; or
   (b) a claim or defence is manifestly outside the jurisdiction of the Arbitral Tribunal.
2. An application for the early dismissal of a claim or defence under Article 12(1) shall be made within 30 days of the constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal. Such application shall state in detail the facts and legal basis supporting the application.
3. The Arbitral Tribunal has discretion to decide whether to allow the application for the early dismissal of a claim or defence under Article 12(1) to proceed. If the application is allowed to proceed, the Tribunal shall, after giving the parties the opportunity to be heard, decide whether to grant, in whole or in part, the application for early dismissal under Article 12(1).
4. If the application is granted under Article 12(1), the Arbitral Tribunal shall make an order or award on the application, stating reasons, which may be in summary form. The order or award shall be made in an efficient and expeditious manner having regard of the circumstances of the case.

ARTICLE 13: Challenge or Removal of Arbitrators

1. Any arbitrator may be challenged within 15 days from the date a party becomes aware of circumstances giving rise to justifiable doubts as to the arbitrator's impartiality or independence, or if the arbitrator does not possess qualifications expressly agreed by the parties. A party may challenge the arbitrator nominated by it or in whose appointment it has participated only for reasons of which it becomes aware after the confirmation or appointment has been made.
2. A party that intends to challenge an arbitrator shall deliver a written statement of the reasons for its challenge to the Secretariat, the arbitrator being challenged, the other members of the Arbitral Tribunal and the other parties.

3. Unless the arbitrator being challenged withdraws from office or the other party agrees to the challenge within 15 days from receiving the written statement, the Court shall decide on the challenge. The Secretariat may request comments on the challenge from the parties, the arbitrator being challenged and the other members of the Arbitral Tribunal (or if the Arbitral Tribunal has not yet been constituted, any appointed arbitrator), and set a schedule for such comments to be made.
4. While such a challenge is pending, the Arbitral Tribunal, including the challenged arbitrator, may continue the arbitral proceedings.
5. If an arbitrator withdraws from office or a party agrees to the challenge under Article 13(1), no acceptance of the validity of any ground referred to in Article 13(1) shall be implied.
6. If the challenge is upheld, the Court shall remove the arbitrator by revoking his or her appointment.
7. The Court may, at its own initiative and in its discretion, remove an arbitrator who refuses or fails to act or to perform his or her functions in accordance with the Rules or if the arbitrator becomes *de jure* or *de facto* unable to perform his or her functions or for other reasons fails to act without undue delay. The Court shall consult the parties and the members of the Arbitral Tribunal, including the arbitrator to be removed prior to the removal of an arbitrator under this Article.
8. The Court shall determine the amount of fees and expenses (if any) to be paid for the former arbitrator's services, as it may consider appropriate in the circumstances.

ARTICLE 14: Replacement of an Arbitrator

1. In the event of the death, resignation, withdrawal or removal of an arbitrator during the course of the arbitration, a replacement arbitrator shall be appointed pursuant to the provisions of the Rules that were applicable to the appointment of the arbitrator being replaced.
2. If an arbitrator is replaced, the arbitration shall resume at the stage where the replaced arbitrator ceased to perform his or her functions, unless the Arbitral Tribunal decides otherwise.
3. Instead of replacing an arbitrator pursuant to Article 14(1), the Court may decide, in exceptional circumstances, when it considers it appropriate, that the remaining arbitrators shall continue the arbitration.

ARTICLE 15: Arbitral Tribunal's Powers and Conduct of the Arbitral Proceedings

1. The Arbitral Tribunal may conduct the arbitral proceedings in such manner as it considers appropriate.
2. It shall at all times during the arbitration be under a general duty to:
   (a) act fairly and impartially as between all parties, giving each a reasonable opportunity of putting its case and dealing with that of its opponent(s); and
   (b) adopt procedures suitable for the conduct the arbitration in an expeditious and cost-effective manner, having regard to the complexity of the issues and the amount in dispute.
3. As soon as practicable after the file has been transmitted to the Arbitral Tribunal, the parties and the Arbitral Tribunal shall hold a case management conference to establish any additional procedural rules and a procedural timetable.
4. Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the presiding arbitrator may make procedural rulings alone.
5. The Arbitral Tribunal's powers shall include, among other things, upon the application of any party or upon its own initiative, but in either case only after giving the parties a reasonable opportunity to state their views:

(a) to allow a party to supplement, modify or amend any claim, defence, Counterclaim, defence to Counterclaim and reply, including a Request, Answer and any other written statement, submitted by such party;

(b) to abridge or extend (even where the period of time has expired) any period of time prescribed by the Rules, any agreement of the parties or any order made by the Arbitral Tribunal;

(c) to conduct such enquiries as may appear to the Arbitral Tribunal to be necessary or expedient, including whether and to what extent the Arbitral Tribunal should itself take the initiative in identifying relevant issues and ascertaining relevant facts and the law(s) or rules of law applicable to the arbitration agreement, the arbitration and the merits of the parties' dispute;

(d) to order any party to make any documents, goods, samples, property, site or thing under its control available for inspection examination or analysis by the Arbitral Tribunal, any other party, any expert to such party and any expert to the Arbitral Tribunal;

(e) to order any party to produce to the Arbitral Tribunal and to other parties documents or copies of documents in their possession, custody or power which the Arbitral Tribunal decides to be relevant;

(f) to decide as to the admissibility, relevance or weight of any material tendered by a party on any issue of fact or expert opinion; and to decide the time, manner and form in which such material should be exchanged between the parties and presented to the Arbitral Tribunal;

(g) to order compliance with any legal obligation, payment of compensation for breach of any legal obligation and specific performance of any agreement (including any arbitration agreement or any contract relating to land); and

(h) to order the discontinuance of the arbitration if it appears to the Arbitral Tribunal that the arbitration has been abandoned by the parties or all claims and any Counterclaim withdrawn by the parties. The Arbitral Tribunal shall fix a reasonable notice period for the discontinuance during which the parties may agree or object to the discontinuance.

ARTICLE 16: Administrative Secretary

1. The Arbitral Tribunal may, after consulting with the parties and at any time during an arbitration, appoint an administrative secretary (the "Administrative Secretary").
2. The Administrative Secretary shall act only upon the Arbitral Tribunal's instructions and under its strict and continuous supervision. The Arbitral Tribunal shall, at all times, be responsible for the Administrative Secretary's conduct during the arbitration. The tasks entrusted to an Administrative Secretary shall in no circumstances release the Arbitral Tribunal from its duties, and the delegation of the Arbitral Tribunal's decision-making functions is prohibited.
3. The Administrative Secretary may perform organisational and administrative tasks including:
   (a) transmitting documents and communications on behalf of the Arbitral Tribunal;
   (b) organising and maintaining the Arbitral Tribunal's file and locating documents;
   (c) organising hearings and meetings and liaising with the parties in that respect;
   (d) drafting correspondence to the parties and sending it on behalf of the Arbitral Tribunal;
   (e) preparing for the Arbitral Tribunal's review drafts of procedural orders as well as factual portions of an award, such as the summary of the proceedings, the chronology of facts, and the summary of the parties' positions;
   (f) attending hearings, meetings and deliberations; taking notes or minutes or keeping time;
   (g) conducting legal or similar research; and
   (h) proof-reading and checking citations, dates and cross-references in procedural orders or awards.
4. The Administrative Secretary shall remain at all times impartial and independent of the parties and shall disclose any circumstances likely to give rise to justifiable doubts as to his or her impartiality or independence prior to his or her appointment. The Administrative Secretary, once appointed and

throughout the arbitration, shall disclose without delay any such circumstances which subsequently arise, or of which it subsequently becomes aware, to the parties.

5. The Arbitral Tribunal may seek reimbursement from the parties of the Administrative Secretary's justified reasonable personal disbursements for hearings and meetings. The Administrative Secretary shall not charge any additional fees.

ARTICLE 17: Written Statements

1. Unless the Arbitral Tribunal determines otherwise, the written submissions of the arbitration and its procedural timetable shall be as set out in this Article.
2. Within a time limit to be determined by the Arbitral Tribunal, the Claimant shall deliver to the Arbitral Tribunal and all other parties its written Statement of Case setting out in sufficient detail the relevant facts and legal submissions on which it relies, together with the relief claimed against all other parties, and all supporting documents on which it relies.
3. Within a time limit to be determined by the Arbitral Tribunal, the Respondent shall deliver to the Tribunal and all other its written Statement of Defence and (if applicable) Statement of Counterclaim setting out in sufficient detail the relevant facts and legal submissions on which it relies, together with the relief claimed against all other parties, and all supporting documents on which it relies.
4. Where there is any Counterclaim made, within a time limit to be determined by the Arbitral Tribunal, the Claimant or the Respondent against which the Counterclaim is made shall deliver to the Arbitral Tribunal and all other parties a written Statement of Defence to Counterclaim in the same manner required for a Statement of Defence, and all supporting documents on which it relies.
5. The Arbitral Tribunal shall decide which further written submissions shall be required from the parties or may be presented by them. The Arbitral Tribunal shall fix the periods of time for communicating such written submissions.
6. The Arbitral Tribunal may provide any additional directions it considers appropriate regarding the parties' written submissions or the parties' submission of their evidence (including witness statements and expert reports).
7. If the Respondent fails to submit a Statement of Defence or the Claimant a Statement of Defence to Counterclaim, or if at any time any party fails to avail itself of the opportunity to present its written case in the manner required under this Article or otherwise by order of the Arbitral Tribunal, the Arbitral Tribunal may nevertheless proceed with the arbitration and make one or more awards.
8. If the Claimant fails within the time specified to submit its Statement of Case, the Arbitral Tribunal may issue an order for the termination of the arbitral proceedings or give such other directions as may be appropriate.

ARTICLE 18: Seat of Arbitration

1. The parties may agree in writing the seat of their arbitration.
2. In default of any such agreement, the seat of the arbitration shall be determined by the Court, having regard to all the circumstances of the case.
3. After consultation with the parties, the Arbitral Tribunal may hold any hearing at any convenient geographical place and hold its deliberations at any geographical place of its own choice; and if such place(s) should be elsewhere than the seat of the arbitration, the arbitration shall nonetheless be treated for all purposes as an arbitration conducted at the arbitral seat and any order or award as having been made at that seat.

ARTICLE 19: Applicable Law

1. The parties shall be free to agree upon the rules of law to be applied by the Arbitral Tribunal to the merits of the dispute. In the absence of any such agreement, the Arbitral Tribunal shall apply the rules of law which it determines to be appropriate. The Arbitral Tribunal shall decide as amiable compositeur or *ex aequo et bono* only if the parties have authorised it to do so in writing.
2. The Arbitral Tribunal shall decide in accordance with the terms of the contract, if any, and may take into account relevant trade usages.

ARTICLE 20: Language of Arbitration

Unless the parties agree otherwise, English shall be the language of the arbitration.

ARTICLE 21: Hearings

1. The Arbitral Tribunal shall proceed within as short a time as possible to establish the facts of the case by all appropriate means.
2. After studying the written submissions of the parties and all documents relied upon, the Arbitral Tribunal shall hold a hearing, if any of them so requests or, failing such a request, it may of its own motion decide to schedule a hearing.
3. The Arbitral Tribunal shall organise the conduct of any hearing in advance, in consultation with the parties, as it sees fit. The Arbitral Tribunal shall have the fullest authority under the arbitration agreement to establish the conduct of a hearing, including its date, form, content, procedure, time-limits and geographical place.
4. The Arbitral Tribunal shall give to the parties reasonable notice in writing of any hearing, including the relevant date, time and place.
5. At any time during the proceedings, the Arbitral Tribunal may summon any party to provide additional evidence.
6. The hearing may take place in person or by any other means that the Arbitral Tribunal considers appropriate considering all relevant circumstances, including by video or telephone conference, or a combination thereof. The Arbitral Tribunal may make directions for the interpretation of oral statements made at a hearing and for a record of the hearing if it deems that either is necessary in the circumstances of the case.
7. To the extent permitted by any applicable law, all hearings shall be held in private, unless the parties agree otherwise in writing.

ARTICLE 22: Fact and Expert Witnesses

1. Unless decided otherwise by the Arbitral Tribunal, a party may present evidence by fact and/or expert witnesses.
2. Before any hearing, the Arbitral Tribunal may order any party to give written notice of the identity of each witness that party wishes to call, as well as the subject-matter of that witness's testimony, its content and its relevance to the issues in the arbitration.
3. Subject to any order otherwise by the Arbitral Tribunal, the testimony of a witness may be presented by a party in written form as a signed statement (for fact witnesses) or signed report (for expert witnesses).

4. The Arbitral Tribunal may decide the time, manner and form in which these written materials shall be exchanged between the parties and presented to the Arbitral Tribunal; and it may allow, refuse or limit the written and oral testimony of witnesses.
5. The Arbitral Tribunal and any party may request that a witness, on whose written testimony another party relies, should attend for oral questioning at a hearing before the Arbitral Tribunal. If the Arbitral Tribunal orders a party to secure the attendance of that witness and the witness refuses or fails to attend the hearing without good cause, the Arbitral Tribunal may place such weight on the written testimony or exclude all or any part thereof altogether as it considers appropriate in the circumstances.
6. Any witness who gives oral testimony at a hearing before the Arbitral Tribunal may be questioned by each of the parties under the control of the Arbitral Tribunal. The Arbitral Tribunal may put questions at any stage of such testimony.

ARTICLE 23: Tribunal Experts

1. Notwithstanding the provision on expert witnesses in Article 22, the Arbitral Tribunal, after consultation with the parties, may appoint one or more experts to report to it in writing on specific issues in the arbitration, as identified by the Arbitral Tribunal and communicated to the parties.
2. Any such expert shall submit a copy of his or her qualifications to the Arbitral Tribunal, shall be and remain impartial and independent of the parties, and shall sign a declaration to that effect, deliver it to the Arbitral Tribunal and copy all parties.
3. The Arbitral Tribunal may order any party at any time to give to such expert any relevant information or to provide access to any relevant documents, goods, samples, property, site or thing for inspection under that party's control on such terms as the Arbitral Tribunal thinks appropriate in the circumstances.
4. If any party so requests or the Arbitral Tribunal considers it necessary, the Arbitral Tribunal may order the expert, after delivery of the expert's written report, to participate in a hearing at which the parties shall have a reasonable opportunity to question the expert on the report and to present witnesses to testify on relevant issues arising from the report.
5. The fees and expenses of any expert appointed by the Arbitral Tribunal under this Article shall be borne by the parties, subject to the final allocation by the Arbitral Tribunal.

ARTICLE 24: Interim Measures

1. Unless otherwise agreed by the parties and to the extent permitted by any applicable law, the Arbitral Tribunal may, at the request of any party, order interim measures.
2. An interim measure is any temporary measure by which, at any time prior to the issuance of the award by which the dispute is finally decided, the Arbitral Tribunal orders a party, for example and without limitation, to:
   (a) maintain or restore the status quo pending determination of the dispute;
   (b) take action that would prevent, or refrain from taking action that is likely to cause, (i) current or imminent harm or (ii) prejudice to the arbitral process itself;
   (c) provide a means of preserving assets out of which a subsequent award may be satisfied; or
   (d) preserve evidence that may be relevant and material to the resolution of the dispute.
3. The Arbitral Tribunal may order such measures in the form of an interim order or award.
4. The Arbitral Tribunal may require the party requesting an interim measure to provide appropriate security in connection with the measure.

5. The Arbitral Tribunal may require any party to promptly disclose any material change in the circumstances on the basis of which the interim measure was requested or granted.
6. The Arbitral Tribunal may modify, suspend or terminate an interim measure it has granted, upon application of any party or, in exceptional circumstances and upon prior notice to the parties, on the Arbitral Tribunal's own initiative.
7. The party requesting an interim measure may be liable for any costs and damages caused by the measure to any party if the Arbitral Tribunal later determines that, in the circumstances then prevailing, the measure should not have been granted. The Arbitral Tribunal may award such costs and damages at any point during the proceedings.
8. The Arbitral Tribunal may in its discretion order costs associated with the application for interim or conservatory measures in any interim order or award, or in the final award.
9. The power of the Arbitral Tribunal under Article 24(1) shall not prejudice any party's right to apply to any competent judicial authority for interim or conservatory measures prior to the constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal, and in appropriate circumstances, after the constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal.
10. A request for interim measures addressed by any party to a judicial authority shall not be deemed incompatible with the agreement to arbitrate, or as a waiver of that agreement.

ARTICLE 25: Security for Costs

1. The Arbitral Tribunal may order security for costs by way of deposit or bank guarantee or in any other manner and upon such terms as the Arbitral Tribunal considers appropriate in the circumstances.
2. In determining whether to order security for costs, the Arbitral Tribunal may have regard to:
   (a) the prospects of success of the claims, Counterclaims and defences;
   (b) the ability of the Claimant or of the party bringing the Counterclaim to comply with an adverse costs award and the availability of assets for enforcement of an adverse costs award;
   (c) whether it is appropriate in all the circumstances of the case to order one party to provide security; and
   (d) any other relevant circumstances.
3. If a party fails to comply with an order to provide security, the Arbitral Tribunal may stay or dismiss the party's claims in whole or in part.
4. Any decision to stay or to dismiss a party's claims shall take the form of an order or an award.

ARTICLE 26: Party Representatives

1. Any party may be represented in the arbitration by one or more authorised representatives appearing by name before the Arbitral Tribunal (the "Party Representatives").
2. Prior to the constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal, the Secretariat may request from any party:
   (a) written proof of the authority granted by that party to any Party Representatives designated in its Request or Answer; and
   (b) written confirmation of the names and addresses of all such Party Representatives.
3. After the constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal, at any time, the Arbitral Tribunal may order any party to provide proof similar to the one under Article 26(2)(b) or confirmation in any form it considers appropriate. Any intended change or addition by a party to its Party Representatives shall be notified promptly in writing to all other parties, the Arbitral Tribunal and the Secretariat.

4. Each party shall ensure that all its Party Representatives have agreed to comply with the general guidelines contained in Annex 2 to the Rules (the "General Guidelines"), as a condition of such representation. In permitting any Party Representative so to appear, a party shall thereby represent that the Party Representatives have agreed to such compliance.
5. In the event of a complaint by one party against another's Party Representative or upon the Arbitral Tribunal's own initiative, the Arbitral Tribunal may decide, after consulting the parties and granting that Party Representative a reasonable opportunity to answer the complaint, whether or not the Party Representative has violated the General Guidelines. If such violation is found by the Arbitral Tribunal, the Arbitral Tribunal may order any measure it deems necessary.

ARTICLE 27: Third-Party Funding

1. For the purposes of this Article
   (a) "Third-Party Funder" refers to any natural or legal person who is not a party to the arbitration and is not a Party Representative, but who enters into an agreement either with a party, an affiliate of that party, or a Party Representative in order to provide material or financial support for all or part of the cost of the arbitration, where such support is provided through a donation, or grant, or in exchange for remuneration or reimbursement wholly or partially dependent on the outcome of the arbitration.
   (b) "Third-Party Funding Agreement" means an agreement by a party or potential party to the arbitration with a Third-Party Funder for the funding of the arbitration.
   (c) "Funded Party" refers to a party to the arbitration who enters into a Third-Party Funding Agreement;
2. If a Third-Party Funding Agreement is entered into, the Funded Party shall notify all other parties, the Arbitral Tribunal, and the Secretariat of:
   (a) the existence of a Third-Party Funding Agreement; and
   (b) the identity of the Third-Party Funder.
3. Notification of a Third-Party Funding Agreement must be made on or before the Commencement Date or, in respect of a Third-Party Funding Agreement made after the Commencement Date, the notification must be communicated as soon as practicable after the Third-Party Funding Agreement has been entered into." Any Funded Party shall promptly disclose any changes to the information referred to above that occur after the initial disclosure.

ARTICLE 28: Multiple Contracts

1. Where there are disputes arising out of or in connection with more than one contract, the Claimant may:
   (a) file a Request in respect of each arbitration agreement invoked and concurrently submit an application to consolidate the arbitrations pursuant to Article 30(1); or
   (b) file a single Request in respect of all the arbitration agreements invoked which shall include a statement identifying each Article and arbitration agreement invoked and a description of how the applicable criteria under Article 30(1) are satisfied, and such Request shall be deemed to be an application to consolidate all such arbitrations pursuant to Article 30(1).
2. Where the Claimant has filed two or more Requests pursuant to Article 28(1)(a), the Secretariat shall accept payment of a single filing fee under the Rules for all the arbitrations sought to be consolidated. Where the Court rejects the application for consolidation, in whole or in part, the Claimant shall be required to make payment of the requisite filing fee under the Rules in respect of each arbitration that has not been consolidated.
3. Where the Claimant has filed a single Request pursuant to Article 28(1)(b) and the Court rejects the application for consolidation, in whole or in part, the Claimant shall file a Request in respect of each

arbitration that has not been consolidated, although each such arbitration shall be deemed to have been commenced at the time the Claimant filed a single Request pursuant to Article 28(1)(b). The Claimant shall be required to make payment of the requisite filing fee under the Rules in respect of each arbitration that has not been consolidated.

ARTICLE 29: Joinder and Intervention

1. Prior to the constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal, a party or non-party to the arbitration may file an application with the Secretariat for one or more additional parties to be joined in an arbitration pending under the Rules as a Claimant or a Respondent, provided that any of the following criteria is satisfied:
   (a) all parties, including the additional party to be joined, have consented to the joinder of the additional party; or
   (b) the additional party to be joined is *prima facie* bound by the arbitration agreement upon which the pending arbitration is made.
2. An application under Article 29(1) shall include:
   (a) the case reference number of the pending arbitration;
   (b) the names, addresses, telephone numbers and email addresses, if known, of all parties, including the additional party to be joined, and their representatives, if any, and any arbitrators who have been nominated or appointed in the pending arbitration;
   (c) whether the additional party is to be joined as a Claimant or a Respondent;
   (d) if the application is being made under Article 29(1)(b), a copy of the arbitration agreement(s) invoked by the Claimant to support its claim, together with a copy of any documentation in which those terms are contained and to which the Claimant's claim relates;
   (e) if the application is being made under Article 29(1)(a), identification of the relevant agreement and, where possible, a copy of such agreement; and
   (f) a brief statement of the facts and legal basis supporting the application.
3. The application for joinder is deemed to be complete when all the requirements of Article 29(2) are fulfilled or when the Secretariat determines that there has been substantial compliance with such requirements. The Secretariat shall notify all parties, including the additional party to be joined, when the application for joinder is complete.
4. The party or non-party applying for joinder under Article 29(1) shall, at the same time as it files an application for joinder with the Secretariat, send a copy of the application to all parties, including the additional party to be joined, and shall notify the Secretariat that it has done so, specifying the mode of service employed and the date of service.
5. The Court shall, after giving all parties, including the additional party to be joined, the opportunity to be heard, and having regard to the circumstances of the case, decide whether to grant, in whole or in part, any application for joinder under Article 29(1). The Court's decision to grant an application for joinder under this Article is without prejudice to the Arbitral Tribunal's power to subsequently decide any question as to its jurisdiction arising from such decision.
6. Where an application for joinder is granted under Article 29(5), the date of receipt of the complete application for joinder shall be deemed to be the Commencement Date of the arbitration in respect of the additional party.
7. Where an application for joinder is granted under Article 29(5), the Court may revoke the confirmation or appointment of any arbitrators confirmed or appointed prior to the decision on joinder. Unless otherwise agreed by all parties, including the additional party joined, Article 6 to Article 9 shall apply as appropriate, and the respective timelines thereunder shall run from the date of receipt of the Court's decision under Article 29(5).

8. After the constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal, a party or non-party to the arbitration may apply to the Arbitral Tribunal for one or more additional parties to be joined in an arbitration pending under the Rules as a Claimant or a Respondent, provided all parties, including the additional party to be joined, have consented to the joinder of the additional party.
9. An application under Article 29(8) shall include:
   (a) the case reference number of the pending arbitration;
   (b) the names, addresses, telephone numbers and email addresses, if known, of all parties, including the additional party to be joined, and their representatives, if any, and any arbitrators who have been nominated or appointed in the pending arbitration;
   (c) whether the additional party is to be joined as a Claimant or a Respondent;
   (d) identification of the relevant agreement and, where possible, a copy of such agreement.
10. The Arbitral Tribunal shall, after giving all parties, including the additional party to be joined, the opportunity to be heard, and having regard to the circumstances of the case, decide whether to grant, in whole or in part, any application for joinder under Article 29(8). The Arbitral Tribunal's decision to grant an application for joinder under this Article 29(10) is without prejudice to its power to subsequently decide any question as to its jurisdiction arising from such decision.
11. Where an application for joinder is granted under Article 29(10), the date of receipt by the Arbitral Tribunal of the complete application for joinder shall be deemed to be the Commencement Date of the arbitration in respect of the additional party.
12. Where an application for joinder is granted under Article 29(5) or Article 29(10), any party who has not nominated an arbitrator or otherwise participated in the constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal shall be deemed to have waived its right to nominate an arbitrator or otherwise participate in the constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal, without prejudice to the right of such party to challenge an arbitrator pursuant to Article 13.
13. Where an application for joinder is granted under Article 29(5) or Article 29(10), the requisite filing fee under the Rules shall be payable for any additional claims or Counterclaims.

ARTICLE 30: Consolidation

1. Prior to the constitution of any Arbitral Tribunal in the arbitrations sought to be consolidated, a party may file an application with the Secretariat to consolidate two or more arbitrations pending under the Rules into a single arbitration, provided that any of the following criteria is satisfied in respect of the arbitrations to be consolidated:
   (a) all parties have agreed to the consolidation; or
   (b) all the claims in the arbitrations are made under the same arbitration agreement.
2. An application for consolidation under Article 30(1) shall include:
   (a) the case reference numbers of the arbitrations sought to be consolidated;
   (b) the names, addresses, telephone numbers, facsimile numbers and electronic mail addresses, if known, of all parties and their representatives, if any, and any arbitrators who have been nominated or appointed in the arbitrations sought to be consolidated;
   (c) a reference to the arbitration agreement(s) invoked and a copy of the arbitration agreement(s);
   (d) a reference to the contract or other instrument out of or in relation to which the dispute arises, and where possible, a copy of the contract or other instrument;
   (e) if the application is being made under Article 30(1)(a), identification of the relevant agreement and, where possible, a copy of such agreement; and
   (f) a brief statement of the facts and legal basis supporting the application.

3. The party applying for consolidation under Article 30(1) shall, at the same time as it files an application for consolidation with the Secretariat, send a copy of the application to all parties and shall notify the Secretariat that it has done so, specifying the mode of service employed and the date of service. The Court shall, after considering the views of all parties, and having regard to the circumstances of the case, decide whether to grant, in whole or in part, any application for consolidation under Article 30(1). The Court's decision to grant an application for consolidation under this Article 30(3) is without prejudice to the Tribunal's power to subsequently decide any question as to its jurisdiction arising from such decision. Any arbitrations that are not consolidated shall continue as separate arbitrations under the Rules and may nonetheless be run concurrently where procedural efficiency requires it.
4. Where the Court decides to consolidate two or more arbitrations under Article 30(3), the arbitrations shall be consolidated into the arbitration that is deemed to have commenced first, unless otherwise agreed by all parties or the Court decides otherwise having regard to the circumstances of the case.
5. Where an application for consolidation is granted under Article 30(3), the Court may revoke the confirmation or appointment of any arbitrators confirmed or appointed prior to the decision on consolidation. Unless otherwise agreed by all parties, Article 6 to Article 9 shall apply as appropriate, and the respective timelines thereunder shall run from the date of receipt of the Court's decision under Article 30.4.
6. After the constitution of any Arbitral Tribunal in the arbitrations sought to be consolidated, a party may apply to the Arbitral Tribunal to consolidate two or more arbitrations pending under the Rules into a single arbitration, provided that any of the following criteria is satisfied in respect of the arbitrations to be consolidated:
   (a) all parties have agreed to the consolidation; or
   (b) all the claims in the arbitrations are made under the same arbitration agreement, and the same Arbitral Tribunal has been constituted in each of the arbitrations or no Arbitral Tribunal has been constituted in the other arbitration(s); or
   (c) the arbitration agreements are compatible, the same Arbitral Tribunal has been constituted in each of the arbitrations to be consolidated or no Arbitral Tribunal has been constituted in the other arbitration(s), and: (i) the disputes arise out of the same legal relationship(s); or (ii) the disputes arise out of contracts consisting of a principal contract and its ancillary contract(s); or (iii) the disputes arise out of the same transaction or series of transactions.
7. The Arbitral Tribunal shall, after giving all parties the opportunity to be heard, and having regard to the circumstances of the case, decide whether to grant, in whole or in part, any application for consolidation. The Arbitral Tribunal's decision to grant an application for consolidation under this Article is without prejudice to its power to subsequently decide any question as to its jurisdiction arising from such decision. Any arbitrations that are not consolidated shall continue as separate arbitrations under the Rules.
8. Where an application for consolidation is granted under Article 30(7), any party who has not nominated an arbitrator or otherwise participated in the constitution of the Tribunal shall be deemed to have waived its right to nominate an arbitrator or otherwise participate in the constitution of the Tribunal, without prejudice to the right of such party to challenge an arbitrator pursuant to Article 13.

ARTICLE 31: Jurisdiction and Authority

1. The Arbitral Tribunal shall have the power to rule upon its own jurisdiction and authority, including any objection to the initial or continuing existence, validity, effectiveness or scope of any arbitration agreement invoked by a party.
2. For that purpose, an arbitration agreement which forms or was intended to form part of another agreement shall be treated as an arbitration agreement independent of that other agreement. A decision by the Arbitral Tribunal that such other agreement is non-existent, invalid or ineffective shall not entail (of itself) the non-existence, invalidity or ineffectiveness of the arbitration agreement.

3. An objection by a Respondent that the Arbitral Tribunal does not have jurisdiction shall be raised as soon as possible but not later than the time for its Statement of Defence; and a like objection by any party responding to a Counterclaim shall be raised as soon as possible but not later than the time for its Statement of Defence to Counterclaim. A party is not precluded from raising such an objection by the fact that it has participated in the appointment of the Arbitral Tribunal. An objection that the Arbitral Tribunal is exceeding the scope of its authority shall be raised promptly after the Arbitral Tribunal has indicated its intention to act upon the matter alleged to lie beyond its authority. The Arbitral Tribunal may nevertheless admit an untimely objection as to its jurisdiction or authority if it considers the delay justified in the circumstances.
4. The Arbitral Tribunal may decide the objection to its jurisdiction or authority in an award as to jurisdiction or authority or later in an award on the merits, as it considers appropriate in the circumstances.
5. To the extent permitted by any applicable law, the parties waive their right to apply to any state court or other legal authority for any relief regarding the Arbitral Tribunal's jurisdiction or authority, until the Arbitral Tribunal has made its decision on the objection to its jurisdiction or authority pursuant to Article 31(4).

ARTICLE 32: Deposits

1. The Secretariat may direct the parties, in such proportions and at such times as it thinks appropriate (taking into account the scales set out in the Schedule of Costs), to make one or more payments to AFSA on account of the Arbitration Costs.
   (a) Such payments deposited by the parties may be applied by the Secretariat to pay any item of such Arbitration Costs (including AFSA's own fees and expenses) in accordance with the Rules.
   (b) Unless otherwise decided by the Secretariat, where a Counterclaim is submitted by the Respondent, the Secretariat may fix separate advances on costs for the claim and the Counterclaim. When the Secretariat has fixed separate advances on costs, each of the parties shall pay the advances on costs corresponding to its claims.
   (c) Where the amount of the claim or the Counterclaim is not quantifiable at the time payment is due, a provisional estimate of the Arbitration Costs shall be made by the Secretary-General. Such estimate may be based on the nature of the controversy and the circumstances of the case. This estimate may be adjusted in light of such information as may subsequently become available.
   (d) The Secretariat may authorise, at the request of a party, that part of any advances on costs may be provided in the form of a bank guarantee or other form of security. Any costs arising from payment in the form of a bank guarantee or other form of security shall be borne by the requesting party.
2. All payments made by parties on account of the Arbitration Costs shall be held by AFSA for the parties, to be disbursed or otherwise applied by AFSA in accordance with the Rules. In the event that payments exceed the total amount of the Arbitration Costs at the conclusion of the arbitration, the excess amount shall be returned by AFSA to the parties, in accordance with any agreement of the parties or, in the absence of any such agreement, in proportions determined by the Court in its discretion.
3. In the event that a party fails or refuses to make any payment on account of the Arbitration Costs as directed by the Secretariat, the Secretariat may direct the other party or parties to effect a substitute payment to allow the arbitration to proceed (subject to any order or award on Arbitration Costs).
4. In such circumstances, the party effecting the substitute payment may request the Arbitral Tribunal to make an order or award in order to recover that amount as a debt immediately due and payable to that party by the defaulting party, together with any interest.
5. If a claiming or counterclaiming party fails to make prompt and full payment on account of the Arbitration Costs, the Secretariat may, after consultation with the Arbitral Tribunal, direct the Arbitral Tribunal to suspend its work and set a time limit on the expiry of which the relevant claim or Counterclaim shall be considered as withdrawn. Such withdrawal would thereby remove the relevant claim or Counterclaim (as

the case may be) from the scope of the Arbitral Tribunal's jurisdiction under the arbitration agreement, subject to any terms decided by the Arbitral Tribunal as to the reinstatement of the claim or Counterclaim in the event of subsequent payment by the claiming or counterclaiming party. Such a withdrawal shall not preclude the claiming or counterclaiming party from defending as a respondent any claim or Counterclaim made by another party.

6. For the avoidance of any doubt, for the purpose of calculating of the deposits under this Article, the Arbitral Tribunal shall have the power to decide whether a Counterclaim designated by the party making it as a set-off defence should be properly considered as a Counterclaim instead.

ARTICLE 33: Awards

1. Where the Arbitral Tribunal is composed of more than one arbitrator, an award is made by majority decision. If there is no majority, an award shall be made by the presiding arbitrator alone.
2. An award shall state the reasons upon which it is based, unless the parties have agreed in writing that reasons shall not be given.
3. An award shall be dated and state the seat of the arbitration.
4. An award shall be signed by the Arbitral Tribunal. If there is more than one arbitrator and any arbitrator does not sign an award, the award shall state the reason the arbitrator did not sign it.
5. If the parties reach a settlement before the final award is made, the Arbitral Tribunal shall either issue an order for the termination of the arbitral proceedings or record the settlement in an award on agreed terms if requested by the parties and not objected to by the Arbitral Tribunal. Such an award need not be reasoned.
6. After the Arbitral Tribunal issues an order for the termination of the arbitral proceedings or an award on terms agreed by the parties under Article 33(5), the mandate of the Arbitral Tribunal terminates, subject to Article 34.
7. The Arbitral Tribunal shall deliver the award to the Secretariat, which shall notify the award to the parties provided that all Arbitration Costs have been paid in full to AFSA in accordance with Articles 32 and 34.
8. By virtue of the notification of the award made in accordance with Article 33(7), the parties waive any other form of notification or deposit on the part of the Arbitral Tribunal.
9. Every award shall be final and binding on the parties. By submitting the dispute to arbitration under the Rules, the parties undertake to carry out an award without delay and shall be deemed to have waived their right to any form of recourse insofar as such waiver can validly be made.

ARTICLE 34: Correction and Interpretation of Awards and Additional Awards

1. On its own initiative, the Arbitral Tribunal may correct a clerical, computational or typographical error or any errors of a similar nature contained in an award, provided such correction is delivered to the Secretariat within 30 days of the date of the notification of the award.
2. Within 30 days of the receipt of an award, a party may ask the Arbitral Tribunal to correct any errors of the kind referred to in Article 34(1). If the Arbitral Tribunal considers the request justified, after consulting the parties, it shall make the correction within 30 days of receipt of the request.
3. Within 30 days of the receipt of an award, a party may ask the Arbitral Tribunal to give an interpretation of an award. If the Tribunal considers the request justified, after consulting the parties, it shall give the interpretation within 30 days of receipt of the request.

4. Within 30 days of the receipt of an award, a party may ask the Arbitral Tribunal to make an additional award as to claims presented in the arbitral proceedings but not dealt with in the award. If the Arbitral Tribunal considers the request justified, after consulting the parties, it shall make the additional award within 60 days of receipt of the request.
5. Articles 33(1) to 33(4), as well as Articles 33(7) to 33(9), shall apply to any corrections, interpretations or additional awards. Any correction or interpretation shall form part of the award.

ARTICLE 35: Arbitration Costs and Legal Costs

1. The Arbitration Costs shall include the fees and expenses of the arbitrators, any disbursements of the Administrative Secretary and AFSA's administrative expenses fixed in accordance with the Schedule of Costs, the fees and expenses of any experts appointed by the Arbitral Tribunal, and the costs of any other assistance reasonably required by the Arbitral Tribunal (the "Arbitration Costs").
2. The parties shall be jointly and severally liable to AFSA and the Arbitral Tribunal for the Arbitration Costs.
3. The Arbitral Tribunal shall specify by an award the amount of the Arbitration Costs determined by the Court. The Arbitral Tribunal shall decide the proportions in which the parties shall bear such Arbitration Costs (unless the parties have otherwise reached a final settlement regarding liability for such costs). If the Arbitral Tribunal has decided that all or any part of the Arbitration Costs shall be borne by a party other than a party which has already covered such costs by way of a payment to AFSA under Article 32, the latter party shall have the right to recover the appropriate amount of Arbitration Costs from the former party.
4. The Arbitral Tribunal shall also have the power to decide by an award that all or part of the legal or other expenses incurred by a party in relation to the arbitration (the "Legal Costs") be paid by another party. The Arbitral Tribunal shall decide the amount of such Legal Costs on such reasonable basis as it thinks appropriate. The Arbitral Tribunal shall not be required to apply the rates or procedures for assessing such costs practised by any state court or other legal authority.
5. The Arbitral Tribunal shall make its decisions on both Arbitration Costs and Legal Costs on the general principle that costs should reflect the parties' relative success and failure in the award or arbitration or under different issues, except where it appears to the Arbitral Tribunal that in the circumstances the application of such a general principle would be inappropriate under the arbitration agreement or otherwise. The Arbitral Tribunal may also take into account the parties' conduct in the arbitration, including any co-operation in facilitating the proceedings as to time and cost and any non-co-operation resulting in undue delay and unnecessary expense. Any decision on costs by the Arbitral Tribunal shall be made with reasons in the award containing such decision.

ARTICLE 36: Confidentiality and Publication of Award

1. To the extent permitted by any applicable law, the parties undertake as a general principle to keep confidential all awards in the arbitration, together with all materials in the arbitration created for the purpose of the arbitration and all other documents produced by another party in the proceedings not otherwise in the public domain, save and to the extent that:
   (a) disclosure may be required of a party by legal duty;
   (b) disclosure is required to protect or pursue a legal right; or
   (c) disclosure is required to enforce or challenge an award in legal proceedings before a state court or other legal authority.
2. The deliberations of the Arbitral Tribunal shall remain confidential to its members, save as required by any applicable law and to the extent that disclosure of an arbitrator's refusal to participate in the arbitration is required of the other members of the Arbitral Tribunal under Articles 13 and 14 of the Rules.

3. As an exception to the general principle set out in Article 36(1) above, and unless a party to the arbitration proceedings objects in writing to the publication of the arbitral award within 30 days after notification of the award to the parties, AFSA may in principle publish all arbitral awards in an anonymised or pseudonymised form.

ARTICLE 37: Limitation of Liability

1. Save for intentional wrongdoing, the parties waive, to the fullest extent permitted under the applicable law, any claim against the members of the Arbitral Tribunal, its Administrative Secretary, AFSA (including the Board, the Court, the Secretariat, the Secretary-General and any of AFSA's officers and employees) and any person appointed by the Arbitral Tribunal based on any act or omission in connection with the arbitration.
2. The parties shall indemnify and hold AFSA (including the Board, the Court, the Secretariat, the Secretary-General and any of AFSA's officers and employees) harmless from any and all claims, injuries, damages, losses or legal proceedings including legal fees, arising out of or resulting from the acts, errors or omissions in administrating an arbitration, except for injuries and damages caused by the sole negligence of AFSA.

ARTICLE 38: General Provisions

1. Throughout the proceedings, the Court, the Secretariat, the Arbitral Tribunal and the parties shall act in an efficient and expeditious manner.
2. A party who knows that any provision of the arbitration agreement has not been complied with and yet proceeds with the arbitration without promptly stating its objection as to such non-compliance to the Secretariat (prior to the constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal) or the Arbitral Tribunal (after its constitution), shall be treated as having irrevocably waived its right to object for all purposes.
3. For all matters not expressly provided in the arbitration agreement, AFSA, the Court, the Secretariat, the Arbitral Tribunal and each of the parties shall act at all times in good faith, respecting the spirit of the arbitration agreement, and shall make every reasonable effort to ensure that any award is legally recognised and enforceable at the seat of arbitration.
4. If and to the extent that any part of the arbitration agreement is decided by the Arbitral Tribunal, or any court or other legal authority of competent jurisdiction to be invalid, ineffective or unenforceable, such decision shall not, of itself, adversely affect any order or award by the Arbitral Tribunal or any other part of the arbitration agreement which shall remain in full force and effect, unless prohibited by any applicable law.

ANNEX 1: The Constitution of the AFSA International Court

PREAMBLE

1. This document represents the Constitution of the AFSA Court (hereinafter, the Court) which shall function as the Court of the Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa NPC (hereinafter, AFSA) and shall have the powers and shall perform the functions hereinafter provided for.
2. This Constitution shall come into force and the Court shall come into existence on the date that this Constitution is adopted by the Board of Directors of AFSA (hereinafter, the Board).

ARTICLE A: COMPOSITION

1. The AFSA Court shall, subject to Article A.5, at all times consist of no fewer than six Members appointed by the Board on the recommendation of the Court.
2. No more than two-thirds of the Members of the Court shall be of the same nationality.
3. The Members of the Court shall serve for a three-year term. Save in exceptional circumstances, they shall not be re-appointed for more than two consecutive terms.
4. The Court shall make recommendations to the Board to fill appointments arising from retirements or casual vacancies and on other matters relating to the composition of the Court from time to time as appropriate.
5. Any Member of the Court appointed on the recommendation of any entity other than the Court, entitled so to recommend by virtue of an agreement between AFSA and that entity, may be appointed in addition to the number of members prescribed by Article A.1.

ARTICLE B: OFFICERS OF THE COURT

1. The Officers of the Court shall consist of:
   1.1. A President appointed by the Board on the recommendation of the Court, to serve for a period of three years and to be eligible for re-appointment.
   1.2. Up to four Vice Presidents appointed by the Court, to serve for a period of three years, automatically extending their terms as Members of the Court for such three-year period, unless their term as Member of the Court has previously been extended in which case they will serve until the expiry of such extended term.
2. At the request of the President or, if not available, of the Secretary-General, any Vice President shall be entitled to exercise any of the functions and powers of the President.

ARTICLE C: SECRETARY-GENERAL

1. There shall be a Secretary-General appointed by the Board.
2. The Secretary-General shall fulfil such roles pursuant to such rules and/or procedures as the Court and the Board, or the Court and any branch, division or subsidiary of AFSA, or the Court and any entity in joint venture with AFSA, may publish from time to time.

ARTICLE D: FUNCTIONS OF THE COURT

1. The Court shall have the powers to do anything which it may consider appropriate for the proper performance of its functions, and in particular:
   1.1. To act as arbitral appointing or confirming authority and to decide any arbitral challenge under the AFSA International Rules for the Conduct of Administered Arbitration, the AFSA International Rules for the Conduct of Unadministered International and Construction Arbitration, any rules or procedures published pursuant to Article C.2, the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules and in any other case where an agreement provides for arbitral or other alternative dispute resolution appointment, confirmation or challenge decisions by AFSA.
   1.2. To perform or, where deemed appropriate, decline to perform any function conferred upon it by this Constitution or any applicable rules of arbitration or any other form of alternative dispute resolution whether they be AFSA Rules, any rules or procedures published pursuant to Article C.2, the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules or any arbitration or other alternative dispute resolution rules.
   1.3. To make recommendations to the Board as appropriate concerning the introduction of new general or specialised rules.

1.4. To promote the objectives of AFSA in particular and of international arbitration in general.

2. All appointments of arbitrators and similar officials in any other alternative dispute resolution processes shall be made in the name of the Court by the President or a Vice President.

3. All other functions of the Court under Articles D.1.1 and D.1.2 shall be performed in the name of the Court;
   3.1. by the President or a Vice President, or
   3.2. by a three Member division of the Court appointed by the President or a Vice President and chaired by the President or a Vice President, or
   3.3. in the case of administrative functions, by the Secretary-General.

4. For the purpose of performing specific tasks in relation to the functions of the Court under Articles D.1.3 to D.1.5, the President may set up ad hoc sub-committees of the Court chaired by any member appointed by the President, which shall report back to the Court.

5. In the performance of its functions under this Constitution, the Court, its Officers, its Members and its Secretary-General shall at all times act independently of the Board.

6. No Member or former Member of the Court who has a connection with an arbitration or other alternative dispute resolution process in relation to which AFSA exercises any function of any kind may participate in or influence any decision of the Court relating to such arbitration or alternative dispute resolution process.

ARTICLE E: APPOINTMENT OF OFFICERS AND MEMBERS AS ARBITRATORS

1. All Officers and Members of the Court shall be eligible for appointment as arbitrators or in similar offices in other alternative dispute resolution processes.

2. No Officer or Member of the Court so appointed shall take any part in the appointment or confirmation of an Arbitral Tribunal or similar office in any other alternative dispute resolution process to which they have been appointed, or in any other function of the Court relating to such arbitration or other alternative dispute resolution process.

ARTICLE F: FUNCTIONS OF SECRETARY-GENERAL

1. The Secretary-General;
   1.1. shall carry out in the name of the Court such day-to-day operations of the Court and administrative functions under any applicable arbitration rules or the rules or procedures of any other alternative dispute resolution process as may be authorised from time to time by the President or a Vice President,
   1.2. shall serve the Court and any division or sub-committee of the Court, and
   1.3. may be assisted by the AFSA Secretariat in performing administrative functions of or for the Court or any Officer or Member of the Court.

ARTICLE G: CONSTITUTIONAL AMENDMENTS AND DISSOLUTION OF COURT

The provisions of this Constitution may only be amended and the Court may only be dissolved by mutual consent between the Court and the Board, decided on a two-thirds majority.

Adopted by Resolution of the Board of Directors of the Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa NPC at Sandton, Republic of South Africa.

ANNEX 2: General Guidelines for Party Representatives

1. These general guidelines are intended to promote the good and equal conduct of Party Representatives. Nothing in these guidelines is intended to derogate from the arbitration agreement or to undermine any Party Representative's primary duty of loyalty to the party represented in the arbitration or the obligation to present that party's case effectively to the Arbitral Tribunal. Nor shall these guidelines derogate from any mandatory provisions of any laws, rules of law, professional rules or codes of conduct if and to the extent that any are shown to apply to a Party Representative appearing in the arbitration.
2. A Party Representative should not engage in activities that are intended to, or would reasonably be construed by a fair-minded observer to, obstruct unfairly the arbitration or to jeopardise the finality of any award, including repeated challenges to an arbitrator's appointment or to the jurisdiction or authority of the Arbitral Tribunal known to be unfounded by that Party Representative.
3. A Party Representative should not knowingly make any false statement to the Arbitral Tribunal or the Court.
4. A Party Representative should not knowingly procure or assist in the preparation of or rely upon any false evidence presented to the Arbitral Tribunal or the Court.
5. A Party Representative should not knowingly conceal or assist in the concealment of any document (or any part thereof) which is ordered to be produced by the Arbitral Tribunal.
6. During the arbitration proceedings, a Party Representative should not deliberately initiate or attempt to initiate with any member of the Arbitral Tribunal or with any member of the Court making any determination or decision in regard to the arbitration (but not including the Secretariat) any unilateral contact relating to the arbitration or the parties' dispute, which has not been disclosed in writing prior to or shortly after the time of such contact to all other parties, all members of the Arbitral Tribunal (if comprised of more than one arbitrator) and the Secretariat.
7. In accordance with Articles 26(5) and 26(6), the Arbitral Tribunal may decide whether a Party Representative has violated these general guidelines and, if so, how to exercise its discretion to impose any sanction pursuant to Article 26(6).

ANNEX 3: Schedule of Cost

SCHEDULE OF FEES

Fees are payable by way of:

- a registration fee;
- an administration fee;
- a fee for extra, reasonable or actual expenses incurred in administration; and
- arbitrators' fees.

REGISTRATION FEE

The registration fee of USD345 or ZAR5500 is payable by the Claimant together with its request for arbitration. The registration fee is non-refundable. Please contact the Secretariat of AFSA International for banking details.

The amount of Claim referred to in this Schedule shall be based on the sum of money claimed by the Claimant. If the amount claimed is different from the actual amount in dispute, or in the event of a reconventional claim, the actual amount in dispute shall be the basis for calculation.

Where the amount of claim is not ascertained at the time when application for arbitration is handed in, or there exists special circumstances, the amount of administration fee deposit shall be determined by the Secretariat.

Apart from charging administration fee according to this Schedule, the Secretariat may collect other extra, reasonable and actual expenses incurred in the course of its administration.

Arbitrators' fees are paid by AFSA International to the appointed arbitrators and the parties are obliged in advance to cover AFSA for such expenses.

ADMINISTRATION FEES

Amount in Dispute (USD)	Administration Fees (USD)
Up to 50,000	1,000
50,001 to 200,000	1,200 + 1,43% excess over 50,000
200,001 to 500,000	2,800 + 0,78% excess over 200,000
500,001 to 1,000,000	5,610 + 0,65% excess over 500,000
1,000,001 to 2,000,000	8,500 + 0,42% excess over 1,000,000
2,000,001 to 5,000,000	12,260 + 0.21% excess over 2,000,000
5,000,001 to 10,000,000	17,816 + 0.104% excess over 5,000,000
10,000,001 to 50,000,000	22,444 + 0,062% excess over 10,000,000
50,000,001 to 80,000,000	44,426 + 0.026% excess over 50,000,000
80,000,001 to 100,000,000	51,368 + 0.020% excess over 80,000,000
Above 100,000,000	54,950
Appointment Only (one arbitrator)	1,735
Two arbitrators	2,235
Three arbitrators	2,735
Emergency arbitrator applications	3,000

*** Fees are subject to 15% VAT when applicable**

SECTION 3

UNCITRAL ARBITRATION RULES (2010)

AFSA

The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

BACK TO INDEX

UNCITRAL | UNITED NATIONS
COMMISSION ON INTERNATIONAL TRADE LAW

UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules

(as revised in 2010)

Further information may be obtained from:
UNCITRAL secretariat, Vienna International Centre
P.O. Box 500, 1400 Vienna, Austria
Telephone: (+43-1) 26060-4060 Telefax: (+43-1) 26060-5813
Internet: www.uncitral.org E-mail: uncitral@uncitral.org

UNITED NATIONS COMMISSION ON INTERNATIONAL TRADE LAW

UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules

(as revised in 2010)

UNITED NATIONS
New York, 2011

© United Nations: United Nations Commission on International Trade Law. April 2011. All rights reserved.

This publication has not been formally edited.

Publishing production: English, Publishing and Library Section. United Nations Office at Vienna.

Contents

General Assembly resolution 65/22
UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules as revised in 2010

Page

Section I. Introductory rules **3**

Scope of application (article 1) 3
Notice and calculation of periods of time (article 2) 3
Notice of arbitration (article 3) 4
Response to the notice of arbitration (article 4) 5
Representation and assistance (article 5) 6
Designating and appointing authorities (article 6) 6

Section II. Composition of the arbitral tribunal **8**

Number of arbitrators (article 7) 8
Appointment of arbitrators (articles 8 to 10) 8
Disclosures by and challenge of arbitrators (articles 11 to 13) 10
Replacement of an arbitrator (article 14) 11
Repetition of hearings in the event of the replacement of an arbitrator (article 15) 11
Exclusion of liability (article 16) 12

Section III. Arbitral proceedings **13**

General provisions (article 17) 13
Place of arbitration (article 18) 14
Language (article 19) 14
Statement of claim (article 20) 14
Statement of defence (article 21) 15
Amendments to the claim or defence (article 22) 16
Pleas as to the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal (article 23) 16
Further written statements (article 24) 17
Periods of time (article 25) 17
Interim measures (article 26) 17
Evidence (article 27) 18
Hearings (article 28) 19
Experts appointed by the arbitral tribunal (article 29) 19
Default (article 30) 20
Closure of hearings (article 31) 21
Waiver of right to object (article 32) 21

Page

Section IV. The award **22**

Decisions (article 33) 22
Form and effect of the award (article 34) 22
Applicable law, *amiable compositeur* (article 35) 23
Settlement or other grounds for termination (article 36) 23
Interpretation of the award (article 37) 24
Correction of the award (article 38) 24
Additional award (article 39) 24
Definition of costs (article 40) 25
Fees and expenses of arbitrators (article 41) 25
Allocation of costs (article 42) 27
Deposit of costs (article 43) 27

Annex **29**

Model arbitration clause for contracts 29
Possible waiver statement 29
Model statements of independence pursuant to article 11 of the Rules 29

Resolution adopted by the General Assembly

[*on the report of the Sixth Committee (A/65/465)*]

65/22. UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules as revised in 2010

The General Assembly,

Recalling its resolution 2205 (XXI) of 17 December 1966, which established the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law with the purpose of furthering the progressive harmonization and unification of the law of international trade in the interests of all peoples, in particular those of developing countries,

Also recalling its resolution 31/98 of 15 December 1976 recommending the use of the Arbitration Rules of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law,[1]

Recognizing the value of arbitration as a method of settling disputes that may arise in the context of international commercial relations,

Noting that the Arbitration Rules are recognized as a very successful text and are used in a wide variety of circumstances covering a broad range of disputes, including disputes between private commercial parties, investor-State disputes, State-to-State disputes and commercial disputes administered by arbitral institutions, in all parts of the world,

Recognizing the need for revising the Arbitration Rules to conform to current practices in international trade and to meet changes that have taken place over the last thirty years in arbitral practice,

Believing that the Arbitration Rules as revised in 2010 to reflect current practices will significantly enhance the efficiency of arbitration under the Rules,

Convinced that the revision of the Arbitration Rules in a manner that is acceptable to countries with different legal,

[1] *Official Records of the General Assembly, Thirty-first Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/31/17), chap. V, sect. C.

social and economic systems can significantly contribute to the development of harmonious international economic relations and to the continuous strengthening of the rule of law,

Noting that the preparation of the Arbitration Rules as revised in 2010 was the subject of due deliberation and extensive consultations with Governments and interested circles and that the revised text can be expected to contribute significantly to the establishment of a harmonized legal framework for the fair and efficient settlement of international commercial disputes,

Also noting that the Arbitration Rules as revised in 2010 were adopted by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law at its forty-third session after due deliberation,[2]

1. *Expresses its appreciation* to the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law for having formulated and adopted the revised provisions of the Arbitration Rules, the text of which is contained in an annex to the report of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law on the work of its forty-third session;[3]

2. *Recommends* the use of the Arbitration Rules as revised in 2010 in the settlement of disputes arising in the context of international commercial relations;

3. *Requests* the Secretary-General to make all efforts to ensure that the Arbitration Rules as revised in 2010 become generally known and available.

57th plenary meeting
6 December 2010

[2] Ibid., *Sixty-fifth Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/65/17), chap. III.

[3] Ibid., annex I.

UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules

(as revised in 2010)

Section I. Introductory rules

*Scope of application**

Article 1

1. Where parties have agreed that disputes between them in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not, shall be referred to arbitration under the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules, then such disputes shall be settled in accordance with these Rules subject to such modification as the parties may agree.

2. The parties to an arbitration agreement concluded after 15 August 2010 shall be presumed to have referred to the Rules in effect on the date of commencement of the arbitration, unless the parties have agreed to apply a particular version of the Rules. That presumption does not apply where the arbitration agreement has been concluded by accepting after 15 August 2010 an offer made before that date.

3. These Rules shall govern the arbitration except that where any of these Rules is in conflict with a provision of the law applicable to the arbitration from which the parties cannot derogate, that provision shall prevail.

Notice and calculation of periods of time

Article 2

1. A notice, including a notification, communication or proposal, may be transmitted by any means of communication that provides or allows for a record of its transmission.

2. If an address has been designated by a party specifically for this purpose or authorized by the arbitral tribunal, any notice shall be delivered to that party at that address, and if so delivered shall

*A model arbitration clause for contracts can be found in the annex to the Rules.

be deemed to have been received. Delivery by electronic means such as facsimile or e-mail may only be made to an address so designated or authorized.

3. In the absence of such designation or authorization, a notice is:

(a) Received if it is physically delivered to the addressee; or

(b) Deemed to have been received if it is delivered at the place of business, habitual residence or mailing address of the addressee.

4. If, after reasonable efforts, delivery cannot be effected in accordance with paragraphs 2 or 3, a notice is deemed to have been received if it is sent to the addressee's last-known place of business, habitual residence or mailing address by registered letter or any other means that provides a record of delivery or of attempted delivery.

5. A notice shall be deemed to have been received on the day it is delivered in accordance with paragraphs 2, 3 or 4, or attempted to be delivered in accordance with paragraph 4. A notice transmitted by electronic means is deemed to have been received on the day it is sent, except that a notice of arbitration so transmitted is only deemed to have been received on the day when it reaches the addressee's electronic address.

6. For the purpose of calculating a period of time under these Rules, such period shall begin to run on the day following the day when a notice is received. If the last day of such period is an official holiday or a non-business day at the residence or place of business of the addressee, the period is extended until the first business day which follows. Official holidays or non-business days occurring during the running of the period of time are included in calculating the period.

Notice of arbitration

Article 3

1. The party or parties initiating recourse to arbitration (hereinafter called the "claimant") shall communicate to the other party or parties (hereinafter called the "respondent") a notice of arbitration.

2. Arbitral proceedings shall be deemed to commence on the date on which the notice of arbitration is received by the respondent.

3. The notice of arbitration shall include the following:

(a) A demand that the dispute be referred to arbitration;

(b) The names and contact details of the parties;

(c) Identification of the arbitration agreement that is invoked;

(d) Identification of any contract or other legal instrument out of or in relation to which the dispute arises or, in the absence of such contract or instrument, a brief description of the relevant relationship;

(e) A brief description of the claim and an indication of the amount involved, if any;

(f) The relief or remedy sought;

(g) A proposal as to the number of arbitrators, language and place of arbitration, if the parties have not previously agreed thereon.

4. The notice of arbitration may also include:

(a) A proposal for the designation of an appointing authority referred to in article 6, paragraph 1;

(b) A proposal for the appointment of a sole arbitrator referred to in article 8, paragraph 1;

(c) Notification of the appointment of an arbitrator referred to in article 9 or 10.

5. The constitution of the arbitral tribunal shall not be hindered by any controversy with respect to the sufficiency of the notice of arbitration, which shall be finally resolved by the arbitral tribunal.

Response to the notice of arbitration

Article 4

1. Within 30 days of the receipt of the notice of arbitration, the respondent shall communicate to the claimant a response to the notice of arbitration, which shall include:

(a) The name and contact details of each respondent;

(b) A response to the information set forth in the notice of arbitration, pursuant to article 3, paragraphs 3 *(c)* to *(g)*.

2. The response to the notice of arbitration may also include:

(a) Any plea that an arbitral tribunal to be constituted under these Rules lacks jurisdiction;

(b) A proposal for the designation of an appointing authority referred to in article 6, paragraph 1;

(c) A proposal for the appointment of a sole arbitrator referred to in article 8, paragraph 1;

(d) Notification of the appointment of an arbitrator referred to in article 9 or 10;

(e) A brief description of counterclaims or claims for the purpose of a set-off, if any, including where relevant, an indication of the amounts involved, and the relief or remedy sought;

(f) A notice of arbitration in accordance with article 3 in case the respondent formulates a claim against a party to the arbitration agreement other than the claimant.

3. The constitution of the arbitral tribunal shall not be hindered by any controversy with respect to the respondent's failure to communicate a response to the notice of arbitration, or an incomplete or late response to the notice of arbitration, which shall be finally resolved by the arbitral tribunal.

Representation and assistance

Article 5

Each party may be represented or assisted by persons chosen by it. The names and addresses of such persons must be communicated to all parties and to the arbitral tribunal. Such communication must specify whether the appointment is being made for purposes of representation or assistance. Where a person is to act as a representative of a party, the arbitral tribunal, on its own initiative or at the request of any party, may at any time require proof of authority granted to the representative in such a form as the arbitral tribunal may determine.

Designating and appointing authorities

Article 6

1. Unless the parties have already agreed on the choice of an appointing authority, a party may at any time propose the name or names of one or more institutions or persons, including the Secretary-General of the Permanent Court of Arbitration at The Hague (hereinafter called the "PCA"), one of whom would serve as appointing authority.

2. If all parties have not agreed on the choice of an appointing authority within 30 days after a proposal made in accordance

with paragraph 1 has been received by all other parties, any party may request the Secretary-General of the PCA to designate the appointing authority.

3. Where these Rules provide for a period of time within which a party must refer a matter to an appointing authority and no appointing authority has been agreed on or designated, the period is suspended from the date on which a party initiates the procedure for agreeing on or designating an appointing authority until the date of such agreement or designation.

4. Except as referred to in article 41, paragraph 4, if the appointing authority refuses to act, or if it fails to appoint an arbitrator within 30 days after it receives a party's request to do so, fails to act within any other period provided by these Rules, or fails to decide on a challenge to an arbitrator within a reasonable time after receiving a party's request to do so, any party may request the Secretary-General of the PCA to designate a substitute appointing authority.

5. In exercising their functions under these Rules, the appointing authority and the Secretary-General of the PCA may require from any party and the arbitrators the information they deem necessary and they shall give the parties and, where appropriate, the arbitrators, an opportunity to present their views in any manner they consider appropriate. All such communications to and from the appointing authority and the Secretary-General of the PCA shall also be provided by the sender to all other parties.

6. When the appointing authority is requested to appoint an arbitrator pursuant to articles 8, 9, 10 or 14, the party making the request shall send to the appointing authority copies of the notice of arbitration and, if it exists, any response to the notice of arbitration.

7. The appointing authority shall have regard to such considerations as are likely to secure the appointment of an independent and impartial arbitrator and shall take into account the advisability of appointing an arbitrator of a nationality other than the nationalities of the parties.

Section II. Composition of the arbitral tribunal

Number of arbitrators

Article 7

1. If the parties have not previously agreed on the number of arbitrators, and if within 30 days after the receipt by the respondent of the notice of arbitration the parties have not agreed that there shall be only one arbitrator, three arbitrators shall be appointed.

2. Notwithstanding paragraph 1, if no other parties have responded to a party's proposal to appoint a sole arbitrator within the time limit provided for in paragraph 1 and the party or parties concerned have failed to appoint a second arbitrator in accordance with article 9 or 10, the appointing authority may, at the request of a party, appoint a sole arbitrator pursuant to the procedure provided for in article 8, paragraph 2, if it determines that, in view of the circumstances of the case, this is more appropriate.

Appointment of arbitrators (articles 8 to 10)

Article 8

1. If the parties have agreed that a sole arbitrator is to be appointed and if within 30 days after receipt by all other parties of a proposal for the appointment of a sole arbitrator the parties have not reached agreement thereon, a sole arbitrator shall, at the request of a party, be appointed by the appointing authority.

2. The appointing authority shall appoint the sole arbitrator as promptly as possible. In making the appointment, the appointing authority shall use the following list-procedure, unless the parties agree that the list-procedure should not be used or unless the appointing authority determines in its discretion that the use of the list-procedure is not appropriate for the case:

(a) The appointing authority shall communicate to each of the parties an identical list containing at least three names;

(b) Within 15 days after the receipt of this list, each party may return the list to the appointing authority after having deleted the name or names to which it objects

and numbered the remaining names on the list in the order of its preference;

(c) After the expiration of the above period of time the appointing authority shall appoint the sole arbitrator from among the names approved on the lists returned to it and in accordance with the order of preference indicated by the parties;

(d) If for any reason the appointment cannot be made according to this procedure, the appointing authority may exercise its discretion in appointing the sole arbitrator.

Article 9

1. If three arbitrators are to be appointed, each party shall appoint one arbitrator. The two arbitrators thus appointed shall choose the third arbitrator who will act as the presiding arbitrator of the arbitral tribunal.

2. If within 30 days after the receipt of a party's notification of the appointment of an arbitrator the other party has not notified the first party of the arbitrator it has appointed, the first party may request the appointing authority to appoint the second arbitrator.

3. If within 30 days after the appointment of the second arbitrator the two arbitrators have not agreed on the choice of the presiding arbitrator, the presiding arbitrator shall be appointed by the appointing authority in the same way as a sole arbitrator would be appointed under article 8.

Article 10

1. For the purposes of article 9, paragraph 1, where three arbitrators are to be appointed and there are multiple parties as claimant or as respondent, unless the parties have agreed to another method of appointment of arbitrators, the multiple parties jointly, whether as claimant or as respondent, shall appoint an arbitrator.

2. If the parties have agreed that the arbitral tribunal is to be composed of a number of arbitrators other than one or three, the arbitrators shall be appointed according to the method agreed upon by the parties.

3. In the event of any failure to constitute the arbitral tribunal under these Rules, the appointing authority shall, at the request of any party, constitute the arbitral tribunal and, in doing so,

may revoke any appointment already made and appoint or reappoint each of the arbitrators and designate one of them as the presiding arbitrator.

*Disclosures by and challenge of arbitrators*** *(articles 11 to 13)*

Article 11

When a person is approached in connection with his or her possible appointment as an arbitrator, he or she shall disclose any circumstances likely to give rise to justifiable doubts as to his or her impartiality or independence. An arbitrator, from the time of his or her appointment and throughout the arbitral proceedings, shall without delay disclose any such circumstances to the parties and the other arbitrators unless they have already been informed by him or her of these circumstances.

Article 12

1. Any arbitrator may be challenged if circumstances exist that give rise to justifiable doubts as to the arbitrator's impartiality or independence.

2. A party may challenge the arbitrator appointed by it only for reasons of which it becomes aware after the appointment has been made.

3. In the event that an arbitrator fails to act or in the event of the de jure or de facto impossibility of his or her performing his or her functions, the procedure in respect of the challenge of an arbitrator as provided in article 13 shall apply.

Article 13

1. A party that intends to challenge an arbitrator shall send notice of its challenge within 15 days after it has been notified of the appointment of the challenged arbitrator, or within 15 days after the circumstances mentioned in articles 11 and 12 became known to that party.

** Model statements of independence pursuant to article 11 can be found in the annex to the Rules.

2. The notice of challenge shall be communicated to all other parties, to the arbitrator who is challenged and to the other arbitrators. The notice of challenge shall state the reasons for the challenge.

3. When an arbitrator has been challenged by a party, all parties may agree to the challenge. The arbitrator may also, after the challenge, withdraw from his or her office. In neither case does this imply acceptance of the validity of the grounds for the challenge.

4. If, within 15 days from the date of the notice of challenge, all parties do not agree to the challenge or the challenged arbitrator does not withdraw, the party making the challenge may elect to pursue it. In that case, within 30 days from the date of the notice of challenge, it shall seek a decision on the challenge by the appointing authority.

Replacement of an arbitrator

Article 14

1. Subject to paragraph 2, in any event where an arbitrator has to be replaced during the course of the arbitral proceedings, a substitute arbitrator shall be appointed or chosen pursuant to the procedure provided for in articles 8 to 11 that was applicable to the appointment or choice of the arbitrator being replaced. This procedure shall apply even if during the process of appointing the arbitrator to be replaced, a party had failed to exercise its right to appoint or to participate in the appointment.

2. If, at the request of a party, the appointing authority determines that, in view of the exceptional circumstances of the case, it would be justified for a party to be deprived of its right to appoint a substitute arbitrator, the appointing authority may, after giving an opportunity to the parties and the remaining arbitrators to express their views: *(a)* appoint the substitute arbitrator; or *(b)* after the closure of the hearings, authorize the other arbitrators to proceed with the arbitration and make any decision or award.

Repetition of hearings in the event of the replacement of an arbitrator

Article 15

If an arbitrator is replaced, the proceedings shall resume at the stage where the arbitrator who was replaced ceased to perform his or her functions, unless the arbitral tribunal decides otherwise.

Exclusion of liability

Article 16

Save for intentional wrongdoing, the parties waive, to the fullest extent permitted under the applicable law, any claim against the arbitrators, the appointing authority and any person appointed by the arbitral tribunal based on any act or omission in connection with the arbitration.

Section III. Arbitral proceedings

General provisions

Article 17

1. Subject to these Rules, the arbitral tribunal may conduct the arbitration in such manner as it considers appropriate, provided that the parties are treated with equality and that at an appropriate stage of the proceedings each party is given a reasonable opportunity of presenting its case. The arbitral tribunal, in exercising its discretion, shall conduct the proceedings so as to avoid unnecessary delay and expense and to provide a fair and efficient process for resolving the parties' dispute.

2. As soon as practicable after its constitution and after inviting the parties to express their views, the arbitral tribunal shall establish the provisional timetable of the arbitration. The arbitral tribunal may, at any time, after inviting the parties to express their views, extend or abridge any period of time prescribed under these Rules or agreed by the parties.

3. If at an appropriate stage of the proceedings any party so requests, the arbitral tribunal shall hold hearings for the presentation of evidence by witnesses, including expert witnesses, or for oral argument. In the absence of such a request, the arbitral tribunal shall decide whether to hold such hearings or whether the proceedings shall be conducted on the basis of documents and other materials.

4. All communications to the arbitral tribunal by one party shall be communicated by that party to all other parties. Such communications shall be made at the same time, except as otherwise permitted by the arbitral tribunal if it may do so under applicable law.

5. The arbitral tribunal may, at the request of any party, allow one or more third persons to be joined in the arbitration as a party provided such person is a party to the arbitration agreement, unless the arbitral tribunal finds, after giving all parties, including the person or persons to be joined, the opportunity to be heard, that joinder should not be permitted because of prejudice to any of those parties. The arbitral tribunal may make a single award or several awards in respect of all parties so involved in the arbitration.

Place of arbitration

Article 18

1. If the parties have not previously agreed on the place of arbitration, the place of arbitration shall be determined by the arbitral tribunal having regard to the circumstances of the case. The award shall be deemed to have been made at the place of arbitration.

2. The arbitral tribunal may meet at any location it considers appropriate for deliberations. Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the arbitral tribunal may also meet at any location it considers appropriate for any other purpose, including hearings.

Language

Article 19

1. Subject to an agreement by the parties, the arbitral tribunal shall, promptly after its appointment, determine the language or languages to be used in the proceedings. This determination shall apply to the statement of claim, the statement of defence, and any further written statements and, if oral hearings take place, to the language or languages to be used in such hearings.

2. The arbitral tribunal may order that any documents annexed to the statement of claim or statement of defence, and any supplementary documents or exhibits submitted in the course of the proceedings, delivered in their original language, shall be accompanied by a translation into the language or languages agreed upon by the parties or determined by the arbitral tribunal.

Statement of claim

Article 20

1. The claimant shall communicate its statement of claim in writing to the respondent and to each of the arbitrators within a period of time to be determined by the arbitral tribunal. The claimant may elect to treat its notice of arbitration referred to in article 3 as a statement of claim, provided that the notice of arbitration also complies with the requirements of paragraphs 2 to 4 of this article.

2. The statement of claim shall include the following particulars:

(a) The names and contact details of the parties;

(b) A statement of the facts supporting the claim;

(c) The points at issue;

(d) The relief or remedy sought;

(e) The legal grounds or arguments supporting the claim.

3. A copy of any contract or other legal instrument out of or in relation to which the dispute arises and of the arbitration agreement shall be annexed to the statement of claim.

4. The statement of claim should, as far as possible, be accompanied by all documents and other evidence relied upon by the claimant, or contain references to them.

Statement of defence

Article 21

1. The respondent shall communicate its statement of defence in writing to the claimant and to each of the arbitrators within a period of time to be determined by the arbitral tribunal. The respondent may elect to treat its response to the notice of arbitration referred to in article 4 as a statement of defence, provided that the response to the notice of arbitration also complies with the requirements of paragraph 2 of this article.

2. The statement of defence shall reply to the particulars *(b)* to *(e)* of the statement of claim (art. 20, para. 2). The statement of defence should, as far as possible, be accompanied by all documents and other evidence relied upon by the respondent, or contain references to them.

3. In its statement of defence, or at a later stage in the arbitral proceedings if the arbitral tribunal decides that the delay was justified under the circumstances, the respondent may make a counterclaim or rely on a claim for the purpose of a set-off provided that the arbitral tribunal has jurisdiction over it.

4. The provisions of article 20, paragraphs 2 to 4, shall apply to a counterclaim, a claim under article 4, paragraph 2 *(f)*, and a claim relied on for the purpose of a set-off.

Amendments to the claim or defence

Article 22

During the course of the arbitral proceedings, a party may amend or supplement its claim or defence, including a counterclaim or a claim for the purpose of a set-off, unless the arbitral tribunal considers it inappropriate to allow such amendment or supplement having regard to the delay in making it or prejudice to other parties or any other circumstances. However, a claim or defence, including a counterclaim or a claim for the purpose of a set-off, may not be amended or supplemented in such a manner that the amended or supplemented claim or defence falls outside the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal.

Pleas as to the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal

Article 23

1. The arbitral tribunal shall have the power to rule on its own jurisdiction, including any objections with respect to the existence or validity of the arbitration agreement. For that purpose, an arbitration clause that forms part of a contract shall be treated as an agreement independent of the other terms of the contract. A decision by the arbitral tribunal that the contract is null shall not entail automatically the invalidity of the arbitration clause.

2. A plea that the arbitral tribunal does not have jurisdiction shall be raised no later than in the statement of defence or, with respect to a counterclaim or a claim for the purpose of a set-off, in the reply to the counterclaim or to the claim for the purpose of a set-off. A party is not precluded from raising such a plea by the fact that it has appointed, or participated in the appointment of, an arbitrator. A plea that the arbitral tribunal is exceeding the scope of its authority shall be raised as soon as the matter alleged to be beyond the scope of its authority is raised during the arbitral proceedings. The arbitral tribunal may, in either case, admit a later plea if it considers the delay justified.

3. The arbitral tribunal may rule on a plea referred to in paragraph 2 either as a preliminary question or in an award on the merits. The arbitral tribunal may continue the arbitral proceedings and make an award, notwithstanding any pending challenge to its jurisdiction before a court.

Further written statements

Article 24

The arbitral tribunal shall decide which further written statements, in addition to the statement of claim and the statement of defence, shall be required from the parties or may be presented by them and shall fix the periods of time for communicating such statements.

Periods of time

Article 25

The periods of time fixed by the arbitral tribunal for the communication of written statements (including the statement of claim and statement of defence) should not exceed 45 days. However, the arbitral tribunal may extend the time limits if it concludes that an extension is justified.

Interim measures

Article 26

1. The arbitral tribunal may, at the request of a party, grant interim measures.

2. An interim measure is any temporary measure by which, at any time prior to the issuance of the award by which the dispute is finally decided, the arbitral tribunal orders a party, for example and without limitation, to:

(a) Maintain or restore the status quo pending determination of the dispute;

(b) Take action that would prevent, or refrain from taking action that is likely to cause, (i) current or imminent harm or (ii) prejudice to the arbitral process itself;

(c) Provide a means of preserving assets out of which a subsequent award may be satisfied; or

(d) Preserve evidence that may be relevant and material to the resolution of the dispute.

3. The party requesting an interim measure under paragraphs 2 *(a)* to *(c)* shall satisfy the arbitral tribunal that:

(a) Harm not adequately reparable by an award of damages is likely to result if the measure is not ordered, and such

harm substantially outweighs the harm that is likely to result to the party against whom the measure is directed if the measure is granted; and

(b) There is a reasonable possibility that the requesting party will succeed on the merits of the claim. The determination on this possibility shall not affect the discretion of the arbitral tribunal in making any subsequent determination.

4. With regard to a request for an interim measure under paragraph 2 *(d)*, the requirements in paragraphs 3 *(a)* and *(b)* shall apply only to the extent the arbitral tribunal considers appropriate.

5. The arbitral tribunal may modify, suspend or terminate an interim measure it has granted, upon application of any party or, in exceptional circumstances and upon prior notice to the parties, on the arbitral tribunal's own initiative.

6. The arbitral tribunal may require the party requesting an interim measure to provide appropriate security in connection with the measure.

7. The arbitral tribunal may require any party promptly to disclose any material change in the circumstances on the basis of which the interim measure was requested or granted.

8. The party requesting an interim measure may be liable for any costs and damages caused by the measure to any party if the arbitral tribunal later determines that, in the circumstances then prevailing, the measure should not have been granted. The arbitral tribunal may award such costs and damages at any point during the proceedings.

9. A request for interim measures addressed by any party to a judicial authority shall not be deemed incompatible with the agreement to arbitrate, or as a waiver of that agreement.

Evidence

Article 27

1. Each party shall have the burden of proving the facts relied on to support its claim or defence.

2. Witnesses, including expert witnesses, who are presented by the parties to testify to the arbitral tribunal on any issue of fact or expertise may be any individual, notwithstanding that

the individual is a party to the arbitration or in any way related to a party. Unless otherwise directed by the arbitral tribunal, statements by witnesses, including expert witnesses, may be presented in writing and signed by them.

3. At any time during the arbitral proceedings the arbitral tribunal may require the parties to produce documents, exhibits or other evidence within such a period of time as the arbitral tribunal shall determine.

4. The arbitral tribunal shall determine the admissibility, relevance, materiality and weight of the evidence offered.

Hearings

Article 28

1. In the event of an oral hearing, the arbitral tribunal shall give the parties adequate advance notice of the date, time and place thereof.

2. Witnesses, including expert witnesses, may be heard under the conditions and examined in the manner set by the arbitral tribunal.

3. Hearings shall be held in camera unless the parties agree otherwise. The arbitral tribunal may require the retirement of any witness or witnesses, including expert witnesses, during the testimony of such other witnesses, except that a witness, including an expert witness, who is a party to the arbitration shall not, in principle, be asked to retire.

4. The arbitral tribunal may direct that witnesses, including expert witnesses, be examined through means of telecommunication that do not require their physical presence at the hearing (such as videoconference).

Experts appointed by the arbitral tribunal

Article 29

1. After consultation with the parties, the arbitral tribunal may appoint one or more independent experts to report to it, in writing, on specific issues to be determined by the arbitral tribunal. A copy of the expert's terms of reference, established by the arbitral tribunal, shall be communicated to the parties.

2. The expert shall, in principle before accepting appointment, submit to the arbitral tribunal and to the parties a description of his or her qualifications and a statement of his or her impartiality and independence. Within the time ordered by the arbitral tribunal, the parties shall inform the arbitral tribunal whether they have any objections as to the expert's qualifications, impartiality or independence. The arbitral tribunal shall decide promptly whether to accept any such objections. After an expert's appointment, a party may object to the expert's qualifications, impartiality or independence only if the objection is for reasons of which the party becomes aware after the appointment has been made. The arbitral tribunal shall decide promptly what, if any, action to take.

3. The parties shall give the expert any relevant information or produce for his or her inspection any relevant documents or goods that he or she may require of them. Any dispute between a party and such expert as to the relevance of the required information or production shall be referred to the arbitral tribunal for decision.

4. Upon receipt of the expert's report, the arbitral tribunal shall communicate a copy of the report to the parties, which shall be given the opportunity to express, in writing, their opinion on the report. A party shall be entitled to examine any document on which the expert has relied in his or her report.

5. At the request of any party, the expert, after delivery of the report, may be heard at a hearing where the parties shall have the opportunity to be present and to interrogate the expert. At this hearing, any party may present expert witnesses in order to testify on the points at issue. The provisions of article 28 shall be applicable to such proceedings.

Default

Article 30

1. If, within the period of time fixed by these Rules or the arbitral tribunal, without showing sufficient cause:

(a) The claimant has failed to communicate its statement of claim, the arbitral tribunal shall issue an order for the termination of the arbitral proceedings, unless there are remaining matters that may need to be decided and the arbitral tribunal considers it appropriate to do so;

(b) The respondent has failed to communicate its response to the notice of arbitration or its statement of defence, the arbitral tribunal shall order that the proceedings

continue, without treating such failure in itself as an admission of the claimant's allegations; the provisions of this subparagraph also apply to a claimant's failure to submit a defence to a counterclaim or to a claim for the purpose of a set-off.

2. If a party, duly notified under these Rules, fails to appear at a hearing, without showing sufficient cause for such failure, the arbitral tribunal may proceed with the arbitration.

3. If a party, duly invited by the arbitral tribunal to produce documents, exhibits or other evidence, fails to do so within the established period of time, without showing sufficient cause for such failure, the arbitral tribunal may make the award on the evidence before it.

Closure of hearings

Article 31

1. The arbitral tribunal may inquire of the parties if they have any further proof to offer or witnesses to be heard or submissions to make and, if there are none, it may declare the hearings closed.

2. The arbitral tribunal may, if it considers it necessary owing to exceptional circumstances, decide, on its own initiative or upon application of a party, to reopen the hearings at any time before the award is made.

Waiver of right to object

Article 32

A failure by any party to object promptly to any non-compliance with these Rules or with any requirement of the arbitration agreement shall be deemed to be a waiver of the right of such party to make such an objection, unless such party can show that, under the circumstances, its failure to object was justified.

Section IV. The award

Decisions

Article 33

1. When there is more than one arbitrator, any award or other decision of the arbitral tribunal shall be made by a majority of the arbitrators.

2. In the case of questions of procedure, when there is no majority or when the arbitral tribunal so authorizes, the presiding arbitrator may decide alone, subject to revision, if any, by the arbitral tribunal.

Form and effect of the award

Article 34

1. The arbitral tribunal may make separate awards on different issues at different times.

2. All awards shall be made in writing and shall be final and binding on the parties. The parties shall carry out all awards without delay.

3. The arbitral tribunal shall state the reasons upon which the award is based, unless the parties have agreed that no reasons are to be given.

4. An award shall be signed by the arbitrators and it shall contain the date on which the award was made and indicate the place of arbitration. Where there is more than one arbitrator and any of them fails to sign, the award shall state the reason for the absence of the signature.

5. An award may be made public with the consent of all parties or where and to the extent disclosure is required of a party by legal duty, to protect or pursue a legal right or in relation to legal proceedings before a court or other competent authority.

6. Copies of the award signed by the arbitrators shall be communicated to the parties by the arbitral tribunal.

Applicable law, amiable compositeur

Article 35

1. The arbitral tribunal shall apply the rules of law designated by the parties as applicable to the substance of the dispute. Failing such designation by the parties, the arbitral tribunal shall apply the law which it determines to be appropriate.

2. The arbitral tribunal shall decide as *amiable compositeur* or *ex aequo et bono* only if the parties have expressly authorized the arbitral tribunal to do so.

3. In all cases, the arbitral tribunal shall decide in accordance with the terms of the contract, if any, and shall take into account any usage of trade applicable to the transaction.

Settlement or other grounds for termination

Article 36

1. If, before the award is made, the parties agree on a settlement of the dispute, the arbitral tribunal shall either issue an order for the termination of the arbitral proceedings or, if requested by the parties and accepted by the arbitral tribunal, record the settlement in the form of an arbitral award on agreed terms. The arbitral tribunal is not obliged to give reasons for such an award.

2. If, before the award is made, the continuation of the arbitral proceedings becomes unnecessary or impossible for any reason not mentioned in paragraph 1, the arbitral tribunal shall inform the parties of its intention to issue an order for the termination of the proceedings. The arbitral tribunal shall have the power to issue such an order unless there are remaining matters that may need to be decided and the arbitral tribunal considers it appropriate to do so.

3. Copies of the order for termination of the arbitral proceedings or of the arbitral award on agreed terms, signed by the arbitrators, shall be communicated by the arbitral tribunal to the parties. Where an arbitral award on agreed terms is made, the provisions of article 34, paragraphs 2, 4 and 5, shall apply.

Interpretation of the award

Article 37

1. Within 30 days after the receipt of the award, a party, with notice to the other parties, may request that the arbitral tribunal give an interpretation of the award.

2. The interpretation shall be given in writing within 45 days after the receipt of the request. The interpretation shall form part of the award and the provisions of article 34, paragraphs 2 to 6, shall apply.

Correction of the award

Article 38

1. Within 30 days after the receipt of the award, a party, with notice to the other parties, may request the arbitral tribunal to correct in the award any error in computation, any clerical or typographical error, or any error or omission of a similar nature. If the arbitral tribunal considers that the request is justified, it shall make the correction within 45 days of receipt of the request.

2. The arbitral tribunal may within 30 days after the communication of the award make such corrections on its own initiative.

3. Such corrections shall be in writing and shall form part of the award. The provisions of article 34, paragraphs 2 to 6, shall apply.

Additional award

Article 39

1. Within 30 days after the receipt of the termination order or the award, a party, with notice to the other parties, may request the arbitral tribunal to make an award or an additional award as to claims presented in the arbitral proceedings but not decided by the arbitral tribunal.

2. If the arbitral tribunal considers the request for an award or additional award to be justified, it shall render or complete its award within 60 days after the receipt of the request. The arbitral tribunal may extend, if necessary, the period of time within which it shall make the award.

3. When such an award or additional award is made, the provisions of article 34, paragraphs 2 to 6, shall apply.

Definition of costs

Article 40

1. The arbitral tribunal shall fix the costs of arbitration in the final award and, if it deems appropriate, in another decision.

2. The term "costs" includes only:

(a) The fees of the arbitral tribunal to be stated separately as to each arbitrator and to be fixed by the tribunal itself in accordance with article 41;

(b) The reasonable travel and other expenses incurred by the arbitrators;

(c) The reasonable costs of expert advice and of other assistance required by the arbitral tribunal;

(d) The reasonable travel and other expenses of witnesses to the extent such expenses are approved by the arbitral tribunal;

(e) The legal and other costs incurred by the parties in relation to the arbitration to the extent that the arbitral tribunal determines that the amount of such costs is reasonable;

(f) Any fees and expenses of the appointing authority as well as the fees and expenses of the Secretary-General of the PCA.

3. In relation to interpretation, correction or completion of any award under articles 37 to 39, the arbitral tribunal may charge the costs referred to in paragraphs 2 *(b)* to *(f)*, but no additional fees.

Fees and expenses of arbitrators

Article 41

1. The fees and expenses of the arbitrators shall be reasonable in amount, taking into account the amount in dispute, the complexity of the subject matter, the time spent by the arbitrators and any other relevant circumstances of the case.

2. If there is an appointing authority and it applies or has stated that it will apply a schedule or particular method for determining the fees for arbitrators in international cases, the arbitral tribunal in

fixing its fees shall take that schedule or method into account to the extent that it considers appropriate in the circumstances of the case.

3. Promptly after its constitution, the arbitral tribunal shall inform the parties as to how it proposes to determine its fees and expenses, including any rates it intends to apply. Within 15 days of receiving that proposal, any party may refer the proposal to the appointing authority for review. If, within 45 days of receipt of such a referral, the appointing authority finds that the proposal of the arbitral tribunal is inconsistent with paragraph 1, it shall make any necessary adjustments thereto, which shall be binding upon the arbitral tribunal.

4. *(a)* When informing the parties of the arbitrators' fees and expenses that have been fixed pursuant to article 40, paragraphs 2 *(a)* and *(b)*, the arbitral tribunal shall also explain the manner in which the corresponding amounts have been calculated;

(b) Within 15 days of receiving the arbitral tribunal's determination of fees and expenses, any party may refer for review such determination to the appointing authority. If no appointing authority has been agreed upon or designated, or if the appointing authority fails to act within the time specified in these Rules, then the review shall be made by the Secretary-General of the PCA;

(c) If the appointing authority or the Secretary-General of the PCA finds that the arbitral tribunal's determination is inconsistent with the arbitral tribunal's proposal (and any adjustment thereto) under paragraph 3 or is otherwise manifestly excessive, it shall, within 45 days of receiving such a referral, make any adjustments to the arbitral tribunal's determination that are necessary to satisfy the criteria in paragraph 1. Any such adjustments shall be binding upon the arbitral tribunal;

(d) Any such adjustments shall either be included by the arbitral tribunal in its award or, if the award has already been issued, be implemented in a correction to the award, to which the procedure of article 38, paragraph 3, shall apply.

5. Throughout the procedure under paragraphs 3 and 4, the arbitral tribunal shall proceed with the arbitration, in accordance with article 17, paragraph 1.

6. A referral under paragraph 4 shall not affect any determination in the award other than the arbitral tribunal's fees and expenses;

nor shall it delay the recognition and enforcement of all parts of the award other than those relating to the determination of the arbitral tribunal's fees and expenses.

Allocation of costs

Article 42

1. The costs of the arbitration shall in principle be borne by the unsuccessful party or parties. However, the arbitral tribunal may apportion each of such costs between the parties if it determines that apportionment is reasonable, taking into account the circumstances of the case.

2. The arbitral tribunal shall in the final award or, if it deems appropriate, in any other award, determine any amount that a party may have to pay to another party as a result of the decision on allocation of costs.

Deposit of costs

Article 43

1. The arbitral tribunal, on its establishment, may request the parties to deposit an equal amount as an advance for the costs referred to in article 40, paragraphs 2 *(a)* to *(c)*.

2. During the course of the arbitral proceedings the arbitral tribunal may request supplementary deposits from the parties.

3. If an appointing authority has been agreed upon or designated, and when a party so requests and the appointing authority consents to perform the function, the arbitral tribunal shall fix the amounts of any deposits or supplementary deposits only after consultation with the appointing authority, which may make any comments to the arbitral tribunal that it deems appropriate concerning the amount of such deposits and supplementary deposits.

4. If the required deposits are not paid in full within 30 days after the receipt of the request, the arbitral tribunal shall so inform the parties in order that one or more of them may make the required payment. If such payment is not made, the arbitral tribunal may order the suspension or termination of the arbitral proceedings.

5. After a termination order or final award has been made, the arbitral tribunal shall render an accounting to the parties of the deposits received and return any unexpended balance to the parties.

ANNEX

Model arbitration clause for contracts

Any dispute, controversy or claim arising out of or relating to this contract, or the breach, termination or invalidity thereof, shall be settled by arbitration in accordance with the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules.

Note. Parties should consider adding:

(a) The appointing authority shall be ... [name of institution or person];

(b) The number of arbitrators shall be ... [one or three];

(c) The place of arbitration shall be ... [town and country];

(d) The language to be used in the arbitral proceedings shall be ... .

Possible waiver statement

Note. If the parties wish to exclude recourse against the arbitral award that may be available under the applicable law, they may consider adding a provision to that effect as suggested below, considering, however, that the effectiveness and conditions of such an exclusion depend on the applicable law.

Waiver

The parties hereby waive their right to any form of recourse against an award to any court or other competent authority, insofar as such waiver can validly be made under the applicable law.

Model statements of independence pursuant to article 11 of the Rules

No circumstances to disclose

I am impartial and independent of each of the parties and intend to remain so. To the best of my knowledge, there are no circumstances, past or present, likely to give rise to justifiable doubts as to my impartiality or independence. I shall promptly notify the parties and the other arbitrators of

any such circumstances that may subsequently come to my attention during this arbitration.

Circumstances to disclose

I am impartial and independent of each of the parties and intend to remain so. Attached is a statement made pursuant to article 11 of the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules of *(a)* my past and present professional, business and other relationships with the parties and *(b)* any other relevant circumstances. [Include statement.] I confirm that those circumstances do not affect my independence and impartiality. I shall promptly notify the parties and the other arbitrators of any such further relationships or circumstances that may subsequently come to my attention during this arbitration.

Note. Any party may consider requesting from the arbitrator the following addition to the statement of independence:

I confirm, on the basis of the information presently available to me, that I can devote the time necessary to conduct this arbitration diligently, efficiently and in accordance with the time limits in the Rules.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Printed in Austria

V.11-80167—April 2011—1,500

SECTION 4

UNCITRAL ARBITRATION RULES (2021) & EXPEDITED ARBITRATION RULES

AFSA

The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

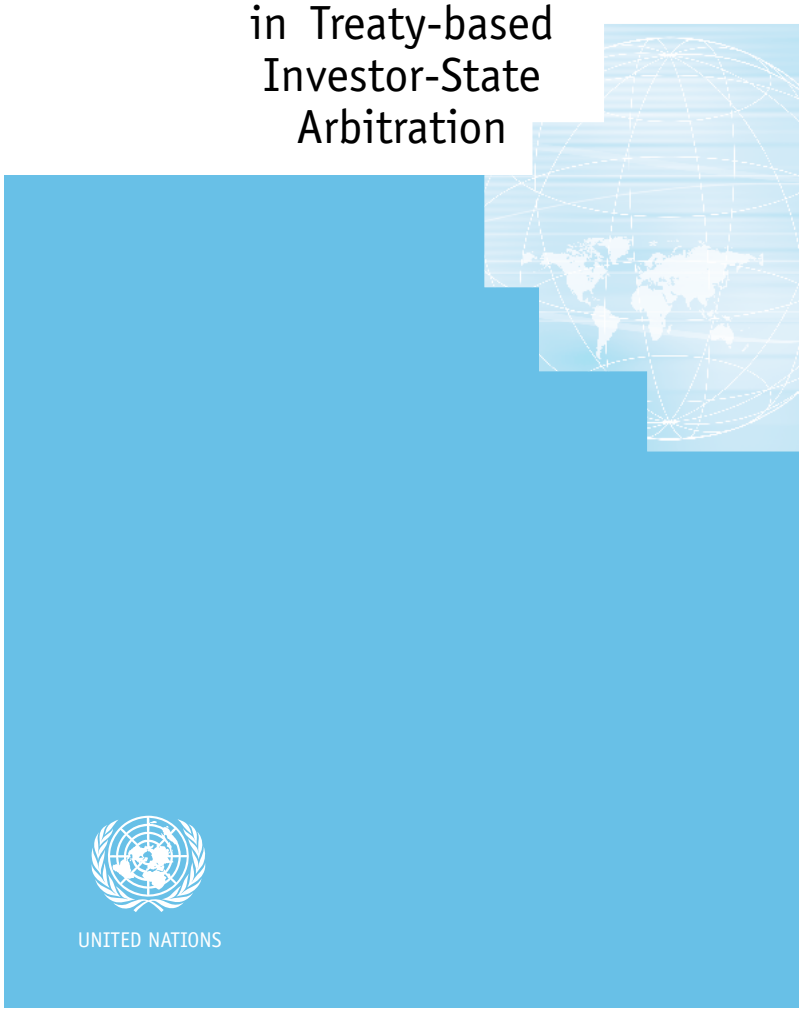
BACK TO INDEX

UNCITRAL
UNITED NATIONS
COMMISSION ON INTERNATIONAL TRADE LAW

UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules (2021)

UNCITRAL Expedited Arbitration Rules

UNCITRAL Rules on Transparency in Treaty-based Investor-State Arbitration



Further information may be obtained from:
UNCITRAL secretariat, Vienna International Centre
P.O. Box 500, 1400 Vienna, Austria
Telephone: (+43-1) 26060-4060 Telefax: (+43-1) 26060-5813
Internet: uncitral.un.org E-mail: uncitral@un.org

UNITED NATIONS COMMISSION ON INTERNATIONAL TRADE LAW

UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules

(with article 1, paragraph 4, as adopted in 2013 and article 1, paragraph 5, as adopted in 2021)

UNCITRAL Expedited Arbitration Rules

UNCITRAL Rules on Transparency in Treaty-based Investor-State Arbitration

UNITED NATIONS
Vienna, 2021

© United Nations: United Nations Commission on International Trade Law. 2021. All rights reserved worldwide.

This publication has not been formally edited.

Publishing production: English, Publishing and Library Section. United Nations Office at Vienna.

Contents

Page

General Assembly Resolution 76/108 1

UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules (with article 1, paragraph 4, as adopted in 2013 and article 1, paragraph 5, as adopted in 2021) 3

Section I. Introductory rules 3

Scope of application (article 1) 3
Notice and calculation of periods of time (article 2) . . 4
Notice of arbitration (article 3) 5
Response to the notice of arbitration (article 4) 6
Representation and assistance (article 5) 6
Designating and appointing authorities (article 6) . . . 7

Section II. Composition of the arbitral tribunal . . . 9

Number of arbitrators (article 7) 9
Appointment of arbitrators (articles 8 to 10) 9
Disclosures by and challenge of arbitrators (articles 11 to 13) 11
Replacement of an arbitrator (article 14) 12
Repetition of hearings in the event of the replacement of an arbitrator (article 15) 13
Exclusion of liability (article 16) 13

Section III. Arbitral proceedings 14

General provisions (article 17) 14
Place of arbitration (article 18) 15
Language (article 19) 15
Statement of claim (article 20) 15
Statement of defence (article 21) 16
Amendments to the claim or defence (article 22) . . . 17
Pleas as to the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal (article 23) 17
Further written statements (article 24) 18
Periods of time (article 25) 18
Interim measures (article 26) 18

Evidence (article 27) 19
Hearings (article 28) 20
Experts appointed by the arbitral tribunal (article 29) . . 20
Default (article 30) 21
Closure of hearings (article 31) 22
Waiver of right to object (article 32) 22

Section IV. The award 23

Decisions (article 33) 23
Form and effect of the award (article 34) 23
Applicable law, *amiable compositeur* (article 35) . . . 24
Settlement or other grounds for termination (article 36) . . 24
Interpretation of the award (article 37) 25
Correction of the award (article 38) 25
Additional award (article 39) 25
Definition of costs (article 40) 26
Fees and expenses of arbitrators (article 41) 26
Allocation of costs (article 42) 28
Deposit of costs (article 43) 28

Annex 30

Model arbitration clause for contracts 30
Possible waiver statement 30
Model statements of independence pursuant to article 11 of the Rules 30

Appendix – UNCITRAL Expedited Arbitration Rules . . 32

Scope of application (articles 1 and 2) 32
Conduct of the parties and the arbitral tribunal (article 3) 32
Notice of arbitration and statement of claim (article 4) 33
Response to the notice of arbitration and statement of defence (article 5) 33
Designating and appointing authorities (article 6) . . . 34
Number of arbitrators (article 7) 34
Appointment of a sole arbitrator (article 8) 34
Consultation with the parties (article 9) 34
Discretion of the arbitral tribunal with regard to periods of time (article 10) 35
Hearings (article 11) 35

Counterclaims or claims for the purpose of set-off (article 12) 35
Amendments and supplements to a claim or defence (article 13) 35
Further written statements (article 14) 36
Evidence (article 15) 36
Period of time for making the award (article 16) . . . 36
Annex to the UNCITRAL Expedited Arbitration Rules 38
Model arbitration clause for contracts 38
Model statement 38

UNCITRAL Rules on Transparency in Treaty-based Investor-State Arbitration 39

Article 1. Scope of application 39
Applicability of the Rules 39
Application of the Rules 39
Discretion and authority of the arbitral tribunal . . . 40
Applicable instrument in case of conflict 40
Application in non-UNCITRAL arbitrations 41
Article 2. Publication of information at the commencement of arbitral proceedings 41
Article 3. Publication of documents 41
Article 4. Submission by a third person 42
Article 5. Submission by a non-disputing Party to the treaty 43
Article 6. Hearings 44
Article 7. Exceptions to transparency 44
Confidential or protected information 44
Integrity of the arbitral process 46
Article 8. Repository of published information 46

Explanatory Note to the UNCITRAL Expedited Arbitration Rules 47

A. Scope of application 47
B. General provision on expedited arbitration 51
C. Notice of arbitration, response thereto, statements of claim and defence 52
D. Designating and appointing authorities 56

E. Number of arbitrators 57
F. Appointment of the arbitrator 57
G. Consultation with the parties 59
H. Time frames and the discretion of the arbitral tribunal 61
I. Hearings. 61
J. Counterclaims and claims for the purpose of set-off 63
K. Amendments and supplements to the claim or defence 63
L. Further written statements 63
M. Evidence 64
N. Period of time for making of the award 64
O. Model arbitration clause for expedited arbitration . . 68
P. The Expedited Rules and the Transparency Rules . . 69
Q. Time frames in the Expedited Rules 70

Resolution adopted by the General Assembly on 9 December 2021

76/108. Expedited Arbitration Rules of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law

The General Assembly,

Recalling its resolution 2205 (XXI) of 17 December 1966, by which it established the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law with a mandate to further the progressive harmonization and unification of the law of international trade and in that respect to bear in mind the interests of all peoples, in particular those of developing countries, in the extensive development of international trade,

Recalling also its resolution 31/98 of 15 December 1976 recommending the use of the Arbitration Rules of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law[1] and its resolution 65/22 of 6 December 2010 recommending the use of the Arbitration Rules as revised in 2010,[2]

Mindful of the value of arbitration as a method of settling disputes that may arise in the context of international commercial relations,

Noting the value of expedited arbitration as a streamlined and simplified procedure for settling disputes that arise in the context of international commercial relations within a shortened time frame, and its increased use in international and domestic commercial practice for parties to reach a final resolution of the dispute in a cost- and time-effective manner,

[1] *Official Records of the General Assembly, Thirty-first Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/31/17), chap. V, sect. C.

[2] Ibid., *Sixty-fifth Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/65/17), annex I.

Aware of the need to balance the efficiency of the arbitral proceedings and the rights of the disputing parties to due process and fair treatment,

Noting that the preparation of the UNCITRAL Expedited Arbitration Rules and the accompanying explanatory note benefited greatly from consultations with Governments and interested intergovernmental and international non-governmental organizations,

Noting also that the Expedited Arbitration Rules were adopted by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law at its fifty-fourth session, after due deliberations,[3]

1. *Expresses its appreciation* to the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law for having formulated and adopted the Expedited Arbitration Rules, the text of which is contained in annex IV to the report of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law on the work of its fifty-fourth session[4] and which came into effect on 19 September 2021;

2. *Recommends* the use of the UNCITRAL Expedited Arbitration Rules in the settlement of disputes arising in the context of international commercial relations;

3. *Requests* the Secretary-General to make all efforts to ensure that the UNCITRAL Expedited Arbitration Rules become generally known and available.

---

[3] Ibid., *Seventy-sixth Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/76/17), chap. VII.

[4] Ibid., annex IV.

UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules

(with article 1, paragraph 4, as adopted in 2013 and article 1, paragraph 5, as adopted in 2021)

Section I. Introductory rules

*Scope of application**

Article 1

1. Where parties have agreed that disputes between them in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not, shall be referred to arbitration under the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules, then such disputes shall be settled in accordance with these Rules subject to such modification as the parties may agree.

2. The parties to an arbitration agreement concluded after 15 August 2010 shall be presumed to have referred to the Rules in effect on the date of commencement of the arbitration, unless the parties have agreed to apply a particular version of the Rules. That presumption does not apply where the arbitration agreement has been concluded by accepting after 15 August 2010 an offer made before that date.

3. These Rules shall govern the arbitration except that where any of these Rules is in conflict with a provision of the law applicable to the arbitration from which the parties cannot derogate, that provision shall prevail.

4. For investor-State arbitration initiated pursuant to a treaty providing for the protection of investments or investors, these Rules include the UNCITRAL Rules on Transparency in Treaty-based Investor-State Arbitration ("Rules on Transparency"), subject to article 1 of the Rules on Transparency.

5. The Expedited Arbitration Rules in the appendix shall apply to the arbitration where the parties so agree.

*A model arbitration clause for contracts can be found in the annex to the Rules.

Notice and calculation of periods of time

Article 2

1. A notice, including a notification, communication or proposal, may be transmitted by any means of communication that provides or allows for a record of its transmission.

2. If an address has been designated by a party specifically for this purpose or authorized by the arbitral tribunal, any notice shall be delivered to that party at that address, and if so delivered shall be deemed to have been received. Delivery by electronic means such as facsimile or e-mail may only be made to an address so designated or authorized.

3. In the absence of such designation or authorization, a notice is:

(a) Received if it is physically delivered to the addressee; or

(b) Deemed to have been received if it is delivered at the place of business, habitual residence or mailing address of the addressee.

4. If, after reasonable efforts, delivery cannot be effected in accordance with paragraphs 2 or 3, a notice is deemed to have been received if it is sent to the addressee's last-known place of business, habitual residence or mailing address by registered letter or any other means that provides a record of delivery or of attempted delivery.

5. A notice shall be deemed to have been received on the day it is delivered in accordance with paragraphs 2, 3 or 4, or attempted to be delivered in accordance with paragraph 4. A notice transmitted by electronic means is deemed to have been received on the day it is sent, except that a notice of arbitration so transmitted is only deemed to have been received on the day when it reaches the addressee's electronic address.

6. For the purpose of calculating a period of time under these Rules, such period shall begin to run on the day following the day when a notice is received. If the last day of such period is an official holiday or a non-business day at the residence or place of business of the addressee, the period is extended until the first business day which follows. Official holidays or non-business days occurring during the running of the period of time are included in calculating the period.

Notice of arbitration

Article 3

1. The party or parties initiating recourse to arbitration (hereinafter called the "claimant") shall communicate to the other party or parties (hereinafter called the "respondent") a notice of arbitration.

2. Arbitral proceedings shall be deemed to commence on the date on which the notice of arbitration is received by the respondent.

3. The notice of arbitration shall include the following:

(a) A demand that the dispute be referred to arbitration;

(b) The names and contact details of the parties;

(c) Identification of the arbitration agreement that is invoked;

(d) Identification of any contract or other legal instrument out of or in relation to which the dispute arises or, in the absence of such contract or instrument, a brief description of the relevant relationship;

(e) A brief description of the claim and an indication of the amount involved, if any;

(f) The relief or remedy sought;

(g) A proposal as to the number of arbitrators, language and place of arbitration, if the parties have not previously agreed thereon.

4. The notice of arbitration may also include:

(a) A proposal for the designation of an appointing authority referred to in article 6, paragraph 1;

(b) A proposal for the appointment of a sole arbitrator referred to in article 8, paragraph 1;

(c) Notification of the appointment of an arbitrator referred to in article 9 or 10.

5. The constitution of the arbitral tribunal shall not be hindered by any controversy with respect to the sufficiency of the notice of arbitration, which shall be finally resolved by the arbitral tribunal.

Response to the notice of arbitration

Article 4

1. Within 30 days of the receipt of the notice of arbitration, the respondent shall communicate to the claimant a response to the notice of arbitration, which shall include:

(a) The name and contact details of each respondent;

(b) A response to the information set forth in the notice of arbitration, pursuant to article 3, paragraphs 3 *(c)* to *(g)*.

2. The response to the notice of arbitration may also include:

(a) Any plea that an arbitral tribunal to be constituted under these Rules lacks jurisdiction;

(b) A proposal for the designation of an appointing authority referred to in article 6, paragraph 1;

(c) A proposal for the appointment of a sole arbitrator referred to in article 8, paragraph 1;

(d) Notification of the appointment of an arbitrator referred to in article 9 or 10;

(e) A brief description of counterclaims or claims for the purpose of a set-off, if any, including where relevant, an indication of the amounts involved, and the relief or remedy sought;

(f) A notice of arbitration in accordance with article 3 in case the respondent formulates a claim against a party to the arbitration agreement other than the claimant.

3. The constitution of the arbitral tribunal shall not be hindered by any controversy with respect to the respondent's failure to communicate a response to the notice of arbitration, or an incomplete or late response to the notice of arbitration, which shall be finally resolved by the arbitral tribunal.

Representation and assistance

Article 5

Each party may be represented or assisted by persons chosen by it. The names and addresses of such persons must be communicated to all parties and to the arbitral tribunal. Such communication must specify whether the appointment is being made for purposes of representation or assistance. Where a person is to act as a representative of a party, the arbitral tribunal, on its own initiative or at the request of any party, may

at any time require proof of authority granted to the representative in such a form as the arbitral tribunal may determine.

Designating and appointing authorities

Article 6

1. Unless the parties have already agreed on the choice of an appointing authority, a party may at any time propose the name or names of one or more institutions or persons, including the Secretary-General of the Permanent Court of Arbitration at The Hague (hereinafter called the "PCA"), one of whom would serve as appointing authority.

2. If all parties have not agreed on the choice of an appointing authority within 30 days after a proposal made in accordance with paragraph 1 has been received by all other parties, any party may request the Secretary-General of the PCA to designate the appointing authority.

3. Where these Rules provide for a period of time within which a party must refer a matter to an appointing authority and no appointing authority has been agreed on or designated, the period is suspended from the date on which a party initiates the procedure for agreeing on or designating an appointing authority until the date of such agreement or designation.

4. Except as referred to in article 41, paragraph 4, if the appointing authority refuses to act, or if it fails to appoint an arbitrator within 30 days after it receives a party's request to do so, fails to act within any other period provided by these Rules, or fails to decide on a challenge to an arbitrator within a reasonable time after receiving a party's request to do so, any party may request the Secretary-General of the PCA to designate a substitute appointing authority.

5. In exercising their functions under these Rules, the appointing authority and the Secretary-General of the PCA may require from any party and the arbitrators the information they deem necessary and they shall give the parties and, where appropriate, the arbitrators, an opportunity to present their views in any manner they consider appropriate. All such communications to and from the appointing authority and the Secretary-General of the PCA shall also be provided by the sender to all other parties.

6. When the appointing authority is requested to appoint an arbitrator pursuant to articles 8, 9, 10 or 14, the party making the request shall send to the appointing authority copies of the notice of arbitration and, if it exists, any response to the notice of arbitration.

7. The appointing authority shall have regard to such considerations as are likely to secure the appointment of an independent and impartial arbitrator and shall take into account the advisability of appointing an arbitrator of a nationality other than the nationalities of the parties.

Section II. Composition of the arbitral tribunal

Number of arbitrators

Article 7

1. If the parties have not previously agreed on the number of arbitrators, and if within 30 days after the receipt by the respondent of the notice of arbitration the parties have not agreed that there shall be only one arbitrator, three arbitrators shall be appointed.

2. Notwithstanding paragraph 1, if no other parties have responded to a party's proposal to appoint a sole arbitrator within the time limit provided for in paragraph 1 and the party or parties concerned have failed to appoint a second arbitrator in accordance with article 9 or 10, the appointing authority may, at the request of a party, appoint a sole arbitrator pursuant to the procedure provided for in article 8, paragraph 2, if it determines that, in view of the circumstances of the case, this is more appropriate.

Appointment of arbitrators (articles 8 to 10)

Article 8

1. If the parties have agreed that a sole arbitrator is to be appointed and if within 30 days after receipt by all other parties of a proposal for the appointment of a sole arbitrator the parties have not reached agreement thereon, a sole arbitrator shall, at the request of a party, be appointed by the appointing authority.

2. The appointing authority shall appoint the sole arbitrator as promptly as possible. In making the appointment, the appointing authority shall use the following list-procedure, unless the parties agree that the list-procedure should not be used or unless the appointing authority determines in its discretion that the use of the list-procedure is not appropriate for the case:

(a) The appointing authority shall communicate to each of the parties an identical list containing at least three names;

(b) Within 15 days after the receipt of this list, each party may return the list to the appointing authority after having deleted the name or names to which it objects and numbered the remaining names on the list in the order of its preference;

(c) After the expiration of the above period of time the appointing authority shall appoint the sole arbitrator from among the names approved on the lists returned to it and in accordance with the order of preference indicated by the parties;

(d) If for any reason the appointment cannot be made according to this procedure, the appointing authority may exercise its discretion in appointing the sole arbitrator.

Article 9

1. If three arbitrators are to be appointed, each party shall appoint one arbitrator. The two arbitrators thus appointed shall choose the third arbitrator who will act as the presiding arbitrator of the arbitral tribunal.

2. If within 30 days after the receipt of a party's notification of the appointment of an arbitrator the other party has not notified the first party of the arbitrator it has appointed, the first party may request the appointing authority to appoint the second arbitrator.

3. If within 30 days after the appointment of the second arbitrator the two arbitrators have not agreed on the choice of the presiding arbitrator, the presiding arbitrator shall be appointed by the appointing authority in the same way as a sole arbitrator would be appointed under article 8.

Article 10

1. For the purposes of article 9, paragraph 1, where three arbitrators are to be appointed and there are multiple parties as claimant or as respondent, unless the parties have agreed to another method of appointment of arbitrators, the multiple parties jointly, whether as claimant or as respondent, shall appoint an arbitrator.

2. If the parties have agreed that the arbitral tribunal is to be composed of a number of arbitrators other than one or three, the arbitrators shall be appointed according to the method agreed upon by the parties.

3. In the event of any failure to constitute the arbitral tribunal under these Rules, the appointing authority shall, at the request of any party, constitute the arbitral tribunal and, in doing so, may revoke any appointment already made and appoint or reappoint each of the arbitrators and designate one of them as the presiding arbitrator.

*Disclosures by and challenge of arbitrators** (articles 11 to 13)*

Article 11

When a person is approached in connection with his or her possible appointment as an arbitrator, he or she shall disclose any circumstances likely to give rise to justifiable doubts as to his or her impartiality or independence. An arbitrator, from the time of his or her appointment and throughout the arbitral proceedings, shall without delay disclose any such circumstances to the parties and the other arbitrators unless they have already been informed by him or her of these circumstances.

Article 12

1. Any arbitrator may be challenged if circumstances exist that give rise to justifiable doubts as to the arbitrator's impartiality or independence.

2. A party may challenge the arbitrator appointed by it only for reasons of which it becomes aware after the appointment has been made.

3. In the event that an arbitrator fails to act or in the event of the de jure or de facto impossibility of his or her performing his or her functions, the procedure in respect of the challenge of an arbitrator as provided in article 13 shall apply.

Article 13

1. A party that intends to challenge an arbitrator shall send notice of its challenge within 15 days after it has been notified

**Model statements of independence pursuant to article 11 can be found in the annex to the Rules.

of the appointment of the challenged arbitrator, or within 15 days after the circumstances mentioned in articles 11 and 12 became known to that party.

2. The notice of challenge shall be communicated to all other parties, to the arbitrator who is challenged and to the other arbitrators. The notice of challenge shall state the reasons for the challenge.

3. When an arbitrator has been challenged by a party, all parties may agree to the challenge. The arbitrator may also, after the challenge, withdraw from his or her office. In neither case does this imply acceptance of the validity of the grounds for the challenge.

4. If, within 15 days from the date of the notice of challenge, all parties do not agree to the challenge or the challenged arbitrator does not withdraw, the party making the challenge may elect to pursue it. In that case, within 30 days from the date of the notice of challenge, it shall seek a decision on the challenge by the appointing authority.

Replacement of an arbitrator

Article 14

1. Subject to paragraph 2, in any event where an arbitrator has to be replaced during the course of the arbitral proceedings, a substitute arbitrator shall be appointed or chosen pursuant to the procedure provided for in articles 8 to 11 that was applicable to the appointment or choice of the arbitrator being replaced. This procedure shall apply even if during the process of appointing the arbitrator to be replaced, a party had failed to exercise its right to appoint or to participate in the appointment.

2. If, at the request of a party, the appointing authority determines that, in view of the exceptional circumstances of the case, it would be justified for a party to be deprived of its right to appoint a substitute arbitrator, the appointing authority may, after giving an opportunity to the parties and the remaining arbitrators to express their views: *(a)* appoint the substitute arbitrator; or *(b)* after the closure of the hearings, authorize the other arbitrators to proceed with the arbitration and make any decision or award.

Repetition of hearings in the event of the replacement of an arbitrator

Article 15

If an arbitrator is replaced, the proceedings shall resume at the stage where the arbitrator who was replaced ceased to perform his or her functions, unless the arbitral tribunal decides otherwise.

Exclusion of liability

Article 16

Save for intentional wrongdoing, the parties waive, to the fullest extent permitted under the applicable law, any claim against the arbitrators, the appointing authority and any person appointed by the arbitral tribunal based on any act or omission in connection with the arbitration.

Section III. Arbitral proceedings

General provisions

Article 17

1. Subject to these Rules, the arbitral tribunal may conduct the arbitration in such manner as it considers appropriate, provided that the parties are treated with equality and that at an appropriate stage of the proceedings each party is given a reasonable opportunity of presenting its case. The arbitral tribunal, in exercising its discretion, shall conduct the proceedings so as to avoid unnecessary delay and expense and to provide a fair and efficient process for resolving the parties' dispute.

2. As soon as practicable after its constitution and after inviting the parties to express their views, the arbitral tribunal shall establish the provisional timetable of the arbitration. The arbitral tribunal may, at any time, after inviting the parties to express their views, extend or abridge any period of time prescribed under these Rules or agreed by the parties.

3. If at an appropriate stage of the proceedings any party so requests, the arbitral tribunal shall hold hearings for the presentation of evidence by witnesses, including expert witnesses, or for oral argument. In the absence of such a request, the arbitral tribunal shall decide whether to hold such hearings or whether the proceedings shall be conducted on the basis of documents and other materials.

4. All communications to the arbitral tribunal by one party shall be communicated by that party to all other parties. Such communications shall be made at the same time, except as otherwise permitted by the arbitral tribunal if it may do so under applicable law.

5. The arbitral tribunal may, at the request of any party, allow one or more third persons to be joined in the arbitration as a party provided such person is a party to the arbitration agreement, unless the arbitral tribunal finds, after giving all parties, including the person or persons to be joined, the opportunity to be heard, that joinder should not be permitted

because of prejudice to any of those parties. The arbitral tribunal may make a single award or several awards in respect of all parties so involved in the arbitration.

Place of arbitration

Article 18

1. If the parties have not previously agreed on the place of arbitration, the place of arbitration shall be determined by the arbitral tribunal having regard to the circumstances of the case. The award shall be deemed to have been made at the place of arbitration.

2. The arbitral tribunal may meet at any location it considers appropriate for deliberations. Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the arbitral tribunal may also meet at any location it considers appropriate for any other purpose, including hearings.

Language

Article 19

1. Subject to an agreement by the parties, the arbitral tribunal shall, promptly after its appointment, determine the language or languages to be used in the proceedings. This determination shall apply to the statement of claim, the statement of defence, and any further written statements and, if oral hearings take place, to the language or languages to be used in such hearings.

2. The arbitral tribunal may order that any documents annexed to the statement of claim or statement of defence, and any supplementary documents or exhibits submitted in the course of the proceedings, delivered in their original language, shall be accompanied by a translation into the language or languages agreed upon by the parties or determined by the arbitral tribunal.

Statement of claim

Article 20

1. The claimant shall communicate its statement of claim in writing to the respondent and to each of the arbitrators within

a period of time to be determined by the arbitral tribunal. The claimant may elect to treat its notice of arbitration referred to in article 3 as a statement of claim, provided that the notice of arbitration also complies with the requirements of paragraphs 2 to 4 of this article.

2. The statement of claim shall include the following particulars:

(a) The names and contact details of the parties;

(b) A statement of the facts supporting the claim;

(c) The points at issue;

(d) The relief or remedy sought;

(e) The legal grounds or arguments supporting the claim.

3. A copy of any contract or other legal instrument out of or in relation to which the dispute arises and of the arbitration agreement shall be annexed to the statement of claim.

4. The statement of claim should, as far as possible, be accompanied by all documents and other evidence relied upon by the claimant, or contain references to them.

Statement of defence

Article 21

1. The respondent shall communicate its statement of defence in writing to the claimant and to each of the arbitrators within a period of time to be determined by the arbitral tribunal. The respondent may elect to treat its response to the notice of arbitration referred to in article 4 as a statement of defence, provided that the response to the notice of arbitration also complies with the requirements of paragraph 2 of this article.

2. The statement of defence shall reply to the particulars *(b)* to *(e)* of the statement of claim (art. 20, para. 2). The statement of defence should, as far as possible, be accompanied by all documents and other evidence relied upon by the respondent, or contain references to them.

3. In its statement of defence, or at a later stage in the arbitral proceedings if the arbitral tribunal decides that the delay was justified under the circumstances, the respondent may make a counterclaim or rely on a claim for the purpose of a set-off provided that the arbitral tribunal has jurisdiction over it.

4. The provisions of article 20, paragraphs 2 to 4, shall apply to a counterclaim, a claim under article 4, paragraph 2 *(f)*, and a claim relied on for the purpose of a set-off.

Amendments to the claim or defence

Article 22

During the course of the arbitral proceedings, a party may amend or supplement its claim or defence, including a counterclaim or a claim for the purpose of a set-off, unless the arbitral tribunal considers it inappropriate to allow such amendment or supplement having regard to the delay in making it or prejudice to other parties or any other circumstances. However, a claim or defence, including a counterclaim or a claim for the purpose of a set-off, may not be amended or supplemented in such a manner that the amended or supplemented claim or defence falls outside the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal.

Pleas as to the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal

Article 23

1. The arbitral tribunal shall have the power to rule on its own jurisdiction, including any objections with respect to the existence or validity of the arbitration agreement. For that purpose, an arbitration clause that forms part of a contract shall be treated as an agreement independent of the other terms of the contract. A decision by the arbitral tribunal that the contract is null shall not entail automatically the invalidity of the arbitration clause.

2. A plea that the arbitral tribunal does not have jurisdiction shall be raised no later than in the statement of defence or, with respect to a counterclaim or a claim for the purpose of a set-off, in the reply to the counterclaim or to the claim for the purpose of a set-off. A party is not precluded from raising such a plea by the fact that it has appointed, or participated in the appointment of, an arbitrator. A plea that the arbitral tribunal is exceeding the scope of its authority shall be raised as soon as the matter alleged to be beyond the scope of its authority is raised during the arbitral proceedings. The arbitral tribunal may, in either case, admit a later plea if it considers the delay justified.

3. The arbitral tribunal may rule on a plea referred to in paragraph 2 either as a preliminary question or in an award on the merits. The arbitral tribunal may continue the arbitral proceedings and make an award, notwithstanding any pending challenge to its jurisdiction before a court.

Further written statements

Article 24

The arbitral tribunal shall decide which further written statements, in addition to the statement of claim and the statement of defence, shall be required from the parties or may be presented by them and shall fix the periods of time for communicating such statements.

Periods of time

Article 25

The periods of time fixed by the arbitral tribunal for the communication of written statements (including the statement of claim and statement of defence) should not exceed 45 days. However, the arbitral tribunal may extend the time limits if it concludes that an extension is justified.

Interim measures

Article 26

1. The arbitral tribunal may, at the request of a party, grant interim measures.

2. An interim measure is any temporary measure by which, at any time prior to the issuance of the award by which the dispute is finally decided, the arbitral tribunal orders a party, for example and without limitation, to:

(a) Maintain or restore the status quo pending determination of the dispute;

(b) Take action that would prevent, or refrain from taking action that is likely to cause, (i) current or imminent harm or (ii) prejudice to the arbitral process itself;

(c) Provide a means of preserving assets out of which a subsequent award may be satisfied; or

(d) Preserve evidence that may be relevant and material to the resolution of the dispute.

3. The party requesting an interim measure under paragraphs 2 *(a)* to *(c)* shall satisfy the arbitral tribunal that:

(a) Harm not adequately reparable by an award of damages is likely to result if the measure is not ordered, and such harm substantially outweighs the harm that is likely to result to the party against whom the measure is directed if the measure is granted; and

(b) There is a reasonable possibility that the requesting party will succeed on the merits of the claim. The determination on this possibility shall not affect the discretion of the arbitral tribunal in making any subsequent determination.

4. With regard to a request for an interim measure under paragraph 2 *(d),* the requirements in paragraphs 3 *(a)* and *(b)* shall apply only to the extent the arbitral tribunal considers appropriate.

5. The arbitral tribunal may modify, suspend or terminate an interim measure it has granted, upon application of any party or, in exceptional circumstances and upon prior notice to the parties, on the arbitral tribunal's own initiative.

6. The arbitral tribunal may require the party requesting an interim measure to provide appropriate security in connection with the measure.

7. The arbitral tribunal may require any party promptly to disclose any material change in the circumstances on the basis of which the interim measure was requested or granted.

8. The party requesting an interim measure may be liable for any costs and damages caused by the measure to any party if the arbitral tribunal later determines that, in the circumstances then prevailing, the measure should not have been granted. The arbitral tribunal may award such costs and damages at any point during the proceedings.

9. A request for interim measures addressed by any party to a judicial authority shall not be deemed incompatible with the agreement to arbitrate, or as a waiver of that agreement.

Evidence

Article 27

1. Each party shall have the burden of proving the facts relied on to support its claim or defence.

2. Witnesses, including expert witnesses, who are presented by the parties to testify to the arbitral tribunal on any issue of fact or expertise may be any individual, notwithstanding that the individual is a party to the arbitration or in any way related to a party. Unless otherwise directed by the arbitral tribunal, statements by witnesses, including expert witnesses, may be presented in writing and signed by them.

3. At any time during the arbitral proceedings the arbitral tribunal may require the parties to produce documents, exhibits or other evidence within such a period of time as the arbitral tribunal shall determine.

4. The arbitral tribunal shall determine the admissibility, relevance, materiality and weight of the evidence offered.

Hearings

Article 28

1. In the event of an oral hearing, the arbitral tribunal shall give the parties adequate advance notice of the date, time and place thereof.

2. Witnesses, including expert witnesses, may be heard under the conditions and examined in the manner set by the arbitral tribunal.

3. Hearings shall be held in camera unless the parties agree otherwise. The arbitral tribunal may require the retirement of any witness or witnesses, including expert witnesses, during the testimony of such other witnesses, except that a witness, including an expert witness, who is a party to the arbitration shall not, in principle, be asked to retire.

4. The arbitral tribunal may direct that witnesses, including expert witnesses, be examined through means of telecommunication that do not require their physical presence at the hearing (such as videoconference).

Experts appointed by the arbitral tribunal

Article 29

1. After consultation with the parties, the arbitral tribunal may appoint one or more independent experts to report to it,

in writing, on specific issues to be determined by the arbitral tribunal. A copy of the expert's terms of reference, established by the arbitral tribunal, shall be communicated to the parties.

2. The expert shall, in principle before accepting appointment, submit to the arbitral tribunal and to the parties a description of his or her qualifications and a statement of his or her impartiality and independence. Within the time ordered by the arbitral tribunal, the parties shall inform the arbitral tribunal whether they have any objections as to the expert's qualifications, impartiality or independence. The arbitral tribunal shall decide promptly whether to accept any such objections. After an expert's appointment, a party may object to the expert's qualifications, impartiality or independence only if the objection is for reasons of which the party becomes aware after the appointment has been made. The arbitral tribunal shall decide promptly what, if any, action to take.

3. The parties shall give the expert any relevant information or produce for his or her inspection any relevant documents or goods that he or she may require of them. Any dispute between a party and such expert as to the relevance of the required information or production shall be referred to the arbitral tribunal for decision.

4. Upon receipt of the expert's report, the arbitral tribunal shall communicate a copy of the report to the parties, which shall be given the opportunity to express, in writing, their opinion on the report. A party shall be entitled to examine any document on which the expert has relied in his or her report.

5. At the request of any party, the expert, after delivery of the report, may be heard at a hearing where the parties shall have the opportunity to be present and to interrogate the expert. At this hearing, any party may present expert witnesses in order to testify on the points at issue. The provisions of article 28 shall be applicable to such proceedings.

Default

Article 30

1. If, within the period of time fixed by these Rules or the arbitral tribunal, without showing sufficient cause:

(a) The claimant has failed to communicate its statement of claim, the arbitral tribunal shall issue an order for the termination of the arbitral proceedings, unless there are remaining

matters that may need to be decided and the arbitral tribunal considers it appropriate to do so;

(b) The respondent has failed to communicate its response to the notice of arbitration or its statement of defence, the arbitral tribunal shall order that the proceedings continue, without treating such failure in itself as an admission of the claimant's allegations; the provisions of this subparagraph also apply to a claimant's failure to submit a defence to a counterclaim or to a claim for the purpose of a set-off.

2. If a party, duly notified under these Rules, fails to appear at a hearing, without showing sufficient cause for such failure, the arbitral tribunal may proceed with the arbitration.

3. If a party, duly invited by the arbitral tribunal to produce documents, exhibits or other evidence, fails to do so within the established period of time, without showing sufficient cause for such failure, the arbitral tribunal may make the award on the evidence before it.

Closure of hearings

Article 31

1. The arbitral tribunal may inquire of the parties if they have any further proof to offer or witnesses to be heard or submissions to make and, if there are none, it may declare the hearings closed.

2. The arbitral tribunal may, if it considers it necessary owing to exceptional circumstances, decide, on its own initiative or upon application of a party, to reopen the hearings at any time before the award is made.

Waiver of right to object

Article 32

A failure by any party to object promptly to any non-compliance with these Rules or with any requirement of the arbitration agreement shall be deemed to be a waiver of the right of such party to make such an objection, unless such party can show that, under the circumstances, its failure to object was justified.

Section IV. The award

Decisions

Article 33

1. When there is more than one arbitrator, any award or other decision of the arbitral tribunal shall be made by a majority of the arbitrators.

2. In the case of questions of procedure, when there is no majority or when the arbitral tribunal so authorizes, the presiding arbitrator may decide alone, subject to revision, if any, by the arbitral tribunal.

Form and effect of the award

Article 34

1. The arbitral tribunal may make separate awards on different issues at different times.

2. All awards shall be made in writing and shall be final and binding on the parties. The parties shall carry out all awards without delay.

3. The arbitral tribunal shall state the reasons upon which the award is based, unless the parties have agreed that no reasons are to be given.

4. An award shall be signed by the arbitrators and it shall contain the date on which the award was made and indicate the place of arbitration. Where there is more than one arbitrator and any of them fails to sign, the award shall state the reason for the absence of the signature.

5. An award may be made public with the consent of all parties or where and to the extent disclosure is required of a party by legal duty, to protect or pursue a legal right or in relation to legal proceedings before a court or other competent authority.

6. Copies of the award signed by the arbitrators shall be communicated to the parties by the arbitral tribunal.

Applicable law, amiable compositeur

Article 35

1. The arbitral tribunal shall apply the rules of law designated by the parties as applicable to the substance of the dispute. Failing such designation by the parties, the arbitral tribunal shall apply the law which it determines to be appropriate.

2. The arbitral tribunal shall decide as amiable compositeur or ex aequo et bono only if the parties have expressly authorized the arbitral tribunal to do so.

3. In all cases, the arbitral tribunal shall decide in accordance with the terms of the contract, if any, and shall take into account any usage of trade applicable to the transaction.

Settlement or other grounds for termination

Article 36

1. If, before the award is made, the parties agree on a settlement of the dispute, the arbitral tribunal shall either issue an order for the termination of the arbitral proceedings or, if requested by the parties and accepted by the arbitral tribunal, record the settlement in the form of an arbitral award on agreed terms. The arbitral tribunal is not obliged to give reasons for such an award.

2. If, before the award is made, the continuation of the arbitral proceedings becomes unnecessary or impossible for any reason not mentioned in paragraph 1, the arbitral tribunal shall inform the parties of its intention to issue an order for the termination of the proceedings. The arbitral tribunal shall have the power to issue such an order unless there are remaining matters that may need to be decided and the arbitral tribunal considers it appropriate to do so.

3. Copies of the order for termination of the arbitral proceedings or of the arbitral award on agreed terms, signed by the arbitrators, shall be communicated by the arbitral tribunal to the parties. Where an arbitral award on agreed terms is made, the provisions of article 34, paragraphs 2, 4 and 5, shall apply.

Interpretation of the award

Article 37

1. Within 30 days after the receipt of the award, a party, with notice to the other parties, may request that the arbitral tribunal give an interpretation of the award.

2. The interpretation shall be given in writing within 45 days after the receipt of the request. The interpretation shall form part of the award and the provisions of article 34, paragraphs 2 to 6, shall apply.

Correction of the award

Article 38

1. Within 30 days after the receipt of the award, a party, with notice to the other parties, may request the arbitral tribunal to correct in the award any error in computation, any clerical or typographical error, or any error or omission of a similar nature. If the arbitral tribunal considers that the request is justified, it shall make the correction within 45 days of receipt of the request.

2. The arbitral tribunal may within 30 days after the communication of the award make such corrections on its own initiative.

3. Such corrections shall be in writing and shall form part of the award. The provisions of article 34, paragraphs 2 to 6, shall apply.

Additional award

Article 39

1. Within 30 days after the receipt of the termination order or the award, a party, with notice to the other parties, may request the arbitral tribunal to make an award or an additional award as to claims presented in the arbitral proceedings but not decided by the arbitral tribunal.

2. If the arbitral tribunal considers the request for an award or additional award to be justified, it shall render or complete its award within 60 days after the receipt of the request. The

arbitral tribunal may extend, if necessary, the period of time within which it shall make the award.

3. When such an award or additional award is made, the provisions of article 34, paragraphs 2 to 6, shall apply.

Definition of costs

Article 40

1. The arbitral tribunal shall fix the costs of arbitration in the final award and, if it deems appropriate, in another decision.

2. The term "costs" includes only:

(a) The fees of the arbitral tribunal to be stated separately as to each arbitrator and to be fixed by the tribunal itself in accordance with article 41;

(b) The reasonable travel and other expenses incurred by the arbitrators;

(c) The reasonable costs of expert advice and of other assistance required by the arbitral tribunal;

(d) The reasonable travel and other expenses of witnesses to the extent such expenses are approved by the arbitral tribunal;

(e) The legal and other costs incurred by the parties in relation to the arbitration to the extent that the arbitral tribunal determines that the amount of such costs is reasonable;

(f) Any fees and expenses of the appointing authority as well as the fees and expenses of the Secretary-General of the PCA.

3. In relation to interpretation, correction or completion of any award under articles 37 to 39, the arbitral tribunal may charge the costs referred to in paragraphs 2 *(b)* to *(f)*, but no additional fees.

Fees and expenses of arbitrators

Article 41

1. The fees and expenses of the arbitrators shall be reasonable in amount, taking into account the amount in dispute, the complexity of the subject matter, the time spent by the arbitrators and any other relevant circumstances of the case.

2. If there is an appointing authority and it applies or has stated that it will apply a schedule or particular method for determining the fees for arbitrators in international cases, the arbitral tribunal in fixing its fees shall take that schedule or method into account to the extent that it considers appropriate in the circumstances of the case.

3. Promptly after its constitution, the arbitral tribunal shall inform the parties as to how it proposes to determine its fees and expenses, including any rates it intends to apply. Within 15 days of receiving that proposal, any party may refer the proposal to the appointing authority for review. If, within 45 days of receipt of such a referral, the appointing authority finds that the proposal of the arbitral tribunal is inconsistent with paragraph 1, it shall make any necessary adjustments thereto, which shall be binding upon the arbitral tribunal.

4. (a) When informing the parties of the arbitrators' fees and expenses that have been fixed pursuant to article 40, paragraphs 2 *(a)* and *(b)*, the arbitral tribunal shall also explain the manner in which the corresponding amounts have been calculated;

(b) Within 15 days of receiving the arbitral tribunal's determination of fees and expenses, any party may refer for review such determination to the appointing authority. If no appointing authority has been agreed upon or designated, or if the appointing authority fails to act within the time specified in these Rules, then the review shall be made by the Secretary-General of the PCA;

(c) If the appointing authority or the Secretary-General of the PCA finds that the arbitral tribunal's determination is inconsistent with the arbitral tribunal's proposal (and any adjustment thereto) under paragraph 3 or is otherwise manifestly excessive, it shall, within 45 days of receiving such a referral, make any adjustments to the arbitral tribunal's determination that are necessary to satisfy the criteria in paragraph 1. Any such adjustments shall be binding upon the arbitral tribunal;

(d) Any such adjustments shall either be included by the arbitral tribunal in its award or, if the award has already been issued, be implemented in a correction to the award, to which the procedure of article 38, paragraph 3, shall apply.

5. Throughout the procedure under paragraphs 3 and 4, the arbitral tribunal shall proceed with the arbitration, in accordance with article 17, paragraph 1.

6. A referral under paragraph 4 shall not affect any determination in the award other than the arbitral tribunal's fees and expenses; nor shall it delay the recognition and enforcement of all parts of the award other than those relating to the determination of the arbitral tribunal's fees and expenses.

Allocation of costs

Article 42

1. The costs of the arbitration shall in principle be borne by the unsuccessful party or parties. However, the arbitral tribunal may apportion each of such costs between the parties if it determines that apportionment is reasonable, taking into account the circumstances of the case.

2. The arbitral tribunal shall in the final award or, if it deems appropriate, in any other award, determine any amount that a party may have to pay to another party as a result of the decision on allocation of costs.

Deposit of costs

Article 43

1. The arbitral tribunal, on its establishment, may request the parties to deposit an equal amount as an advance for the costs referred to in article 40, paragraphs 2 *(a)* to *(c)*.

2. During the course of the arbitral proceedings the arbitral tribunal may request supplementary deposits from the parties.

3. If an appointing authority has been agreed upon or designated, and when a party so requests and the appointing authority consents to perform the function, the arbitral tribunal shall fix the amounts of any deposits or supplementary deposits only after consultation with the appointing authority, which may make any comments to the arbitral tribunal that it deems appropriate concerning the amount of such deposits and supplementary deposits.

4. If the required deposits are not paid in full within 30 days after the receipt of the request, the arbitral tribunal shall so inform the parties in order that one or more of them may make the required payment. If such payment is not made, the arbitral tribunal may order the suspension or termination of the arbitral proceedings.

5. After a termination order or final award has been made, the arbitral tribunal shall render an accounting to the parties of the deposits received and return any unexpended balance to the parties.

Annex

Model arbitration clause for contracts

Any dispute, controversy or claim arising out of or relating to this contract, or the breach, termination or invalidity thereof, shall be settled by arbitration in accordance with the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules.

Note. Parties should consider adding:

(a) The appointing authority shall be . . . [name of institution or person];

(b) The number of arbitrators shall be . . .. [one or three];

(c) The place of arbitration shall be . . . [town and country];

(d) The language to be used in the arbitral proceedings shall be . . . .

Possible waiver statement

Note. If the parties wish to exclude recourse against the arbitral award that may be available under the applicable law, they may consider adding a provision to that effect as suggested below, considering, however, that the effectiveness and conditions of such an exclusion depend on the applicable law.

Waiver

The parties hereby waive their right to any form of recourse against an award to any court or other competent authority, insofar as such waiver can validly be made under the applicable law.

Model statements of independence pursuant to article 11 of the Rules

No circumstances to disclose

I am impartial and independent of each of the parties and

intend to remain so. To the best of my knowledge, there are no circumstances, past or present, likely to give rise to justifiable doubts as to my impartiality or independence. I shall promptly notify the parties and the other arbitrators of any such circumstances that may subsequently come to my attention during this arbitration.

Circumstances to disclose

I am impartial and independent of each of the parties and intend to remain so. Attached is a statement made pursuant to article 11 of the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules of *(a)* my past and present professional, business and other relationships with the parties and *(b)* any other relevant circumstances. [Include statement.] I confirm that those circumstances do not affect my independence and impartiality. I shall promptly notify the parties and the other arbitrators of any such further relationships or circumstances that may subsequently come to my attention during this arbitration.

Note. Any party may consider requesting from the arbitrator the following addition to the statement of independence:

I confirm, on the basis of the information presently available to me, that I can devote the time necessary to conduct this arbitration diligently, efficiently and in accordance with the time limits in the Rules.

Appendix – UNCITRAL Expedited Arbitration Rules

Scope of application

Article 1

Where parties have agreed that disputes between them in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not, shall be referred to arbitration under the UNCITRAL Expedited Arbitration Rules ("Expedited Rules"), then such disputes shall be settled in accordance with the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules as modified by these Expedited Rules and subject to such modification as the parties may agree.***

Article 2

1. At any time during the proceedings, the parties may agree that the Expedited Rules shall no longer apply to the arbitration.

2. At the request of a party, the arbitral tribunal may, in exceptional circumstances and after inviting the parties to express their views, determine that the Expedited Rules shall no longer apply to the arbitration. The arbitral tribunal shall state the reasons upon which that determination is based.

3. When the Expedited Rules no longer apply to the arbitration pursuant to paragraph 1 or 2, the arbitral tribunal shall remain in place and conduct the arbitration in accordance with the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules.

Conduct of the parties and the arbitral tribunal

Article 3

1. The parties shall act expeditiously throughout the proceedings.

2. The arbitral tribunal shall conduct the proceedings

***Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the following articles in the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules do not apply to expedited arbitration: article 3(4)*(a)* and *(b);* article 6(2); article 7; article 8(1); first sentence of article 20(1); first sentence of article 21(1); article 21(3); article 22; and second sentence of article 27(2).

expeditiously taking into account the fact that the parties agreed to refer their dispute to expedited arbitration and the time frames in the Expedited Rules.

3. The arbitral tribunal may, after inviting the parties to express their views and taking into account the circumstances of the case, utilize any technological means as it considers appropriate to conduct the proceedings, including to communicate with the parties and to hold consultations and hearings remotely.

Notice of arbitration and statement of claim

Article 4

1. A notice of arbitration shall also include:

(a) A proposal for the designation of an appointing authority, unless the parties have previously agreed thereon; and

(b) A proposal for the appointment of an arbitrator.

2. When communicating its notice of arbitration to the respondent, the claimant shall also communicate its statement of claim.

3. The claimant shall communicate the notice of arbitration and the statement of claim to the arbitral tribunal as soon as it is constituted.

Response to the notice of arbitration and statement of defence

Article 5

1. Within 15 days of the receipt of the notice of arbitration, the respondent shall communicate to the claimant a response to the notice of arbitration, which shall also include responses to the information set forth in the notice of arbitration pursuant to article 4(1)*(a)* and *(b)* of the Expedited Rules.

2. The respondent shall communicate its statement of defence to the claimant and the arbitral tribunal within 15 days of the constitution of the arbitral tribunal.

Designating and appointing authorities

Article 6

1. If all parties have not agreed on the choice of an appointing authority 15 days after a proposal for the designation of an appointing authority has been received by all other parties, any party may request the Secretary-General of the Permanent Court of Arbitration (hereinafter called the "PCA") to designate the appointing authority or to serve as appointing authority.

2. When making the request under article 6(4) of the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules, a party may request the Secretary-General of the PCA to serve as appointing authority.

3. If requested to serve as appointing authority in accordance with paragraph 1 or 2, the Secretary-General of the PCA will serve as appointing authority unless it determines that in view of the circumstances of the case, it is more appropriate to designate an appointing authority.

Number of arbitrators

Article 7

Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, there shall be one arbitrator.

Appointment of a sole arbitrator

Article 8

1. A sole arbitrator shall be appointed jointly by the parties.

2. If the parties have not reached agreement on the appointment of a sole arbitrator 15 days after a proposal has been received by all other parties, a sole arbitrator shall, at the request of a party, be appointed by the appointing authority in accordance with article 8(2) of the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules.

Consultation with the parties

Article 9

Promptly after and within 15 days of its constitution, the arbitral tribunal shall consult the parties, through a case management conference or otherwise, on the manner in which it will conduct the arbitration.

Discretion of the arbitral tribunal with regard to periods of time

Article 10

Subject to article 16 of the Expedited Rules, the arbitral tribunal may at any time, after inviting the parties to express their views, extend or abridge any period of time prescribed under the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules and the Expedited Rules or agreed by the parties.

Hearings

Article 11

The arbitral tribunal may, after inviting the parties to express their views and in the absence of a request to hold hearings, decide that hearings shall not be held.

Counterclaims or claims for the purpose of set-off

Article 12

1. A counterclaim or a claim for the purpose of a set-off shall be made no later than in the statement of defence provided that the arbitral tribunal has jurisdiction over it.

2. The respondent may not make a counterclaim or rely on a claim for the purpose of a set-off at a later stage in the arbitral proceedings, unless the arbitral tribunal considers it appropriate to allow such claim having regard to the delay in making it or prejudice to other parties or any other circumstances.

Amendments and supplements to a claim or defence

Article 13

During the course of the arbitral proceedings, a party may not amend or supplement its claim or defence, including a counterclaim or a claim for the purpose of a set-off, unless the arbitral tribunal considers it appropriate to allow such amendment or supplement having regard to when it is requested or prejudice to other parties or any other circumstances. However, a claim or defence, including a counterclaim or a claim for the purpose of a set-off, may not be amended or supplemented in such a manner that the amended or supplemented claim or defence falls outside the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal.

Further written statements

Article 14

The arbitral tribunal may, after inviting the parties to express their views, decide whether any further written statement shall be required from the parties or may be presented by them.

Evidence

Article 15

1. The arbitral tribunal may decide which documents, exhibits or other evidence the parties should produce. The arbitral tribunal may reject any request, unless made by all parties, to establish a procedure whereby each party can request another party to produce documents.

2. Unless otherwise directed by the arbitral tribunal, statements by witnesses, including expert witnesses, shall be presented in writing and signed by them.

3. The arbitral tribunal may decide which witnesses, including expert witnesses, shall testify to the arbitral tribunal if hearings are held.

Period of time for making the award

Article 16

1. The award shall be made within six months from the date of the constitution of the arbitral tribunal unless otherwise agreed by the parties.

2. The arbitral tribunal may, in exceptional circumstances and after inviting the parties to express their views, extend the period of time established in accordance with paragraph 1. The extended period of time shall not exceed a total of nine months from the date of the constitution of the arbitral tribunal.

3. If the arbitral tribunal concludes that it is at risk of not rendering an award within nine months from the date of the constitution of the arbitral tribunal, it shall propose a final extended time limit, state the reasons for the proposal, and invite the parties to express their views within a fixed period of time. The extension shall be adopted only if all parties express their agreement to the proposal within the fixed period of time.

4. If there is no agreement to the extension in paragraph 3, any party may make a request that the Expedited Rules no longer apply to the arbitration. After inviting the parties to express their views, the arbitral tribunal may determine to continue to conduct the arbitration in accordance with the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules

Annex to the UNCITRAL Expedited Arbitration Rules

Model arbitration clause for contracts

Any dispute, controversy or claim arising out of or relating to this contract, or the breach, termination or invalidity thereof, shall be settled by arbitration in accordance with the UNCITRAL Expedited Arbitration Rules.

Note: Parties should consider adding:

(a) The appointing authority shall be . . . [name of institution or person];

(b) The place of arbitration shall be . . . [town and country];

(c) The language to be used in the arbitral proceedings shall be ...;

Model statement

Note. Parties should consider requesting from the arbitrator the following addition to the statement of independence pursuant to article 11 of the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules:

I confirm, on the basis of the information presently available to me, that I can devote the time necessary to conduct this arbitration diligently, efficiently, expeditiously and in accordance with the time limits in the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules and the UNCITRAL Expedited Arbitration Rules.

UNCITRAL Rules on Transparency in Treaty-based Investor-State Arbitration

Article 1. Scope of application

Applicability of the Rules

1. The UNCITRAL Rules on Transparency in Treaty-based Investor-State Arbitration ("Rules on Transparency") shall apply to investor-State arbitration initiated under the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules pursuant to a treaty providing for the protection of investments or investors ("treaty")* concluded on or after 1 April 2014 unless the Parties to the treaty** have agreed otherwise.

2. In investor-State arbitrations initiated under the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules pursuant to a treaty concluded before 1 April 2014, these Rules shall apply only when:

(a) The parties to an arbitration (the "disputing parties") agree to their application in respect of that arbitration; or

(b) The Parties to the treaty or, in the case of a multilateral treaty, the State of the claimant and the respondent State, have agreed after 1 April 2014 to their application.

Application of the Rules

3. In any arbitration in which the Rules on Transparency apply pursuant to a treaty or to an agreement by the Parties to that treaty:

(a) The disputing parties may not derogate from these Rules, by agreement or otherwise, unless permitted to do so by the treaty;

---

*For the purposes of the Rules on Transparency, a "treaty" shall be understood broadly as encompassing any bilateral or multilateral treaty that contains provisions on the protection of investments or investors and a right for investors to resort to arbitration against Parties to the treaty, including any treaty commonly referred to as a free trade agreement, economic integration agreement, trade and investment framework or cooperation agreement, or bilateral investment treaty.

**For the purposes of the Rules on Transparency, any reference to a "Party to the treaty" or a "State" includes, for example, a regional economic integration organization where it is a Party to the treaty.

(b) The arbitral tribunal shall have the power, besides its discretionary authority under certain provisions of these Rules, to adapt the requirements of any specific provision of these Rules to the particular circumstances of the case, after consultation with the disputing parties, if such adaptation is necessary to conduct the arbitration in a practical manner and is consistent with the transparency objective of these Rules.

Discretion and authority of the arbitral tribunal

4. Where the Rules on Transparency provide for the arbitral tribunal to exercise discretion, the arbitral tribunal in exercising such discretion shall take into account:

(a) The public interest in transparency in treaty-based investor-State arbitration and in the particular arbitral proceedings; and

(b) The disputing parties' interest in a fair and efficient resolution of their dispute.

5. These Rules shall not affect any authority that the arbitral tribunal may otherwise have under the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules to conduct the arbitration in such a manner as to promote transparency, for example by accepting submissions from third persons.

6. In the presence of any conduct, measure or other action having the effect of wholly undermining the transparency objectives of these Rules, the arbitral tribunal shall ensure that those objectives prevail.

Applicable instrument in case of conflict

7. Where the Rules on Transparency apply, they shall supplement any applicable arbitration rules. Where there is a conflict between the Rules on Transparency and the applicable arbitration rules, the Rules on Transparency shall prevail. Notwithstanding any provision in these Rules, where there is a conflict between the Rules on Transparency and the treaty, the provisions of the treaty shall prevail.

8. Where any of these Rules is in conflict with a provision of the law applicable to the arbitration from which the disputing parties cannot derogate, that provision shall prevail.

Application in non-UNCITRAL arbitrations

9. These Rules are available for use in investor-State arbitrations initiated under rules other than the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules or in ad hoc proceedings.

Article 2. Publication of information at the commencement of arbitral proceedings

Once the notice of arbitration has been received by the respondent, each of the disputing parties shall promptly communicate a copy of the notice of arbitration to the repository referred to under article 8. Upon receipt of the notice of arbitration from the respondent, or upon receipt of the notice of arbitration and a record of its transmission to the respondent, the repository shall promptly make available to the public information regarding the name of the disputing parties, the economic sector involved and the treaty under which the claim is being made.

Article 3. Publication of documents

1. Subject to article 7, the following documents shall be made available to the public: the notice of arbitration, the response to the notice of arbitration, the statement of claim, the statement of defence and any further written statements or written submissions by any disputing party; a table listing all exhibits to the aforesaid documents and to expert reports and witness statements, if such table has been prepared for the proceedings, but not the exhibits themselves; any written submissions by the non-disputing Party (or Parties) to the treaty and by third persons, transcripts of hearings, where available; and orders, decisions and awards of the arbitral tribunal.

2. Subject to article 7, expert reports and witness statements, exclusive of the exhibits thereto, shall be made available to the public, upon request by any person to the arbitral tribunal.

3. Subject to article 7, the arbitral tribunal may decide, on its own initiative or upon request from any person, and after consultation with the disputing parties, whether and how to make available exhibits and any other documents provided to, or issued by, the arbitral tribunal not falling within paragraphs 1 or 2 above. This may include, for example, making such documents available at a specified site.

4. The documents to be made available to the public pursuant to paragraphs 1 and 2 shall be communicated by the arbitral tribunal to the repository referred to under article 8 as soon as possible, subject to any relevant arrangements or time limits for the protection of confidential or protected information prescribed under article 7. The documents to be made available pursuant to paragraph 3 may be communicated by the arbitral tribunal to the repository referred to under article 8 as they become available and, if applicable, in a redacted form in accordance with article 7. The repository shall make all documents available in a timely manner, in the form and in the language in which it receives them.

5. A person granted access to documents under paragraph 3 shall bear any administrative costs of making those documents available to that person, such as the costs of photocopying or shipping documents to that person, but not the costs of making those documents available to the public through the repository.

Article 4. Submission by a third person

1. After consultation with the disputing parties, the arbitral tribunal may allow a person that is not a disputing party, and not a non-disputing Party to the treaty ("third person(s)"), to file a written submission with the arbitral tribunal regarding a matter within the scope of the dispute.

2. A third person wishing to make a submission shall apply to the arbitral tribunal, and shall, in a concise written statement, which is in a language of the arbitration and complies with any page limits set by the arbitral tribunal:

(a) Describe the third person, including, where relevant, its membership and legal status (e.g., trade association or other non-governmental organization), its general objectives, the nature of its activities and any parent organization (including any organization that directly or indirectly controls the third person);

(b) Disclose any connection, direct or indirect, which the third person has with any disputing party;

(c) Provide information on any government, person or organization that has provided to the third person (i) any financial or other assistance in preparing the submission; or (ii) substantial assistance in either of the two years preceding the application by the third person under this article (e.g. funding around 20 per cent of its overall operations annually);

(d) Describe the nature of the interest that the third person has in the arbitration; and

(e) Identify the specific issues of fact or law in the arbitration that the third person wishes to address in its written submission.

3. In determining whether to allow such a submission, the arbitral tribunal shall take into consideration, among other factors it determines to be relevant:

(a) Whether the third person has a significant interest in the arbitral proceedings; and

(b) The extent to which the submission would assist the arbitral tribunal in the determination of a factual or legal issue related to the arbitral proceedings by bringing a perspective, particular knowledge or insight that is different from that of the disputing parties.

4. The submission filed by the third person shall:

(a) Be dated and signed by the person filing the submission on behalf of the third person;

(b) Be concise, and in no case longer than as authorized by the arbitral tribunal;

(c) Set out a precise statement of the third person's position on issues; and

(d) Address only matters within the scope of the dispute.

5. The arbitral tribunal shall ensure that any submission does not disrupt or unduly burden the arbitral proceedings, or unfairly prejudice any disputing party.

6. The arbitral tribunal shall ensure that the disputing parties are given a reasonable opportunity to present their observations on any submission by the third person.

Article 5. Submission by a non-disputing Party to the treaty

1. The arbitral tribunal shall, subject to paragraph 4, allow, or, after consultation with the disputing parties, may invite, submissions on issues of treaty interpretation from a non-disputing Party to the treaty.

2. The arbitral tribunal, after consultation with the disputing parties, may allow submissions on further matters within the

scope of the dispute from a non-disputing Party to the treaty. In determining whether to allow such submissions, the arbitral tribunal shall take into consideration, among other factors it determines to be relevant, the factors referred to in article 4, paragraph 3, and, for greater certainty, the need to avoid submissions which would support the claim of the investor in a manner tantamount to diplomatic protection.

3. The arbitral tribunal shall not draw any inference from the absence of any submission or response to any invitation pursuant to paragraphs 1 or 2.

4. The arbitral tribunal shall ensure that any submission does not disrupt or unduly burden the arbitral proceedings, or unfairly prejudice any disputing party.

5. The arbitral tribunal shall ensure that the disputing parties are given a reasonable opportunity to present their observations on any submission by a non-disputing Party to the treaty.

Article 6. Hearings

1. Subject to article 6, paragraphs 2 and 3, hearings for the presentation of evidence or for oral argument ("hearings") shall be public.

2. Where there is a need to protect confidential information or the integrity of the arbitral process pursuant to article 7, the arbitral tribunal shall make arrangements to hold in private that part of the hearing requiring such protection.

3. The arbitral tribunal shall make logistical arrangements to facilitate the public access to hearings (including where appropriate by organizing attendance through video links or such other means as it deems appropriate). However, the arbitral tribunal may, after consultation with the disputing parties, decide to hold all or part of the hearings in private where this becomes necessary for logistical reasons, such as when the circumstances render any original arrangement for public access to a hearing infeasible.

Article 7. Exceptions to transparency

Confidential or protected information

1. Confidential or protected information, as defined in paragraph 2 and as identified pursuant to the arrangements referred

to in paragraphs 3 and 4, shall not be made available to the public pursuant to articles 2 to 6.

2. Confidential or protected information consists of:

(a) Confidential business information;

(b) Information that is protected against being made available to the public under the treaty;

(c) Information that is protected against being made available to the public, in the case of the information of the respondent State, under the law of the respondent State, and in the case of other information, under any law or rules determined by the arbitral tribunal to be applicable to the disclosure of such information; or

(d) Information the disclosure of which would impede law enforcement.

3. The arbitral tribunal, after consultation with the disputing parties, shall make arrangements to prevent any confidential or protected information from being made available to the public, including by putting in place, as appropriate:

(a) Time limits in which a disputing party, non-disputing Party to the treaty or third person shall give notice that it seeks protection for such information in documents;

(b) Procedures for the prompt designation and redaction of the particular confidential or protected information in such documents; and

(c) Procedures for holding hearings in private to the extent required by article 6, paragraph 2.

Any determination as to whether information is confidential or protected shall be made by the arbitral tribunal after consultation with the disputing parties.

4. Where the arbitral tribunal determines that information should not be redacted from a document, or that a document should not be prevented from being made available to the public, any disputing party, non-disputing Party to the treaty or third person that voluntarily introduced the document into the record shall be permitted to withdraw all or part of the document from the record of the arbitral proceedings.

5. Nothing in these Rules requires a respondent State to make available to the public information the disclosure of which it considers to be contrary to its essential security interests.

Integrity of the arbitral process

6. Information shall not be made available to the public pursuant to articles 2 to 6 where the information, if made available to the public, would jeopardize the integrity of the arbitral process as determined pursuant to paragraph 7.

7. The arbitral tribunal may, on its own initiative or upon the application of a disputing party, after consultation with the disputing parties where practicable, take appropriate measures to restrain or delay the publication of information where such publication would jeopardize the integrity of the arbitral process because it could hamper the collection or production of evidence, lead to the intimidation of witnesses, lawyers acting for disputing parties or members of the arbitral tribunal, or in comparably exceptional circumstances.

Article 8. Repository of published information

The repository of published information under the Rules on Transparency shall be the Secretary-General of the United Nations or an institution named by UNCITRAL.

Explanatory Note to the UNCITRAL Expedited Arbitration Rules

1. Expedited arbitration is a streamlined and simplified procedure with a shortened time frame, which makes it possible for the parties to reach a final resolution of the dispute in a cost- and time-effective manner. The UNCITRAL Expedited Arbitration Rules (hereinafter the "Expedited Rules") provide a set of rules which parties may agree for expedited arbitration. The Expedited Rules balance on the one hand, the efficiency of the arbitral proceedings and on the other, the need to preserve due process and fair treatment.

2. Article 1(5) of the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules (hereinafter the "UARs") incorporates the Expedited Rules, which are presented as an appendix to the UARs. The phrase "where the parties so agree" in that paragraph emphasizes the need for the parties' express consent for the Expedited Rules to apply to the arbitration.

3. In the following, any reference to "article(s)" is to that in the Expedited Rules, unless otherwise expressly indicated.

A. Scope of application

Article 1

4. Article 1 provides that express consent of the parties is required for the application of the Expedited Rules.

5. Parties are free to agree on the application of the Expedited Rules at any time even after the dispute has arisen (see model arbitration clause in the annex to the Expedited Rules). For example, parties that had concluded an arbitration agreement or had initiated arbitration under the UARs before the effective date of the Expedited Rules (19 September 2021) can subsequently agree to refer their dispute to arbitration under the Expedited Rules. Likewise, a party may propose to the other party or parties that the Expedited Rules shall apply to the arbitration.

6. However, parties should be mindful of the consequences when changing from non-expedited to expedited arbitration. For

example, a notice of arbitration communicated in accordance with article 3 of the UARs might not meet the requirements in article 4 of the Expedited Rules, whereby the claimant has to communicate proposals for the designation of an appointing authority and for the appointment of a sole arbitrator. Therefore, it would be prudent for the parties to agree on how such requirements could be met, should they agree to refer their dispute to arbitration under the Expedited Rules after the proceedings had begun. Similarly, if a three-member arbitral tribunal was constituted in accordance with the UARs, the parties may wish to consider appointing a sole arbitrator in accordance with article 8. If the constitution of the arbitral tribunal is changed, the parties may also need consider the status of statements and evidence submitted to the former tribunal.

7. Article 1 provides that the UARs generally apply to expedited arbitration, unless and as modified by the Expedited Rules. The phrase "as modified by these Expedited Rules" means that rules in the UARs and the Expedited Rules need to be read in conjunction for the proper conduct of the proceedings. The rules in the UARs are either supplemented or replaced by those in the Expedited Rules. For the avoidance of doubt, the footnote to article 1 provides a list of articles in the UARs that would not apply in the context of expedited arbitration. However, parties retain the flexibility to tailor the rules to their proceedings.

8. As the Expedited Rules are presented as an appendix to the UARs, reference to "the Rules" or "these Rules" in the UARs (see articles 1(2), 1(3), 1(4), 2(6), 4(2), 6(3), 6(4), 6(5), 10(3), 17(1), 17(2), 30(1), 30(2), 32 and 41(4)*(b)* of the UARs) include the Expedited Rules in the context of expedited arbitration.

9. In relation to article 1(2) of the UARs, parties to an arbitration agreement concluded before the entry into force of the Expedited Rules will not be presumed to have referred their dispute to the Expedited Rules, even though the Expedited Rules are presented as an appendix to the UARs. This is because the Expedited Rules only apply when so expressly agreed by the parties. On the other hand, if a subsequent version of the Expedited Rules were to be prepared, article 1(2) of the UARs would apply, which means that the Expedited Rules in effect on the date of commencement of the expedited arbitration would apply, unless the parties have agreed on the current or any other version of the Expedited Rules.

Article 2

10. Even when the parties had initially agreed to refer their dispute to arbitration under the Expedited Rules, the circumstances may be such that the Expedited Rules are not appropriate to resolve the particular dispute. Article 2 addresses such circumstances, with paragraph 1 allowing parties to agree to withdraw from expedited arbitration.

11. In accordance with paragraph 2, a party that had agreed to refer the dispute to arbitration under the Expedited Rules may subsequently request withdrawal from expedited arbitration, when the circumstances evolved in a manner that would make expedited arbitration no longer suitable for resolving the dispute (see also para. 91 below). While there is no time limit within which a party can request withdrawal, the arbitral tribunal should consider at which stage of the proceedings the request is being made.

12. The phrase "in exceptional circumstances" means that the party requesting withdrawal should provide convincing and justified reasons for the request and that the arbitral tribunal should uphold the request only in certain circumstances. It introduces a high threshold for allowing a unilateral withdrawal from expedited arbitration.

13. When making the determination, the arbitral tribunal should consider whether the Expedited Rules are no longer appropriate for the resolution of the dispute. It may wish to take into account, among others, the following:

– The urgency of resolving the dispute;

– The stage of the proceedings at which the request is made;

– The complexity of the dispute (for example, the anticipated volume of documentary evidence and the number of witnesses);

– The anticipated amount in dispute (the sum of claims made in the notice of arbitration, any counterclaim made in the response thereto as well as any amendment or supplement);

– The terms of the parties' agreement to expedited arbitration and whether the current circumstances were foreseeable at the time of the agreement; and

– The consequences of the determination on the proceedings.

14. The above is a non-exhaustive list of elements that can be taken into account and it would not be necessary for the arbitral tribunal to consider all the elements therein.

15. When making the determination, the arbitral tribunal, in accordance with article 17(1) of the UARs, may decide that the Expedited Rules in their entirety would no longer apply or that certain articles would no longer apply to the arbitration. When deciding that certain articles of the Expedited Rules would no longer apply, the arbitral tribunal should make clear to the parties how the arbitration would be conducted and on the basis of which articles.

16. If the arbitral tribunal is not yet constituted, the determination would need to be made after it is constituted. However, if the parties are not able to reach an agreement on the arbitrator or if there is a disagreement between the parties on (i) whether the Expedited Rules apply or (ii) whether the criteria in the arbitration agreement triggering the application of the Expedited Rules are met, the appointing authority may be involved in constituting the arbitral tribunal in accordance with article 10(3) of the UARs. The appointing authority will make a prima facie decision on whether the arbitration would be conducted under the Expedited Rules. However, the ultimate determination on the application of the Expedited Rules would be left to the arbitral tribunal.

17. When the Expedited Rules no longer apply to the arbitration pursuant to paragraph 1 or 2, the arbitral tribunal shall conduct the arbitration in accordance with the UARs. However, this does not mean that the arbitral tribunal, if already constituted, would have to be re-constituted in accordance with the UARs. Instead, the arbitral tribunal shall remain in place in accordance with paragraph 3. There may, however, be instances where the parties agree to replace an arbitrator or reconstitute the arbitral tribunal. There may also be instances where the arbitrator resigns, for example, if the arbitrator appointed under the Expedited Rules believes that his or her schedule of future commitments does not allow for the conduct of non-expedited arbitration.

18. Unless the arbitral tribunal decides otherwise, the non-expedited proceeding should resume at the stage where the expedited proceeding was when the parties agreed to withdraw or the arbitral tribunal made the determination. Decisions made during the expedited proceeding should remain applicable to the non-expedited proceedings, unless the arbitral tribunal decides to depart from its earlier decisions or from a decision made by the previous tribunal.

B. General provision on expedited arbitration

19. Considering that a fair and efficient resolution of the dispute is a common goal of arbitration under both the UARs and the Expedited Rules, article 3 highlights the expeditious nature of the proceedings under the Expedited Rules and emphasizes the obligation of the parties and the arbitral tribunal to act expeditiously.

20. Paragraph 1 is a reminder to parties that when referring their dispute to arbitration under the Expedited Rules, they are agreeing to cooperate in ensuring the efficiency of the proceeding as well as for a swift resolution of the dispute, particularly in an ad hoc setting where there is no administering institution to further expedite the process.

21. Paragraph 2 should be read along with article 17(1) of the UARs. Therefore, arbitral tribunals in expedited arbitration have the same duty to conduct the proceedings so as to avoid unnecessary delay and expense and to provide a fair and efficient process to resolve the dispute. The arbitral tribunal should also comply with any due process requirements.

22. When conducting arbitration under the Expedited Rules, arbitral tribunals should be mindful of the objectives of the Expedited Rules, of the parties' intentions and expectations when they chose the Expedited Rules and of the time frames therein, particularly those in article 16 with regard to the rendering of the award. The annex to the Expedited Rules includes a model statement which parties could request the arbitrator to add to the statement of independence. The model statement highlights that the arbitrator would conduct the arbitration expeditiously and in accordance with the time frames in the UARs and the Expedited Rules.

23. Designating and appointing authorities as well as arbitral institutions administering arbitration under the Expedited Rules should also be mindful of the objectives of the Expedited Rules as well as any applicable time frames (see para. 58 below).

24. Paragraph 3 emphasizes the discretion provided to the arbitral tribunal to make use of a wide range of technological means to conduct the proceeding, including when communicating with the parties and when holding consultations and hearings. It also mentions that consultations and hearings can be held without the physical presence of the participants and in different locations. The inclusion of such a rule in the Expedited Rules does not imply that the use of technological means is

available to arbitral tribunals only in expedited arbitration. The rule aims to assist the arbitral tribunal in streamlining the proceedings and avoiding unnecessary delay and expense, both of which are in line with the objectives of expedited arbitration. The arbitral tribunal should be mindful that the use of technological means is subject to the rules in the UARs to provide for a fair proceeding and to give each party a reasonable opportunity to present its case. Thus, the arbitral tribunal should also be mindful of any due process requirements. In that light, the arbitral tribunal should give the parties an opportunity to express their views on the use of such technological means and consider the overall circumstances of the case, including whether such technological means are at the disposal of the parties.

C. Notice of arbitration, response thereto, statements of claim and defence

Article 4

25. Article 4 addresses the initiation of recourse to arbitration by the claimant and modifies articles 3(4) and 20(1) of the UARs.

26. Two elements, which are optional under article 3(4) of the UARs, are required in the notice of arbitration under the Expedited Rules. This is to facilitate the speedy constitution of the arbitral tribunal in expedited arbitration. In accordance with paragraph 1, the claimant is required to propose an appointing authority (unless the parties have previously agreed thereon) and the appointment of the arbitrator. It is important for the claimant to include such information in its notice of arbitration because the 15-day time frames in articles 6 and 8 begin with the receipt by the respondent of the respective proposals.

27. A proposal for the appointment of the arbitrator does not mean that a party needs to put forward the name of the arbitrator; rather, a party may suggest a list of suitable candidates or qualifications, or a mechanism to be used by the parties for agreeing on the arbitrator. This would also cater for cases where the parties agreed to more than one arbitrator in expedited arbitration.

28. To further expedite the process, paragraph 2 requires the claimant to communicate its statement of claim along with its notice of arbitration. This modifies the rule in article 20(1) of the UARs, which provides that the statement of claim should be communicated within a period of time to be determined by the arbitral tribunal.

29. In summary, when initiating recourse to expedited arbitration, the claimant needs to include the following in its notice of arbitration and the statement of claim:

– A demand that the dispute be referred to arbitration (UARs art. 3(3)*(a)*);

– The names and contact details of the parties (UARs arts. 3(3)*(b)* and 20(2)*(a)*);

– Identification of the arbitration agreement that is invoked (UARs art. 3(3)*(c)*) and a copy thereof (UARs art. 20(3));

– Identification of any contract or other legal instrument out of or in relation to which the dispute arises (UARs art. 3(3)*(d)*) and a copy thereof (UARs art. 20(3)) – in the absence of such contract or instrument, a brief description of the relevant relationship (UARs art. 3(3)*(d)*);

– A brief description of the claim and an indication of the amount involved, if any (UARs art. 3(3)*(e)*);

– The relief or remedy sought (UARs arts. 3(3)*(f)* and 20(2)*(d)*);

– A proposal as to the language and place of arbitration, if the parties have not previously agreed thereon (UARs art. 3(3)*(g)*);

– A proposal for the designation of an appointing authority, unless the parties have previously agreed thereon (Expedited Rules art. 4(1)*(a)*);

– A proposal for the appointment of an arbitrator (Expedited Rules art. 4(1)*(b)*);

– A statement of the facts supporting the claim (UARs art. 20(2)*(b)*);

– The points at issue (UARs art. 20(2)*(c)*);

– The legal grounds or arguments supporting the claim (UARs art. 20(2)*(e)*); and

– As far as possible, all documents and other evidence relied upon by the claimant, or references to them (UARs art. 20(4)).

30. In light of article 7 which provides a default rule of a sole arbitrator, the claimant would not need to propose the number of arbitrators in its notice of arbitration, unless it wishes to suggest the constitution of an arbitral tribunal of more than one arbitrator.

31. With respect to the last item on the above list, the objective is to require the presentation of the complete case for the sake of efficiency. It does not, however, mean that all evidence has to be communicated at this stage, which may be burdensome and counterproductive. This is highlighted by the words "as far as possible" and the claimant may decide to make reference to the evidence to be relied upon. For example, witness statements need not be submitted at this stage. The claimant could instead identify in its statement of claim: (i) any witness whose testimony it would rely on; (ii) the subject matter of the testimony; and (iii) any subject matter for which the claimant intends to submit expert reports. It would be preferable to determine which evidence is to be submitted during the consultation between the arbitral tribunal and the parties (see para. 62 below).

32. The claimant may elect to treat its notice of arbitration as its statement of claim, as long as the notice of arbitration complies with the requirement of the statement of claim (see second sentence of article 20(1) of the UARs). In that case, the claimant would be communicating a single document combining its notice of arbitration and statement of claim.

33. Paragraph 3 requires the claimant to communicate its notice of arbitration and statement of claim to the arbitral tribunal as soon as it is constituted. In the case that the arbitral tribunal consists of more than one arbitrator, the claimant would, in practice, communicate its notice of arbitration and statement of claim to each of the arbitrators upon his or her appointment.

Article 5

34. Article 5 addresses the actions required by the respondent upon receipt of a notice of arbitration and a statement of claim from the claimant. It envisages a two-stage reply with a shorter time frame for the response to the notice of arbitration (hereinafter the "response") and a longer one for the statement of defence. This is to facilitate the speedy constitution of the arbitral tribunal and to provide sufficient time for the respondent to prepare its case.

35. The respondent is required to communicate a response within 15 days of the receipt of the notice. Article 5(1) thus modifies article 4(1) of the UARs, which provides for a 30-day time frame. A shorter time frame is imposed on the response, as it addresses procedural issues, in particular those relating to the constitution of the arbitral tribunal.

36. The response shall respond to the information set forth in the notice of arbitration. As article 4(1) of the Expedited Rules requires a claimant to include in its notice of arbitration proposals on an appointing authority and on the appointment of the arbitrator, the respondent is required to include a response to those proposals. If the respondent disagrees with the proposals, the respondent is free to make its own proposals in accordance with article 4(2)*(b)* and *(c)* of the UARs.

37. In summary, the respondent would need to provide, within 15 days of the receipt of the notice of arbitration, the following in the response:

– The name and contact details of each respondent (UARs art. 4(1)*(a)*);

– A response to the information set forth in the notice of arbitration, pursuant to article 3(3)*(c)* to *(g)* of the UARs (UARs art. 4(1)*(b)*); and

– A response to the information set forth in the notice of arbitration, pursuant to article 4(1)*(a)* and *(b)* of the Expedited Rules (Expedited Rules art. 5(1)).

38. To provide the respondent with sufficient time to prepare its statement of defence and to ensure equality of the process, the respondent has 15 days from the constitution of the arbitral tribunal to communicate its statement of defence. Article 5(2) introduces a 15-day time frame in contrast to article 21(1) of the UARs, which provides that the statement of defence shall be communicated within a period of time determined by the arbitral tribunal. If the respondent requests for additional time, the arbitral tribunal may extend the 15-day time frame in accordance with article 10.

39. The respondent may elect to treat its response to the notice of arbitration as its statement of defence, as long as the response complies with the requirement of article 21(2) of the UARs (see second sentence of article 21(1) of the UARs).

D. Designating and appointing authorities

40. The appointing authority has a significant role in expediting the proceedings, especially with regard to the constitution of the arbitral tribunal. Therefore, it is important that the parties agree on the choice of an appointing authority (see model arbitration clause, paragraph *(a)*). When the parties have not agreed on that choice, article 6 of the Expedited Rules provides a mechanism for the Secretary-General of the Permanent Court of Arbitration (PCA) to designate an appointing authority or to serve as one, both of which would lead to an earlier engagement of the appointing authority.

41. Article 6(1) simplifies the process provided for in article 6(2) of the UARs by allowing a party to request the Secretary-General of the PCA to serve as the appointing authority. It provides a streamlined and flexible process, while providing a level of discretion to the Secretary-General of the PCA.

42. The process is accelerated by allowing any party to engage with the Secretary-General of the PCA any time after 15 days have lapsed from the receipt by all parties of a proposal on an appointing authority. In practice, this means that a claimant that has included in its notice of arbitration a proposal for an appointing authority in accordance with article 4(1) is able to make the request to the Secretary-General of the PCA immediately upon the lapse of the 15-day time frame in article 5(1).

43. It should, however, be noted that article 5(1) provides the respondent 15 days to respond to the notice of arbitration, which should also include a response to the proposal for an appointing authority. Therefore, it would be prudent for the claimant to consider such response before engaging the Secretary-General of the PCA. In any case, the Secretary-General of the PCA in exercising its functions under article 6(1) would be required to give the parties an opportunity to present their views, including any proposals on the appointing authority.

44. Similar to article 6(1), article 6(2) modifies article 6(4) of the UARs and allows a party to request the Secretary-General of the PCA to designate a substitute appointing authority or to serve as one, where the appointing authority refuses or fails to act. However, this would not be possible when the Secretary-General of the PCA is already serving as the appointing authority.

45. Paragraph 3 provides a level of discretion to the Secretary-General of the PCA to address practical questions that could

arise, for example, (i) when a party has previously rejected or rejects a proposal for the Secretary-General of the PCA to serve as appointing authority; (ii) when a party requests the Secretary-General of the PCA to serve as appointing authority and the other party requests it to serve as designating authority; and (iii) when a party requests the Secretary-General of the PCA to either designate an appointing authority or to serve as an appointing authority.

46. Paragraphs 1, 3, 5, 6 and 7 of article 6 of the UARs continue to apply to expedited arbitration.

E. Number of arbitrators

47. Article 7 provides that an arbitral tribunal composed of a single arbitrator is the default rule in expedited arbitration. As such, article 7(1) of the UARs is replaced by article 7 of the Expedited Rules. Parties, however, can agree on more than one arbitrator, in light of the particulars of the dispute and if collective decision-making is preferred. However, they should be mindful that proceedings involving an arbitral tribunal composed of more than one arbitrator may be less expeditious (see para. 59 below).

48. When the parties have referred their dispute to arbitration under the Expedited Rules and there is no separate agreement on the number of arbitrators, the appointing authority should not have any role in determining that number and should appoint a sole arbitrator in accordance with articles 7 and 8. While the appointing authority may make a prima facie decision on whether the arbitration is to be conducted under the Expedited Rules, the ultimate determination on the application of the Expedited Rules would be left to the arbitral tribunal (see para. 16 above).

49. Article 7(2) of the UARs continues to apply in expedited arbitration when the parties agreed to constitute the arbitral tribunal with more than one arbitrator.

F. Appointment of the arbitrator

50. Article 8 addresses how a sole arbitrator is to be appointed in expedited arbitration. If the parties agreed on more than one arbitrator, articles 9 and 10 of the UARs apply.

51. Paragraph 1 encourages the parties to reach an agreement on the sole arbitrator.

52. Paragraph 2 provides a mechanism in the absence of an agreement by the parties on a sole arbitrator. Any party may request the engagement of the appointing authority 15 days after a proposal for the appointment of a sole arbitrator has been received by all other parties. This is shorter than the 30-day time frame in article 8(1) of the UARs. The involvement of the appointing authority can only be triggered by a request by one of the parties.

53. Considering that the claimant is required to include a proposal for the appointment of a sole arbitrator in the notice of arbitration (see article 4(1) and para. 27 above), if there is no agreement within 15 days after the respondent's receipt of the notice of arbitration, the claimant would be able to make a request to the appointing authority, if previously agreed by the parties. If a proposal is not included in the notice, the 15-day time frame would commence when the proposal is made.

54. It should, however, be noted that article 5(1) provides the respondent 15 days to respond to the notice of arbitration, which should also include a response to the claimant's proposal for the appointment of a sole arbitrator. Therefore, it would be prudent for the claimant to consider the response before engaging with the appointing authority. If the respondent foresees that an agreement cannot be reached, it could also engage with the appointing authority at the same time it communicates the response to the notice of arbitration.

55. If there is no agreement by the parties on the appointing authority and the sole arbitrator 15 days after the receipt of the notice by the respondent, any party may request the Secretary-General of the PCA to designate the appointing authority or to serve as appointing authority in accordance with article 6(1). In the latter case, a party can also request the appointment of a sole arbitrator in accordance with article 8(2), which would likely facilitate a speedy constitution of the arbitral tribunal.

56. Article 8(2) of the UARs, which mentions a list-procedure for the appointment of a sole arbitrator, also applies to expedited arbitration.

57. In exercising the functions under the Expedited Rules, the appointing authority and the Secretary-General of the PCA should be mindful of article 6(5) of the UARs, which requires them to give the parties and the arbitrators (if appointed and

when appropriate) an opportunity to present their views. Any proposal made and comments thereon by the parties on the appointment of a sole arbitrator should thus be taken into account.

58. When appointing an arbitrator for expedited arbitration, the appointing authority shall make an effort to secure not only an independent and impartial arbitrator in accordance with article 6(7) of the UARs but also an arbitrator who is available and ready to conduct the arbitration expeditiously in accordance with article 3(2) of the Expedited Rules. The appointing authority may wish to require the prospective arbitrator to make a statement as provided in the annex to the Expedited Rules.

59. The time frames in article 9 of the UARs on the constitution of a three-member arbitral tribunal apply to expedited arbitration. However, parties may wish to reduce the time frames therein to expedite the constitution of a three-member arbitral tribunal.

G. Consultation with the parties

60. Consultation between the arbitral tribunal and the parties at an early stage of the proceedings is particularly key to an efficient and fair organization of expedited arbitration. The terms "consult" and "consultation" are used in article 9 to highlight the interactive nature of the engagement between the arbitral tribunal and the parties when discussing how the arbitration would be conducted. In general, the phrase "after inviting the parties to express their views" is used throughout the UARs as well as in articles 2, 3, 10, 11, 14 and 16 of the Expedited Rules to refer to a situation where the arbitral tribunal is required to give the parties an opportunity to express their support, concerns or objections before the arbitral tribunal takes a decision on a certain matter.

61. Article 9 requires the arbitral tribunal to consult the parties on how to organize the proceedings. It thus conveys the expectation that the arbitral tribunal will engage actively with the parties rather than to simply invite them to express their views. A case management conference is one way of conducting such consultation and can be an important procedural tool, particularly in expedited arbitration, as it permits an arbitral tribunal to give parties a timely indication as to the organization of the proceedings and the manner in which it intends to proceed.

62. A number of issues could be discussed during consultations so as to create a basis for a common understanding of the proceedings, for example: (i) a list of points at issue including those that need to be addressed with priority; (ii) the need for further written statements and evidence; (iii) whether and how to conduct further consultations as well as hearings, including whether they would be in person or using technological means, including remotely; (iv) other procedural issues as well as the timetable. Similarly, if the parties indicate that they intend to present witnesses, whether statements by witnesses shall be in writing and the time for the presentation of the witness statements could be discussed during consultations.

63. Article 9 introduces a short time frame within which the arbitral tribunal should consult the parties as it is useful for this to be done at the very early stages of the proceedings. The arbitral tribunal should conduct the consultation with the parties promptly after and within 15 days of its constitution. In certain cases, the respondent might not yet have communicated its statement of defence as it is to be communicated within 15 days of the constitution of the arbitral tribunal (see article 5(2)). Nonetheless, it would be useful for the arbitral tribunal to consult the parties at an early stage based on the notice of arbitration, response thereto as well as the statement of claim. Upon receipt of the statement of defence from the respondent, further consultations may be required, particularly if an agreement on a provisional timetable has been deferred pending the arbitral tribunal's review of the statement of defence or if the agreed timetable requires an update following such review.

64. Consultations may be conducted through a meeting in person, in writing, by telephone or videoconference or other means of communication as provided for in article 3(3). Considering that sufficient flexibility is provided to the arbitral tribunal, it should not be burdensome to meet the 15-day time frame in article 9.

65. In accordance with article 17(2) of the UARs, the arbitral tribunal should establish the provisional timetable. In so doing, the arbitral tribunal should be mindful of the time frames in the Expedited Rules, in particular those in article 16. Similarly, following the consultations, the arbitral tribunal should communicate to the parties the outcome of the consultations to ensure that the parties are fully aware of the time frames and avoid delays.

H. Time frames and the discretion of the arbitral tribunal

66. Article 10 addresses the discretion of the arbitral tribunal with regard to time frames in expedited arbitration. It should be read along with the second sentence of article 17(2) of the UARs.

67. Article 10 clarifies that the arbitral tribunal may extend or abridge any period of time prescribed under the UARs and the Expedited Rules or agreed by the parties. Even after a time frame has been fixed in accordance with article 10, flexibility is provided to adjust the time period when the adjustment is justified. However, this discretion is subject to article 16, which provides a specific rule with regard to the time frames for rendering the award and their extensions (see paras. 84–92 below).

68. Article 10 clarifies and reinforces the discretionary power of the arbitral tribunal to adapt the proceedings to the circumstances of the case, further limiting the risk of challenges at the enforcement stage. In other words, it provides the arbitral tribunal with a robust mandate to act decisively without fearing that its award could be set aside for a breach of due process.

69. While shorter time frames constitute one of the key characteristics of expedited arbitration, arbitral tribunals should preserve the flexible nature of the proceedings and comply with due process requirements.

70. With regard to the consequences of non-compliance by the parties with the time frames, article 30 of the UARs on default applies to expedited arbitration. With regard to late submissions, considering that flexibility is provided to the arbitral tribunal in setting and modifying time frames, the arbitral tribunal can reject or disregard such submissions, while such discretion should be exercised with care.

I. Hearings

71. Article 11 emphasizes the discretionary power of the arbitral tribunal to not hold hearings in expedited arbitration in the absence of a request by any party. It should be read together with article 17(3) of the UARs, which provides that: (i) the arbitral tribunal shall hold hearings if any party so requests at an appropriate stage of the proceedings; and (ii) in the absence of such a request, the arbitral tribunal shall decide whether to hold hearings. Parties themselves may agree to hold hearings, in which case that agreement is binding on the arbitral tribunal.

72. A hearing may cause delays particularly if the scheduling of the parties and the arbitral tribunal need to be coordinated. A hearing may be useful, however, when witness testimony and expert opinions are critical for the arbitral tribunal's decision-making. Moreover, a direct exchange between the parties and the arbitral tribunal at a hearing (whether in person or remotely) may facilitate a better understanding of the case and make the proceedings more efficient.

73. Considering the short time frame of six months for rendering the award in expedited arbitration, the arbitral tribunal may wish to decide at an early stage of the proceedings whether to hold hearings. A request to hold a hearing at a later stage may delay the proceedings and may have a negative impact on the arbitral tribunal complying with that time frame.

74. As parties have a right to request the holding of a hearing, article 11 requires the arbitral tribunal to invite the parties to express their views on whether hearings are to be held. This may also be done during the consultation with the parties (see para. 62 above). If a party so requests at that stage, the arbitral tribunal will need to hold a hearing in accordance with article 17(3) of the UARs. In the absence of such a request prior to and during the consultation, the arbitral tribunal may go ahead and decide to not hold a hearing.

75. This means that the proceedings shall be conducted on the basis of documents and other materials. A request by a party to hold a hearing after a decision by the arbitral tribunal to not hold one can be denied as the request might no longer be considered as being made at "an appropriate stage of the proceedings" (see article 17(3) of the UARs). Insofar, article 11 could have the effect of limiting the time frame during which a request for holding a hearing can be made.

76. As provided for in article 3(3) of the Expedited Rules and article 28(4) of the UARs, the arbitral tribunal may utilize any technological means to hold hearings without the physical presence of the parties or witnesses, including remotely. The remaining paragraphs of article 28 of the UARs also apply to the conduct of hearings in expedited arbitration. The arbitral tribunal has a broad discretion on how to conduct the hearings in a streamlined manner. Efforts should be made to limit the duration of the hearings, the number of witnesses as well as cross-examination and at the same time, to maintain due process.

J. Counterclaims and claims for the purpose of set-off

77. Article 12 preserves the right of the parties to make counterclaims and claims for the purpose of set-off (hereinafter referred to as "counterclaims"), but introduces certain qualifications, which can be lifted by the arbitral tribunal. This is to ensure that counterclaims do not result in delays in expedited arbitration.

78. Article 12 replaces article 21(3) of the UARs and introduces a higher threshold for counterclaims. Paragraph 1 requires the respondent to make any counterclaim at the latest in its statement of defence. A counterclaim can be made at a later stage of the proceedings, but only when the arbitral tribunal considers it appropriate under the circumstances.

K. Amendments and supplements to a claim or defence

79. Article 13 replaces article 22 of the UARs. It introduces a higher threshold for parties to make amendments and supplements to a claim or defence, including a counterclaim or a claim for the purposes of set-off (hereinafter referred to as "amendments") in the context of expedited arbitration. Nonetheless, it provides flexibility in its application to different circumstances. Accordingly, a party is not allowed to make amendments unless the arbitral tribunal considers it appropriate to allow such amendments. When determining whether to allow amendments, the arbitral tribunal should take into account at which stage of the proceedings such a request for the amendment is made, prejudice to other parties in allowing the amendment and any other circumstances.

80. Counterclaims and amendments might result in the expedited arbitration no longer being appropriate for resolving the dispute. In such a circumstance, parties may agree that that the Expedited Rules shall no longer apply to the arbitration or a party may request the arbitral tribunal to determine that the Expedited Rules shall no longer apply in accordance with article 2 (see paras. 10–14 above).

L. Further written statements

81. Article 14 emphasises the discretionary power of the arbitral tribunal under article 24 of the UARs to limit further written

statements. It clarifies that the arbitral tribunal may decide that the statement of claim and the statement of defence are sufficient and that no further written statements are required from the parties. It should, however, not be interpreted that arbitral tribunals do not have such discretion under article 24 of the UARs.

M. Evidence

82. Article 15 clarifies the discretionary power of the arbitral tribunal with regard to taking of evidence in expedited arbitration. Article 27(3) of the UARs provides that the arbitral tribunal may require the parties to produce documents and other evidence during the proceedings. The first sentence of article 15(1) clarifies that the arbitral tribunal may decide which documents or other evidence are to be produced by the parties. The second sentence reaffirms the discretionary power of the arbitral tribunal to not provide for a procedure where a party requests another party to produce documents (often referred to as the "document production" phase). The inclusion of article 15(1) in the Expedited Rules should, however, not be interpreted as meaning that arbitral tribunals do not have such discretion under article 27(3) of the UARs.

83. Article 15(2) provides that in expedited arbitration, statements by witnesses shall be presented in written form and signed by them. Paragraph 2 thus replaces the second sentence of article 27(2) of the UARs. While the rules for meeting the requirements of "in writing" and "signature" through electronic communication vary depending on the jurisdiction, it should be noted that article 9(2) and (3) of the United Nations Convention on the Use of Electronic Communications in International Contracts provides a functional equivalence rule.

N. Period of time for making the award

84. Article 16 provides the time frame for making the award, which refers to the final award. Paragraph 1 provides for a six-month time frame for making the award and a mechanism for extending that time frame in certain circumstances. The six-month time frame for rendering the award commences with the constitution of the arbitral tribunal. Parties are free to agree on a time frame different from that in paragraph 1, which may be shorter or longer depending on their needs.

85. The general discretion provided to arbitral tribunals under article 10 to extend or abridge any period of time prescribed

under the Expedited Rules and those agreed by the parties is subject to article 16. The first sentence of article 16(2) specifically authorizes the arbitral tribunal to extend the time frame for rendering the award established pursuant to paragraph 1, but only in exceptional circumstances and after inviting the parties to express their views. It would be up to the arbitral tribunal to determine whether the circumstances are exceptional or not. While the arbitral tribunal should generally indicate the reasons when extending the time frame, paragraph 2 does not require reasons so as to provide flexibility to the arbitral tribunal, particularly when the extended time period is rather short.

86. The second sentence of paragraph 2 provides that the maximum overall time frame, including any extended period, should be no longer than nine months from the date of the constitution of the arbitral tribunal. This responds to the expectations of the parties that an award would be rendered within a short time period, one of the key features of expedited arbitration. Paragraph 2, however, does not impose limitations on the number of extensions within the overall time frame. As parties are free to modify any time frame in the Expedited Rules, paragraph 2 also does not prevent the parties from agreeing on a time frame that is longer than nine months.

87. In case the arbitral tribunal considers that it is at risk of not rendering an award within the time frame provided for in paragraph 2, paragraph 3 provides a mechanism whereby that time period could be extended for one last time. This mechanism intends to address a situation where the arbitral tribunal is at risk of not being able to render an award within the time frame, for example, due to unusual circumstances arising near the end of the time frame or if only a short period of time beyond that time frame is required for rendering the award.

88. Parties and the arbitral tribunal should be mindful of the consequence when the time frame in paragraph 2 lapses without an award being rendered. Depending on the applicable law, this may result in the termination of the proceedings or the award rendered subsequently being the subject of possible annulment. In some jurisdictions, such an award might also be refused enforcement. To avoid such situations, paragraph 3 permits the arbitral tribunal to propose to the parties a final extended time limit, stating the reasons for the proposal. In so doing, it must also fix a time period within which the parties should express their views on the proposal. The proposed extension would only be permitted when all parties agree to the extension within the fixed time period. It will be the responsibility of the arbitral tribunal to ascertain that the agreement to its

proposal is expressed without ambiguity. For example, if in response to the proposal, a party agrees only to a time frame shorter than that proposed by the arbitral tribunal, the arbitral tribunal may invite the other parties to express their agreement to such shorter time frame. In addition, if one party agrees to the proposal within the fixed time period and the other party agrees after the time period has lapsed, the arbitral tribunal may wish to consult the parties to confirm whether it could assume that there was agreement by the parties, thus avoiding a possible application of paragraph 4.

89. Paragraph 3 does not set a maximum time frame that can be proposed by the arbitral tribunal. Nonetheless, to obtain the agreement of the parties, the extended time frame requested by the arbitral tribunal should be reasonable taking into account any concerns of the parties, and be sufficient for the arbitral tribunal to render the award.

90. Considering that in certain jurisdictions, extension of the time frame could only be granted upon the agreement or consent of the parties or by an entity other than the arbitral tribunal, paragraphs 2 and 3 underline that parties, by agreeing to the application of the Expedited Rules, are granting the arbitral tribunal the authority to extend the time period established in paragraphs 1 and 2.

91. Paragraph 4 alerts the parties and the arbitral tribunal to the mechanism provided for in article 2(2) of the Expedited Rules in case there is no agreement by the parties to the extension proposed by the arbitral tribunal. In such a case, any party may make a request to the arbitral tribunal that the Expedited Rules no longer apply to the arbitration. Indeed, the arbitral tribunal may wish to suggest this possibility along with its proposal to extend the time period in accordance with paragraph 3 as the consequence. Doing so could avoid a situation where none of the parties makes the request under paragraph 4 despite there being no agreement by the parties on the extension. Paragraph 4 could be particularly useful if one of the parties intentionally delays the proceedings as well as the issuance of the award within the time frame and does not agree to the extension.

92. After inviting the parties to express their views, the arbitral tribunal may determine that the Expedited Rules shall no longer apply to the arbitration, which in effect lifts any time limit for rendering the award in the Expedited Rules including those agreed by the parties. As the arbitral tribunal would have stated the reasons in proposing the extension under paragraph 3, the

arbitral tribunal might consider that exceptional circumstances exist as required under article 2(2) and would not need to repeat the reasons when determining that the Expedited Rules shall not longer apply. Should the arbitral tribunal make the determination under paragraph 4, the arbitral tribunal will remain in place and continue to conduct the arbitration but will do so in accordance with the UARs.

93. Article 16 should also be read together with articles 37 and 38 of the UARs, which respectively provide that the interpretation and the correction form part of the award. If the final award was made within the time frame in article 16, any subsequent interpretation or correction to that award after the lapse of the time frame shall not affect the timeliness of the final award for the purposes of article 16. Similarly, an additional award made in accordance with article 39 of the UARs after the lapse of the time frame in article 16 shall not affect the timeliness of the award made within that time frame.

94. It should be noted that article 16 does not aim to address the instances of de jure or de facto impossibility of the arbitrator to perform his or her functions. In such a situation, articles 12(3), 13 and 14 of the UARs will likely lead to the termination of the arbitrator's services and his or her replacement. In the case of replacement, article 15 of the UARs provides that the proceedings shall resume at the stage where the arbitrator who was replaced ceased to perform his or her functions. In practice, this would have the effect of suspending the time period in article 16 of the Expedited Rules from the time the replaced arbitrator ceased to perform his or her functions to the date of replacement. If the new arbitrator considers that the remaining time would not be sufficient to render an award, he or she could rely on article 16 to extend the time frame. Also, if an arbitrator is temporarily unable to perform his or her functions and is not replaced, the arbitrator as well as the parties could rely on article 16 to extend the time frame and cope with any delay that may have occurred during such a period.

95. A similar solution applies if the arbitral tribunal suspends the proceedings in accordance with article 43(4) of the UARs, due to non-payment of the required deposits. In that case, the time period in article 16 would cease to run during the suspension.

96. Article 16 should be read together with article 34 of the UARs, in particular paragraph 3, which provides that the parties may agree that no reasons need to be given in the award. This could reduce the time required by the arbitral tribunal in

rendering the award and allow the arbitral tribunal to meet the time frame in the Expedited Rules. However, unless the parties have agreed that no reasons are to be given, arbitral tribunals in expedited arbitration shall state the reasons upon which the award is based. Requiring the arbitral tribunal to provide a reasoned award can assist its decision-making and provide comfort to the parties as they will find that their arguments have been duly considered and would be aware of the basis upon which the award was rendered. The absence of reasoning in an award could have an impact on the control mechanism and its scope, as such reasoning might be necessary for the court or any other competent authority to consider whether some of the grounds for setting aside the award or refusing its recognition and enforcement exist.

O. Model arbitration clause for expedited arbitration

97. The annex to the Expedited Rules contains a model arbitration clause for parties to agree to expedited arbitration under the Expedited Rules. The model arbitration clause notes that the parties should consider adding the appointing authority, the place and the language of arbitration.

98. When considering whether to refer a dispute that has arisen or could arise in the future to arbitration under the Expedited Rules, the parties should take into account, among others, the following elements:

– The urgency of resolving the dispute;

– The complexity of the transactions and the number of parties involved;

– The anticipated complexity of the dispute;

– The anticipated amount of the dispute;

– The financial resources available to the party in proportion to the expected cost of the arbitration;

– The possibility of joinder or consolidation; and

– The likelihood of an award being rendered within the time frames provided in article 16 of the Expedited Rules.

P. The Expedited Rules and the Transparency Rules

99. The suitability of the Expedited Rules for investment arbitration is a question left to the disputing parties, as express consent of the parties is required for the Expedited Rules to apply (see paras. 2, 4 and 5 above). States could refer to and consent to the Expedited Rules in their respective investment treaty, based on which an investor claimant may consent to refer a dispute under the Expedited Rules. However, a reference to the UARs in investment treaties (regardless of whether the reference was included prior to or after the effective date of the Expedited Rules) should not be construed as consent by the State Parties to the Expedited Rules as express consent is necessary for the application of the Expedited Rules.

100. According to article 1(4) of the UARs (as adopted in 2013), the UNCITRAL Rules on Transparency in Treaty-based Investor-State Arbitration ("Transparency Rules") form part of the UARs. Article 1 of the Transparency Rules addresses the applicability of the Transparency Rules to "investor-State arbitration initiated under the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules". As the Expedited Rules are presented as an appendix to the UARs, an investor-State arbitration initiated under the Expedited Rules should be considered as being initiated under the UARs and therefore, the Transparency Rules could apply.

101. If the investor-State arbitration is initiated pursuant to an investment treaty concluded before 1 April 2014, the Transparency Rules would only apply when the disputing parties have agreed to their application or the States Parties to the treaty have agreed to their application after 1 April 2014. Therefore, even if the disputing parties agree to the application of the Expedited Rules, the proceedings would not be subject to the Transparency Rules unless above-mentioned conditions are met.

102. If the investor-State arbitration is initiated pursuant to an investment treaty concluded on or after 1 April 2014, the Transparency Rules would apply unless the States Parties to the treaty have agreed otherwise. In other words, if States Parties to the treaty have not agreed otherwise and the disputing parties agree to the application of the Expedited Rules, the proceedings would be subject to the Transparency Rules.

103. Parties that have agreed to refer an investor-State dispute to arbitration under the Expedited Rules may agree that the Transparency Rules shall not apply to the arbitration. For example, States could include a reference to the Expedited Rules in their investment treaties, while opting out of the Transparency

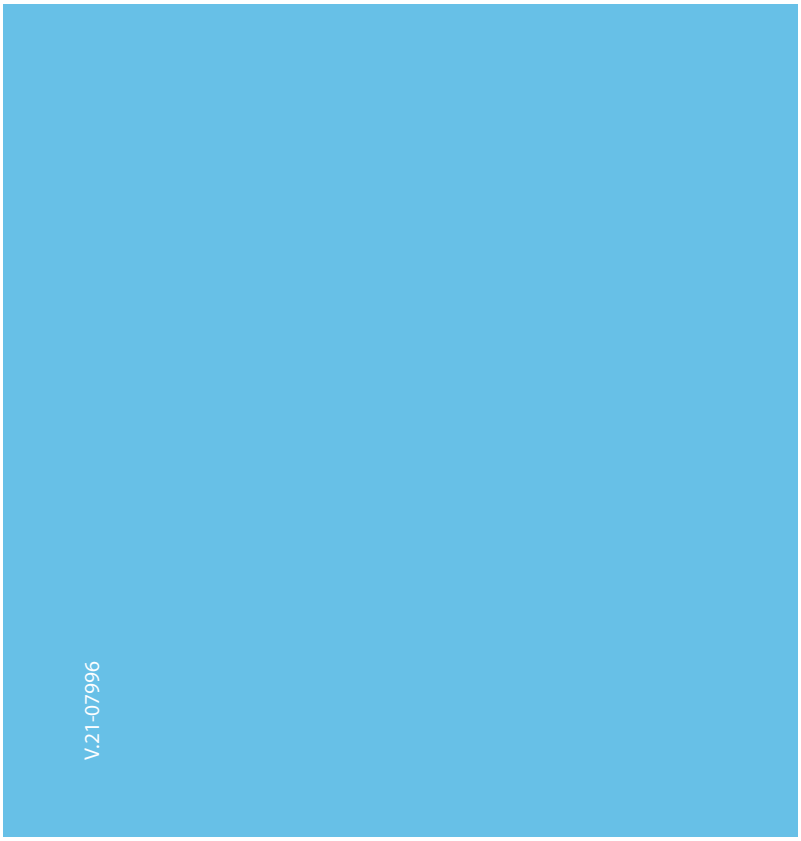
Rules, for example, by making a reference to (i) the 2010 version of the UARs as modified by the Expedited Rules or (ii) the Expedited Rules without article 1(4) of the UARs.

104. However, the flexibility for the disputing parties to opt out of the Transparency Rules in investor-State arbitration initiated pursuant to an investment treaty concluded on or after 1 April 2014 which includes a reference to the UARs will be restricted, if the States Parties to that treaty have not opted out of the Transparency Rules. For example, if two States conclude a treaty after 1 April 2014 allowing an investor to refer a dispute to the UARs and the States have not opted out of the Transparency Rules, it would not be possible for a claimant investor and the respondent State to agree to the Expedited Rules without being subject to the Transparency Rules.

Q. Time frames in the Expedited Rules

105. The following provides an overview of the different time frames in the Expedited Rules. In the "time frame" column, "A + number (days(d)/months(m))" indicates "within" the number of days/months from stage A (in certain cases, receipt thereof).

	Time frame	*Stages of the proceedings and procedural actions*	*Relevant articles*
A		Notice of arbitration (including a proposal for the designation of an appointing authority (A1) and the appointment of a sole arbitrator (A2)) to the respondent	Expedited Rules 4(1)
	A+0d	Statement of claim to the respondent	Expedited Rules 4(2)
B	A+15d	Response to the notice of arbitration (including responses to A1 and A2) to the claimant	Expedited Rules 5(1)
C	15d after A1 or any proposal	If no agreement on the appointing authority, any party may request the Secretary-General of PCA to designate appointing authority or to serve as appointing authority	Expedited Rules 6(1)
D	15d after A2 or any proposal	If no agreement on the arbitrator, any party may request the appointing authority to appoint the sole arbitrator → Appointing authority to appoint as promptly as possible	Expedited Rules 8(2)
E		Constitution of the arbitral tribunal	Expedited Rules 8; UARs 8 & 9
	E+0d	Claimant to communicate its notice of arbitration & statement of claim to the arbitral tribunal (as soon as it is constituted)	Expedited Rules 4(3)
	E+15d	Consultation with the parties through a case management conference or otherwise (promptly after and within 15 days)	Expedited Rules 9
		Establishment of a provisional timetable (as soon as practicable)	UARs 17(2)
F	E+15d	Respondent to communicate its statement of defence to the claimant and the arbitral tribunal (possible extension)	Expedited Rules 5(2); 10
	F+0d	Counterclaim or a claim for purposes of set-off to be included in the statement of defence (permitted at a later stage, if tribunal considers that it appropriate)	Expedited Rules 12
G	E+6m	Making of the award	Expedited Rules 16(1)
	E+9m	Possible extension of the time period for making of the award (exceptional circumstances)	Expedited Rules 16(2)
	E+9m+final extended time limit	Possible extension of the time period for making of the award (at risk of not rendering an award within nine months)	Expedited Rules 16(3)


V.21-07996

SECTION 5

UNCITRAL MODEL LAW (ORIGINAL TEXT 1985)

AFSA

The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

BACK TO INDEX

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

UNCITRAL MODEL LAW ON INTERNATIONAL COMMERCIAL ARBITRATION

UNCITRAL MODEL LAW ON INTERNATIONAL COMMERCIAL ARBITRATION

UNITED NATIONS
1994

CONTENTS

		Page
UNCITRAL MODEL LAW ON INTERNATIONAL COMMERCIAL ARBITRATION		1
Chapter I.	*General provisions*	
Article 1.	Scope of application	1
Article 2.	Definitions and rules of interpretation	2
Article 3.	Receipt of written communications	2
Article 4.	Waiver of right to object	3
Article 5.	Extent of court intervention	3
Article 6.	Court or other authority for certain functions of arbitration assistance and supervision	3
Chapter II.	*Arbitration agreement*	
Article 7.	Definition and form of arbitration agreement	3
Article 8.	Arbitration and substantive claim before court	4
Article 9.	Arbitration agreement and interim measures by court	4
Chapter III.	*Composition of arbitral tribunal*	
Article 10.	Number of arbitrators	4
Article 11.	Appointment of arbitrators	4
Article 12.	Grounds for challenge	5
Article 13.	Challenge procedure	5
Article 14.	Failure or impossibility to act	6
Article 15.	Appointment of substitute arbitrator	6
Chapter IV.	*Jurisdiction of arbitral tribunal*	
Article 16.	Competence of arbitral tribunal to rule on its jurisdiction	6
Article 17.	Power of arbitral tribunal to order interim measures	7
Chapter V.	*Conduct of arbitral proceedings*	
Article 18.	Equal treatment of parties	7
Article 19.	Determination of rules of procedure	7
Article 20.	Place of arbitration	7
Article 21.	Commencement of arbitral proceedings	8
Article 22.	Language	8
Article 23.	Statements of claim and defence	8
Article 24.	Hearings and written proceedings	8
Article 25.	Default of a party	9

Page

Article 26. Expert appointed by arbitral tribunal 9
Article 27. Court assistance in taking evidence 10

Chapter VI. Making of award and termination of proceedings

Article 28. Rules applicable to substance of dispute 10
Article 29. Decision making by panel of arbitrators 10
Article 30. Settlement 10
Article 31. Form and contents of award 11
Article 32. Termination of proceedings 11
Article 33. Correction and interpretation of award; additional award . . . 11

Chapter VII. Recourse against award

Article 34. Application for setting aside as exclusive recourse against arbitral award 12

Chapter VIII. Recognition and enforcement of awards

Article 35. Recognition and enforcement 13
Article 36. Grounds for refusing recognition or enforcement 14

EXPLANATORY NOTE BY THE UNCITRAL SECRETARIAT ON THE MODEL LAW ON INTERNATIONAL COMMERCIAL ARBITRATION 15

A. Background to the Model Law 15
1. Inadequacy of domestic laws 15
2. Disparity between national laws 16

B. Salient features of the Model Law 16
1. Special procedural regime for international commercial arbitration 16
2. Arbitration agreement 18
3. Composition of arbitral tribunal 19
4. Jurisdiction of arbitral tribunal 20
5. Conduct of arbitral proceedings 20
6. Making of award and termination of proceedings 22
7. Recourse against award 23
8. Recognition and enforcement of awards 24

UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration

(United Nations document A/40/17, annex I)

(As adopted by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law on 21 June 1985)

CHAPTER I. GENERAL PROVISIONS

*Article 1. Scope of application**

(1) This Law applies to international commercial** arbitration, subject to any agreement in force between this State and any other State or States.

(2) The provisions of this Law, except articles 8, 9, 35 and 36, apply only if the place of arbitration is in the territory of this State.

(3) An arbitration is international if:

(a) the parties to an arbitration agreement have, at the time of the conclusion of that agreement, their places of business in different States; or

(b) one of the following places is situated outside the State in which the parties have their places of business:

(i) the place of arbitration if determined in, or pursuant to, the arbitration agreement;

(ii) any place where a substantial part of the obligations of the commercial relationship is to be performed or the place with which the subject-matter of the dispute is most closely connected; or

---

*Article headings are for reference purposes only and are not to be used for purposes of interpretation.

**The term "commercial" should be given a wide interpretation so as to cover matters arising from all relationships of a commercial nature, whether contractual or not. Relationships of a commercial nature include, but are not limited to, the following transactions: any trade transaction for the supply or exchange of goods or services; distribution agreement; commercial representation or agency; factoring; leasing; construction of works; consulting; engineering; licensing; investment; financing; banking; insurance; exploitation agreement or concession; joint venture and other forms of industrial or business cooperation; carriage of goods or passengers by air, sea, rail or road.

(c) the parties have expressly agreed that the subject-matter of the arbitration agreement relates to more than one country.

(4) For the purposes of paragraph (3) of this article:

(a) if a party has more than one place of business, the place of business is that which has the closest relationship to the arbitration agreement;

(b) if a party does not have a place of business, reference is to be made to his habitual residence.

(5) This Law shall not affect any other law of this State by virtue of which certain disputes may not be submitted to arbitration or may be submitted to arbitration only according to provisions other than those of this Law.

Article 2. Definitions and rules of interpretation

For the purposes of this Law:

(a) "arbitration" means any arbitration whether or not administered by a permanent arbitral institution;

(b) "arbitral tribunal" means a sole arbitrator or a panel of arbitrators;

(c) "court" means a body or organ of the judicial system of a State;

(d) where a provision of this Law, except article 28, leaves the parties free to determine a certain issue, such freedom includes the right of the parties to authorize a third party, including an institution, to make that determination;

(e) where a provision of this Law refers to the fact that the parties have agreed or that they may agree or in any other way refers to an agreement of the parties, such agreement includes any arbitration rules referred to in that agreement;

(f) where a provision of this Law, other than in articles 25*(a)* and 32(2)*(a)*, refers to a claim, it also applies to a counter-claim, and where it refers to a defence, it also applies to a defence to such counter-claim.

Article 3. Receipt of written communications

(1) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties:

(a) any written communication is deemed to have been received if it is delivered to the addressee personally or if it is delivered at his place of business, habitual residence or mailing address; if none of these can be found after making a reasonable inquiry, a written communication is deemed to have been received if it is sent to the addressee's last-known place of business, habitual residence or mailing address by registered letter or any other means which provides a record of the attempt to deliver it;

(b) the communication is deemed to have been received on the day it is so delivered.

(2) The provisions of this article do not apply to communications in court proceedings.

Article 4. Waiver of right to object

A party who knows that any provision of this Law from which the parties may derogate or any requirement under the arbitration agreement has not been complied with and yet proceeds with the arbitration without stating his objection to such non-compliance without undue delay or, if a time-limit is provided therefor, within such period of time, shall be deemed to have waived his right to object.

Article 5. Extent of court intervention

In matters governed by this Law, no court shall intervene except where so provided in this Law.

Article 6. Court or other authority for certain functions of arbitration assistance and supervision

The functions referred to in articles 11(3), 11(4), 13(3), 14, 16(3) and 34(2) shall be performed by . . . [Each State enacting this model law specifies the court, courts or, where referred to therein, other authority competent to perform these functions.]

CHAPTER II. ARBITRATION AGREEMENT

Article 7. Definition and form of arbitration agreement

(1) "Arbitration agreement" is an agreement by the parties to submit to arbitration all or certain disputes which have arisen or which may arise between them in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not. An arbitration agreement may be in the form of an arbitration clause in a contract or in the form of a separate agreement.

(2) The arbitration agreement shall be in writing. An agreement is in writing if it is contained in a document signed by the parties or in an exchange of letters, telex, telegrams or other means of telecommunication which provide a record of the agreement, or in an exchange of statements of claim and defence in which the existence of an agreement is alleged by one party and not denied by another. The reference in a contract to a document containing an arbitration clause constitutes an arbitration agreement provided that the contract is in writing and the reference is such as to make that clause part of the contract.

Article 8. Arbitration agreement and substantive claim before court

(1) A court before which an action is brought in a matter which is the subject of an arbitration agreement shall, if a party so requests not later than when submitting his first statement on the substance of the dispute, refer the parties to arbitration unless it finds that the agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed.

(2) Where an action referred to in paragraph (1) of this article has been brought, arbitral proceedings may nevertheless be commenced or continued, and an award may be made, while the issue is pending before the court.

Article 9. Arbitration agreement and interim measures by court

It is not incompatible with an arbitration agreement for a party to request, before or during arbitral proceedings, from a court an interim measure of protection and for a court to grant such measure.

CHAPTER III. COMPOSITION OF ARBITRAL TRIBUNAL

Article 10. Number of arbitrators

(1) The parties are free to determine the number of arbitrators.

(2) Failing such determination, the number of arbitrators shall be three.

Article 11. Appointment of arbitrators

(1) No person shall be precluded by reason of his nationality from acting as an arbitrator, unless otherwise agreed by the parties.

(2) The parties are free to agree on a procedure of appointing the arbitrator or arbitrators, subject to the provisions of paragraphs (4) and (5) of this article.

(3) Failing such agreement,

(a) in an arbitration with three arbitrators, each party shall appoint one arbitrator, and the two arbitrators thus appointed shall appoint the third arbitrator; if a party fails to appoint the arbitrator within thirty days of receipt of a request to do so from the other party, or if the two arbitrators fail to agree on the third arbitrator within thirty days of their appointment, the appointment shall be made, upon request of a party, by the court or other authority specified in article 6;

(b) in an arbitration with a sole arbitrator, if the parties are unable to agree on the arbitrator, he shall be appointed, upon request of a party, by the court or other authority specified in article 6.

(4) Where, under an appointment procedure agreed upon by the parties,

(a) a party fails to act as required under such procedure, or

(b) the parties, or two arbitrators, are unable to reach an agreement expected of them under such procedure, or

(c) a third party, including an institution, fails to perform any function entrusted to it under such procedure,

any party may request the court or other authority specified in article 6 to take the necessary measure, unless the agreement on the appointment procedure provides other means for securing the appointment.

(5) A decision on a matter entrusted by paragraph (3) or (4) of this article to the court or other authority specified in article 6 shall be subject to no appeal. The court or other authority, in appointing an arbitrator, shall have due regard to any qualifications required of the arbitrator by the agreement of the parties and to such considerations as are likely to secure the appointment of an independent and impartial arbitrator and, in the case of a sole or third arbitrator, shall take into account as well the advisability of appointing an arbitrator of a nationality other than those of the parties.

Article 12. Grounds for challenge

(1) When a person is approached in connection with his possible appointment as an arbitrator, he shall disclose any circumstances likely to give rise to justifiable doubts as to his impartiality or independence. An arbitrator, from the time of his appointment and throughout the arbitral proceedings, shall without delay disclose any such circumstances to the parties unless they have already been informed of them by him.

(2) An arbitrator may be challenged only if circumstances exist that give rise to justifiable doubts as to his impartiality or independence, or if he does not possess qualifications agreed to by the parties. A party may challenge an arbitrator appointed by him, or in whose appointment he has participated, only for reasons of which he becomes aware after the appointment has been made.

Article 13. Challenge procedure

(1) The parties are free to agree on a procedure for challenging an arbitrator, subject to the provisions of paragraph (3) of this article.

(2) Failing such agreement, a party who intends to challenge an arbitrator shall, within fifteen days after becoming aware of the constitution of the arbitral tribunal or after becoming aware of any circumstance referred to in article 12(2), send a written statement of the reasons for the challenge to the arbitral tribunal. Unless the challenged arbitrator withdraws from his office or the other party agrees to the challenge, the arbitral tribunal shall decide on the challenge.

(3) If a challenge under any procedure agreed upon by the parties or under the procedure of paragraph (2) of this article is not successful, the challenging party may request, within thirty days after having received notice of the decision rejecting the challenge, the court or other authority specified in article 6 to decide on the challenge, which decision shall be subject to no appeal; while such a request is pending, the arbitral tribunal, including the challenged arbitrator, may continue the arbitral proceedings and make an award.

Article 14. Failure or impossibility to act

(1) If an arbitrator becomes *de jure* or *de facto* unable to perform his functions or for other reasons fails to act without undue delay, his mandate terminates if he withdraws from his office or if the parties agree on the termination. Otherwise, if a controversy remains concerning any of these grounds, any party may request the court or other authority specified in article 6 to decide on the termination of the mandate, which decision shall be subject to no appeal.

(2) If, under this article or article 13(2), an arbitrator withdraws from his office or a party agrees to the termination of the mandate of an arbitrator, this does not imply acceptance of the validity of any ground referred to in this article or article 12(2).

Article 15. Appointment of substitute arbitrator

Where the mandate of an arbitrator terminates under article 13 or 14 or because of his withdrawal from office for any other reason or because of the revocation of his mandate by agreement of the parties or in any other case of termination of his mandate, a substitute arbitrator shall be appointed according to the rules that were applicable to the appointment of the arbitrator being replaced.

CHAPTER IV. JURISDICTION OF ARBITRAL TRIBUNAL

Article 16. Competence of arbitral tribunal to rule on its jurisdiction

(1) The arbitral tribunal may rule on its own jurisdiction, including any objections with respect to the existence or validity of the arbitration agreement. For that purpose, an arbitration clause which forms part of a contract shall be treated as an agreement independent of the other terms of the contract. A decision by the arbitral tribunal that the contract is null and void shall not entail *ipso jure* the invalidity of the arbitration clause.

(2) A plea that the arbitral tribunal does not have jurisdiction shall be raised not later than the submission of the statement of defence. A party is not

precluded from raising such a plea by the fact that he has appointed, or participated in the appointment of, an arbitrator. A plea that the arbitral tribunal is exceeding the scope of its authority shall be raised as soon as the matter alleged to be beyond the scope of its authority is raised during the arbitral proceedings. The arbitral tribunal may, in either case, admit a later plea if it considers the delay justified.

(3) The arbitral tribunal may rule on a plea referred to in paragraph (2) of this article either as a preliminary question or in an award on the merits. If the arbitral tribunal rules as a preliminary question that it has jurisdiction, any party may request, within thirty days after having received notice of that ruling, the court specified in article 6 to decide the matter, which decision shall be subject to no appeal; while such a request is pending, the arbitral tribunal may continue the arbitral proceedings and make an award.

Article 17. Power of arbitral tribunal to order interim measures

Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the arbitral tribunal may, at the request of a party, order any party to take such interim measure of protection as the arbitral tribunal may consider necessary in respect of the subject-matter of the dispute. The arbitral tribunal may require any party to provide appropriate security in connection with such measure.

CHAPTER V. CONDUCT OF ARBITRAL PROCEEDINGS

Article 18. Equal treatment of parties

The parties shall be treated with equality and each party shall be given a full opportunity of presenting his case.

Article 19. Determination of rules of procedure

(1) Subject to the provisions of this Law, the parties are free to agree on the procedure to be followed by the arbitral tribunal in conducting the proceedings.

(2) Failing such agreement, the arbitral tribunal may, subject to the provisions of this Law, conduct the arbitration in such manner as it considers appropriate. The power conferred upon the arbitral tribunal includes the power to determine the admissibility, relevance, materiality and weight of any evidence.

Article 20. Place of arbitration

(1) The parties are free to agree on the place of arbitration. Failing such agreement, the place of arbitration shall be determined by the arbitral tribunal

having regard to the circumstances of the case, including the convenience of the parties.

(2) Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (1) of this article, the arbitral tribunal may, unless otherwise agreed by the parties, meet at any place it considers appropriate for consultation among its members, for hearing witnesses, experts or the parties, or for inspection of goods, other property or documents.

Article 21. Commencement of arbitral proceedings

Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the arbitral proceedings in respect of a particular dispute commence on the date on which a request for that dispute to be referred to arbitration is received by the respondent.

Article 22. Language

(1) The parties are free to agree on the language or languages to be used in the arbitral proceedings. Failing such agreement, the arbitral tribunal shall determine the language or languages to be used in the proceedings. This agreement or determination, unless otherwise specified therein, shall apply to any written statement by a party, any hearing and any award, decision or other communication by the arbitral tribunal.

(2) The arbitral tribunal may order that any documentary evidence shall be accompanied by a translation into the language or languages agreed upon by the parties or determined by the arbitral tribunal.

Article 23. Statements of claim and defence

(1) Within the period of time agreed by the parties or determined by the arbitral tribunal, the claimant shall state the facts supporting his claim, the points at issue and the relief or remedy sought, and the respondent shall state his defence in respect of these particulars, unless the parties have otherwise agreed as to the required elements of such statements. The parties may submit with their statements all documents they consider to be relevant or may add a reference to the documents or other evidence they will submit.

(2) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, either party may amend or supplement his claim or defence during the course of the arbitral proceedings, unless the arbitral tribunal considers it inappropriate to allow such amendment having regard to the delay in making it.

Article 24. Hearings and written proceedings

(1) Subject to any contrary agreement by the parties, the arbitral tribunal shall decide whether to hold oral hearings for the presentation of evidence

or for oral argument, or whether the proceedings shall be conducted on the basis of documents and other materials. However, unless the parties have agreed that no hearings shall be held, the arbitral tribunal shall hold such hearings at an appropriate stage of the proceedings, if so requested by a party.

(2) The parties shall be given sufficient advance notice of any hearing and of any meeting of the arbitral tribunal for the purposes of inspection of goods, other property or documents.

(3) All statements, documents or other information supplied to the arbitral tribunal by one party shall be communicated to the other party. Also any expert report or evidentiary document on which the arbitral tribunal may rely in making its decision shall be communicated to the parties.

Article 25. Default of a party

Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, if, without showing sufficient cause,

(a) the claimant fails to communicate his statement of claim in accordance with article 23(1), the arbitral tribunal shall terminate the proceedings;

(b) the respondent fails to communicate his statement of defence in accordance with article 23(1), the arbitral tribunal shall continue the proceedings without treating such failure in itself as an admission of the claimant's allegations;

(c) any party fails to appear at a hearing or to produce documentary evidence, the arbitral tribunal may continue the proceedings and make the award on the evidence before it.

Article 26. Expert appointed by arbitral tribunal

(1) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the arbitral tribunal

(a) may appoint one or more experts to report to it on specific issues to be determined by the arbitral tribunal;

(b) may require a party to give the expert any relevant information or to produce, or to provide access to, any relevant documents, goods or other property for his inspection.

(2) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, if a party so requests or if the arbitral tribunal considers it necessary, the expert shall, after delivery of his written or oral report, participate in a hearing where the parties have the opportunity to put questions to him and to present expert witnesses in order to testify on the points at issue.

Article 27. Court assistance in taking evidence

The arbitral tribunal or a party with the approval of the arbitral tribunal may request from a competent court of this State assistance in taking evidence. The court may execute the request within its competence and according to its rules on taking evidence.

CHAPTER VI. MAKING OF AWARD AND TERMINATION OF PROCEEDINGS

Article 28. Rules applicable to substance of dispute

(1) The arbitral tribunal shall decide the dispute in accordance with such rules of law as are chosen by the parties as applicable to the substance of the dispute. Any designation of the law or legal system of a given State shall be construed, unless otherwise expressed, as directly referring to the substantive law of that State and not to its conflict of laws rules.

(2) Failing any designation by the parties, the arbitral tribunal shall apply the law determined by the conflict of laws rules which it considers applicable.

(3) The arbitral tribunal shall decide *ex aequo et bono* or as *amiable compositeur* only if the parties have expressly authorized it to do so.

(4) In all cases, the arbitral tribunal shall decide in accordance with the terms of the contract and shall take into account the usages of the trade applicable to the transaction.

Article 29. Decision making by panel of arbitrators

In arbitral proceedings with more than one arbitrator, any decision of the arbitral tribunal shall be made, unless otherwise agreed by the parties, by a majority of all its members. However, questions of procedure may be decided by a presiding arbitrator, if so authorized by the parties or all members of the arbitral tribunal.

Article 30. Settlement

(1) If, during arbitral proceedings, the parties settle the dispute, the arbitral tribunal shall terminate the proceedings and, if requested by the parties and not objected to by the arbitral tribunal, record the settlement in the form of an arbitral award on agreed terms.

(2) An award on agreed terms shall be made in accordance with the provisions of article 31 and shall state that it is an award. Such an award has the same status and effect as any other award on the merits of the case.

Article 31. Form and contents of award

(1) The award shall be made in writing and shall be signed by the arbitrator or arbitrators. In arbitral proceedings with more than one arbitrator, the signatures of the majority of all members of the arbitral tribunal shall suffice, provided that the reason for any omitted signature is stated.

(2) The award shall state the reasons upon which it is based, unless the parties have agreed that no reasons are to be given or the award is an award on agreed terms under article 30.

(3) The award shall state its date and the place of arbitration as determined in accordance with article 20(1). The award shall be deemed to have been made at that place.

(4) After the award is made, a copy signed by the arbitrators in accordance with paragraph (1) of this article shall be delivered to each party.

Article 32. Termination of proceedings

(1) The arbitral proceedings are terminated by the final award or by an order of the arbitral tribunal in accordance with paragraph (2) of this article.

(2) The arbitral tribunal shall issue an order for the termination of the arbitral proceedings when:

(a) the claimant withdraws his claim, unless the respondent objects thereto and the arbitral tribunal recognizes a legitimate interest on his part in obtaining a final settlement of the dispute;

(b) the parties agree on the termination of the proceedings;

(c) the arbitral tribunal finds that the continuation of the proceedings has for any other reason become unnecessary or impossible.

(3) The mandate of the arbitral tribunal terminates with the termination of the arbitral proceedings, subject to the provisions of articles 33 and 34(4).

Article 33. Correction and interpretation of award; additional award

(1) Within thirty days of receipt of the award, unless another period of time has been agreed upon by the parties:

(a) a party, with notice to the other party, may request the arbitral tribunal to correct in the award any errors in computation, any clerical or typographical errors or any errors of similar nature;

(b) if so agreed by the parties, a party, with notice to the other party, may request the arbitral tribunal to give an interpretation of a specific point or part of the award.

If the arbitral tribunal considers the request to be justified, it shall make the correction or give the interpretation within thirty days of receipt of the request. The interpretation shall form part of the award.

(2) The arbitral tribunal may correct any error of the type referred to in paragraph (1)*(a)* of this article on its own initiative within thirty days of the date of the award.

(3) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, a party, with notice to the other party, may request, within thirty days of receipt of the award, the arbitral tribunal to make an additional award as to claims presented in the arbitral proceedings but omitted from the award. If the arbitral tribunal considers the request to be justified, it shall make the additional award within sixty days.

(4) The arbitral tribunal may extend, if necessary, the period of time within which it shall make a correction, interpretation or an additional award under paragraph (1) or (3) of this article.

(5) The provisions of article 31 shall apply to a correction or interpretation of the award or to an additional award.

CHAPTER VII. RECOURSE AGAINST AWARD

Article 34. Application for setting aside as exclusive recourse against arbitral award

(1) Recourse to a court against an arbitral award may be made only by an application for setting aside in accordance with paragraphs (2) and (3) of this article.

(2) An arbitral award may be set aside by the court specified in article 6 only if:

(a) the party making the application furnishes proof that:

(i) a party to the arbitration agreement referred to in article 7 was under some incapacity; or the said agreement is not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of this State; or

(ii) the party making the application was not given proper notice of the appointment of an arbitrator or of the arbitral proceedings or was otherwise unable to present his case; or

(iii) the award deals with a dispute not contemplated by or not falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration, provided that, if the decisions on matters submitted to arbitration can be separated from those

not so submitted, only that part of the award which contains decisions on matters not submitted to arbitration may be set aside; or

(iv) the composition of the arbitral tribunal or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties, unless such agreement was in conflict with a provision of this Law from which the parties cannot derogate, or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with this Law; or

(b) the court finds that:

(i) the subject-matter of the dispute is not capable of settlement by arbitration under the law of this State; or

(ii) the award is in conflict with the public policy of this State.

(3) An application for setting aside may not be made after three months have elapsed from the date on which the party making that application had received the award or, if a request had been made under article 33, from the date on which that request had been disposed of by the arbitral tribunal.

(4) The court, when asked to set aside an award, may, where appropriate and so requested by a party, suspend the setting aside proceedings for a period of time determined by it in order to give the arbitral tribunal an opportunity to resume the arbitral proceedings or to take such other action as in the arbitral tribunal's opinion will eliminate the grounds for setting aside.

CHAPTER VIII. RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF AWARDS

Article 35. Recognition and enforcement

(1) An arbitral award, irrespective of the country in which it was made, shall be recognized as binding and, upon application in writing to the competent court, shall be enforced subject to the provisions of this article and of article 36.

(2) The party relying on an award or applying for its enforcement shall supply the duly authenticated original award or a duly certified copy thereof, and the original arbitration agreement referred to in article 7 or a duly certified copy thereof. If the award or agreement is not made in an official language of this State, the party shall supply a duly certified translation thereof into such language.***

***The conditions set forth in this paragraph are intended to set maximum standards. It would, thus, not be contrary to the harmonization to be achieved by the model law if a State retained even less onerous conditions.

Article 36. Grounds for refusing recognition or enforcement

(1) Recognition or enforcement of an arbitral award, irrespective of the country in which it was made, may be refused only:

(a) at the request of the party against whom it is invoked, if that party furnishes to the competent court where recognition or enforcement is sought proof that:

(i) a party to the arbitration agreement referred to in article 7 was under some incapacity; or the said agreement is not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of the country where the award was made; or

(ii) the party against whom the award is invoked was not given proper notice of the appointment of an arbitrator or of the arbitral proceedings or was otherwise unable to present his case; or

(iii) the award deals with a dispute not contemplated by or not falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or it contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration, provided that, if the decisions on matters submitted to arbitration can be separated from those not so submitted, that part of the award which contains decisions on matters submitted to arbitration may be recognized and enforced; or

(iv) the composition of the arbitral tribunal or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with the law of the country where the arbitration took place; or

(v) the award has not yet become binding on the parties or has been set aside or suspended by a court of the country in which, or under the law of which, that award was made; or

(b) if the court finds that:

(i) the subject-matter of the dispute is not capable of settlement by arbitration under the law of this State; or

(ii) the recognition or enforcement of the award would be contrary to the public policy of this State.

(2) If an application for setting aside or suspension of an award has been made to a court referred to in paragraph (1)*(a)*(v) of this article, the court where recognition or enforcement is sought may, if it considers it proper, adjourn its decision and may also, on the application of the party claiming recognition or enforcement of the award, order the other party to provide appropriate security.

14

Explanatory note by the UNCITRAL secretariat on the Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration*

1. The UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration was adopted by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law (UNCITRAL) on 21 June 1985, at the close of the Commission's 18th annual session. The General Assembly, in its resolution 40/72 of 11 December 1985, recommended "that all States give due consideration to the Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, in view of the desirability of uniformity of the law of arbitral procedures and the specific needs of international commercial arbitration practice".

2. The Model Law constitutes a sound and promising basis for the desired harmonization and improvement of national laws. It covers all stages of the arbitral process from the arbitration agreement to the recognition and enforcement of the arbitral award and reflects a worldwide consensus on the principles and important issues of international arbitration practice. It is acceptable to States of all regions and the different legal or economic systems of the world.

3. The form of a model law was chosen as the vehicle for harmonization and improvement in view of the flexibility it gives to States in preparing new arbitration laws. It is advisable to follow the model as closely as possible since that would be the best contribution to the desired harmonization and in the best interest of the users of international arbitration, who are primarily foreign parties and their lawyers.

A. Background to the model law

4. The Model Law is designed to meet concerns relating to the current state of national laws on arbitration. The need for improvement and harmonization is based on findings that domestic laws are often inappropriate for international cases and that considerable disparity exists between them.

1. Inadequacy of domestic laws

5. A global survey of national laws on arbitration revealed considerable disparities not only as regards individual provisions and solutions but also in terms of development and refinement. Some laws may be regarded as outdated, sometimes going

*This note has been prepared by the secretariat of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law (UNCITRAL) for informational purposes only; it is not an official commentary on the Model Law. A commentary prepared by the Secretariat on an earlier draft of the Model Law appears in document A/CN.9/264, reproduced in UNCITRAL *Yearbook*, vol. XVI: 1985 (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.87.V.4).

back to the nineteenth century and often equating the arbitral process with court litigation. Other laws may be said to be fragmentary in that they do not address all relevant issues. Even most of those laws which appear to be up-to-date and comprehensive were drafted with domestic arbitration primarily, if not exclusively, in mind. While this approach is understandable in view of the fact that even today the bulk of cases governed by a general arbitration law would be of a purely domestic nature, the unfortunate consequence is that traditional local concepts are imposed on international cases and the needs of modern practice are often not met.

6. The expectations of the parties as expressed in a chosen set of arbitration rules or a "one-off" arbitration agreement may be frustrated, especially by a mandatory provision of the applicable law. Unexpected and undesired restrictions found in national laws relate, for example, to the parties' ability effectively to submit future disputes to arbitration, to their power to select the arbitrator freely, or to their interest in having the arbitral proceedings conducted according to the agreed rules of procedure and with no more court involvement than is appropriate. Frustrations may also ensue from non-mandatory provisions which may impose undesired requirements on unwary parties who did not provide otherwise. Even the absence of non-mandatory provisions may cause difficulties by not providing answers to the many procedural issues relevant in an arbitration and not always settled in the arbitration agreement.

2. Disparity between national laws

7. Problems and undesired consequences, whether emanating from mandatory or non-mandatory provisions or from a lack of pertinent provisions, are aggravated by the fact that national laws on arbitral procedure differ widely. The differences are a frequent source of concern in international arbitration, where at least one of the parties is, and often both parties are, confronted with foreign and unfamiliar provisions and procedures. For such a party it may be expensive, impractical or impossible to obtain a full and precise account of the law applicable to the arbitration.

8. Uncertainty about the local law with the inherent risk of frustration may adversely affect not only the functioning of the arbitral process but already the selection of the place of arbitration. A party may well for those reasons hesitate or refuse to agree to a place which otherwise, for practical reasons, would be appropriate in the case at hand. The choice of places of arbitration would thus be widened and the smooth functioning of the arbitral proceedings would be enhanced if States were to adopt the Model Law which is easily recognizable, meets the specific needs of international commercial arbitration and provides an international standard with solutions acceptable to parties from different States and legal systems.

B. Salient features of the Model Law

1. Special procedural regime for international commercial arbitration

9. The principles and individual solutions adopted in the Model Law aim at reducing or eliminating the above concerns and difficulties. As a response to the inadequacies and disparities of national laws, the Model Law presents a special legal regime geared to international commercial arbitration, without affecting any relevant

treaty in force in the State adopting the Model Law. While the need for uniformity exists only in respect of international cases, the desire of updating and improving the arbitration law may be felt by a State also in respect of non-international cases and could be met by enacting modern legislation based on the Model Law for both categories of cases.

(a) *Substantive and territorial scope of application*

10. The Model Law defines an arbitration as international if "the parties to an arbitration agreement have, at the time of the conclusion of that agreement, their places of business in different States" (article 1(3)). The vast majority of situations commonly regarded as international will fall under this criterion. In addition, an arbitration is international if the place of arbitration, the place of contract performance, or the place of the subject-matter of the dispute is situated in a State other than where the parties have their place of business, or if the parties have expressly agreed that the subject-matter of the arbitration agreement relates to more than one country.

11. As regards the term "commercial", no hard and fast definition could be provided. Article 1 contains a note calling for "a wide interpretation so as to cover matters arising from all relationships of a commercial nature, whether contractual or not". The footnote to article 1 then provides an illustrative list of relationships that are to be considered commercial, thus emphasizing the width of the suggested interpretation and indicating that the determinative test is not based on what the national law may regard as "commercial".

12. Another aspect of applicability is what one may call the territorial scope of application. According to article 1(2), the Model Law as enacted in a given State would apply only if the place of arbitration is in the territory of that State. However, there is an important and reasonable exception. Articles 8(1) and 9 which deal with recognition of arbitration agreements, including their compatibility with interim measures of protection, and articles 35 and 36 on recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards are given a global scope, i.e. they apply irrespective of whether the place of arbitration is in that State or in another State and, as regards articles 8 and 9, even if the place of arbitration is not yet determined.

13. The strict territorial criterion, governing the bulk of the provisions of the Model Law, was adopted for the sake of certainty and in view of the following facts. The place of arbitration is used as the exclusive criterion by the great majority of national laws and, where national laws allow parties to choose the procedural law of a State other than that where the arbitration takes place, experience shows that parties in practice rarely make use of that facility. The Model Law, by its liberal contents, further reduces the need for such choice of a "foreign" law in lieu of the (Model) Law of the place of arbitration, not the least because it grants parties wide freedom in shaping the rules of the arbitral proceedings. This includes the possibility of incorporating into the arbitration agreement procedural provisions of a "foreign" law, provided there is no conflict with the few mandatory provisions of the Model Law. Furthermore, the strict territorial criterion is of considerable practical benefit in respect of articles 11, 13, 14, 16, 27 and 34, which entrust the courts of the respective State with functions of arbitration assistance and supervision.

(b) *Delimitation of court assistance and supervision*

14. As evidenced by recent amendments to arbitration laws, there exists a trend in favour of limiting court involvement in international commercial arbitration. This seems justified in view of the fact that the parties to an arbitration agreement make a conscious decision to exclude court jurisdiction and, in particular in commercial cases, prefer expediency and finality to protracted battles in court.

15. In this spirit, the Model Law envisages court involvement in the following instances. A first group comprises appointment, challenge and termination of the mandate of an arbitrator (articles 11, 13 and 14), jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal (article 16) and setting aside of the arbitral award (article 34). These instances are listed in article 6 as functions which should be entrusted, for the sake of centralization, specialization and acceleration, to a specially designated court or, as regards articles 11, 13 and 14, possibly to another authority (e.g. arbitral institution, chamber of commerce). A second group comprises court assistance in taking evidence (article 27), recognition of the arbitration agreement, including its compatibility with court-ordered interim measures of protection (articles 8 and 9), and recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards (articles 35 and 36).

16. Beyond the instances in these two groups, "no court shall intervene, in matters governed by this Law". This is stated in the innovative article 5, which by itself does not take a stand on what is the appropriate role of the courts but guarantees the reader and user that he will find all instances of possible court intervention in this Law, except for matters not regulated by it (e.g., consolidation of arbitral proceedings, contractual relationship between arbitrators and parties or arbitral institutions, or fixing of costs and fees, including deposits). Especially foreign readers and users, who constitute the majority of potential users and may be viewed as the primary addressees of any special law on international commercial arbitration, will appreciate that they do not have to search outside this Law.

2. Arbitration agreement

17. Chapter II of the Model Law deals with the arbitration agreement, including its recognition by courts. The provisions follow closely article II of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards (New York, 1958) (hereafter referred to as "1958 New York Convention"), with a number of useful clarifications added.

(a) *Definition and form of arbitration agreement*

18. Article 7(1) recognizes the validity and effect of a commitment by the parties to submit to arbitration an existing dispute *("compromis")* or a future dispute *("clause compromissoire")*. The latter type of agreement is presently not given full effect under certain national laws.

19. While oral arbitration agreements are found in practice and are recognized by some national laws, article 7(2) follows the 1958 New York Convention in requiring written form. It widens and clarifies the definition of written form of article II(2) of that Convention by adding "telex or other means of telecommunication which provide a record of the agreement", by covering the submission-type situation of "an exchange of statements of claim and defence in which the existence of an agreement

is alleged by one party and not denied by another", and by providing that "the reference in a contract to a document" (e.g. general conditions) "containing an arbitration clause constitutes an arbitration agreement provided that the contract is in writing and the reference is such as to make that clause part of the contract".

(b) *Arbitration agreement and the courts*

20. Articles 8 and 9 deal with two important aspects of the complex issue of the relationship between the arbitration agreement and resort to courts. Modelled on article II(3) of the 1958 New York Convention, article 8(1) of the Model Law obliges any court to refer the parties to arbitration if seized with a claim on the same subject-matter unless it finds that the arbitration agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed. The referral is dependent on a request which a party may make not later than when submitting his first statement on the substance of the dispute. While this provision, where adopted by a State when it adopts the Model Law, by its nature binds merely the courts of that State, it is not restricted to agreements providing for arbitration in that State and, thus, helps to give universal recognition and effect to international commercial arbitration agreements.

21. Article 9 expresses the principle that any interim measures of protection that may be obtained from courts under their procedural law (e.g. pre-award attachments) are compatible with an arbitration agreement. Like article 8, this provision is addressed to the courts of a given State, insofar as it determines their granting of interim measures as being compatible with an arbitration agreement, irrespective of the place of arbitration. Insofar as it declares it to be compatible with an arbitration agreement for a party to request such measure from a court, the provision would apply irrespective of whether the request is made to a court of the given State or of any other country. Wherever such request may be made, it may not be relied upon, under the Model Law, as an objection against the existence or effect of an arbitration agreement.

3. Composition of arbitral tribunal

22. Chapter III contains a number of detailed provisions on appointment, challenge, termination of mandate and replacement of an arbitrator. The chapter illustrates the approach of the Model Law in eliminating difficulties arising from inappropriate or fragmentary laws or rules. The approach consists, first, of recognizing the freedom of the parties to determine, by reference to an existing set of arbitration rules or by an ad hoc agreement, the procedure to be followed, subject to fundamental requirements of fairness and justice. Secondly, where the parties have not used their freedom to lay down the rules of procedure or a particular issue has not been covered, the Model Law ensures, by providing a set of suppletive rules, that the arbitration may commence and proceed effectively to the resolution of the dispute.

23. Where under any procedure, agreed upon by the parties or based upon the suppletive rules of the Model Law, difficulties arise in the process of appointment, challenge or termination of the mandate of an arbitrator, Articles 11, 13 and 14 provide for assistance by courts or other authorities. In view of the urgency of the matter and in order to reduce the risk and effect of any dilatory tactics, instant resort may be had by a party within a short period of time and the decision is not appealable.

4. Jurisdiction of arbitral tribunal

(a) *Competence to rule on own jurisdiction*

24. Article 16(1) adopts the two important (not yet generally recognized) principles of *"Kompetenz-Kompetenz"* and of separability or autonomy of the arbitration clause. The arbitral tribunal may rule on its own jurisdiction, including any objections with respect to the existence or validity of the arbitration agreement. For that purpose, an arbitration clause shall be treated as an agreement independent of the other terms of the contract, and a decision by the arbitral tribunal that the contract is null and void shall not entail *ipso jure* the invalidity of the arbitration clause. Detailed provisions in paragraph (2) require that any objections relating to the arbitrators' jurisdiction be made at the earliest possible time.

25. The arbitral tribunal's competence to rule on its own jurisdiction, i.e. on the very foundation of its mandate and power, is, of course, subject to court control. Where the arbitral tribunal rules as a preliminary question that it has jurisdiction, article 16(3) provides for instant court control in order to avoid unnecessary waste of money and time. However, three procedural safeguards are added to reduce the risk and effect of dilatory tactics: short time-period for resort to court (30 days), court decision is not appealable, and discretion of the arbitral tribunal to continue the proceedings and make an award while the matter is pending with the court. In those less common cases where the arbitral tribunal combines its decision on jurisdiction with an award on the merits, judicial review on the question of jurisdiction is available in setting aside proceedings under article 34 or in enforcement proceedings under article 36.

(b) *Power to order interim measures*

26. Unlike some national laws, the Model Law empowers the arbitral tribunal, unless otherwise agreed by the parties, to order any party to take an interim measure of protection in respect of the subject-matter of the dispute, if so requested by a party (article 17). It may be noted that the article does not deal with enforcement of such measures; any State adopting the Model Law would be free to provide court assistance in this regard.

5. Conduct of arbitral proceedings

27. Chapter V provides the legal framework for a fair and effective conduct of the arbitral proceedings. It opens with two provisions expressing basic principles that permeate the arbitral procedure governed by the Model Law. Article 18 lays down fundamental requirements of procedural justice and article 19 the rights and powers to determine the rules of procedure.

(a) *Fundamental procedural rights of a party*

28. Article 18 embodies the basic principle that the parties shall be treated with equality and each party shall be given a full opportunity of presenting his case. Other provisions implement and specify the basic principle in respect of certain fundamental rights of a party. Article 24(1) provides that, unless the parties have validly agreed that no oral hearings for the presentation of evidence or for oral argument be held, the arbitral tribunal shall hold such hearings at an appropriate stage of the proceedings, if so requested by a party. It should be noted that article 24(1) deals

only with the general right of a party to oral hearings (as an alternative to conducting the proceedings on the basis of documents and other materials) and not with the procedural aspects such as the length, number or timing of hearings.

29. Another fundamental right of a party of being heard and being able to present his case relates to evidence by an expert appointed by the arbitral tribunal. Article 26(2) obliges the expert, after having delivered his written or oral report, to participate in a hearing where the parties may put questions to him and present expert witnesses in order to testify on the points at issue, if such a hearing is requested by a party or deemed necessary by the arbitral tribunal. As another provision aimed at ensuring fairness, objectivity and impartiality, article 24(3) provides that all statements, documents and other information supplied to the arbitral tribunal by one party shall be communicated to the other party, and that any expert report or evidentiary document on which the arbitral tribunal may rely in making its decision shall be communicated to the parties. In order to enable the parties to be present at any hearing and at any meeting of the arbitral tribunal for inspection purposes, they shall be given sufficient notice in advance (article 24(2)).

(b) *Determination of rules of procedure*

30. Article 19 guarantees the parties' freedom to agree on the procedure to be followed by the arbitral tribunal in conducting the proceedings, subject to a few mandatory provisions on procedure, and empowers the arbitral tribunal, failing agreement by the parties, to conduct the arbitration in such a manner as it considers appropriate. The power conferred upon the arbitral tribunal includes the power to determine the admissibility, relevance, materiality and weight of any evidence.

31. Autonomy of the parties to determine the rules of procedure is of special importance in international cases since it allows the parties to select or tailor the rules according to their specific wishes and needs, unimpeded by traditional domestic concepts and without the earlier mentioned risk of frustration. The supplementary discretion of the arbitral tribunal is equally important in that it allows the tribunal to tailor the conduct of the proceedings to the specific features of the case without restraints of the traditional local law, including any domestic rules on evidence. Moreover, it provides a means for solving any procedural questions not regulated in the arbitration agreement or the Model Law.

32. In addition to the general provisions of article 19, there are some special provisions using the same approach of granting the parties autonomy and, failing agreement, empowering the arbitral tribunal to decide the matter. Examples of particular practical importance in international cases are article 20 on the place of arbitration and article 22 on the language of the proceedings.

(c) *Default of a party*

33. Only if due notice was given, may the arbitral proceedings be continued in the absence of a party. This applies, in particular, to the failure of a party to appear at a hearing or to produce documentary evidence without showing sufficient cause for the failure (article 25*(c)*). The arbitral tribunal may also continue the proceedings where the respondent fails to communicate his statement of defence, while there is no need for continuing the proceedings if the claimant fails to submit his statement of claim (article 25*(a), (b)*).

34. Provisions which empower the arbitral tribunal to carry out its task even if one of the parties does not participate are of considerable practical importance since, as experience shows, it is not uncommon that one of the parties has little interest in cooperating and in expediting matters. They would, thus, give international commercial arbitration its necessary effectiveness, within the limits of fundamental requirements of procedural justice.

6. Making of award and termination of proceedings

(a) *Rules applicable to substance of dispute*

35. Article 28 deals with the substantive law aspects of arbitration. Under paragraph (1), the arbitral tribunal decides the dispute in accordance with such rules of law as may be agreed by the parties. This provision is significant in two respects. It grants the parties the freedom to choose the applicable substantive law, which is important in view of the fact that a number of national laws do not clearly or fully recognize that right. In addition, by referring to the choice of "rules of law" instead of "law", the Model Law gives the parties a wider range of options as regards the designation of the law applicable to the substance of the dispute in that they may, for example, agree on rules of law that have been elaborated by an international forum but have not yet been incorporated into any national legal system. The power of the arbitral tribunal, on the other hand, follows more traditional lines. When the parties have not designated the applicable law, the arbitral tribunal shall apply the law, i.e. the national law, determined by the conflict of laws rules which it considers applicable.

36. According to article 28(3), the parties may authorize the arbitral tribunal to decide the dispute *ex aequo et bono* or as *amiables compositeurs.* This type of arbitration is currently not known or used in all legal systems and there exists no uniform understanding as regards the precise scope of the power of the arbitral tribunal. When parties anticipate an uncertainty in this respect, they may wish to provide a clarification in the arbitration agreement by a more specific authorization to the arbitral tribunal. Paragraph (4) makes clear that in all cases, i.e including an arbitration *ex aequo et bono,* the arbitral tribunal must decide in accordance with the terms of the contract and shall take into account the usages of the trade applicable to the transaction.

(b) *Making of award and other decisions*

37. In its rules on the making of the award (articles 29-31), the Model Law pays special attention to the rather common case that the arbitral tribunal consists of a plurality of arbitrators (in particular, three). It provides that, in such case, any award and other decision shall be made by a majority of the arbitrators, except on questions of procedure, which may be left to a presiding arbitrator. The majority principle applies also to the signing of the award, provided that the reason for any omitted signature is stated.

38. Article 31(3) provides that the award shall state the place of arbitration and that it shall be deemed to have been made at that place. As to this presumption, it may be noted that the final making of the award constitutes a legal act, which in practice is not necessarily one factual act but may be done in deliberations at various places, by telephone conversation or correspondence; above all, the award need not be signed by the arbitrators at the same place.

39. The arbitral award must be in writing and state its date. It must also state the reasons on which it is based, unless the parties have agreed otherwise or the award is an award on agreed terms, i.e. an award which records the terms of an amicable settlement by the parties. It may be added that the Model Law neither requires nor prohibits "dissenting opinions".

7. Recourse against award

40. National laws on arbitration, often equating awards with court decisions, provide a variety of means of recourse against arbitral awards, with varying and often long time-periods and with extensive lists of grounds that differ widely in the various legal systems. The Model Law attempts to ameliorate this situation, which is of considerable concern to those involved in international commercial arbitration.

(a) *Application for setting aside as exclusive recourse*

41. The first measure of improvement is to allow only one type of recourse, to the exclusion of any other means of recourse regulated in another procedural law of the State in question. An application for setting aside under article 34 must be made within three months of receipt of the award. It should be noted that "recourse" means actively "attacking" the award; a party is, of course, not precluded from seeking court control by way of defence in enforcement proceedings (article 36). Furthermore, "recourse" means resort to a court, i.e. an organ of the judicial system of a State; a party is not precluded from resorting to an arbitral tribunal of second instance if such a possibility has been agreed upon by the parties (as is common in certain commodity trades).

(b) *Grounds for setting aside*

42. As a further measure of improvement, the Model Law contains an exclusive list of limited grounds on which an award may be set aside. This list is essentially the same as the one in article 36(1), taken from article V of the 1958 New York Convention: lack of capacity of parties to conclude arbitration agreement or lack of valid arbitration agreement; lack of notice of appointment of an arbitrator or of the arbitral proceedings or inability of a party to present his case; award deals with matters not covered by submission to arbitration; composition of arbitral tribunal or conduct of arbitral proceedings contrary to effective agreement of parties or, failing agreement, to the Model Law; non-arbitrability of subject-matter of dispute and violation of public policy, which would include serious departures from fundamental notions of procedural justice.

43. Such a parallelism of the grounds for setting aside with those provided in article V of the 1958 New York Convention for refusal of recognition and enforcement was already adopted in the European Convention on International Commercial Arbitration (Geneva, 1961). Under its article IX, the decision of a foreign court setting aside an award for a reason other than the ones listed in article V of the 1958 New York Convention does not constitute a ground for refusing enforcement. The Model Law takes this philosophy one step further by directly limiting the reasons for setting aside.

44. Although the grounds for setting aside are almost identical to those for refusing recognition or enforcement, two practical differences should be noted. Firstly,

the grounds relating to public policy, including non-arbitrability, may be different in substance, depending on the State in question (i.e. State of setting aside or State of enforcement). Secondly, and more importantly, the grounds for refusal of recognition or enforcement are valid and effective only in the State (or States) where the winning party seeks recognition and enforcement, while the grounds for setting aside have a different impact: The setting aside of an award at the place of origin prevents enforcement of that award in all other countries by virtue of article V(1)*(e)* of the 1958 New York Convention and article 36(1)*(a)*(v) of the Model Law.

8. Recognition and enforcement of awards

45. The eighth and last chapter of the Model Law deals with recognition and enforcement of awards. Its provisions reflect the significant policy decision that the same rules should apply to arbitral awards whether made in the country of enforcement or abroad, and that those rules should follow closely the 1958 New York Convention.

(a) *Towards uniform treatment of all awards irrespective of country of origin*

46. By treating awards rendered in international commercial arbitration in a uniform manner irrespective of where they were made, the Model Law draws a new demarcation line between "international" and "non-international" awards instead of the traditional line between "foreign" and "domestic" awards. This new line is based on substantive grounds rather than territorial borders, which are inappropriate in view of the limited importance of the place of arbitration in international cases. The place of arbitration is often chosen for reasons of convenience of the parties and the dispute may have little or no connection with the State where the arbitration takes place. Consequently, the recognition and enforcement of "international" awards, whether "foreign" or "domestic", should be governed by the same provisions.

47. By modelling the recognition and enforcement rules on the relevant provisions of the 1958 New York Convention, the Model Law supplements, without conflicting with, the regime of recognition and enforcement created by that successful Convention.

(b) *Procedural conditions of recognition and enforcement*

48. Under article 35(1) any arbitral award, irrespective of the country in which it was made, shall be recognized as binding and enforceable, subject to the provisions of article 35(2) and of article 36 (which sets forth the grounds on which recognition or enforcement may be refused). Based on the above consideration of the limited importance of the place of arbitration in international cases and the desire of overcoming territorial restrictions, reciprocity is not included as a condition for recognition and enforcement.

49. The Model Law does not lay down procedural details of recognition and enforcement since there is no practical need for unifying them, and since they form an intrinsic part of the national procedural law and practice. The Model Law merely sets certain conditions for obtaining enforcement: application in writing, accompanied by the award and the arbitration agreement (article 35(2)).

(c) *Grounds for refusing recognition or enforcement*

50. As noted earlier, the grounds on which recognition or enforcement may be refused under the Model Law are identical to those listed in article V of the New York Convention. Only, under the Model Law, they are relevant not merely to foreign awards but to all awards rendered in international commercial arbitration. While some provisions of that Convention, in particular as regards their drafting, may have called for improvement, only the first ground on the list (i.e. "the parties to the arbitration agreement were, under the law applicable to them, under some incapacity") was modified since it was viewed as containing an incomplete and potentially misleading conflicts rule. Generally, it was deemed desirable to adopt, for the sake of harmony, the same approach and wording as this important Convention.

Further information may be obtained from:

UNCITRAL secretariat
Vienna International Centre
P.O. Box 500
1400 Vienna, Austria

Telephone: (+43-1) 26060-4060
Internet: http://www.uncitral.org
E-mail: uncitral@uncitral.org

كيفية الحصول على منشورات الأمم المتحدة

يمكن الحصول على منشورات الأمم المتحدة من المكتبات ودور التوزيع في جميع أنحاء العالم. استعلم عنها من المكتبة التي تتعامل معها أو اكتب إلى: الأمم المتحدة، قسم البيع في نيويورك أو في جنيف.

如何购取联合国出版物

联合国出版物在全世界各地的书店和经售处均有发售。 请向书店询问或写信到纽约或日内瓦的联合国销售组。

HOW TO OBTAIN UNITED NATIONS PUBLICATIONS

United Nations publications may be obtained from bookstores and distributors throughout the world. Consult your bookstore or write to: United Nations, Sales Section, New York or Geneva.

COMMENT SE PROCURER LES PUBLICATIONS DES NATIONS UNIES

Les publications des Nations Unies sont en vente dans les librairies et les agences dépositaires du monde entier. Informez-vous auprès de votre libraire ou adressez-vous à: Nations Unies, Section des ventes, New York ou Genève.

КАК ПОЛУЧИТЬ ИЗДАНИЯ ОРГАНИЗАЦИИ ОБЪЕДИНЕННЫХ НАЦИЙ

Издания Организации Объединенных Наций можно купить в книжных магазинах и агентствах во всех районах мира. Наводите справки об изданиях в вашем книжном магазине или пишите по адресу: Организация Объединенных Наций, Секция по продаже изданий, Нью-Йорк или Женева.

CÓMO CONSEGUIR PUBLICACIONES DE LAS NACIONES UNIDAS

Las publicaciones de las Naciones Unidas están en venta en librerías y casas distribuidoras en todas partes del mundo. Consulte a su librero o diríjase a: Naciones Unidas, Sección de Ventas, Nueva York o Ginebra.

Printed in Austria
V.99-91071–January 2000–1,300
V.01-89850–December 2001–1,500
V.06-53866–May 2006–750

United Nations publication
Sales No. E.95.V.18
ISBN 92-1-133498-5

SECTION 6

UNCITRAL MODEL LAW 1985 WITH AMENDMENTS ADOPTED 2006

AFSA

The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

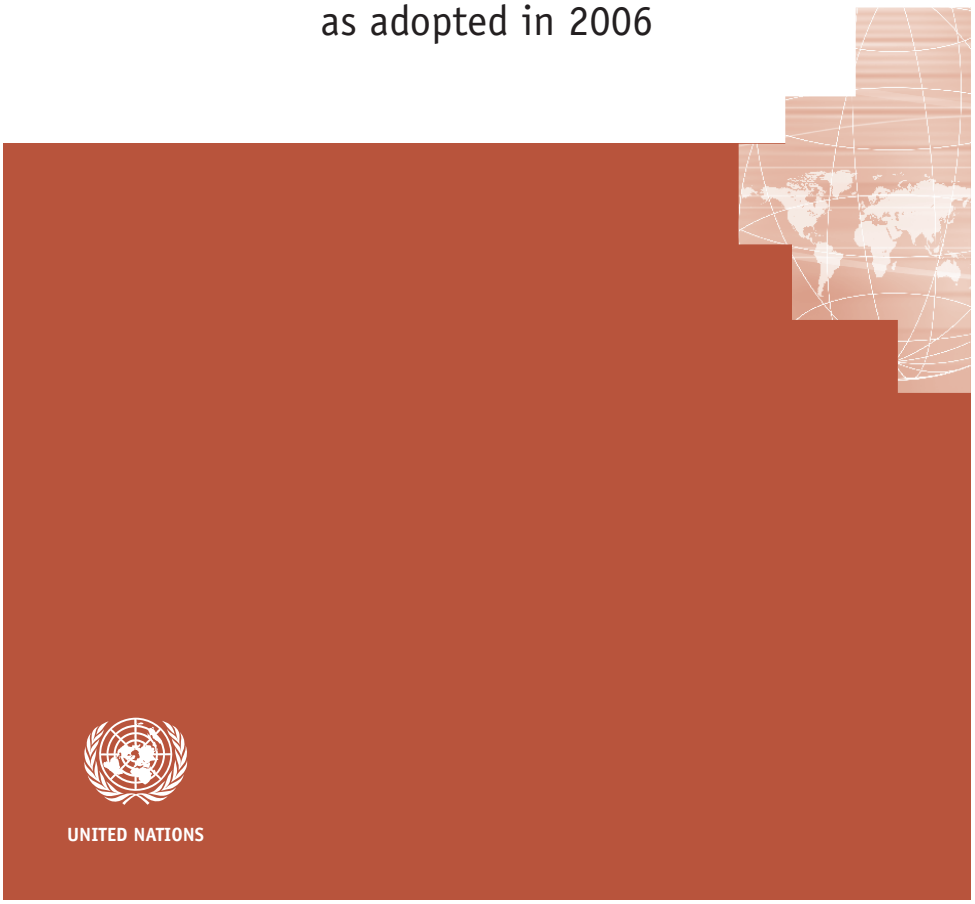
BACK TO INDEX

UNCITRAL | UNITED NATIONS COMMISSION ON INTERNATIONAL TRADE LAW

UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration

1985

With amendments as adopted in 2006



Further information may be obtained from:

UNCITRAL secretariat, Vienna International Centre,
P.O. Box 500, 1400 Vienna, Austria

Telephone: (+43-1) 26060-4060
Telefax: (+43-1) 26060-5813
Internet: uncitral.un.org
Email: uncitral@un.org

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa NPC

UNITED NATIONS COMMISSION ON INTERNATIONAL TRADE LAW

UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration

1985

With amendments as adopted in 2006

UNITED NATIONS
Vienna, 2008

NOTE

Symbols of United Nations documents are composed of capital letters combined with figures. Mention of such a symbol indicates a reference to a United Nations document.

UNITED NATIONS PUBLICATION
Sales No. E.08.V.4
ISBN 978-92-1-133773-0

Contents

Page

Resolutions adopted by the General Assembly . . . . . *vii*

General Assembly Resolution 40/72 (11 December 1985) . . . . . *vii*
General Assembly Resolution 61/33 (4 December 2006) . . . . . *viii*

Part One

UNCITRAL MODEL LAW ON INTERNATIONAL COMMERCIAL ARBITRATION 1

Chapter I. General provisions. 1

Article 1. Scope of application 1
Article 2. Definitions and rules of interpretation 2
Article 2A. International origin and general principles 3
Article 3. Receipt of written communications 3
Article 4. Waiver of right to object 3
Article 5. Extent of court intervention 4
Article 6. Court or other authority for certain functions of arbitration assistance and supervision 4

Chapter II. Arbitration agreement 4

Article 7. *Option I* Definition and form of arbitration agreement 4
Option II Definition of arbitration agreement 5
Article 8. Arbitration agreement and substantive claim before court . . . 5
Article 9. Arbitration agreement and interim measures by court 5

Chapter III. Composition of arbitral tribunal 6

Article 10. Number of arbitrators 6
Article 11. Appointment of arbitrators 6
Article 12. Grounds for challenge 7
Article 13. Challenge procedure 7
Article 14. Failure or impossibility to act 8
Article 15. Appointment of substitute arbitrator 8

Chapter IV. Jurisdiction of arbitral tribunal 8

Article 16. Competence of arbitral tribunal to rule on its jurisdiction . . . 8

Page

Chapter IV A. Interim measures and preliminary orders 9

Section 1. Interim measures 9
Article 17. Power of arbitral tribunal to order interim measures. . . 9
Article 17 A. Conditions for granting interim measures. 10

Section 2. Preliminary orders 10
Article 17 B. Applications for preliminary orders and conditions for granting preliminary orders 10
Article 17 C. Specific regime for preliminary orders 10

Section 3. Provisions applicable to interim measures and preliminary orders 11
Article 17 D. Modification, suspension, termination. 11
Article 17 E. Provision of security 11
Article 17 F. Disclosure 12
Article 17 G. Costs and damages. 12

Section 4. Recognition and enforcement of interim measures. 12
Article 17 H. Recognition and enforcement 12
Article 17 I. Grounds for refusing recognition or enforcement 13

Section 5. Court-ordered interim measures 13
Article 17 J. Court-ordered interim measures 13

Chapter V. Conduct of arbitral proceedings 14

Article 18. Equal treatment of parties 14
Article 19. Determination of rules of procedure. 14
Article 20. Place of arbitration. 14
Article 21. Commencement of arbitral proceedings 14
Article 22. Language. 15
Article 23. Statements of claim and defence. 15
Article 24. Hearings and written proceedings. 15
Article 25. Default of a party. 16
Article 26. Expert appointed by arbitral tribunal 16
Article 27. Court assistance in taking evidence 16

Chapter VI. Making of award and termination of proceedings 17

Article 28. Rules applicable to substance of dispute 17
Article 29. Decision-making by panel of arbitrators. 17
Article 30. Settlement 17
Article 31. Form and contents of award 18
Article 32. Termination of proceedings 18
Article 33. Correction and interpretation of award; additional award . . . 18

Page

Chapter VII. Recourse against award 19

Article 34. Application for setting aside as exclusive recourse against arbitral award 19

Chapter VIII. Recognition and enforcement of awards 20

Article 35. Recognition and enforcement 20
Article 36. Grounds for refusing recognition or enforcement 21

Part Two

EXPLANATORY NOTE BY THE UNCITRAL SECRETARIAT ON THE MODEL LAW ON INTERNATIONAL COMMERCIAL ARBITRATION 23

A. Background to the Model Law 24
1. Inadequacy of domestic laws 24
2. Disparity between national laws 25

B. Salient features of the Model Law 25
1. Special procedural regime for international commercial arbitration 25
2. Arbitration agreement 27
3. Composition of arbitral tribunal 29
4. Jurisdiction of arbitral tribunal 30
5. Conduct of arbitral proceedings 31
6. Making of award and termination of proceedings 33
7. Recourse against award 34
8. Recognition and enforcement of awards 36

Part Three

"Recommendation regarding the interpretation of article II, paragraph 2, and article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York, 10 June 1958", adopted by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law on 7 July 2006 at its thirty-ninth session 39

Resolutions adopted by the General Assembly

40/72. Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law

The General Assembly,

Recognizing the value of arbitration as a method of settling disputes arising in international commercial relations,

Convinced that the establishment of a model law on arbitration that is acceptable to States with different legal, social and economic systems contributes to the development of harmonious international economic relations,

Noting that the Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration[1] was adopted by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law at its eighteenth session, after due deliberation and extensive consultation with arbitral institutions and individual experts on international commercial arbitration,

Convinced that the Model Law, together with the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards[2] and the Arbitration Rules of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law[3] recommended by the General Assembly in its resolution 31/98 of 15 December 1976, significantly contributes to the establishment of a unified legal framework for the fair and efficient settlement of disputes arising in international commercial relations,

1. *Requests* the Secretary-General to transmit the text of the Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law, together with the *travaux préparatoires* from the eighteenth session of the Commission, to Governments and to arbitral institutions and other interested bodies, such as chambers of commerce;

2. *Recommends* that all States give due consideration to the Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, in view of the desirability of uniformity of the law of arbitral procedures and the specific needs of international commercial arbitration practice.

112th plenary meeting
11 December 1985

---

[1] *Official Records of the General Assembly, Fortieth Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/40/17), annex I.
[2] United Nations, *Treaty Series*, vol. 330, No. 4739, p. 38.
[3] United Nations publication, Sales No. E.77.V.6.

[*on the report of the Sixth Committee (A/61/453)*]

61/33. Revised articles of the Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law, and the recommendation regarding the interpretation of article II, paragraph 2, and article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done at New York, 10 June 1958

The General Assembly,

Recognizing the value of arbitration as a method of settling disputes arising in the context of international commercial relations,

Recalling its resolution 40/72 of 11 December 1985 regarding the Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration,[1]

Recognizing the need for provisions in the Model Law to conform to current practices in international trade and modern means of contracting with regard to the form of the arbitration agreement and the granting of interim measures,

Believing that revised articles of the Model Law on the form of the arbitration agreement and interim measures reflecting those current practices will significantly enhance the operation of the Model Law,

Noting that the preparation of the revised articles of the Model Law on the form of the arbitration agreement and interim measures was the subject of due deliberation and extensive consultations with Governments and interested circles and would contribute significantly to the establishment of a harmonized legal framework for a fair and efficient settlement of international commercial disputes,

Believing that, in connection with the modernization of articles of the Model Law, the promotion of a uniform interpretation and application of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done at New York, 10 June 1958,[2] is particularly timely,

1. *Expresses its appreciation* to the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law for formulating and adopting the revised articles of its Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration on the form of the arbitration agreement and interim measures, the text of which is contained in annex I to the report of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law on the work of its thirty-ninth session,[3] and recommends that all States give favourable consideration to the enactment of the revised articles of the Model Law, or the revised Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration of the United Nations Commission on

[1] *Official Records of the General Assembly, Fortieth Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/40/17), annex I.
[2] United Nations, *Treaty Series*, vol. 330, No. 4739.
[3] *Official Records of the General Assembly, Sixty-first Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/61/17).

International Trade Law, when they enact or revise their laws, in view of the desirability of uniformity of the law of arbitral procedures and the specific needs of international commercial arbitration practice;

2. *Also expresses its appreciation* to the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law for formulating and adopting the recommendation regarding the interpretation of article II, paragraph 2, and article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done at New York, 10 June 1958,[2] the text of which is contained in annex II to the report of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law on the work of its thirty-ninth session;[3]

3. *Requests* the Secretary-General to make all efforts to ensure that the revised articles of the Model Law and the recommendation become generally known and available.

64th plenary meeting
4 December 2006

Part One

UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration

(United Nations documents A/40/17,
annex I and A/61/17, annex I)

(As adopted by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law on 21 June 1985, and as amended by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law on 7 July 2006)

CHAPTER I. GENERAL PROVISIONS

Article 1. Scope of application[1]

(1) This Law applies to international commercial[2] arbitration, subject to any agreement in force between this State and any other State or States.

(2) The provisions of this Law, except articles 8, 9, 17 H, 17 I, 17 J, 35 and 36, apply only if the place of arbitration is in the territory of this State.

(Article 1(2) has been amended by the Commission at its thirty-ninth session, in 2006)

(3) An arbitration is international if:

(a) the parties to an arbitration agreement have, at the time of the conclusion of that agreement, their places of business in different States; or

---

[1]Article headings are for reference purposes only and are not to be used for purposes of interpretation.

[2]The term "commercial" should be given a wide interpretation so as to cover matters arising from all relationships of a commercial nature, whether contractual or not. Relationships of a commercial nature include, but are not limited to, the following transactions: any trade transaction for the supply or exchange of goods or services; distribution agreement; commercial representation or agency; factoring; leasing; construction of works; consulting; engineering; licensing; investment; financing; banking; insurance; exploitation agreement or concession; joint venture and other forms of industrial or business cooperation; carriage of goods or passengers by air, sea, rail or road.

(b) one of the following places is situated outside the State in which the parties have their places of business:

(i) the place of arbitration if determined in, or pursuant to, the arbitration agreement;

(ii) any place where a substantial part of the obligations of the commercial relationship is to be performed or the place with which the subject-matter of the dispute is most closely connected; or

(c) the parties have expressly agreed that the subject matter of the arbitration agreement relates to more than one country.

(4) For the purposes of paragraph (3) of this article:

(a) if a party has more than one place of business, the place of business is that which has the closest relationship to the arbitration agreement;

(b) if a party does not have a place of business, reference is to be made to his habitual residence.

(5) This Law shall not affect any other law of this State by virtue of which certain disputes may not be submitted to arbitration or may be submitted to arbitration only according to provisions other than those of this Law.

Article 2. Definitions and rules of interpretation

For the purposes of this Law:

(a) "arbitration" means any arbitration whether or not administered by a permanent arbitral institution;

(b) "arbitral tribunal" means a sole arbitrator or a panel of arbitrators;

(c) "court" means a body or organ of the judicial system of a State;

(d) where a provision of this Law, except article 28, leaves the parties free to determine a certain issue, such freedom includes the right of the parties to authorize a third party, including an institution, to make that determination;

(e) where a provision of this Law refers to the fact that the parties have agreed or that they may agree or in any other way refers to an agreement of the parties, such agreement includes any arbitration rules referred to in that agreement;

(f) where a provision of this Law, other than in articles 25*(a)* and 32(2) *(a)*, refers to a claim, it also applies to a counter-claim, and where it refers to a defence, it also applies to a defence to such counter-claim.

Article 2 A. International origin and general principles

(As adopted by the Commission at its thirty-ninth session, in 2006)

(1) In the interpretation of this Law, regard is to be had to its international origin and to the need to promote uniformity in its application and the observance of good faith.

(2) Questions concerning matters governed by this Law which are not expressly settled in it are to be settled in conformity with the general principles on which this Law is based.

Article 3. Receipt of written communications

(1) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties:

(a) any written communication is deemed to have been received if it is delivered to the addressee personally or if it is delivered at his place of business, habitual residence or mailing address; if none of these can be found after making a reasonable inquiry, a written communication is deemed to have been received if it is sent to the addressee's last-known place of business, habitual residence or mailing address by registered letter or any other means which provides a record of the attempt to deliver it;

(b) the communication is deemed to have been received on the day it is so delivered.

(2) The provisions of this article do not apply to communications in court proceedings.

Article 4. Waiver of right to object

A party who knows that any provision of this Law from which the parties may derogate or any requirement under the arbitration agreement has not been complied with and yet proceeds with the arbitration without stating his objection to such non-compliance without undue delay or, if a time-limit is provided therefor, within such period of time, shall be deemed to have waived his right to object.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Article 5. Extent of court intervention

In matters governed by this Law, no court shall intervene except where so provided in this Law.

Article 6. Court or other authority for certain functions of arbitration assistance and supervision

The functions referred to in articles 11(3), 11(4), 13(3), 14, 16(3) and 34(2) shall be performed by ... [Each State enacting this model law specifies the court, courts or, where referred to therein, other authority competent to perform these functions.]

CHAPTER II. ARBITRATION AGREEMENT

Option I

Article 7. Definition and form of arbitration agreement

(As adopted by the Commission at its thirty-ninth session, in 2006)

(1) "Arbitration agreement" is an agreement by the parties to submit to arbitration all or certain disputes which have arisen or which may arise between them in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not. An arbitration agreement may be in the form of an arbitration clause in a contract or in the form of a separate agreement.

(2) The arbitration agreement shall be in writing.

(3) An arbitration agreement is in writing if its content is recorded in any form, whether or not the arbitration agreement or contract has been concluded orally, by conduct, or by other means.

(4) The requirement that an arbitration agreement be in writing is met by an electronic communication if the information contained therein is accessible so as to be useable for subsequent reference; "electronic communication" means any communication that the parties make by means of data messages; "data message" means information generated, sent, received or stored by electronic, magnetic, optical or similar means, including, but not

limited to, electronic data interchange (EDI), electronic mail, telegram, telex or telecopy.

(5) Furthermore, an arbitration agreement is in writing if it is contained in an exchange of statements of claim and defence in which the existence of an agreement is alleged by one party and not denied by the other.

(6) The reference in a contract to any document containing an arbitration clause constitutes an arbitration agreement in writing, provided that the reference is such as to make that clause part of the contract.

Option II

Article 7. Definition of arbitration agreement

(As adopted by the Commission at its thirty-ninth session, in 2006)

"Arbitration agreement" is an agreement by the parties to submit to arbitration all or certain disputes which have arisen or which may arise between them in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not.

Article 8. Arbitration agreement and substantive claim before court

(1) A court before which an action is brought in a matter which is the subject of an arbitration agreement shall, if a party so requests not later than when submitting his first statement on the substance of the dispute, refer the parties to arbitration unless it finds that the agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed.

(2) Where an action referred to in paragraph (1) of this article has been brought, arbitral proceedings may nevertheless be commenced or continued, and an award may be made, while the issue is pending before the court.

Article 9. Arbitration agreement and interim measures by court

It is not incompatible with an arbitration agreement for a party to request, before or during arbitral proceedings, from a court an interim measure of protection and for a court to grant such measure.

CHAPTER III. COMPOSITION OF ARBITRAL TRIBUNAL

Article 10. Number of arbitrators

(1) The parties are free to determine the number of arbitrators.

(2) Failing such determination, the number of arbitrators shall be three.

Article 11. Appointment of arbitrators

(1) No person shall be precluded by reason of his nationality from acting as an arbitrator, unless otherwise agreed by the parties.

(2) The parties are free to agree on a procedure of appointing the arbitrator or arbitrators, subject to the provisions of paragraphs (4) and (5) of this article.

(3) Failing such agreement,

(a) in an arbitration with three arbitrators, each party shall appoint one arbitrator, and the two arbitrators thus appointed shall appoint the third arbitrator; if a party fails to appoint the arbitrator within thirty days of receipt of a request to do so from the other party, or if the two arbitrators fail to agree on the third arbitrator within thirty days of their appointment, the appointment shall be made, upon request of a party, by the court or other authority specified in article 6;

(b) in an arbitration with a sole arbitrator, if the parties are unable to agree on the arbitrator, he shall be appointed, upon request of a party, by the court or other authority specified in article 6.

(4) Where, under an appointment procedure agreed upon by the parties,

(a) a party fails to act as required under such procedure, or

(b) the parties, or two arbitrators, are unable to reach an agreement expected of them under such procedure, or

(c) a third party, including an institution, fails to perform any function entrusted to it under such procedure,

any party may request the court or other authority specified in article 6 to take the necessary measure, unless the agreement on the appointment procedure provides other means for securing the appointment.

(5) A decision on a matter entrusted by paragraph (3) or (4) of this article to the court or other authority specified in article 6 shall be subject to no

appeal. The court or other authority, in appointing an arbitrator, shall have due regard to any qualifications required of the arbitrator by the agreement of the parties and to such considerations as are likely to secure the appointment of an independent and impartial arbitrator and, in the case of a sole or third arbitrator, shall take into account as well the advisability of appointing an arbitrator of a nationality other than those of the parties.

Article 12. Grounds for challenge

(1) When a person is approached in connection with his possible appointment as an arbitrator, he shall disclose any circumstances likely to give rise to justifiable doubts as to his impartiality or independence. An arbitrator, from the time of his appointment and throughout the arbitral proceedings, shall without delay disclose any such circumstances to the parties unless they have already been informed of them by him.

(2) An arbitrator may be challenged only if circumstances exist that give rise to justifiable doubts as to his impartiality or independence, or if he does not possess qualifications agreed to by the parties. A party may challenge an arbitrator appointed by him, or in whose appointment he has participated, only for reasons of which he becomes aware after the appointment has been made.

Article 13. Challenge procedure

(1) The parties are free to agree on a procedure for challenging an arbitrator, subject to the provisions of paragraph (3) of this article.

(2) Failing such agreement, a party who intends to challenge an arbitrator shall, within fifteen days after becoming aware of the constitution of the arbitral tribunal or after becoming aware of any circumstance referred to in article 12(2), send a written statement of the reasons for the challenge to the arbitral tribunal. Unless the challenged arbitrator withdraws from his office or the other party agrees to the challenge, the arbitral tribunal shall decide on the challenge.

(3) If a challenge under any procedure agreed upon by the parties or under the procedure of paragraph (2) of this article is not successful, the challenging party may request, within thirty days after having received notice of the decision rejecting the challenge, the court or other authority specified in article 6 to decide on the challenge, which decision shall be subject to no appeal; while such a request is pending, the arbitral tribunal, including the challenged arbitrator, may continue the arbitral proceedings and make an award.

Article 14. Failure or impossibility to act

(1) If an arbitrator becomes *de jure* or *de facto* unable to perform his functions or for other reasons fails to act without undue delay, his mandate terminates if he withdraws from his office or if the parties agree on the termination. Otherwise, if a controversy remains concerning any of these grounds, any party may request the court or other authority specified in article 6 to decide on the termination of the mandate, which decision shall be subject to no appeal.

(2) If, under this article or article 13(2), an arbitrator withdraws from his office or a party agrees to the termination of the mandate of an arbitrator, this does not imply acceptance of the validity of any ground referred to in this article or article 12(2).

Article 15. Appointment of substitute arbitrator

Where the mandate of an arbitrator terminates under article 13 or 14 or because of his withdrawal from office for any other reason or because of the revocation of his mandate by agreement of the parties or in any other case of termination of his mandate, a substitute arbitrator shall be appointed according to the rules that were applicable to the appointment of the arbitrator being replaced.

CHAPTER IV. JURISDICTION OF ARBITRAL TRIBUNAL

Article 16. Competence of arbitral tribunal to rule on its jurisdiction

(1) The arbitral tribunal may rule on its own jurisdiction, including any objections with respect to the existence or validity of the arbitration agreement. For that purpose, an arbitration clause which forms part of a contract shall be treated as an agreement independent of the other terms of the contract. A decision by the arbitral tribunal that the contract is null and void shall not entail *ipso jure* the invalidity of the arbitration clause.

(2) A plea that the arbitral tribunal does not have jurisdiction shall be raised not later than the submission of the statement of defence. A party is not precluded from raising such a plea by the fact that he has appointed, or participated in the appointment of, an arbitrator. A plea that the arbitral tribunal is exceeding the scope of its authority shall be raised as soon as the

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

matter alleged to be beyond the scope of its authority is raised during the arbitral proceedings. The arbitral tribunal may, in either case, admit a later plea if it considers the delay justified.

(3) The arbitral tribunal may rule on a plea referred to in paragraph (2) of this article either as a preliminary question or in an award on the merits. If the arbitral tribunal rules as a preliminary question that it has jurisdiction, any party may request, within thirty days after having received notice of that ruling, the court specified in article 6 to decide the matter, which decision shall be subject to no appeal; while such a request is pending, the arbitral tribunal may continue the arbitral proceedings and make an award.

CHAPTER IV A. INTERIM MEASURES AND PRELIMINARY ORDERS

(As adopted by the Commission at its thirty-ninth session, in 2006)

Section 1. Interim measures

Article 17. Power of arbitral tribunal to order interim measures

(1) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the arbitral tribunal may, at the request of a party, grant interim measures.

(2) An interim measure is any temporary measure, whether in the form of an award or in another form, by which, at any time prior to the issuance of the award by which the dispute is finally decided, the arbitral tribunal orders a party to:

(a) Maintain or restore the status quo pending determination of the dispute;

(b) Take action that would prevent, or refrain from taking action that is likely to cause, current or imminent harm or prejudice to the arbitral process itself;

(c) Provide a means of preserving assets out of which a subsequent award may be satisfied; or

(d) Preserve evidence that may be relevant and material to the resolution of the dispute.

Article 17 A. Conditions for granting interim measures

(1) The party requesting an interim measure under article 17(2)*(a)*, *(b)* and *(c)* shall satisfy the arbitral tribunal that:

(a) Harm not adequately reparable by an award of damages is likely to result if the measure is not ordered, and such harm substantially outweighs the harm that is likely to result to the party against whom the measure is directed if the measure is granted; and

(b) There is a reasonable possibility that the requesting party will succeed on the merits of the claim. The determination on this possibility shall not affect the discretion of the arbitral tribunal in making any subsequent determination.

(2) With regard to a request for an interim measure under article 17(2)*(d)*, the requirements in paragraphs (1)*(a)* and *(b)* of this article shall apply only to the extent the arbitral tribunal considers appropriate.

Section 2. Preliminary orders

Article 17 B. Applications for preliminary orders and conditions for granting preliminary orders

(1) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, a party may, without notice to any other party, make a request for an interim measure together with an application for a preliminary order directing a party not to frustrate the purpose of the interim measure requested.

(2) The arbitral tribunal may grant a preliminary order provided it considers that prior disclosure of the request for the interim measure to the party against whom it is directed risks frustrating the purpose of the measure.

(3) The conditions defined under article 17A apply to any preliminary order, provided that the harm to be assessed under article 17A(1)*(a)*, is the harm likely to result from the order being granted or not.

Article 17 C. Specific regime for preliminary orders

(1) Immediately after the arbitral tribunal has made a determination in respect of an application for a preliminary order, the arbitral tribunal shall give notice to all parties of the request for the interim measure, the application for

the preliminary order, the preliminary order, if any, and all other communications, including by indicating the content of any oral communication, between any party and the arbitral tribunal in relation thereto.

(2) At the same time, the arbitral tribunal shall give an opportunity to any party against whom a preliminary order is directed to present its case at the earliest practicable time.

(3) The arbitral tribunal shall decide promptly on any objection to the preliminary order.

(4) A preliminary order shall expire after twenty days from the date on which it was issued by the arbitral tribunal. However, the arbitral tribunal may issue an interim measure adopting or modifying the preliminary order, after the party against whom the preliminary order is directed has been given notice and an opportunity to present its case.

(5) A preliminary order shall be binding on the parties but shall not be subject to enforcement by a court. Such a preliminary order does not constitute an award.

Section 3. Provisions applicable to interim measures and preliminary orders

Article 17 D. Modification, suspension, termination

The arbitral tribunal may modify, suspend or terminate an interim measure or a preliminary order it has granted, upon application of any party or, in exceptional circumstances and upon prior notice to the parties, on the arbitral tribunal's own initiative.

Article 17 E. Provision of security

(1) The arbitral tribunal may require the party requesting an interim measure to provide appropriate security in connection with the measure.

(2) The arbitral tribunal shall require the party applying for a preliminary order to provide security in connection with the order unless the arbitral tribunal considers it inappropriate or unnecessary to do so.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Article 17 F. Disclosure

(1) The arbitral tribunal may require any party promptly to disclose any material change in the circumstances on the basis of which the measure was requested or granted.

(2) The party applying for a preliminary order shall disclose to the arbitral tribunal all circumstances that are likely to be relevant to the arbitral tribunal's determination whether to grant or maintain the order, and such obligation shall continue until the party against whom the order has been requested has had an opportunity to present its case. Thereafter, paragraph (1) of this article shall apply.

Article 17 G. Costs and damages

The party requesting an interim measure or applying for a preliminary order shall be liable for any costs and damages caused by the measure or the order to any party if the arbitral tribunal later determines that, in the circumstances, the measure or the order should not have been granted. The arbitral tribunal may award such costs and damages at any point during the proceedings.

Section 4. Recognition and enforcement of interim measures

Article 17 H. Recognition and enforcement

(1) An interim measure issued by an arbitral tribunal shall be recognized as binding and, unless otherwise provided by the arbitral tribunal, enforced upon application to the competent court, irrespective of the country in which it was issued, subject to the provisions of article 17 I.

(2) The party who is seeking or has obtained recognition or enforcement of an interim measure shall promptly inform the court of any termination, suspension or modification of that interim measure.

(3) The court of the State where recognition or enforcement is sought may, if it considers it proper, order the requesting party to provide appropriate security if the arbitral tribunal has not already made a determination with respect to security or where such a decision is necessary to protect the rights of third parties.

Article 17 I. Grounds for refusing recognition or enforcement[3]

(1) Recognition or enforcement of an interim measure may be refused only:

(a) At the request of the party against whom it is invoked if the court is satisfied that:

(i) Such refusal is warranted on the grounds set forth in article 36(1)*(a)*(i), (ii), (iii) or (iv); or

(ii) The arbitral tribunal's decision with respect to the provision of security in connection with the interim measure issued by the arbitral tribunal has not been complied with; or

(iii) The interim measure has been terminated or suspended by the arbitral tribunal or, where so empowered, by the court of the State in which the arbitration takes place or under the law of which that interim measure was granted; or

(b) If the court finds that:

(i) The interim measure is incompatible with the powers conferred upon the court unless the court decides to reformulate the interim measure to the extent necessary to adapt it to its own powers and procedures for the purposes of enforcing that interim measure and without modifying its substance; or

(ii) Any of the grounds set forth in article 36(1)*(b)*(i) or (ii), apply to the recognition and enforcement of the interim measure.

(2) Any determination made by the court on any ground in paragraph (1) of this article shall be effective only for the purposes of the application to recognize and enforce the interim measure. The court where recognition or enforcement is sought shall not, in making that determination, undertake a review of the substance of the interim measure.

Section 5. Court-ordered interim measures

Article 17 J. Court-ordered interim measures

A court shall have the same power of issuing an interim measure in relation to arbitration proceedings, irrespective of whether their place is in

[3]The conditions set forth in article 17 I are intended to limit the number of circumstances in which the court may refuse to enforce an interim measure. It would not be contrary to the level of harmonization sought to be achieved by these model provisions if a State were to adopt fewer circumstances in which enforcement may be refused.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

the territory of this State, as it has in relation to proceedings in courts. The court shall exercise such power in accordance with its own procedures in consideration of the specific features of international arbitration.

CHAPTER V. CONDUCT OF ARBITRAL PROCEEDINGS

Article 18. Equal treatment of parties

The parties shall be treated with equality and each party shall be given a full opportunity of presenting his case.

Article 19. Determination of rules of procedure

(1) Subject to the provisions of this Law, the parties are free to agree on the procedure to be followed by the arbitral tribunal in conducting the proceedings.

(2) Failing such agreement, the arbitral tribunal may, subject to the provisions of this Law, conduct the arbitration in such manner as it considers appropriate. The power conferred upon the arbitral tribunal includes the power to determine the admissibility, relevance, materiality and weight of any evidence.

Article 20. Place of arbitration

(1) The parties are free to agree on the place of arbitration. Failing such agreement, the place of arbitration shall be determined by the arbitral tribunal having regard to the circumstances of the case, including the convenience of the parties.

(2) Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (1) of this article, the arbitral tribunal may, unless otherwise agreed by the parties, meet at any place it considers appropriate for consultation among its members, for hearing witnesses, experts or the parties, or for inspection of goods, other property or documents.

Article 21. Commencement of arbitral proceedings

Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the arbitral proceedings in respect of a particular dispute commence on the date on which a request for that dispute to be referred to arbitration is received by the respondent.

Article 22. Language

(1) The parties are free to agree on the language or languages to be used in the arbitral proceedings. Failing such agreement, the arbitral tribunal shall determine the language or languages to be used in the proceedings. This agreement or determination, unless otherwise specified therein, shall apply to any written statement by a party, any hearing and any award, decision or other communication by the arbitral tribunal.

(2) The arbitral tribunal may order that any documentary evidence shall be accompanied by a translation into the language or languages agreed upon by the parties or determined by the arbitral tribunal.

Article 23. Statements of claim and defence

(1) Within the period of time agreed by the parties or determined by the arbitral tribunal, the claimant shall state the facts supporting his claim, the points at issue and the relief or remedy sought, and the respondent shall state his defence in respect of these particulars, unless the parties have otherwise agreed as to the required elements of such statements. The parties may submit with their statements all documents they consider to be relevant or may add a reference to the documents or other evidence they will submit.

(2) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, either party may amend or supplement his claim or defence during the course of the arbitral proceedings, unless the arbitral tribunal considers it inappropriate to allow such amendment having regard to the delay in making it.

Article 24. Hearings and written proceedings

(1) Subject to any contrary agreement by the parties, the arbitral tribunal shall decide whether to hold oral hearings for the presentation of evidence or for oral argument, or whether the proceedings shall be conducted on the basis of documents and other materials. However, unless the parties have agreed that no hearings shall be held, the arbitral tribunal shall hold such hearings at an appropriate stage of the proceedings, if so requested by a party.

(2) The parties shall be given sufficient advance notice of any hearing and of any meeting of the arbitral tribunal for the purposes of inspection of goods, other property or documents.

(3) All statements, documents or other information supplied to the arbitral tribunal by one party shall be communicated to the other party. Also any expert report or evidentiary document on which the arbitral tribunal may rely in making its decision shall be communicated to the parties.

Article 25. Default of a party

Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, if, without showing sufficient cause,

(a) the claimant fails to communicate his statement of claim in accordance with article 23(1), the arbitral tribunal shall terminate the proceedings;

(b) the respondent fails to communicate his statement of defence in accordance with article 23(1), the arbitral tribunal shall continue the proceedings without treating such failure in itself as an admission of the claimant's allegations;

(c) any party fails to appear at a hearing or to produce documentary evidence, the arbitral tribunal may continue the proceedings and make the award on the evidence before it.

Article 26. Expert appointed by arbitral tribunal

(1) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the arbitral tribunal

(a) may appoint one or more experts to report to it on specific issues to be determined by the arbitral tribunal;

(b) may require a party to give the expert any relevant information or to produce, or to provide access to, any relevant documents, goods or other property for his inspection.

(2) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, if a party so requests or if the arbitral tribunal considers it necessary, the expert shall, after delivery of his written or oral report, participate in a hearing where the parties have the opportunity to put questions to him and to present expert witnesses in order to testify on the points at issue.

Article 27. Court assistance in taking evidence

The arbitral tribunal or a party with the approval of the arbitral tribunal may request from a competent court of this State assistance in taking evidence.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

The court may execute the request within its competence and according to its rules on taking evidence.

CHAPTER VI. MAKING OF AWARD AND TERMINATION OF PROCEEDINGS

Article 28. Rules applicable to substance of dispute

(1) The arbitral tribunal shall decide the dispute in accordance with such rules of law as are chosen by the parties as applicable to the substance of the dispute. Any designation of the law or legal system of a given State shall be construed, unless otherwise expressed, as directly referring to the substantive law of that State and not to its conflict of laws rules.

(2) Failing any designation by the parties, the arbitral tribunal shall apply the law determined by the conflict of laws rules which it considers applicable.

(3) The arbitral tribunal shall decide *ex aequo et bono* or as *amiable compositeur* only if the parties have expressly authorized it to do so.

(4) In all cases, the arbitral tribunal shall decide in accordance with the terms of the contract and shall take into account the usages of the trade applicable to the transaction.

Article 29. Decision-making by panel of arbitrators

In arbitral proceedings with more than one arbitrator, any decision of the arbitral tribunal shall be made, unless otherwise agreed by the parties, by a majority of all its members. However, questions of procedure may be decided by a presiding arbitrator, if so authorized by the parties or all members of the arbitral tribunal.

Article 30. Settlement

(1) If, during arbitral proceedings, the parties settle the dispute, the arbitral tribunal shall terminate the proceedings and, if requested by the parties and not objected to by the arbitral tribunal, record the settlement in the form of an arbitral award on agreed terms.

(2) An award on agreed terms shall be made in accordance with the provisions of article 31 and shall state that it is an award. Such an award has the same status and effect as any other award on the merits of the case.

Article 31. Form and contents of award

(1) The award shall be made in writing and shall be signed by the arbitrator or arbitrators. In arbitral proceedings with more than one arbitrator, the signatures of the majority of all members of the arbitral tribunal shall suffice, provided that the reason for any omitted signature is stated.

(2) The award shall state the reasons upon which it is based, unless the parties have agreed that no reasons are to be given or the award is an award on agreed terms under article 30.

(3) The award shall state its date and the place of arbitration as determined in accordance with article 20(1). The award shall be deemed to have been made at that place.

(4) After the award is made, a copy signed by the arbitrators in accordance with paragraph (1) of this article shall be delivered to each party.

Article 32. Termination of proceedings

(1) The arbitral proceedings are terminated by the final award or by an order of the arbitral tribunal in accordance with paragraph (2) of this article.

(2) The arbitral tribunal shall issue an order for the termination of the arbitral proceedings when:

(a) the claimant withdraws his claim, unless the respondent objects thereto and the arbitral tribunal recognizes a legitimate interest on his part in obtaining a final settlement of the dispute;

(b) the parties agree on the termination of the proceedings;

(c) the arbitral tribunal finds that the continuation of the proceedings has for any other reason become unnecessary or impossible.

(3) The mandate of the arbitral tribunal terminates with the termination of the arbitral proceedings, subject to the provisions of articles 33 and 34(4).

Article 33. Correction and interpretation of award; additional award

(1) Within thirty days of receipt of the award, unless another period of time has been agreed upon by the parties:

(a) a party, with notice to the other party, may request the arbitral

tribunal to correct in the award any errors in computation, any clerical or typographical errors or any errors of similar nature;

(b) if so agreed by the parties, a party, with notice to the other party, may request the arbitral tribunal to give an interpretation of a specific point or part of the award.

If the arbitral tribunal considers the request to be justified, it shall make the correction or give the interpretation within thirty days of receipt of the request. The interpretation shall form part of the award.

(2) The arbitral tribunal may correct any error of the type referred to in paragraph (1)*(a)* of this article on its own initiative within thirty days of the date of the award.

(3) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, a party, with notice to the other party, may request, within thirty days of receipt of the award, the arbitral tribunal to make an additional award as to claims presented in the arbitral proceedings but omitted from the award. If the arbitral tribunal considers the request to be justified, it shall make the additional award within sixty days.

(4) The arbitral tribunal may extend, if necessary, the period of time within which it shall make a correction, interpretation or an additional award under paragraph (1) or (3) of this article.

(5) The provisions of article 31 shall apply to a correction or interpretation of the award or to an additional award.

CHAPTER VII. RECOURSE AGAINST AWARD

Article 34. Application for setting aside as exclusive recourse against arbitral award

(1) Recourse to a court against an arbitral award may be made only by an application for setting aside in accordance with paragraphs (2) and (3) of this article.

(2) An arbitral award may be set aside by the court specified in article 6 only if:

(a) the party making the application furnishes proof that:

(i) a party to the arbitration agreement referred to in article 7 was under some incapacity; or the said agreement is not

valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of this State; or

(ii) the party making the application was not given proper notice of the appointment of an arbitrator or of the arbitral proceedings or was otherwise unable to present his case; or

(iii) the award deals with a dispute not contemplated by or not falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration, provided that, if the decisions on matters submitted to arbitration can be separated from those not so submitted, only that part of the award which contains decisions on matters not submitted to arbitration may be set aside; or

(iv) the composition of the arbitral tribunal or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties, unless such agreement was in conflict with a provision of this Law from which the parties cannot derogate, or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with this Law; or

(b) the court finds that:

(i) the subject-matter of the dispute is not capable of settlement by arbitration under the law of this State; or

(ii) the award is in conflict with the public policy of this State.

(3) An application for setting aside may not be made after three months have elapsed from the date on which the party making that application had received the award or, if a request had been made under article 33, from the date on which that request had been disposed of by the arbitral tribunal.

(4) The court, when asked to set aside an award, may, where appropriate and so requested by a party, suspend the setting aside proceedings for a period of time determined by it in order to give the arbitral tribunal an opportunity to resume the arbitral proceedings or to take such other action as in the arbitral tribunal's opinion will eliminate the grounds for setting aside.

CHAPTER VIII. RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF AWARDS

Article 35. Recognition and enforcement

(1) An arbitral award, irrespective of the country in which it was made, shall be recognized as binding and, upon application in writing to the

competent court, shall be enforced subject to the provisions of this article and of article 36.

(2) The party relying on an award or applying for its enforcement shall supply the original award or a copy thereof. If the award is not made in an official language of this State, the court may request the party to supply a translation thereof into such language.[4]

(Article 35(2) has been amended by the Commission at its thirty-ninth session, in 2006)

Article 36. Grounds for refusing recognition or enforcement

(1) Recognition or enforcement of an arbitral award, irrespective of the country in which it was made, may be refused only:

(a) at the request of the party against whom it is invoked, if that party furnishes to the competent court where recognition or enforcement is sought proof that:

(i) a party to the arbitration agreement referred to in article 7 was under some incapacity; or the said agreement is not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of the country where the award was made; or

(ii) the party against whom the award is invoked was not given proper notice of the appointment of an arbitrator or of the arbitral proceedings or was otherwise unable to present his case; or

(iii) the award deals with a dispute not contemplated by or not falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or it contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration, provided that, if the decisions on matters submitted to arbitration can be separated from those not so submitted, that part of the award which contains decisions on matters submitted to arbitration may be recognized and enforced; or

(iv) the composition of the arbitral tribunal or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with the law of the country where the arbitration took place; or

[4]The conditions set forth in this paragraph are intended to set maximum standards. It would, thus, not be contrary to the harmonization to be achieved by the model law if a State retained even less onerous conditions.

(v) the award has not yet become binding on the parties or has been set aside or suspended by a court of the country in which, or under the law of which, that award was made; or

(b) if the court finds that:

(i) the subject-matter of the dispute is not capable of settlement by arbitration under the law of this State; or

(ii) the recognition or enforcement of the award would be contrary to the public policy of this State.

(2) If an application for setting aside or suspension of an award has been made to a court referred to in paragraph (1)*(a)*(v) of this article, the court where recognition or enforcement is sought may, if it considers it proper, adjourn its decision and may also, on the application of the party claiming recognition or enforcement of the award, order the other party to provide appropriate security.

Part Two

Explanatory Note by the UNCITRAL secretariat on the 1985 Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration as amended in 2006[1]

1. The UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration ("the Model Law") was adopted by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law (UNCITRAL) on 21 June 1985, at the end of the eighteenth session of the Commission. The General Assembly, in its resolution 40/72 of 11 December 1985, recommended "that all States give due consideration to the Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, in view of the desirability of uniformity of the law of arbitral procedures and the specific needs of international commercial arbitration practice". The Model Law was amended by UNCITRAL on 7 July 2006, at the thirty-ninth session of the Commission (see below, paragraphs 4, 19, 20, 27, 29 and 53). The General Assembly, in its resolution 61/33 of 4 December 2006, recommended "that all States give favourable consideration to the enactment of the revised articles of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, or the revised UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, when they enact or revise their laws (…)".

2. The Model Law constitutes a sound basis for the desired harmonization and improvement of national laws. It covers all stages of the arbitral process from the arbitration agreement to the recognition and enforcement of the arbitral award and reflects a worldwide consensus on the principles and important issues of international arbitration practice. It is acceptable to States of all regions and the different legal or economic systems of the world. Since its adoption by UNCITRAL, the Model Law has come to represent the accepted international legislative standard for a modern arbitration law and a significant number of jurisdictions have enacted arbitration legislation based on the Model Law.

3. The form of a model law was chosen as the vehicle for harmonization and modernization in view of the flexibility it gives to States in preparing new arbitration laws. Notwithstanding that flexibility, and in order to increase the likelihood of achieving a satisfactory degree of harmonization, States are encouraged to make

[1]This note was prepared by the secretariat of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law (UNCITRAL) for informational purposes only; it is not an official commentary on the Model Law. A commentary prepared by the Secretariat on an early draft of the Model Law appears in document A/CN.9/264 (reproduced in UNCITRAL Yearbook, vol. XVI — 1985, United Nations publication, Sales No. E.87.V.4).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

as few changes as possible when incorporating the Model Law into their legal systems. Efforts to minimize variation from the text adopted by UNCITRAL are also expected to increase the visibility of harmonization, thus enhancing the confidence of foreign parties, as the primary users of international arbitration, in the reliability of arbitration law in the enacting State.

4. The revision of the Model Law adopted in 2006 includes article 2 A, which is designed to facilitate interpretation by reference to internationally accepted principles and is aimed at promoting a uniform understanding of the Model Law. Other substantive amendments to the Model Law relate to the form of the arbitration agreement and to interim measures. The original 1985 version of the provision on the form of the arbitration agreement (article 7) was modelled on the language used in article II (2) of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards (New York, 1958) ("the New York Convention"). The revision of article 7 is intended to address evolving practice in international trade and technological developments. The extensive revision of article 17 on interim measures was considered necessary in light of the fact that such measures are increasingly relied upon in the practice of international commercial arbitration. The revision also includes an enforcement regime for such measures in recognition of the fact that the effectiveness of arbitration frequently depends upon the possibility of enforcing interim measures. The new provisions are contained in a new chapter of the Model Law on interim measures and preliminary orders (chapter IV A).

A. Background to the Model Law

5. The Model Law was developed to address considerable disparities in national laws on arbitration. The need for improvement and harmonization was based on findings that national laws were often particularly inappropriate for international cases.

1. Inadequacy of domestic laws

6. Recurrent inadequacies to be found in outdated national laws include provisions that equate the arbitral process with court litigation and fragmentary provisions that fail to address all relevant substantive law issues. Even most of those laws that appear to be up-to-date and comprehensive were drafted with domestic arbitration primarily, if not exclusively, in mind. While this approach is understandable in view of the fact that even today the bulk of cases governed by arbitration law would be of a purely domestic nature, the unfortunate consequence is that traditional local concepts are imposed on international cases and the needs of modern practice are often not met.

7. The expectations of the parties as expressed in a chosen set of arbitration rules or a "one-off" arbitration agreement may be frustrated, especially by mandatory provisions of applicable law. Unexpected and undesired restrictions found in national

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

laws may prevent the parties, for example, from submitting future disputes to arbitration, from selecting the arbitrator freely, or from having the arbitral proceedings conducted according to agreed rules of procedure and with no more court involvement than appropriate. Frustration may also ensue from non-mandatory provisions that may impose undesired requirements on unwary parties who may not think about the need to provide otherwise when drafting the arbitration agreement. Even the absence of any legislative provision may cause difficulties simply by leaving unanswered some of the many procedural issues relevant in arbitration and not always settled in the arbitration agreement. The Model Law is intended to reduce the risk of such possible frustration, difficulties or surprise.

2. Disparity between national laws

8. Problems stemming from inadequate arbitration laws or from the absence of specific legislation governing arbitration are aggravated by the fact that national laws differ widely. Such differences are a frequent source of concern in international arbitration, where at least one of the parties is, and often both parties are, confronted with foreign and unfamiliar provisions and procedures. Obtaining a full and precise account of the law applicable to the arbitration is, in such circumstances often expensive, impractical or impossible.

9. Uncertainty about the local law with the inherent risk of frustration may adversely affect the functioning of the arbitral process and also impact on the selection of the place of arbitration. Due to such uncertainty, a party may hesitate or refuse to agree to a place, which for practical reasons would otherwise be appropriate. The range of places of arbitration acceptable to parties is thus widened and the smooth functioning of the arbitral proceedings is enhanced where States adopt the Model Law, which is easily recognizable, meets the specific needs of international commercial arbitration and provides an international standard based on solutions acceptable to parties from different legal systems.

B. Salient features of the Model Law

1. Special procedural regime for international commercial arbitration

10. The principles and solutions adopted in the Model Law aim at reducing or eliminating the above-mentioned concerns and difficulties. As a response to the inadequacies and disparities of national laws, the Model Law presents a special legal regime tailored to international commercial arbitration, without affecting any relevant treaty in force in the State adopting the Model Law. While the Model Law was designed with international commercial arbitration in mind, it offers a set of basic rules that are not, in and of themselves, unsuitable to any other type of arbitration. States may thus consider extending their enactment of the Model Law to cover also domestic disputes, as a number of enacting States already have.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

(a) Substantive and territorial scope of application

11. Article 1 defines the scope of application of the Model Law by reference to the notion of "international commercial arbitration". The Model Law defines an arbitration as international if "the parties to an arbitration agreement have, at the time of the conclusion of that agreement, their places of business in different States" (article 1 (3)). The vast majority of situations commonly regarded as international will meet this criterion. In addition, article 1 (3) broadens the notion of internationality so that the Model Law also covers cases where the place of arbitration, the place of contract performance, or the place of the subject-matter of the dispute is situated outside the State where the parties have their place of business, or cases where the parties have expressly agreed that the subject-matter of the arbitration agreement relates to more than one country. Article 1 thus recognizes extensively the freedom of the parties to submit a dispute to the legal regime established pursuant to the Model Law.

12. In respect of the term "commercial", the Model Law provides no strict definition. The footnote to article 1 (1) calls for "a wide interpretation" and offers an illustrative and open-ended list of relationships that might be described as commercial in nature, "whether contractual or not". The purpose of the footnote is to circumvent any technical difficulty that may arise, for example, in determining which transactions should be governed by a specific body of "commercial law" that may exist in some legal systems.

13. Another aspect of applicability is the territorial scope of application. The principle embodied in article 1 (2) is that the Model Law as enacted in a given State applies only if the place of arbitration is in the territory of that State. However, article 1 (2) also contains important exceptions to that principle, to the effect that certain articles apply, irrespective of whether the place of arbitration is in the enacting State or elsewhere (or, as the case may be, even before the place of arbitration is determined). These articles are the following: articles 8 (1) and 9, which deal with the recognition of arbitration agreements, including their compatibility with interim measures ordered by a court, article 17 J on court-ordered interim measures, articles 17 H and 17 I on the recognition and enforcement of interim measures ordered by an arbitral tribunal, and articles 35 and 36 on the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards.

14. The territorial criterion governing most of the provisions of the Model Law was adopted for the sake of certainty and in view of the following facts. In most legal systems, the place of arbitration is the exclusive criterion for determining the applicability of national law and, where the national law allows parties to choose the procedural law of a State other than that where the arbitration takes place, experience shows that parties rarely make use of that possibility. Incidentally, enactment of the Model Law reduces any need for the parties to choose a "foreign" law, since the Model Law grants the parties wide freedom in shaping the rules of the arbitral proceedings. In addition to designating the law governing the arbitral procedure, the territorial criterion is of considerable practical importance in respect of articles 11, 13, 14, 16, 27 and 34, which entrust State courts at the place of

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

arbitration with functions of supervision and assistance to arbitration. It should be noted that the territorial criterion legally triggered by the parties' choice regarding the place of arbitration does not limit the arbitral tribunal's ability to meet at any place it considers appropriate for the conduct of the proceedings, as provided by article 20 (2).

(b) Delimitation of court assistance and supervision

15. Recent amendments to arbitration laws reveal a trend in favour of limiting and clearly defining court involvement in international commercial arbitration. This is justified in view of the fact that the parties to an arbitration agreement make a conscious decision to exclude court jurisdiction and prefer the finality and expediency of the arbitral process.

16. In this spirit, the Model Law envisages court involvement in the following instances. A first group comprises issues of appointment, challenge and termination of the mandate of an arbitrator (articles 11, 13 and 14), jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal (article 16) and setting aside of the arbitral award (article 34). These instances are listed in article 6 as functions that should be entrusted, for the sake of centralization, specialization and efficiency, to a specially designated court or, with respect to articles 11, 13 and 14, possibly to another authority (for example, an arbitral institution or a chamber of commerce). A second group comprises issues of court assistance in taking evidence (article 27), recognition of the arbitration agreement, including its compatibility with court-ordered interim measures (articles 8 and 9), court-ordered interim measures (article 17 J), and recognition and enforcement of interim measures (articles 17 H and 17 I) and of arbitral awards (articles 35 and 36).

17. Beyond the instances in these two groups, "no court shall intervene, in matters governed by this Law". Article 5 thus guarantees that all instances of possible court intervention are found in the piece of legislation enacting the Model Law, except for matters not regulated by it (for example, consolidation of arbitral proceedings, contractual relationship between arbitrators and parties or arbitral institutions, or fixing of costs and fees, including deposits). Protecting the arbitral process from unpredictable or disruptive court interference is essential to parties who choose arbitration (in particular foreign parties).

2. Arbitration agreement

18. Chapter II of the Model Law deals with the arbitration agreement, including its recognition by courts.

(a) Definition and form of arbitration agreement

19. The original 1985 version of the provision on the definition and form of arbitration agreement (article 7) closely followed article II (2) of the New York

Convention, which requires that an arbitration agreement be in writing. If the parties have agreed to arbitrate, but they entered into the arbitration agreement in a manner that does not meet the form requirement, any party may have grounds to object to the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal. It was pointed out by practitioners that, in a number of situations, the drafting of a written document was impossible or impractical. In such cases, where the willingness of the parties to arbitrate was not in question, the validity of the arbitration agreement should be recognized. For that reason, article 7 was amended in 2006 to better conform to international contract practices. In amending article 7, the Commission adopted two options, which reflect two different approaches on the question of definition and form of arbitration agreement. The first approach follows the detailed structure of the original 1985 text. It confirms the validity and effect of a commitment by the parties to submit to arbitration an existing dispute ("*compromis*") or a future dispute ("*clause compromissoire*"). It follows the New York Convention in requiring the written form of the arbitration agreement but recognizes a record of the "contents" of the agreement "in any form" as equivalent to traditional "writing". The agreement to arbitrate may be entered into in any form (e.g. including orally) as long as the content of the agreement is recorded. This new rule is significant in that it no longer requires signatures of the parties or an exchange of messages between the parties. It modernizes the language referring to the use of electronic commerce by adopting wording inspired from the 1996 UNCITRAL Model Law on Electronic Commerce and the 2005 United Nations Convention on the Use of Electronic Communications in International Contracts. It covers the situation of "an exchange of statements of claim and defence in which the existence of an agreement is alleged by one party and not denied by another". It also states that "the reference in a contract to any document" (for example, general conditions) "containing an arbitration clause constitutes an arbitration agreement in writing provided that the reference is such as to make that clause part of the contract". It thus clarifies that applicable contract law remains available to determine the level of consent necessary for a party to become bound by an arbitration agreement allegedly made "by reference". The second approach defines the arbitration agreement in a manner that omits any form requirement. No preference was expressed by the Commission in favour of either option I or II, both of which are offered for enacting States to consider, depending on their particular needs, and by reference to the legal context in which the Model Law is enacted, including the general contract law of the enacting State. Both options are intended to preserve the enforceability of arbitration agreements under the New York Convention.

20. In that respect, the Commission also adopted, at its thirty-ninth session in 2006, a "Recommendation regarding the interpretation of article II, paragraph 2, and article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York, 10 June 1958" (A/61/17, Annex 2).[2] The General Assembly, in its resolution 61/33 of 4 December 2006 noted that "in connection with the modernization of articles of the Model Law, the promotion of a uniform interpretation and application of the Convention on the Recognition and

[2]Reproduced in Part Three hereafter.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York, 10 June 1958, is particularly timely". The Recommendation was drafted in recognition of the widening use of electronic commerce and enactments of domestic legislation as well as case law, which are more favourable than the New York Convention in respect of the form requirement governing arbitration agreements, arbitration proceedings, and the enforcement of arbitral awards. The Recommendation encourages States to apply article II (2) of the New York Convention "recognizing that the circumstances described therein are not exhaustive". In addition, the Recommendation encourages States to adopt the revised article 7 of the Model Law. Both options of the revised article 7 establish a more favourable regime for the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards than that provided under the New York Convention. By virtue of the "more favourable law provision" contained in article VII (1) of the New York Convention, the Recommendation clarifies that "any interested party" should be allowed "to avail itself of rights it may have, under the law or treaties of the country where an arbitration agreement is sought to be relied upon, to seek recognition of the validity of such an arbitration agreement".

(b) Arbitration agreement and the courts

21. Articles 8 and 9 deal with two important aspects of the complex relationship between the arbitration agreement and the resort to courts. Modelled on article II (3) of the New York Convention, article 8 (1) of the Model Law places any court under an obligation to refer the parties to arbitration if the court is seized with a claim on the same subject-matter unless it finds that the arbitration agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed. The referral is dependent on a request, which a party may make not later than when submitting its first statement on the substance of the dispute. This provision, where adopted by a State enacting the Model Law, is by its nature binding only on the courts of that State. However, since article 8 is not limited in scope to agreements providing for arbitration to take place in the enacting State, it promotes the universal recognition and effect of international commercial arbitration agreements.

22. Article 9 expresses the principle that any interim measures of protection that may be obtained from courts under their procedural law (for example, pre-award attachments) are compatible with an arbitration agreement. That provision is ultimately addressed to the courts of any State, insofar as it establishes the compatibility between interim measures possibly issued by any court and an arbitration agreement, irrespective of the place of arbitration. Wherever a request for interim measures may be made to a court, it may not be relied upon, under the Model Law, as a waiver or an objection against the existence or effect of the arbitration agreement.

3. Composition of arbitral tribunal

23. Chapter III contains a number of detailed provisions on appointment, challenge, termination of mandate and replacement of an arbitrator. The chapter illustrates the

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

general approach taken by the Model Law in eliminating difficulties that arise from inappropriate or fragmentary laws or rules. First, the approach recognizes the freedom of the parties to determine, by reference to an existing set of arbitration rules or by an ad hoc agreement, the procedure to be followed, subject to the fundamental requirements of fairness and justice. Secondly, where the parties have not exercised their freedom to lay down the rules of procedure or they have failed to cover a particular issue, the Model Law ensures, by providing a set of suppletive rules, that the arbitration may commence and proceed effectively until the dispute is resolved.

24. Where under any procedure, agreed upon by the parties or based upon the suppletive rules of the Model Law, difficulties arise in the process of appointment, challenge or termination of the mandate of an arbitrator, articles 11, 13 and 14 provide for assistance by courts or other competent authorities designated by the enacting State. In view of the urgency of matters relating to the composition of the arbitral tribunal or its ability to function, and in order to reduce the risk and effect of any dilatory tactics, short time-periods are set and decisions rendered by courts or other authorities on such matters are not appealable.

4. Jurisdiction of arbitral tribunal

(a) Competence to rule on own jurisdiction

25. Article 16 (1) adopts the two important (not yet generally recognized) principles of "*Kompetenz-Kompetenz*" and of separability or autonomy of the arbitration clause. "*Kompetenz-Kompetenz*" means that the arbitral tribunal may independently rule on the question of whether it has jurisdiction, including any objections with respect to the existence or validity of the arbitration agreement, without having to resort to a court. Separability means that an arbitration clause shall be treated as an agreement independent of the other terms of the contract. As a consequence, a decision by the arbitral tribunal that the contract is null and void shall not entail *ipso jure* the invalidity of the arbitration clause. Detailed provisions in paragraph (2) require that any objections relating to the arbitrators' jurisdiction be made at the earliest possible time.

26. The competence of the arbitral tribunal to rule on its own jurisdiction (i.e. on the foundation, content and extent of its mandate and power) is, of course, subject to court control. Where the arbitral tribunal rules as a preliminary question that it has jurisdiction, article 16 (3) allows for immediate court control in order to avoid waste of time and money. However, three procedural safeguards are added to reduce the risk and effect of dilatory tactics: short time-period for resort to court (30 days), court decision not appealable, and discretion of the arbitral tribunal to continue the proceedings and make an award while the matter is pending before the court. In those cases where the arbitral tribunal decides to combine its decision on jurisdiction with an award on the merits, judicial review on the question of jurisdiction is available in setting aside proceedings under article 34 or in enforcement proceedings under article 36.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

(b) Power to order interim measures and preliminary orders

27. Chapter IV A on interim measures and preliminary orders was adopted by the Commission in 2006. It replaces article 17 of the original 1985 version of the Model Law. Section 1 provides a generic definition of interim measures and sets out the conditions for granting such measures. An important innovation of the revision lies in the establishment (in section 4) of a regime for the recognition and enforcement of interim measures, which was modelled, as appropriate, on the regime for the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards under articles 35 and 36 of the Model Law.

28. Section 2 of chapter IV A deals with the application for, and conditions for the granting of, preliminary orders. Preliminary orders provide a means for preserving the status quo until the arbitral tribunal issues an interim measure adopting or modifying the preliminary order. Article 17 B (1) provides that "a party may, without notice to any other party, make a request for an interim measure together with an application for a preliminary order directing a party not to frustrate the purpose of the interim measure requested". Article 17 B (2) permits an arbitral tribunal to grant a preliminary order if "it considers that prior disclosure of the request for the interim measure to the party against whom it is directed risks frustrating the purpose of the measure". Article 17 C contains carefully drafted safeguards for the party against whom the preliminary order is directed, such as prompt notification of the application for the preliminary order and of the preliminary order itself (if any), and an opportunity for that party to present its case "at the earliest practicable time". In any event, a preliminary order has a maximum duration of twenty days and, while binding on the parties, is not subject to court enforcement and does not constitute an award. The term "preliminary order" is used to emphasize its limited nature.

29. Section 3 sets out rules applicable to both preliminary orders and interim measures.

30. Section 5 includes article 17 J on interim measures ordered by courts in support of arbitration, and provides that "a court shall have the same power of issuing an interim measure in relation to arbitration proceedings irrespective of whether their place is in the territory of the enacting State, as it has in relation to proceedings in courts". That article has been added in 2006 to put it beyond any doubt that the existence of an arbitration agreement does not infringe on the powers of the competent court to issue interim measures and that the party to such an arbitration agreement is free to approach the court with a request to order interim measures.

5. Conduct of arbitral proceedings

31. Chapter V provides the legal framework for a fair and effective conduct of the arbitral proceedings. Article 18, which sets out fundamental requirements of procedural justice, and article 19 on the rights and powers to determine the rules of procedure, express principles that are central to the Model Law.

(a) Fundamental procedural rights of a party

32. Article 18 embodies the principles that the parties shall be treated with equality and given a full opportunity of presenting their case. A number of provisions illustrate those principles. For example, article 24 (1) provides that, unless the parties have agreed that no oral hearings be held for the presentation of evidence or for oral argument, the arbitral tribunal shall hold such hearings at an appropriate stage of the proceedings, if so requested by a party. It should be noted that article 24 (1) deals only with the general entitlement of a party to oral hearings (as an alternative to proceedings conducted on the basis of documents and other materials) and not with the procedural aspects, such as the length, number or timing of hearings.

33. Another illustration of those principles relates to evidence by an expert appointed by the arbitral tribunal. Article 26 (2) requires the expert, after delivering his or her written or oral report, to participate in a hearing where the parties may put questions to the expert and present expert witnesses to testify on the points at issue, if such a hearing is requested by a party or deemed necessary by the arbitral tribunal. As another provision aimed at ensuring fairness, objectivity and impartiality, article 24 (3) provides that all statements, documents and other information supplied to the arbitral tribunal by one party shall be communicated to the other party, and that any expert report or evidentiary document on which the arbitral tribunal may rely in making its decision shall be communicated to the parties. In order to enable the parties to be present at any hearing and at any meeting of the arbitral tribunal for inspection purposes, they shall be given sufficient notice in advance (article 24 (2)).

(b) Determination of rules of procedure

34. Article 19 guarantees the parties' freedom to agree on the procedure to be followed by the arbitral tribunal in conducting the proceedings, subject to a few mandatory provisions on procedure, and empowers the arbitral tribunal, failing agreement by the parties, to conduct the arbitration in such a manner as it considers appropriate. The power conferred upon the arbitral tribunal includes the power to determine the admissibility, relevance, materiality and weight of any evidence.

35. Autonomy of the parties in determining the rules of procedure is of special importance in international cases since it allows the parties to select or tailor the rules according to their specific wishes and needs, unimpeded by traditional and possibly conflicting domestic concepts, thus obviating the earlier mentioned risk of frustration or surprise (see above, paras. 7 and 9). The supplementary discretion of the arbitral tribunal is equally important in that it allows the tribunal to tailor the conduct of the proceedings to the specific features of the case without being hindered by any restraint that may stem from traditional local law, including any domestic rule on evidence. Moreover, it provides grounds for displaying initiative in solving any procedural question not regulated in the arbitration agreement or the Model Law.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

36. In addition to the general provisions of article 19, other provisions in the Model Law recognize party autonomy and, failing agreement, empower the arbitral tribunal to decide on certain matters. Examples of particular practical importance in international cases are article 20 on the place of arbitration and article 22 on the language to be used in the proceedings.

(c) Default of a party

37. The arbitral proceedings may be continued in the absence of a party, provided that due notice has been given. This applies, in particular, to the failure of the respondent to communicate its statement of defence (article 25 *(b)*). The arbitral tribunal may also continue the proceedings where a party fails to appear at a hearing or to produce documentary evidence without showing sufficient cause for the failure (article 25 *(c)*). However, if the claimant fails to submit its statement of claim, the arbitral tribunal is obliged to terminate the proceedings (article 25 *(a)*).

38. Provisions that empower the arbitral tribunal to carry out its task even if one of the parties does not participate are of considerable practical importance. As experience shows, it is not uncommon for one of the parties to have little interest in cooperating or expediting matters. Such provisions therefore provide international commercial arbitration its necessary effectiveness, within the limits of fundamental requirements of procedural justice.

6. Making of award and termination of proceedings

(a) Rules applicable to substance of dispute

39. Article 28 deals with the determination of the rules of law governing the substance of the dispute. Under paragraph (1), the arbitral tribunal decides the dispute in accordance with the rules of law chosen by the parties. This provision is significant in two respects. It grants the parties the freedom to choose the applicable substantive law, which is important where the national law does not clearly or fully recognize that right. In addition, by referring to the choice of "rules of law" instead of "law", the Model Law broadens the range of options available to the parties as regards the designation of the law applicable to the substance of the dispute. For example, parties may agree on rules of law that have been elaborated by an international forum but have not yet been incorporated into any national legal system. Parties could also choose directly an instrument such as the United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods as the body of substantive law governing the arbitration, without having to refer to the national law of any State party to that Convention. The power of the arbitral tribunal, on the other hand, follows more traditional lines. When the parties have not chosen the applicable law, the arbitral tribunal shall apply the law (i.e., the national law) determined by the conflict-of-laws rules that it considers applicable.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

40. Article 28 (3) recognizes that the parties may authorize the arbitral tribunal to decide the dispute *ex aequo et bono* or as *amiables compositeur*. This type of arbitration (where the arbitral tribunal may decide the dispute on the basis of principles it believes to be just, without having to refer to any particular body of law) is currently not known or used in all legal systems. The Model Law does not intend to regulate this area. It simply calls the attention of the parties on the need to provide clarification in the arbitration agreement and specifically to empower the arbitral tribunal. However, paragraph (4) makes it clear that in all cases where the dispute relates to a contract (including arbitration *ex aequo et bono*) the arbitral tribunal must decide in accordance with the terms of the contract and shall take into account the usages of the trade applicable to the transaction.

(b) Making of award and other decisions

41. In its rules on the making of the award (articles 29-31), the Model Law focuses on the situation where the arbitral tribunal consists of more than one arbitrator. In such a situation, any award and other decision shall be made by a majority of the arbitrators, except on questions of procedure, which may be left to a presiding arbitrator. The majority principle applies also to the signing of the award, provided that the reason for any omitted signature is stated.

42. Article 31 (3) provides that the award shall state the place of arbitration and shall be deemed to have been made at that place. The effect of the deeming provision is to emphasize that the final making of the award constitutes a legal act, which in practice does not necessarily coincide with one factual event. For the same reason that the arbitral proceedings need not be carried out at the place designated as the legal "place of arbitration", the making of the award may be completed through deliberations held at various places, by telephone or correspondence. In addition, the award does not have to be signed by the arbitrators physically gathering at the same place.

43. The arbitral award must be in writing and state its date. It must also state the reasons on which it is based, unless the parties have agreed otherwise or the award is "on agreed terms" (i.e., an award that records the terms of an amicable settlement by the parties). It may be added that the Model Law neither requires nor prohibits "dissenting opinions".

7. Recourse against award

44. The disparity found in national laws as regards the types of recourse against an arbitral award available to the parties presents a major difficulty in harmonizing international arbitration legislation. Some outdated laws on arbitration, by establishing parallel regimes for recourse against arbitral awards or against court decisions, provide various types of recourse, various (and often long) time periods for exercising the recourse, and extensive lists of grounds on which recourse may be based.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

That situation (of considerable concern to those involved in international commercial arbitration) is greatly improved by the Model Law, which provides uniform grounds upon which (and clear time periods within which) recourse against an arbitral award may be made.

(a) Application for setting aside as exclusive recourse

45. The first measure of improvement is to allow only one type of recourse, to the exclusion of any other recourse regulated in any procedural law of the State in question. Article 34 (1) provides that the sole recourse against an arbitral award is by application for setting aside, which must be made within three months of receipt of the award (article 34 (3)). In regulating "recourse" (i.e., the means through which a party may actively "attack" the award), article 34 does not preclude a party from seeking court control by way of defence in enforcement proceedings (articles 35 and 36). Article 34 is limited to action before a court (i.e., an organ of the judicial system of a State). However, a party is not precluded from appealing to an arbitral tribunal of second instance if the parties have agreed on such a possibility (as is common in certain commodity trades).

(b) Grounds for setting aside

46. As a further measure of improvement, the Model Law lists exhaustively the grounds on which an award may be set aside. This list essentially mirrors that contained in article 36 (1), which is taken from article V of the New York Convention. The grounds provided in article 34 (2) are set out in two categories. Grounds which are to be proven by one party are as follows: lack of capacity of the parties to conclude an arbitration agreement; lack of a valid arbitration agreement; lack of notice of appointment of an arbitrator or of the arbitral proceedings or inability of a party to present its case; the award deals with matters not covered by the submission to arbitration; the composition of the arbitral tribunal or the conduct of arbitral proceedings are contrary to the effective agreement of the parties or, failing such agreement, to the Model Law. Grounds that a court may consider of its own initiative are as follows: non-arbitrability of the subject-matter of the dispute or violation of public policy (which is to be understood as serious departures from fundamental notions of procedural justice).

47. The approach under which the grounds for setting aside an award under the Model Law parallel the grounds for refusing recognition and enforcement of the award under article V of the New York Convention is reminiscent of the approach taken in the European Convention on International Commercial Arbitration (Geneva, 1961). Under article IX of the latter Convention, the decision of a foreign court to set aside an award for a reason other than the ones listed in article V of the New York Convention does not constitute a ground for refusing enforcement. The Model Law takes this philosophy one step further by directly limiting the reasons for setting aside.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

48. Although the grounds for setting aside as set out in article 34 (2) are almost identical to those for refusing recognition or enforcement as set out in article 36 (1), a practical difference should be noted. An application for setting aside under article 34 (2) may only be made to a court in the State where the award was rendered whereas an application for enforcement might be made in a court in any State. For that reason, the grounds relating to public policy and non-arbitrability may vary in substance with the law applied by the court (in the State of setting aside or in the State of enforcement).

8. Recognition and enforcement of awards

49. The eighth and last chapter of the Model Law deals with the recognition and enforcement of awards. Its provisions reflect the significant policy decision that the same rules should apply to arbitral awards whether made in the country of enforcement or abroad, and that those rules should follow closely the New York Convention.

(a) Towards uniform treatment of all awards irrespective of country of origin

50. By treating awards rendered in international commercial arbitration in a uniform manner irrespective of where they were made, the Model Law distinguishes between "international" and "non-international" awards instead of relying on the traditional distinction between "foreign" and "domestic" awards. This new line is based on substantive grounds rather than territorial borders, which are inappropriate in view of the limited importance of the place of arbitration in international cases. The place of arbitration is often chosen for reasons of convenience of the parties and the dispute may have little or no connection with the State where the arbitration legally takes place. Consequently, the recognition and enforcement of "international" awards, whether "foreign" or "domestic", should be governed by the same provisions.

51. By modelling the recognition and enforcement rules on the relevant provisions of the New York Convention, the Model Law supplements, without conflicting with, the regime of recognition and enforcement created by that successful Convention.

(b) Procedural conditions of recognition and enforcement

52. Under article 35 (1) any arbitral award, irrespective of the country in which it was made, shall be recognized as binding and enforceable, subject to the provisions of article 35 (2) and of article 36 (the latter of which sets forth the grounds on which recognition or enforcement may be refused). Based on the above consideration of the limited importance of the place of arbitration in international cases and the desire of overcoming territorial restrictions, reciprocity is not included as a condition for recognition and enforcement.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

53. The Model Law does not lay down procedural details of recognition and enforcement, which are left to national procedural laws and practices. The Model Law merely sets certain conditions for obtaining enforcement under article 35 (2). It was amended in 2006 to liberalize formal requirements and reflect the amendment made to article 7 on the form of the arbitration agreement. Presentation of a copy of the arbitration agreement is no longer required under article 35 (2).

(c) Grounds for refusing recognition or enforcement

54. Although the grounds on which recognition or enforcement may be refused under the Model Law are identical to those listed in article V of the New York Convention, the grounds listed in the Model Law are relevant not only to foreign awards but to all awards rendered in the sphere of application of the piece of legislation enacting the Model Law. Generally, it was deemed desirable to adopt, for the sake of harmony, the same approach and wording as this important Convention. However, the first ground on the list as contained in the New York Convention (which provides that recognition and enforcement may be refused if "the parties to the arbitration agreement were, under the law applicable to them, under some incapacity") was modified since it was viewed as containing an incomplete and potentially misleading conflict-of-laws rule.

Further information on the Model Law may be obtained from:

UNCITRAL secretariat
Vienna International Centre
P.O. Box 500
1400 Vienna
Austria

Telephone: (+43-1) 26060-4060
Telefax: (+43-1) 26060-5813
Internet: uncitral.un.org
Email: uncitral@un.org

Part Three

Recommendation regarding the interpretation of article II, paragraph 2, and article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York, 10 June 1958, adopted by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law on 7 July 2006 at its thirty-ninth session

The United Nations Commission on International Trade Law,

Recalling General Assembly resolution 2205 (XXI) of 17 December 1966, which established the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law with the object of promoting the progressive harmonization and unification of the law of international trade by, inter alia, promoting ways and means of ensuring a uniform interpretation and application of international conventions and uniform laws in the field of the law of international trade,

Conscious of the fact that the different legal, social and economic systems of the world, together with different levels of development, are represented in the Commission,

Recalling successive resolutions of the General Assembly reaffirming the mandate of the Commission as the core legal body within the United Nations system in the field of international trade law to coordinate legal activities in this field,

Convinced that the wide adoption of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York on 10 June 1958,[1] has been a significant achievement in the promotion of the rule of law, particularly in the field of international trade,

Recalling that the Conference of Plenipotentiaries which prepared and opened the Convention for signature adopted a resolution, which states, inter alia, that the Conference "considers that greater uniformity of national laws on arbitration would further the effectiveness of arbitration in the settlement of private law disputes",

Bearing in mind differing interpretations of the form requirements under the Convention that result in part from differences of expression as between the five equally authentic texts of the Convention,

---

[1]United Nations, *Treaty Series*, vol. 330, No. 4739.

Taking into account article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention, a purpose of which is to enable the enforcement of foreign arbitral awards to the greatest extent, in particular by recognizing the right of any interested party to avail itself of law or treaties of the country where the award is sought to be relied upon, including where such law or treaties offer a regime more favourable than the Convention,

Considering the wide use of electronic commerce,

Taking into account international legal instruments, such as the 1985 UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration,[2] as subsequently revised, particularly with respect to article 7,[3] the UNCITRAL Model Law on Electronic Commerce,[4] the UNCITRAL Model Law on Electronic Signatures[5] and the United Nations Convention on the Use of Electronic Communications in International Contracts,[6]

Taking into account also enactments of domestic legislation, as well as case law, more favourable than the Convention in respect of form requirement governing arbitration agreements, arbitration proceedings and the enforcement of arbitral awards,

Considering that, in interpreting the Convention, regard is to be had to the need to promote recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards,

1. *Recommends* that article II, paragraph 2, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York, 10 June 1958, be applied recognizing that the circumstances described therein are not exhaustive;

2. *Recommends also* that article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York, 10 June 1958, should be applied to allow any interested party to avail itself of rights it may have, under the law or treaties of the country where an arbitration agreement is sought to be relied upon, to seek recognition of the validity of such an arbitration agreement.

---

[2] *Official Records of the General Assembly, Fortieth Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/40/17), annex I, and United Nations publication, Sales No. E.95.V.18.

[3] Ibid., *Sixty-first Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/61/17), annex I.

[4] Ibid., *Fifty-first Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/51/17), annex I, and United Nations publication, Sales No. E.99.V.4, which contains also an additional article 5 bis, adopted in 1998, and the accompanying Guide to Enactment.

[5] Ibid., *Fifty-sixth Session, Supplement No. 17* and corrigendum (A/56/17 and Corr.3), annex II, and United Nations publication, Sales No. E.02.V.8, which contains also the accompanying Guide to Enactment.

[6] General Assembly resolution 60/21, annex.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa NPC

V.19-09955 (V.10-58515)

ISBN 978-92-1-1337730

SECTION 7

UNCITRAL MODEL LAW AMENDMENTS 2006

AFSA

The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

BACK TO INDEX

Report of the United Nations Commission on International Trade law on the work of its thirty-ninth session 19 June – 7 July 2006 (UN doc A/61/17)

Annex I

Revised articles of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration

[Article 1, paragraph 2]

2. The provisions of this Law, except articles 8, 9, 17 H, 17 I, 17 J, 35 and 36, apply only if the place of arbitration is in the territory of this State.

Article 2 A. International origin and general principles

1. In the interpretation of this Law, regard is to be had to its international origin and to the need to promote uniformity in its application and the observance of good faith.

2. Questions concerning matters governed by this Law which are not expressly settled in it are to be settled in conformity with the general principles on which this Law is based.

[Article 7]

Option I

Article 7. Definition and form of arbitration agreement

1. "Arbitration agreement" is an agreement by the parties to submit to arbitration all or certain disputes which have arisen or which may arise between them in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not. An arbitration agreement may be in the form of an arbitration clause in a contract or in the form of a separate agreement.

2. The arbitration agreement shall be in writing.

3. An arbitration agreement is in writing if its content is recorded in any form, whether or not the arbitration agreement or contract has been concluded orally, by conduct, or by other means.

4. The requirement that an arbitration agreement be in writing is met by an electronic communication if the information contained therein is accessible so as to be useable for subsequent reference; "electronic communication" means any communication that the parties make by means of data messages; "data message" means information generated, sent, received or stored by electronic, magnetic, optical or similar means, including, but not limited to, electronic data interchange (EDI), electronic mail, telegram, telex or telecopy.

5. Furthermore, an arbitration agreement is in writing if it is contained in an exchange of statements of claim and defence in which the existence of an agreement is alleged by one party and not denied by the other.

6. The reference in a contract to any document containing an arbitration clause constitutes an arbitration agreement in writing, provided that the reference is such as to make that clause part of the contract.

Option II

Article 7. Definition of arbitration agreement

"Arbitration agreement" is an agreement by the parties to submit to arbitration all or certain disputes which have arisen or which may arise between them in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not.

Chapter IV A. Interim measures and preliminary orders

Section 1. Interim measures

Article 17. Power of arbitral tribunal to order interim measures

1. Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the arbitral tribunal may, at the request of a party, grant interim measures.

2. An interim measure is any temporary measure, whether in the form of an award or in another form, by which, at any time prior to the issuance of the award by which the dispute is finally decided, the arbitral tribunal orders a party to:

(a) Maintain or restore the status quo pending determination of the dispute;
(b) Take action that would prevent, or refrain from taking action that is likely to cause, current or imminent harm or prejudice to the arbitral process itself;
(c) Provide a means of preserving assets out of which a subsequent award may be satisfied; or
(d) Preserve evidence that may be relevant and material to the resolution of the dispute.

Article 17 A. Conditions for granting interim measures

1. The party requesting an interim measure under article 17, paragraph 2 (a), (b) and (c) shall satisfy the arbitral tribunal that:

(a) Harm not adequately reparable by an award of damages is likely to result if the measure is not ordered, and such harm substantially outweighs the harm that is likely to result to the party against whom the measure is directed if the measure is granted; and
(b) There is a reasonable possibility that the requesting party will succeed on the merits of the claim. The determination on this possibility shall not affect the discretion of the arbitral tribunal in making any subsequent determination.

2. With regard to a request for an interim measure under article 17, paragraph 2 (d), the requirements in paragraph 1 (a) and (b) of this article shall apply only to the extent the arbitral tribunal considers appropriate.

Section 2. Preliminary orders

Article 17 B. Applications for preliminary orders and conditions for granting preliminary orders

1. Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, a party may, without notice to any other party, make a request for an interim measure together with an application for a preliminary order directing a party not to frustrate the purpose of the interim measure requested.

2. The arbitral tribunal may grant a preliminary order provided it considers that prior disclosure of the request for the interim measure to the party against whom it is directed risks frustrating the purpose of the measure.

3. The conditions defined under article 17 A apply to any preliminary order, provided that the harm to be assessed under article 17 A, paragraph 1 (a), is the harm likely to result from the order being granted or not.

Article 17 C. Specific regime for preliminary orders

1. Immediately after the arbitral tribunal has made a determination in respect of an application for a preliminary order, the arbitral tribunal shall give notice to all parties of the request for the interim measure, the application for the preliminary order, the preliminary order, if any, and all other communications, including by indicating the content of any oral communication, between any party and the arbitral tribunal in relation thereto.

2. At the same time, the arbitral tribunal shall give an opportunity to any party against whom a preliminary order is directed to present its case at the earliest practicable time.

3. The arbitral tribunal shall decide promptly on any objection to the preliminary order.

4. A preliminary order shall expire after twenty days from the date on which it was issued by the arbitral tribunal. However, the arbitral tribunal may issue an interim measure adopting or modifying the preliminary order, after the party against whom the preliminary order is directed has been given notice and an opportunity to present its case.

5. A preliminary order shall be binding on the parties but shall not be subject to enforcement by a court. Such a preliminary order does not constitute an award.

Section 3. Provisions applicable to interim measures and preliminary orders

Article 17 D. Modification, suspension, termination

The arbitral tribunal may modify, suspend or terminate an interim measure or a preliminary order it has granted, upon application of any party or, in exceptional circumstances and upon prior notice to the parties, on the arbitral tribunal's own initiative.

Article 17 E. Provision of security

1. The arbitral tribunal may require the party requesting an interim measure to provide appropriate security in connection with the measure.

2. The arbitral tribunal shall require the party applying for a preliminary order to provide security in connection with the order unless the arbitral tribunal considers it inappropriate or unnecessary to do so.

Article 17 F. Disclosure

1. The arbitral tribunal may require any party promptly to disclose any material change in the circumstances on the basis of which the measure was requested or granted.

2. The party applying for a preliminary order shall disclose to the arbitral tribunal all circumstances that are likely to be relevant to the arbitral tribunal's determination whether to grant or maintain the order, and such obligation shall continue until the party against whom

the order has been requested has had an opportunity to present its case. Thereafter, paragraph 1 of this article shall apply.

Article 17 G. Costs and damages

The party requesting an interim measure or applying for a preliminary order shall be liable for any costs and damages caused by the measure or the order to any party if the arbitral tribunal later determines that, in the circumstances, the measure or the order should not have been granted. The arbitral tribunal may award such costs and damages at any point during the proceedings.

Section 4. Recognition and enforcement of interim measures

Article 17 H. Recognition and enforcement

1. An interim measure issued by an arbitral tribunal shall be recognized as binding and, unless otherwise provided by the arbitral tribunal, enforced upon application to the competent court, irrespective of the country in which it was issued, subject to the provisions of article 17 I.

2. The party who is seeking or has obtained recognition or enforcement of an interim measure shall promptly inform the court of any termination, suspension or modification of that interim measure.

3. The court of the State where recognition or enforcement is sought may, if it considers it proper, order the requesting party to provide appropriate security if the arbitral tribunal has not already made a determination with respect to security or where such a decision is necessary to protect the rights of third parties.

Article 17 I. Grounds for refusing recognition or enforcement*

1. Recognition or enforcement of an interim measure may be refused only:

(a) At the request of the party against whom it is invoked if the court is satisfied that:

(i) Such refusal is warranted on the grounds set forth in article 36, paragraph 1 (a)(i), (ii), (iii) or (iv); or

(ii) The arbitral tribunal's decision with respect to the provision of security in connection with the interim measure issued by the arbitral tribunal has not been complied with; or

(iii) The interim measure has been terminated or suspended by the arbitral tribunal or, where so empowered, by the court of the State in which the arbitration takes place or under the law of which that interim measure was granted; or

(b) If the court finds that:

(i) The interim measure is incompatible with the powers conferred upon the court unless the court decides to reformulate the interim measure to the extent necessary to adapt it to its own powers and procedures for the purposes of enforcing that interim measure and without modifying its substance; or

* The conditions set forth in article 17 I are intended to limit the number of circumstances in which the court may refuse to enforce an interim measure. It would not be contrary to the level of harmonization sought to be achieved by these model provisions if a State were to adopt fewer circumstances in which enforcement may be refused.

(ii) Any of the grounds set forth in article 36, paragraph 1 (b)(i) or (ii), apply to the recognition and enforcement of the interim measure.

2. Any determination made by the court on any ground in paragraph 1 of this article shall be effective only for the purposes of the application to recognize and enforce the interim measure. The court where recognition or enforcement is sought shall not, in making that determination, undertake a review of the substance of the interim measure.

Section 5. Court-ordered interim measures

Article 17 J. Court-ordered interim measures

A court shall have the same power of issuing an interim measure in relation to arbitration proceedings, irrespective of whether their place is in the territory of this State, as it has in relation to proceedings in courts. The court shall exercise such power in accordance with its own procedures in consideration of the specific features of international arbitration.

[Article 35, paragraph 2]

2. The party relying on an award or applying for its enforcement shall supply the original award or a copy thereof. If the award is not made in an official language of this State, the court may request the party to supply a translation thereof into such language.

SECTION 8

NEW YORK CONVENTION

AFSA

The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

BACK TO INDEX

NEW YORK CONVENTION

99

Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards

(New York, 1958)

UNITED NATIONS

The United Nations Commission on International Trade Law (UNCITRAL) is a subsidiary body of the General Assembly. It plays an important role in improving the legal framework for international trade by preparing international legislative texts for use by States in modernizing the law of international trade and non-legislative texts for use by commercial parties in negotiating transactions. UNCITRAL legislative texts address international sale of goods; international commercial dispute resolution, including both arbitration and conciliation; electronic commerce; insolvency, including cross-border insolvency; international transport of goods; international payments; procurement and infrastructure development; and security interests. Non-legislative texts include rules for conduct of arbitration and conciliation proceedings; notes on organizing and conducting arbitral proceedings; and legal guides on industrial construction contracts and countertrade.

Further information may be obtained from:

UNCITRAL secretariat, Vienna International Centre,
P.O. Box 500, 1400 Vienna, Austria

Telephone: (+43-1) 26060-4060
Telefax: (+43-1) 26060-5813
Internet: www.uncitral.org
E-mail: uncitral@uncitral.org

UNITED NATIONS COMMISSION ON INTERNATIONAL TRADE LAW

Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards

(New York, 1958)

UNITED NATIONS
New York, 2015

NOTE

Symbols of United Nations documents are composed of capital letters combined with figures. Mention of such a symbol indicates a reference to a United Nations document.

The publication reproduced here is a revised version in which part three of the original publication of 2009 has been removed.

Material in this publication may be freely quoted or reprinted, but acknowledgement is requested, together with a copy of the publication containing the quotation or reprint.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Contents

Page

Introduction 1

Part one. United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, New York, 20 May–10 June 1958 5

Excerpts from the Final Act of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration 5

Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards 8

Part two. Recommendation regarding the interpretation of article II, paragraph 2, and article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards 15

General Assembly resolution 61/33 of 4 December 2006 15

Recommendation regarding the interpretation of article II, paragraph 2, and article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York, 10 June 1958, adopted by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law on 7 July 2006 at its thirty-ninth session 17

07-87406_E_main_mm.indd 3 18/01/2008 18:17:01

Introduction

Objectives

Recognizing the growing importance of international arbitration as a means of settling international commercial disputes, the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards (the Convention) seeks to provide common legislative standards for the recognition of arbitration agreements and court recognition and enforcement of foreign and non-domestic arbitral awards. The term "non-domestic" appears to embrace awards which, although made in the state of enforcement, are treated as "foreign" under its law because of some foreign element in the proceedings, e.g. another State's procedural laws are applied.

The Convention's principal aim is that foreign and non-domestic arbitral awards will not be discriminated against and it obliges Parties to ensure such awards are recognized and generally capable of enforcement in their jurisdiction in the same way as domestic awards. An ancillary aim of the Convention is to require courts of Parties to give full effect to arbitration agreements by requiring courts to deny the parties access to court in contravention of their agreement to refer the matter to an arbitral tribunal.

Key provisions

The Convention applies to awards made in any State other than the State in which recognition and enforcement is sought. It also applies to awards "not considered as domestic awards". When consenting to be bound by the Convention, a State may declare that it will apply the Convention *(a)* in respect to awards made only in the territory of another Party and *(b)* only to legal relationships that are considered "commercial" under its domestic law.

The Convention contains provisions on arbitration agreements. This aspect was covered in recognition of the fact that an award could be refused enforcement on the grounds that the agreement upon which it was based might not be recognized. Article II (1) provides that Parties shall recognize

written arbitration agreements. In that respect, UNCITRAL adopted, at its thirty-ninth session in 2006, a Recommendation that seeks to provide guidance to Parties on the interpretation of the requirement in article II (2) that an arbitration agreement be in writing and to encourage application of article VII (1) to allow any interested party to avail itself of rights it may have, under the law or treaties of the country where an arbitration agreement is sought to be relied upon, to seek recognition of the validity of such an arbitration agreement.

The central obligation imposed upon Parties is to recognize all arbitral awards within the scheme as binding and enforce them, if requested to do so, under the lex fori. Each Party may determine the procedural mechanisms that may be followed where the Convention does not prescribe any requirement.

The Convention defines five grounds upon which recognition and enforcement may be refused at the request of the party against whom it is invoked. The grounds include incapacity of the parties, invalidity of the arbitration agreement, due process, scope of the arbitration agreement, jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal, setting aside or suspension of an award in the country in which, or under the law of which, that award was made. The Convention defines two additional grounds upon which the court may, on its own motion, refuse recognition and enforcement of an award. Those grounds relate to arbitrability and public policy.

The Convention seeks to encourage recognition and enforcement of awards in the greatest number of cases as possible. That purpose is achieved through article VII (1) of the Convention by removing conditions for recognition and enforcement in national laws that are more stringent than the conditions in the Convention, while allowing the continued application of any national provisions that give special or more favourable rights to a party seeking to enforce an award. That article recognizes the right of any interested party to avail itself of law or treaties of the country where the award is sought to be relied upon, including where such law or treaties offer a regime more favourable than the Convention.

Entry into force

The Convention entered into force on 7 June 1959 (article XII).

How to become a party

The Convention is closed for signature. It is subject to ratification, and is open to accession by any Member State of the United Nations, any other

State which is a member of any specialized agency of the United Nations, or is a Party to the Statute of the International Court of Justice (articles VIII and IX).

Optional and/or mandatory declarations and notifications

When signing, ratifying or acceding to the Convention, or notifying a territorial extension under article X, any State may on the basis of reciprocity declare that it will apply the Convention to the recognition and enforcement of awards made only in the territory of another Party to the Convention. It may also declare that it will apply the Convention only to differences arising out of legal relationships, whether contractual or not, which are considered as commercial under the national law of the State making such declaration (article I).

Denunciation/Withdrawal

Any Party may denounce this Convention by a written notification to the Secretary-General of the United Nations. Denunciation shall take effect one year after the date of the receipt of the notification by the Secretary-General (article XIII).

Part one

UNITED NATIONS CONFERENCE ON INTERNATIONAL COMMERCIAL ARBITRATION, NEW YORK, 20 MAY–10 JUNE 1958

Excerpts from the Final Act of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration[1]

"1. The Economic and Social Council of the United Nations, by resolution 604 (XXI) adopted on 3 May 1956, decided to convene a Conference of Plenipotentiaries for the purpose of concluding a convention on the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards, and to consider other possible measures for increasing the effectiveness of arbitration in the settlement of private law disputes.

[…]

"12. The Economic and Social Council, by its resolution convening the Conference, requested it to conclude a convention on the basis of the draft convention prepared by the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, taking into account the comments and suggestions made by Governments and non-governmental organizations, as well as the discussion at the twenty-first session of the Council.

"13. On the basis of the deliberations, as recorded in the reports of the working parties and in the records of the plenary meetings, the Conference prepared and opened for signature the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards which is annexed to this Final Act.

[…]

"16. In addition the Conference adopted, on the basis of proposals made by the Committee on Other Measures as recorded in its report, the following resolution:

[1]The full text of the Final Act of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration (E/CONF.26/8Rev.1) is available at http://www.uncitral.org

"*The Conference*,

"*Believing* that, in addition to the convention on the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards just concluded, which would contribute to increasing the effectiveness of arbitration in the settlement of private law disputes, additional measures should be taken in this field,

"*Having considered* the able survey and analysis of possible measures for increasing the effectiveness of arbitration in the settlement of private law disputes prepared by the Secretary-General (document E/CONF.26/6),

"*Having given particular attention* to the suggestions made therein for possible ways in which interested governmental and other organizations may make practical contributions to the more effective use of arbitration,

"*Expresses the following views* with respect to the principal matters dealt with in the note of the Secretary-General:

"1. It considers that wider diffusion of information on arbitration laws, practices and facilities contributes materially to progress in commercial arbitration; recognizes that work has already been done in this field by interested organizations,[2] and expresses the wish that such organizations, so far as they have not concluded them, continue their activities in this regard, with particular attention to coordinating their respective efforts;

"2. It recognizes the desirability of encouraging where necessary the establishment of new arbitration facilities and the improvement of existing facilities, particularly in some geographic regions and branches of trade; and believes that useful work may be done in this field by appropriate governmental and other organizations, which may be active in arbitration matters, due regard being given to the need to avoid duplication of effort and to concentrate upon those measures of greatest practical benefit to the regions and branches of trade concerned;

"3. It recognizes the value of technical assistance in the development of effective arbitral legislation and institutions; and suggests that interested Governments and other organizations endeavour to furnish such assistance, within the means available, to those seeking it;

"4. It recognizes that regional study groups, seminars or working parties may in appropriate circumstances have productive results; believes that consideration should be given to the advisability of the convening of

[2]For example, the Economic Commission for Europe and the Inter-American Council of Jurists.

such meetings by the appropriate regional commissions of the United Nations and other bodies, but regards it as important that any such action be taken with careful regard to avoiding duplication and assuring economy of effort and of resources;

"5. It considers that greater uniformity of national laws on arbitration would further the effectiveness of arbitration in the settlement of private law disputes, notes the work already done in this field by various existing organizations,[3] and suggests that by way of supplementing the efforts of these bodies appropriate attention be given to defining suitable subject matter for model arbitration statutes and other appropriate measures for encouraging the development of such legislation;

"*Expresses the wish* that the United Nations, through its appropriate organs, take such steps as it deems feasible to encourage further study of measures for increasing the effectiveness of arbitration in the settlement of private law disputes through the facilities of existing regional bodies and non-governmental organizations and through such other institutions as may be established in the future;

"*Suggests* that any such steps be taken in a manner that will assure proper coordination of effort, avoidance of duplication and due observance of budgetary considerations;

"*Requests* that the Secretary-General submit this resolution to the appropriate organs of the United Nations."

[3]For example, the International Institute for the Unification of Private Law and the Inter-American Council of Jurists.

CONVENTION ON THE RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF FOREIGN ARBITRAL AWARDS

Article I

1. This Convention shall apply to the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards made in the territory of a State other than the State where the recognition and enforcement of such awards are sought, and arising out of differences between persons, whether physical or legal. It shall also apply to arbitral awards not considered as domestic awards in the State where their recognition and enforcement are sought.

2. The term "arbitral awards" shall include not only awards made by arbitrators appointed for each case but also those made by permanent arbitral bodies to which the parties have submitted.

3. When signing, ratifying or acceding to this Convention, or notifying extension under article X hereof, any State may on the basis of reciprocity declare that it will apply the Convention to the recognition and enforcement of awards made only in the territory of another Contracting State. It may also declare that it will apply the Convention only to differences arising out of legal relationships, whether contractual or not, which are considered as commercial under the national law of the State making such declaration.

Article II

1. Each Contracting State shall recognize an agreement in writing under which the parties undertake to submit to arbitration all or any differences which have arisen or which may arise between them in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not, concerning a subject matter capable of settlement by arbitration.

2. The term "agreement in writing" shall include an arbitral clause in a contract or an arbitration agreement, signed by the parties or contained in an exchange of letters or telegrams.

3. The court of a Contracting State, when seized of an action in a matter in respect of which the parties have made an agreement within the meaning of this article, shall, at the request of one of the parties, refer the parties to arbitration, unless it finds that the said agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed.

Article III

Each Contracting State shall recognize arbitral awards as binding and enforce them in accordance with the rules of procedure of the territory where the award is relied upon, under the conditions laid down in the following articles. There shall not be imposed substantially more onerous conditions or higher fees or charges on the recognition or enforcement of arbitral awards to which this Convention applies than are imposed on the recognition or enforcement of domestic arbitral awards.

Article IV

1. To obtain the recognition and enforcement mentioned in the preceding article, the party applying for recognition and enforcement shall, at the time of the application, supply:

(a) The duly authenticated original award or a duly certified copy thereof;

(b) The original agreement referred to in article II or a duly certified copy thereof.

2. If the said award or agreement is not made in an official language of the country in which the award is relied upon, the party applying for recognition and enforcement of the award shall produce a translation of these documents into such language. The translation shall be certified by an official or sworn translator or by a diplomatic or consular agent.

Article V

1. Recognition and enforcement of the award may be refused, at the request of the party against whom it is invoked, only if that party furnishes to the competent authority where the recognition and enforcement is sought, proof that:

(a) The parties to the agreement referred to in article II were, under the law applicable to them, under some incapacity, or the said agreement is not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of the country where the award was made; or

(b) The party against whom the award is invoked was not given proper notice of the appointment of the arbitrator or of the arbitration proceedings or was otherwise unable to present his case; or

(c) The award deals with a difference not contemplated by or not falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or it contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration, provided that, if the decisions on matters submitted to arbitration can be separated from those not so submitted, that part of the award which contains decisions on matters submitted to arbitration may be recognized and enforced; or

(d) The composition of the arbitral authority or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties, or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with the law of the country where the arbitration took place; or

(e) The award has not yet become binding on the parties, or has been set aside or suspended by a competent authority of the country in which, or under the law of which, that award was made.

2. Recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award may also be refused if the competent authority in the country where recognition and enforcement is sought finds that:

(a) The subject matter of the difference is not capable of settlement by arbitration under the law of that country; or

(b) The recognition or enforcement of the award would be contrary to the public policy of that country.

Article VI

If an application for the setting aside or suspension of the award has been made to a competent authority referred to in article V (1) *(e)*, the authority before which the award is sought to be relied upon may, if it considers it proper, adjourn the decision on the enforcement of the award and may also, on the application of the party claiming enforcement of the award, order the other party to give suitable security.

Article VII

1. The provisions of the present Convention shall not affect the validity of multilateral or bilateral agreements concerning the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards entered into by the Contracting States nor deprive any interested party of any right he may have to avail himself of an arbitral award in the manner and to the extent allowed by the law or the treaties of the country where such award is sought to be relied upon.

2. The Geneva Protocol on Arbitration Clauses of 1923 and the Geneva Convention on the Execution of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 1927 shall cease to have effect between Contracting States on their becoming bound and to the extent that they become bound, by this Convention.

Article VIII

1. This Convention shall be open until 31 December 1958 for signature on behalf of any Member of the United Nations and also on behalf of any other State which is or hereafter becomes a member of any specialized agency of the United Nations, or which is or hereafter becomes a party to the Statute of the International Court of Justice, or any other State to which an invitation has been addressed by the General Assembly of the United Nations.

2. This Convention shall be ratified and the instrument of ratification shall be deposited with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

Article IX

1. This Convention shall be open for accession to all States referred to in article VIII.

2. Accession shall be effected by the deposit of an instrument of accession with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

Article X

1. Any State may, at the time of signature, ratification or accession, declare that this Convention shall extend to all or any of the territories for the international relations of which it is responsible. Such a declaration shall take effect when the Convention enters into force for the State concerned.

2. At any time thereafter any such extension shall be made by notification addressed to the Secretary-General of the United Nations and shall take effect as from the ninetieth day after the day of receipt by the Secretary-General of the United Nations of this notification, or as from the date of entry into force of the Convention for the State concerned, whichever is the later.

3. With respect to those territories to which this Convention is not extended at the time of signature, ratification or accession, each State concerned shall consider the possibility of taking the necessary steps in order

to extend the application of this Convention to such territories, subject, where necessary for constitutional reasons, to the consent of the Governments of such territories.

Article XI

In the case of a federal or non-unitary State, the following provisions shall apply:

(a) With respect to those articles of this Convention that come within the legislative jurisdiction of the federal authority, the obligations of the federal Government shall to this extent be the same as those of Contracting States which are not federal States;

(b) With respect to those articles of this Convention that come within the legislative jurisdiction of constituent states or provinces which are not, under the constitutional system of the federation, bound to take legislative action, the federal Government shall bring such articles with a favourable recommendation to the notice of the appropriate authorities of constituent states or provinces at the earliest possible moment;

(c) A federal State Party to this Convention shall, at the request of any other Contracting State transmitted through the Secretary-General of the United Nations, supply a statement of the law and practice of the federation and its constituent units in regard to any particular provision of this Convention, showing the extent to which effect has been given to that provision by legislative or other action.

Article XII

1. This Convention shall come into force on the ninetieth day following the date of deposit of the third instrument of ratification or accession.

2. For each State ratifying or acceding to this Convention after the deposit of the third instrument of ratification or accession, this Convention shall enter into force on the ninetieth day after deposit by such State of its instrument of ratification or accession.

Article XIII

1. Any Contracting State may denounce this Convention by a written notification to the Secretary-General of the United Nations. Denunciation

shall take effect one year after the date of receipt of the notification by the Secretary-General.

2. Any State which has made a declaration or notification under article X may, at any time thereafter, by notification to the Secretary-General of the United Nations, declare that this Convention shall cease to extend to the territory concerned one year after the date of the receipt of the notification by the Secretary-General.

3. This Convention shall continue to be applicable to arbitral awards in respect of which recognition or enforcement proceedings have been instituted before the denunciation takes effect.

Article XIV

A Contracting State shall not be entitled to avail itself of the present Convention against other Contracting States except to the extent that it is itself bound to apply the Convention.

Article XV

The Secretary-General of the United Nations shall notify the States contemplated in article VIII of the following:

(a) Signatures and ratifications in accordance with article VIII;

(b) Accessions in accordance with article IX;

(c) Declarations and notifications under articles I, X and XI;

(d) The date upon which this Convention enters into force in accordance with article XII;

(e) Denunciations and notifications in accordance with article XIII.

Article XVI

1. This Convention, of which the Chinese, English, French, Russian and Spanish texts shall be equally authentic, shall be deposited in the archives of the United Nations.

2. The Secretary-General of the United Nations shall transmit a certified copy of this Convention to the States contemplated in article VIII.

Part two

RECOMMENDATION REGARDING THE INTERPRETATION OF ARTICLE II, PARAGRAPH 2, AND ARTICLE VII, PARAGRAPH 1, OF THE CONVENTION ON THE RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF FOREIGN ARBITRAL AWARDS

General Assembly resolution 61/33 of 4 December 2006

The General Assembly,

Recognizing the value of arbitration as a method of settling disputes arising in the context of international commercial relations,

Recalling its resolution 40/72 of 11 December 1985 regarding the Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration,[1]

Recognizing the need for provisions in the Model Law to conform to current practices in international trade and modern means of contracting with regard to the form of the arbitration agreement and the granting of interim measures,

Believing that revised articles of the Model Law on the form of the arbitration agreement and interim measures reflecting those current practices will significantly enhance the operation of the Model Law,

Noting that the preparation of the revised articles of the Model Law on the form of the arbitration agreement and interim measures was the subject of due deliberation and extensive consultations with Governments and interested circles and would contribute significantly to the establishment of a harmonized legal framework for a fair and efficient settlement of international commercial disputes,

---

[1] *Official Records of the General Assembly, Fortieth Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/40/17), annex I.

Believing that, in connection with the modernization of articles of the Model Law, the promotion of a uniform interpretation and application of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done at New York, 10 June 1958,[2] is particularly timely,

1. *Expresses its appreciation* to the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law for formulating and adopting the revised articles of its Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration on the form of the arbitration agreement and interim measures, the text of which is contained in annex I to the report of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law on the work of its thirty-ninth session,[3] and recommends that all States give favourable consideration to the enactment of the revised articles of the Model Law, or the revised Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law, when they enact or revise their laws, in view of the desirability of uniformity of the law of arbitral procedures and the specific needs of international commercial arbitration practice;

2. *Also expresses its appreciation* to the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law for formulating and adopting the recommendation regarding the interpretation of article II, paragraph 2, and article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done at New York, 10 June 1958,[2] the text of which is contained in annex II to the report of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law on the work of its thirty-ninth session;[3]

3. *Requests* the Secretary-General to make all efforts to ensure that the revised articles of the Model Law and the recommendation become generally known and available.

64th plenary meeting
4 December 2006

[2]United Nations, *Treaty Series*, vol. 330, No. 4739.
[3]*Official Records of the General Assembly, Sixty-first Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/61/17).

RECOMMENDATION REGARDING THE INTERPRETATION OF ARTICLE II, PARAGRAPH 2, AND ARTICLE VII, PARAGRAPH 1, OF THE CONVENTION ON THE RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF FOREIGN ARBITRAL AWARDS, DONE IN NEW YORK, 10 JUNE 1958, ADOPTED BY THE UNITED NATIONS COMMISSION ON INTERNATIONAL TRADE LAW ON 7 JULY 2006 AT ITS THIRTY-NINTH SESSION

The United Nations Commission on International Trade Law,

Recalling General Assembly resolution 2205 (XXI) of 17 December 1966, which established the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law with the object of promoting the progressive harmonization and unification of the law of international trade by, inter alia, promoting ways and means of ensuring a uniform interpretation and application of international conventions and uniform laws in the field of the law of international trade,

Conscious of the fact that the different legal, social and economic systems of the world, together with different levels of development, are represented in the Commission,

Recalling successive resolutions of the General Assembly reaffirming the mandate of the Commission as the core legal body within the United Nations system in the field of international trade law to coordinate legal activities in this field,

Convinced that the wide adoption of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York on 10 June 1958,[4] has been a significant achievement in the promotion of the rule of law, particularly in the field of international trade,

Recalling that the Conference of Plenipotentiaries which prepared and opened the Convention for signature adopted a resolution, which states, inter alia, that the Conference "considers that greater uniformity of national laws on arbitration would further the effectiveness of arbitration in the settlement of private law disputes",

Bearing in mind differing interpretations of the form requirements under the Convention that result in part from differences of expression as between the five equally authentic texts of the Convention,

Taking into account article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention, a purpose of which is to enable the enforcement of foreign arbitral awards to

[4]United Nations, *Treaty Series*, vol. 330, No. 4739.

the greatest extent, in particular by recognizing the right of any interested party to avail itself of law or treaties of the country where the award is sought to be relied upon, including where such law or treaties offer a regime more favourable than the Convention,

Considering the wide use of electronic commerce,

Taking into account international legal instruments, such as the 1985 UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration,[5] as subsequently revised, particularly with respect to article 7,[6] the UNCITRAL Model Law on Electronic Commerce,[7] the UNCITRAL Model Law on Electronic Signatures[8] and the United Nations Convention on the Use of Electronic Communications in International Contracts,[9]

Taking into account also enactments of domestic legislation, as well as case law, more favourable than the Convention in respect of form requirement governing arbitration agreements, arbitration proceedings and the enforcement of arbitral awards,

Considering that, in interpreting the Convention, regard is to be had to the need to promote recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards,

1. *Recommends* that article II, paragraph 2, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York, 10 June 1958, be applied recognizing that the circumstances described therein are not exhaustive;

2. *Recommends also* that article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York, 10 June 1958, should be applied to allow any interested party to avail itself of rights it may have, under the law or treaties of the country where an arbitration agreement is sought to be relied upon, to seek recognition of the validity of such an arbitration agreement.

[5]*Official Records of the General Assembly, Fortieth Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/40/17), annex I, and United Nations publication, Sales No. E.95.V.18.

[6]Ibid., *Sixty-first Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/61/17), annex I.

[7]Ibid., *Fifty-first Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/51/17), annex I, and United Nations publication, Sales No. E.99.V.4, which contains also an additional article 5 bis, adopted in 1998, and the accompanying Guide to Enactment.

[8]Ibid., *Fifty-sixth Session, Supplement No. 17* and corrigendum (A/56/17 and Corr.3), annex II, and United Nations publication, Sales No. E.02.V.8, which contains also the accompanying Guide to Enactment.

[9]General Assembly resolution 60/21, annex.

1500

121

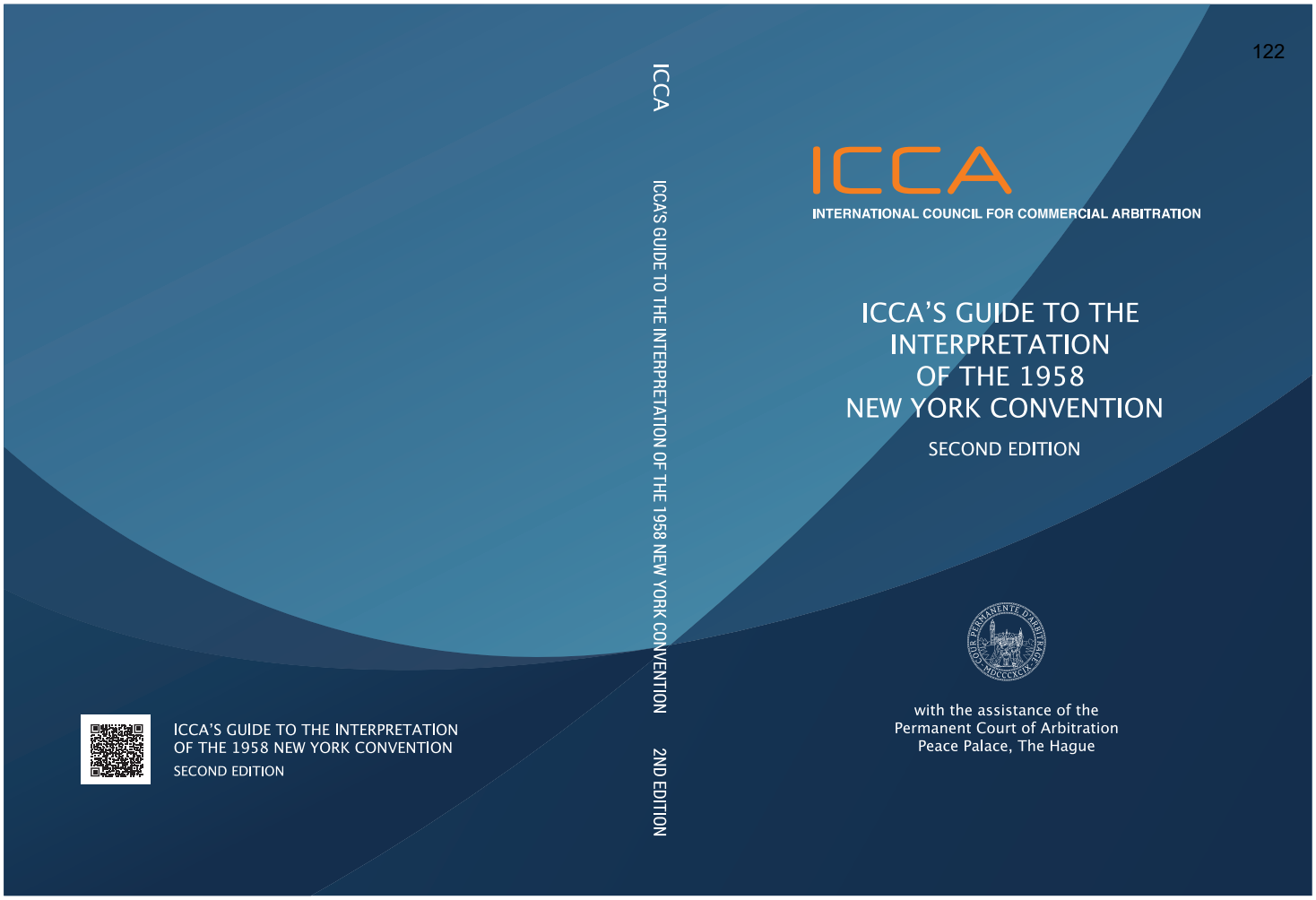
V.15-05576

SECTION 9

ICCA'S GUIDE TO THE INTERPRETATION OF THE 1958 NEW YORK CONVENTION

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

BACK TO INDEX


122
ICCA
INTERNATIONAL COUNCIL FOR COMMERCIAL ARBITRATION
ICCA'S GUIDE TO THE INTERPRETATION OF THE 1958 NEW YORK CONVENTION
SECOND EDITION
with the assistance of the
Permanent Court of Arbitration
Peace Palace, The Hague
ICCA
ICCA'S GUIDE TO THE INTERPRETATION OF THE 1958 NEW YORK CONVENTION 2ND EDITION
ICCA'S GUIDE TO THE INTERPRETATION
OF THE 1958 NEW YORK CONVENTION
SECOND EDITION

123

INTERNATIONAL COUNCIL
FOR COMMERCIAL ARBITRATION

ICCA'S GUIDE TO THE INTERPRETATION OF THE 1958 NEW YORK CONVENTION:

A HANDBOOK FOR JUDGES

SECOND EDITION

Disclaimer:
ICCA' Guide to the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention (Second Edition, 2011,2024) Copyright International Counsil for Commercial Arbitration (ICCA). All rights reserved. The International Counsil for Commercial Arbitration (ICCA) wishes to encourage the use of this Guide for teaching purposes and for the promotion of arbitration. Accordingly, it is permitted to reproduce or copy this Guide, provided that the Guide is reproduced accurately, without alteration and in a non-misleading context, and provided that ICCA's authorship and copyright are clearly acknowledget.

124

INTERNATIONAL COUNCIL
FOR COMMERCIAL ARBITRATION

ICCA'S GUIDE TO THE INTERPRETATION OF THE 1958 NEW YORK CONVENTION:

A HANDBOOK FOR JUDGES

SECOND EDITION

with the assistance of the
Permanent Court of Arbitration
Peace Palace, The Hague

Published by the International Council for Commercial Arbitration
<www.arbitration-icca.org>

ISBN 978-94-92405-40-1

All rights reserved.
© 2024 International Council for Commercial Arbitration

© International Council for Commercial Arbitration (ICCA). All rights reserved. The International Council for Commercial Arbitration (ICCA) wishes to encourage the use of this Guide for teaching purposes and for the promotion of arbitration. Accordingly, it is permitted to reproduce or copy this Guide, provided that the Guide is reproduced accurately, without alteration and in a non-misleading context, and provided that ICCA's authorship and copyright are clearly acknowledged.

For further information, please contact us at bureau@arbitration-icca.org.

FOREWORD BY PROFESSOR PIETER SANDERS AS HONORARY GENERAL EDITOR

The 1958 New York Convention is the most successful multilateral instrument in the field of international trade law. It is the centrepiece in the mosaic of treaties and arbitration laws that ensure acceptance of arbitral awards and arbitration agreements. Courts around the world have been applying and interpreting the Convention for over fifty years, in an increasingly unified and harmonized fashion.

I participated in 1958 in the drafting of the Convention as a delegate from The Netherlands. We started our work on a draft that was originally produced by the International Chamber of Commerce (ICC) in 1955. The ICC draft provided for the enforcement of "international" awards. It was presented to the United Nations Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC). ECOSOC changed the draft to apply to "foreign" awards. This was the draft the Conference worked on from 20 May to 10 June 1958.

Changes and additions were made to the working draft, leading to what became known as the "Dutch proposal". One change was the elimination of the requirement of a double *exequatur*, so that it would be possible to present awards for enforcement without first obtaining a declaration of enforceability from the courts of the country where they were rendered. Another change was to restrict the grounds for refusal of the award to the seven grounds listed in Article V and to shift the burden of proving those grounds to the party opposing enforcement. The seven grounds listed in the Convention became the exclusive grounds for refusal. The burden of proof on the party resisting enforcement and the exhaustive grounds for refusal are now recognized as key features of the Convention.

Article II of the Convention was added in the final drafting stage, also as a result of the Dutch proposal. It provides that courts *shall* refer the parties to arbitration when a party relies on a valid agreement. The working draft only provided for the enforcement of foreign arbitral

awards. Including a provision on the enforcement of arbitration agreements was more efficient than the earlier regulation in two instruments: the 1923 Geneva Protocol on Arbitration Clauses and the 1927 Geneva Convention on the Execution of Foreign Arbitral Awards.

In order for the application of the New York Convention to be unified and harmonized, an effective worldwide system of reporting cases applying the Convention was needed. That is why the publication of the ICCA *Yearbook Commercial Arbitration* was begun in 1976. I was its General Editor. Since then, thirty-five volumes have been published. The *Yearbook* is also available online at <www.KluwerArbitration.com>. The *Yearbook* has reported 1,666 New York Convention court decisions from 65 of the 145 countries that have acceded to the Convention.

The Convention was forward-looking. Professor Matteucci, the Italian delegate to the Conference, called it "a very bold innovation". The Convention has stood the test of time. More than fifty years later, we can still look forward to beneficial adaptations of the interpretation of its text, responding to modern technology and practice.

The Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration issued by UNCITRAL (the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law) in 1985, and as amended in 2006, has been adopted in over seventy countries and federal states. Some countries have adopted the Model Law with no changes. Others have enacted modern arbitration laws inspired by the Model Law. As countries adopt modern arbitration laws, courts can rely on their more favourable provisions as provided by Article VII of the Convention.

Such modern arbitration laws may also contain provisions on the procedure for the enforcement of an award. The Convention only prescribes the documents to be submitted to the court (Article IV) and that no more onerous conditions or higher fees may be imposed than for the enforcement of a domestic award (Article III). The UNCITRAL Secretariat, together with the International Bar Association, has surveyed these conditions and determined in its Report of 2008 that "there are diverging solutions to the many different procedural requirements that govern the recognition and enforcement of awards

under the Convention" (Report of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law A/63/17 para. 353, p. 71) and has recommended that the Secretariat work towards developing a guide to enactment of the Convention to promote uniform interpretation and application. Such a guide could introduce uniform rules for the enforcement process.

ICCA's initiative to create *ICCA's Guide to the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention: A Handbook for Judges* is a welcome addition and companion to the ICCA *Yearbook*. It sets out the questions to be answered and the steps to be followed by courts when applying the New York Convention in a concise, clear and straightforward style that highlights the pro-enforcement bias of the Convention. I expect that this Guide will serve as an effective tool in advancing the motto I have repeated on many occasions: *Vivat, Floreat et Crescat New York Convention 1958*.

Pieter Sanders
Schiedam, April 2011

INTRODUCTION TO THE SECOND EDITION

Prof. Andrés Jana

ICCA's Guide to the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention was conceived as a handbook to give guidance to judges on the scope, interpretation and application of the Convention. In order to achieve these goals, the Guide was drafted as a concise text, written in plain language, and limited to an examination of the most essential aspects of the Convention. The Guide is not intended to be a comprehensive reference work, rather is designed to answer specific questions that may arise in the application of the Convention. The Guide as drafted reflects the basic idea that the New York Convention is a simple text that must be applied by courts in the vast majority of the cases by following the plain text of its provisions.

Since its publication in 2012, the Guide has proven remarkably effective. It has become an influential and often cited authoritative text on the New York Convention. Having been translated into twenty-eight languages and distributed to 4,000 judges worldwide, it now serves as a tool for judges around the globe, as well as a basic consultation text for academics, students and practitioners.

The wide-spread impact of the Guide can be appreciated in the key role it has played in ICCA's judicial outreach programme, which has been institutionalized since the release of the First Edition through the creation of a Judiciary Committee. The Committee has to date conducted in-person and web-based training programmes for national courts in over forty different countries. The "New York Convention Roadshows", as the judicial dialogue and training events came to be known by, were developed with the aim of engaging with national court judges about the critical role of local courts in the proper functioning of international arbitration and use the Guide as the basis for discussion.

Ten years after publication of the First Edition of the Guide, the success of the New York Convention itself has continued to grow, as

evidenced by its current 172 contracting States and the increased number of court decisions applying it. Case law and some state court practices have also evolved. Noting these developments, as well as the influence of the Guide, ICCA's Judiciary Committee, chaired at the time by Prof. Albert Jan van den Berg, considered it time to update the Guide, and has now prepared a Second Edition.

The approach taken by the Judiciary Committee in preparing the Second Edition was that while updating and complementing the text where necessary, the Second Edition should preserve the overall structure and original style of the Guide. In particular, it is still presented in plain language aiming to serve as a road map to more in depth study, includes reference to key cases only, and focuses on the fundamental aspects of the application of the Convention.

While our goal has been to keep the changes to a minimum, the Second Edition is the result of a thorough review, covering developments in case law on the application of the New York Convention and recent court practices. In addition, certain additional aspects of the Convention not included in the First Edition are now covered.

In concrete, the main changes included in the Second Edition are the following (i) updated references to relevant case law, in particular case law illustrating essential principles; (ii) a more comprehensive treatment of the most favored principle contained in Article VII.1 of the Convention; (iii) a new section on Article VI of the Convention; (iv) clarification of certain points to reflect court practice; and (v) redrafting across the text to improve clarity.

The Guide maintains its overall structure. It begins with a checklist setting out the questions to be answered and the steps to be followed by courts when applying the Convention in the two actions available within its scope: a request for the recognition and enforcement of an arbitration agreement or a request for the recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award.

Chapter 1 refers to the Convention as an instrument of international law, applicable to arbitration agreements and arbitral awards, including

its interpretation and guidance principles such as the pro-enforcement bias. It then addresses the material and territorial scope of application of the Convention, explaining the possible limitations of the reciprocity and commerciality reservations available to contracting States. Chapter 1 then discusses the relationship of the Convention with domestic law and other treaties, analyzing the most favored application principle contained in Article VII. Finally, it explains the international obligation of States party to the Convention to comply with the Convention, and the consequences of not doing so.

Chapter 2 explains the requirements to enforce an arbitration agreement, and the considerations that a court must take into account when entertaining such a request.

In turn, Chapter 3 discusses the requirements for the request made to a court for the recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award.

Finally, in order to facilitate deliberations by judges in matters related to the Convention, the Guide contains four annexes: (I) the New York Convention itself; (II) the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration; (III) the UNCITRAL Recommendation of 2006 regarding the interpretation of Article II of the Convention; and (IV) a number of useful online sources for further reference.

As already mentioned, the Second Edition is the result of a thorough and detailed review of the Guide. In June 2023, I was honored to succeed Prof. van den Berg as Chair of ICCA's Judiciary Committee and since then have been responsible for the Second Edition. But this work would not have been possible without the contribution of numerous people. First, Prof. van den Berg, who promoted the idea of this Second Edition within ICCA's Judiciary Committee. Second, the members of that committee, in particular those that conducted the review process, including Carolyn Lamm, Dominique Hascher, Mohammed Abdel Raouf and Albert Jan himself with the valuable assistance of Erica Stein, and myself. Very special recognition goes to Lindsay Gastrell and Emily Hay who at different times led the editorial team, for their work in consolidating updates, taking significant drafting responsibilities and having a primary role in updating case law. The

result of this Second Edition is largely due to their invaluable contribution. I also recognize the work of Young ICCA representatives in carrying out voluminous case research and cite checking that has ensured that this Second Edition is accurate and up to date.* I am grateful to Adam Jankowski from the ICCA Bureau for his assistance in the last stages of the work, and my deep gratitude to Lise Bosman, the Executive Director of ICCA, not only for her help with this Second Edition but also for her continuous support to the work of the Judiciary Committee. Lastly, my sincere appreciation to the authors of the First Edition for their generosity in reviewing this Second Edition.

The New York Convention is rightly the most relevant and influential treaty of international private law. Together with the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, it constitutes the foundation of the normative architecture of international arbitration. Indeed, the enormous success of the Convention largely explains the growth and effectiveness of international commercial arbitration.

For parties involved in cross-border transactions certainty and predictability in the recognition and enforcement of their arbitration agreements and arbitral awards is a necessary condition for a functioning business environment. For that to be achieved, a uniform and harmonized application of international arbitration principles is required – including through fostering a robust international and local culture of international arbitration practice.

In that development, the role of the courts is essential. They play the dual roles of providing assistance to the arbitral process, and acting as gatekeepers of the international arbitration system. Instruments such as this Guide are intended to assist judges in this critical endeavor.

---

* Contributing Young ICCA representatives included Toheeb O. Amuda, Matheus Bastos Oliveira, Parnika Chaturvedi, Stefanie Efstathiou, Shehabeldine Ismail, Rita Kaufmann, Francis Levesque, Aracelly López, Byron Perez, Carlos Rios, Patricia Snell and David Isidore Tan.

We hope that this Second Edition of the Guide will continue to contribute to achieving a uniform and consistent application of the New York Convention across the globe.

Echoing the words of Professor Pieter Sanders, author of the Foreword to the First Edition as Honorary General Editor of the Guide, who passed away in 2012 shortly after its publication, we expect that this Second Edition of the Guide will serve as a tool in advancing the mantra he repeated on many occasions: "May the New York Convention Live, Flourish and Grow".

If there is one person that embodies this motto it is Prof. Albert Jan van den Berg. As founder and chair of the Judiciary Committee, a position that he held for ten years, as general editor of ICCA's *Yearbook Commercial Arbitration* for thirty-two years, as creator of the essential database <NewYorkConvention.org>, as well as through his entire career, his contributions to the study and development of the New York Convention are unparalleled. For these reasons and many more that would require long pages to be listed, this Second Edition of the Guide is dedicated to him.

A few words about ICCA

ICCA was formed in 1961 by a small group of experts and friends in the field of international commercial arbitration. It is a worldwide non-governmental organization dedicated to promoting and developing arbitration, conciliation and other forms of international dispute resolution. ICCA is a membership-based organization comprising approx. 1,000 members from around 100 jurisdictions. Its Governing Board Members and General Members include arbitration counsel, arbitrators, scholars, policy advisors, and members of the judiciary. Its branch for young practitioners, Young ICCA, has over 16,000 members and aims to "open the doors of international arbitration".

Every two years ICCA holds a Congress that is one of the major events in the international arbitration calendar. The most recent

Congress was held in September 2022 in Edinburgh, and attracted over 1,000 participants from all over the world. The next ICCA Congress will be held in Hong Kong in 2024.

ICCA is not an arbitral institution; it does not administer arbitrations or act as an appointing authority. ICCA is traditionally best known for its publications. Since 1976, some 3,500 court decisions from more than 100 countries, including 3,000 applying the New York Convention, have been reported in the *Yearbook Commercial Arbitration*. The *International Handbook on Commercial Arbitration* contains continuously updated reports on the arbitration law and practice in over eighty-five countries. The *ICCA Awards Series*, launched in 2023, adds anonymized arbitral awards to the over 600 awards already published in the *ICCA Yearbook*. The *ICCA Congress Series* publishes the final papers presented at ICCA Congresses.

ICCA regularly conducts research and outreach projects on issues of interest or concern to the arbitration community, including developing a Paris Climate Agreement conciliation annex, the use of remote hearings, cybersecurity, data protection, and issue conflict. It also has Working Groups on African Arbitral Practice and Chinese Arbitral Practice and Judicial Outreach programme. ICCA has a strong commitment to diversity and inclusion, reflected in its research into gender diversity, needs-based grant programmes, and the creation of access opportunities to young practitioners and practitioners from emerging jurisdictions.

All ICCA publications are available online at <www.kluwer arbitration.com>. More information on ICCA, ICCA publications and ICCA projects can be found on its website at <www.arbitration-icca.org>.

DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

FOREWORD, *Professor Pieter Sanders, Honorary General Editor* v
INTRODUCTION ix
DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS xv

CHECKLIST FOR JUDGES 1

OVERVIEW 7

CHAPTER 1
THE NEW YORK CONVENTION AS AN INSTRUMENT OF INTERNATIONAL LAW 11
A. INTERPRETATION 12
1. Treaty Interpretation: Vienna Convention
2. Interpretation in Favour of Recognition and Enforcement: Pro-enforcement Bias
B. MATERIAL SCOPE OF APPLICATION 16
1. Arbitral Award
   a. Autonomous Interpretation
   b. Conflict-of-Laws Approach
2. Arbitration Agreement
C. TERRITORIAL SCOPE OF APPLICATION 19
1. Awards
   a. Awards Made in the Territory of a State Other Than the State Where Recognition and Enforcement Are Sought
   b. Non-domestic Awards
2. Arbitration Agreements
D. RESERVATIONS 24
1. Reciprocity (Article I(3) First Sentence)
2. Commercial Nature (Article I(3) Second Sentence)

E. RELATIONSHIP WITH DOMESTIC LAW AND OTHER TREATIES (ARTICLE VII) 26
1. More Favourable Law
2. The New York Convention and Other International Treaties
3. The New York Convention and National Law
4. Total or Partial Application of More Favourable Instruments

F. CONSEQUENCES OF THE NON-APPLICATION OF THE NEW YORK CONVENTION 30
1. Breach of the New York Convention
2. Breach of Investment Treaty
3. Award Is Unaffected

CHAPTER 2
REQUEST FOR THE ENFORCEMENT OF AN ARBITRATION AGREEMENT 33

A. INTRODUCTION 35

B. GENERAL MATTERS 36
1. Scope of Judicial Review of Challenges to the Arbitral Tribunal's Jurisdiction
2. Timing of the Referral Request in Court Proceedings
3. Concurrent Arbitration Proceedings Not Required for Referral to Arbitration (Referral is Mandatory)

C. REQUIREMENTS FOR THE ENFORCEMENT OF AN ARBITRATION AGREEMENT 39
1. The Arbitration Agreement Must Fall Under the Scope of the Convention
2. There Must Be a Dispute, It Must Arise Out of a Defined Legal Relationship, Whether Contractual or Not, and the Parties Must Have Intended to Have This Particular Dispute Settled by Arbitration
3. The Subject Matter of the Dispute Must Be Arbitrable ("Capable of Settlement by Arbitration")
   a. The Law Applicable to Determine Arbitrability

b. International Arbitration Agreements Should Be Subject to Consistent Standards of Arbitrability

4. The Arbitration Agreement Must Be Formally and Substantively Valid
   a. Formal Validity: The Arbitration Agreement Must Be "In Writing"
      1. *Arbitration clause included in a document referred to in the main contractual document (incorporation by reference)*
      2. *Arbitration clause in contractual document not signed but subsequently accepted*
      3. *No tacit acceptance*
      4. *Arbitration agreement contained in exchange of electronic communications*
   b. Substantive Validity: The Arbitration Agreement is Not "Null and Void, Inoperable, or Incapable of Being Performed"
      1. *Law applicable to the substantive validity of the arbitration agreement*
      2. *"Null and void"*
      3. *"Inoperative"*
      4. *"Incapable of being performed"*
         (i) *Where the referral to arbitration is optional*
         (ii) *Where the contract provides for arbitration as well as jurisdiction of the courts*
         (iii) *Where the dispute resolution clause foresees steps prior to arbitration*
         (iv) *Where the arbitration rules or arbitral institution are inaccurately designated*
         (v) *Where there is no indication whatsoever as to how the arbitrators are to be appointed ("short form clauses")*
5. The Arbitration Agreement Must Be Binding on the Parties to the Dispute That Is Before the Court (Non-Signatories)
   a. Formal Validity: Needs Not Be Re-examined With Respect to Non-Signatories

b. Substantive Validity: The Non-Signatory Must Come Within the Subjective Scope of the Arbitration Agreement
1. The law applicable to determining the subjective scope of the arbitration agreement
2. When a non-signatory can be referred to arbitration

D. WHEN THE REQUIREMENTS FOR ENFORCING AN ARBITRATION AGREEMENT ARE MET, THE COURT SHALL "REFER THE PARTIES TO ARBITRATION", "AT THE REQUEST OF ONE OF THE PARTIES" 62
1. How to "Refer" Parties to Arbitration
2. No *Ex Officio* Referral
3. Options Available to the Court If It Finds That a Party Should Not Be Referred to Arbitration

E. SUMMARY 64

CHAPTER 3
REQUEST FOR THE RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF AN ARBITRAL AWARD 65

A. INTRODUCTION 66

B. PHASE I – REQUIREMENTS TO BE FULFILLED BY PETITIONER (ARTICLE IV) 69
1. Which Documents?
2. Authenticated Award or Certified Copy (Article IV(1)(*a*))
   a. Authentication
   b. Certification
3. Original Arbitration Agreement or Certified Copy (Article IV(1)(*b*))
4. At the Time of the Application
5. Translations (Article IV(2))

C. PHASE II – GROUNDS FOR REFUSAL (ARTICLE V) – IN GENERAL 75
1. No Review on the Merits
2. Burden on Respondent to Prove the Exhaustive Grounds

3. Exhaustive Grounds for Refusal of Recognition and Enforcement
4. Narrow Interpretation of the Grounds for Refusal
5. Limited Discretionary Power to Enforce in the Presence of Grounds for Refusal
6. Issues Relating to Sovereign Immunity

D. GROUNDS FOR REFUSAL TO BE PROVEN BY RESPONDENT (ARTICLE V(1)) 83

1. Ground 1: Incapacity of Party and Invalidity of Arbitration Agreement (Article V(1)(*a*))
   a. Incapacity of Party
   b. Invalidity of Arbitration Agreement
2. Ground 2: Lack of Notice and Due Process Violations; Right to a Fair Hearing (Article V(1)(*b*))
   a. Right to a Fair Hearing
   b. Lack of Notice
   c. Due Process Violations: "Unable to Present His Case"
3. Ground 3: Outside or Beyond the Scope of the Arbitration Agreement (Article V(1)(*c*))
4. Ground 4: Irregularities in the Composition of the Arbitral Tribunal or the Arbitration Procedure (Article V(1)(*d*))
   a. Composition of the Tribunal
   b. Arbitral Procedure
5. Ground 5: Award Not Binding, Set Aside or Suspended (Article V(1)(*e*))
   a. Award Not Yet Binding
   b. Award Set Aside or Suspended
      1. Award set aside
      2. Consequences of being set aside
      3. Award "suspended"

E. GROUNDS FOR REFUSAL TO BE RAISED BY THE COURT *EX OFFICIO* (ARTICLE V(2)) 104

1. Ground 6: Not Arbitrable (Article V(2(*a*))
2. Ground 7: Contrary to Public Policy (Article V(2)(*b*))

a. Examples of Recognition and Enforcement
b. Examples of Refusal of Recognition and Enforcement

F. STAY OF ENFORCEMENT PENDING THE RESOLUTION OF ANNULMENT PROCEEDINGS (ARTICLE VI) 112

G. CONCLUSION 116

ANNEXES 117

Annex I – *The 1958 New York Convention* 117
Annex II – *The UNCITRAL Model Law on Arbitration* 125
Annex III – *The UNCITRAL Recommendation 2006* 151
Annex IV – *Online Sources* 154

NOTES 155

SECTION 10

ICCA JUDGES GUIDE (SECOND EDITION)

AFSA

The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

BACK TO INDEX

CHECKLIST FOR JUDGES WORKING WITH THE NEW YORK CONVENTION

This Checklist sets out the questions to be answered and the steps to be followed by courts when applying the New York Convention. The Checklist is not exhaustive and is meant to be used along with the text of the Guide.

A. APPLICATION OF THE CONVENTION

What is the Convention about?

- The recognition and enforcement of arbitration agreements (Articles I and II)
- The recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards (Articles I, III-VII)

How should the court interpret the Convention?

- Vienna Convention Articles 31 and 32
- Interpretation in favour of recognition and enforcement
- Article VII allows for application of a more favourable treaty or domestic law
- Non-application engages the international responsibility of the State

B. REQUEST FOR THE RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF AN ARBITRATION AGREEMENT (ARTICLES I AND II)

Does the Convention apply to this request?

- Is the forum State a party to the New York Convention? (Article I)
  Date of entry into force?
  Reciprocity reservation?
  Commercial reservation?

- Does the forum State have implementing legislation and does it affect the application of the Convention?
- Can the Convention apply to actions ancillary to arbitration?
  Examples:
  - Appointment of arbitrator?
  - Request for conservatory measures?

Does the arbitration agreement fall under the substantive scope of the Convention? (Article II)

- Is there a dispute?
- Does the dispute arise out of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not? (Article II(1))
- Did the parties intend to have this particular dispute settled by arbitration?
- Is this dispute arbitrable?
- Is the arbitration agreement formally valid (evidenced in writing)? (Article II(2))
  Examples:
  - Is the arbitration agreement incorporated by reference?
  - Has the arbitration agreement been tacitly accepted?
- Does the arbitration agreement exist and is it substantively valid? (Article II(3))
  Null and void?
  Inoperative?
  Incapable of being performed?
- Is the arbitration agreement binding on the parties to the dispute that is before the court?
- Is this dispute arbitrable?

Does the arbitration agreement fall under the territorial scope of the Convention? (Article I)

- Is the arbitral seat in a foreign State?
- Will the future award be considered non-domestic in the forum State?
- Is there an element of internationality?

Are procedural elements satisfied?

Examples:

- Has a party requested the referral to arbitration (no *ex officio* referral)?
- Does the process at issue qualify as arbitration?
- Has the requesting party satisfied preliminary steps?

  Examples:

  - Cooling off period?
  - Mediation/conciliation?
  - Has the requesting party waived its right to arbitration?
  - Is there a decision of another court on the same matter that is *res judicata*?

What is the applicable law?

Examples:

- Formation and substantive validity of the arbitration agreement?
- Capacity of a party?
- Non-signatories to the arbitration agreement?
- Arbitrability?

Are there matters that should be decided by the arbitral tribunal rather than the court?

Can the court rely on Article VII allowing for reliance on a more favourable right in a national law or treaty?

If all requirements are fulfilled, the court *shall* refer the parties to arbitration.

C. REQUEST FOR THE RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF AN AWARD (ARTICLES III TO V)

Does the Convention apply to this request?

- Is the forum State a party to the New York Convention? (Article I)

  Date of entry into force?

Reciprocity reservation?
Commercial reservation?

- Does the forum State have implementing legislation and does it affect the application of the Convention?

Has the petitioner submitted the required documents at the time of the request:

- Duly authenticated original award or a duly certified copy thereof (Article IV(1)(*a*))?
- Original agreement referred to in Article II or a duly certified copy thereof (Article IV(1)(*b*))?
- Translations of these documents into the language of the forum State, where relevant (Article IV(2))?

Does the request meet the applicable local procedural and jurisdictional requirements?

- Must not be substantially more onerous than those imposed on the recognition or enforcement of domestic arbitral awards (Article III)

Has the respondent raised and established any of the five grounds for refusal set out in Article V(1), narrowly interpreted?

- Is the agreement to arbitrate invalid (Article V(1)(*a*))?
  Null and void?
  Inoperative?
  Incapacity of a party?
- Was the respondent deprived of its right to have its case heard and determined by the arbitral tribunal (Article V(1)(*b*))?
  Lack of notice (only where the respondent has not actively participated in the arbitration)?
  Due process violations that prevented the respondent from presenting its case?
- Does the award deal with a dispute not contemplated by, or beyond the scope of, the parties' arbitration agreement (Article V(1)(*c*))?
- Were there serious irregularities in the composition of the arbitral tribunal or the arbitral procedure (Article V(1)(*d*))?

Not in accordance with the agreement of the parties?
In the absence of such agreement, not in accordance with the law of the country where the arbitration took place?

- Is the award not yet binding, or has it been finally set aside or suspended by a competent authority in the country in which, or under the laws of which, the award was made (Article V(1)(*e*))?

Are either of the grounds for refusal set out in Article V(2), narrowly interpreted, present?

- Is the subject matter of the dispute not arbitrable under the law of the forum State?
  Examples non-arbitrability:
  - criminal cases
  - domestic relations, such as divorce and custody of children
  - bankruptcy
  - wills
- Would recognition and enforcement be contrary to the public policy of the forum State?
  Examples public policy:
  - fundamental principles of a State pertaining to justice or morality
  - rules designed to serve the essential political, social or economic interests of the State

Can the court rely on Article VII allowing for reliance on a more favourable right in a national law or treaty?

If the court finds that one or more of the exhaustive grounds for refusal is met, the court *may* refuse recognition and enforcement. Otherwise, recognition and enforcement is mandatory.

OVERVIEW

Judges who are asked to apply the 1958 New York Convention face two types of challenges. First, there are the complexities that usually arise with respect to international treaties from the perspective of national judges. Second, this is a Convention which tests the objectivity of the national judge in a particular way, because it is often invoked by a foreigner against a local party. (This is particularly so with respect to the enforcement of foreign awards, which are typically brought to the home jurisdiction of the losing party, because that is where that party's assets are located.)

This observation is one of great importance. The Convention is the cornerstone of international commercial arbitration, which is crucial to the reliability of international business transactions. The Convention envisages a mechanism which depends on the cooperation of national courts. Its essence is reciprocal confidence. If some courts show bias in favour of their own nationals, this reciprocity is damaged as other courts may be tempted to follow the bad example.

The goal of this Guide is to provide simple explanations of the Convention's objectives, and how to interpret its text in accordance with best international practice over the sixty-five years of its existence.

We start with the most obvious question:

WHAT IS THE NEW YORK CONVENTION ABOUT?

The New York Convention has two objects:

- The recognition and enforcement of arbitration agreements (see below at A; see also Chapter 2);
- The recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards (see below at B; see also Chapter 3).

A. RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF ARBITRATION AGREEMENTS

Arbitration is a consensual process. It can only take place if the parties have agreed to submit their dispute to arbitration. The agreement to refer disputes to arbitration is called the "arbitration agreement".

An arbitration agreement has a positive and a negative legal effect:

- It obliges the parties to submit disputes to arbitration and confers jurisdiction on an arbitral tribunal over disputes covered by the arbitration agreement (*positive effect*). If a dispute arises that falls within the scope of the arbitration agreement, either party may submit it to an arbitral tribunal.
- It prevents the parties from seeking the resolution of their disputes in court (*negative effect*). By concluding an arbitration agreement, the parties waive their rights to judicial remedies. A party having entered into an arbitration agreement cannot disregard it and instead go to court.

The New York Convention obliges Contracting States to recognize and enforce these effects. The conditions under which a court must do so are discussed in Chapter 2 of this Guide.

B. RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF ARBITRAL AWARDS

Arbitration ends with a final award by the arbitral tribunal or the sole arbitrator. In addition, in the course of the arbitration, the arbitrator(s) may issue interim awards, for example an award on jurisdiction or on liability. All are covered by the New York Convention (see Chapter 1).

Most legal systems confer effects on arbitral awards that are identical or similar to those of court judgments, notably that of *res judicata*. As with court judgments, the final and binding force of an

award is in principle limited to the territory of the State where the award was made. The New York Convention provides for their recognition and enforcement *outside* that territory.

The *recognition* of arbitral awards is the process that makes arbitral awards part of a national legal system. Recognition is most often sought in the context of another proceeding. For example, a party will request the recognition of an arbitral award in order to raise a defence of *res judicata* and thus bar the re-litigation in court of issues that have already been resolved in a foreign arbitration, or a party will seek set-off in court proceedings on the basis of a foreign arbitral award. Because recognition often acts as a defensive mechanism, it is frequently described as a shield.

By contrast, *enforcement* is a sword. Successful parties in arbitration will seek to obtain what the arbitrators have awarded them. It is true that most awards are complied with voluntarily. However, when the losing party does not comply, the prevailing party may request court assistance to force compliance. The New York Convention allows parties to request such assistance.

In other words, recognition and enforcement may give effect to the award in a State other than the one where the award was made (see Chapter 1). When a court has declared an award enforceable within the *forum* State, the prevailing party may resort to the execution methods available under local laws.

CHAPTER 1
THE NEW YORK CONVENTION AS AN INSTRUMENT OF INTERNATIONAL LAW

TABLE OF CONTENTS

A. INTERPRETATION
1. Treaty Interpretation: Vienna Convention
2. Interpretation in Favour of Recognition and Enforcement: Pro-enforcement Bias

B. MATERIAL SCOPE OF APPLICATION
1. Arbitral Award
   a. Autonomous Interpretation
   b. Conflict-of-Laws Approach
2. Arbitration Agreement

C. TERRITORIAL SCOPE OF APPLICATION
1. Awards
   a. Awards Made in the Territory of a State Other Than the State Where Recognition and Enforcement Are Sought
   b. Non-domestic Awards
2. Arbitration Agreements

D. RESERVATIONS
1. Reciprocity (Article I(3) First Sentence)
2. Commercial Nature (Article I(3) Second Sentence)

E. RELATIONSHIP WITH DOMESTIC LAW AND OTHER TREATIES (ARTICLE VII)
1. More Favourable Law
2. The New York Convention and Other International Treaties
3. The New York Convention and National Law
4. Total or Partial Application of More Favourable Instruments

F. CONSEQUENCES OF THE NON-APPLICATION OF THE NEW YORK CONVENTION
1. Breach of the New York Convention

2. Breach of Investment Treaty
3. Award Is Unaffected

A. INTERPRETATION

The New York Convention (hereinafter, the "Convention") is an international treaty. As such, it is part of public international law. Consequently, the courts called upon to apply the Convention must interpret it in accordance with the rules of interpretation of international law, which are codified in Articles 31 and 32 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties.[1]

---

1. Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, done at Vienna on 23 May 1969, entered into force on 27 January 1980, United Nations *Treaty Series,* vol. 1155, p. 331. Article 31 reads:

"*General rule of interpretation*
1. A treaty shall be interpreted in good faith in accordance with the ordinary meaning to be given to the terms of the treaty in their context and in the light of its object and purpose.
2. The context for the purpose of the interpretation of a treaty shall comprise, in addition to the text, including its preamble and annexes:
(*a*) any agreement relating to the treaty which was made between all the parties in connection with the conclusion of the treaty;
(*b*) any instrument which was made by one or more parties in connection with the conclusion of the treaty and accepted by the other parties as an instrument related to the treaty.
3. There shall be taken into account, together with the context:
(*a*) any subsequent agreement between the parties regarding the interpretation of the treaty or the application of its provisions;
(*b*) any subsequent practice in the application of the treaty which establishes the agreement of the parties regarding its interpretation;
(*c*) any relevant rules of international law applicable in the relations between the parties.

Articles 31 and 32 have to be followed in sequence: if the clarity of the meaning is not achieved by reference to the general rule embodied in Article 31, one looks to the supplementary rules embodied in Article 32. National rules of interpretation do not apply. In accordance with international law, courts should interpret the Convention in an autonomous manner (see this Chapter below at A.1) and in favour of recognition and enforcement (see this Chapter below at A.2).

1. Treaty Interpretation: Vienna Convention

In principle, the terms used in the Convention have an autonomous meaning (Article 31 Vienna Convention). The terms must be understood in accordance with their ordinary meaning, taking into account their context and the purpose of the Convention. To confirm that meaning, or where that meaning is either ambiguous or manifestly unreasonable, recourse may be had to the *travaux préparatoires* of the Convention (Article 32 Vienna Convention). Therefore, courts should not interpret the terms of the Convention by reference to domestic law. The terms of the Convention should have the same meaning wherever in the world they are applied. This helps to ensure the uniform application of the Convention in all the Contracting States.

---

4. A special meaning shall be given to a term if it is established that the parties so intended."

Article 32 reads:

"*Supplementary means of interpretation*
Recourse may be had to supplementary means of interpretation, including the preparatory work of the treaty and the circumstances of its conclusion, in order to confirm the meaning resulting from the application of article 31, or to determine the meaning when the interpretation according to article 31:
(*a*) leaves the meaning ambiguous or obscure; or
(*b*) leads to a result which is manifestly absurd or unreasonable."

In jurisdictions that have implemented the Convention into their legal system by means of an implementing act, it is important to have regard to its terms. In some cases, they alter the terms of the Convention.[2] Current case law unfortunately sometimes diverges in the application of the Convention and therefore does not always provide a useful guideline. In that case, courts should always interpret the Convention on a pro-enforcement bias. Courts can also rely on scholarly writings such as the commentary on the Convention by Professor Albert Jan van den Berg.[3]

2. Interpretation in Favour of Recognition and Enforcement: Pro-Enforcement Bias

As stated above, treaties should be interpreted in light of their object and purpose. The purpose of the Convention is to promote international commerce and the settlement of international disputes through arbitration. It aims at facilitating the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards and the enforcement of arbitration agreements. Consequently, courts should adopt a pro-enforcement approach when interpreting the Convention.

If there are several possible interpretations, courts should choose the meaning that favours recognition and enforcement (the so-called *pro-*

2. See Report on the Survey Relating to the Legislative Implementation of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards (New York 1958). Note by the UNCITRAL Secretariat. A/CN.9/656 and A/CN.9/656/Add.1, 5 June 2008.
3. Albert Jan van den Berg, *The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958 – Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation* (Kluwer, 1981); see also Professor van den Berg's Consolidated Commentary on the 1958 New York Convention in Volume XXVIII (2003) of the ICCA *Yearbook Commercial Arbitration* (henceforth *Yearbook*), covering Volume XXII (1997) to Volume XXVII (2002), and the Consolidated Commentary on the 1958 New York Convention in Volume XXI (1996) of the *Yearbook*, covering Volume XX (1995) and Volume XXI (1996).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

enforcement bias). This implies in particular that the grounds for refusing enforcement specified in Article V should be construed narrowly (see Chapter 3 at C.4).[4]

In line with the pro-enforcement bias, which is key to the interpretation of the Convention, the *principle of maximum efficiency* applies: if more treaties could be applicable, the courts should apply the treaty under which the award is enforceable. This is reflected in Article VII (see this Chapter below at E.2).

In a case before the Spanish Supreme Court,[5] two treaties were potentially applicable to determine the enforceability of the award: a bilateral treaty between France and Spain and the Convention. The Court held that, of the two principles relevant to determining whether the bilateral treaty or the Convention applied, one was:

> "... the principle of maximum efficiency or greater favourability to the recognition of foreign decisions. [Taken together with the other relevant principles this leads to the Court concluding that the Convention was the applicable provision as it] establishes a presumption of the validity and efficacy of both the arbitration agreement and the related arbitral award or decision [and] … consequently shifts the burden of proof onto the party against whom the arbitral award is invoked…"

4. A court seised with an application to enforce an award under the Convention has no authority to review the decision of the arbitral tribunal on the merits and replace it by its own decision, even if it believes that the arbitrators erred in fact or law. Enforcement is not an appeal of the arbitral decision (see Chapter 3 at C.1).
5. *Spain*: Tribunal Supremo, Civil Chamber, First Section, 20 July 2004 (*Antilles Cement Corporation v. Transficem*), *Yearbook* XXXI (2006) pp. 846-852 (Spain no. 46).

B. MATERIAL SCOPE OF APPLICATION

To determine whether a particular award or agreement falls within the subject matter of the Convention, a court should ascertain whether it qualifies as an arbitral award or an arbitration agreement.

1. Arbitral Award

There is no definition of the term "arbitral award" in the Convention. Therefore, it is for the courts to determine what the term means for the purposes of the Convention. They must do so in two steps:

1. First, they must review whether the dispute had been submitted and resolved by *arbitration.* Not all out-of-court dispute-settlement methods qualify as arbitration. There are a variety of dispute-settlement mechanisms involving private individuals that do not have the same characteristics as arbitration. Mediation, conciliation and expert determination are a few examples. The New York Convention covers only arbitration.
2. Second, they must review whether the decision is an *award*. Arbitral tribunals may issue a variety of decisions. Some of them are awards, others are not.

Courts have adopted two different methods to determine the meaning of the terms "arbitration" and "award". They either (1) opt for autonomous interpretation or (2) refer to national law using a conflict-of-laws method.

a. Autonomous Interpretation

The first step is to inquire whether the process at issue qualifies as *arbitration*. Arbitration is a method of dispute settlement in which the parties agree to submit their dispute to a third person who will render a final and binding decision in place of the courts.

This definition stresses three main characteristics of arbitration. First, arbitration is consensual: it is based on the parties' agreement. Second, arbitration leads to a final and binding resolution of the dispute. Third, arbitration is regarded as a substitute for court litigation.

The second step is to review whether the decision at issue is an *award*. An award is a decision putting an end to the arbitration in whole or in part or ruling on a preliminary issue the resolution of which is necessary to reach a final decision. An award *finally* settles the issues that it seeks to resolve.[6] Even if the tribunal wished to adopt a different conclusion later, the issue cannot be reopened or revised.

Consequently, the following arbitral decisions qualify as awards:

– Final awards, i.e., awards that put an end to the arbitration. An award dealing with all the claims on the merits is a final award. So is an award denying the tribunal's jurisdiction over the dispute submitted to it;
– Partial awards, i.e., awards that give a final decision on part of the claims and leave the remaining claims for a subsequent phase of the arbitration proceedings. An award dealing with the claim for extra costs in a construction arbitration and leaving claims for damages for defects and delay for a later phase of the proceedings is a partial award (this term is sometimes also used for the following category, but for a better understanding, it is preferable to distinguish them);
– Preliminary awards, sometimes also called interlocutory or interim awards, i.e., awards that decide a preliminary issue necessary to dispose of the parties' claims, such as a decision on whether a claim is time-barred, on what law governs the merits, or on whether there is liability;

6. See, e.g., *United States*: Court of Appeals, Seventh Circuit, 14 March 2000 (*Publicis Communication, et al. v. True North Communications Inc.*), *Yearbook* XXV (2000) pp. 1152-1157 (US no. 338); *Germany*: Bundesgerichtshof, 18 January 2007 (*Parties not indicated*), *Yearbook* XXXIII (2008) pp. 506-509 (Germany no. 109).

– Awards on costs, i.e., awards determining the amount and allocation of the arbitration costs;
– Consent awards, i.e., awards recording the parties' amicable settlement of the dispute; and
– Awards issued by default, i.e., without the participation of one of the parties (the extent they fall within one of the categories listed above).

By contrast, the following decisions are generally not deemed awards:

– Procedural orders, i.e., decisions that merely organize the proceedings;
– Decisions on provisional or interim measures. Because they are only issued for the duration of the arbitration and can be reopened during that time, provisional measures are not awards. Courts have held the contrary on the theory that such decisions terminate the dispute of the parties over provisional measures, but this is unpersuasive: the parties did not agree to arbitration in order to resolve issues of arbitral procedure.

Finally, the name given by the arbitrators to their decision is not determinative. Courts must consider the subject matter of the decision and whether it finally settles an issue in order to decide whether it is an award.

b. Conflict-of-Laws Approach

If, rather than using the preferred autonomous method for all the above questions, a court were to refer to a national law, it would start by deciding which national law will govern the definition of arbitral award. In other words, it would adopt a conflict-of-laws method. It could apply either its own national law (*lex fori*) or the law governing the arbitration (*lex arbitri*). The latter will generally be the law of the seat of the arbitration, much less frequently the law chosen by the parties to govern

the arbitration (not the contract or the merits of the dispute, which is a different matter).

2. Arbitration Agreement

Article II(1) of the New York Convention makes clear that it applies to agreements "in writing under which the parties undertake to submit to arbitration all or any differences which have arisen or may arise between them in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not".

The use of the words "have arisen or may arise" shows that the Convention covers both arbitration clauses contained in contracts and dealing with future disputes, on the one hand, and submission agreements providing for resolution of existing disputes by arbitration, on the other hand.

Under Article II(1), the arbitration agreement must relate to a specific legal relationship. This requirement is certainly met for an arbitration clause in a contract which concerns disputes arising out of that very contract. By contrast, this requirement would not be met if the parties were to submit to arbitration any and all existing and future disputes over any possible matter.

The disputes covered by the arbitration agreement may concern contract and other claims such as tort claims and other statutory claims.

Finally, the Convention requires that the arbitration agreement be "in writing", a requirement defined in Article II(2) and discussed in Chapter 2.

C. TERRITORIAL SCOPE OF APPLICATION

Article I(1) defines the territorial scope of application of the Convention to arbitral awards in the following terms:

> "This Convention shall apply to the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards made in the territory of a State other than the State where the recognition and enforcement of such awards are sought, and arising out of differences between persons, whether physical or legal. It shall also apply to arbitral awards not considered as domestic awards in the State where their recognition and enforcement are sought."

Accordingly, the Convention deals only with the recognition and enforcement of *foreign and non-domestic arbitral awards* (see this Chapter below at C.1). It does not apply to the recognition and enforcement of domestic awards in the country where such an award is made.

The Convention contains no similar provision with regard to arbitration agreements. However, it is established that the Convention only applies to "foreign" or international arbitration agreements (see this Chapter below at C.2).

1. Awards

a. Awards Made in the Territory of a State Other Than the State Where Recognition and Enforcement Are Sought

Any award made in a State other than the State of the recognition or enforcement court falls within the scope of the Convention, i.e., is a foreign award. Hence, the nationality, domicile or residence of the parties is without relevance to determine whether an award is foreign. However, these factors may be important when determining if an arbitration agreement falls within the scope of the Convention (see Chapters 2 and 3). Moreover, it is not required that the State where the award was made be a party to the Convention (unless the State where recognition or enforcement is sought has made the reciprocity reservation; see this Chapter below at D.1).

Where is an award made? The Convention does not answer this question. The vast majority of Contracting States consider that an award is made at the seat of the arbitration (also referred to as the place of arbitration). For instance, numerous jurisdictions have incorporated in their arbitration acts Article 31(3) of the UNCITRAL Model Law according to which the award shall be deemed to have been made at the place of arbitration. The seat or place of the arbitration is a legal, not a physical, geographical concept. Whether chosen by the parties or alternatively, by the arbitral institution or the arbitral tribunal, the seat or place of arbitration determines (in most cases) the legal regime applicable to the arbitration, referred to as *lex arbitri*. Hearings, deliberations and signature of the award and other parts of the arbitral process may take place elsewhere, without affecting where the award is deemed to be made.

b. Non-domestic Awards

The second category of awards covered by the Convention are those which are considered as non-domestic in the State where recognition or enforcement is sought. This category broadens the scope of application of the Convention.

The Convention does not define non-domestic awards. Very rarely, it is the parties that indicate whether the award to be rendered between them is non-domestic. Each Contracting State is thus free to decide which awards it does not regard as domestic and may have done so in the legislation implementing the Convention.[7]

7. For example, the United States Federal Arbitration Act (Title 9, Chapter 2) has made the following provision with respect to a "non-domestic award":

"Sect. 202. Agreement or award falling under the Convention
An arbitration agreement or arbitral award arising out of a legal relationship, whether contractual or not, which is considered as commercial, including a transaction, contract, or agreement described in section 2 of this title, falls under

In the exercise of this freedom, States generally consider all or some of the following awards as non-domestic:

– Awards made under the arbitration law of another State;
– Awards involving a foreign element;
– A-national awards;
– Awards in respect of which the parties have waived the right to seek annulment.

The first type of awards will only arise in connection with an arbitration having its seat in the State of the court seised of the recognition or enforcement but which was governed by a foreign arbitration law. This will be a rare occurrence because it implies that the national law of the recognition or enforcement court allows the parties to submit the arbitration to a *lex arbitri* other than that of the seat.

The second category refers to awards made within the State of the recognition or enforcement court in a dispute involving a foreign dimension, such as the nationality or domicile of the parties or the place of performance of the contract giving rise to the dispute. The criteria for an award to be considered non-domestic under this category are usually established by the States in their implementing legislation (see at fn. 7 for the example of the United States). Very rarely, the parties indicate that their award is non-domestic.

The third type refers to awards issued in arbitrations that are detached from any national arbitration law, for example, because the parties have explicitly excluded the application of any national arbitration law or provided for the application of transnational rules.

---

the Convention. An agreement or award arising out of such a relationship which is entirely between citizens of the United States shall be deemed not to fall under the Convention unless that relationship involves property located abroad, envisages performance or enforcement abroad, or has some other reasonable relation with one or more foreign states. For the purpose of this section a corporation is a citizen of the United States if it is incorporated or has its principal place of business in the United States."

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Although there has been some discussion as to whether a-national awards fall within the scope of the New York Convention, the prevailing view is that the Convention does apply to such awards. These cases are extremely rare.

The final category concerns awards in respect of which the parties have waived the right to seek annulment. Some jurisdictions allow parties to agree to waive the right to seek annulment of an award, provided that the parties concerned do not hold certain links with the jurisdiction in question (e.g., that they do not have their residence or domicile in that State). In the presence of such waiver agreements, some domestic arbitration acts provide that awards are deemed to be non-domestic under the Convention.[8]

2. Arbitration Agreements

The Convention does not define its scope of application to arbitration agreements. However, it is well established that the New York Convention does not govern the recognition of domestic arbitration agreements. It is equally accepted that the Convention is applicable if the future arbitral award will be deemed foreign or non-domestic pursuant to Article I(1). Some courts reason that the Convention applies if the arbitration agreement is international in nature. The internationality of the agreement results either from the nationality or domicile of the parties or from the underlying transaction.

When determining whether an arbitration agreement falls within the scope of the Convention, courts should distinguish among three situations:

– If the arbitration agreement provides for a seat in a foreign State, the court must apply the New York Convention;

8. See, e.g., Chapter 12 of Switzerland's Federal Act on Private International Law of 18 December 1987, as in force from 1 January 2021, Article 192; Peru's Legislative Decree No. 1071 Regulating Arbitration, in effect 1 September 2008, Articles 63(8) and 74.

– If the arbitration agreement provides for a seat in the forum State, the court
  - must apply the Convention if the future award will qualify as non-domestic pursuant to Article I(1), second sentence;
  - may apply the Convention if the arbitration agreement is international due to the nationality or domicile of the parties or to foreign elements present in the transaction;
– If the arbitration agreement does not provide for the seat of the arbitration, the court must apply the Convention if it is likely that the future award will be held to be foreign or non-domestic in accordance with Article I(1). In addition, it may apply the Convention if the court deems the agreement to be international.

D. RESERVATIONS

In principle, the Convention applies to all foreign or international arbitration agreements and to all foreign or non-domestic awards. However, Contracting States can make two reservations to the application of the Convention.

1. Reciprocity (Article I(3) First Sentence)

Contracting States may declare that they will apply the Convention only to the recognition and enforcement of awards made in the territory of another Contracting State. Approximately two-thirds of the Contracting States have made this reservation.[9] A court in a State which has made the reservation of reciprocity will apply the Convention only if the award has been made in the territory of another Contracting State, or if

9. A full list of the Contracting States and their respective reservations may be found in List of Contracting States (as of 1 November 2022) for the New York Convention, in Schill (ed.), ICCA *Yearbook Commercial Arbitration* XLVII (2022).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

the award is non-domestic and shows links to another Contracting State. In practice, this reservation has a limited impact considering the large number of States that have adopted the Convention (as of the date of this publication, the Convention had 172 Contracting States).

There are different positions as to *when* the State in which the award was made is required to be a party to the Convention.[10] The prevailing view is that the relevant time is when recognition and enforcement are sought. However, some courts have held that the relevant time is the date on which the award was rendered.[11]

2. Commercial Nature (Article I(3) Second Sentence)

Contracting States may also declare that they will apply the Convention only to differences arising out of legal relationships, whether contractual or not, which are deemed commercial under the national law of the State making such declaration. Approximately one-third of the Contracting States have made this reservation.[12]

Although the language of the Convention refers to the national law of the forum State (as an exception to the principle of autonomous interpretation), in practice courts also give consideration to the special circumstances of the case and to international practice. In any event, considering the purpose of the Convention, courts should interpret the notion of commerciality broadly.

10. *United Kingdom*: High Court, Queen's Bench Division (Commercial Court), 19 February 1981 (*The Government of Kuwait v. Sir Frederick S. Snow and partners, et al.*), *Yearbook* VII (1982) pp. 367-372 (UK no. 9); *Austria*: Oberster Gerichtshof, 17 November 1965 (*Party from F.R. Germany v. Party from Austria*), *Yearbook* I (1976) p. 182 (Austria no. 1).
11. *Belgium*: Tribunal de Première Instance, Brussels, 6 December 1988 (*Société Nationale pour la Recherche, le Transport et la Commercialisation des Hydrocarbures (SONATRACH) v. Ford, Bacon and Davis Incorporated*), *Yearbook* XV (1990) pp. 370-377 (Belgium no. 7).
12. See fn. 9 above.

In jurisdictions that have incorporated in their domestic law Article 1(1) of the UNCITRAL Model Law, the following considerations guide the interpretation of the term "commercial":

> "The term 'commercial' should be given a wide interpretation so as to cover matters arising from all relationships of a commercial nature, whether contractual or not. Relationships of a commercial nature include, but are not limited to, the following transactions: any trade transaction for the supply or exchange of goods or services; distribution agreement; commercial representation or agency; factoring; leasing; construction of works; consulting; engineering; licensing; investment; financing; banking; insurance; exploitation agreement or concession; joint venture and other forms of industrial or business cooperation; carriage of goods or passengers by air, sea, rail or road."[13]

Although the Convention speaks of reservations only in the context of recognition and enforcement of awards, it is generally understood that the reservations also apply to the recognition of arbitration agreements.

E. RELATIONSHIP WITH DOMESTIC LAW AND OTHER TREATIES (ARTICLE VII)

Article VII(1) of the Convention addresses the relationship between the Convention and national laws of the forum and other international treaties binding upon the State where enforcement is sought in the following terms:

> "The provisions of the present Convention shall not affect the validity of multilateral or bilateral agreements concerning the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards entered into by the Contracting States nor deprive any interested party of any right he

13. Article 1(1), fn. 2, UNCITRAL Model Law, see **Annex II** to this Guide.

> may have to avail himself of an arbitral award in the manner and to the extent allowed by the law or the treaties of the country where such award is sought to be relied upon."

1. More Favourable Law

Article VII(1) is called the more-favourable-right provision, since it allows a party seeking recognition and enforcement to rely on rules that are more favourable than those of the Convention. More favourable rules may be found: (i) in the national law of the forum or (ii) in treaties applicable in the territory where recognition and enforcement are sought.

In practice, treaties or national law will be more favourable than the New York Convention if they permit recognition and enforcement by reference to less demanding criteria, whether in terms of procedure or of grounds for non-enforcement.

By now it is a widely (though not universally) accepted understanding that the provisions of Article VII(1) also apply to the recognition and enforcement of the arbitration agreements addressed in Article II. Article VII(1) is mostly invoked in order to overcome the formal requirements applicable to the arbitration agreement by virtue of Article II(2) (the writing requirement, see Chapter 2 at D.2.a).

A Recommendation adopted by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law (UNCITRAL) on 7 July 2006 (see **Annex III** to this Guide) states that

> "also article VII, paragraph 1 of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York, 10 June 1958, should be applied to allow any interested party to avail itself of rights it may have, under the law or treaties of the country where an arbitration agreement is sought to be relied upon, to seek recognition of the validity of such an agreement".

The history of the Convention also supports this view. The provision on the enforcement of arbitration agreements was included on the last day

of the negotiations. The other provisions were not amended to take account of this last-minute addition. Article VII should thus not be construed as excluding arbitration agreements from its scope.

2. The New York Convention and Other International Treaties

The first part of Article VII provides that the Convention does not affect the validity of other international treaties on the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards which are in force in the enforcement State. The second part of the same provision specifies that the parties are entitled to seek recognition and enforcement of an award pursuant to either the New York Convention or another treaty or national laws, whichever is more favourable.

The more-favourable-right principle derogates from the classical rules of international law on conflicting treaties (*lex posterior* and *lex specialis*). Pursuant to the more-favourable-right principle, it is the more favourable one that prevails (see above at A.2).

3. The New York Convention and National Law

With respect to the relationship between the New York Convention and national law of the State in which enforcement is requested, three situations must be distinguished.

Case (i) The Convention supersedes national law
Where the Convention and national law both have rules on the same issues, the Convention supersedes national law, unless the national law is more favourable. In some cases the court will have to refer to legislation implementing the Convention.

Case (ii) National law supplements the Convention
Where the Convention contains no rule on a given matter, courts will apply their national law to supplement the Convention.

Case (iii) The Convention refers expressly to national law

Where the Convention refers explicitly to national law, the courts must apply national law to the extent permitted by the Convention. This is the case for example with Article I (in connection with the commercial reservation) and Article V (certain grounds of non-enforcement refer to national law). In that case, the applicable national law is not necessarily the law of the forum but may be the law under which the award was made.

As another example, Article III provides that Contracting States shall recognize and enforce arbitral awards in accordance with the rules of procedure of the State where the award is relied upon. Thus, the procedure for recognition and enforcement of foreign awards is governed by national law, except for the issues of burden of proof and the documents to be submitted (see Chapter 3). A State may not impose substantially more onerous procedural conditions on foreign awards than those governing domestic awards.

Without being exhaustive, the following procedural issues are governed by national law:

- The time limit for filing a request for recognition or enforcement;
- The authority competent to recognize or enforce awards;
- The form of the request;
- The manner in which the recognition or enforcement proceedings are conducted;
- The remedies against a decision granting or refusing a request for recognition or enforcement;
- The availability of a set-off defence or counterclaim against an award.

An issue may arise if a State poses stringent jurisdictional requirements to accept that its courts rule on an enforcement request. In conformity with the purpose of the Convention and its strong pro-enforcement bias, the presence of assets in the territory of the enforcement State should suffice to create jurisdiction for enforcement purposes. In spite of this,

United States courts have required that they have personal jurisdiction over the respondent and award debtor.

4. Total or Partial Application of More Favourable Instruments

As noted above, Article VII permits an interested party to avail itself of a more favourable right it may have under another domestic law or international treaty. The Convention does not specify whether the more favourable regime applies only in respect of a specific provision that is considered to be more favourable or if rather it should apply in its entirety. Courts have adopted different positions on this issue. Some courts consider that the more favourable law or treaty must apply in its totality, to the exclusion of the Convention.[14] In other words, a party may not "mix and match" provisions of the Convention with those of national laws or other treaties. Other courts are of the view that Article VII merely requires courts to protect any more favourable rights the interested parties may have under other treaties and local laws; a task that, in their view, allows the joint application of provisions of the Convention and of national laws or other treaties[15] (See Chapter 2 at C.4.a).

F. CONSEQUENCES OF THE NON-APPLICATION OF THE NEW YORK CONVENTION

The non-application or incorrect application of the New York Convention engages in principle the international responsibility of the State. A breach of the State's obligations under the Convention (see this Chapter below at F.1) may in certain circumstances also constitute a

14. *Germany*: Bundesgerichtshof, 21 September 2005, paras. 8-10; *Yearbook* XXXI (2006) pp. 640-728 (Germany no. 89).
15. *United States*: United States District Court, District of Columbia, 31 July 1996 (*Chromalloy Aeroservices Inc. v. The Arab Republic of Egypt*), Civil No. 94-2339 (JLG); *Yearbook* XXII (1997) pp. 881-1059 (United States no. 230).

breach of a bilateral or multilateral investment treaty (see this Chapter below at F.2). In any event, the award will remain unaffected by the breaches (see this Chapter below at F.3).

1. Breach of the New York Convention

Although the Convention does not have a dispute-resolution clause, the Convention is an international treaty creating obligations for the Contracting States under international law.

As explained above, the Contracting States have undertaken to recognize and enforce foreign arbitral awards and arbitration agreements. When a party requests the enforcement and/or recognition of an award or an arbitration agreement falling within the scope of the Convention, a Contracting State must apply the Convention. The Contracting State may not impose stricter procedural rules and substantive conditions upon recognition and enforcement and where the Convention is silent on a procedural matter, and it may not impose substantially more onerous procedural conditions than those governing domestic awards.

Within the Contracting States, the principal organs in charge of the application of the New York Convention are the courts. In international law, the acts of courts are regarded as acts of the State itself. Thus, if a court does not apply the Convention, misapplies it or finds questionable reasons to refuse recognition or enforcement that are not covered by the Convention, the forum State engages its international responsibility.

As soon as the notification of the Convention is effective for a given Contracting State, the responsibility of that State will be engaged on the international level irrespective of whether the Convention has been properly implemented by national legislation or whether it has been published or otherwise promulgated under domestic rules. Hence, the fact that the text of the Convention has for example not been published in the relevant official gazette does not change the State's obligations to comply with the Convention under international law.

2. Breach of Investment Treaty

Depending on the circumstances, a breach of the obligation to recognize and enforce arbitration agreements and awards can give rise to a breach of another treaty. This may be so of the European Convention on Human Rights and especially its first Protocol and of investment treaties. Through the latter, States guarantee foreign investors that, among other protections, they will receive fair and equitable treatment and will not be subject to expropriation (unless specific conditions are met). Decisions in investment treaty arbitrations have held that a State had breached its obligations under a bilateral investment treaty because its courts had failed to recognize a valid arbitration agreement.[16]

3. Award is Unaffected

The refusal of a State to enforce or recognize an award has effect only within the territory of that State. The successful party will thus still be entitled to rely on the award and ask for its enforcement in other States.

16. *Saipem SpA v. Bangladesh*, International Centre for Settlement of Investment Disputes (ICSID) case no. ARB/05/07 and *Salini Costruttori SpA v. Jordan*, ICSID case no. ARB/02/13, both available online at <www.icsid.worldbank.org>.

CHAPTER 2
REQUEST FOR THE ENFORCEMENT OF AN ARBITRATION AGREEMENT

TABLE OF CONTENTS

A. INTRODUCTION
B. GENERAL MATTERS
1. Scope of Judicial Review of Challenges to the Arbitral Tribunal's Jurisdiction
2. Timing of the Referral Request in Court Proceedings
3. Concurrent Arbitration Proceedings Not Required for Referral to Arbitration (Referral is Mandatory)

C. REQUIREMENTS FOR THE ENFORCEMENT OF AN ARBITRATION AGREEMENT
1. The Arbitration Agreement Must Fall Under the Scope of the Convention
2. There Must Be a Dispute, It Must Arise Out of a Defined Legal Relationship, Whether Contractual or Not, and the Parties Must Have Intended to Have This Particular Dispute Settled by Arbitration
3. The Subject Matter of the Dispute Must Be Arbitrable ("Capable of Settlement by Arbitration")
   a. The Law Applicable to Determine Arbitrability
   b. International Arbitration Agreements Should Be Subject to Consistent Standards of Arbitrability
4. The Arbitration Agreement Must Be Formally and Substantively Valid
   a. Formal Validity: The Arbitration Agreement Must Be "In Writing"
      1. Arbitration clause included in a document referred to in the main contractual document (incorporation by reference)

2. *Arbitration clause in contractual document not signed but subsequently accepted*
3. *No tacit acceptance*
4. *Arbitration agreement contained in exchange of electronic communications*

b. Substantive Validity: The Arbitration Agreement Must Not Be "Null and Void, Inoperative, or Incapable of Being Performed"

1. *Law applicable to the substantive validity of the arbitration agreement*
2. *"Null and void"*
3. *"Inoperative"*
4. *"Incapable of being performed"*
   (i) Where the referral to arbitration is optional
   (ii) Where the contract provides for arbitration as well as jurisdiction of the courts
   (iii) Where the dispute resolution clause foresees steps prior to arbitration
   (iv) Where the arbitration rules or arbitral institution are inaccurately designated
   (v) Where there is no indication whatsoever as to how the arbitrators are to be appointed ("short form clauses")

5. The Arbitration Agreement Must Be Binding on the Parties to the Dispute Before the Court (Non-Signatories)

a. Formal Validity: Needs Not Be Re-examined With Respect to Non-Signatories

b. Substantive Validity: The Non-Signatories Must Come Within the Subjective Scope of the Arbitration Agreement

1. *The law applicable to determining the subjective scope of the arbitration agreement*
2. *When a non-signatory can be referred to arbitration*

D. WHEN THE REQUIREMENTS FOR ENFORCING AN ARBITRATION AGREEMENT ARE MET, THE COURT SHALL "REFER THE PARTIES TO ARBITRATION", "AT THE REQUEST OF ONE OF THE PARTIES"

1. How to "Refer" Parties to Arbitration
2. No *Ex Officio* Referral
3. Options Available to the Court If It Finds That a Party Should Not Be Referred to Arbitration

E. SUMMARY

A. INTRODUCTION

To ensure that the parties' original intention to have their disputes settled by arbitration cannot be frustrated by a unilateral submission of the dispute to courts, Article II of the Convention sets out the conditions under which courts must refer the parties to arbitration, and limits the grounds on which a party to an arbitration agreement could challenge its validity:

> "(1) Each Contracting State shall recognize an agreement in writing under which the parties undertake to submit to arbitration all or any differences which have arisen or which may arise between them in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not, concerning a subject matter capable of settlement by arbitration.
> (2) The term 'agreement in writing' shall include an arbitral clause in a contract or an arbitration agreement, signed by the parties or contained in an exchange of letters or telegrams.
> (3) The court of a Contracting State, when seized of an action in a matter in respect of which the parties have made an agreement within the meaning of this article, shall, at the request of one of the parties, refer the parties to arbitration, unless it finds that the said agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed."

Prior to the rendering of the award, there are situations in which a court may confront a challenge to the validity of an arbitration agreement. The most frequent circumstance will be when, as stated in Article II(3),

a matter in respect of which the parties have made an arbitration agreement is nonetheless brought to court, and the respondent requests the court to refer the matter to arbitration. Similarly, the court may be seised of a request for an anti-arbitration injunction or asked to take measures in support of arbitration proceedings – such as making default appointment of an arbitrator – that will be opposed by the other party on the ground that the arbitration agreement is invalid.

When faced with these kinds of situations, courts should adhere to the purpose of the Convention and the best practices developed in the Contracting States over more than sixty-five years.

The principles in Article II of the Convention also extend to the recognition and enforcement of awards through the operation of Article V(1)(*a*). Specifically, Article V(1)(*a*) provides that courts may deny recognition and enforcement of an award if the relevant arbitration agreement is not valid under the law applicable to it, or the parties lacked the capacity to agree to arbitrate.

B. GENERAL MATTERS

When entertaining a request to enforce an arbitration agreement, courts must first consider several general matters not addressed by the Convention. In particular, the courts must consider: the applicable standard of review; the latest date at which a request for the enforcement of an arbitration agreement can be introduced; and whether the court's decision can proceed before an arbitration has been filed.

1. Scope of Judicial Review of Challenges to the Arbitral Tribunal's Jurisdiction

Two generally accepted principles of arbitration should be considered in determining the court's standard of review in a pre-award stage of the procedure.

First, the "competence-competence" principle (also sometimes referred to as *Kompetenz-Kompetenz*) permits arbitrators to hear any challenge to their jurisdiction and even reach the conclusion that they do not have jurisdiction. This power is essential if the arbitrators are to carry out their task properly. It would be a major impediment to the arbitral process if the dispute were to be remanded to the courts simply because the existence or validity of an arbitration agreement has been questioned. If arbitrators lacked this power, "a party could stall the arbitration at any time merely by raising jurisdictional objections that could then only be resolved in possibly lengthy court proceedings."[17]

The Convention does not explicitly require the application of the competence-competence principle. However, several provisions tend to support the application of the principle nonetheless. For example, Articles II(3) and V(1) of the Convention do not prohibit that both arbitral tribunals and courts may rule on the question of the arbitrator's jurisdiction to deal with a particular dispute. In addition, the provisions of Articles V(1)(*a*) and V(1)(*c*) – dealing with recognition and enforcement of awards – imply that an arbitral tribunal has rendered an award despite the existence of jurisdictional challenges.

Second, and closely intertwined with the principle of "competence-competence", is the principle of the severability of the arbitration clause from the main contract (also referred to as "separability" or the "autonomy of the arbitration clause"). This principle implies that, first, the validity of the main contract does not in principle affect the validity of the arbitration agreement contained therein; and second, the main contract and the arbitration agreement may be governed by different laws.

These principles, taken together, have been interpreted by courts in several jurisdictions to give priority to the determination of the arbitral tribunal's jurisdiction by the arbitral tribunal itself. As a result, the courts' scrutiny of an arbitration agreement that is purportedly null and

17. Howard M. Holtzmann and Joseph E. Neuhaus, *A Guide to the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration*, at 479 (Kluwer 1989).

void, inoperative or incapable of being performed is limited to self-evident defects (*prima facie* review) at the early stage of a dispute. These courts have found that the arbitration agreement is invalid only in manifest cases and are only empowered to fully review the arbitral tribunal's findings on jurisdiction when seised of a request for enforcement of an arbitral award or at the setting-aside stage (the latter not being regulated in the Convention). While this is desirable in light of the object and purpose of the Convention, it should be noted again that the Convention takes no position on this.

2. Timing of the Referral Request in Court Proceedings

The Convention does not set a deadline for requesting the referral to arbitration. The answer to when a referral request must be lodged lies in national arbitration or procedural law. If a party fails to raise the request in a timely manner, it may be considered that it has waived the right to arbitrate and that the arbitration agreement becomes inoperative.

Most national laws provide that the referral to arbitration must be requested before any defence on the merits, i.e., *in limine litis*.[18]

3. Concurrent Arbitration Proceedings Not Required for Referral to Arbitration (Referral is Mandatory)

The admissibility of a request for referral and the court's jurisdiction over it should be decided regardless of whether arbitration proceedings have already been initiated, unless national arbitration law provides otherwise.

Although this is not provided for in the Convention, most courts hold that the actual commencement of arbitration proceedings is not a requirement for asking the court to refer the dispute to arbitration.

18. See, e.g., UNCITRAL Model Law, Article 8(1).

C. REQUIREMENTS FOR THE ENFORCEMENT OF AN ARBITRATION AGREEMENT

To enforce an arbitration agreement under Article II of the Convention, the court seised must be satisfied that:

1. The arbitration agreement falls under the scope of the Convention;
2. There is a dispute, it arises out of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not, and the parties intended to have this particular dispute settled by arbitration;
3. The dispute is arbitrable (i.e., capable of settlement by arbitration);
4. The arbitration agreement is formally valid (evidenced in writing) and substantively valid (not null and void, inoperative, or incapable of being performed); and
5. The arbitration agreement is binding on the parties to the dispute that is before the court.

The parties must be referred to arbitration if there is an affirmative finding in respect of each of the above matters.

1. The Arbitration Agreement Must Fall Under the Scope of the Convention

For an arbitration agreement to benefit from the protection of the Convention, it has to come within its scope (see Chapter 1 at B.2).

2. There Must Be a Dispute, It Must Arise Out of a Defined Legal Relationship, Whether Contractual or Not, and the Parties Must Have Intended to Have This Particular Dispute Settled by Arbitration

For an arbitration to take place, there should be a dispute between the parties ("differences", in the language of Article II(1)). Courts are not

required to refer the parties to arbitration where there is no dispute between them, although this does occur very rarely.

Article II(1) requires that these disputes arise out of a "defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not". It is widely accepted that cases arising under investment treaties fall within the ambit of this provision (See Chapter 1 at D.2 on the commercial reservation). Whether a claim in tort is covered depends on the wording of the arbitration clause, i.e., whether the clause is broadly worded, and whether the claim in tort is sufficiently related to the contractual claim.

However, a party to an arbitration agreement may still argue that the claims asserted against the party relying on the arbitration agreement do not come within the ambit of the arbitration agreement. The requirement that the dispute fall within the scope of the arbitration agreement for the parties to be referred to arbitration is implicit in Article II(3) which states as a condition thereto that the action be "in a matter in respect of which the parties have made an agreement within the meaning of this article".

The question sometimes arises whether under a strict interpretation, the term "arising under" could be understood as having a narrower meaning than "arising out of" a defined legal relationship. Similar questions arise with regard to the scope of "relating to" and "concerning".

However, as suggested in the English Court of Appeal case of *Fiona Trust v. Privalov*,[19] attention should rather be focused on whether it can be reasonably inferred that the parties intended to exclude the dispute at hand from arbitral jurisdiction. As the Court then put it

> "[o]rdinary business men would be surprised at the nice distinctions drawn in the cases and the time taken up by argument in debating

19. *United Kingdom*: England and Wales Court of Appeal, 24 January 2007 (*Fiona Trust & Holding Corporation & Ors v. Yuri Privalov & Ors*) [2007] EWCA Civ 20, para. 17; ICCA *Yearbook Commercial Arbitration* XXXII (2007) pp. 654-682 at [6] (UK no. 77).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

whether a particular case falls within one set of words or another very similar set of words".

The decision was confirmed by the House of Lords who "applauded" the opinion of the Court of Appeal.[20]

In addressing questions of scope, courts may have to grapple with the language of some arbitration agreements that may seem to cover only a certain type of claims or to be limited to a specific purpose. However, the disadvantages of having disputes under the same contract allocated to different jurisdictions are substantial. Therefore, if an arbitration clause is broad, only the most forceful evidence of a purpose to exclude the claim from arbitration can prevail, particularly where the exclusion is vague.[21]

While the question of scope is addressed by the Convention, the question of the contents of the arbitration agreement is not. Sometimes parties, particularly in certain trades, use "short form" arbitration clauses in their contracts, which only indicate minimum parameters for their chosen dispute resolution procedure. The courts will need to analyse whether, even with minimum parameters, it is clear that the parties wish to arbitrate their dispute, and there is enough information to ascertain what the parties have consented to in that respect (e.g., what arbitral institution, if any; what place of arbitration, if meant to be designated).

20. *United Kingdom*: House of Lords, 17 October 2007 (*Fili Shipping Company Limited (14th Claimant) and others v. Premium Nafta Products Limited (20th Defendant) and others*) [2007] UKHL 40, para. 12; *Yearbook* XXXII (2007) pp. 654-682 at [45] (UK no. 77).
21. *Cf. United States*: United States District Court, Eastern District of Pennsylvania, Civil Action no. 17-5399, 22 August 2018 (*PDC Machines Inc. v. NEL Hydrogen A/S (formerly known as H2 Logic A/S et al.)*), *Yearbook* XLIV (2019) (US no. 979), deciding that a broadly worded arbitration clause in a cooperation agreement did not cover disputes arising under a related prior non-disclosure agreement because the terms of the cooperation agreement did not expressly refer to the earlier non-disclosure agreement, while the earlier non-disclosure agreement contained an entire agreement clause.

3. The Subject Matter of the Dispute Must Be Arbitrable ("Capable of Settlement by Arbitration")

Having ascertained that there is a dispute between the parties arising out of a legal relationship that the parties intended to submit to arbitration, the court cannot recognize or enforce the arbitration agreement if the agreement concerns a subject matter that is not arbitrable, i.e., a matter that is not "capable of settlement by arbitration" for the purposes of Article II(1).

The Convention's terms are generally accepted as referring to those matters deemed non-"arbitrable" because they belong exclusively to the domain of the courts. Each State decides which matters may or may not be resolved by arbitration in accordance with its own political, social, and economic policy. Classic examples include domestic relations (divorces, paternity disputes...), criminal offences, labour or employment claims, bankruptcy, tax controversies, etc. However, the domain of non-arbitrable matters has shrunk considerably over time because of the growing acceptance of arbitration. It is now not exceptional for certain aspects of employment claims or claims relating to a bankruptcy to be arbitrable.

Moreover, many leading jurisdictions recognize a distinction between purely domestic arbitrations and those that are of an international nature and allow a broader scope of arbitrability with respect to the latter.

The US courts have used the term "arbitrability" in a starkly different sense. Whereas most national legal systems understand the "non-arbitrability" criterion as relating to the character of the dispute's *general* subject matter, the US courts qualify a dispute as "arbitrable" or "non-arbitrable" based upon issues *specific* to the parties' individual dispute – including, e.g., the existence, validity, and scope of an arbitration agreement.[22] Lawyers and judges should

22. E.g., *First Options of Chicago, Inc. v. Kaplan*, 514 U.S. 938, 944-947 (1995).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

keep this terminological distinction carefully in mind to avoid confusion when analysing US court decisions.

a. The Law Applicable to Determine Arbitrability

Article II(1) is silent on the issue of the law under which arbitrability is to be determined, leaving it to the court to decide this issue.

As regards arbitrability at the early stage of a dispute, courts may choose between several options, including the *lex fori* (the court's own national standards of arbitrability); the law of the arbitral seat; the law governing the parties' arbitration agreement; the law governing the party involved, where the agreement is with a State or State entity; or the law of the place where the award will be enforced.

In practice, the most suitable and least problematic solution is the application of the *lex fori*. This option is the most suitable (as long as the court would have jurisdiction in the absence of an arbitration agreement) under the Convention since this approach accords with Article V(2)(*a*), which provides for the application of the standards of arbitrability of the *lex fori* in relation to the enforcement of awards. And it is the least problematic as the application of the alternative solutions is comparatively more difficult: the standards of arbitrability by domestic courts are not always contained in statutes but rather set forth by case law, implying a thorough inquiry of foreign legal orders.

In cases involving a State as party, it is now becoming generally accepted that the State may not invoke its own law on the non-arbitrability of the subject matter.[23]

23. The Swiss Private International Law Act, Article 177(2) provides:

> "A State, or an enterprise held by or an organization controlled by a State, that is party to an arbitration agreement, may not invoke its own law to contest its capacity to arbitrate or the arbitrability of a dispute covered by the arbitration agreement."

b. International Arbitration Agreements Should Be Subject to Consistent Standards of Arbitrability

In any event, arbitrability standards should be interpreted taking into account the presumptive validity of international arbitration agreements enshrined in the Convention. (The presumptive validity is discussed in this Chapter, C.4 below.) Accordingly, not all non-arbitrability exceptions that may succeed regarding purely domestic arbitration agreements may be usefully invoked against international arbitration agreements.

There is no universal criterion to distinguish between domestic and international arbitration agreements. Some laws contain formal definitions (such as diversity of nationalities); others refer more intuitively to "international transactions" without further definition.

4. The Arbitration Agreement Must Be Formally and Substantively Valid

Article II(1) states that the arbitration agreement should be "in writing". This requirement is defined in Article II(2) as including "an arbitral clause in a contract or an arbitration agreement, signed by the parties or contained in an exchange of letters or telegrams". This writing requirement speaks to the formal validity of the arbitration agreement under the Convention.

As any other contracts, arbitration agreements are also subject to rules of formation and substantive validity. This is summarily suggested by Article II(3), which provides that a court should comply with a request for referral to arbitration unless it finds that the putative arbitration agreement is "null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed".

These questions of formal and substantive validity will be discussed in more detail below. The courts, when examining validity, should keep in mind that arbitration agreements that come within the scope of the Convention are presumed valid. The drafters of the Convention

intended to eliminate the possibility for a party to an arbitration agreement to go back on its commitment to arbitrate and instead submit the dispute to State courts. Accordingly, the Convention sets forth a "pro-enforcement", "pro-arbitration" regime which rests on the presumptive validity – formal and substantive – of arbitration agreements ("Each Contracting State *shall recognize* an agreement in writing ..."). This presumptive validity can only be reversed on a limited number of grounds ("... *unless* it finds that *the said agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed*").

The pro-enforcement bias means that the New York Convention supersedes less favourable national legislation. Courts may not apply stricter requirements under their national law for the validity of the arbitration agreement (such as, for example, the requirement that the arbitration clause in a contract be signed separately).

In this respect, practice shows that courts generally follow a guiding principle that an arbitration agreement is valid where it can be reasonably asserted that the offer to arbitrate – in writing – was accepted (that there has been a "meeting of the minds"). This acceptance may be expressed in different ways and is fact specific.

a. Formal Validity: The Arbitration Agreement Must Be "In Writing"

Enforcement of an arbitration agreement cannot proceed under the Convention if the writing requirement set out in Article II is not met. Article II(2) defines an agreement in writing as "an arbitral clause in a contract or an arbitration agreement, signed by the parties or contained in an exchange of letters or telegrams".

It is clear that an arbitration agreement signed by both parties or an arbitration clause incorporated into a signed contract satisfies the writing requirement. There is no need for a separate signing of the arbitration clause.

In addition, under Article II(2) an arbitration agreement contained in an exchange of letters, telegrams or similar communications meets the written form. In this case, and as opposed to the first part of Article

II(2) – which refers to an "arbitral clause in a contract or an arbitration agreement, signed by the parties" – there is no requirement that the letters and telegrams be signed.

The Convention sets a uniform international rule. Its drafters sought to reach consensus on a matter on which national legislations had – and still have – different approaches, by establishing a comparatively liberal substantive rule on the writing requirement, which prevails over domestic laws.

Article II(2) thus sets a "maximum" standard that precludes Contracting States from requiring additional or more demanding formal requirements under national law. Examples of more demanding requirements include using a particular typeface or size for the arbitration agreement, memorializing the agreement in a public deed or including a separate signature, etc.

In addition to establishing a maximum standard, Article II(2) used to be construed as also imposing a minimum international requirement, according to which courts were not entitled to require less than provided for the written form under the Convention. However, this is no longer the general understanding.

Following current international trade practices, Article II(2) has been increasingly understood as not precluding the application of less stringent standards of form by Contracting States.

This reading finds support in Article VII(1). As mentioned above in Chapter 1, Article VII(1) is intended to allow the application of any national or international provisions that may be more favourable to any interested party. Although this provision was adopted in relation to the enforcement of arbitral awards, there is a trend toward applying it to arbitration agreements as well. This approach, however, is not universally accepted, in particular as the more-favourable-right provision of Article VII(1) is seen by some courts as a provision allowing them to opt out of the Convention in favour of domestic law, but not to cherry-pick between the Convention and domestic law.

Therefore, many courts have sought to meet the modern demands of international trade not by dispensing with Article II(2) altogether but

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

rather by interpreting it expansively – readily accepting that there is an agreement in writing – or reading it as merely setting out some examples of what is an agreement "in writing" within the meaning of Article II(1) (on Article VII(1), see Chapter 1 at E.4)

Both of these approaches regarding Article II(2) have been endorsed by UNCITRAL in its Recommendation of 7 July 2006 (see **Annex III** to this Guide). UNCITRAL recommended that

> "article VII, paragraph 1 of the [Convention] should be applied to allow any interested party to avail itself of rights it may have, under the law or treaties of the country where an arbitration agreement is sought to be relied upon, to seek recognition of the validity of such an arbitration agreement"

and that

> "article II, paragraph 2, of the [Convention] be applied as recognizing that the circumstances described therein are not exhaustive".

In all events, it is now understood that an inflexible application of the Convention's writing requirement would contradict the current and widespread business usages and be contrary to the pro-enforcement thrust of the Convention.

Despite the widespread trend to apply the "in writing" requirement under the Convention liberally, there are settings where the formal validity of arbitration agreements may be challenged. Some common situations are discussed below.

1. Arbitration clause included in a document referred to in the main contractual document (incorporation by reference)

It is common in practice that the main contractual document refers to standard terms and conditions or other standard forms, which may contain an arbitration clause.

The Convention is silent on this matter. There is no explicit indication whether arbitration clauses incorporated by reference comply with the formal requirement established in Article II.

The solution to this issue should be case-specific, but certain criteria should be considered, such as: the status of the parties (for example, whether they are experienced businesspersons); trade usages of the specific industry; whether the main contract explicitly refers to the arbitration clause in standard terms and conditions; and whether the document containing the arbitration clause was communicated to the other party prior to or at the time of the conclusion of the contract.

If, after applying these criteria, it is evident that the parties were or should have been aware of the existence of an arbitration agreement incorporated by reference, courts have been generally inclined to uphold the formal validity of the arbitration agreement.

For example, arbitration clauses may be considered as agreed when they are contained in tender documents referred to in standard terms and conditions,[24] or in standard terms and conditions referred to in purchase orders – provided that the former have been attached or form part of the latter.[25]

24. *France*: Cour d'Appel, Paris, 26 March 1991 (*Comité Populaire de la Municipalité d'El Mergeb v. Société Dalico Contractors*) Revue de l'Arbitrage 1991, p. 456.
25. *United States*: United States District Court, Western District of Washington, 19 May 2000 (*Richard Bothell and Justin Bothell/Atlas v. Hitachi, et al.*, 19 May 2000, 97 F.Supp.2d. 939 (W.D. Wash. 2000); *Yearbook* XXVI (2001) pp. 939-948 (US no. 342).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Courts have diverging opinions on whether a reference in a bill of lading to a charter-party containing an arbitration agreement is sufficient. Here too, the recommended criterion is whether the parties were or should have been aware of the arbitration agreement. If the bill of lading specifically mentions the arbitration clause in the charter-party, it is generally considered sufficient.[26] Courts have been less often willing to consider a general reference to the charter-party sufficient.[27]

2. Arbitration clause in contractual document not signed but subsequently accepted

Here, consent to arbitration must be established in the light of the circumstances of the case, depending on how the subsequent acceptance is carried out.

For instance, it may be that a contract containing an arbitration clause is accepted in writing with general reservations or conditions subsequent. In such case, it is reasonably safe to assume that the arbitration agreement can be upheld in so far as it has not been expressly objected to, and there is a writing that evidences the parties' agreement to arbitrate. Indeed, absent specific language to the contrary, neither general reservations nor potential conditions subsequent (e.g.,

26. *Cf. Spain*: Audencia Territorial, Barcelona, 9 April 1987 (*Parties not indicated*) 5 Revista de la Corte Española de Arbitraje (1988-1989); *Yearbook* XXI (1996) pp. 671-672 (Spain no. 25), deciding that a general reference in a bill of lading does not validly incorporate the arbitration clause contained in the charter party.
27. *United States*: United States District Court, Southern District of New York, 18 August 1977 (*Coastal States Trading, Inc. v. Zenith Navigation SA and Sea King Corporation*), *Yearbook* IV (1979) pp. 329-331 (US no. 19) and United States District Court, Northern District of Georgia, Atlanta Division, 3 April 2007 (*Interested Underwriters at Lloyd's and Thai Tokai v. M/T SAN SEBASTIAN and Oilmar Co. Ltd.*) 508 F.Supp.2d (N.D. GA. 2007) p. 1243; *Yearbook* XXXIII (2008) pp. 935-943 (US no. 619).

stipulations such as "this confirmation is subject to details") affect the arbitration clause.[28]

It is increasingly the case that the courts are faced with arbitration agreements concluded in the context of investment arbitrations, where the State provides a standing offer to arbitrate in a treaty, which an investor subsequently accepts in writing when it files its request for arbitration. There is no debate that this satisfies Article II's writing requirement.[29]

3. No tacit acceptance

By contrast, if a contract containing an arbitration clause is sent from one party to another, and the latter does not reply but performs the contract, this raises the issue of tacit consent or implied acceptance to arbitration. Such a situation arises frequently in modern business practices, where economic operations are often carried out on the basis of summary documents, such as purchase orders or booking notes, that do not necessarily require a written reply from the other party.

In principle, tacit acceptance does not meet the writing requirement under the Convention, and some courts have endorsed this view.[30] However, in line with the understanding that the Convention should be interpreted in the context of evolving international trade practices, some courts have held that tacit acceptance of an offer made in writing (e.g.,

28. *United States*: United States Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, 15 February 2001 (*US Titan Inc. v. Guangzhou ZhenHua Shipping Co.*) 241 F.3d (2nd Cir. 2001) p. 135; *Yearbook* XXVI (2001) pp. 1052-1065 (US no. 354).
29. See, e.g., *United States*: United States Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, 17 March 2011 (*Republic of Ecuador v. Chevron Corporation, et al.*), *Yearbook* XXXVI (2011) (US no. 737).
30. See, e.g., *Germany*: Oberlandesgericht, Frankfurt am Main, 26 June 2006 (*Manufacturer v. Buyer*) IHR 2007 pp. 42-44; *Yearbook* XXXII (2007) pp. 351-357 (Germany no. 103).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

through performance of contractual obligation[31] or the application of trade usages that allow for the tacit conclusion of an arbitration agreement[32]) should be considered sufficient for purposes of Article II(2). These latter decisions also could have been decided by opting out of the Convention through its Article VII(1) to benefit from more favourable domestic law regarding the writing requirement.

In this respect, in 2006, UNCITRAL amended Article 7 (Definition and form of the arbitration agreement) of its Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration (see **Annex II** to this Guide), providing two Options. Option I introduced a flexible definition of an agreement in writing:

> "Article 7(3). An arbitration agreement is in writing if its content is recorded in any form, whether or not the arbitration agreement or contract has been concluded orally, *by conduct*, or by other means."

This definition recognizes a record of the "contents" of the agreement "in any form" as equivalent to traditional writing. The written form is still needed.

Option II eliminated the writing requirement.

In addition, as noted, UNCITRAL has recommended that Article II(2) of the New York Convention be applied "recognizing that the circumstances described therein are not exhaustive" (see this Chapter above at D.2.a and **Annex II** to this Guide).

Although these options and recommendations do not have a direct impact on the Convention, they: (i) are an indication of a trend toward a liberal reading of the Convention's requirement; and (ii) reflect an evolution of the domestic arbitration laws of many countries that have

31. *United States*: United States District Court, Southern District of New York, 6 August 1997 (*Kahn Lucas Lancaster, Inc. v. Lark International Ltd.*), *Yearbook* XXIII (1998) pp. 1029-1037 (US no. 257).
32. *Germany*: Bundesgerichtshof, 3 December 1992 (*Buyer v. Seller*), *Yearbook* XX (1995) pp. 666-670 (Germany no. 42).

adopted the UNCITRAL Model Law, which can be invoked through the more-favourable-right provision of Article VII(1) of the Convention.

4. Arbitration agreement contained in exchange of electronic communications

The wording of Article II(2) was intended to cover the means of communication that existed in 1958. It can be reasonably construed as covering equivalent modern means of communication. The criterion is that there should be record in writing of the arbitration agreement. All means of communication that fulfil this criterion should then be deemed as complying with Article II(2), including electronic communications.

With respect to electronic communications, the UNCITRAL Model Law adopts the following approach:

> "The requirement that an arbitration agreement be in writing is met by an electronic communication if the information contained therein is accessible so as to be useable for subsequent reference."

b. Substantive Validity: The Arbitration Agreement is Not "Null and Void, Inoperable, or Incapable of Being Performed"

The terms "null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed" were not addressed by the drafters. The following developments aim at giving a meaning to those terms.

1. Law applicable to the substantive validity of the arbitration agreement

Article V(1)(*a*) refers to the law to which the parties have subjected the arbitration agreement as the law applicable to its validity (see Chapter 3). In practice, however, parties rarely choose beforehand the law to govern the formation and substantive validity of their arbitration agreement. This determination is therefore to be made by the court

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

seised of a challenge thereto. There are several possibilities but some of the most commonly adopted solutions are either (as mentioned in the Convention) the law of the arbitral seat which may be in a country other than that of the court (Article V(1)(*a*) second rule, by analogy), the *lex fori* or the law governing the contract as a whole. In 2020, the UK Supreme Court determined that where the parties have not specified the law applicable to the arbitration agreement, the law chosen by the parties to govern a contract containing the arbitration clause will generally govern the arbitration agreement as well.[33] Some jurisdictions have also upheld the validity of an arbitration agreement without reference to any national law, referring instead exclusively to the parties' common intention. In general, the driving force behind the choice of the substantive law appears to be the one more favourable to the validity of the arbitration agreement.[34]

2. "Null and void"

The "null and void" exception can be interpreted as referring to cases in which the arbitration agreement is affected by some invalidity from the outset. Typical examples of defences falling within this category include unconscionability, illegality or mistake. Defects in the formation of the arbitration agreement such as incapacity or lack of power should also be included (see also Chapter 3 at D.1, Article V(1)(*a*) incapacity).

33. *United Kingdom*: Supreme Court (*Enka Insaat ve Sanayi AS v. OOO Insurance Company Chubb*) [2020] UKSC 38.
34. A formulation of this approach is set out in Article 178(2) of the Swiss Private International Law Act which provides:

    "As to substance, the arbitration agreement shall be valid if it complies with the requirements of the law chosen by the parties or the law governing the object of the dispute and, in particular, the law applicable to the principal contract, or with Swiss law."

If the court accepts the severability principle (see this Chapter above at B.1), only the invalidity of the arbitration agreement, rather than the invalidity of the main contract, would prevent the court from referring the parties to arbitration. By way of example, a contract the subject matter of which is the sharing of a market in violation of competition rules is illegal. However, such illegality does not affect the consent to submit related disputes to arbitration as expressed in an arbitration clause contained in the contract. This being said, defences such as fraud or fraudulent inducement, or duress, which speak to whether a party could have consented at all to arbitration, may more readily be decided by the courts directly.

3. "Inoperative"

An inoperative arbitration agreement for the purposes of Article II(3) is an arbitration agreement that was at one time valid but that has ceased to have effect.

The "inoperative" exception typically includes cases of waiver, revocation, repudiation or termination of the arbitration agreement. Similarly, the arbitration agreement should be deemed inoperative if the same dispute between the same parties has already been decided before a court or an arbitral tribunal (*res judicata* or *ne bis in idem*).

For example, the Italian Supreme Court decided that the Italian courts had jurisdiction over a dispute notwithstanding the arbitration clause in the contract because, due to the embargo declared against Iraq, the parties could no longer freely dispose of the underlying contractual rights at the relevant time of filing of the first instance action.[35]

35. *Italy*: Supreme Court of Cassation of Italy, Case no. 23893, 24 November 2015 (*Government and Ministries of the Republic of Iraq v. Armamenti e Aerospazio SpA et al.*), *Yearbook* XLI (2016) p. 503 (Italy no. 189). Although the Supreme Court framed its decision as an analysis as to whether the arbitration clause was "null and void" because the dispute had become non-arbitrable, the facts appear to align with the question of the clause's inoperability.

4. "Incapable of being performed"

This defence includes cases where the arbitration cannot proceed due to physical or legal impediments.

Physical impediments to proceeding with arbitration cover very few situations such as the death of an arbitrator named in the arbitration agreement or the arbitrator's refusal to accept the appointment, when replacement was clearly excluded by the parties. Depending on the particular provisions of the applicable law, these cases could lead to the impossibility of performing the arbitration agreement.

Much more frequently, arbitration clauses may be so badly drafted as to legally impede the commencement of arbitration proceedings. These clauses are usually referred to as "pathological". Strictly speaking, such arbitration agreements are actually null and void and it is often this ground that is raised in court. Such clauses should be interpreted according to the same law as that governing the formation and substantive validity of the arbitration agreement.

The following scenarios are frequent in practice.

(i) Where the referral to arbitration is optional

Some arbitration agreements stipulate that the parties "may" or "can" refer their disputes to arbitration. Such permissive words make it uncertain if the parties intended to refer their disputes to arbitration.

Such arbitration clauses should nonetheless be upheld, in keeping with the general principle of interpretation according to which contract terms shall be interpreted so as to give effect to all the terms rather than to deprive some of them of effect.

(ii) Where the contract provides for arbitration as well as jurisdiction of the courts

In such cases, it is sometimes possible to reconcile both stipulations and uphold the arbitration agreement. To achieve this the court must establish the parties' true intention. In particular, the parties should be referred to arbitration only if they indeed wished to have their disputes

settled by that means, whether or not in combination with another dispute-resolution mechanism.

For example, the Singapore High Court held that an agreement that "irrevocably" submitted to the jurisdiction of the courts of Singapore was not, upon a proper construction, necessarily irreconcilable with another clause of the same contract that provided for arbitration. The Court found that the parties did intend to have their disputes decided by arbitration and that the reference to Singaporean jurisdiction operated in parallel by identifying the supervisory court of the arbitration (the *lex arbitri*).[36]

Such interpretation follows the general principle according to which contract terms shall be interpreted to give them effect.

By contrast, the Swiss Federal Tribunal decided that there was no valid arbitration agreement where the clause at issue provided for disputes be referred to AAA arbitration or "to any other US court". The Federal Tribunal considered it irrelevant that the clause was headed "Arbitration" and referred to the rules of the AAA, as no clear intent to arbitrate could be ascertained.[37]

(iii) Where the dispute resolution clause foresees steps prior to arbitration

Parties are increasingly including "escalation" or "tiered" clauses in their contracts, which foresee them taking steps to, for instance, negotiate or mediate (or both) before resorting to arbitration. The courts may be called upon to decide whether the pre-arbitral steps have been complied with and, if not, whether this precludes referring the parties to arbitration. Practice shows that these clauses must be very specific and leave no doubt about whether the pre-arbitral steps are mandatory for courts to enforce them. Even when the language is clear, many courts have considered that these pre-arbitral steps are a jurisdictional

36. *Singapore*: High Court, 12 January 2009 (*P.T. Tri-M.G. Intra Asia Airlines v. Norse Air Charter Limited*), *Yearbook* XXXIV (2009) pp. 758-782 (Singapore no. 7).
37. *Switzerland*: Bundesgerichtshof, 25 October 2010 (*X Holding AG et al. v. Y Investments NV*), *Yearbook* XXXVI (2011) p. 343 (Switzerland no. 43).

question that the arbitrators should decide pursuant to the competence-competence principle or are a question of admissibility instead of jurisdiction that, in all events, is for the arbitrators to decide.

Similarly, in the investment arbitration context, investment treaties often provide for a period during which the State and investor must negotiate before the investor can file for arbitration (known as the "cooling off period") or may include a provision whereby the investor must pursue its claims for a certain period before the State's courts before resorting to arbitration. Some courts have characterized the local litigation requirement as a pre-arbitration "condition precedent" that was procedural in nature, such that any determination regarding compliance with the condition was a matter for the arbitrators, not the courts.

(iv) Where the arbitration rules or arbitral institution are inaccurately designated

In some cases the inaccuracy of a clause makes it impossible for the court to determine the arbitral forum chosen by the parties. The arbitration cannot proceed and the court should then assume jurisdiction over the dispute.

For example, the Supreme Court of the Republic of Belarus decided that there was no valid arbitration agreement in the case before it when the wording of the arbitration clause – which referred to the "Arbitral Centre of the Federal Economic Chamber, Vienna, in accordance with its Rules" – failed to identify the competent arbitration institute and applicable rules, as it appeared from the Internet that there were two distinct institutes, operating under distinct rules, at the same Vienna address: the International Arbitration Centre of the Austrian Federal Economic Chamber and the Vienna International Arbitral Centre.[38]

In some other cases, however, the inaccuracy may be overcome by reasonable interpretation of the clause. Alternatively, courts may rescue

38. *Belarus*: Supreme Court of the Republic of Belarus, Judicial Chamber on Economic Cases, Case no. 189-6/2019/64A/336K, 7 April 2020 (*"D" UAB v. "S" LLC*), *Yearbook* XLVI (2021) p. 232 (Belarus no. 3).

a pathological clause by severing a provision that makes it unenforceable, while still retaining enough of the agreement to put the arbitration into operation.

For example, the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Wisconsin examined an arbitration agreement providing (in the English version) that disputes be arbitrated in Singapore "in accordance with the then prevailing Rules of the International Arbitration" and (in the Chinese version) that arbitration would be conducted "at the Singapore International Arbitration Institution".[39] The Court read this to mean the "well-known arbitration organization known as the Singapore International Arbitration Centre".

(v) Where there is no indication whatsoever as to how the arbitrators are to be appointed ("short form clauses")

It may happen that an arbitration clause uses language such as "General/average arbitration, if any, in London in the usual manner".

In general, such a clause should be upheld only in so far as it contains a detail likely to link the short form clause to a country whose courts are able to provide support for the arbitration to commence.

Such a "linking detail" can be found in the example given above. The parties could apply to the English courts to have the arbitrators appointed. The short form clause could also be upheld if "the usual manner" referred to allows identification of the elements necessary to trigger the commencement of arbitration. The expression "usual manner" may indeed be interpreted as a reference to past practices among members of the same commodity or trade association, thus suggesting the application of the arbitration rules of this association, if any.

In the absence of any "linking detail", short form clauses could not be upheld.

39. *United States*: United States District Court, Eastern District of Wisconsin, 24 September 2008 (*Slinger Mfg. Co., Inc. v. Nemak, S.A., et al.*), *Yearbook* XXXIV (2009) pp. 976-985 (US no. 656).

5. The Arbitration Agreement Must Be Binding on the Parties to the Dispute That Is Before the Court (Non-Signatories)

In practice, courts may find themselves in situations where they are asked to refer to arbitration parties that are not signatories to the arbitration agreement: either because they wish to be referred to arbitration, or because another party is seeking to refer them to arbitration. Accordingly, the courts must determine whether the non-signatory may be deemed a party to the "original" arbitration agreement and, if so, whether the Convention's requirements are met with respect to that party.

a. Formal Validity: Needs Not Be Re-examined With Respect to Non-Signatories

The question arises whether binding a non-signatory to an arbitration agreement could be read as conflicting with the writing requirement set out in the Convention. The answer is "probably not". A number of reasons support this view.

The question of formal validity is independent of the assessment of the parties to the arbitration agreement, which concerns the merits and is not subject to form requirements. Once it is determined that a formally valid arbitration agreement exists, it is a different step to establish the parties which are bound by it. Third parties not explicitly mentioned in an arbitration agreement made in writing may enter into its *ratione personae* scope. Furthermore, the Convention does not prevent consent to arbitrate from being provided by a person on behalf of another, a notion which is at the root of the theories of implied consent. Courts sometimes also look to domestic legal doctrines to determine who should be considered the signatories to the arbitration agreement.[40]

40. *United States*: Supreme Court of the United States, no. 18–1048, 1 June 2020 (*GE Energy Power Conversion France SAS, Corp., F.K.A. Converteam SAS v. Outokumpu Stainless USA, LLC et al.*), *Yearbook* XLV (2020) (US no. 1004).

b. Substantive Validity: The Non-Signatory Must Come Within the Subjective Scope of the Arbitration Agreement

The doctrine of privity of contracts applies to arbitration agreements. It means that an arbitration agreement only confers rights and imposes obligations on the parties to it. The scope of the arbitration agreement with respect to parties will be referred to as the "subjective" scope.

Article II(3) implicitly requires the court to determine the subjective scope of an arbitration agreement when it states that "[t]he court of a Contracting State, when seised of an action in a *matter in respect of which the parties have made an agreement* within the meaning of this Article ..." shall refer the parties to arbitration.

The subjective scope of a contract cannot be defined solely with regard to the signatories of an arbitration agreement. Non-signatories may also assume the rights and obligations arising under a contract. Various legal bases may be applied to bind a non-signatory to an arbitration agreement. A first group includes theories of implied consent, third-party beneficiaries, guarantors, assignment, succession, and other transfer mechanisms of contractual rights. These theories rely on the parties' discernable intentions and, to a large extent, on good faith principles. They apply to private as well as public legal entities. A second group includes the legal doctrines of agent-principal relationships, apparent authority, veil piercing (alter ego), joint venture relations, the group of companies theory, and estoppel. They do not rely on the parties' intention but rather on the force of the applicable law.

1. The law applicable to determining the subjective scope of the arbitration agreement

To decide whether a non-signatory is bound by an arbitration agreement, the matter should be addressed pursuant to the law governing the arbitration agreement. As discussed above, in the absence of an agreement between the parties on the matter, it is generally understood that the arbitration agreement should be governed by the law of the seat

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

of the arbitration or the law governing the underlying contract as a whole or in some cases the *lex fori*. However, some court decisions have approached the issue through the application of international principles or *lex mercatoria*, considering it mainly as a matter of fact and evidence (see this Chapter above at C.4.b.1).

2. When a non-signatory can be referred to arbitration

The answer is case-specific. A court facing this question should analyse the issue under the circumstances and decide within that context whether it is arguable or not that a non-signatory may be bound by the arbitration agreement. If it is, the most preferable course of action is to refer the parties to arbitration and let the arbitral tribunal examine and rule on the matter. Courts would be able to review the arbitral panel's decision regarding the incorporation of a non-signatory to the arbitration at the stage of setting aside or enforcement of the award.

Courts have upheld the referral to arbitration of disputes involving non-signatories on the ground that the dispute between a signatory and a non-signatory appeared *sufficiently* connected to the interpretation or execution of a contract of the signatory that contained an arbitration clause. Accordingly, such dispute was held as *arguably* falling under the material scope of the arbitration clause.

In the United States Court of Appeals for the First Circuit's case of *Sourcing Unlimited Inc. v. Asimco International Inc.,*[41] Sourcing Unlimited (Jumpsource) had entered into a written partnership agreement with ATL to split production of mechanical parts and share profits accordingly. Asimco was a subsidiary of ATL and both had the same Chairman. The agreement provided for arbitration in China. The relationship soured and Jumpsource filed suit against Asimco and its Chairman in United States courts notably charging Asimco with

41. *United States*: United States Court of Appeals, First Circuit, 22 May 2008 (*Sourcing Unlimited Inc. v. Asimco International Inc. and John F. Perkowski*), 526 F.3d 38, para. 9; *Yearbook* XXXIII (2008) pp. 1163-1171 (US no. 643).

intentional interference with contractual and fiduciary relationships between itself and ATL. The respondents filed a request to refer the dispute to arbitration. They contended that although they were not signatories to the partnership agreement, Jumpsource's claim against them should be heard by an arbitral tribunal as the issues it sought to litigate clearly arose from the partnership agreement. The Court upheld the request. It held that "[t]he present dispute is *sufficiently intertwined* with the Jumpsource-ATL Agreement for application of estoppel to be appropriate". (Emphasis added)

D. WHEN THE REQUIREMENTS FOR ENFORCING AN ARBITRATION AGREEMENT ARE MET, THE COURT SHALL "REFER THE PARTIES TO ARBITRATION", "AT THE REQUEST OF ONE OF THE PARTIES"

When the court finds that there is a valid arbitration agreement, it shall refer the parties to arbitration, at the request of one of the parties, instead of resolving the dispute itself. This enforcement mechanism is provided for by Article II(3). The Convention was intended to leave no discretion to courts in this respect.

1. How to "Refer" Parties to Arbitration

The "referral to arbitration" is to be understood as meaning either a stay of the court proceedings pending arbitration or the dismissal of the claim for lack of jurisdiction, in accordance with national arbitration or procedural law.

2. No *Ex Officio* Referral

A court shall only refer the parties to arbitration "*at the request of one of the parties*", which excludes this being done on the court's own motion.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

3. Options Available to the Court If It Finds That a Party Should Not Be Referred to Arbitration

Particularly in the case of non-signatories, if the court is not satisfied that a party ought to be referred to arbitration, it has to decide whether to refer the other parties to the arbitration agreement to arbitration while assuming jurisdiction over the remaining party – or, conversely, to assume jurisdiction over the entire dispute.

Indeed, the concern that may be raised is that the referral to arbitration of the relevant parties could "split" the resolution of the case between two forums, with the risk of each forum reaching different conclusions on the same matters of fact and law.

In early cases, some Italian courts found that when a dispute involved parties to an arbitration agreement as well as third parties (which the court considered not bound by the arbitration agreement) with connected claims, the jurisdiction of the court "absorbed" the entire dispute and the arbitration agreement became "incapable of being performed". This approach – the so-called *vis atractiva* of the court proceedings – was explicitly ruled out by the 1994 Italian arbitration law reform; it did and does not reflect a universal approach.[42]

Article II(3) compels a court to refer the parties to an arbitration agreement to the arbitral forum chosen, when requested to do so, provided that the conditions of Article II(3) are met. Accordingly, upon a request of one party, a court would have limited room for not referring the parties who have signed the agreement to arbitration while assuming jurisdiction over the dispute with non-signatories.

42. *Austria*: Oberster Gerichtshof, 26 August 2008 (*R GmbH v. O B.V. et al.*), *Yearbook* XXXIV (2009) pp. 404-408 (Austria no. 19).

E. SUMMARY

Based on the concise overview of the Convention's regime on enforcement of arbitration agreements, the following summary principles apply with respect to arbitration agreements falling within the scope of the Convention:

1. The Convention has been established to promote the settlement of international disputes by arbitration. It has laid down a "pro-enforcement", "pro-arbitration" regime.
2. The court should verify the existence of a dispute between the parties.
3. The subject matter of the dispute must be arbitrable. Non-arbitrability is not directly governed by the Convention, but deferred to the national law regimes. However, exceptions of non-arbitrability should be admitted restrictively.
4. An arbitration agreement should be held formally valid when the court is reasonably satisfied that an offer to arbitrate – made in writing – was met with acceptance by the other party. The Convention sets out a maximum uniform standard of form. However, the court may apply less stringent national standards than those laid down in Article II.
5. Regarding substantive validity, courts should allow only a limited number of national law defences of non-existence and invalidity.
6. An arbitration agreement may be binding on non-signatories.

CHAPTER 3
REQUEST FOR THE RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF AN ARBITRAL AWARD

TABLE OF CONTENTS

A. INTRODUCTION
B. PHASE I – REQUIREMENTS TO BE FULFILLED BY PETITIONER (ARTICLE IV)
1. Which Documents?
2. Authenticated Award or Certified Copy (Article IV(1)(*a*))
   a. Authentication
   b. Certification
3. Original Arbitration Agreement or Certified Copy (Article IV(1)(*b*))
4. At the Time of the Application
5. Translations (Article IV(2))

C. PHASE II – GROUNDS FOR REFUSAL (ARTICLE V) – IN GENERAL
1. No Review on the Merits
2. Burden on Respondent to Prove the Exhaustive Grounds
3. Exhaustive Grounds for Refusal of Recognition and Enforcement
4. Narrow Interpretation of the Grounds for Refusal
5. Limited Discretionary Power to Enforce in the Presence of Grounds for Refusal
6. Issues Relating to Sovereign Immunity

D. GROUNDS FOR REFUSAL TO BE PROVEN BY RESPONDENT (ARTICLE V(1))
1. Ground 1: Incapacity of Party and Invalidity of Arbitration Agreement (Article V(1)(*a*))
   a. Incapacity of Party
   b. Invalidity of Arbitration Agreement

2. Ground 2: Lack of Notice and Due Process Violations; Right to a Fair Hearing (Article V(1)(*b*))
   a. Right to a Fair Hearing
   b. Lack of Notice
   c. Due Process Violations: "Unable to Present His Case"
3. Ground 3: Outside or Beyond the Scope of the Arbitration Agreement (Article V(1)(*c*))
4. Ground 4: Irregularities in the Composition of the Arbitral Tribunal or the Arbitration Procedure (Article V(1)(*d*))
   a. Composition of the Tribunal
   b. Arbitral Procedure
5. Ground 5: Award Not Binding, Set Aside or Suspended (Article V(1)(*e*))
   a. Award Not Yet Binding
   b. Award Set Aside or Suspended
      1. Award set aside
      2. Consequences of being set aside
      3. Award "suspended"

E. GROUNDS FOR REFUSAL TO BE RAISED BY THE COURT *EX OFFICIO* (ARTICLE V(2))
1. Ground 6: Not Arbitrable (Article V(2(*a*))
2. Ground 7: Contrary to Public Policy (Article V(2)(*b*))
   a. Examples of Recognition and Enforcement
   b. Examples of Refusal of Recognition and Enforcement

F. STAY OF ENFORCEMENT PENDING THE RESOLUTION OF ANNULMENT PROCEEDINGS (ARTICLE VI)

G. CONCLUSION

A. INTRODUCTION

Recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards may in principle be granted by courts anywhere. In countries outside the place where the award was made, enforcement is usually based on the New York

Convention. The legal effect of a recognition and enforcement of an award is in practice limited to the territory over which the granting court has jurisdiction.

National courts are required under Article III to recognize and enforce foreign awards in accordance with the rules of procedure of the territory where the application for recognition and enforcement is made (see Chapter 1) and in accordance with the conditions set out in the Convention.

National laws may apply three kinds of provisions to enforce awards:

- a specific text for the implementation of the New York Convention;
- a text dealing with international arbitration in particular;
- the general arbitration law of the country.

Article III obliges Contracting States to recognize Convention awards as binding unless they fall under one of the grounds for refusal defined in Article V. Courts may, however, enforce awards on an even more favourable basis (under Article VII(1), see Chapter 1). Examples of matters not regulated by the Convention and thus regulated by national law are:

- the competent court(s) to be seised with the application;
- production of evidence;
- limitation periods;
- conservatory measures;
- security for the costs of the recognition and enforcement process
- whether the grant or denial of recognition and enforcement is subject to any appeal or recourse;
- criteria for execution against assets;
- the extent to which the process of recognition and enforcement is confidential.

In any event, the imposition of jurisdictional requirements cannot be such as to amount to going back on a State's international obligation to enforce foreign awards (see Chapter 1 at F).

The Convention requires that no substantially more onerous conditions or higher fees or charges be imposed on the recognition or enforcement of arbitral awards to which the Convention applies than are imposed on the recognition or enforcement of domestic arbitral awards. This provision has not led to problems in practice and has been applied in respect of various aspects of enforcement.[43] The Supreme Court of Portugal held, for example, that under Article III a party seeking enforcement of a foreign award is not required to obtain prior recognition of that award, as there is no such requirement for domestic awards.[44]

The *rules of procedure* referred to in the New York Convention are limited to questions such as the form of the request and the competent authority for which the New York Convention defers to national law. The *conditions for the enforcement*, however, are those set out in the New York Convention itself and are exclusively governed by the Convention. These aspects will be examined in detail below. In sum, once a petitioner has submitted the documents as defined in Article IV, it is entitled to the recognition and enforcement of the award unless the respondent proves that one or more grounds for refusal of recognition and enforcement of the award as exhaustively set forth in Article V(1) applies or the court finds one of the grounds in Article V(2) to be applicable.

---

43. *Hong Kong*: Court of Appeal, 13 June 2011, 25 July 2011 and 11 August 2011 (*Shandong Hongri Acron Chemical Joint Stock Company Limited v. PetroChina International (Hong Kong) Corporation Limited*), *Yearbook* XXXVI (2011) pp. 287-292 (Hong Kong no. 25); *Netherlands*: Hoge Raad, First Chamber, 25 June 2010 (*OAO Rosneft v. Yukos Capital s.a.r.l.*), *Yearbook* XXXV (2010) pp. 423-426 (Netherlands no. 34).
44. *Portugal*: Supremo Tribunal de Justiça, Civil Section, 19 March 2009 (*S.A. (Belgium) v. B Sociedade Nacional, S.A.*), *Yearbook* XXXVI (2011) pp. 313-314 (Portugal no. 2).

The general rule to be followed by the courts is that the grounds for refusal defined in Article V are to be construed narrowly, which means that their existence is accepted in serious cases only. This is especially true with respect to claims of violation of public policy, which are often raised by disappointed parties but very seldom accepted by the courts. For example, although London is one of the great financial centres of the world, where parties often seek enforcement, only rarely has an English court rejected enforcement of a foreign award on the grounds of public policy (see this Chapter below at E.2).[45]

As of 2024 the ICCA *Yearbook Commercial Arbitration* in its forty-five years of reporting on the Convention has found that only in around ten per cent of the cases recognition and enforcement has been refused on Convention grounds.

Courts approach enforcement under the New York Convention with

– *a strong pro-enforcement bias* and
– *a pragmatic, flexible and non-formalistic approach*

This commendable liberal attitude fully capitalizes on the potential of this most successful treaty, to which 172 States are party, to serve and promote international trade (see the Overview at A.2).

B. PHASE I – REQUIREMENTS TO BE FULFILLED BY PETITIONER (ARTICLE IV)

At this phase of the proceedings, the petitioner has to submit together with the request for recognition and/or enforcement the documents listed in the New York Convention (Article IV). Phase I is controlled by a pro-enforcement bias and practical mindset of the enforcement court.

45. *United Kingdom*: High Court, Chancery Division, 25 October 2022 (*Chechetkin v. Payward Ltd and others*) [2022] EWHC 3057 (Ch).

1. Which Documents?

When reviewing a request for recognition and/or enforcement of the award, courts verify that the petitioner has submitted at the time of the application:

- The duly authenticated original award or a duly certified copy thereof (Article IV(1)(*a*));
- The original agreement referred to in Article II or a duly certified copy thereof (Article IV(1)(*b*)); and
- Translations of these documents into the language of the country in which the award is relied upon, where relevant (Article IV(2)).

2. Authenticated Award or Certified Copy (Article IV(1)(*a*))

a. Authentication

The authentication of an award is the process by which the signatures on it are confirmed as genuine by a competent authority. The purpose of the authentication of the original award or a certified copy of the award is to confirm that the award has been made by the appointed arbitrators. It is unusual that this poses any problem in practice.

The Convention does not specify the law governing the authentication requirement. Nor does it indicate whether the authentication requirements are those of the country where the award was rendered or those of the country where recognition or enforcement is sought. Most courts appear to accept any form of authentication in accordance with the law of either jurisdiction. The Austrian Supreme Court, in an early decision, expressly recognized that the authentication can be made either under the law of the country where the award was

made or under the law of the country where the enforcement of the award is sought.[46] Other enforcement courts apply their own law.[47]

The documents merely aim at proving the authenticity of the award and the fact that the award was made on the basis of an arbitration agreement defined in the Convention. For this reason, German courts hold that authentication is not required when the authenticity of the award is not disputed: see, e.g., two decisions of the Munich Court of Appeal.[48]

There have been only a few cases where a party has failed to satisfy these simple procedural requirements (e.g., in a 2003 case before the Spanish Supreme Court, the petitioner supplied only uncertified and non-authenticated copies of the award).[49] Courts may not require a party to submit any additional documents or use the procedural requirements as an obstacle to an application by interpreting them strictly.

b. Certification

The purpose of a certification is to confirm that the copy of the award is identical to the original. The Convention does not specify the law

46. See, e.g., *Austria*: Oberster Gerichtshof, 11 June 1969 (*Parties not indicated*), ICCA *Yearbook Commercial Arbitration* II (1977) p. 232 (Austria no. 3).
47. See, e.g., *Italy*: Corte di Cassazione, 14 March 1995, no. 2919 (*SODIME – Società Distillerie Meridionali v. Schuurmans & Van Ginneken BV*), *Yearbook* XXI (1996) pp. 607-609 (Italy no. 140); *Austria*: Oberster Gerichtshof, 3 September 2008 (*O Limited, et al. v. C Limited*), *Yearbook* XXXIV (2009) pp. 409-417 (Austria no. 20).
48. *Germany*: Oberlandesgericht, Munich, 17 December 2008 (*Seller v. German Assignee*), *Yearbook* XXXV (2010) pp. 359-361 (Germany no. 125) and Oberlandesgericht, Munich, 27 February 2009 (*Carrier v. German Customer*), *Yearbook* XXXV (2010) pp. 365-366 (Germany no. 127).
49. *Spain*: Tribunal Supremo, Civil Chamber, Plenary Session, 1 April 2003 (*Satico Shipping Company Limited v. Maderas Iglesias*), *Yearbook* XXXII (2007) pp. 582-590 (Spain no. 57).

governing the certification procedure, which is generally deemed to be governed by the *lex fori*.

The categories of persons authorized to certify the copy will usually be the same as the categories of persons who are authorized to authenticate an original award. In addition, certification by the Secretary-General of the arbitral institution that managed the arbitration is considered sufficient in most cases.

3. Original Arbitration Agreement or Certified Copy (Article IV(1)(*b*))

This provision merely requires that the party seeking enforcement supply a document that is *prima facie* a valid arbitration agreement. At this stage the court need not consider whether the agreement is "in writing" as provided by Article II(2) (see Chapter 2 at C.4.a.) or is valid under the applicable law.[50]

The substantive examination of the validity of the arbitration agreement and its compliance with Article II(2) of the Convention takes place during phase II of the recognition or enforcement proceedings (see this Chapter below at D.1, Article V(1)(*a*)).

It happens from time to time that a respondent argues that the petitioner has not shown that it has submitted a valid arbitration agreement. That argument misconceives the structure of the Convention: the burden of proof is not on the petitioner to show that the arbitration agreement is valid; rather, the burden of proof is on the respondent to demonstrate that the arbitration agreement as submitted is invalid (see Article V(1)(*a*)).

50. See, e.g., *Singapore*: Supreme Court of Singapore, High Court, 10 May 2006 (*Aloe Vera of America, Inc v. Asianic Food (S) Pte Ltd and Another*), *Yearbook* XXXII (2007) pp. 489-506 (Singapore no. 5).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

4. At the Time of the Application

If the documents are not submitted at the time of application, courts generally allow parties to cure this defect in the course of the enforcement proceedings, notwithstanding the mandatory language of "shall, at the time of application" in Article IV(1).[51]

Italian courts, however, consider that the submission of the documents is a prerequisite for commencing the recognition or enforcement proceedings and that if this condition is not met, the request will be declared inadmissible. This defect can be cured by filing a new application for enforcement.[52]

5. Translations (Article IV(2))

The party seeking recognition and/or enforcement of an award must produce a translation of the award and original arbitration agreement referred to in Article IV(1)(*a*) and (*b*) if they are not made in an official language of the country in which recognition and enforcement are being sought (Article IV(2)).

Courts tend to adopt a pragmatic approach. While the Convention does not expressly state that the translations must be produced at the time of making the application for recognition and enforcement, a number of courts have, however, required translation to be submitted at the time of making an application.

51. See, e.g., *Spain*: Tribunal Supremo, 6 April 1989 (*Sea Traders SA v. Participaciones, Proyectos y Estudios SA*), *Yearbook* XXI (1996) pp. 676-677 (Spain no. 27); *Austria*: Oberster Gerichtshof, 17 November 1965 (*Party from F.R. Germany v. Party from Austria*), *Yearbook* I (1976) p. 182 (Austria no. 1).
52. *Italy*: Corte di Cassazione, First Civil Chamber, 23 July 2009, no. 17291 (*Microware s.r.l. in liquidation v. Indicia Diagnostics S.A.*), *Yearbook* XXXV (2010) pp. 418-419 (Italy no. 182).

Examples of cases where a full translation was not required are:

– The President of the District Court of Amsterdam considered no translation of the award and arbitration agreement to be necessary because these documents were "drawn up in the English language which language we master sufficiently to have taken full cognizance thereof".[53]
– The Zurich Court of Appeal held that there is no need to supply a translation of the entire contract containing the arbitration clause; a translation of the part containing the arbitration clause suffices.[54] Note that construction contracts may exceed 1,000 pages in length, with annexes.

Examples of cases where a translation was required are:

– The Argentinian Federal Court of Appeals determined that a translation made by a private – rather than official or sworn – translator who was also not licensed to act in the Province where the enforcement proceeding was held did not satisfy the Convention's requirements.[55]
– The Austrian Supreme Court considered a case where the petitioner supplied a translation of only the dispositive section of the ICC award. It determined that the case should be remitted to

53. *Netherlands*: President, Rechtbank, Amsterdam, 12 July 1984 (*SPP (Middle East) Ltd. v. The Arab Republic of Egypt*), *Yearbook* X (1985) pp. 487-489 (Netherlands no. 10).
54. *Switzerland*: Bezirksgericht, Zurich, 14 February 2003 and Obergericht, Zurich, 17 July 2003 (*Italian Party v. Swiss Company*), *Yearbook* XXIX (2004) pp. 819-833 (Switzerland no. 37).
55. *Argentina*: Cámara Federal de Apelaciones, City of Mar del Plata, 4 December 2009 (*Far Eastern Shipping Company v. Arhenpez S.A.*), *Yearbook* XXXV (2010) pp. 318-320 (Argentina no. 3).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

the Court of First Instance to which the application for enforcement had been made so that this defect could be cured.[56]

C. PHASE II – GROUNDS FOR REFUSAL (ARTICLE V) – IN GENERAL

This phase is characterized by the following general principles:

- no review on the merits;
- burden on respondent of proving the exhaustive grounds;
- exhaustive grounds for refusal of recognition and enforcement;
- narrow interpretation of the grounds for refusal;
- limited discretionary power to grant the recognition and enforcement even if one of the grounds applies.

1. No Review on the Merits

The court does not have the authority to substitute its decision on the merits for the decision of the arbitral tribunal even if the arbitrators have made an erroneous decision of fact or law.

The Convention does not allow for a *de facto* appeal on procedural issues; rather it provides grounds for refusal of recognition or enforcement only if the relevant authority finds that there has been a violation of one or more of these grounds for refusal, many of which involve a serious due process violation.

2. Burden on Respondent to Prove the Exhaustive Grounds

The respondent has the burden of proof and can only resist the recognition and enforcement of the award on the basis of the grounds

56. *Austria*: Oberster Gerichtshof, 26 April 2006 (*D SA v. W GmbH*), *Yearbook* XXXII (2007) pp. 259-265 (Austria no. 16).

set forth in Article V(1). These limited grounds are exhaustively listed in the New York Convention. The court can refuse the recognition and the enforcement on its own motion on the two grounds identified in Article V(2).

3. Exhaustive Grounds for Refusal of Recognition and Enforcement

In summary, the party opposing recognition and enforcement can rely on and must prove one of the first five grounds:

(1) There was no valid agreement to arbitrate (Article V(1)(*a*)) by reason of incapacity of the parties or invalidity of the arbitration agreement;
(2) The respondent was not given proper notice, or the respondent was unable to present its case (Article V(1)(*b*)) by reason of due process violations;
(3) The award deals with a dispute not contemplated by, or beyond the scope of the parties' arbitration agreement (Article V(1)(*c*));
(4) The composition of the arbitral tribunal or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with the law of the country where the arbitration took place (Article V(1)(*d*));
(5) The award has not yet become binding on the parties, or has been set aside or suspended by a competent authority in the country in which, or under the laws of which, the award was made (Article V(1)(*e*)).

These are the only grounds on which the respondent can rely.

Further, the court may on its own motion refuse the recognition and enforcement on the grounds mentioned below. However, in practice, the respondent invokes these grounds as well:

(6) The subject matter of the arbitration was not arbitrable under the law of the country where enforcement is sought (Article V(2)(*a*));
(7) Enforcement of the award would be contrary to the public policy of the country where enforcement is sought (Article V(2)(*b*)).

4. Narrow Interpretation of the Grounds for Refusal

Bearing in mind the purpose of the Convention, namely to "unify the standards by which ... arbitral awards are enforced in the signatory countries"[57] (see Chapter 1 at A.2), its drafters intended that the grounds for opposing recognition and enforcement of Convention awards should be interpreted and applied narrowly and that refusal should be granted in serious cases only.

Most courts have adopted this restrictive approach to the interpretation of Article V grounds. For example, the United States Court of Appeals for the Third Circuit stated in 2003 in *China Minmetals Materials Import & Export Co., Ltd. v. Chi Mei Corp.*:

> "Consistent with the policy favoring enforcement of foreign arbitration awards, courts strictly have limited defenses to enforcement to the defenses set forth in Article V of the Convention, and generally have construed those exceptions narrowly."[58]

Similarly, the UK Privy Council said in 2022:

> "It is well established that the grounds for refusing recognition and enforcement set out in article V should be construed narrowly in the

57. *United States*: Supreme Court of the United States, 17 June 1974 (*Fritz Scherk v. Alberto-Culver Co.*), *Yearbook* I (1976) pp. 203-204 (US no. 4).
58. *United States*: United States Court of Appeals, Third Circuit, 26 June 2003 (*China Minmetals Materials Import and Export Co., Ltd. v. Chi Mei Corporation*), *Yearbook* XXIX (2004) pp. 1003-1025 (US no. 459).

light of the New York Convention's object and purpose of facilitating the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards."[59]

One issue that is not dealt with in the Convention is what happens if a party to an arbitration is aware of a defect in the arbitration procedure but does not object in the course of the arbitration. The same issue arises in connection with jurisdictional objections that are raised at the enforcement stage for the first time.

The general principle of good faith (also sometimes referred to as waiver or estoppel) that applies to procedural as well as to substantive matters, should prevent parties from keeping arguments up their sleeves.[60]

For example:

– The Federal *Arbitrazh* (Commercial) Court for the Northwestern District in the Russian Federation considered that an objection of lack

59. *United Kingdom*: Privy Council, 19 May 2022, Appeal No 0086 of 2020 (*Gol Linhas Aereas SA (formerly VRG Linhas Aereas SA) v. MatlinPatterson Global Opportunities Partners (Cayman) II LP and others*), *Yearbook* XLVII (2022) pp. 480-487 (UK no. 122). See also *Canada*: New Brunswick Court of Queen's Bench, Trial Division, Judicial District of Saint John, 28 July 2004 (*Adamas Management & Services Inc. v. Aurado Energy Inc.*), *Yearbook* XXX (2005) pp. 479-487 (Canada no. 18).
60. Article 4 of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, as amended in 2006, provides:

"A party who knows that any provision of this Law from which the parties may derogate or any requirement under the arbitration agreement has not been complied with and yet proceeds with the arbitration without stating his objection to such non-compliance without undue delay or, if a time-limit is provided therefor, within such period of time, *shall be deemed to have waived his right to object.*" (Emphasis added)

of arbitral jurisdiction that had not been raised in the arbitration could not be raised for the first time in the enforcement proceedings;[61]

– The Spanish Supreme Court said that it could not understand that the respondent "now rejects the arbitration agreement on grounds it could have raised in the arbitration";[62]
– The Hong Kong Court of Final Appeal observed that a failure to make a prompt objection to the arbitral tribunal or the supervisory court may constitute estoppel or want of bona fides.[63]

The principle of estoppel is also applied by some courts if a party fails to raise the ground in setting-aside proceedings, or if the respondent seeks to re-litigate matters already decided by the court at the seat of arbitration:

– The Berlin Court of Appeal found that the German respondent was estopped from relying on grounds for denying enforcement under the New York Convention since it had failed to raise them in annulment proceedings in Ukraine within the time limit of three months set by Ukrainian law. The Court reasoned that although the Convention does not provide for estoppel, the preclusion (*Präklusion*) provision established in respect of domestic awards in German law also applies to the enforcement of foreign awards;[64]

61. *Russian Federation*: Federal *Arbitrazh* (Commercial) Court, Northwestern District, 9 December 2004 (*Dana Feed A/S v. OOO Arctic Salmon*), *Yearbook* XXXIII (2008) pp. 658-665 (Russian Federation no. 16).
62. *Spain*: Tribunal Supremo, Civil Chamber, 11 April 2000 (*Union Générale de Cinéma, SA v. X Y Z Desarrollos, SA*), *Yearbook* XXXII (2007) pp. 525-531 (Spain no. 50).
63. *Hong Kong*: Court of Final Appeal of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, 9 February 1999 (*Hebei Import and Export Corporation v. Polytek Engineering Company Limited*), *Yearbook* XXIV (1999) pp. 652-677 (Hong Kong no. 15). See *KB v. S* [2015] HKEC 2042.
64. *Germany*: Kammergericht, Berlin, 17 April 2008 (*Buyer v. Supplier*), *Yearbook* XXXIV (2009) pp. 510-515 (Germany no. 119).

– The Singapore Court of Appeal decided that the doctrine of transnational issue estoppel applies in the context of international arbitration. Thus, the Republic of India could not resist enforcement of a foreign award on the basis that the tribunal lacked jurisdiction, because the Court at the seat of arbitration had already dismissed India's application to set aside the award, upholding jurisdiction and the validity of the award.[65]

5. Limited Discretionary Power to Enforce in the Presence of Grounds for Refusal

Courts generally refuse enforcement when they find that there is a ground for refusal under the New York Convention.

Some courts, however, hold that they have the power to grant enforcement even where the existence of a ground for refusal of enforcement under the Convention has been proved. They generally do so where the ground for refusal concerns a minor violation of the procedural rules applicable to the arbitration – a *de minimis* case – or the respondent neglected to raise that ground for refusal in the arbitration.[66] (See also the cases described in this Chapter above at C.4)

These courts rely on the wording in the English version of Article V(1), which opens with the words "Recognition and enforcement of the

65. *Singapore*: *The Republic of India v. Deutsche Telekom AG* [2023] SGCA(I) 10.
66. *Hong Kong*: Supreme Court of Hong Kong, High Court, 15 January 1993 (*Paklito Investment Ltd. v. Klockner East Asia Ltd.*), *Yearbook* XIX (1994) pp. 664-674 (Hong Kong no. 6) and Supreme Court of Hong Kong, High Court, 16 December 1994 (*Nanjing Cereals, Oils and Foodstuffs Import & Export Corporation v. Luckmate Commodities Trading Ltd*), *Yearbook* XXI (1996) pp. 542-545 (Hong Kong no. 9); *British Virgin Islands*: Court of Appeal, 18 June 2007 (*IPOC International Growth Fund Limited v. LV Finance Group Limited*), *Yearbook* XXXIII (2008) pp. 408-432 (British Virgin Islands no. 1); *United Kingdom*: High Court, Queen's Bench Division (Commercial Court), 20 January 1997 (*China Agribusiness Development Corporation v. Balli Trading*), *Yearbook* XXIV (1999) pp. 732-738 (UK no. 52).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

award *may* be refused ...".[67] This wording also appears in three of the five official texts of the Convention, namely the Chinese, Russian and Spanish text. The French text, however, does not contain a similar expression and only provides that recognition and enforcement "*seront refusées*", i.e., shall be refused. French courts have nonetheless recognized and enforced awards based on a narrower range of grounds for refusal under French law, through application of Article VII of the Convention (see this Chapter below at D.5.b).

6. Issues Relating to Sovereign Immunity

The Convention does not address the concept of a State respondent's sovereign immunity from the jurisdiction of the courts of another State. Sovereign immunities applicable to State respondents (as well as the distinct regime of sovereign immunity applicable to States' property) are governed by other international treaties, principles of customary international law, and national legislation of the place where enforcement is sought.

However, it must be noted that States, State-owned entities and other public bodies are not excluded from the scope of the Convention purely by reason of their status. The expression "persons, whether physical or legal" in Article I(1) of the Convention is generally deemed to include public law entities entering into commercial contracts with private parties. In instances where a State or State-owned entity has validly

67. *United Kingdom*: High Court of Justice, Queen's Bench Division, Commercial Court, 17 April 2008 and Court of Appeal (Civil Division), 21 October 2008 (*Nigerian National Petroleum Corporation v. IPCO (Nigeria) Limited*), *Yearbook* XXXIII (2008) pp. 788-802 (UK no. 82); *United States*: District Court, District of Columbia, 31 July 1996 (*Chromalloy Aeroservices Inc. v. The Arab Republic of Egypt*), *Yearbook* XXII (1997) pp. 1001-1012 (US no. 230); *Hong Kong*: Supreme Court of Hong Kong, High Court, 13 July 1994 (*China Nanhai Oil Joint Service Corporation Shenzhen Branch v. Gee Tai Holdings Co. Ltd.*), *Yearbook* XX (1995) pp. 671-680 (Hong Kong no. 8).

agreed to arbitrate[68] courts virtually always deny the defence of sovereign immunity raised by a State against enforcement of an arbitration agreement and recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award by relying on the theory of restrictive immunity and waiver of immunity. Courts also frequently invoke the distinction between *acta de jure gestionis* and *acta de jure imperii*, or rely on *pacta sunt servanda* and the creation of an *ordre public réellement international*. This distinction is also made in some cases with respect to execution.

As one example, the Federal Court of Australia dismissed India's attempt to resist enforcement of an UNCITRAL award in favour of Mauritian investors on the basis of sovereign immunity. The Court found that by signing the Convention, India had agreed that Australia (another Contracting State) would recognize and enforce awards under the Convention, including where India is a party to such an award. Thus, although the Convention contains no express words of waiver, sovereign immunity may be waived by implication, and India's status as a Contracting State to the Convention created a "clear and unmistakable submission by agreement" to the Court's jurisdiction in proceedings regarding recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards.[69]

68. By contrast, where a state or another sovereign entity has not entered into the agreement to arbitrate, courts will uphold the respondent's invocation of immunity. See, e.g., *United States*: Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit (*Al-Qarqani v. Saudi Arabian Oil Co.*) 19 F.4th 794, 802 (5th Cir. 2021) (dismissing petition to enforce arbitral award for lack of jurisdiction due to the lack of agreement to arbitrate between parties, given that "no exception to the general rule of immunity for foreign states [was] applicable").
69. *Australia*: Federal Court of Australia, 24 October 2023, (*CCDM Holdings, LLC v. Republic of India*) (No. 3) [2023] FCA 1266.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

D. GROUNDS FOR REFUSAL TO BE PROVEN BY RESPONDENT (ARTICLE V(1))

1. Ground 1: Incapacity of Party and Invalidity of Arbitration Agreement (Article V(1)(*a*))

> "The parties to the agreement referred to in article II were, under the law applicable to them, under some incapacity, or the said agreement is not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of the country where the award was made."

This provision concerns post-award judicial review of the tribunal's competence – i.e., the existence and validity of any purported arbitration agreement. As explained by Pieter Sanders, therefore, national courts will have "the final word on the competence of arbitrators"[70] during the post-award stage in accordance with Article V of the Convention and any national rules on set aside (annulment).

This understanding has been confirmed by the highest courts of Austria, Mexico, the Netherlands, the United Kingdom, and many other jurisdictions.[71]

70. Pieter Sanders, *Commentary on UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules*, 2 Y.B. COM. ARB. 172, 197 (Pieter Sanders ed., 1977).
71. *E.g.*, *D v. C*, Judgment, Case no. 3Ob153/18y (Austrian Supreme Court (Oberster Gerichtshof), 19 Dec. 2018), para. 37; Supreme Court of Justice of Mexico, First Chamber, *Amparo Directo* 71/2014, Judgment (May 18, 2016), para. 321; *Republic of Ecuador v. Chevron Corp.*, Judgment para. 4.2, Case no. 13/04679 EV/LZ (Netherlands Supreme Ct. Sept. 26, 2014); *Dallah Real Estate and Tourism Holding Co. v. The Ministry of Religious Affairs, Government of Pakistan*, [2010] UKSC 46, paras. 25-26.

a. Incapacity of Party

The types of issues arising under this ground include the "incapacity" defences, such as mental incompetence, physical incapacity, lack of authority to act in the name of a corporate entity or a contracting party being too young to sign.

In addition, the term "incapacity" in the context of Article V(1)(*a*) is interpreted in the sense of "lacking the power to contract". For example, this may arise where the applicable law prohibits a party, such as a State-owned enterprise, from entering into an arbitration agreement for certain types of potential disputes: e.g., in some jurisdictions, a State-owned enterprise may be prohibited by law from entering into an arbitration agreement in a contact relating to defence contracts (see, however, Chapter 2 at 3.a, quoting as an example the Swiss Private International Law Act).[72]

The Convention does not indicate how to determine the law applicable to the capacity of a party ("the law applicable to them"). This law must therefore be determined by applying the conflict-of-laws rules of the court where recognition and/or enforcement is sought, usually the law of the domicile of a physical person and the law of the place of incorporation of a company.

b. Invalidity of Arbitration Agreement

Article V(1)(*a*) also provides a ground for refusal where the arbitration agreement "referred to in article II" is "not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it, or failing any indication thereon, under the

72. The Swiss Private International Law Act, Article 177(2) provides:

> "If one party to an arbitration agreement is a State, or an enterprise dominated held by or an organization controlled by a State, that is party to an arbitration agreement, it may not invoke its own law to contest its capacity to arbitrate or the arbitrability of a dispute or its capacity to be subject to an arbitration covered by the arbitration agreement."

law of the country where the award was made". This ground for refusal is commonly invoked in practice.

Respondents frequently argue under this ground that the arbitration agreement is not formally valid because it is not "in writing" as required by Article II(2) (see Chapter 2 at C.4.a). A related argument is that there was no agreement to arbitrate at all within the meaning of the Convention. Other common examples of the defences that may be raised under this ground include claims of illegality, duress or fraud in the inducement of the agreement.

From time to time a respondent may rely on this ground where it disputes that it was party to the relevant arbitration agreement. This issue is decided by the court by re-assessing the facts of the case, independent of the decision reached by the arbitrators. For example, in the *Sarhank Group* case, the respondent argued that there was no signed arbitration agreement in writing between the parties.[73] The United States Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit held that the district court incorrectly relied on the arbitrators' finding in the award that the respondent was bound by the arbitral clause under Egyptian law, which applied to the contract. Rather, the district court should have applied United States federal law to this issue when reviewing the award for enforcement. The Court therefore remanded the case to the district court "to find as a fact whether [the respondent] agreed to arbitrate ... on any ... basis recognized by American contract law or the law of agency".

In *Dallah Real Estate & Tourism Holding Co v. Pakistan* the English Supreme Court clarified the scope of the doctrine of competence-competence in England.[74] The Supreme Court held that while an arbitral tribunal has the power to determine its own jurisdiction as a preliminary matter, upon an application for enforcement under the New York Convention, where an objection to the tribunal's jurisdiction

73. *United States*: United States Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, 14 April 2005 (*Sarhank Group v. Oracle Corporation*), *Yearbook* XXX (2005) pp. 1158-1164 (US no. 523).
74. *United Kingdom*: [2010] UKSC 46.

is made, the court has the power to reopen fully the facts and issues to determine the jurisdictional issue.

The Supreme Court reviewed how the doctrine of competence-competence is applied in various jurisdictions around the world. It noted that "every country ... applies some form of judicial review of the arbitrator's jurisdictional decision. After all, a contract cannot give an arbitral body any power ... if the parties never entered into it."

Thus the fact that a tribunal can determine its own jurisdiction does not give it an exclusive power to do so. An enforcing court which is not at the seat of the arbitration has the power to re-examine the jurisdiction of the tribunal.

Whilst the Supreme Court (Lord Collins) accepted that the trend internationally is to limit reconsiderations of findings of tribunals and also stressed the pro-enforcement policy of the New York Convention, it found that neither of those took precedence. The Court held that under the 1996 Act (Section 30) in England a tribunal is entitled to inquire as a preliminary matter as to whether it has jurisdiction. However, if the issue comes before a court, the court is required to undertake an independent investigation rather than a mere review of the arbitrators' decision. The Supreme Court further considered that the position was no different in France, where the award had been made. Shortly after the decision of the English Supreme Court, the Paris Court of Appeal rejected a request to set aside the three awards at issue, holding that the arbitral tribunal's decision that it had jurisdiction was correct.[75] Although the Court did not express a view on the scope of judicial review of the arbitral tribunal's jurisdiction, it reviewed its decision fully.

More recently, UK and French courts reached different conclusions regarding an arbitral tribunal's jurisdiction in the well-known *Kabab-Ji v. Kout Food Group* case. The different outcomes resulted from the

75. *France*: Cour d'Appel, 17 February 2011 (*Gouvernement du Pakistan – Ministère des Affaires Religieuses v. Dallah Real Estate and Tourism Holding Company*).

application of different national laws to the relevant arbitration agreement. The UK Supreme Court denied enforcement of an ICC award won by a Lebanese company, Kabab-Ji, against its Kuwaiti former business partner, Kout Food Group, after finding that English law applied.[76] Nearly one year later, the French Court of Cassation upheld the same award, after confirming that French law applied to the arbitration agreement.[77]

The UK Supreme Court ruled that English law governed the arbitration agreement despite the seat being Paris. Applying the principles concerning the governing law of arbitration agreements that it previously established in the 2020 *Enka v. Chubb* case,[78] the Supreme Court reiterated that a choice of law to govern a contract containing an arbitration clause will generally be a sufficient indication of the law to which the parties subjected the arbitration agreement for the purposes of Article V(1)(*a*) of the Convention. As the parties had clearly expressly chosen the Franchise Development Agreement to be governed by English law, so too was the arbitration agreement in it. Under English law, the Court ruled that there was no real prospect of finding that Kout had become a party to the arbitration agreement.

The French Court of Cassation held that, under French law, an arbitration clause is separate to the contract in which it appears. The Court of Cassation said that the Paris Court of Appeal had rightfully exercised its sovereign discretion when it determined that the choice of English law as the governing law of the overall Franchise Development Agreement was not sufficient to establish the common will of the parties to submit the arbitration clauses to English law and thus to derogate from the substantive rules of international arbitration applicable at the seat of arbitration (Paris). It went on to affirm the ruling of the Paris Court of Appeal that Kout was bound by the arbitration agreement under French law.

76. *United Kingdom*: [2021] UKSC 48.
77. *France*: Cour de Cassation, Chambre Civile 1, Arrêt du 28 septembre 2022.
78. *United Kingdom*: [2020] UKSC 38.

The above conflicting decisions illustrate the potentially significant consequences of failing to specify the law applicable to the arbitration agreement where the law governing the substance of the contract is not the same as the law of the seat of the arbitration.

(See also Chapter 2 at B.1, regarding the scope of review by the court requested to refer the parties to arbitration.)

2. Ground 2: Lack of Notice and Due Process Violations; Right to a Fair Hearing (Article V(1)(*b*))

> "The party against whom the award is invoked was not given proper notice of the appointment of the arbitrator or of the arbitration proceedings or was otherwise unable to present his case."

Article V(1)(*b*) provides for the ground for refusal that the party against whom the award is invoked was not given any, or any fair, opportunity to present its case because: (i) it was not given proper notice of the appointment of the arbitrator or of the arbitration proceedings; or (ii) was otherwise unable to present its case.

This ground, however, is not intended for the court to take a different view to that of the tribunal on procedural issues. The party resisting enforcement has to show that it somehow was deprived of its right to have its substantive case heard and determined by the arbitral tribunal.

a. Right to a Fair Hearing

Article V(1)(*b*) requires that parties be afforded a hearing that meets the minimum requirements of fairness. The applicable minimum standards of fairness were described by the United States Court of Appeals for the Seventh Circuit as including "adequate notice, a hearing on the evidence, and an impartial decision by the arbitrator". Thus the arbitrators have a broad discretion as to how they may conduct proceedings, etc.

b. Lack of Notice

It is unusual for a party not to be given notice of the appointment of the arbitrator or of the arbitration proceedings. If a party has actively participated in an arbitration, it is impossible for it to complain later that notice was inadequate.

In proceedings where the respondent defaults, on the other hand, proof of notice must be given serious attention at all stages.

There can be no notice, for example, where one party has changed address without informing the other party or is located in a part of the world where faxes or other means of communication cannot be reliably received. In those cases, the arbitrators and the claimant in the arbitration should do all that is reasonably possible to bring the existence of the arbitration and the appointment of the arbitral tribunal to the attention of the respondent and to have independent evidence of such efforts. If they fail to do so, enforcement of the resulting award may be denied. In one such case, the Swedish Supreme Court denied enforcement, finding that the arbitrators ignored the fact that communications sent to an earlier address of the Swedish party had been returned undelivered.[79]

Default, however, may be simply the choice of the party. Where actual notice of an arbitration has been received by the respondent but the respondent fails or refuses to participate in the arbitration, courts hold that there is no violation of due process under Article V(1)(*b*). If a party chooses not to take part in the arbitration, this is not a ground for refusing enforcement.

79. *Sweden*: Högsta Domstolen, 16 April 2010 (*Lenmorniiproekt OAO v. Arne Larsson & Partner Leasing Aktiebolag*), *Yearbook* XXXV (2010) pp. 456-457 (Sweden no. 7).

c. Due Process Violations: "Unable to Present His Case"

The well-known United States case of *Iran Aircraft Industries v. Avco Corp*. is an example of where recognition and enforcement were refused because the respondent was unable to present its case.[80] After consulting with the chairman of the tribunal (who was subsequently replaced), the respondent had decided on the chairman's advice not to present invoices to support an analysis of damages by an expert accounting firm. The respondent relied only on its summaries – but indicated that it was prepared to furnish further proof if required. The tribunal eventually refused the damages claim on the basis that there was no supporting evidence. The United States Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit denied recognition and enforcement of the award on the basis that the losing party had been unable to present its case on damages.

A number of awards have been refused recognition and enforcement where the arbitrators have failed to act fairly under the circumstances. Examples of these include:

– The Paris Court of Appeal upheld a decision refusing to enforce an award because there was no evidence that the respondent, who did not participate in the arbitration, had received the procedural orders setting out the arbitration timetable or notification of the hearing;[81]
– The Svea Court of Appeal refused enforcement of an ICDR award on the ground that four days' notice given to the respondent to attend the hearing was insufficient. The Court noted that although "relatively short notice periods are acceptable in arbitration proceedings", "a notice period of four days - during the summer

80. *United States*: United States Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, 24 November 1992 (*Iran Aircraft Industries and Iran Helicopter Support and Renewal Company v. Avco Corporation*), *Yearbook* XVIII (1993) pp. 596-605 (US no. 143).
81. *France*: Cour d'Appel, Paris, 15 January 2013 (*Otkrytoye Aktsionernoye Obshestvo "Tomskneft" Vostochnoi Neftyanoi Kompanii v. Yukos Capital*), *Yearbook* XXXVIII (2013) pp. 373-375 (France no. 54).

holiday period and including a weekend - must be deemed too short for Mr. B to have received 'adequate advance notice' on the main hearing;[82]
– The English Court of Appeal upheld a decision refusing to enforce an Indian award on the ground that the serious illness of one of the parties, unsuccessfully raised by that party during the hearing when seeking an adjournment, meant that it was unrealistic to expect him to participate in the arbitration, including to file a defence;[83]
– The Federal Court of Australia refused to enforce an award against one of the respondents in an arbitration under the auspices of the China International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission (CIETAC) on the ground that she had not been properly notified of the arbitration because the notice of arbitration was sent to her husband's residential address, contrary to the notice clause in the relevant contract.[84]

Examples of unsuccessful objections founded on lack of due process include:

– The arbitrator had the same nationality as the claimant;[85]
– A party did not have the financial means to travel to the hearing;[86]

82. *Sweden*: Svea Hovrätt, Department 02, 20 September 2013 (*Subway International B.V. v. B*), *Yearbook* XLV (2020) pp. 390-391 (Sweden no. 9).
83. *United Kingdom*: Court of Appeal (Civil Division), 21 February 2006 and 8 March 2006 (*Ajay Kanoria, et al. v. Tony Francis Guinness*), *Yearbook* XXXI (2006) pp. 943-954 (UK no. 73).
84. *Australia*: Federal Court of Australia, 11 May 2021, File no. VID 637 of 2020 (*Beijing Jishi Venture Capital Fund (Limited Partnership) v. James Z Liu et al.*), *Yearbook* XLVI (2021) pp. 217-222 (Australia no. 52).
85. *Austria*: Oberster Gerichtshof, 7 June 2017 (*C v. F GmbH et al.*), *Yearbook* XLIII (2018) pp. 415-419 (Austria no. 34).
86. *United States*: United States District Court, Western District of North Carolina, Statesville Division, 11 June 2018 and 16 July 2018, *Yearbook* XLIV (2019) pp. 699-703 (US no. 965).

– The communications and the proceedings had been in a language the respondent did not know;[87]
– The tribunal had first postponed and then held the hearing remotely because of the COVID-19 pandemic;[88]
– The tribunal relied on a legal theory in the award that was not previously argued;[89]
– The tribunal awarded damages on a basis not pleaded by the parties;[90] and
– A company representative was unable to attend the hearing because he could not obtain a visa.[91]

3. Ground 3: Outside or Beyond the Scope of the Arbitration Agreement (Article V(1)(*c*))

"The award deals with a difference not contemplated by or not falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or it contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration, provided that, if the decisions on matters submitted to

87. *Spain*: Tribunal Superior de Justicia, Madrid, 19 January 2021, no. 1/2021 (*Mebel Service SL v. Made for Stores SL*), *Yearbook* XLVII (2022) pp. 424-427 (Spain no. 103).
88. *United States*: United States District Court, Southern District of New York, 26 January 2022, 21-cv-6704 (PKC) (*Preble-Rish Haiti, S.A. v. Republic of Haiti, Bureau de Monétisation de Programmes d'Aide au Développement*), *Yearbook* XLVII (2022) pp. 542-548 (US no. 1043).
89. *United Kingdom*: Privy Council, 19 May 2022, Appeal No 0086 of 2020 (*Gol Linhas Aereas SA (formerly VRG Linhas Aereas SA) v. MatlinPatterson Global Opportunities Partners (Cayman) II LP and others*), *Yearbook* XLVII (2022) pp. 480-487 (UK no. 122).
90 *United Kingdom*: High Court of Justice, Queen's Bench, Commercial Court, 19 February 2015 (*Malicorp Limited v. Government of the Arab Republic of Egypt et al.*), *Yearbook* XLI (2016) pp. 585-589 (UK no. 101).
91 *Korea*: District Court, Busan, 9th Civil Division, 26 October 2011 (*Dongkuk Steel Corp. v. Yoon's Marine Ltd.*), *Yearbook* XLV (2020) pp. 318-321 (Korea no. 15).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

arbitration can be separated from those not so submitted, that part of the award which contains decisions on matters submitted to arbitration may be recognized and enforced."

The grounds for refusal provided under Article V(1)(*c*) are that the award:

– Deals with a difference or dispute not contemplated by, or not falling within, the terms of the parties' submission to arbitration, or
– Contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the parties' submission to arbitration.

The grounds in Article V(1)(*c*) embody the principle that the arbitral tribunal only has jurisdiction to decide the issues that the parties have agreed to submit to it for determination.

In determining what the parties have submitted to the arbitral tribunal for determination, regard must be had to the arbitration agreement and the claims for relief submitted to the arbitral tribunal by the parties. The language of the arbitration agreement is critically important; issues must remain within that scope.

Model clauses published by arbitral institutions are typically drafted to give the arbitral tribunal very broad jurisdiction to determine all disputes arising out of or in connection with the parties' substantive agreement (usually a contract). Ripeness and similar issues are usually a matter of admissibility (not jurisdiction) and therefore not reviewable by courts. (See also Chapter 2 at C.1 on the competence-competence of arbitrators and court review of arbitration agreements.)

The court has a discretion to grant partial enforcement of an award if the award is only partly beyond the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal, provided that the part falling within the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal can be separated.[92] This appears from the proviso at the end of

92. *United States*: District Court, Southern District of Florida, 12 May 2009 (*Four*

Article V(1)(*c*) ("provided that, if the decisions on matters submitted to arbitration can be separated from those not so submitted, that part of the award which contains matters submitted to arbitration may be recognized and enforced").

4. Ground 4: Irregularities in the Composition of the Arbitral Tribunal or the Arbitration Procedure (Article V(1)(*d*))

> "The composition of the arbitral authority or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties, or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with the law of the country where the arbitration took place."

Article V(1)(*d*) has two types of potential violations, concerning:

– the composition of the arbitral tribunal;
– the arbitral procedure.

a. Composition of the Tribunal

The first option of Article V(1)(*d*) applies if a party is deprived of its right to appoint an arbitrator or to have its case decided by an arbitral tribunal whose composition reflects the parties' agreement.

Cases where one party refuses to appoint an arbitrator and the arbitrator is then appointed by a court, or where arbitrators are successfully challenged and replaced in accordance with the applicable

Seasons Hotels and Resorts B.V., et al. v. Consorcio Barr, S.A.), *Yearbook* XXXIV (2009) pp. 1088-1097 (US no. 668); District Court, Southern District of New York, 12 October 1989 (*FIAT S.p.A. v. The Ministry of Finance and Planning of the Republic of Suriname, et al.*), *Yearbook* XXIII (1998) pp. 880-885 (US no. 239); *China*: Supreme People's Court, 12 November 2003, [2003] Min Si Ta Zi no. 12 (*Gerald Metals Inc. v. Wuhu Smelter & Refinery Co., Ltd. and Wuhu Hengxin Copper (Group) Inc.*).

rules chosen by the parties and the applicable law, would not succeed under this ground.

Article V(1)(*d*) provides that a court must first look to see:

1. If the parties have agreed on the composition of the arbitral tribunal;
2. If they have, what they have agreed must be determined;
3. Whether that agreement has been violated;
4. Only if there is no agreement between the parties on the composition of the arbitral tribunal should the court apply the law of the country where the arbitration took place to determine if it was not in accordance with such law.

For example, the parties might have designated an appointing institution to appoint the chairman or arbitrator in the arbitration clause, but in fact someone else appoints the arbitrator. A similar problem arises if the arbitrator is to be chosen from a certain group of people, but is then chosen from another group. In this case the court should, however, carefully examine whether it is really necessary to refuse enforcement because the party opposing recognition and enforcement of the award was deprived of its rights, or whether, in essence, it was granted a fair arbitration procedure with only a minor procedural deviation. This is an illustration of the type of case in which the court can decide to grant enforcement if the violation is *de minimis* (see this Chapter above at C.5).

For example, in the *China Nanhai* case, the Hong Kong High Court held that although the specific agreement of the parties as to the composition of the tribunal had not been followed, the enforcing court should exercise its discretion to enforce the award, as it considered the violation involved to be comparatively trivial.[93]

93. *Hong Kong*: Supreme Court of Hong Kong, High Court, 13 July 1994 (*China Nanhai Oil Joint Service Corporation Shenzhen Branch v. Gee Tai Holdings Co. Ltd.*), *Yearbook* XX (1995) pp. 671-680 (Hong Kong no. 8).

The arbitration agreement may prescribe certain qualities for one or more of the arbitrators, for example, that they shall have command of certain languages; be nationals of a particular country; be admitted to practice law in a particular jurisdiction; hold an engineering degree, etc. In these cases, the court should pay close attention to whether the fact that the arbitrator is missing a prescribed quality is in fact a procedural unfairness. For example, if the arbitration clause requires that the arbitrator shall be a "commercial man", or somebody with specific industry experience, and instead a lawyer without that qualification is appointed, it might be well justified to enforce the award notwithstanding this.

Examples of unsuccessful objections under this first option of Article V(1)(*d*) include:

– The Munich Court of Appeal denied the objection that the composition of the arbitral tribunal was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties where the arbitral body had been comprised of one arbitrator rather than two or more arbitrators as agreed in the arbitration clause. The Court noted that the respondent was aware of the composition of the arbitral tribunal but did not object during the arbitration;[94]
– In a case before the Spanish Supreme Court, the arbitration agreement provided for arbitration of disputes at the *Association Cinématographique Professionnelle de Conciliation et d'Arbitrage* (ACPCA) in France. When the respondent in the arbitration failed to appoint an arbitrator, the appointment was made by the president of the International Federation of Film Producers Associations. The Court denied the respondent's objection that this appointment was

94. *Germany*: Oberlandesgericht, Munich, 15 March 2006 (*Manufacturer v. Supplier, in liquidation*), *Yearbook* XXXIV (2009) pp. 499-503 (Germany no. 117).

in violation of the parties' agreement, finding that it complied with the relevant provisions in the ACPCA rules.[95]

– The Court of Appeal of Rome denied an objection advanced by the Republic of Kazakhstan on the basis that the state had not appointed its arbitrator. The Court found that the state had been duly informed of the arbitration and given two deadlines to appoint an arbitrator; only when the deadlines had passed, had the institution appointed an arbitrator on the state's behalf.[96]

Examples of successful objections under this first option of Article V(1)(*d*) include:

– In 1978, the Florence Court of Appeal found that a two-arbitrator arbitral tribunal with seat in London was in breach of the parties' arbitration agreement, although it was in accordance with the law of the country where the arbitration took place. The arbitration clause had provided that three arbitrators should be appointed, but the two party-appointed arbitrators did not appoint a third arbitrator as they were in agreement as to the outcome of the case – English law at the time permitted this;[97]
– The United States Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit refused to recognize and enforce an award on the ground that the parties' agreement as to the composition of the arbitral tribunal had been breached, as a court had appointed the chairman upon the application of a party, rather than the two party-appointed arbitrators

95. *Spain*: Tribunal Supremo, Civil Chamber, 11 April 2000 (*Union Générale de Cinéma, SA v. X Y Z Desarrollos, SA*), *Yearbook* XXXII (2007) pp. 525-531 (Spain no. 50).
96. *Italy*: Corte d'Appello, Rome, 27 February 2019, no. 1490/2019 (*The Republic of Kazakhstan v. Anatolie Stati et al.*), *Yearbook* XLIV (2019) pp. 562-568 (Italy no. 194).
97. *Italy*: Corte di Appello, Florence, 13 April 1978 (*Rederi Aktiebolaget Sally v. srl Termarea*), *Yearbook* IV (1979) pp. 294-296 (Italy no. 32).

being given time to attempt to agree upon the chairman, as provided for under the relevant arbitration agreement.[98]

b. Arbitral Procedure

The Convention does not intend to give the losing party a right to an appeal on procedural decisions of the arbitral tribunal. This option of Article V(1)(*d*) is not aimed at refusing to recognize or enforce an award if the court called upon is of a different view than the arbitrators, regarding, for example, whether or not a witness should have been heard, whether re-cross examination should have been allowed or how many written submissions should have been ordered.

Rather, this second option of Article V(1)(*d*) is aimed at more fundamental deviations from the agreed procedure, which include situations in which the parties agreed to use the rules of one institution but the arbitration is conducted under the rules of another, or even where the parties have agreed that no institutional rules would apply.

Examples of unsuccessful objections under this second option of Article V(1)(*d*) include:

– The Bremen Court of Appeal dismissed the respondent's argument that the arbitral proceedings, which were held in Turkey, were not in accordance with the Turkish Code of Civil Procedure because the arbitral tribunal did not grant the respondent's request for an oral hearing and disregarded its offer of new evidence. The Court held that the arbitral tribunal acted in accordance with the Arbitration Rules of the Istanbul Chamber of Commerce, to which the parties had agreed;[99]

98. *United States*: United States Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, 31 March 2005 (*Encyclopaedia Universalis S.A. v. Encyclopaedia Britannica, Inc.*), *Yearbook* XXX (2005) pp. 1136-1143 (US no. 520).
99. *Germany*: Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht, Bremen, 30 September 1999 (*Claimant v. Defendant*), *Yearbook* XXXI (2006) pp. 640-651 (Germany no. 84).

– Before the United States District Court in Northern Florida, the respondent Devon (the claimant in the arbitration, which had been held at the China Maritime Arbitration Commission (CMAC)) argued that the arbitration had not been in accordance with the law of PR China because the CMAC had rejected the other party's counterclaim but then permitted it to file a separate action that was subsequently consolidated with Devon's claim. The Court dismissed this argument, finding that Devon failed to show that the CMAC decision was improper under Chinese law.[100]

Examples of successful objections under this second option of Article V(1)(*d*) include:

– A Swiss court of appeal refused recognition and enforcement of a German award, finding that the arbitration procedure had not been in accordance with the agreement of the parties; the arbitration agreement provided for arbitration in Hamburg in which "all disputes should be settled in one and the same arbitral proceedings". Instead, the arbitration took place in two stages: first a quality arbitration by two experts and thereafter the arbitration proper by a panel of three arbitrators;[101]
– A United States court refused to recognize and enforce an USD 18 billion arbitration award rendered in Egypt based on its finding that the arbitration was conducted in direct contravention of the arbitration agreement's explicit procedural terms and "was so

100. *United States*: United States District Court, Northern District of Florida, Pensacola Division, 29 March 2010 (*Pactrans Air & Sea, Inc. v. China National Chartering Corp., et al.*), *Yearbook* XXXV (2010) pp. 526-527 (US no. 697).
101. *Switzerland*: Appellationsgericht, Basel-Stadt, 6 September 1968, (*Corporation X AG, buyer v. Firm Y, seller*), *Yearbook* I (1976) p. 200 (Switzerland no. 4).

riddled with irregularities that it resulted in criminal convictions for several of the arbitrators involved".[102]

– A Turkish court of appeals refused recognition and enforcement of a Swiss award on the ground that the procedural law agreed upon by the parties had not been applied;[103]
– The Italian Supreme Court enforced a Stockholm award but not a Beijing award made with respect to the same dispute. The Court held that the Beijing award was contrary to the parties' agreement that contemplated only one arbitration, either in Stockholm or in Beijing, depending on which party commenced arbitration first.[104]

5. Ground 5: Award Not Binding, Set Aside or Suspended (Article V(1)(*e*))

"The award has not yet become binding on the parties, or has been set aside or suspended by a competent authority of the country in which, or under the law of which, that award was made."

Article V(1)(*e*) provides for refusal of recognition and enforcement of an award if the respondent proves that the award has either:

– Not yet become "binding" on the parties, or

102. *United States*: United States District Court, Southern District of Texas, Houston Division, 17 November 2020 (*Waleed Bin Al-Qarqani et al. v. Arab American Oil Company et al.*), *Yearbook* XLVI (2021) pp. 480-484 (US no. 1015).
103. *Turkey*: Court of Appeals, 15th Legal Division, 1 February 1996 (*Osuuskunta METEX Andelslag V.S. v. Türkiye Electrik Kurumu Genel Müdürlügü General Directorate, Ankara*), *Yearbook* XXII (1997) pp. 807-814 (Turkey no. 1).
104. *Italy*: Corte di Cassazione, 7 February 2001, no. 1732 (*Tema Frugoli SpA, in liquidation v. Hubei Space Quarry Industry Co. Ltd.*), *Yearbook* XXXII (2007) pp. 390-396 (Italy no. 170).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

– Has been set aside or suspended by a competent authority of the country in which, or under the law of which, that award was made.

a. Award Not Yet Binding

The word "binding" was used by the drafters of the New York Convention in this context rather than the word "final" (which had been used in an equivalent context in the 1927 Geneva Convention on the Execution of Foreign Arbitral Awards).[105] The use of the word "binding" was intended to make it clear that a party was entitled to apply for recognition and enforcement of an award once it was issued by the arbitral tribunal. This meant that this party did not need to obtain *exequatur* or leave to do so from the court of the State in which, or under the law of which, the award was made (known as a *double exequatur*), as was required under the 1927 Geneva Convention.

The fact that no double *exequatur* is needed under the Convention is universally recognized by courts and commentators.

Courts differ, however, as to how to determine the moment when an award can be said to be "binding" within the meaning of Article V(1)(*e*). This issue most often arises when parties rely on Article V(1)(*e*) to challenge the binding nature of partial or interim arbitral awards. Following the classic approach, some courts consider that the binding nature of the award is to be determined under the law of the country where the award was made.[106] Other courts follow the new theory whereby this question is considered independent of the law applicable to the award. In this context, courts sometimes rely on the agreement of the parties. If the parties have chosen to arbitrate under the rules of the International Chamber of Commerce, for example, the 2021 ICC Rules

105. Convention on the Execution of Foreign Arbitral Awards, signed at Geneva on 26 September 1927.

106. See, e.g., *France*: Tribunal de Grande Instance, Strasbourg, 9 October 1970 (*Animalfeeds International Corp. v. S.A.A. Becker & Cie*), *Yearbook* II (1977) p. 244 (France no. 2).

CONFIDENTIALITY – FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY

BACK TO INDEX

of Arbitration provide at Article 35(6) that: "Every Award shall be binding on the parties." Alternatively, some courts undertake an autonomous interpretation and hold that an award is binding on the parties when it is not, or is no longer, open to recourse on the merits by the tribunal.[107]

b. Award Set Aside or Suspended

1. Award set aside

Depending on the jurisdiction, this procedure may also be called "vacatur" or "annulment" procedure.

Only the courts of the State where the award was made or is determined to have been made, i.e., where the arbitration had its seat (see Chapter 1 at C.1.a), have jurisdiction to set aside the award. These courts are described as having "supervisory" or "primary" jurisdiction over the award. In contrast, the courts before which an award is sought to be recognized and enforced are described as having "enforcement" or "secondary" jurisdiction over the award, limited to determining the existence of Convention grounds for refusal of recognition or enforcement.

In order for the objection that the award has been set aside to succeed, in many countries the award must have been finally set aside by the court having primary jurisdiction. An application to set aside the award does not suffice. This prevents the losing party from being able to postpone enforcement by commencing annulment proceedings.

The situation where an application to set aside or suspend the award has been made is covered by Article VI, which provides that in this case the enforcement court may adjourn the decision on the enforcement of the award if it considers it proper (see this Chapter at F). The application

107. See, e.g., *Switzerland*: Tribunal Fédéral, First Civil Chamber, 9 December 2008 (*Compagnie X SA v. Federation Y*), *Yearbook* XXXIV (2009) pp. 810-816 (Switzerland no. 40).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

must have been made, however, to the competent court referred to in Article V(1)(*e*), i.e., the court of primary jurisdiction.

2. Consequences of being set aside

Notwithstanding that an award has been set aside in the country in which, or under the law of which, the award was made, a court in another country may still grant recognition and enforcement outside the New York Convention regime. France is the best-known example of a jurisdiction that has declared an award enforceable notwithstanding the fact that it had been set aside in the country of origin. France does so, not on the basis of the New York Convention, but on the basis of French law, by opting out of the New York Convention through Article VII(1), the more-favourable-right provision. This provision allows courts to apply an enforcement regime that is more favourable to enforcement than the New York Convention, that is, that can lead to recognition and enforcement when the Convention would not (see Chapter 1 at E.1). Some courts grant recognition and enforcement of an annulled award within the New York Convention regime. Examples are the United States, England and the Netherlands.[108]

3. Award "suspended"

Article V(1)(*e*) also provides that enforcement of an award can be refused if the party against whom the award is invoked proves that the

108. *United States*: Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, 2 August 2016 (*Corporación Mexicana de Mantenimiento Integral, S. de R.L. de C.V. v. Pemex – Exploración y Producción*), *Yearbook* XLII (2017) pp. 763-770 (US no. P44); *Netherlands*: Hoge Raad, First Chamber, 24 November 2017 (*Not indicated v. OJSC Novolipetsky Metallurgichesky Kombinat*), *Yearbook* XLIII (2018) pp. 529-534 (Netherlands no. 62) (finding that discretion to enforce an award that has been set aside at the seat is an exception to the system of Article V(1), and courts shall therefore make use of it only in exceptional circumstances).

award has been "suspended" by a court in the country where, or under the law of which, the award was made. As seen above in this Section D.5.b at (i), Article VI of the Convention provides that a court may adjourn its decision on enforcement if the respondent has applied for suspension of the award in the country of origin.

The "suspension" of an award is not defined in the Convention. Courts have generally construed this term to refer to suspension of the enforceability of the award by *a decision of a court* (thus not by operation of the law, for example pending an action to set aside) in the country of origin.[109]

E. GROUNDS FOR REFUSAL TO BE RAISED BY THE COURT *EX OFFICIO* (ARTICLE V(2))

Article V(2) of the Convention provides:

> "Recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award may also be refused if the competent authority in the country where recognition and enforcement is sought finds that:
>
> (*a*) The subject matter of the difference is not capable of settlement by arbitration under the law of that country; or
>
> (*b*) The recognition or enforcement of the award would be contrary to the public policy of that country."

The grounds in Article V(2) protect the public interests of the State in which enforcement is sought and, accordingly, the court can rely upon them *ex officio*, following an application that has been made for recognition and enforcement of an award. Typically, the party resisting

109. *Switzerland*: Tribunal Fédéral, First Civil Chamber, 9 December 2008 (*Compagnie X SA v. Federation Y*), *Yearbook* XXXIV (2009) pp. 810-816 (Switzerland no. 40).

recognition and enforcement will also invoke these grounds when it believes that they are relevant.

1. Ground 6: Not Arbitrable (Article V(2)(*a*))

In summary, the "not arbitrable" ground for refusal under Article V(2)(*a*) is available where the dispute involves a subject matter reserved for the courts.

For example, clearly criminal cases are non-arbitrable; similarly, cases reserved exclusively for the courts of a jurisdiction are non-arbitrable, including:

– domestic relations, such as divorce and custody of children;
– property settlements;
– wills;
– bankruptcy; and
– tax controversies.

The modern trend is towards a smaller category of disputes being reserved solely to the jurisdiction of courts, as the result of a number of factors, including the trend toward containing costs, a greater openness of many courts to accept that the parties' agreement to arbitrate should be respected and the support of international arbitration by national legislation. In this respect it should also be noted that "not arbitrable" has a different meaning in an international as opposed to a domestic context (see this Chapter below at E.2 for the distinction between international and domestic public policy). (See also Chapter 2 at C.3 on subject matters "capable of settlement by arbitration".) As an example of this trend, in 2023, the Belgian Supreme Court overturned decades-old jurisprudence on the arbitrability of disputes concerning the termination of exclusive distribution agreements. It ruled that disputes about the termination of exclusive distribution agreements can be settled through arbitration, even where such an agreement is governed

by foreign substantive law, regardless of whether such foreign law offers protections similar to those under Belgian law.[110]

Whether a subject matter of an arbitration is non-arbitrable is a question to be determined under the law of the country where the application for recognition and enforcement is being made. The non-arbitrability should concern the material part of the claim and not merely an incidental part.

Few cases of refusal of enforcement under Article V(2)(*a*) have been reported. One example is a decision by the Federal *Arbitrazh* (Commercial) Court for the Moscow District that found that a Slovak award was unenforceable because it had been rendered after the Russian respondent had been declared bankrupt by an *arbitrazh* court. Under the bankruptcy law of the Russian Federation, *arbitrazh* courts have exclusive jurisdiction over the determination of the amount and nature of a bankrupt's claims against a debtor. The Court actually framed its decision under Article V(2)(*b*) of the Convention, as arbitrability may be considered as belonging to public policy.[111]

2. Ground 7: Contrary to Public Policy (Article V(2)(*b*))

Article V(2)(*b*) permits a court in which recognition or enforcement is sought to refuse to do so if it would be "contrary to the public policy of that country".

However, Article V(2)(*b*) does not define what is meant by "public policy". Nor does it state whether domestic principles of public policy or the international concept of public policy should apply to an application for recognition and enforcement under the New York Convention. The

110. *Belgium*: (overturning Cour de Cassation, First Chamber, 28 June 1979 (*Audi-NSU Union AG v. SA Adelin Petit & Cie*), *Yearbook* V (1980) pp. 257-259 (Belgium no. 2)).

111. *Russian Federation*: Federal *Arbitrazh* (Commercial) Court, Moscow District, 1 November 2004 (*AO Slovenska Konsolidachna, A.S. v. KB SR Yakimanka*), *Yearbook* XXXIII (2008) pp. 654-657 (Russian Federation no. 15).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

international concept of public policy is generally narrower than the domestic public policy concept. As seen in this Chapter above at E.1, this distinction also applies to arbitrability.

Most national courts have adopted the narrower standard of international public policy when applying the Convention. In the United States, for example, the "public policy defense is construed narrowly to apply only where enforcement would violate the United States' most basic notions of morality and justice".[112] Similar language has been used in several other jurisdictions.[113] The French judiciary has found that a violation of public policy must be "flagrant, effective and concrete".[114] Hong Kong courts require a "substantial injustice arising out of the award which is so shocking to the Court's conscience as to render enforcement repugnant".[115] In India, "a contravention of a provision of law is insufficient to invoke the defence of public policy"; rather, a violation of public policy is one that offends the core values of national policy.[116]

112. *United States*: District Court, District of Columbia, 31 May 2017 (*Venco Imtiaz Construction Company v. Symbion Power LLC*), *Yearbook* XLIII (2018) pp. 633-637 (US no. 933).
113. See, e.g., *Belize*: Court of Appeal of Belize, 8 August 2012 and Caribbean Court of Justice, 26 July 2013 (*The Attorney General of Belize v. BCB Holdings Limited, et al.*), *Yearbook* XXXVIII (2013) pp. 324-329 (Belize no. 2); *Ireland*: High Court, Dublin, 19 May 2004 (*Brostrom Tankers AB v. Factorias Vulcano SA*), *Yearbook* XXX (2005) pp. 591-598 (Ireland no. 1); *Australia*: Federal Court of Australia, New South Wales District Registry, General Division, 22 February 2011 (*Uganda Telecom Limited v. Hi-Tech Telecom Pty Ltd*), *Yearbook* XXXVI (2011) pp. 252-255 (Australia no. 36).
114. *France*: Cour de Cassation, First Civil Chamber, 4 June 2008 (*SNF sas v. Cytec Industries BV*), *Yearbook* XXXIII (2008) pp. 489-494 (France no. 47).
115. *Hong Kong*: High Court of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, 30 April 2009 (*A v. R*) 3 HKLRD 389.
116. *India*: High Court of Delhi, New Delhi, 11 April 2017 (*Cruz City 1 Mauritius Holdings v. Unitech Limited*), *Yearbook* XLII (2017) pp. 407-411 (India no. 54).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

The recommendations of the International Law Association issued in 2002 (the "ILA Recommendations") as to "Public Policy" have been regarded as reflective of best international practice.[117]

Among the general points of the ILA Recommendations are that the finality of awards in "international commercial arbitration should be respected save in exceptional circumstances" and that such exceptional circumstances "may in particular be found to exist if recognition or enforcement of the international arbitral award would be against international public policy".

The ILA Recommendations state that the expression "international public policy" is used to designate the body of principles and rules recognized by a State, which, by their nature, may bar the recognition or enforcement of an arbitral award rendered in the context of international commercial arbitration when recognition or enforcement of said award would entail their violation on account either of the procedure pursuant to which it was rendered (procedural international public policy) or of its contents (substantive international public policy).

The ILA Recommendations also state that the international public policy of any State includes:

(i) fundamental principles, pertaining to justice or morality, that the State wishes to protect even when it is not directly concerned;
(ii) rules designed to serve the essential political, social or economic interests of the State, these being known as "*lois de police*" or "public policy rules"; and
(iii) the duty of the State to respect its obligations towards other States or international organizations.

117. Resolution of the ILA on Public Policy as a Bar to Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, *Arbitration International*, Volume 19, Issue 2, 1 June 2003, pp. 213–215, <https://doi.org/10.1093/arbitration/19.2.213>.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

a. Examples of Recognition and Enforcement

In a German case before the Court of Appeal of Celle, the seller sought to enforce an award of the International Commercial Arbitration Court of the Chamber of Commerce and Industry of the Russian Federation (ICAC).[118] The buyer contended that permitting enforcement would violate public policy either because there were procedural irregularities in the arbitration proceedings or because the arbitral award gave effect to a disproportionately high contractual penalty. The Court rejected the buyer's arguments holding:

> "In the specific case of foreign arbitral awards, the departure in the foreign arbitration from mandatory rules of domestic procedure is not [automatically] a violation of public policy. Rather, there must be a violation of international public policy. Hence, the recognition of foreign arbitral awards is as a rule subject to a less strict regime than [the recognition of] domestic arbitral decisions. The issue is not whether a German judge would have reached a different result based on mandatory German law. Rather, there is a violation of international public policy only when the consequences of the application of foreign law in a concrete case is so at odds with German provisions as to be unacceptable according to German principles. This is not the case here."

In the French case *SNF v. Cytec,* SNF contracted to purchase a chemical compound from Cytec under two separate contracts.[119] The second provided for Cytec to be the exclusive supplier. The arbitral tribunal held that the second contract violated European competition law. It then rendered an award in favour of Cytec. Before the *Cour de Cassation*, SNF argued in effect that the Court should not permit enforcement of

118. *Germany*: Oberlandesgericht, Celle, 6 October 2005 (*Seller v. Buyer*), *Yearbook* XXXII (2007) pp. 322-327 (Germany no. 99).
119. *France*: Cour de Cassation, First Civil Chamber, 4 June 2008 (*SNF sas v. Cytec Industries BV*), *Yearbook* XXXIII (2008) pp. 489-494 (France no. 47).

an award which was based on an agreement in restraint of competition and hence was contrary to EC law and public policy. The Court held that where (as in this case) the matter in issue was international public policy, the courts would only intervene to prevent enforcement in the case of a "flagrant, effective and concrete" violation of international public policy.

That the legal reasoning underlying an award or the conduct of the arbitral tribunal is in some way flawed does not breach public policy as long as this flaw does not affect the fundamental conceptions of morality and justice of the legal system where enforcement is sought, i.e., does not violate international public policy. For example, the Hong Kong SAR Court of Final Appeal held that the holding of an inspection in the absence of the respondent was not a ground for refusing enforcement because the respondent was informed that it had taken place and did not ask for a re-inspection in the presence of its representatives.[120]

Other examples of recognition and enforcement notwithstanding an alleged violation of public policy are:

– Lack of financial means: the Portuguese Supreme Court of Justice rejected the argument that there was a violation of public policy because the Portuguese respondent did not participate in the arbitration in the Netherlands because of a lack of financial means;[121]
– Lack of impartiality by arbitrators: courts hold that "appearance of bias" is insufficient; there must have been "actual bias", i.e., the arbitrator must have acted in a partial manner;[122]

120. *Hong Kong*: Court of Final Appeal of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, 9 February 1999 (*Hebei Import and Export Corporation v. Polytek Engineering Company Limited*), *Yearbook* XXIV (1999) pp. 652-677 (Hong Kong no. 15).
121. *Portugal*: Supremo Tribunal de Justiça, 9 October 2003 (*A v. B. & Cia. Ltda., et al.*), *Yearbook* XXXII (2007) pp. 474-479 (Portugal no. 1).
122. See, e.g., *Germany*: Oberlandesgericht, Stuttgart, 18 October 1999 and

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

– Lack of reasons in award: courts of countries where reasons in awards are mandatory generally accept to enforce awards that contain no reasons but have been made in countries where such awards are valid.[123]

b. Examples of Refusal of Recognition and Enforcement

Examples of refusal of recognition and enforcement under Article V(2)(*b*) are:

– The Court of Appeal of Bavaria refused recognition and enforcement of a Russian award on the ground of public policy because the award had been made after the parties had reached a settlement, which had been concealed from the arbitrators;[124]
– The Federal *Arbitrazh* (Commercial) Court for the District of Tomsk (upheld on appeal to the Federal *Arbitrazh* Court for the West-Siberian District), in the Russian Federation, denied enforcement of an ICC award rendered in France, finding that the loan agreements in respect of which the award had been rendered were an illegal arrangement between companies of the same group and that the dispute was simulated;[125]

Bundesgerichtshof, 1 February 2001 *(Dutch Shipowner v. German Cattle and Meat Dealer*), *Yearbook* XXIX (2004) pp. 700-714 (Germany no. 60); *United States*: United States District Court, Southern District of New York, 27 June 2003 and United States Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, 3 August 2004 (*Lucent Technologies Inc., et al. v. Tatung Co.*), *Yearbook* XXX (2005) pp. 747-761 (US no. 483).

123. See, e.g., *Germany*: Oberlandesgericht Düsseldorf, 15 December 2009 (*Seller v. German Buyer*), *Yearbook* XXXV (2010) pp. 386-388 (Germany no. 135).
124. *Germany*: Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht, 20 November 2003 (*Seller v. Buyer*), *Yearbook* XXIX (2004) pp. 771-775 (Germany no. 71).
125. *Russian Federation*: Federal *Arbitrazh* (Commercial) Court, District of Tomsk, 7 July 2010 (*Yukos Capital S.A.R.L. v. OAO Tomskneft VNK*),

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

– The Amsterdam Court of Appeal denied recognition and leave to enforce three awards rendered in respect of bitcoin loans concluded through an online platform. Under the platform's conditions, arbitration was automatically triggered upon a loan default, and a debtor who wished to defend itself in the arbitration was required to send a request by email within seven days after receiving a notice of default. The Court found that the defendant had not been notified of the pending arbitrations in violation of public policy.[126]
– The German Court of Appeal Court granted enforcement in respect of part of an ICAC Moscow award that directed the respondent to pay a main sum and costs, but denied enforcement of the part of the award directing the respondent to pay a contractual penalty for delay. The Court noted that the contractually agreed daily rate of 0.5 percent corresponded to an annual rate of 180 percent, which it found to be exorbitant and incompatible with German public policy.[127]

F. STAY OF ENFORCEMENT PENDING THE RESOLUTION OF ANNULMENT PROCEEDINGS (ARTICLE VI)

Article VI of the Convention applies in the scenario where a party has commenced proceedings to set aside or suspend an award before the courts of the place the award was made, whilst the award creditor is seeking enforcement in another country. In other words, Article VI

Yearbook XXXV (2010) pp. 435-437 (Russian Federation no. 28); Federal *Arbitrazh* Court, West-Siberian District, 27 October 2010 (*Yukos Capital S.A.R.L. v. OAO Tomskneft VNK*).

126. *Netherlands*: Gerechtshof, Amsterdam, 29 January 2019 (*X v. Y*), *Yearbook* XLIV (2019) pp. 623-625 (Netherlands no. 67).
127. *Germany*: Kammergericht, Berlin, Twelfth Civil Chamber, 7 February 2019 (*Not indicated v. Not indicated*), *Yearbook* XLV (2020) pp. 261-263 (Germany no. 166).

addresses the situation in which annulment proceedings, on the one hand, and enforcement proceedings, on the other, are being conducted in parallel.

This provision expressly authorizes the enforcement court to adjourn or suspend the decision on the enforcement of the award if it considers it proper. Article VI also allows enforcement courts to order suitable security upon application of the party seeking enforcement. Article VI provides:

> "If an application for the setting aside or suspension of the award has been made to a competent authority referred to in article V (1) (*e*), the authority before which the award is sought to be relied upon may, if it considers it proper, adjourn the decision on the enforcement of the award and may also, on the application of the party claiming enforcement of the award, order the other party to give suitable security."

Adjourning enforcement proceedings may prevent the issuance of conflicting decisions by the enforcement court and the court of the place of arbitration. Moreover, under Article V(1)(*e*) of the Convention, one of the grounds for refusing to enforce an award is that it "has been set aside or suspended"; therefore, it may be premature to continue with the enforcement proceedings when there is a possibility that the award might be annulled. At the same time, adjournment entails the risk of delaying and in some instances even frustrating enforcement.

In the context of these conflicting concerns, it is widely recognized that courts should exercise the discretion to stay the enforcement of an award carefully and rationally. The Convention does not establish specific criteria that courts should consider when deciding whether or not to stay enforcement proceedings. Many courts have adopted a multifactor approach weighing different considerations, including:

- The status of the foreign proceedings and the estimated time for those proceedings to be resolved;
- Whether the award sought to be enforced will receive greater scrutiny in the foreign proceedings under a less deferential standard of review;
- The likelihood of success of the annulment application;
- The characteristics of the foreign proceedings, including the party that initiated such proceedings and the time when they were initiated (e.g., whether they predate the enforcement proceedings so as to raise concerns of international comity);
- Whether there are any circumstances indicating an intent to hinder or delay resolution of the dispute as well as any evidence of lack of good faith;
- Whether adjourning would likely make enforcement more difficult;
- The balance of possible hardships to each of the parties, keeping in mind that the party seeking enforcement is entitled to request suitable security to address any risk of dissipation by the award debtor;
- The general objectives of arbitration, particularly the expeditious resolution of disputes and the avoidance of protracted and expensive litigation; and
- The pro-enforcement philosophy underlying the New York Convention and the applicable arbitration law.[128]

128. *United Kingdom*: High Court of Justice, 14 April 2021 *(Hulley Enterprises Limited and others v. the Russian Federation)* [2021] EWHC 894, para. 213, *Yearbook* XLVI (2021) pp. 425-446 (UK no. 118); High Court of Justice, 27 April 2005 (*IPCO Nigeria Limited v. Nigerian National Petroleum Corporation*) [2005], para. 8, *Yearbook* XXXI (2006) pp. 853-977 (UK no. 70); *United States*: United States Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, 2 September 1998 (*Europcar Italia, S.p.A. v. Maiellano Tours, Inc.*) [1998] 97-7224, para. 21, *Yearbook* XXIVa (1999) pp. 786-913 (US no. 280).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

If the enforcement proceedings are suspended, the party seeking enforcement may request that the enforcement court order the other party to give suitable security. In considering whether to grant a request to order security, courts have considered various elements including:

- The likelihood of success of the annulment application. It has been considered that "if [the award] is manifestly valid, there should either be an order for immediate enforcement, or else an order for substantial security";[129] and
- Whether enforcement would be rendered more difficult in case of delay. In this respect, courts have noted that:

  "Court[s] must consider the ease or difficulty of enforcement of the award, and whether it will be rendered more difficult, for example, by movement of assets or by improvident trading, if enforcement is delayed. If that is likely to occur, the case for security is stronger; if, on the other hand there are and always will be (sufficient) assets within the jurisdiction, the ease for security must necessarily be weakened."[130]

129. *United Kingdom*: Court of Appeal, Civil Division, 12 March 1993 (*Soleh Boneh International Ltd. v. Water Resources Development (International) Ltd., Government of the Republic of Uganda and National Housing Corporation*) [1993], para. 13, *Yearbook* XIX (1999) pp. 717-754 (UK no. 38). See also Hong Kong: High Court, 5 May 2016 (*L v. B*) [2016], para. 9, *Yearbook* XLI (2016) pp. 487-493 (Hong Kong no. 28).
130. *United Kingdom*: Court of Appeal, Civil Division, 12 March 1993 (*Soleh Boneh International Ltd. v. Water Resources Development (International) Ltd., Government of the Republic of Uganda and National Housing Corporation*) [1993], para. 13, *Yearbook* XIX (1999) pp. 717-754 (UK no. 38). See also Hong Kong: High Court, 5 May 2016 (*L v. B*) [2016], para. 9, *Yearbook* XLI (2016) pp. 487-493 (Hong Kong no. 28).

G. CONCLUSION

This survey of the exclusive grounds for the refusal of a request for the recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award and the principles according to which these grounds should be interpreted reflects the pro-enforcement nature of the Convention that is to be respected and applied judiciously by the courts.

ANNEXES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Annex I – *The 1958 New York Convention*
Annex II – *The UNCITRAL Model Law on Arbitration*
Annex III – *The UNCITRAL Recommendation 2006*
Annex IV – *Online Sources*

ANNEX I

The 1958 New York Convention

The United Nations Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Done in New York, 10 June 1958

Article I

1. This Convention shall apply to the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards made in the territory of a State other than the State where the recognition and enforcement of such awards are sought, and arising out of differences between persons, whether physical or legal. It shall also apply to arbitral awards not considered as domestic awards in the State where their recognition and enforcement are sought.
2. The term "arbitral awards" shall include not only awards made by arbitrators appointed for each case but also those made by permanent arbitral bodies to which the parties have submitted.
3. When signing, ratifying or acceding to this Convention, or notifying extension under article X hereof, any State may on the basis of reciprocity declare that it will apply the Convention to the recognition and enforcement of awards made only in the territory of another Contracting State. It may also declare that it will apply the Convention

only to differences arising out of legal relationships, whether contractual or not, which are considered as commercial under the national law of the State making such declaration.

Article II

1. Each Contracting State shall recognize an agreement in writing under which the parties undertake to submit to arbitration all or any differences which have arisen or which may arise between them in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not, concerning a subject matter capable of settlement by arbitration.
2. The term "agreement in writing" shall include an arbitral clause in a contract or an arbitration agreement, signed by the parties or contained in an exchange of letters or telegrams.
3. The court of a Contracting State, when seized of an action in a matter in respect of which the parties have made an agreement within the meaning of this article, shall, at the request of one of the parties, refer the parties to arbitration, unless it finds that the said agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed.

Article III

Each Contracting State shall recognize arbitral awards as binding and enforce them in accordance with the rules of procedure of the territory where the award is relied upon, under the conditions laid down in the following articles. There shall not be imposed substantially more onerous conditions or higher fees or charges on the recognition or enforcement of arbitral awards to which this Convention applies than are imposed on the recognition or enforcement of domestic arbitral awards.

Article IV

1. To obtain the recognition and enforcement mentioned in the preceding article, the party applying for recognition and enforcement shall, at the time of the application, supply:

(*a*) The duly authenticated original award or a duly certified copy thereof;

(*b*) The original agreement referred to in article II or a duly certified copy thereof.

2. If the said award or agreement is not made in an official language of the country in which the award is relied upon, the party applying for recognition and enforcement of the award shall produce a translation of these documents into such language. The translation shall be certified by an official or sworn translator or by a diplomatic or consular agent.

Article V

1. Recognition and enforcement of the award may be refused, at the request of the party against whom it is invoked, only if that party furnishes to the competent authority proof that:

(*a*) The parties to the agreement referred to in article II were, under the law applicable to them, under some incapacity, or the said agreement is not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of the country where the award was made; or

(*b*) The party against whom the award is invoked was not given proper notice of the appointment of the arbitrator or of the arbitration proceedings or was otherwise unable to present its case; or

(*c*) The award deals with a difference not contemplated by or not falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or it contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration, provided that, if the decisions on

matters submitted to arbitration can be separated from those not so submitted, that part of the award which contains decisions on matters submitted to arbitration may be recognized and enforced; or

(*d*) The composition of the arbitral authority or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties, or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with the law of the country where the arbitration took place; or

(*e*) The award has not yet become binding on the parties, or has been set aside or suspended by a competent authority of the country in which, or under the law of which, that award was made.

2. Recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award may also be refused if the competent authority in the country where recognition and enforcement is sought finds that:

(*a*) The subject matter of the difference is not capable of settlement by arbitration under the law of that country; or

(*b*) The recognition or enforcement of the award would be contrary to the public policy of that country.

Article VI

If an application for setting aside or suspension of the award has been made to a competent authority referred to in article V (1) (*e*), the authority before which the award is sought to be relied upon may, if it considers it proper, adjourn the decision on the enforcement of the award and may also, on the application of the party claiming enforcement of the award, order the other party to give suitable security.

Article VII

1. The provisions of the present Convention shall not affect the validity of multilateral or bilateral agreements concerning the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards entered into by the Contracting States, nor deprive any interested party of any right he may have to avail

himself of an arbitral award in the manner and to the extent allowed by the law or the treaties of the country where such award is sought to be relied upon.
2. The Geneva Protocol on Arbitration Clauses of 1923 and the Geneva Convention on the Execution of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 1927 shall cease to have effect between Contracting States on their becoming bound by this Convention.

Article VIII

1. This Convention shall be open until 31 December 1958 for signature on behalf of any Member of the United Nations and also on behalf of any other State which is or hereafter becomes a member of any specialized agency of the United Nations, or which is or hereafter becomes a party to the Statute of the International Court of Justice, or any other State to which an invitation has been addressed by the General Assembly of the United Nations.
2. This Convention shall be ratified and the instrument of ratification shall be deposited with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

Article IX

1. This Convention shall be open for accession to all States referred to in article VIII.
2. Accession shall be effected by the deposit of an instrument of accession with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

Article X

1. Any State may, at the time of signature, ratification or accession, declare that this Convention shall extend to all or any of the territories for the international relations of which it is responsible. Such a declaration shall take effect when the Convention enters into force for the State concerned.

2. At any time thereafter any such extension shall be made by notification addressed to the Secretary-General of the United Nations and shall take effect as from the ninetieth day after the day of receipt by the Secretary-General of the United Nations of this notification, or as from the date of entry into force of the Convention for the State concerned, whichever is the later.

3. With respect to those territories to which this Convention is not extended at the time of signature, ratification or accession, each State concerned shall consider the possibility of taking the necessary steps in order to extend the application of this Convention to such territories, subject, where necessary for constitutional reasons, to the consent of the Governments of such territories.

Article XI

In the case of a federal or non-unitary State, the following provisions shall apply:

(*a*) With respect to those articles of this Convention that come within the legislative jurisdiction of the federal authority, the obligations of the federal Government shall to this extent be the same as those of Contracting States which are not federal States;

(*b*) With respect to those articles of this Convention that come within the legislative jurisdiction of constituent states or provinces which are not, under the constitutional system of the federation, bound to take legislative action, the federal Government shall bring such articles with a favourable recommendation to the notice of the appropriate authorities of constituent states or provinces at the earliest possible moment;

(*c*) A federal State Party to this Convention shall, at the request of any other Contracting State transmitted through the Secretary-General of the United Nations, supply a statement of the law and practice of the federation and its constituent units in regard to any particular provision of this Convention, showing the

extent to which effect has been given to that provision by legislative or other action.

Article XII

1. This Convention shall come into force on the ninetieth day following the date of deposit of the third instrument of ratification or accession.
2. For each State ratifying or acceding to this Convention after the deposit of the third instrument of ratification or accession, this Convention shall enter into force on the ninetieth day after deposit of such State of its instrument of ratification or accession.

Article XIII

1. Any Contracting State may denounce this Convention by a written notification to the Secretary-General of the United Nations. Denunciation shall take effect one year after the date of receipt of the notification by the Secretary-General.
2. Any State which has made a declaration or notification under article X may, at any time thereafter, by notification to the Secretary-General of the United Nations, declare that this Convention shall cease to extend to the territory concerned one year after the date of the receipt of the notification by the Secretary-General.
3. This Convention shall continue to be applicable to arbitral awards in respect of which recognition and enforcement proceedings have been instituted before the denunciation takes effect.

Article XIV

A Contracting State shall not be entitled to avail itself of the present Convention against other Contracting States except to the extent that it is itself bound to apply the Convention.

ANNEX I

Article XV

The Secretary-General of the United Nations shall notify the States contemplated in article VIII of the following:

(*a*) Signatures and ratifications in accordance with article VIII;
(*b*) Accessions in accordance with article IX;
(*c*) Declarations and notifications under articles I, X and XI;
(*d*) The date upon which this Convention enters into force in accordance with article XII;
(*e*) Denunciations and notifications in accordance with article XIII.

Article XVI

1. This Convention, of which the Chinese, English, French, Russian and Spanish texts shall be equally authentic, shall be deposited in the archives of the United Nations.
2. The Secretary-General of the United Nations shall transmit a certified copy of this Convention to the states contemplated in article VIII.

For an updated list of Contracting States to the Convention, see the website of the United Nations Treaty Collection at <http://treaties.un.org>.

ANNEX II

The UNCITRAL Model Law on Arbitration

1985 UNCITRAL
Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration,
with amendments as adopted in 2006

CHAPTER I. GENERAL PROVISIONS

Article 1. Scope of application[1]

(1) This Law applies to international commercial[2] arbitration, subject to any agreement in force between this State and any other State or States.
(2) The provisions of this Law, except articles 8, 9, 17 H, 17 I, 17 J, 35 and 36, apply only if the place of arbitration is in the territory of this State.

(Article 1(2) has been amended by the Commission at its thirty-ninth session, in 2006)

1. Article headings are for reference purposes only and are not to be used for purposes of interpretation.
2. The term "commercial" should be given a wide interpretation so as to cover matters arising from all relationships of a commercial nature, whether contractual or not. Relationships of a commercial nature include, but are not limited to, the following transactions: any trade transaction for the supply or exchange of goods or services; distribution agreement; commercial representation or agency; factoring; leasing; construction of works; consulting; engineering; licensing; investment; financing; banking; insurance; exploitation agreement or concession; joint venture and other forms of industrial or business cooperation; carriage of goods or passengers by air, sea, rail or road.

CONFIDENTIALITY – FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY

BACK TO INDEX

(3) An arbitration is international if:

(*a*) the parties to an arbitration agreement have, at the time of the conclusion of that agreement, their places of business in different States; or

(*b*) one of the following places is situated outside the State in which the parties have their places of business:

(i) the place of arbitration if determined in, or pursuant to, the arbitration agreement;

(ii) any place where a substantial part of the obligations of the commercial relationship is to be performed or the place with which the subject-matter of the dispute is most closely connected; or

(*c*) the parties have expressly agreed that the subject matter of the arbitration agreement relates to more than one country.

(4) For the purposes of paragraph (3) of this article:

(*a*) if a party has more than one place of business, the place of business is that which has the closest relationship to the arbitration agreement;

(*b*) if a party does not have a place of business, reference is to be made to his habitual residence.

(5) This Law shall not affect any other law of this State by virtue of which certain disputes may not be submitted to arbitration or may be submitted to arbitration only according to provisions other than those of this Law.

Article 2. Definitions and rules of interpretation

For the purposes of this Law:

(*a*) "arbitration" means any arbitration whether or not administered by a permanent arbitral institution;

(*b*) "arbitral tribunal" means a sole arbitrator or a panel of arbitrators;

(*c*) "court" means a body or organ of the judicial system of a State;

(*d*) where a provision of this Law, except article 28, leaves the parties free to determine a certain issue, such freedom includes the

right of the parties to authorize a third party, including an institution, to make that determination;

(*e*) where a provision of this Law refers to the fact that the parties have agreed or that they may agree or in any other way refers to an agreement of the parties, such agreement includes any arbitration rules referred to in that agreement;

(*f*) where a provision of this Law, other than in articles 25(*a*) and 32(2)(*a*), refers to a claim, it also applies to a counter-claim, and where it refers to a defence, it also applies to a defence to such counter-claim.

Article 2 A. International origin and general principles
(As adopted by the Commission at its thirty-ninth session, in 2006)

(1) In the interpretation of this Law, regard is to be had to its international origin and to the need to promote uniformity in its application and the observance of good faith.

(2) Questions concerning matters governed by this Law which are not expressly settled in it are to be settled in conformity with the general principles on which this Law is based.

Article 3. Receipt of written communications

(1) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties:

(*a*) any written communication is deemed to have been received if it is delivered to the addressee personally or if it is delivered at his place of business, habitual residence or mailing address; if none of these can be found after making a reasonable inquiry, a written communication is deemed to have been received if it is sent to the addressee's last-known place of business, habitual residence or mailing address by registered letter or any other means which provides a record of the attempt to deliver it;

(*b*) the communication is deemed to have been received on the day it is so delivered.

(2) The provisions of this article do not apply to communications in court proceedings.

Article 4. Waiver of right to object

A party who knows that any provision of this Law from which the parties may derogate or any requirement under the arbitration agreement has not been complied with and yet proceeds with the arbitration without stating his objection to such non-compliance without undue delay or, if a time-limit is provided therefor, within such period of time, shall be deemed to have waived his right to object.

Article 5. Extent of court intervention

In matters governed by this Law, no court shall intervene except where so provided in this Law.

Article 6. Court or other authority for certain functions of arbitration assistance and supervision

The functions referred to in articles 11(3), 11(4), 13(3), 14, 16(3) and 34(2) shall be performed by ... [Each State enacting this model law specifies the court, courts or, where referred to therein, other authority competent to perform these functions.]

CHAPTER II. ARBITRATION AGREEMENT

Option I

Article 7. Definition and form of arbitration agreement (As adopted by the Commission at its thirty-ninth session, in 2006)

(1) "Arbitration agreement" is an agreement by the parties to submit to arbitration all or certain disputes which have arisen or which may arise between them in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not. An arbitration agreement may be in the form of an arbitration clause in a contract or in the form of a separate agreement.
(2) The arbitration agreement shall be in writing.
(3) An arbitration agreement is in writing if its content is recorded in any form, whether or not the arbitration agreement or contract has been concluded orally, by conduct, or by other means.
(4) The requirement that an arbitration agreement be in writing is met by an electronic communication if the information contained therein is accessible so as to be useable for subsequent reference; "electronic communication" means any communication that the parties make by means of data messages; "data message" means information generated, sent, received or stored by electronic, magnetic, optical or similar means, including, but not limited to, electronic data interchange (EDI), electronic mail, telegram, telex or telecopy.
(5) Furthermore, an arbitration agreement is in writing if it is contained in an exchange of statements of claim and defence in which the existence of an agreement is alleged by one party and not denied by the other.
(6) The reference in a contract to any document containing an arbitration clause constitutes an arbitration agreement in writing, provided that the reference is such as to make that clause part of the contract.

Option II

Article 7. Definition of arbitration agreement
(As adopted by the Commission at its thirty-ninth session, in 2006)

"Arbitration agreement" is an agreement by the parties to submit to arbitration all or certain disputes which have arisen or which may arise between them in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not.

Article 8. Arbitration agreement and substantive claim before court

(1) A court before which an action is brought in a matter which is the subject of an arbitration agreement shall, if a party so requests not later than when submitting his first statement on the substance of the dispute, refer the parties to arbitration unless it finds that the agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed.
(2) Where an action referred to in paragraph (1) of this article has been brought, arbitral proceedings may nevertheless be commenced or continued, and an award may be made, while the issue is pending before the court.

Article 9. Arbitration agreement and interim measures by court

It is not incompatible with an arbitration agreement for a party to request, before or during arbitral proceedings, from a court an interim measure of protection and for a court to grant such measure.

CHAPTER III. COMPOSITION OF ARBITRAL TRIBUNAL

Article 10. Number of arbitrators

(1) The parties are free to determine the number of arbitrators.
(2) Failing such determination, the number of arbitrators shall be three.

Article 11. Appointment of arbitrators

(1) No person shall be precluded by reason of his nationality from acting as an arbitrator, unless otherwise agreed by the parties.
(2) The parties are free to agree on a procedure of appointing the arbitrator or arbitrators, subject to the provisions of paragraphs (4) and (5) of this article.
(3) Failing such agreement,
(*a*) in an arbitration with three arbitrators, each party shall appoint one arbitrator, and the two arbitrators thus appointed shall appoint the third arbitrator; if a party fails to appoint the arbitrator within thirty days of receipt of a request to do so from the other party, or if the two arbitrators fail to agree on the third arbitrator within thirty days of their appointment, the appointment shall be made, upon request of a party, by the court or other authority specified in article 6;
(*b*) in an arbitration with a sole arbitrator, if the parties are unable to agree on the arbitrator, he shall be appointed, upon request of a party, by the court or other authority specified in article 6.
(4) Where, under an appointment procedure agreed upon by the parties,
(*a*) a party fails to act as required under such procedure, or
(*b*) the parties, or two arbitrators, are unable to reach an agreement expected of them under such procedure, or
(*c*) a third party, including an institution, fails to perform any function entrusted to it under such procedure,
any party may request the court or other authority specified in article 6 to take the necessary measure, unless the agreement on the appointment procedure provides other means for securing the appointment.

(5) A decision on a matter entrusted by paragraph (3) or (4) of this article to the court or other authority specified in article 6 shall be subject to no appeal. The court or other authority, in appointing an arbitrator, shall have due regard to any qualifications required of the arbitrator by the agreement of the parties and to such considerations as are likely to secure the appointment of an independent and impartial arbitrator and, in the case of a sole or third arbitrator, shall take into account as well the advisability of appointing an arbitrator of a nationality other than those of the parties.

Article 12. Grounds for challenge

(1) When a person is approached in connection with his possible appointment as an arbitrator, he shall disclose any circumstances likely to give rise to justifiable doubts as to his impartiality or independence. An arbitrator, from the time of his appointment and throughout the arbitral proceedings, shall without delay disclose any such circumstances to the parties unless they have already been informed of them by him.
(2) An arbitrator may be challenged only if circumstances exist that give rise to justifiable doubts as to his impartiality or independence, or if he does not possess qualifications agreed to by the parties. A party may challenge an arbitrator appointed by him, or in whose appointment he has participated, only for reasons of which he becomes aware after the appointment has been made.

Article 13. Challenge procedure

(1) The parties are free to agree on a procedure for challenging an arbitrator, subject to the provisions of paragraph (3) of this article.
(2) Failing such agreement, a party who intends to challenge an arbitrator shall, within fifteen days after becoming aware of the constitution of the arbitral tribunal or after becoming aware of any circumstance referred to in article 12(2), send a written statement of the

reasons for the challenge to the arbitral tribunal. Unless the challenged arbitrator withdraws from his office or the other party agrees to the challenge, the arbitral tribunal shall decide on the challenge.
(3) If a challenge under any procedure agreed upon by the parties or under the procedure of paragraph (2) of this article is not successful, the challenging party may request, within thirty days after having received notice of the decision rejecting the challenge, the court or other authority specified in article 6 to decide on the challenge, which decision shall be subject to no appeal; while such a request is pending, the arbitral tribunal, including the challenged arbitrator, may continue the arbitral proceedings and make an award.

Article 14. Failure or impossibility to act

(1) If an arbitrator becomes *de jure* or *de facto* unable to perform his functions or for other reasons fails to act without undue delay, his mandate terminates if he withdraws from his office or if the parties agree on the termination. Otherwise, if a controversy remains concerning any of these grounds, any party may request the court or other authority specified in article 6 to decide on the termination of the mandate, which decision shall be subject to no appeal.
(2) If, under this article or article 13(2), an arbitrator withdraws from his office or a party agrees to the termination of the mandate of an arbitrator, this does not imply acceptance of the validity of any ground referred to in this article or article 12(2).

Article 15. Appointment of substitute arbitrator

Where the mandate of an arbitrator terminates under article 13 or 14 or because of his withdrawal from office for any other reason or because of the revocation of his mandate by agreement of the parties or in any other case of termination of his mandate, a substitute arbitrator shall be appointed according to the rules that were applicable to the appointment of the arbitrator being replaced.

ANNEX II

CHAPTER IV. JURISDICTION OF ARBITRAL TRIBUNAL

Article 16. Competence of arbitral tribunal to rule on its jurisdiction

(1) The arbitral tribunal may rule on its own jurisdiction, including any objections with respect to the existence or validity of the arbitration agreement. For that purpose, an arbitration clause which forms part of a contract shall be treated as an agreement independent of the other terms of the contract. A decision by the arbitral tribunal that the contract is null and void shall not entail *ipso jure* the invalidity of the arbitration clause.
(2) A plea that the arbitral tribunal does not have jurisdiction shall be raised not later than the submission of the statement of defence. A party is not precluded from raising such a plea by the fact that he has appointed, or participated in the appointment of, an arbitrator. A plea that the arbitral tribunal is exceeding the scope of its authority shall be raised as soon as the matter alleged to be beyond the scope of its authority is raised during the arbitral proceedings. The arbitral tribunal may, in either case, admit a later plea if it considers the delay justified.
(3) The arbitral tribunal may rule on a plea referred to in paragraph (2) of this article either as a preliminary question or in an award on the merits. If the arbitral tribunal rules as a preliminary question that it has jurisdiction, any party may request, within thirty days after having received notice of that ruling, the court specified in article 6 to decide the matter, which decision shall be subject to no appeal; while such a request is pending, the arbitral tribunal may continue the arbitral proceedings and make an award.

CHAPTER IV A. INTERIM MEASURES AND PRELIMINARY ORDERS

(As adopted by the Commission at its thirty-ninth session, in 2006)

Section 1. Interim measures

Article 17. Power of arbitral tribunal to order interim measures

(1) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the arbitral tribunal may, at the request of a party, grant interim measures.

(2) An interim measure is any temporary measure, whether in the form of an award or in another form, by which, at any time prior to the issuance of the award by which the dispute is finally decided, the arbitral tribunal orders a party to:

(*a*) Maintain or restore the status quo pending determination of the dispute;

(*b*) Take action that would prevent, or refrain from taking action that is likely to cause, current or imminent harm or prejudice to the arbitral process itself;

(*c*) Provide a means of preserving assets out of which a subsequent award may be satisfied; or

(*d*) Preserve evidence that may be relevant and material to the resolution of the dispute.

Article 17 A. Conditions for granting interim measures

(1) The party requesting an interim measure under article 17(2)(*a*), (*b*) and (*c*) shall satisfy the arbitral tribunal that:

(*a*) Harm not adequately reparable by an award of damages is likely to result if the measure is not ordered, and such harm substantially outweighs the harm that is likely to result to the party against whom the measure is directed if the measure is granted; and

(*b*) There is a reasonable possibility that the requesting party will succeed on the merits of the claim. The determination on this possibility shall not affect the discretion of the arbitral tribunal in making any subsequent determination.

(2) With regard to a request for an interim measure under article 17(2)(*d*), the requirements in paragraphs (1)(*a*) and (*b*) of this article shall apply only to the extent the arbitral tribunal considers appropriate.

Section 2. Preliminary orders

Article 17 B. Applications for preliminary orders and conditions for granting preliminary orders

(1) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, a party may, without notice to any other party, make a request for an interim measure together with an application for a preliminary order directing a party not to frustrate the purpose of the interim measure requested.

(2) The arbitral tribunal may grant a preliminary order provided it considers that prior disclosure of the request for the interim measure to the party against whom it is directed risks frustrating the purpose of the measure.

(3) The conditions defined under article 17A apply to any preliminary order, provided that the harm to be assessed under article 17A(1)(*a*), is the harm likely to result from the order being granted or not.

Article 17 C. Specific regime for preliminary orders

(1) Immediately after the arbitral tribunal has made a determination in respect of an application for a preliminary order, the arbitral tribunal shall give notice to all parties of the request for the interim measure, the application for the preliminary order, the preliminary order, if any, and all other communications, including by indicating the content of any oral communication, between any party and the arbitral tribunal in relation thereto.

(2) At the same time, the arbitral tribunal shall give an opportunity to any party against whom a preliminary order is directed to present its case at the earliest practicable time.
(3) The arbitral tribunal shall decide promptly on any objection to the preliminary order.
(4) A preliminary order shall expire after twenty days from the date on which it was issued by the arbitral tribunal. However, the arbitral tribunal may issue an interim measure adopting or modifying the preliminary order, after the party against whom the preliminary order is directed has been given notice and an opportunity to present its case.
(5) A preliminary order shall be binding on the parties but shall not be subject to enforcement by a court. Such a preliminary order does not constitute an award.

Section 3. Provisions applicable to interim measures and preliminary orders

Article 17 D. Modification, suspension, termination

The arbitral tribunal may modify, suspend or terminate an interim measure or a preliminary order it has granted, upon application of any party or, in exceptional circumstances and upon prior notice to the parties, on the arbitral tribunal's own initiative.

Article 17 E. Provision of security

(1) The arbitral tribunal may require the party requesting an interim measure to provide appropriate security in connection with the measure.
(2) The arbitral tribunal shall require the party applying for a preliminary order to provide security in connection with the order unless the arbitral tribunal considers it inappropriate or unnecessary to do so.

ANNEX II

Article 17 F. Disclosure

(1) The arbitral tribunal may require any party promptly to disclose any material change in the circumstances on the basis of which the measure was requested or granted.
(2) The party applying for a preliminary order shall disclose to the arbitral tribunal all circumstances that are likely to be relevant to the arbitral tribunal's determination whether to grant or maintain the order, and such obligation shall continue until the party against whom the order has been requested has had an opportunity to present its case. Thereafter, paragraph (1) of this article shall apply.

Article 17 G. Costs and damages

The party requesting an interim measure or applying for a preliminary order shall be liable for any costs and damages caused by the measure or the order to any party if the arbitral tribunal later determines that, in the circumstances, the measure or the order should not have been granted. The arbitral tribunal may award such costs and damages at any point during the proceedings.

Section 4. Recognition and enforcement of interim measures

Article 17 H. Recognition and enforcement

(1) An interim measure issued by an arbitral tribunal shall be recognized as binding and, unless otherwise provided by the arbitral tribunal, enforced upon application to the competent court, irrespective of the country in which it was issued, subject to the provisions of article 17 I.
(2) The party who is seeking or has obtained recognition or enforcement of an interim measure shall promptly inform the court of any termination, suspension or modification of that interim measure.

(3) The court of the State where recognition or enforcement is sought may, if it considers it proper, order the requesting party to provide appropriate security if the arbitral tribunal has not already made a determination with respect to security or where such a decision is necessary to protect the rights of third parties.

Article 17 I. Grounds for refusing recognition or enforcement[3]

(1) Recognition or enforcement of an interim measure may be refused only:

(*a*) At the request of the party against whom it is invoked if the court is satisfied that:

(i) Such refusal is warranted on the grounds set forth in article 36(1)(*a*)(i), (ii), (iii) or (iv); or

(ii) The arbitral tribunal's decision with respect to the provision of security in connection with the interim measure issued by the arbitral tribunal has not been complied with; or

(iii) The interim measure has been terminated or suspended by the arbitral tribunal or, where so empowered, by the court of the State in which the arbitration takes place or under the law of which that interim measure was granted; or

(*b*) If the court finds that:

(i) The interim measure is incompatible with the powers conferred upon the court unless the court decides to reformulate the interim measure to the extent necessary to adapt it to its own powers and procedures for the purposes of enforcing that interim measure and without modifying its substance; or

(ii) Any of the grounds set forth in article 36(1)(*b*)(i) or (ii), apply to the recognition and enforcement of the interim measure.

3. The conditions set forth in article 17 I are intended to limit the number of circumstances in which the court may refuse to enforce an interim measure. It would not be contrary to the level of harmonization sought to be achieved by these model provisions if a State were to adopt fewer circumstances in which enforcement may be refused.

(2) Any determination made by the court on any ground in paragraph (1) of this article shall be effective only for the purposes of the application to recognize and enforce the interim measure. The court where recognition or enforcement is sought shall not, in making that determination, undertake a review of the substance of the interim measure.

Section 5. Court-ordered interim measures

Article 17 J. Court-ordered interim measures

A court shall have the same power of issuing an interim measure in relation to arbitration proceedings, irrespective of whether their place is in the territory of this State, as it has in relation to proceedings in courts. The court shall exercise such power in accordance with its own procedures in consideration of the specific features of international arbitration.

CHAPTER V. CONDUCT OF ARBITRAL PROCEEDINGS

Article 18. Equal treatment of parties

The parties shall be treated with equality and each party shall be given a full opportunity of presenting his case.

Article 19. Determination of rules of procedure

(1) Subject to the provisions of this Law, the parties are free to agree on the procedure to be followed by the arbitral tribunal in conducting the proceedings.
(2) Failing such agreement, the arbitral tribunal may, subject to the provisions of this Law, conduct the arbitration in such manner as it

considers appropriate. The power conferred upon the arbitral tribunal includes the power to determine the admissibility, relevance, materiality and weight of any evidence.

Article 20. Place of arbitration

(1) The parties are free to agree on the place of arbitration. Failing such agreement, the place of arbitration shall be determined by the arbitral tribunal having regard to the circumstances of the case, including the convenience of the parties.
(2) Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (1) of this article, the arbitral tribunal may, unless otherwise agreed by the parties, meet at any place it considers appropriate for consultation among its members, for hearing witnesses, experts or the parties, or for inspection of goods, other property or documents.

Article 21. Commencement of arbitral proceedings

Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the arbitral proceedings in respect of a particular dispute commence on the date on which a request for that dispute to be referred to arbitration is received by the respondent.

Article 22. Language

(1) The parties are free to agree on the language or languages to be used in the arbitral proceedings. Failing such agreement, the arbitral tribunal shall determine the language or languages to be used in the proceedings. This agreement or determination, unless otherwise specified therein, shall apply to any written statement by a party, any hearing and any award, decision or other communication by the arbitral tribunal.
(2) The arbitral tribunal may order that any documentary evidence shall be accompanied by a translation into the language or languages agreed upon by the parties or determined by the arbitral tribunal.

Article 23. Statements of claim and defence

(1) Within the period of time agreed by the parties or determined by the arbitral tribunal, the claimant shall state the facts supporting his claim, the points at issue and the relief or remedy sought, and the respondent shall state his defence in respect of these particulars, unless the parties have otherwise agreed as to the required elements of such statements. The parties may submit with their statements all documents they consider to be relevant or may add a reference to the documents or other evidence they will submit.
(2) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, either party may amend or supplement his claim or defence during the course of the arbitral proceedings, unless the arbitral tribunal considers it inappropriate to allow such amendment having regard to the delay in making it.

Article 24. Hearings and written proceedings

(1) Subject to any contrary agreement by the parties, the arbitral tribunal shall decide whether to hold oral hearings for the presentation of evidence or for oral argument, or whether the proceedings shall be conducted on the basis of documents and other materials. However, unless the parties have agreed that no hearings shall be held, the arbitral tribunal shall hold such hearings at an appropriate stage of the proceedings, if so requested by a party.
(2) The parties shall be given sufficient advance notice of any hearing and of any meeting of the arbitral tribunal for the purposes of inspection of goods, other property or documents.
(3) All statements, documents or other information supplied to the arbitral tribunal by one party shall be communicated to the other party. Also any expert report or evidentiary document on which the arbitral tribunal may rely in making its decision shall be communicated to the parties.

CONFIDENTIALITY – FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY

BACK TO INDEX

Article 25. Default of a party

Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, if, without showing sufficient cause,

(*a*) the claimant fails to communicate his statement of claim in accordance with article 23(1), the arbitral tribunal shall terminate the proceedings;

(*b*) the respondent fails to communicate his statement of defence in accordance with article 23(1), the arbitral tribunal shall continue the proceedings without treating such failure in itself as an admission of the claimant's allegations;

(*c*) any party fails to appear at a hearing or to produce documentary evidence, the arbitral tribunal may continue the proceedings and make the award on the evidence before it.

Article 26. Expert appointed by arbitral tribunal

(1) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the arbitral tribunal

(*a*) may appoint one or more experts to report to it on specific issues to be determined by the arbitral tribunal;

(*b*) may require a party to give the expert any relevant information or to produce, or to provide access to, any relevant documents, goods or other property for his inspection.

(2) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, if a party so requests or if the arbitral tribunal considers it necessary, the expert shall, after delivery of his written or oral report, participate in a hearing where the parties have the opportunity to put questions to him and to present expert witnesses in order to testify on the points at issue.

Article 27. Court assistance in taking evidence

The arbitral tribunal or a party with the approval of the arbitral tribunal may request from a competent court of this State assistance in taking evidence. The court may execute the request within its competence and according to its rules on taking evidence.

CHAPTER VI. MAKING OF AWARD AND TERMINATION OF PROCEEDINGS

Article 28. Rules applicable to substance of dispute

(1) The arbitral tribunal shall decide the dispute in accordance with such rules of law as are chosen by the parties as applicable to the substance of the dispute. Any designation of the law or legal system of a given State shall be construed, unless otherwise expressed, as directly referring to the substantive law of that State and not to its conflict of laws rules.
(2) Failing any designation by the parties, the arbitral tribunal shall apply the law determined by the conflict of laws rules which it considers applicable.
(3) The arbitral tribunal shall decide *ex aequo et bono* or as *amiable compositeur* only if the parties have expressly authorized it to do so.
(4) In all cases, the arbitral tribunal shall decide in accordance with the terms of the contract and shall take into account the usages of the trade applicable to the transaction.

Article 29. Decision-making by panel of arbitrators

In arbitral proceedings with more than one arbitrator, any decision of the arbitral tribunal shall be made, unless otherwise agreed by the parties, by a majority of all its members. However, questions of procedure may be decided by a presiding arbitrator, if so authorized by the parties or all members of the arbitral tribunal.

Article 30. Settlement

(1) If, during arbitral proceedings, the parties settle the dispute, the arbitral tribunal shall terminate the proceedings and, if requested by the parties and not objected to by the arbitral tribunal, record the settlement in the form of an arbitral award on agreed terms.

CONFIDENTIALITY – FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY

BACK TO INDEX

(2) An award on agreed terms shall be made in accordance with the provisions of article 31 and shall state that it is an award. Such an award has the same status and effect as any other award on the merits of the case.

Article 31. Form and contents of award

(1) The award shall be made in writing and shall be signed by the arbitrator or arbitrators. In arbitral proceedings with more than one arbitrator, the signatures of the majority of all members of the arbitral tribunal shall suffice, provided that the reason for any omitted signature is stated.
(2) The award shall state the reasons upon which it is based, unless the parties have agreed that no reasons are to be given or the award is an award on agreed terms under article 30.
(3) The award shall state its date and the place of arbitration as determined in accordance with article 20(1). The award shall be deemed to have been made at that place.
(4) After the award is made, a copy signed by the arbitrators in accordance with paragraph (1) of this article shall be delivered to each party.

Article 32. Termination of proceedings

(1) The arbitral proceedings are terminated by the final award or by an order of the arbitral tribunal in accordance with paragraph (2) of this article.
(2) The arbitral tribunal shall issue an order for the termination of the arbitral proceedings when:

(*a*) the claimant withdraws his claim, unless the respondent objects thereto and the arbitral tribunal recognizes a legitimate interest on his part in obtaining a final settlement of the dispute;
(*b*) the parties agree on the termination of the proceedings;

(*c*) the arbitral tribunal finds that the continuation of the proceedings has for any other reason become unnecessary or impossible.

(3) The mandate of the arbitral tribunal terminates with the termination of the arbitral proceedings, subject to the provisions of articles 33 and 34(4).

Article 33. Correction and interpretation of award; additional award

(1) Within thirty days of receipt of the award, unless another period of time has been agreed upon by the parties:

(*a*) a party, with notice to the other party, may request the arbitral tribunal to correct in the award any errors in computation, any clerical or typographical errors or any errors of similar nature;

(*b*) if so agreed by the parties, a party, with notice to the other party, may request the arbitral tribunal to give an interpretation of a specific point or part of the award.

If the arbitral tribunal considers the request to be justified, it shall make the correction or give the interpretation within thirty days of receipt of the request. The interpretation shall form part of the award.

(2) The arbitral tribunal may correct any error of the type referred to in paragraph (1)(*a*) of this article on its own initiative within thirty days of the date of the award.

(3) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, a party, with notice to the other party, may request, within thirty days of receipt of the award, the arbitral tribunal to make an additional award as to claims presented in the arbitral proceedings but omitted from the award. If the arbitral tribunal considers the request to be justified, it shall make the additional award within sixty days.

(4) The arbitral tribunal may extend, if necessary, the period of time within which it shall make a correction, interpretation or an additional award under paragraph (1) or (3) of this article.

(5) The provisions of article 31 shall apply to a correction or interpretation of the award or to an additional award.

CHAPTER VII. RECOURSE AGAINST AWARD

Article 34. Application for setting aside as exclusive recourse against arbitral award

(1) Recourse to a court against an arbitral award may be made only by an application for setting aside in accordance with paragraphs (2) and (3) of this article.

(2) An arbitral award may be set aside by the court specified in article 6 only if:

(*a*) the party making the application furnishes proof that:

(i) a party to the arbitration agreement referred to in article 7 was under some incapacity; or the said agreement is not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of this State; or

(ii) the party making the application was not given proper notice of the appointment of an arbitrator or of the arbitral proceedings or was otherwise unable to present his case; or

(iii) the award deals with a dispute not contemplated by or not falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration, provided that, if the decisions on matters submitted to arbitration can be separated from those not so submitted, only that part of the award which contains decisions on matters not submitted to arbitration may be set aside; or

(iv) the composition of the arbitral tribunal or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties, unless such agreement was in conflict with a provision of this Law from which the parties cannot derogate, or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with this Law; or

(*b*) the court finds that:

(i) the subject-matter of the dispute is not capable of settlement by arbitration under the law of this State; or

(ii) the award is in conflict with the public policy of this State.

(3) An application for setting aside may not be made after three months have elapsed from the date on which the party making that application had received the award or, if a request had been made under article 33, from the date on which that request had been disposed of by the arbitral tribunal.

(4) The court, when asked to set aside an award, may, where appropriate and so requested by a party, suspend the setting aside proceedings for a period of time determined by it in order to give the arbitral tribunal an opportunity to resume the arbitral proceedings or to take such other action as in the arbitral tribunal's opinion will eliminate the grounds for setting aside.

CHAPTER VIII. RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF AWARDS

Article 35. Recognition and enforcement

(1) An arbitral award, irrespective of the country in which it was made, shall be recognized as binding and, upon application in writing to the competent court, shall be enforced subject to the provisions of this article and of article 36.

(2) The party relying on an award or applying for its enforcement shall supply the original award or a copy thereof. If the award is not made in an official language of this State, the court may request the party to supply a translation thereof into such language.[4]

(Article 35(2) has been amended by the Commission at its thirty-ninth session, in 2006)

4. The conditions set forth in this paragraph are intended to set maximum standards. It would, thus, not be contrary to the harmonization to be achieved by the model law if a State retained even less onerous conditions.

Article 36. Grounds for refusing recognition or enforcement

(1) Recognition or enforcement of an arbitral award, irrespective of the country in which it was made, may be refused only:

(*a*) at the request of the party against whom it is invoked, if that party furnishes to the competent court where recognition or enforcement is sought proof that:

(i) a party to the arbitration agreement referred to in article 7 was under some incapacity; or the said agreement is not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of the country where the award was made; or

(ii) the party against whom the award is invoked was not given proper notice of the appointment of an arbitrator or of the arbitral proceedings or was otherwise unable to present his case; or

(iii) the award deals with a dispute not contemplated by or not falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or it contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration, provided that, if the decisions on matters submitted to arbitration can be separated from those not so submitted, that part of the award which contains decisions on matters submitted to arbitration may be recognized and enforced; or

(iv) the composition of the arbitral tribunal or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with the law of the country where the arbitration took place; or

(v) the award has not yet become binding on the parties or has been set aside or suspended by a court of the country in which, or under the law of which, that award was made; or

(*b*) if the court finds that:

(i) the subject-matter of the dispute is not capable of settlement by arbitration under the law of this State; or

(ii) the recognition or enforcement of the award would be contrary to the public policy of this State.

(2) If an application for setting aside or suspension of an award has been made to a court referred to in paragraph (1)(*a*)(v) of this article, the court where recognition or enforcement is sought may, if it considers it proper, adjourn its decision and may also, on the application of the party claiming recognition or enforcement of the award, order the other party to provide appropriate security.

For further information see the UNCITRAL website at <www.uncitral.org> or contact the UNCITRAL Secretariat:

Vienna International Centre
P.O. Box 500
1400 Vienna, Austria
Telephone: +43-(1) 26060-4060 or 4061
Fax: +43-(1) 26060-5813
E-mail: uncitral@un.org

ANNEX III

The UNCITRAL Recommendation 2006

RECOMMENDATION REGARDING THE INTERPRETATION OF ARTICLE II, PARAGRAPH 2, AND ARTICLE VII, PARAGRAPH 1, OF THE CONVENTION ON THE RECOGNITION AND ENFORCEMENT OF FOREIGN ARBITRAL AWARDS, DONE IN NEW YORK, 10 JUNE 1958, ADOPTED BY THE UNITED NATIONS COMMISSION ON INTERNATIONAL TRADE LAW ON 7 JULY 2006 AT ITS THIRTY-NINTH SESSION

The United Nations Commission on International Trade Law,

Recalling General Assembly resolution 2205 (XXI) of 17 December 1966, which established the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law with the object of promoting the progressive harmonization and unification of the law of international trade by, inter alia, promoting ways and means of ensuring a uniform interpretation and application of international conventions and uniform laws in the field of the law of international trade,

Conscious of the fact that the different legal, social and economic systems of the world, together with different levels of development, are represented in the Commission,

Recalling successive resolutions of the General Assembly reaffirming the mandate of the Commission as the core legal body within the United Nations system in the field of international trade law to coordinate legal activities in this field,

Convinced that the wide adoption of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York on 10 June 1958, has been a significant achievement in the

promotion of the rule of law, particularly in the field of international trade,

Recalling that the Conference of Plenipotentiaries which prepared and opened the Convention for signature adopted a resolution, which states, inter alia, that the Conference "considers that greater uniformity of national laws on arbitration would further the effectiveness of arbitration in the settlement of private law disputes",

Bearing in mind differing interpretations of the form requirements under the Convention that result in part from differences of expression as between the five equally authentic texts of the Convention,

Taking into account article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention, a purpose of which is to enable the enforcement of foreign arbitral awards to the greatest extent, in particular by recognizing the right of any interested party to avail itself of law or treaties of the country where the award is sought to be relied upon, including where such law or treaties offer a regime more favourable than the Convention,

Considering the wide use of electronic commerce,

Taking into account international legal instruments, such as the 1985 UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, as subsequently revised, particularly with respect to article 7, the UNCITRAL Model Law on Electronic Commerce, the UNCITRAL Model Law on Electronic Signatures and the United Nations Convention on the Use of Electronic Communications in International Contracts,

Taking into account also enactments of domestic legislation, as well as case law, more favourable than the Convention in respect of form requirement governing arbitration agreements, arbitration proceedings and the enforcement of arbitral awards,

Considering that, in interpreting the Convention, regard is to be had to the need to promote recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards,

1. *Recommends* that article II, paragraph 2, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York, 10 June 1958, be applied recognizing that the circumstances described therein are not exhaustive;

2. *Recommends also* that article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York, 10 June 1958, should be applied to allow any interested party to avail itself of rights it may have, under the law or treaties of the country where an arbitration agreement is sought to be relied upon, to seek recognition of the validity of such an arbitration agreement.

For further information see the UNCITRAL website at <www.uncitral.org> or contact the UNCITRAL Secretariat:

Vienna International Centre
P.O. Box 500
1400 Vienna, Austria
Telephone: +43-(1) 26060-4060 or 4061
Fax: +43-(1) 26060-5813
E-mail: uncitral@un.org

ANNEX IV

Online Sources

Case law on the New York Convention can be searched online on the ICCA website:

<www.arbitration-icca.org>

The website is free. It contains a list of the over 3,000 court decisions applying the Convention that have been published since 1976 in the leading publication in this field, ICCA's *Yearbook Commercial Arbitration*. Decisions are indexed by Article of the Convention and by topic. The decisions themselves are published in the volumes of the *Yearbook* and are also available by subscription in the KluwerArbitration database at <www.kluwerarbitration.com>. All materials in this database are fully searchable through a variety of search tools.

Case law on the Convention can also be searched online on the New York Convention website of the University of Miami, USA:

<www.newyorkconvention.org>

The website is free. It also contains a list of the Convention decisions published in the *Yearbook* since 1976, indexed by Article and topic, as well as

- the authentic texts of the New York Convention;
- translations of the Convention in several languages;
- a commentary by Professor Albert Jan van den Berg;
- a list of Contracting States.

NOTES

SECTION 11

NY CONVENTION UNCITRAL SECRETARIAT GUIDE

AFSA

The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

BACK TO INDEX

UNCITRAL | UNITED NATIONS COMMISSION ON INTERNATIONAL TRADE LAW

UNCITRAL Secretariat Guide on the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards

(New York, 1958)

UNITED NATIONS

Further information may be obtained from:

UNCITRAL secretariat, Vienna International Centre,
P.O. Box 500, 1400 Vienna, Austria

Telephone: (+43-1) 26060-4060
Telefax: (+43-1) 26060-5813
Internet: www.uncitral.org
E-mail: uncitral@uncitral.org

UNITED NATIONS COMMISSION ON INTERNATIONAL TRADE LAW

UNCITRAL Secretariat Guide on the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards (New York, 1958)

2016 Edition

UNITED NATIONS
New York, 2016

Note

Symbols of United Nations documents are composed of capital letters combined with figures. Mention of such a symbol indicates a reference to a United Nations document.

UNITED NATIONS PUBLICATION
Sales No.: E.16.V.7
ISBN: 978-92-1-133851-5
e-ISBN: 978-92-1-058318-3

© United Nations, September 2016. All rights reserved, worldwide.

The Guide is a product of the work of the Secretariat based on expert input, and was not substantively discussed by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law (UNCITRAL). Accordingly, the Guide does not purport to reflect the views or opinions of UNCITRAL member States and does not constitute an official interpretation of the New York Convention.

The designations employed and the presentation of material in this publication do not imply the expression of any opinion whatsoever on the part of the Secretariat of the United Nations concerning the legal status of any country, territory, city or area, or of its authorities, or concerning the delimitation of its frontiers or boundaries.

Publishing production: English, Publishing and Library Section, United Nations Office at Vienna.

Contents

Page

Preface ..... *ix*

Introduction 1

Article I 5

Article I (1) 9
- A. Meaning of "recognition and enforcement" 9
- B. Meaning of "arbitral awards" 11
- C. Arbitral awards falling within the scope of the Convention 18
- D. Meaning of "arising out of differences" 27

Article I (2) 28

Article I (3) 29
- A. Reciprocity reservation 29
- B. Commercial reservation 33

Article II 37

Article II (1) 42
- A. The obligation to recognize an agreement in writing 42
- B. Meaning of "agreement" 43
- C. Scope of the "agreement in writing" 48

Article II (2) 51
- A. "Arbitral clause in a contract" versus "arbitration agreement" 52
- B. The signature requirement 53
- C. An arbitral clause or an arbitration agreement included in an exchange of documents 54

Article II (3) 57
A. General principles 57
B. Enforcement of arbitration agreements under article II (3) 62

Article III 75
A. General principles 78
B. Rules of procedure of the territory where the award is relied upon 82
C. There should not be imposed substantially more onerous conditions or higher fees or charges than are imposed on the recognition or enforcement of domestic arbitral awards .. 90

Article IV 95
A. Prima facie right to recognition and enforcement 99
B. An exhaustive set of requirements 99
C. Whether applicants can supply some, but not all, article IV documents 101
D. "[A]t the time of the application" 103

Article IV (1)*(a)* 105
A. The requirement that the applicant provide the "award" 105
B. Authentication and certification 108

Article IV (1)*(b)* 113
A. The requirement that the applicant provide the arbitration agreement "referred to in article II" 114
B. No requirement to prove the validity of the arbitration agreement 115
C. No requirement to authenticate the arbitration agreement 116

Article IV (2) 117
A. Governing law 117
B. Certification "by an official or sworn translator or by a diplomatic or consular agent" 118
C. The object of translation 119

Article V 121
A. Court discretion under article V 125
B. Exhaustive character of grounds under article V 126
C. Burden of proof under article V 128

Article V (1)*(a)* 131
Incapacity of the parties 134
A. Meaning of "the parties to the agreement referred to in article II" 134
B. Concept of incapacity 135
C. Meaning of the "law applicable to them" 138
D. Relevant time for incapacity 140

Invalidity of the arbitration agreement 141
A. The choice of law rule under article V (1)*(a)* 141
B. Meaning of "invalidity" 144
C. Formal validity of an arbitration agreement 145

Procedural issues arising in connection with article V (1)*(a)* 146
A. Burden of proof 146
B. Relevance of the findings of arbitral tribunals or courts 148
C. Preclusion 150

Article V (1)*(b)* 153
A. The requirement that the parties be given "proper notice" 157
B. Evidence that a party was "unable to present his case" 163
C. Procedural hurdles to showing a breach of article V (1)*(b)* 168

Article V (1)*(c)* 171
A. General principles 174
B. Partial recognition of an award 181
C. Relationship with other articles in the Convention 182
D. Procedural aspects 184

Article V (1)*(d)* 187
General principles 191
A. Prevalence of party autonomy 191
B. Subsidiary role of the law of the country where the arbitration took place 193

Application 195
A. The requirement that the composition of the arbitral tribunal accord with the governing rules 195
B. The requirement that the arbitral procedure accord with the governing rules 198
C. Procedural issues in raising a challenge based on article V (1)*(d)* 202

Article V (1)*(e)* 205
A. The "binding" nature of an award 209
B. What is a "competent authority" of the country "in which, or under the law of which", the award was made? 217
C. Award set aside or suspended 220

Article V (2)*(a)* 225
A. Concept 228
B. Application 231

Article V (2)*(b)* 237
A. Concept 240
B. Application 247
C. Procedural issues in raising the defence of article V (2)*(b)* 256

Article VI 263
A. General principles 266
B. The decision to grant or deny adjournment 271
C. The decision to order suitable security 279

Article VII 287

Article VII (1) 289
A. General principles 290
B. Interaction of the Convention with other treaties 293
C. Interaction of the Convention with domestic law 298

Article VII (2) 307

Article VIII 309

Article VIII (1) 310

Article VIII (2) 311
A. Procedure for becoming a party 311
B. Depositary 312

Article IX 313

Article X 315

Article XI 317

Article XII 321

Article XIII 325

Article XIV 327

Article XV 331

Article XVI 333

Preface

From the Final Act of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration of 10 June 1958 to General Assembly resolution 62/65 of 6 December 2007

1. The New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards (the "New York Convention" or the "Convention") is one of the most important and successful United Nations treaties in the area of international trade law. Although the Convention, adopted by diplomatic conference on 10 June 1958, was prepared by the United Nations prior to the establishment of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law (UNCITRAL), promotion of the Convention is an integral part of the work programme of UNCITRAL. The Convention is widely recognized as a foundational instrument of international arbitration and requires courts of contracting States to give effect to an agreement to arbitrate when seized of an action in a matter covered by an arbitration agreement and also to recognize and enforce awards made in other States, subject to specific limited exceptions. The Convention entered into force on 7 June 1959, and there are to date 156 States parties to the Convention.

2. The General Assembly adopted on 6 December 2007 resolution 62/65 in which it recognized the value of arbitration as a method of settling disputes in international commercial relations in a manner that contributes to harmonious commercial relations, stimulates international trade and development, and promotes the rule of law at the international and national levels. The General Assembly expressed its conviction that the New York Convention strengthens respect for binding commitments, inspires confidence in the rule of law and ensures fair treatment in the resolution of disputes arising over contractual rights and obligations. It emphasized the necessity for further national efforts to achieve universal adherence to the Convention, together with its uniform interpretation and effective implementation. The General Assembly expressed its hope that States that are not yet parties to the Convention would soon become parties to it, which would ensure that the legal certainty afforded by the Convention is universally enjoyed, and

would decrease the level of risk and transactional costs associated with doing business, thus promoting international trade.

3. The General Assembly requested the Secretary-General to increase efforts to promote wider adherence to the Convention and its uniform interpretation and effective implementation. The UNCITRAL Secretariat Guide on the New York Convention (the "Guide on the New York Convention" or the "Guide") has been prepared with the aim to fulfil that request.

Promoting uniform interpretation of UNCITRAL instruments

4. UNCITRAL, in accordance with its mandate, has undertaken the preparation of the tools necessary for a thorough understanding of the instruments it develops and for their uniform interpretation.

5. One of these instruments, the website www.newyorkconvention1958.org, has been established by Shearman & Sterling LLP, The Columbia Law School and UNCITRAL in order to make the information gathered in preparation of the Guide on the New York Convention publicly available. The site contains an electronic version of the Guide in all official languages of the United Nations, a significant corpus of judicial interpretation of the New York Convention by States Parties, information on the ratification of the Convention, the *travaux préparatoires*, as well as a bibliography, that is a comprehensive directory of publications relating to the application and interpretation of the Convention. This website provides legislators, judges, practitioners, parties and academics with a wealth of information that is dynamic and ever-growing. It offers an interactivity between contents and an indexing that enables the various elements of the site to link to one another, in a unique canvas. The search engine of the website allows a thorough search among the decisions, and enables searching the Guide, the *travaux préparatoires*, the case law and the bibliography. In relation to each case, it contains the full text of the decision, a translation of the decision in English where relevant, as well as a summary of the cases. It supplements the cases collected in the CLOUT (Case Law on UNCITRAL Texts) database and serves as a primary reference tool underlying the Guide on the New York Convention.

6. The Guide on the New York Convention presents the information on the Convention by article. Each section contains a synopsis of the relevant case law for the relevant article, highlighting common views and reporting any divergent approach. The Guide was prepared using the decisions cited in the website www.newyorkconvention1958.org as well as other decisions, fully cited in the footnotes.

7. The Guide on the New York Convention does not constitute an independent authority indicating the interpretation to be given to individual provisions but rather serves as a reference tool collating a wide range of decisions from a number of jurisdictions. The purpose of the Guide is to assist in the dissemination of information on the New York Convention and further promote its adoption as well as its uniform interpretation and effective implementation. In addition, the Guide is meant to help judges, arbitrators, practitioners, academics and Government officials use more efficiently the case law relating to the Convention.

Acknowledgement of contributions

The Guide is the result of the cooperation between Professor Emmanuel Gaillard and Professor George Bermann, their research teams, and the UNCITRAL Secretariat. Dr. Yas Banifatemi contributed as executive director and coordinator of the newyorkconvention1958.org website.

The first edition of the Guide, prepared in 2013-2016, greatly benefited from contributions by:

- The research team set up at Shearman & Sterling LLP, and the network of CLOUT correspondents
- The following institutions and individual contributors: Arbitration Institute of the Stockholm Chamber of Commerce (SCC); Associação Brasileira de Estudantes de Arbitragem (ABEArb); Cairo Regional Centre for International Commercial Arbitration (CRCICA); Centre of Documentation of the Italian Supreme Court; Deutsche Institution für Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit e.V. (DIS); DSP Publishing; Federal Court of Australia; High Court of Australia; Incorporated Council of Law Reporting (ICLR); New York International Arbitration Center (NYIAC); Permanent Secretariat, OHADA (Organisation pour l'Harmonisation en Afrique du droit des affaires); Republica e Cantone Ticino; Supreme Court of South Australia; Supreme Court of Tasmania; The People's Court Press (Supreme People's Court of the People's Republic of China) (人民法院出版社); Tribunal de Justiça do Estado de São Paulo; Domenico Di Pietro (Freshfields Bruckhaus Deringer LLP); Anna-Maria Tamminen (Hannes Snellman Attorneys Ltd); Niki K. Kerameus (Kerameus & Partner); Justinas Jarusevicius (Motieka & Audzevicius); Professor Jie (Jeanne) Huang, S.J.D., Associate Professor of Law, Director of Foreign Affairs Department at the Shanghai Institute of Foreign Trade School of Law; Professor Liza Chen, Dean of Law School, Shanghai Institute of Foreign Trade School of Law; Sophie Tkemaladze (MCIArb, ADR Advisor for the Judicial Independence and Legal Empowerment Project (JILEP) implemented by the East-West Management Institute, Georgia); Christoph Liebscher (Wolf Theiss, Vienna, Austria); Charles Poncet (ZPG Avocats); Deyan Draguiev (CMS Cameron McKenna LLP-Bulgaria Branch); Grant Herholdt (ENS (Edward Nathan Sonnenbergs) South Africa); Duarte Gorjão Henriques (BCH Advogados).

Introduction

1. The Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards was adopted by the United Nations following a diplomatic conference held in May and June 1958 at the United Nations Headquarters in New York.[1] The New York Convention entered into force on 7 June 1959.[2] At the date of this Guide, the Convention has 156 Contracting States.[3]

2. UNCITRAL considers the New York Convention to be one of the most important United Nations treaties in the area of international trade law and the cornerstone of the international arbitration system.[4] Since its inception, the Convention's regime for recognition and enforcement has become deeply rooted in the legal systems of its Contracting States and has contributed to the status of international arbitration as today's normal means of resolving commercial disputes.

3. States adhering to the New York Convention undertake to give effect to an agreement to arbitrate when seized of an action in a matter covered by an arbitration agreement, and to recognize and enforce awards made in other States, subject to specific limited exceptions.

4. By imposing stricter rules on recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards, a Contracting State will breach its obligations under the Convention. This principle is reflected in article III, which grants Contracting States the discretion to determine the applicable rules for recognition and enforcement so long as, in doing so, they do not impose "substantially more onerous conditions or higher fees or charges on the recognition or enforcement of arbitral awards [...] than are imposed on the recognition or enforcement of domestic arbitral awards."

[1]United Nations, Treaty Series, vol. 330, No. 4739; UN DOC E/CONF.26/SR. 1-25, Summary Records of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, New York, 20 May - 10 June 1958.

[2]New York Convention, article XII.

[3]The current status of the New York Convention is available on the UNCITRAL website [http://www.uncitral.org/uncitral/en/uncitral_texts/arbitration/NYConvention_status.html].

[4]See Renaud Sorieul, The Secretary of UNCITRAL, on the 1958 New York Convention Guide website [available at http://newyorkconvention1958.org].

The New York Convention sets a maximum level of control at the recognition and enforcement stage

5. The conditions for recognition and enforcement in the Convention establish a "ceiling", or maximum level of control, which Contracting States may exert over arbitral awards and arbitration agreements. On the other hand, Contracting States are free to apply more liberal rules than those set forth in the Convention. The Convention's aim is not to limit the pre-existing freedom of the Contracting States to treat foreign arbitral awards or arbitration agreements as favourably as they please, but rather to facilitate their recognition and enforcement to the greatest extent possible.

6. The New York Convention's pro-enforcement policy is enshrined at article VII (1), which is considered to be one of its cornerstones.[5] Known as the "more-favourable-right" provision, article VII (1) provides that, in addition to the Convention, a party seeking recognition and enforcement shall not be deprived of the right to rely on a more favourable domestic law or treaty. In accordance with article VII (1), a Contracting State will not be in breach of the Convention by enforcing arbitral awards and arbitration agreements pursuant to more liberal regimes than the Convention itself.

7. The New York Convention therefore exists as a safeguard which guarantees a minimum standard of liberalism in its Contracting States, but which does not need to be applied. Today, in some of the most pro-arbitration jurisdictions, the number of cases referring to Convention is scarce precisely because the ordinary rules governing the recognition and enforcement of awards are more liberal and, in accordance with article VII (1), routinely applied without any need to refer to the Convention.[6]

The New York Convention contains its own mechanism for adapting to the development of international arbitration

8. While the New York Convention is undoubtedly the most significant international instrument for the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards, it does not operate in isolation. In some circumstances, other international treaties, or the

[5]One commentator has described this provision as the "treasure, the ingenious idea" of the New York Convention. See Philippe Fouchard, *Suggestions pour accroître l'efficacité internationale des sentences arbitrales*, 1998 Rev. Arb. 653, 663.

[6]See Dominique Hascher, Les perspectives françaises sur le contrôle de la sentence internationale ou étrangère, I (2) McGill Journal of Dispute Resolution 1 (2015).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

domestic law of the country where enforcement is sought, will also apply to the question of whether a foreign arbitral award should be recognized and enforced.

9. The genius of the New York Convention is to have foreseen, and made provision for, the progressive liberalization of the law of international arbitration. Article VII (1), which governs the relationship between the Convention and other applicable treaties and laws, derogates from the rules that normally govern the application of conflicting provisions of treaties, and provides that in the event that more than one regime might apply, the rule which shall prevail is neither the more recent nor the more specific, but instead that which is more favourable to the recognition and enforcement.[7]

10. While in recent years, some important scholars have suggested that the time has come to initiate a revision of the New York Convention,[8] there is no danger in leaving the Convention in its current form.[9] Article VII (1), which will grow in importance with the continued modernization of national arbitration laws, ensures that the Convention cannot freeze the development of international arbitration. It is this provision which has allowed courts in the Contracting States to advance many of the most important innovations underpinning the modern system of international arbitration. The Convention therefore possesses the necessary tools to ensure its durability while permitting the courts of Contracting States to continually improve upon it.

The New York Convention has been applied in a consistent manner

11. This Guide serves as a reference tool that collates a wide range of decisions on the New York Convention and analyses extensively how courts of Contracting States interpret and apply its provisions.

---

[7]See the comments of the Swiss Federal Supreme Court in *Denysiana S.A. v. Jassica S.A.*, March 14, 1984, Arrêts du Tribunal Fédéral 110 Ib 191, 194, describing that article VII (1) enshrines the principle of maximum effectiveness ("*règle d'efficacité maximale*").

[8]See, in particular, Pieter Sanders, *A Twenty Years' Review of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards*, 13 Int'l Law 269 (1979); Jan Paulsson, *Towards Minimum Standards of Enforcement: Feasibility of a Model Law*, in Improving the Efficiency of Arbitration Agreements and Awards: 40 Years of Application of the New York Convention 574 (A.J. van den Berg ed., 1998); Albert Jan van den Berg, *Hypothetical Draft Convention on the International Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and Awards*, AJB Rev 06 (May 2008).

[9]See Emmanuel Gaillard, *The Urgency of Not Revising the New York Convention*, in 50 Years of the New York Convention: ICCA International Arbitration Conference 689 (A.J. van den Berg ed., 2009); see also V.V. Veeder, *Is There a Need to Revise the New York Convention?*, in The Review of International Arbitral Awards, IAI series on International Arbitration No. 6, 183 (2010).

12. The practices highlighted in the following chapters demonstrate that, despite the diversity of the Contracting States' legal systems, the interpretation and application of the Convention has been rather consistent and in conformity with the Convention's policy of favouring recognition and enforcement. Many Contracting States which first adhered to a more interventionist approach to international arbitration have, in accordance with obligations undertaken under the Convention, moved towards a liberal regime that limits court control over the arbitral process.

13. Almost 60 years after its creation, the New York Convention continues to fulfil its objective of facilitating the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards, and in the years to come, will guarantee the continued growth of international arbitration and create conditions in which cross-border economic exchanges can flourish.

Article I

1. This Convention shall apply to the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards made in the territory of a State other than the State where the recognition and enforcement of such awards are sought, and arising out of differences between persons, whether physical or legal. It shall also apply to arbitral awards not considered as domestic awards in the State where their recognition and enforcement are sought.

2. The term "arbitral awards" shall include not only awards made by arbitrators appointed for each case but also those made by permanent arbitral bodies to which the parties have submitted.

3. When signing, ratifying or acceding to this Convention, or notifying extension under article X hereof, any State may on the basis of reciprocity declare that it will apply the Convention to the recognition and enforcement of awards made only in the territory of another Contracting State. It may also declare that it will apply the Convention only to differences arising out of legal relationships, whether contractual or not, which are considered as commercial under the national law of the State making such declaration.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article I as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704 and annex.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822, annexes I-II; E/2822/Add.1, annex I; E/2822/Add.2, Annex I; E/2822/

Add.4, annex I; E/2822/Add.5, annex I; E/2822/Add.6, annex I; E/CONF. 26/3; E/CONF.26/3/Add.1.

- Activities of Inter-Governmental and Non-Governmental Organizations in the Field of International Commercial Arbitration: Consolidated Report by the Secretary-General: E/CONF.26/4.
- Comments on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: Note by the Secretary-General: E/CONF. 26/2.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/7; E/CONF.26/L.6; E/CONF.26/L.7; E/CONF.26/L.8/Corr.1; E/CONF.26/L.9; E/CONF.26/L.9/Rev.1; E/CONF.26/L.10; E/CONF.26/L.10/Rev.1; E/CONF.26/L.12; E/CONF.26/L.13; E/CONF.26/L.14; E/CONF.26/L.16; E/CONF.26/C.1/L.1; E/CONF.26/C.1/L.2; E/CONF.26/L.26; E/CONF.26/L.27; E/CONF.26/L.28; E/CONF. 26/L.29; E/CONF.26/L. 29/Corr. 1; E/CONF.26/C.1/L.6.
- Further Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.41.
- Report of Working Party I: E/CONF.26/L.42; E/CONF.26/L.49.
- Text of Articles Adopted by the Conference: E/CONF.26/L.46; E/CONF.26/L.58.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/L.61; E/CONF.26/8.
- New Text of Articles I (3), V (1)*(a)*, *(b)*, and *(e)* Adopted by the Conference at its 23rd Meeting: E/CONF.26/L.63.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Fifth, Sixth, Seventh, Eighth, Ninth, Fifteenth, Sixteenth, Twenty-first, Twenty-third and Twenty-fourth Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR.5; E/CONF.26/SR.6; E/CONF.26/SR.7; E/CONF.26/SR.8; E/CONF.26/SR.9; E/CONF.26/SR.15; E/CONF.26/SR.16; E/CONF.26/SR.21; E/CONF.26/SR.23; E/CONF.26/SR.24.
- Summary Record of the Second Meeting of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.2.
- Summary Record of the Third Meeting of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.3.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

Introduction

1. Article I sets out in broad terms the scope of the New York Convention.[10] Article I (1) provides that the New York Convention applies to the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards "made in the territory of a State other than the State where the recognition and enforcement of such awards are sought, and arising out of differences between persons, whether physical or legal". It also states that the New York Convention applies to awards that are "not considered as domestic awards in the State where their recognition and enforcement are sought". Article I (2) provides that the term "arbitral awards" shall include not only awards made by arbitrators appointed for each case but also those made by permanent arbitral bodies to which the parties have submitted". Finally, article I (3) allows each Contracting State, when signing, ratifying or acceding to the Convention, to restrict the scope of application of the Convention by making the reservations allowed by the Convention. The first reservation, known as the "reciprocity reservation", allows a State to apply the Convention only to awards made in the territory of another Contracting State. The second reservation, known as the "commercial reservation", allows a State to apply the Convention only to "differences arising out of legal relationships, whether contractual or not, which are considered as commercial under the national law of the State making such declaration".

2. Article I of the New York Convention "marks a clear departure" from the Geneva Convention on the Execution of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 1927 (the "1927 Geneva Convention") in two respects.[11]

3. *First*, article I gives the New York Convention a broader scope than the 1927 Geneva Convention. Pursuant to article I (1), the New York Convention applies to awards made in any foreign State, irrespective of whether that State is a Contracting State.[12] During the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration convened for the preparation and adoption of the Convention ("the

[10]Although article I does not refer to arbitration agreements, such agreements fall within the scope of the Convention. Because article II was a late addition, neither article I nor the other provisions of the Convention were modified to reflect this addition. See the chapter of the Guide on article II, paras. 2-3.

[11]*Gas Authority of India Ltd. v. Spie Capag SA and others*, High Court of Delhi, India, 15 October 1993, Suit No. 1440, IA No. 5206.

[12]Javier Rubinstein, Georgina Fabian, *The Territorial Scope of the New York Convention and Its Implementation in Common and Civil Law Countries*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 91, 95 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

Conference"), it was noted that maintaining the wording of the 1927 Geneva Convention, which provided for enforcement of only those awards that were made in a Contracting State, could give rise to the "paradoxical" situation where the award creditor and award debtor are both nationals of Contracting States, but the award cannot be enforced under the Convention because the State in which the award was made is not a party to the Convention.[13] To avoid such a situation, the drafters of the New York Convention discarded the mandatory reciprocity requirement contained in the 1927 Geneva Convention and replaced it with an opt-in reciprocity reservation at article I (3).

4. *Second*, the 1927 Geneva Convention applied only to arbitral awards that were rendered in proceedings "between persons who are subject to the jurisdiction of one of the High Contracting Parties".[14] Considering this requirement to be "vague and ambiguous",[15] the *ad hoc* Committee established by the United Nations Economic and Social Council (the "ECOSOC *ad hoc* Committee") removed it from the 1955 draft Convention. The Yugoslav delegate then suggested that the requirement be reinstated,[16] but this proposal was expressly rejected by the other delegates, thereby indicating that, unlike in the case of the 1927 Geneva Convention, the scope of application of the New York Convention does not depend on the nationality or residence of the parties to the arbitration proceedings.[17]

5. Article I, like the rest of the Convention, was drafted with the aim of "going further than the Geneva Convention in facilitating the enforcement of foreign arbitral awards".[18] By making the reciprocity requirement optional and doing away with the nationality or residence requirement, article I ensures that the New York Convention has a broad scope of application.

---

[13] *Travaux préparatoires*, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Report by the Secretary-General, Annex II, Comments by Non-Governmental Organizations, E/2822, p. 8.

[14] See article 1 of the 1927 Geneva Convention. See also *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Comments on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Note by the Secretary-General, E/CONF.26/2, p. 2.

[15] *Travaux préparatoires*, Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, E/2704, E/AC.42/4/Rev.1., p. 7.

[16] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Consideration of the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/L.12. See also *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Sixteenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.16, p. 6.

[17] The nationality or residence may, however, play a role in the context of "non-domestic awards". An enforcing court may deem an award rendered in its territory "non-domestic" if one or both parties to arbitration are foreign or reside abroad. It should be noted that, in this regard, the nationality is used to enlarge the scope of the Convention, rather than to restrict it. See below paras. 53-55. See also Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 15 (1981); Georgios Petrochilos, Procedural Law in International Arbitration 360, para. 8.54 (2004).

[18] *Travaux préparatoires*, Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, E/2704, E/AC.42/4/Rev.1., p. 5.

Analysis

Article I (1)

A. Meaning of "recognition and enforcement"

6. Pursuant to article I (1), the New York Convention applies to the "recognition and enforcement" of awards which fall within its scope. The Convention does not apply to court actions seeking to set aside awards or to stay ongoing arbitration proceedings.

a. Defining and distinguishing "recognition" and "enforcement"

7. The New York Convention does not define the terms "recognition" and "enforcement" and case law interpreting these terms is scarce. Of the few reported cases, a Colombian court has held that, while "recognition" concerns recognizing the legal force and effect of an award, "enforcement" concerns the forced execution of an award previously recognized by the same State.[19]

8. Commentators are in broad agreement that "recognition" refers to the process of considering an arbitral award as binding but not necessarily enforceable, while "enforcement" refers to the process of giving effect to an award.[20]

9. A closely related issue to that of the definition of the terms "recognition" and "enforcement" is whether a party must seek recognition and enforcement together or whether it can independently seek the recognition of an award.

10. In a 1981 decision, the German Supreme Court construed "recognition and enforcement" to mean that the two actions were interrelated and could not be sought separately.[21]

---

[19] *Drummond Ltd. v. Ferrovias en Liquidación, Ferrocariles Nacionales de Colombia S.A. (FENOCO)*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 19 December 2011, 11001-0203-000-2008-01760-00. As regards the meaning of "enforcement", see also *Pavan s.r.l. v. Leng d'Or, S.A.*, Court of First Instance, Spain, 11 June 2007, 584/06, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 444 (2010).

[20] Javier Rubinstein, Georgina Fabian, *The Territorial Scope of the New York Convention and Its Implementation in Common and Civil Law Countries*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 91, 93 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Bernd Ehle, *Commentary on Article I*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 26, 77 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[21] *Compagnia Italiana di Assicurazioni (COMITAS) S.p.A., Società di Assicurazioni Gia Mutua Marittima Nazionale (MUTUAMAR) S.p.A. and others v. Schwartzmeer und Ostsee Versicherungsaktiengesellschaft (SOVAG)*, Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 8 October 1981, VIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 366 (1983).

11. Courts from other jurisdictions have considered that recognition can be requested on its own. For example, the Indian Supreme Court held that recognition may be requested "as a shield against re-agitation of issues with which the award deals".[22] The same court found that the successful party to an award could rely on the award where proceedings were brought against it in respect of a matter which had already been dealt with in the award.

12. Similarly, courts from other jurisdictions, including Portugal[23] and the United States,[24] have held that recognition can be sought separately from enforcement.

13. This approach finds support in the *travaux préparatoires* to the Convention[25] and in commentary.[26]

b. Non-applicability of the Convention to setting aside proceedings

14. The Convention does not apply to setting aside proceedings. This has been confirmed by national courts. For instance, a Hong Kong court has held *obiter* that "various decisions have made clear that the Convention is not applicable for setting aside awards".[27] Similarly, numerous United States decisions have noted that while a petitioner's request for recognition of an award was properly brought under the New York Convention, a respondent's cross-motion to set aside the award was governed by domestic law on arbitration and not the New York Convention.[28]

---

[22] *Brace Transport Corporation of Monrovia, Bermuda v. Orient Middle East Lines Ltd. and others*, Supreme Court, India, 12 October 1993, Civil Appeals Nos 5438-39 of 1993.

[23] Évora Court of Appeal, Portugal, 31 January 2008, 1141/06-2.

[24] *Yusuf Ahmed Alghanim & Sons, W.L.L. v. Toys "R" Us, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 10 September 1997, 126 F.3d 15.

[25] *Travaux préparatoires*, Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, Summary Record of the First Meeting, E/AC.42/SR.1, p.7. Commenting on the title of an early draft proposed by the ICC, the delegate of Belgium remarked that the purpose of the Convention "would be made clearer" if the title of the ICC draft was amended to refer to "recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards", rather than referring to the enforcement of awards only.

[26] Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 966, para. 1667 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999). See also Javier Rubinstein, Georgina Fabian, *The Territorial Scope of the New York Convention and Its Implementation in Common and Civil Law Countries*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 91, 93 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 243-45 (1981).

[27] *Shenzhen Nan Da Industrial and Trade United Co. Ltd. v. FM International Ltd. [HK]*, High Court, Supreme Court of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, 2 March 1992, 1991 No. MP 1249.

[28] *Yusuf Ahmed Alghanim & Sons, W.L.L. v. Toys "R" Us, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 10 September 1997, 126 F.3d 15. See also *Federal Insurance Company, as subrogee of Transammonia, Inc. v. Bergesen D.Y. ASA OSLO, as agents of the Norwegian Flag LP G/C "Hugo N" and its owner, General Gas Carrier Corporation, Limited*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 7 September 2012, 12 Civ. 3851 (PAE); *ESCO Corporation v. Bradken Resources PTY Ltd.*, District Court, District of Oregon, Portland Division, United States of America, 31 January 2011, 10-788-AC.

15. In the same vein, French courts[29] and Indian courts[30] have held that the New York Convention does not apply to setting aside applications.

16. Commentators are in agreement that the New York Convention does not apply to an application to set aside an award.[31]

c. Non-applicability of the Convention to actions to stay arbitration proceedings

17. The Convention does not apply to actions to stay arbitration proceedings. This has been confirmed by the scarce case law that exists on this issue. A United States court has held that the New York Convention makes "no mention of actions to restrain a pending or ongoing arbitration" and that, on that basis, the Convention does not apply to actions to stay arbitration proceedings.[32]

B. Meaning of "arbitral awards"

18. The Convention does not define "arbitral awards". During the negotiation of article I, the Austrian delegate noted that "it will depend on the law of the State in which an award is to be enforced whether a particular decision is to be regarded as an arbitral award".[33] This suggests that it is up to the courts of the Contracting States where recognition and enforcement is sought to determine when a decision can be characterized as an "arbitral award" under the New York Convention.

19. Several courts have held that, in determining what is meant by the term "arbitral award", consideration must be given to the object and purpose of the New York

---

[29] *SNC Facciano Giuseppe v. Société Coopérative Agricole Nouricia*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 9 June 2011, 10/11062. See also *Commandement des Forces Aériennes de la République Islamique d'Iran v. Société Bendone Derossi International Limited Partnership*, Court of Cassation, France, 5 May 1987, 85-13.162; *Société Maatschappij Voor Industríele Research en Ontwikkeling v. M. Lievremont et autres*, Court of Cassation, France, 25 May 1983, 82-11.699; *General National Maritime Transport Company v. Société Götaverken Arendal A.B.*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 21 February 1980.

[30] See, e.g., *Compagnie Saint Gobain Pont-à-Mousson v. Fertilizer Corporation of India Ltd.*, High Court of Delhi, India, 28 August 1970, ILR 1970 Delhi 927.

[31] Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 20 (1981); Javier Rubinstein, Georgina Fabian, *The Territorial Scope of the New York Convention and Its Implementation in Common and Civil Law Countries*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 91, 94 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

[32] *Firooz Ghassabian v. Fatollah Hematian et al.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 27 August 2008, 08 Civ. 4400 SAS.

[33] *Travaux préparatoires*, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Report by the Secretary-General, Annex I, Comments by Governments, E/2822, p. 10.

Convention.[34] For example, a Colombian court has held that the term "arbitral award" is to be construed in accordance with the spirit of the New York Convention.[35]

20. Courts have generally accepted that the determination whether a decision is an award depends on its nature and content, not on the label given to it by the arbitrators.[36] For example, a United States court has held that a decision need not be titled "award" for it to be enforceable under the New York Convention.[37] Similarly, it would not suffice for arbitrators to label a decision "award" to make it an award within the meaning of the New York Convention.[38]

21. Courts have found that only those decisions made by arbitrators that determine all or some aspects of the dispute, including jurisdiction,[39] in a final and binding manner, can be considered "arbitral awards" within the meaning of the New York Convention.[40] Accordingly, courts have found that in order for a decision to be considered an "arbitral award" under the New York Convention it needs to (i) be made by arbitrators, (ii) resolve a dispute or part thereof in a final manner, and (iii) be binding.[41]

22. *First*, reported case law shows that only decisions made by arbitrators are to be considered "awards" within the meaning of the New York Convention. For example, a United States court has held that a decision by the Permanent Court of Arbitration ("PCA") denying a request for arbitration on the basis of a

[34] *Compania Italiana di Assicurazioni (COMITAS) S.p.A., Società di Assicurazioni Gia Mutua Marittima Nazionale (MUTUAMAR) S.p.A. and others v. Schwartzmeer und Ostsee Versicherungsaktiengesellschaft (SOVAG)*, Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 8 October 1981, VIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 366 (1983); *Merck & Co. Inc., Merck Frosst Canada Inc., Frosst Laboratories Inc. v. Tecnoquimicas S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 26 January 1999, E-7474.

[35] *Merck & Co. Inc., Merck Frosst Canada Inc., Frosst Laboratories Inc. v. Tecnoquimicas S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 26 January 1999, E-7474.

[36] *Blackwater Security Consulting LLC et al. v. Richard P. Nordan*, District Court, Eastern District of North Carolina, Northern Division, United States of America, 21 January 2011, 2:06-CV-49-F; *Merck & Co. Inc., Merck Frosst Canada Inc., Frosst Laboratories Inc. v. Tecnoquimicas S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 26 January 1999, E-7474; *Publicis Communication v. Publicis S.A., True North Communications Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Seventh Circuit, United States of America, 14 March 2000, 206 F.3d 725; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 18 January 2007, III ZB 35/06.

[37] *Blackwater Security Consulting LLC et al. v. Richard P. Nordan*, District Court, Eastern District of North Carolina, Northern Division, United States of America, 21 January 2011, 2:06-CV-49-F.

[38] See in the context of setting aside proceedings, *Braspetro Oil Services Company - Brasoil v. The Management and Implementation Authority of the Great Man-Made River Project*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 1 July 1999, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 296 (1999). In this case, the court held that the "qualification of [a decision as an] award does not depend on the terms used by the arbitrators or by the parties." As a result, the court held that a decision by which the tribunal resolved in a final manner the dispute between the parties was an award, notwithstanding the fact that the tribunal characterized its decision as an "order".

[39] See the chapter of the Guide on article I, paras. 28-32.

[40] For a discussion of the effect of article I (2) and the notion of arbitral award within the meaning of the New York Convention, see the chapter of the Guide on article I, paras. 65-68.

[41] See the chapter of the Guide on article V (1)*(e)*, paras. 5-19.

prima facie screening of the documentation submitted by the parties did not constitute an award within the meaning of the New York Convention. The court added that the decision of the PCA could not be regarded as an "award" because "no arbitrators were ever appointed to adjudicate the parties' dispute".[42] Similarly, a United States court has held that a decision made by a third party determining a company's share price was not an award made by arbitrators and the New York Convention was therefore inapplicable.[43] Commentators are in broad agreement that decisions rendered in valuation and expert determination proceedings are not "awards made by arbitrators" and cannot be recognized and enforced under the New York Convention.[44]

23. *Second*, reported case law shows that decisions that finally resolve a dispute, either in whole or in part, are considered to be "awards" within the meaning of the Convention.[45] For example, an Australian court held that for a decision to be an "arbitral award" within the meaning of the New York Convention, it needs to finally determine all or at least some of the matters submitted to the arbitral tribunal.[46] Similarly, a United States court held that for a decision to be regarded as an "award", it needs to finally and definitely dispose of a separate independent claim.[47] In construing the "finality" requirement, a Colombian court held that awards are final "not because they put an end to the arbitration or to the tribunal's function, but because they settle in a final manner some of the disputes that have been submitted to arbitration".[48]

24. *Third*, reported case law shows that only a decision that is binding on the parties can be regarded as an "arbitral award" within the meaning of the New York

---

[42] *Marks 3- Zet-Ernst Marks GmbH & Co. KG v. Presstek, Inc.*, District Court, District of New Hampshire, United States of America, 9 August 2005, Civ.05-CV-121-JD, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 1256 (2006). See also in the context of setting aside of an award, *Société Opinter France v. Société Dacomex*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 15 January 1985, 1986 Rev. Arb. 87.

[43] *Frydman v. Cosmair Inc.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 25 July 1996, 94 Civ. 3772 LAP.

[44] Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 19, para. 25 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Bernd Ehle, *Commentary on Article I*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards—Commentary 26, 37 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Domenico Di Pietro, *What Constitutes an Arbitral Award Under the New York Convention*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 139, 145 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Charles Jarrosson, La notion d'arbitrage 123, 158, 162 (1987).

[45] See the chapter of the Guide on article I, paras. 26-40.

[46] *Resort Condominiums International Inc. v. Ray Bolwell and Resort Condominiums, Pty. Ltd.*, Supreme Court of Queensland, Australia, 29 October 1993, XX Y.B. Com. Arb. 628 (1995).

[47] *Hall Steel Company v. Metalloyd Ltd.*, District Court, Eastern District of Michigan, Southern Division, United States of America, 7 June 2007, 492 F. Supp. 2d 715, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 978 (2008).

[48] *Drummond Ltd. v. Instituto Nacional de Concesiones—INCO et al.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 19 December 2011 and 3 May 2012, XXXVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 205 (2012) (with English translation). See also *Resort Condominiums International Inc. v. Ray Bolwell and Resort Condominiums, Pty. Ltd.*, Supreme Court of Queensland, Australia, 29 October 1993, XX Y.B. Com. Arb. 628 (1995).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Convention.[49] For example, a German court has held that an award was binding because it was not subject to appeal either before another arbitral tribunal or a national court.[50] Applying a similar approach, the French Court of Cassation refused to enforce an award on the ground that it was not binding because one of the parties was seeking review of the award before another arbitral tribunal.[51]

25. Courts have applied the above two criteria—namely, the finality and the binding effect of an award—to decisions made by arbitrators when determining whether particular decisions qualify as "arbitral awards" under the Convention.

a. Procedural orders

26. Courts have held that if a procedural order resolves an issue between the parties in a final manner, such order can be characterized as an "award" capable of being enforced under the New York Convention. For instance, the United States Court of Appeals for the Seventh Circuit held that a procedural order by which a tribunal directed one party to turn over certain tax records to the other was "final" and thus subject to recognition under the New York Convention.[52] Another United States court has decided that a "Termination Order" ending arbitration proceedings for failure of the parties to pay the arbitration fees was a final award and enforceable under the Convention.[53]

27. An Australian court has refused enforcement of an "Interim Arbitration Order and Award" by which the tribunal enjoined—until the final conclusion of the arbitration—a party from carrying out certain activities relating to a licence contract, such as, *inter alia*, entering into a similar contract with another party or falling to carry out provisions of the licence contract. The court found that the "Interim Arbitration Order and Award" did not amount to an enforceable award as it was of an "interlocutory and procedural nature" and did not attempt to finally solve the dispute between the parties.[54]

---

[49]See the chapters of the Guide on article IV, paras. 68-72, and article V (1)*(e)*, paras. 13-14. The burden of proving that an award has not become binding is on the party opposing enforcement.

[50]See Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 18 January 1990, III ZR 269/88.

[51]*La Société Diag v. The Czech Republic*, Court of Cassation, France, 5 March 2014, 12-29.112.

[52]*Publicis Communication v. Publicis S.A., True North Communications Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Seventh Circuit, United States of America, 14 March 2000, 206 F.3d 725.

[53]*Blackwater Security Consulting LLC et al. v. Richard P. Nordan*, District Court, Eastern District of North Carolina, Northern Division, United States of America, 21 January 2011, 2:06-CV-49-F.

[54]*Resort Condominiums International Inc. v. Ray Bolwell and Resort Condominiums, Pty. Ltd.*, Supreme Court of Queensland, Australia, 29 October 1993, XX Y.B. Com. Arb. 628 (1995).

b. Awards on jurisdiction

28. An issue that has arisen before courts is whether awards on jurisdiction are enforceable under the Convention. Reported case law on this issue is scarce and concerns the recognition and enforcement of awards that deal with both jurisdiction and the allocation of costs incurred during the jurisdictional phase of the proceedings.

29. Of the few reported cases, a United States court has held that an "Interim Final Arbitration Award" affirming jurisdiction and containing an assessment of costs was not enforceable under the New York Convention on the ground that arbitration proceedings were still ongoing and that the party seeking confirmation did not show that the enforcement of the award on jurisdiction was necessary to "preserve the status quo".[55] However, relying on previous case law, the court noted that an award need not conclusively resolve all matters in dispute for it to be eligible for recognition under the Convention, provided that the party seeking recognition and enforcement is able to identify an immediate need for relief.

30. The Supreme Court of Queensland, Australia, has held that an interim award refusing jurisdiction and containing a decision on costs is enforceable under the New York Convention. The court noted that the fact that "there was no determination [...] on the merits can have no relevance to the ability of the Respondent [...] to enforce the interim award [...] with respect to the costs".[56]

31. In one case, a Colombian court refused to grant enforcement of an "Interlocutory Award on Jurisdiction" on the ground that an award affirming the jurisdiction of a tribunal does not "substantially put an end to the arbitral proceedings and settle the dispute" and thus cannot be considered as falling under the New York Convention.[57]

32. Commentators have taken the view that awards on jurisdiction can be considered as genuine "awards" capable of recognition and enforcement under the New York Convention.[58]

---

[55] *Hall Steel Company v. Metalloyd Ltd.*, District Court, Eastern District of Michigan, Southern Division, United States of America, 7 June 2007, 492 F. Supp. 2d 715, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 978 (2008).

[56] *Austin John Montague v. Commonwealth Development Corporation*, Supreme Court of Queensland, Australia, 27 June 2000, Appeal No. 8159 of 1999, DC No. 29 of 1999, XXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 744 (2001). See also Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 18 January 2007, III ZB 35/06; Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamburg, Germany, 14 March 2006, 6 Sch 11/05.

[57] *Merck & Co. Inc., Merck Frosst Canada Inc. & Frosst Laboratories Inc. v. Tecnoquimicas S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 1 March 1999, E-7474 (unofficial translation).

[58] Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 739, para. 1357 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Domenico Di Pietro, *What Constitutes an Arbitral Award Under the New York Convention*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 139, 153 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 2935-36 (2014).

c. Interim or partial awards

33. Courts have considered whether interim or partial awards are enforceable under the Convention. For example, a Bulgarian court has held that a partial award requiring one party to pay certain sums to the other was not enforceable under the Convention because it did not finally settle the dispute between the parties. The court added that the lack of finality was further demonstrated by the fact that the arbitration proceedings were still pending.[59]

34. Other courts have held that an interim or partial award amounts to an "award" within the meaning of the Convention, if it finally determines at least part of the dispute referred to arbitration.[60] For example, a German court held that an interim award containing a binding decision on some of the claims advanced is capable of recognition and enforcement under the New York Convention.[61] Similarly, the Supreme Court of Justice of Colombia held that a "Partial Award" amounted to an "award" within the meaning of the New York Convention. In so doing, the court noted that the award settled in a final manner "several of the (counter-) claims".[62] Similarly, a United States court held that "an interim award that finally and definitely disposes of a separate, independent claim may be confirmed notwithstanding the absence of an award that finally disposes of all claims that were submitted to arbitration".[63] Noting that a partial award decided claims that were severable from the rest of the claims in the pending arbitration proceedings, the court granted recognition of the partial award under the New York Convention.

35. In an *obiter dictum*, the Italian Court of Cassation noted that a partial award on liability could be enforced in Italy under the New York Convention.[64] The Court of Cassation added that a final award on the level of damages can be considered separately from an interim award on liability for the purposes of enforcement.

d. Consent awards

36. The Convention is silent on the question of its applicability to decisions that record the terms of a settlement between parties. During the Conference, the issue

[59] *ECONERG Ltd. v. National Electricity Company AD*, Supreme Court of Appeal, Civil Collegium, Fifth Civil Department, Bulgaria, 23 February 1999, 356/99, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 678 (2000).

[60] *Resort Condominiums International Inc. v. Ray Bolwell and Resort Condominiums, Pty. Ltd.*, Supreme Court of Queensland, Australia, 29 October 1993, XX Y.B. Com. Arb. 628 (1995).

[61] Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Thüringen, Germany, 8 August 2007, 4 Sch 03/06.

[62] *Drummond Ltd. v. Instituto Nacional de Concesiones—INCO et al.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 19 December 2011 and 3 May 2012, XXXVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 205 (2012) (with English translation).

[63] *Alcatel Space, S.A. v. Alcatel Space Industries, S.A. and others*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 25 June 2002, 02 Civ.2674 SAS, XXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 990 (2003).

[64] *Walter Thosti Boswau Bauaktiengesellschaft v. Costruire Coop. srl.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 7 June 1995, 6426, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 727 (1997).

of the application of the Convention to such decisions was raised, but not decided upon.[65] Reported case law does not address this issue.

e. *Lodi Irrituali*

37. The question of whether an award rendered in an *arbitrato irrituale* (informal arbitration) falls within the scope of the New York Convention has also arisen. An *arbitrato irrituale* is based on the parties' intentions and results in an award which is essentially a contract. Awards rendered in such proceedings bind the parties as soon as they are rendered, but can only be enforced after being confirmed by a competent court.[66]

38. The German Supreme Court held that the Convention applies neither to the recognition nor the enforcement of a *lodo irrituale*, i.e., an award rendered in an *arbitrato irrituale*. The court noted that a *lodo irrituale* can be compared to an interlocutory decision "because it offers the possibility of obtaining a judgment thereon by which it becomes a final judgment".[67] A similar view has been taken by another German court that has held that an award which has the effect of a contract and not a judgment cannot be enforced under the New York Convention.[68]

39. On the other hand, in the context of proceedings in which one party sought a referral to arbitration pursuant to article II of the Convention, the Italian Court of Cassation noted *obiter* that a *lodo irrituale* falls within the scope of the Convention.[69] The court reasoned that the fact that the New York Convention refers to "an arbitral award which has a binding force between the parties, [...] does not signify as such that the binding force must necessarily operate on the judicial level".[70] The court added that the New York Convention has eliminated the *double*

[65] *Travaux préparatoires*, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Report by the Secretary-General, Annex I, Comments by Governments, E/2822, pp. 7, 10; *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Consideration of the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/L.26. See also *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Activities of Inter-Governmental and Non-Governmental Organizations in the Field of International Commercial Arbitration, Consolidated Report by the Secretary-General, E/CONF.26/4, p. 26.

[66] Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht [BayObLG], Germany, 22 November 2002, 4 Z Sch 13/02, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 754 (2004).

[67] *Compagnia Italiana di Assicurazioni (COMITAS) S.p.A., Società di Assicurazioni Gia Mutua Marittima Nazionale (MUTUAMAR) S.p.A. and others v. Schwartzmeer und Ostsee Versicherungsaktiengesellschaft (SOVAG)*, Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 8 October 1981, VIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 366 (1983) (with English translation).

[68] Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht [BayObLG], Germany, 22 November 2002, 4 Z Sch 13/02, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 754 (2004).

[69] *Gaetano Butera v. Pietro e Romano Pagnan*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 18 September 1978, 4167, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 296 (1979); *Colella Legnami S.p.A. v. Carey Hirsch Lumber Company*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 6 July 1982, 4039, IX Y.B. Com. Arb. 429 (1984).

[70] *Gaetano Butera v. Pietro e Romano Pagnan*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 18 September 1978, 4167, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 296 (1979) (with English translation).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

exequatur requirement, and that therefore there is no need to obtain an exequatur decision in the State where a *lodo irrituale* was rendered in order for it to be enforceable under the Convention.[71] In a further decision, also in the context of referral proceedings, the Italian Court of Cassation stated *obiter* that the New York Convention should be interpreted "as broadly as possible", by taking into account "the difference in law and mentality in the various Contracting States".[72] The court reasoned that differences between a regular arbitration (i.e., *arbitrato rituale*) and an informal arbitration (i.e., *arbitrato irrituale*) should be irrelevant for the purposes of enforcement under the New York Convention.

40. Commentators are generally of the view that a *lodo irrituale* does not amount to an "arbitral award" under the New York Convention.[73]

C. Arbitral awards falling within the scope of the Convention

41. In the 1955 draft of the Convention, article I provided that the Convention applied to the "recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards made in the territory of a State other than the State in which such awards are relied upon". The 1955 draft of the Convention adopted a "territorial criterion" for determining the application of the Convention, focusing on the place where the award was rendered. The application of this territorial criterion excluded from the scope of the Convention awards that were rendered in the State where recognition and enforcement was sought. This made the 1955 draft of the Convention more restrictive than the 1927 Geneva Convention.[74]

42. Delegates from several countries considered that the narrow territorial approach taken by the ECOSOC *ad hoc* Committee placed undue emphasis on

[71] *Id.*

[72] *Colella Legnami S.p.A. v. Carey Hirsch Lumber Company*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 6 July 1982, 4039, IX Y.B. Com. Arb. 429 (1984) (with English translation).

[73] See Bernd Ehle, *Commentary on Article I*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 26, 40 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 47 (1981); Domenico Di Pietro, *What Constitutes an Arbitral Award Under the New York Convention*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 139, 148 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); *contra* Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 2925 (2014).

[74] Pursuant to article 1, the 1927 Geneva Convention applied to awards rendered "in the territory of one of the High Contracting Parties". This wording did not exclude from the scope of the 1927 Geneva Convention awards rendered in the States where enforcement was sought, provided that they were made between persons "subject to the jurisdiction of the Contracting States". See also *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Comments on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Note by the Secretary-General, E/CONF. 26/2, p. 2.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

the seat of arbitration, which was often chosen "as a matter of convenience"[75] and could be "fortuitous and artificial".[76] For these reasons, delegates from Austria, Belgium, Germany, France, Italy, Netherlands, Sweden and Switzerland jointly proposed a draft amendment to article I (1), pursuant to which the Convention would apply to awards "other than those considered as domestic in the country in which they are relied upon".[77]

43. The matter was referred to a working party composed of representatives of ten States, which was tasked with reconciling the views of those "favouring the principle of the place of arbitration and those favouring the principle of the nationality of the arbitral award".[78] The working party proposed a text of article I, which was later adopted by the Conference that included both the "territorial" and the "non-domestic" criteria.[79] The Convention thereby recognizes that Contracting States may want to consider factors other than the seat of the arbitration when determining whether an award falls within the scope of the Convention.[80]

a. Awards "made in the territory of a State other than the State where the recognition and enforcement of such awards are sought"

44. Pursuant to the first sentence of article I (1), the New York Convention applies to awards "made in the territory of a State other than the State where the recognition and enforcement of such awards are sought". Unless a State has made

[75] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Comments on Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Note by the Secretary-General, E/CONF.26/2, p. 3.

[76] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Fifth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.5, p. 8.

[77] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Consideration of the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards - Austria, Belgium, Federal Republic of Germany, France, Italy, Netherlands, Sweden, Switzerland: amendment to article I, paragraph 1, of the draft Convention, E/CONF.26/L.6.

[78] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Consideration of the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards , Report of Working Party No. 1 on article I, paragraph 1 and article II of the draft Convention (E/2704 and Corr.1), E/CONF.26/L.42. The Working Group was composed of: Colombia, Czechoslovakia, the Federal Republic of Germany, France, India, Israel, Italy, Turkey, the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics and the United Kingdom.

[79] See also *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Sixth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.6, p. 8.

[80] Phillipe Fouchard, *Quand un arbitrage est-il international*?, 1970 Rev. Arb. 59, 65. For the approach adopted under chapter 8 of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, see paragraph 50 of the Explanatory Note by the UNCITRAL secretariat on the Model Law, available on the Internet at www.unictral.org.

a reciprocity reservation pursuant to article I (3),[81] the Convention applies to awards made in any State, whether or not a Contracting State.[82]

45. In certain jurisdictions, the criterion expressed in the first sentence of article I (1) is the only one used to determine whether or not an award falls within the scope of the Convention. Thus, in several jurisdictions—including Australia,[83] Brazil,[84] Cameroon,[85] England,[86] Germany,[87] Luxembourg,[88] the Netherlands[89] and Spain[90]—an award falls within the scope of the New York Conven-

[81] See the chapter of the Guide on article I, paras. 70-82.

[82] *Black Sea Shipping Co. v. Italturist SpA*, Court of Appeal of Milan, Italy, 4 October 1991, 1618, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 415 (1993); Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Stuttgart, Germany, 18 October 1999, 5 U 89/98, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 700 (2004); *R S.A. v. A Ltd.*, Court of Justice of Geneva, Switzerland, 15 April 1999; *Cadena de Tiendas Venezolanas S.A. - Cativen v. GMR Asesores SL Inmomercado and others*, Court of Appeal of Madrid, Spain, 1 April 2009, 63/2009 (Section 10), XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 448 (2010). See also Bernd Ehle, *Commentary on Article I*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 26, 56 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Javier Rubinstein, Georgina Fabian, *The Territorial Scope of the New York Convention and Its Implementation in Common and Civil Law Countries*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 91, 95 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 12 (1981).

[83] *FG Hemisphere Associates LLC v. Democratic Republic of Congo*, Supreme Court of New South Wales, Australia, 1 November 2010, [2010] NSWSC; *Uganda Telecom Ltd. v. Hi-Tech Telecom Pty Ltd.*, Federal Court, Australia, 22 February 2011, NSD 171 of 2010. See also Section 3 of the 1974 Australian International Arbitration Act, amended in 2011 ("Foreign award means an arbitral award made, in pursuance of an arbitration agreement, in a country other than Australia, being an arbitral award in relation to which the Convention applies").

[84] *Nuovo Pignone SPA and others v. Petromec Inc. and Marítima Petróleo e Engenharia Ltda*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 24 May 2011, Special Appeal 1.231.554. See Article 34 of the 1996 Brazilian Arbitration Act ("A foreign arbitral award is an award made outside of the national territory").

[85] *African Petroleum Consultants (APC) v. Société Nationale de Raffinage*, High Court of Fako Division, Cameroon, 15 May 2002, Suit No. HCF/91/M/2001-2002.

[86] *Yukos Oil Co. v. Dardana Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 18 April 2002, [2002] EWCA Civ 543; *IPCO v. Nigerian National Petroleum Corp.*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 17 April 2008, [2008] EWHC 797 (Comm). See also Section 100(1) of the 1996 English Arbitration Act ("'[a] New York Convention award' means an award made, in pursuance of an arbitration agreement, in the territory of a state (other than the United Kingdom) which is a party to the New York Convention").

[87] German courts initially held that an award falls within the scope of the Convention when a foreign procedural law governs the arbitration proceedings, irrespective of the place where the award is made. After the adoption of the 1998 German Arbitration Act, German courts have held that the only relevant criterion to be taken into account when determining whether an award is domestic or falls within the scope of the Convention, is the geographical location where the award was rendered. See Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 28 November 2005, 34 Sch 019/05; Kammergericht [KG] Berlin, Germany, 17 April 2008, 20 Sch 02/08, XXXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 510 (2009).

[88] *Kersa Holding Company Luxembourg v. Infancourtage, Famajuk Investment and Isny*, Court of Appeal, Luxembourg, 24 November 1993, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 617 (1996).

[89] *LoJack Equipment Ireland Ltd. v. A, Voorzieningenrechter*, Court of First Instance of Amsterdam, Netherlands, 18 June 2009, 411230/KG RK 08-3652, XXXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 715 (2009). See also article 1075 of the 2004 Netherlands Arbitration Act ("An arbitral award made in a foreign State to which a treaty concerning recognition and enforcement is applicable may be recognized and enforced in the Netherlands").

[90] *Cadena de Tiendas Venezolanas S.A. - Cativen v. GMR Asesores SL Inmomercado and others, Audiencia Provincial*, Court of Appeal of Madrid, Spain, 1 April 2009, 63/2009 (Section 10), XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 448 (2010). See also article 46 (1) of the 2003 Spanish Arbitration Act as amended in 2011 ("A foreign award is an award which has been issued outside of Spanish territory").

tion only when it is made in a State other than the State where recognition and enforcement is sought.

46. The Indian Supreme Court initially held that awards rendered in the territory of another State under Indian procedural law were domestic awards and did not fall within the scope of the New York Convention.[91] More recently, the Indian Supreme Court has reversed this approach and held that awards rendered in the territory of another State "would only be subject to jurisdiction of Indian courts when [they] are sought to be enforced in India" in accordance with the legislative provisions implementing the New York Convention. The Court added that this holding would be applicable *ex nunc* "to all arbitration agreements executed [after 6 September 2012]".[92]

47. In China, courts have held that an award falls within the scope of the Convention when it is rendered under the auspices of a foreign arbitral institution. In one case, a court held that an award rendered in Paris fell within the scope of the New York Convention because it was rendered by "the arbitral tribunal of the International Chamber of Commerce" ("ICC").[93] In another case, a court held that an award rendered in Mongolia was subject to enforcement under the Convention, because it "was made by a Mongolian institution".[94] Chinese courts have further held that awards rendered in *ad hoc* arbitration proceedings are enforceable under the New York Convention provided that the seat of the arbitration is in a country other than China.[95]

48. With respect to jurisdictions—including Belgium, France, Panama, Peru, Sweden, Switzerland, and Tunisia—that allow parties, in certain circumstances, to opt out of setting aside actions altogether,[96] the question has arisen whether an award would still be enforceable under the New York Convention if the parties had availed themselves of this possibility. Although there is no reported case law on this issue, commentators have generally taken the view that the waiver does not

[91] *National Thermal Power Corp v. Singer Company and others*, Supreme Court, India, 7 May 1992, 1993 AIR 998; 1992 SCR (3) 106; 1992 SCC (3) 551; JT 1992 (3) 198; 1992 SCALE (1) 1034.

[92] *Bharat Aluminium Co. v. Kaiser Aluminium Technical Service Inc.*, Supreme Court, India, 6 September 2012, Civil Appeal No.7019 of 2005.

[93] *Hemofarm DD, MAG International Trade Holding DD, Suram Media Ltd. v. Jinan Yongning Pharmaceutical Co. Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 2 June 2008, [2008] Min Si Ta Zi No. 11 (unofficial translation).

[94] *Aiduoladuo Co., Ltd. v. Zhejiang Zhancheng Construction Group Co., Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 8 December 2009, [2009] Min Si Ta Zi No. 46 (unofficial translation).

[95] *Guangzhou Ocean Shipping Co., Ltd. v. Marships of Connecticut Company, Guangzhou Maritime Court*, China, 17 October 1990.

[96] See, e.g., article 1718 of the 2013 Belgian Judicial Code, article 1522 of the 2011 French Civil Code of Procedure; article 36 of the 2006 Panama Legislative Decree; article 63(8) of the Peruvian 2008 Legislative Arbitration Decree; article 51 of the 1999 Swedish Arbitration Act; article 192 of the 1987 Swiss Private International Law Act; article 78(6) of the 1993 Tunisian Arbitration Code.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

have any bearing on the enforceability of the award under the Convention,[97] and that a party may nevertheless seek the enforcement of such award, pursuant to the first sentence of article I (1) of the New York Convention.[98] Indeed, the Convention applies to awards made in the territory of another Contracting State, without requiring that a certain level of control be exercised in the territory of that State.[99]

b. *Awards "not considered as domestic awards in the State where their recognition and enforcement are sought"*

49. Pursuant to the second sentence of article I (1), the New York Convention also applies to awards "not considered as domestic" in the State where recognition and enforcement is sought. This "non-domestic" criterion is in addition to the "territorial criterion" set out in the first sentence of article I (1) of the Convention. Accordingly, courts in the United States have applied, in addition to the "territorial criterion",[100] the "non-domestic criterion" to determine whether an award falls within the scope of the New York Convention.[101] Similarly, relying on the "non-domestic" criterion, a Chinese court held that an award rendered in Beijing pursuant to the ICC Arbitration Rules was not considered as domestic in China.[102]

---

[97] Adam Samuel, Jurisdictional Problems in International Commercial Arbitration: A Study of Belgian, Dutch, English, French, Swedish, Swiss, United States and West German Law 296 (1989).

[98] See, e.g., Markus Wirth, *Chapter 12 PILA—Is it Time for Reform? If Yes, What Shall be Its Scope*, in New Developments in International Commercial Arbitration 51, 72 (C. Muller, A. Rigozzi eds., 2011); Bernard Hanotiau, Olivier Caprasse, *Introductory Report*, in The Review of International Arbitral Awards, IAI Series on International Arbitration No. 6, 7, 84 (E. Gaillard ed., 2010); Jan Paulsson, *Arbitration Unbound in Belgium*, 2(1) Arb. Int'l 72-73 (1986); Emmanuel Gaillard, *The Enforcement of Awards Set Aside in the Country of Origin*, 14 ICSID Rev. 16, 34 (1999); Domitille Baizeau, *Commentary on Chapter 12 PILS, Article 192: Waiver of annulment*, in Arbitration in Switzerland: The Practitioner's Guide 283, 291 (M. Arroyo ed., 2013); Elliott Geisinger, Alexandre Mazuranic, *Challenge and Revision of the Award*, in International Arbitration in Switzerland: A Handbook for Practitioners 223, 258 (E. Geisinger, N. Voser eds., 2nd ed. 2013).

[99] The same conclusion applies with respect to the "non-domestic criterion" set out in the second sentence of article I (1) of the Convention. See, e.g., Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 31 October 2005, 4P/198/2005/sza. Article 192(2) of the Swiss Private International Law Act provides that "if the awards are to be enforced in Switzerland, the New York Convention of June 10, 1958 on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards applies by analogy". See also article 78(6) of the 1993 Tunisian Arbitration Code, article 51 of the 1999 Swedish Arbitration Act and article 1522 (2) of the 2011 French Civil Code of Procedure.

[100] See *Gulf Petro Trading Company Inc., et al. v. Nigerian National Petroleum Corporation, et al.*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 7 January 2008, 512 F.3d 742; *GSS Group Ltd. (Global Security Seals Group Ltd) v. National Port Authority*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 25 May 2012, 680 F.3d 805.

[101] See, e.g., *Jacada Ltd. v. International Marketing Strategies, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Sixth Circuit, United States of America, 18 March 2005, 03-2521; *Yusuf Ahmed Alghanim & Sons, W.L.L. v. Toys "R" Us, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 10 September 1997, 126 F. 3d 15.

[102] *Duferco S.A. v. Ningbo Arts & Crafts Import & Export Co., Ltd.*, Ningbo Intermediate People's Court, China, 22 April 2009, [2008] Yong Zhong Jian Zi No. 4.

50. The New York Convention does not define the term "domestic". As a result, Contracting States have discretion to decide, in accordance with their own law, what constitutes a non-domestic award.[103] A United States court has held that "the definition appears to have been left out deliberately in order to cover as wide a variety of eligible awards as possible [...]."[104]

51. National courts have considered whether an award could be deemed a "non-domestic award" under article I in a number of situations.

52. *First*, courts have held an award to be non-domestic, within the meaning of article I, when it is made in the State where recognition and enforcement is sought under the procedural law of another State. For example, a United States court has held that an award rendered in the United States was non-domestic, *inter alia*, because it was made pursuant to a foreign procedural law and the ICC Arbitration Rules.[105] This application of the non-domestic criterion finds support in the *travaux préparatoires*.[106]

53. *Second*, courts have held an award to be non-domestic when it is made in the State where recognition and enforcement is sought but concerns a dispute involving one or more international elements. For example, pursuant to Section 202 of the United States Federal Arbitration Act ("FAA"), which broadly defines what constitutes a "non-domestic" award in the United States,[107] courts have held that "the citizenship of the parties, the location of property involved in the dispute, where the agreement was to be performed or enforced, or whether the award

[103] *Republic of Argentina v. BG Group PLC*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 7 June 2010, 715 F. Supp. 2d 108. The court held that the second sentence of article I (1) refers to awards "that are issued within the borders of the nation where enforcement is sought, yet are sufficiently foreign in character as to not be considered "domestic awards" in that country".

[104] *Sigval Bergesen, as Owners of the M/T Sydfonn and others v. Joseph Müller Corporation*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 17 June 1983, 710 F.2d 928.

[105] *RZS Holdings AVV (United States) v. PDVSA Petroleos S.A. et al.*, District Court, Eastern District of Virginia, Alexandria Division, United States of America, 5 February 2009, 598 F. Supp. 2d 762.

[106] *Travaux préparatoires*, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Report by the Secretary-General, Annex I, Comments by Governments, E/2822, pp. 5, 6. The German delegate stated that "the nature of the arbitral award is determined by reference to the rules of procedure which are applicable, *in toto* or else as subsidiary rules, to the award". See also *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Fifth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.5, p. 10. In support of the German delegate's observations, the Turkish delegate proposed that the "criterion for determining the nationality of an award should be the municipal procedural law under which the award was made".

[107] See *Sigval Bergesen, as Owners of the M/T Sydfonn and others v. Joseph Müller Corporation*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 17 June 1983, 710 F.2d 928 ("Inasmuch as it was apparently left to each state to define which awards were to be considered nondomestic, [...] Congress spelled out its definition of that concept in section 202"). Section 202 provides for the Convention to govern recognition and enforcement of awards arising out of a relationship, whether contractual or not, that involves a party that is not a citizen of the United States or that "involves property located abroad, envisages performance or enforcement abroad, or has some other reasonable relation with one or more foreign States". See 9 United States Code Chapter II—Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Section 202.

contains another reasonable relation with a foreign country [...]", all impact whether or not an award is to be considered "non-domestic".[108]

54. Some United States courts have held that an award is non-domestic when one[109] or both[110] parties to the arbitration are non-United States nationals or have their principal place of business outside of the United States. For example, the United States Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit held that an award rendered in the United States pursuant to New York law was a foreign award, because the arbitration involved two parties that both had their principal place of business outside the enforcing jurisdiction.[111] Similarly, the United States District Court for the Northern District of California held that, despite the fact that the arbitral award was made in the United States under California law, the award fell under the New York Convention because one of the parties had its principle place of business in Japan.[112]

55. Other United States courts have used a combination of factors set out in Section 202 of the FAA to determine whether or not an award is "non-domestic".[113] In one case, a United States court held that an award was "non-domestic" on the grounds that the assets and property in dispute were located abroad, one of the parties was incorporated outside the United States and the contract envisaged performance exclusively overseas.[114] In another case, a United States court held that

[108] *Jacada Ltd. v. International Marketing Strategies, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Sixth Circuit, United States of America, 18 March 2005, 03-2521.

[109] *Ocean Partners Holdings LIMITED and Ocean Partners USA, Inc. v. Doe Run Resources CORP.*, District Court, Eastern District of Missouri, Eastern Division, United States of America, 12 March 2012, 4:11-CV-173 (CEJ); *Anthony N. LaPine v. Kyocera Corporation*, District Court, Northern District of California, United States of America, 22 May 2008, C 07-06132 MHP; *Trevino Hernandez, S. de R.L. de C.V. v. Smart & Final Inc.*, District Court, Southern District of California, United States of America, 17 June 2010, 09-cv-2266 BEN (NLS); *Liberty Re Ltd. v. Transamerica Occidental Life Insurance Company*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 20 May 2005, 04 Civ 5044 (NRB); *Industrial Risk Insurers v. M.A.N. Gutehoffnungshutte*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 22 May 1998, 141 F.3d 1434.

[110] *Sigval Bergesen, as Owners of the M/T Sydfonn and others v. Joseph Müller Corporation*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 17 June 1983, 710 F.2d 928; *Trans Chemical Limited v. China National Machinery Import and Export Corporation*, District Court, Southern District of Texas, Houston Division, United States of America, 7 July 1997, 978 F. Supp. 266; *Continental Grain Company, et al. v. Foremost Farms Incorporated, et al.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 23 March 1998, 98 Civ. 0848 (DC).

[111] *Sigval Bergesen, as Owners of the M/T Sydfonn and others v. Joseph Müller Corporation*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 17 June 1983, 710 F.2d 928.

[112] *Anthony N. LaPine v. Kyocera Corporation*, District Court, Northern District of California, United States of America, 22 May 2008, C 07-06132 MHP.

[113] *Yusuf Ahmed Alghanim & Sons, W.L.L. v. Toys "R" Us, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 10 September 1997, 126 F. 3d 15; *Republic of Argentina v. BG Group PLC*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 7 June 2010, 715 F. Supp. 2d 108; *Jacada Ltd. v. International Marketing Strategies, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Sixth Circuit, United States of America, 18 March 2005, 03-2521; *Mayer Zeiler v. Joseph Deitsch*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 23 August 2007, 500 F.3d 157.

[114] *Jacada Ltd. v. International Marketing Strategies, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Sixth Circuit, United States of America, 18 March 2005, 03-2521.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

an award was non-domestic on the grounds that two of the three disputing parties were non-domestic and the contract was performed in the Middle East.[115]

56. In a situation where the award creditor's action for recognition and enforcement and the award debtor's action for setting aside are brought before the same court—a scenario that may occur when the award creditor brings its action for recognition and enforcement under the second sentence of article I (1)—courts are in broad agreement that the New York Convention only applies to the action for recognition and enforcement, while domestic law on arbitration applies to the setting aside proceedings.[116] Commentators support the view that an award rendered in the State where recognition and enforcement is sought is capable of being regarded as a non-domestic award for the purposes of enforcement and as domestic award for the purposes of setting aside.[117]

57. The issue of whether or not awards rendered in proceedings that are considered not to be governed by any national law—sometimes referred to as "a-national" or "non-national" awards—fall within the scope of New York Convention has arisen before national courts.

58. An early draft of the Convention prepared by the ICC, in which the term "international awards" was used, arguably included "a-national" awards within the scope of the Convention.[118] This draft was not adopted by the ECOSOC *ad hoc* Committee which was "reluctant to accept the idea put forward by the ICC that 'international awards' should be 'completely independent of national law'".[119] However, similar language to the one employed in the ICC draft appears in article V (1) *(d)* of the Convention as adopted.[120] Although dealing with one of the grounds on which recognition and enforcement may be refused, article V (1)*(d)* can be deemed to imply that an award need not be rendered pursuant to a domestic procedural law to be enforceable under the Convention.

---

[115] *Yusuf Ahmed Alghanim & Sons, W.L.L. v. Toys "R" Us, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 10 September 1997, 126 F.3d 15.

[116] Id. See also *Federal Insurance Company, as subrogee of Transammonia, Inc.v. Bergesen D.Y. ASA OSLO, as agents of the Norwegian Flag LP G/C "Hugo N" and its owner, General Gas Carrier Corporation, Limited*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 7 September 2012, 12 Civ. 3851(PAE); *ESCO Corporation v. Bradken Resources PTY Ltd.*, District Court, District of Oregon, Portland Division, United States of America, 31 January 2011, 10-788-AC.

[117] Michael Pryles, *Foreign Awards and the New York Convention*, 9(3) Arb. Int'l 259, 264 (1993). See also V.S. Deshpande, *Jurisdiction Over 'Foreign' and 'Domestic' Awards in the New York Convention*, 7(2) Arb. Int'l 123, 127 (1991).

[118] See *Travaux préparatoires*, Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, Statement Submitted by the International Chamber of Commerce, E/C.2/373, p. 13.

[119] See *Travaux préparatoires*, Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, E/2704, E/AC.42/4/Rev.1., p. 11.

[120] Article V (1)*(d)* provides that recognition and enforcement may be refused if "the composition of the arbitral authority or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties, or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with the law of the country where the arbitration took place". For a detailed analysis of this provision, see the chapter of the Guide on article V (1)*(d)*.

59. Courts have often relied both on the text of article I and the text of article V (1)*(d)* of the Convention to hold that "a-national awards" fall within the scope of the New York Convention. For example, the Dutch Supreme Court found that the "intention of the Convention [was] to recognize as arbitral awards also those [awards] which [...] cannot be deemed to be connected with the law of any specific country".[121] In finding that "a-national" awards fall within the scope of the Convention, the court overruled The Hague Court of Appeal's decision, which had previously held that an award must be based on "some national law".[122]

60. Similarly, the United States Court of Appeals for the Ninth Circuit, referring to the Dutch Supreme Court decision above, held that "the fairest reading of the Convention itself appears to be that it applies to the enforcement of non-national awards".[123] Noting that article V (1)*(d)* of the New York Convention allows a party to resist enforcement if "the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties", the court ruled that an award need not be made under national law to be enforced under the New York Convention. On this basis, the court found an award made by the Iran-United States Claims Tribunal to fall within the scope of the Convention.

61. French courts have also held that the New York Convention applies to "a-national" awards. For example, the Court of Appeal of Rouen found that an award rendered on the basis of an arbitration clause that expressly excluded the application of any national procedural law and regulated the procedure itself, fell within the scope of the New York Convention.[124]

[121] *Société Européenne d'Etudes et d'Entreprises (S.E.E.E.) v. Federal Republic of Yugoslavia*, Supreme Court, Netherlands, 7 November 1975, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 195 (1976).

[122] *Société Européenne d'Etudes et d'Entreprises (S.E.E.E.) v. Federal Republic of Yugoslavia*, Court of Appeal of The Hague, Netherlands, 8 September 1972, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 195 (1976).

[123] *Ministry of Defense of the Islamic Republic of Iran v. Gould Inc., Gould Marketing, Inc., Hoffman Export Corporation, and Gould International, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, United States of America, 23 October 1989, 887 F.2d 1357.

[124] *Société Européenne d'Etudes et d'Entreprises (S.E.E.E.) v. République Socialiste Fédérale de Yougoslavie*, Court of Appeal of Rouen, France, 13 November 1984, 982/82. See also *Société Aksa v. Société Norsolor*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 9 December 1980,1981 Rev. Arb. 306.

62. Although the issue has been debated for some time,[125] the position that "a-national" awards fall within the scope of the Convention finds support in commentary.[126]

63. The importance of the issue should however not be overestimated. The plain language of article I suggests that all awards which comply with either of the two criteria set out therein fall within the scope of the Convention irrespective of whether the law applicable to the arbitration proceedings was national or not.[127] Relying on the language of article I, the United States Court of Appeals for the Ninth Circuit held that article I does not "[c]ontain a separate jurisdictional requirement that the award be rendered subject to a 'national law'".[128]

D. Meaning of "arising out of differences"

64. Article I (1) provides that the New York Convention applies to the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards "arising out of differences" between persons, whether physical or legal. Very few reported cases have addressed the meaning of the term "differences". Of those that have, the Supreme Court of Queensland, Australia, held that the term "differences" has a "clear meaning when used in connection with arbitration proceedings" and that it refers to a dispute.[129]

---

[125] Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 34-40 (1981); Pieter Sanders, *Commentary*, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 207 (1976); Bernd Ehle, *Commentary on Article I*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 26, 61 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[126] Philippe Fouchard, *Commentary of General National Maritime Transport Co. v. Götaverken Arendal A.B.*, 107 J.D.I. 660, 669 and 673 (1980); Javier Rubinstein, Georgina Fabian, *The Territorial Scope of the New York Convention and Its Implementation in Common and Civil Law Countries*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 91, 137 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Tihilo Rensmann, *Anational Arbitral Awards: Legal Phenomenon or Academic Phantom*, 15(2) J. Int'l Arb. 37, 64 (1998); Aida B. Avanessian, *The New York Convention and Denationalised Arbitral Awards (With Emphasis on the Iran-United States Claims Tribunal)*, 8(1) J. Int'l Arb. 5, 22 (1991); ICCA's Guide To the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention: A Handbook for Judges 23 (P. Sanders ed., 2011).

[127] See Adam Samuel, Jurisdictional Problems in International Commercial Arbitration: A Study of Belgian, Dutch, English, French, Swedish, Swiss, United States and West German Law 294 (1989); Hans van Houtte, *La loi belge du 27 mars 1985 sur l'arbitrage international*, 1986 Rev. Arb. 29.

[128] *Ministry of Defense of the Islamic Republic of Iran v. Gould Inc., Gould Marketing, Inc., Hoffman Export Corporation, and Gould International, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, United States of America, 23 October 1989, 887 F.2d 1357.

[129] *Resort Condominiums International Inc. v. Ray Bolwell and Resort Condominiums, Pty. Ltd.*, Supreme Court of Queensland, Australia, 29 October 1993, XX Y.B. Com. Arb. 628 (1995).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Article I (2)

65. Article I (2) provides that the term "arbitral awards" includes both "awards made by arbitrators appointed for each case" and awards "made by permanent arbitral bodies to which the parties have submitted".

66. Although the importance of a specific reference to awards made by permanent arbitral bodies was questioned during the Conference,[130] it was eventually inserted at the behest of the Soviet and Czechoslovak delegates, who considered that the inclusion of the provision would "strengthen the Convention" and avoid certain difficulties "which had been encountered in the past and might arise again in the future".[131]

67. In this respect, the Italian Court of Cassation held that, pursuant to article I (2), the Convention applies not only to awards rendered by arbitrators appointed for a specific case, but also to awards rendered by permanent arbitral tribunals, such as, in the instant case, an arbitration panel sitting under the auspices of the Court of Arbitration at the Chamber of Commerce in Sofia.[132]

68. As an illustration, courts in reported cases have found that the term "permanent arbitral bodies" includes the following institutions: the Iran-United States Claims Tribunal,[133] the ICC International Court of Arbitration,[134] the Singapore International Arbitral Centre,[135] the Commercial Arbitration Centre in Sweden,[136] the Court of International Commercial Arbitration at the Chamber of Commerce and Industry of Ukraine,[137] the Arbitration Institute of the Central Chamber of

[130] The delegate of France noted that "during all the years of the application of the 1923 Geneva Protocol and the 1927 Convention, no suggestion had ever been made that the term 'arbitral award' did not include an award made by a private permanent arbitral body". See *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Eight Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.8, p. 4. The Chairman of the Conference similarly stated that there was "no need to state that the convention would apply to awards made by permanent arbitral bodies, for their awards were no different from those made by specially appointed arbitrators". See *Travaux préparatoires*, Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, Summary Record of the Third Meeting, E/AC.42/SR.3, p. 4.

[131] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Eight Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.8, p. 6-8.

[132] *Eugenio Menaguale v. Intercommerce (as legal successor of State Enterprise Balet)*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 17 April 1978, 1842, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 282 (1979).

[133] *Ministry of Defense of the Islamic Republic of Iran v. Gould Inc., Gould Marketing, Inc., Hoffman Export Corporation, and Gould International, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, United States of America, 23 October 1989, 887 F.2d 1357.

[134] *FG Hemisphere Associates LLC v. Democratic Republic of Congo*, Supreme Court of New South Wales, Australia, 1 November 2010, [2010] NSWSC.

[135] *Transpac Capital Pte Ltd. v. Buntoro*, Supreme Court of New South Wales, Australia, 7 July 2008, 11373 of 2008.

[136] *Egyptian Concrete Company & Hashem Ali Maher v. STC Finance & Ismail Ibrahim Mahmoud Thabet & Sabishi Trading and Contracting Company*, Court of Cassation, Egypt, 27 March 1996, 2660/59.

[137] Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Brandenburg, Germany, 2 September 1999, 8 Sch 01/99.

Commerce of Finland,[138] and the Vienna Commodity Exchange Arbitration Board.[139]

Article I (3)

69. During the drafting of article I, the delegates of Israel and Bulgaria considered that a general reservation clause, "permitting any State to make such reservations as it saw fit", should be included in the text of the Convention in order to facilitate the accession of as large a number of States as possible.[140] Other delegates were of the opinion that the greatest possible number of accessions should not be obtained "at the price of the Convention's usefulness".[141] In this context, the Turkish delegate noted that a significant number of reservations "would lessen the practical value of the Convention".[142] The matter was referred to a working group which reported that most of its members were opposed to including any reservation.[143] Nevertheless, the final text of article I (3) allows Contracting States to restrict the application of the Convention to awards made in the territory of another Contracting State and/or awards arising out of legal relationships considered to be commercial under the law of the State where recognition and enforcement is sought.

A. Reciprocity reservation

a. The territorial criterion and the reciprocity reservation

70. Pursuant to article I (3), Contracting States may declare that they will apply the Convention to the "recognition and enforcement of awards made only in the territory of another Contracting State".

[138] Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Brandenburg, Germany, 13 June 2002, 8 Sch 02/01.

[139] *Holzindustrie Schweighofer GmbH v. Industria Legnami Trentina - ILET srl.*, Court of Appeal of Florence, Italy, 3 June 1988, XV Y.B. Com. Arb. 498 (1990).

[140] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Twenty-first Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.21, pp. 10-11.

[141] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Twenty-first Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.21, p. 11.

[142] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Fifteenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.15, p. 3.

[143] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Fifteenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.15, p. 3.

71. Courts have held that when a Contracting State makes the reciprocity reservation, it will apply the New York Convention only to awards rendered in the territory of a State which is a party to the Convention.[144]

72. In those cases, courts have consistently held that the nationality of the parties is irrelevant for the purposes of establishing reciprocity.[145] What matters is that reciprocity exists between the State where the award was rendered and the State where recognition and enforcement is sought.[146] For example, the Luxembourg Court of Appeal held that the fact that the two claimants had the nationality of a State that was not a party to the New York Convention was irrelevant, as the State where the award was rendered was a Contracting State.[147]

73. In certain States that have made the reciprocity reservation, the legislation implementing the Convention provides that, if the Official Gazette of that State does not indicate a given State's ratification of or accession to the Convention, the latter State cannot be considered to have acceded to the Convention. Therefore, as a result of the reciprocity reservation, an award rendered in such State will be unenforceable.[148] In one case, a court in India—where reciprocity is required—refused to refer the parties to arbitration in South Africa on the ground that the Indian Official Gazette did not mention South Africa's accession to the Convention, despite the fact that South Africa had acceded at that time.[149]

74. In Malaysia, a court initially held that a foreign award may only be enforced under the Convention if it appears from an order in the Malaysian Official Gazette that the State where the award was made is a Contracting Party to the

[144] *Norsolor S.A. v. Pabalk Ticaret Limited Sirketi*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 19 November 1982, I I0I92; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 14 April 1988, III ZR 12/87; *GSS Group Ltd. (Global Security Seals Group Ltd) v. National Port Authority*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 25 May 2012, 680 F.3d 805; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamburg, Germany, 15 April 1964, II Y.B. Com. Arb. 232 (1977); *Yukos Oil Co. v. Dardana Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 18 April 2002, [2002] EWCA Civ 543.

[145] *Gas Authority of India Ltd. v. Spie Capag S.A. and others*, High Court of Delhi, India, 15 October 1993, Suit No. 1440, IA No. 5206; *La Société Nationale Pour La Recherche, La Production, Le Transport, La Transformation et la Commercialisation Des Hydrocarbures v. Shaneen Natural Resources Company, Inc.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 15 November 1983, 585 F. Supp. 57; *Société Européenne d'Etudes et d'Entreprises (S.E.E.E.) v. République Socialiste Fédérale de Yougoslavie*, Court of Appeals of Rouen, France, 13 November 1984, 982/82.

[146] *Kersa Holding Company Luxembourg v. Infancourtage, Famajuk Investment and Isny*, Court of Appeal of Luxembourg, Luxembourg, 24 November 1993, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 617 (1996); Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamm, Germany, 6 July 1994, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 702 (1997).

[147] *Kersa Holding Company Luxembourg v. Infancourtage, Famajuk Investment and Isny*, Court of Appeal of Luxembourg, Luxembourg, 24 November 1993, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 617 (1996).

[148] *Gas Authority of India Ltd. v. Spie Capag S.A. and others*, High Court of Delhi, India, 15 October 1993, Suit No. 1440, IA No. 5206; *Brace Transport Corporation of Monrovia, Bermuda v. Orient Middle East Lines Ltd. and ors.*, Supreme Court, India, 12 October 1993, Civil Appeals Nos 5438-39 of 1993.

[149] *Swiss Singapore Overseas Enterprises Pvt. Ltd. v. M/V African Trader*, High Court of Gujarat, India, 7 February 2005, Civil Application No. 23 of 2005.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Convention.[150] The Federal Court of Malaysia subsequently reversed this position, holding that an Order in the Official Gazette had only evidentiary value and that "the issue whether a State is a party to the New York Convention can be proved by adducing such other evidence as may be appropriate".[151]

75. There are only a handful of cases in which the enforcement of an award was refused on the basis of the reciprocity reservation. For example, in a decision rendered before Switzerland withdrew its reciprocity reservation in 1989, the Swiss Federal Tribunal held that an award rendered in London could not be enforced under the Convention as, at the time the award was rendered, the United Kingdom was not a party to the Convention.[152]

b. The non-domestic criterion and the reciprocity reservation

76. An argument has been made before United States courts that the reciprocity reservation excludes not only awards made in non-Contracting States from the scope of the New York Convention, but, also awards made in the enforcing State.[153] This argument is based on the expression "another Contracting State" in article I (3). United States courts have rejected this interpretation of article I (3). In so doing, they have held that the reciprocity reservation is distinct from the non-domestic provision contained in article I (1) and that it only concerns the inapplicability of the Convention to awards rendered in States that are not a party to the Convention.[154]

---

[150] *Sri Lanka Cricket v. World Sport Nimbus Pte Ltd.*, Court of Appeal of Putrajaya, Malaysia, 14 March 2006, W-04-964- 2004, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 607 (2008).

[151] *Lombard Commodities Limited v. Alami Vegetable Oil Products SDN BHD*, Federal Court, Malaysia, 3 November 2009, Civil Appeal No. 02(f)-37-2008(W), XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 420 (2010). In so holding, the court relied on the relevant provision of the 1996 English Arbitration Act which provides that: "If Her Majesty by Order in Council declares that a state specified in the Order is a party to the New York Convention, or is a party in respect of any territory so specified, the Order shall, while in force, be conclusive evidence of that fact". See also *IPCO v. Nigerian National Petroleum Corp.*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 17 April 2008, [2008] EWHC 797 (Comm).

[152] *Provenda S.A. v. Alimenta S.A. Switzerland*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 12 December 1975, 101 Ia 521.

[153] *Republic of Argentina v. BG Group PLC*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 7 June 2010, 715 F. Supp. 2d 108.

[154] See *Republic of Argentina v. BG Group PLC*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 7 June 2010, 715 F. Supp. 2d 108. See also *Trans Chemical Limited v. China National Machinery Import and Export Corporation*, District Court, Southern District of Texas, Houston Division, United States of America, 7 July 1997, 978 F. Supp. 266.

c. Meaning of "Contracting State"

77. When a State has made the reciprocity reservation under article I (3), that State will apply the Convention to the recognition and enforcement of awards made only in the territory of another "Contracting State".[155]

78. A question that has arisen with respect to the temporal application of the Convention is whether the State where the award is made must be a party to the Convention at the time the award is rendered and/or at the time recognition and enforcement is sought.

79. A Belgian court has refused to apply the Convention to an award rendered in a State that was not a party to the Convention at the time the award was made.[156]

80. Other courts have held that the question of whether a State is a party to the New York Convention is to be determined at the time recognition and enforcement is sought rather than at the time the award is rendered. For example, the House of Lords held that "an arbitration award made in the territory of a foreign state is enforceable in the United Kingdom [...] if the State in which the award was made is a party to the Convention at the date when proceedings to enforce the award begin, even if it was not a party at the date when the award was made".[157] Similarly, the Supreme Court of Austria granted enforcement of an award that was made in a State that was not a party to the Convention at the time the award was rendered, but had become a party by the time the enforcement proceedings were initiated.[158]

81. Courts in other jurisdictions including, Germany[159] and Hong Kong,[160] have adopted the same approach.

---

[155] *GSS Group Ltd. (Global Security Seals Group Ltd) v. National Port Authority*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 25 May 2012, 680 F.3d 805; *JCD (Japan) v. Zhongshan Gangyuan Industry Company Ltd.*, Zhongshan Intermediate People's Court, China, 22 October 2008, [2005] Zhong Zhong Fa Min Si Chu Zi No. 111; Court of Justice of Geneva, Switzerland, 14 April 1983, 187. The question of when a State becomes a party to the Convention has arisen in certain jurisdictions. For instance, the Supreme Court of Austria held that the Convention enters into force when a country has deposited its instruments in accordance with article IX. See Supreme Court, Austria, 17 November 1965, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 182 (1976).

[156] *Société Nationale pour la Recherche, le Transport et la Commercialisation des Hydrocarbures (Sonatrach) v. Ford, Bacon and Davis Inc.*, Court of First Instance of Brussels, Belgium, 6 December 1988, XV Y.B. Com. Arb. 370 (1990).

[157] *Minister of Public Works of the Government of the State of Kuwait v. Sir Frederick Snow & Partners*, House of Lords, England and Wales, 1 March 1984, [1984] A.C. 426.

[158] Supreme Court, Austria, 17 November 1965, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 182 (1976).

[159] Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Köln, Germany, 10 June 1976, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 258 (1979); Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamburg, Germany, 27 July 1978, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 266 (1979).

[160] *Polytek Engineering Company Limited v. Hebei Import & Export Corporation*, High Court of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, Hong Kong, 16 January 1998, 116 of 1997, XXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 666 (1998).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

82. While the 1927 Geneva Convention provided that it was only applicable to arbitral awards made "after the coming into force of the [1923] Protocol on Arbitration Clauses", the New York Convention is silent on the question of its temporal application. Although not containing a specific reference as to the time at which a State becomes a Contracting State, the *travaux préparatoires* of the Convention indicate that the application of the New York Convention is not subject to any temporal limitation.[161]

B. Commercial reservation

83. The second reservation available to States under article I (3) is the commercial reservation. A Contracting State may declare that it will apply the Convention "only to differences arising out of legal relationships, whether contractual or not, which are considered as commercial under the national law of the State making such declaration".[162]

84. In the course of the drafting of article I, the ECOSOC *ad hoc* Committee considered whether the Convention should be limited to arbitral awards arising out of commercial disputes, as was envisaged in the early draft of the Convention prepared by the ICC.[163] After noting that certain countries do not differentiate between civil and commercial matters, the Committee decided not to limit the applicability of the New York Convention to commercial disputes. However, at the suggestion of the Dutch delegate on the penultimate day of the Conference, the commercial reservation was added.[164]

a. Meaning of "legal relationships considered as commercial under the national law of the State making such declaration"

85. When a State has made a commercial reservation, that State applies the New York Convention only to disputes arising out of "legal relationships considered as

[161] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Twenty-first Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.21, p. 4.

[162] If an award did not arise out of a legal relationship considered as commercial, such award will not benefit from the regime established by the New York Convention, but the enforcement of such award will be governed by domestic law. See Philippe Fouchard, *La levée par la France de sa réserve de commercialité pour l'application de la Convention de New York*, 1990 Rev. Arb. 571, 574, 579.

[163] *Travaux préparatoires*, Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, E/2704, E/AC.42/4/Rev.1., p. 8.

[164] The Dutch delegate argued that the text of the Convention which prevented States from limiting the application of the Convention to commercial disputes, would cause great difficulties to countries in which commercial law was distinct from civil law, such as France, Belgium and Turkey. See *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Twenty-third Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.23, pp. 7, 12.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

commercial under the national law of the State making such declaration". Courts have interpreted the scope of this phrase to be broad.[165] For example, a court in India has construed the phrase as being of the "largest import" encompassing "all the business and trade transactions in any of their forms".[166] A United States court has similarly held that the notion of "commercial relationship" is broad, noting that its purpose is only "to exclude matrimonial and other domestic relations awards, political awards, and the like".[167]

86. By way of example, the following legal relationships have been deemed to be commercial: a cereal purchase contract,[168] a charter-party,[169] a contract for provision of consulting services,[170] a contract for the shipment of goods,[171] an agreement for the division of property and businesses,[172] a joint venture agreement to establish and operate a chain of stores,[173] a seamen's employment contract,[174] a contract for the reorganization of a company and buyout of shareholders,[175] a contract for the construction of a nitrophosphate plant,[176] and a dispute between corporate shareholders regarding the proceeds of a stock transaction.[177]

---

[165] Michael Pryles, *Reservations Available to Member States: The Reciprocal and Commercial Reservations*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 161, 178-79 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

[166] *Union of India and ors v. Lief Hoegh & Co. and ors.*, High Court of Gujarat, India, 4 May 1982.

[167] *Island Territory of Curacao v. Solitron Devices, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 14 February 1973, 356 F. Supp. 1.

[168] *West Plains Company v. Northwest Organic Community Mills Co-operative Ltd.*, Queen's Bench for Saskatchewan, Canada, 5 May 2009, 2009 SKQB 162.

[169] *Swiss Singapore Overseas Enterprises Pvt Ltd. v. M/V African Trader*, High Court of Gujarat, India, 7 February 2005, Civil Application No. 23 of 2005.

[170] *R.M. Investments & Trading Co. v. Boeing Co.*, Supreme Court, India, 10 February 1994, 1994 AIR 1136.

[171] *European Grain and Shipping Ltd. v. Bombay Extractions Ltd.*, High Court of Bombay, India, 5 November 1981, AIR 1983 Bom 36.

[172] *Harendra H. Mehta, et al. v. Mukesh H. Mehta, et al.*, Supreme Court, India, 13 May 1999, 1999(3) SCR 562.

[173] *Trevino Hernandez, S. de R.L. de C.V. v. Smart & Final Inc.*, District Court, Southern District of California, United States of America, 17 June 2010, 09-cv-2266 BEN (NLS).

[174] *Nurettin Mayakan v. Carnival Corporation*, District Court, Middle District of Florida, Orlando Division, United States of America, 8 April 2010, 6:09-cv-2099-Orl-31DAB; *Aggarao v. MOL Ship Management Company Ltd., Nissan Motor Car Carrier Company, Ltd., trading as Nissan Carrier Fleet World Car Careers*, Court of Appeals, Fourth Circuit, United States of America, 16 March 2012, 675 F.3d 355; *Bautista v. Star Cruises and Norwegian Cruise Line, Ltd.*, District Court, Southern District of Florida, United States of America, 14 October 2003, 286 F. Supp. 2d 1352; *Ernesto Francisco v. Stolt Achievement MT*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 4 June 2002, 293 F.3d 270; *contra Wilfredo Jaranilla v. Megasea Maritime Ltd., Prankar Maritime S.A., Greece and Kouros Maritime Enterprises*, District Court, Eastern District of Louisiana, United States of America, 12 October 2001,171 F. Supp. 2d 644.

[175] *Anthony N. LaPine v. Kyocera Corporation*, District Court, Northern District of California, United States of America, 22 May 2008, C 07-06132 MHP.

[176] *Fertilizer Corp. of India v. IDI Mgmt. Inc.*, District Court, Southern District of Ohio, United States of America, 9 June 1981, 517 F. Supp. 948.

[177] *Louise Henry v. Patrick J. Murphy*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 8 January 2002, M-82 (PART I JFK), XXVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 863 (2002).

87. Conversely, in one case, an Indian court held that a contract for the supply of technical know-how in return for a fee was not a commercial contract.[178] In another case, a Tunisian court held that a contract for an architectural plan for a resort was not commercial under Tunisian law.[179] In yet a further case, a United States court held that a dispute arising out of proceedings to disqualify counsel was non-commercial.[180]

b. Meaning of "whether contractual or not"

88. An issue that has arisen before courts is whether the expression "whether contractual or not" includes claims in tort.

89. Courts have found that the expression "whether contractual or not" does cover torts. For example, the Court of Appeal of Alberta, Canada, held that the Convention "extend[s] [its] scope to liability in tort so long as the relationship that creates liability is one that can fairly be described as commercial". The Court found that the claim that a corporation had conspired with its subsidiaries to cause harm to a person concerned a dispute "arising out of a commercial legal relationship, whether contractual or not".[181]

90. Similarly, the High Court of Delhi held that the Convention applies to "disputes arising out of legal relationships whether *stricto sensu* contractual or not provided they are considered as commercial under the domestic law of the State making such a declaration".[182]

91. The case law is fully consistent with the *travaux préparatoires*.[183]

---

[178] *Kanoria Chemicals & Industries v. Josef Meissner GmbH & Co. and anor.*, High Court of Calcutta, India, 1 January 1986, Suit No. 93 of 1984.

[179] *Taieb Haddad v. Hans Barett, Société d'Investissement Kal*, Supreme Court, Tunisia, 10 November 1993, XXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 770 (1998).

[180] *R3 Aerospace v. Marshall of Cambridge Aerospace Ltd.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 29 May 1996, 927 F. Supp. 121.

[181] *Kaverit Steel v. Kone Corp.*, Court of Appeal of Alberta, Canada, 16 January 1992, ABCA 7.

[182] *Gas Authority of India Ltd. v. Spie Capag SA and others*, High Court of Delhi, India, 15 October 1993, Suit No. 1440, IA No. 5206. See also *European Grain and Shipping Ltd. v. Bombay Extractions Ltd.*, High Court of Bombay, India, 5 November 1981, AIR 1983 Bom 36.

[183] In the course of the drafting of the commerciality reservation, the Greek delegate proposed to include, "in addition to disputes arising out of commercial contracts, disputes arising out of commercial obligations ex delictu and quasi ex delictu". See *Travaux préparatoires*, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Comments by Governments on the draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/2822/Add.2, Annex I, p. 1. The Italian delegate proposed to use the term "relations" instead of the term "contract" so as to "cover both contractual and non-contractual disputes". See *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Twenty-first Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.21, p. 16. The delegate from the United Kingdom proposed a further amendment to include the wording "whether contractual or not" after the wording "legal relationship", which was accepted by the Conference. See *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Twenty-third Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.23, p. 11.

Article II

1. Each Contracting State shall recognize an agreement in writing under which the parties undertake to submit to arbitration all or any differences which have arisen or which may arise between them in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not, concerning a subject matter capable of settlement by arbitration.

2. The term "agreement in writing" shall include an arbitral clause in a contract or an arbitration agreement, signed by the parties or contained in an exchange of letters or telegrams.

3. The court of a Contracting State, when seized of an action in a matter in respect of which the parties have made an agreement within the meaning of this article, shall, at the request of one of the parties, refer the parties to arbitration, unless it finds that the said agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article II as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704 and annex.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822, annexes I-II; E/2822/Add.1, annex I; E/2822/Add.2, annex I; E/2822/Add.4, annex I; E/2822/Add.5, annex I; E/CONF.26/3/Add.1.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/7; E/CONF.26/L.8; E/CONF.26/L.17; E/CONF.26/L.18; E/CONF.26/L.18; E/CONF.26/L.20; E/CONF.26/L.22; E/CONF.26/L.31; E/CONF.26/C.3/L.1; E/CONF.26/L.34.
- Comparison of Drafts Relating to Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention: E/CONF.26/L.33.
- Statement submitted by the Observer of the Hague Conference on Private International Law: E/CONF.26/L.36.
- Further Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.40.
- Text of Additional Protocol on the Validity of Arbitral Agreements Submitted by Working Party No. 2: E/CONF.26/L.52.
- Amendments by Governmental Delegations to the Drafts Submitted by the Working Parties and Further Suggested Drafts: E/CONF.26/L.45; E/CONF.26/C.3/L.3; E/CONF.26/L.53; E/CONF.26/L.54.
- Text of New Articles to be Included in the Convention Adopted by the Conference: E/CONF.26/L.59.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/L.61; E/CONF.26/8.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Seventh, Ninth, Eleventh, Twelfth, Thirteenth, Fourteenth, Seventeenth, Twenty-first, Twenty-third and Twenty-fourth Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR.7; E/CONF.26/SR.9; E/CONF.26/SR.11; E/CONF.26/SR.12; E/CONF.26/SR.13; E/CONF.26/SR.14; E/CONF.26/SR.17; E/CONF.26/SR.21; E/CONF.26/SR.23; E/CONF.26/SR.24.
- Summary Record of the Fourth Meeting of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.4.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Introduction

1. Article II governs the recognition and enforcement of arbitration agreements. Provided that certain conditions are satisfied, article II mandates Contracting States to recognize an agreement in writing to submit disputes to arbitration and to enforce such an agreement by referring the parties to arbitration.

2. The scope of the New York Convention was initially meant to be limited to the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards to the exclusion of arbitration agreements.[184] While issues pertaining to the validity of arbitration agreements had arisen in the context of discussions about the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards in connection with articles IV (1)*(b)* and V (1)*(a)* of the Convention,[185] it was only during the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration convened for the preparation and adoption of the Convention, less than three weeks before the Convention was adopted, that the drafters decided to include a specific provision on the recognition and enforcement of arbitration agreements.[186] By that time, most of the other provisions had already been adopted and they were not modified to reflect this late addition.[187] This explains why the recognition and enforcement of arbitration agreements is not mentioned in the Convention's title or in any other provisions, including articles I and VII.

3. For example, article I (1) which defines the scope of application of the Convention does not deal with arbitration agreements. However, the commercial reservation in article I (3) which applies to "differences arising out of legal relationships" encompasses, by its own terms, arbitration agreements set out in article II. By contrast, the Convention does not explicitly settle the issue whether the reciprocity reservation in article I (3) which deals with "the recognition and enforcement of awards made [...] in the territory of another Contracting State" applies mutadis mutandis to arbitration agreements.

4. Certain courts have reasoned by analogy to article I (1) that the Convention applies only to arbitration agreements providing for a seat in a State other than the

[184] *Travaux préparatoires*, Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, E/2704, E/AC.42/4/Rev.1, p. 6, paras. 18-19. The Polish (E/CONF.26/7) and Swedish (E/CONF.26/L.8) proposals to add a provision on the validity of arbitration clauses were discussed during the Seventh and Ninth Meeting of the Conference but were ultimately rejected.

[185] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Eleventh (E/CONF.26/SR.11, pp. 7-12), Twelfth (E/CONF.26/SR.12, pp. 3-6), Thirteenth (E/CONF.26/SR.13, pp. 4-7 and 9-11), Fourteenth (E/CONF.26/SR.14, pp. 4-5 and 7-9), Seventeenth (E/CONF.26/SR.17, pp. 4-6) Meetings.

[186] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Twenty-first Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.21, p. 17. See E/2822 Annexes I and II.

[187] *Ibid.*

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

State of the court seized with the dispute.[188] This interpretation has been endorsed by certain commentators.[189]

5. Other commentators have suggested that article II was meant to apply to the recognition and enforcement of all arbitration agreements irrespective of the seat. A commentator, for example, points out that the proposal by Israel (which was further modified by Italy) to introduce a general reservation clause enabling States not to apply article II in certain situations had been rejected during the Conference. Accordingly, this would leave no doubt as to the intention of the drafters of the New York Convention that article II should cover both domestic and international situations without any limitations.[190] Another early commentator of the Convention also took the view that article II, unlike the 1923 Geneva Protocol on Arbitration Clauses, does not require the parties to be subject to the jurisdiction of different Contracting States, thereby giving the provision a general application.[191] Other commentators have suggested that the New York Convention did not intend to incorporate any territorial limitations on the scope of application on arbitration agreements falling within the scope of article II.[192]

6. In that spirit, the High Court of Delhi held that, on the face of article II, there is no "express or implied limitation or fetter which calls for recognition and enforcement of only those arbitration agreements which will result in foreign awards. Such a construction cannot be placed upon the said article as this would go against the spirit and grain of the convention". The court concluded that "the New York Convention will apply to an arbitration agreement if it has a foreign element or flavour involving international trade and commerce even though such an agreement does

[188] *Kaverit Steel and Crane v. Kone Corp.*, Alberta Court of Queen's Bench, Canada, 14 May 1991; *Compagnie de Navigation et Transports S.A. v. MSC Mediterranean Shipping Company S.A.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 16 January 1995; Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 21 March 1995, 5C.215/1994/lit; Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 25 October 2010, 4 A 279/2010; *X v. Y*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 9 January 2008, 4A_436/2007.

[189] Reinmar Wolff, *Commentary on Article II*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 85, 99-104 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); ICCA's Guide to the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention: A Handbook for Judges 19 (P. Sanders ed., 2011); Jean-François Poudret, Gabriel Cottier, *Remarques sur l'application de l'Article II de la Convention de New York*, 1995 ASA Bull. 383, 384.

[190] Eugenio Minoli, *L'Italie et la Convention de New York pour la reconnaissance et l'exécution des sentences arbitrales étrangères*, in International Arbitration Liber Amicorum for Martin Domke 199, 203 (P. Sanders ed., 1967). See also the *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Twenty-First Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.21, p. 14, the comments by the representative of Norway that "a reservation to the effect that the Convention would apply to disputes of an international character was essential" and by the representative of Italy that "his proposal was designed to ensure that the Convention would not apply to disputes which were not international."

[191] Frédéric-Edouard Klein, *Autonomie de la volonté et arbitrage (suite et fin)*, 1958 R.C.D.I.P. 479, 491.

[192] See, e.g., Philippe Fouchard, *La levée par la France de sa réserve de commercialité pour l'application de la Convention de New York*, 1990 Rev. Arb. 571, reasoning that given France's withdrawal of the commercial reservation, article II applies to all arbitration agreements.

not lead to a foreign award [...]."[193] The same approach has been adopted by United States courts pursuant to the Federal Arbitration Act and the New York Convention.[194] French courts have similarly taken the view that the Convention should apply to a challenge to the existence or validity of an arbitration agreement, and that this was not restricted in any way by the language of article I.[195]

7. Article II governs the form and effects of arbitration agreements. Article II (1) requires each Contracting State to recognize an "agreement in writing" under which the parties undertake to submit their disputes to arbitration. This provision has been interpreted as establishing a presumption that arbitration agreements are valid.[196] Article II (2), which governs the form of "agreements in writing", covers agreements that have been "signed by the parties or contained in an exchange of letters or telegrams."

8. To ensure that arbitration agreements are complied with, article II (3) requires national courts seized of a matter covered by an arbitration agreement to refer the parties to arbitration, "unless it finds that the said agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed." The underlying principle that the parties to an arbitration agreement are required to honour their undertaking to submit to arbitration any dispute covered by their arbitration agreement is given effect by the mandatory requirement on national courts to refer the parties to arbitration when presented with a valid arbitration agreement. It follows that national courts are prohibited from hearing the merits of such disputes. In accordance with the principle of competence-competence, which empowers arbitrators to rule on their own jurisdiction, a challenge to the existence or validity of an arbitration agreement will not prevent an arbitral tribunal from proceeding with the arbitration.[197]

9. By accepting the principle of competence-competence, national courts do not relinquish their power to review the existence and validity of an arbitration agreement as they recover their power of full scrutiny of the arbitration agreement at the end of the arbitral process, once the award is rendered by the arbitral tribunal.

---

[193] *Gas Authority of India Ltd. v. SPIE-CAPAG SA and ors*, High Court of Delhi, India, 15 October 1993, Suit No. 1440; IA No. 5206.

[194] *Fred Freudensprung v. Offshore Technical Services, Inc., et al.*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 9 August 2004, 03-20226.

[195] *Société Bomar Oil N.V. v. Entreprise tunisienne d'activités pétrolières (ETAP)*, Court of Appeal of Versailles, France, 23 January 1991, upheld by *Société Bomar Oil N.V. v. Entreprise tunisienne d'activités pétrolières (ETAP)*, Court of Cassation, France, 9 November 1993, 91-15.194.

[196] Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 156 (1981); ICCA's Guide to the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention: A Handbook for Judges 37 (P. Sanders ed., 2011).

[197] Philippe Fouchard, L'arbitrage commercial international, para. 203 (1965); Antonias Dimolitsa, *Separability and Kompetenz-Kompetenz*, in Improving the Efficiency of Arbitration and Awards: 40 Years of Application of the New York Convention, ICCA Congress Series No. 9, 217 (A.J. van den Berg ed., 1999).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

The question arises whether, at the pre-award stage, in complying with their obligation to refer the parties to arbitration pursuant to article II (3), national courts could conduct a full or a limited review of the arbitration agreement to determine whether a valid arbitration agreement exists. In some jurisdictions, courts have limited their scrutiny to a *prima facie* review, thereby leaving the arbitrators to be the first to fully decide the issue of their jurisdiction. This principle, sometimes referred to as the "negative effect of competence-competence", gives arbitrators priority in determining their jurisdiction, while the courts keep the power to conduct a full review of the existence, validity and scope of the arbitration agreement at the end of the arbitral process.[198] In other jurisdictions, courts conduct a full review of the existence, validity and scope of the arbitration agreement in order to determine whether to refer the parties to arbitration.

10. The standard to be applied by the courts in determining whether the agreement is "null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed" when deciding whether to refer the parties to arbitration therefore remains debated.[199]

Analysis

Article II (1)

A. The obligation to recognize an agreement in writing

11. Article II (1) provides that, when certain conditions are met, Contracting States "shall" recognize an agreement in writing to arbitrate.

12. The obligation to recognize an "agreement in writing" is widely accepted by national courts. The Supreme Court of the United States has held that the compulsory language "shall" in article II (1) leaves courts with no discretion as they must recognize the arbitration agreement in accordance with the clear provisions of the Federal Arbitration Act and the New York Convention.[200] Similarly, the Swiss Federal Tribunal has interpreted article II as obliging Contracting States to recognize the validity and effect of an arbitration agreement.[201] The mandatory nature

[198] Emmanuel Gaillard, Yas Banifatemi, *Prima Facie Review of Existence, Validity of Arbitration Agreement*, N.Y.L.J., (December 2005); Dorothee Schramm, Elliott Geisinger,Philippe Pinsolle, *Article II*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 37, 95-96 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

[199] See the chapter of the Guide on article II, paras. 79-99.

[200] *Scherk v. Alberto-Culver Company*, Supreme Court, United States of America, 17 June 1974, 73-781. See also *Lindo (Nicaragua) v. NCL (Bahamas), Ltd.*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 29 August 2011, 10-10367; *Ernesto Francisco v. Stolt Achievement MT*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 4 June 2002, 01-30694.

[201] *Tradax Export S.A. v. Amoco Iran Oil Company*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 7 February 1984.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

of the requirement to recognize and enforce arbitration agreements has been confirmed by decisions in most jurisdictions.[202]

B. Meaning of "agreement"

13. Article II (1) deals with the agreement to arbitrate. When deciding whether to enforce an arbitration agreement, courts rely on the consent of the parties to establish whether they have agreed to submit the underlying dispute to arbitration.

14. The task of a court in determining an agreement to arbitration has been defined as follows by the Supreme Court of the United States under both the Federal Arbitration Act and the New York Convention: "the first task of a court asked to compel arbitration of a dispute is to determine whether the parties agreed to arbitrate" the dispute.[203] As confirmed by an Australian court, consent falls to be assessed on a case-by-case basis.[204]

15. Reported case law in various jurisdictions applying the Convention shows that parties were referred to arbitration pursuant to article II (3) when courts have found that the parties had consented to arbitration. Consent to arbitration has been found in a variety of situations, including when the parties (i) participated in the negotiation of the contract, (ii) participated in the performance of the contract, (iii) participated in both the negotiation and performance of the contract, (iv) had knowledge of the arbitration agreement, or (v) participated in the arbitral proceedings without raising any objection to the arbitral tribunal's jurisdiction.

16. *First*, a United States court held that participation in the negotiation of the contract containing the arbitration clause through an exchange of documents evidences the parties' consent to arbitrate any dispute arising out of that contract,

[202] *Seeley International Pty Ltd. v. Electra Air*, Federal Court, Australia, 29 January 2008, SAD 157 of 2007; *Sunward Overseas SA v. Servicios Maritimos Limitada Semar*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 20 November 1992, 472; *SA C.F.T.E. v. Jacques Dechavanne*, Court of Appeal of Grenoble, France, 13 September 1993; *Westco Airconditioning Ltd. v. Sui Chong Construction & Engineering Co. Ltd.*, Court of First Instance, High Court of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, Hong Kong, 3 February 1998, A12848; *Renusagar Power Co. Ltd. v. General Electric Company and anor.*, Supreme Court, India, 16 August 1984; *Louis Dreyfus Corporation of New York v. Oriana Soc. di Navigazione S.p.a*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 27 February 1970, 470, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 189 (1976).

[203] *Mitsubishi Motors Corp v. Soler Chrysler-Plymouth*, Supreme Court, United States of America, 2 July 1985, 3-1569.

[204] *ACD Tridon v. Tridon Australia*, Supreme Court of New South Wales, Australia, 4 October 2002, 5738 of 2001. See also *Moscow Dynamo v. Alexander M. Ovechkin*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 18 January 2006, 05-2245 (EGS) where the United States District Court of Colombia denied enforcement of the alleged arbitration clause as it was unable to find "factual predicate or legal authority to support [the] argument that a written agreement to arbitrate can be found absent a written exchange demonstrating both parties' agreement to arbitrate with one another."

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

thereby satisfying the requirements of article II.[205] In so ruling, the court noted that the party had affixed its stamp to the broker's slip as further evidence of consent.

17. *Second*, evidence of consent has been found in the parties' conduct in performing the contract. In situations where a party does not sign the contract or return a written confirmation, but nevertheless performs its obligations, many courts have held that such conduct amounts to a tacit acceptance of the terms of the contract, including the arbitration agreement.[206] For example, the Indian Supreme Court has enforced an arbitral award notwithstanding the fact that the arbitration agreement was neither signed nor contained in an exchange of documents. It held that the party, in particular by opening letters of credit in reliance on the contract and invoking the contract's force majeure clause, accepted the terms of the written contract, including the arbitration clause.[207] Following the same reasoning, but applying French law on the basis of the "more-favourable-right" provision at article VII (1),[208] a French court upheld an arbitration agreement contained in a booking note on the ground that the parties had performed the booking note. The court held that since the parties had knowledge of the booking note, which constituted the parties' sole "meeting of minds", they were bound by the arbitration agreement contained therein.[209]

18. *Third*, when a party that did not sign the contract containing the arbitration agreement had nevertheless participated in the negotiation of, and performed obligations under, that contract, certain courts have referred that non-signatory to arbitration. In a case concerning an action to set aside an award, but dealing with the issue of the binding character of an arbitration agreement on a non-signatory, the Paris Court of Appeal confirmed that the parent company that participated in the negotiation of and assumed obligations under the main contract was bound by

[205] *Chloe Z Fishing Co. Inc., et al. v. Odyssey Re (London) Ltd., formerly known as Sphere Drake Insurance, P.L.C., et al.*, District Court, Southern District of California, United States of America, 26 April 2000, 109 F. Supp. 2d 1236 (2000).

[206] *Metropolitan Steel Corporation Ltd. v. Macsteel International U.K. Ltd.*, High Court of Karachi, Pakistan, 7 March 2006, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 449 (2007); *Standard Bent Glass Corp. v. Glassrobots OY [Fin.]*, Court of Appeals, Third Circuit, United States of America, 20 June 2003, 02-2169; *Compagnie de Navigation et Transports S.A. v. MSC Mediterranean Shipping Company S.A.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 16 January 1995; *Smita Conductors Ltd. v. Euro Alloys Ltd.*, Supreme Court, India, 31 August 2001, Civil Appeal No. 12930 of 1996. *Contra*, *Concordia Trading B.V. v. Nantong Gangde Oil Co., Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 3 August 2009, [2009] MinSiTaZi No. 22.

[207] *Smita Conductors Ltd. v. Euro Alloys Ltd.*, Supreme Court, India, 31 August 2001, Civil Appeal No. 12930 of 1996.

[208] Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 81 (1981); Emmanuel Gaillard, *The Relationship of the New York Convention with other Treaties and with Domestic Law*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 69, 70 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

[209] *SA Groupama transports v. Société MS Régine Hans und Klaus Heinrich KG*, Court of Appeal of Basse Terre, France, 18 April 2005.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

the arbitration agreement, despite not being a party to the main contract.[210] However, this approach is not universally accepted. For instance, in the *Dallah* case, the Supreme Court of the United Kingdom, relying on the New York Convention, refused to grant leave to a party seeking to enforce an award rendered against the Islamic Republic of Pakistan on the grounds that there was no evidence that the common intention of the parties was to add the Government of Pakistan as a party to the main contract, despite its participating in negotiations and in the performance of certain obligations under that contract.[211]

19. *Fourth*, consent has also been found in situations where a party had knowledge of the arbitration agreement. For instance, when the arbitration agreement is printed on the back of the contract (or contained in general terms and conditions printed on the back of the contract), parties have been deemed to have knowledge of the agreement to arbitrate as they had the opportunity to review the arbitration agreement.[212] In this vein, in a dispute where the arbitration agreement was contained in a document other than the main contract, the Italian Court of Cassation noted that, in order to establish the parties' consent to an arbitration agreement, the parties had to have knowledge of the arbitration agreement through a specific reference to it in the main contract ("*per relationem perfecta*").[213]

20. In some jurisdictions, parties are deemed to have knowledge of the arbitration agreement when, irrespective of whether they had actual knowledge of the arbitration agreement, they should reasonably have known about it. In such cases, courts will enforce arbitration agreements when parties are aware of the arbitration agreement or should have been aware of the arbitration agreement. For instance, the Italian Court of Cassation now recognizes that, when the parties are professional businessmen who should be aware of the content of general terms and conditions in their field, a generic reference to such terms and conditions ("*per relationem imperfecta*") satisfies the requirement of article II of the Convention.[214] German courts also admit that consent can be implied from relevant international

[210] *Société Kis France et autres v. Société Générale et autres*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 31 October 1989, 1992 Rev. Arb. 90. For a similar reasoning, finding that the Government of Turkmenistan "acted as the alter ego of [a State owned entity] in regard to this Joint Venture with [the claimant in the arbitration]": *Bridas S.A.P.I.C., Bridas Energy International, Ltd., Intercontinental Oil and Gas Ventures, Ltd., and Bridas Corp v. Government of Turkmenistan*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 21 April 2006, 04-20842.

[211] *Dallah Real Estate and Tourism Holding Company v. Ministry of Religious Affairs, Government of Pakistan*, Supreme Court, England and Wales, 3 November 2010, UKSC 2009/0165. See also the contrary decision by the French Paris Court of Appeal in the same matter: *Gouvernement du Pakistan—Ministère des affaires religieuses v. société Dallah Real Estate and Tourism Holding Company*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 17 February 2011, 09/28533, 09/28535 and 09/28541, 2011 Rev. Arb. 286.

[212] Court of Appeal of the Canton of Basel-Landschaft, Switzerland, 5 July 1994, 30-94/261; *Bobbie Brooks Inc. v. Lanificio Walter Banci s.a.s.*, Court of Appeal of Firenze, Italy, 8 October 1977, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 289 (1979).

[213] *Louis Dreyfus S.p.A. v. Cereal Mangimi S.r.l.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 19 May 2009, 11529.

[214] *Del Medico & C. SAS v. Iberprotein Sl*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 16 June 2011, 13231.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

trade usages when the contract is typical of the industry and the parties are active in the relevant field of business.[215]

21. Some courts have also ruled that parties are bound by an arbitration agreement incorporated by reference on the grounds that they should have been aware of its terms. It is indeed very common in international trade for parties not to set out the terms of their contract in detail, but instead to refer to separate documents, such as general conditions and standard-form agreements produced by professional bodies, which may contain arbitration agreements.[216] Some courts have accepted that, by referring to general terms and conditions in their contract, the parties have consented to the arbitration agreement therein because they should reasonably have known about the arbitration agreement.[217] Indeed, as noted by an Indian court, article II does not specify that the agreement to arbitrate must be contained in a single document.[218] Hence, in a case where the Convention applied, a United States court upheld an arbitration agreement contained in general terms and conditions on the grounds that the parties had tacitly consented to the general terms and conditions to which the contract referred, notwithstanding the fact that the plaintiff had never been in possession of those general terms and conditions. The court reasoned that failure to request the terms and conditions referred to in a contract implied tacit acceptance of its terms, including the arbitration agreement.[219] In the same vein, in *Bomar*, relying on both the Convention and French law, a French court held that an arbitration agreement contained in a document referred to in the main contract should be enforced insofar as it could be demonstrated that the parties were aware or should have been aware of it.[220] A number of courts have thus upheld arbitration agreements contained in general conditions

[215]Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 3 December 1992, III ZR 30/91.

[216]Domenico Di Pietro, *Validity of Arbitration Clauses Incorporated by Reference*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention 1958 in Practice 355 (E. Gaillard,D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

[217]*Owners & Parties Interested in the Vessel M.V. Baltic Confidence, et al. v. State Trading Corp. of India, et al. (India)*, Supreme Court, India, 20 August 2001, Special Leave Petition (civil) 17183 of 2001; *Tradax Export S.A. v. Amoco Iran Oil Company*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 7 February 1984; *X S.A. v. Y Ltd.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 12 January 1989, 5P.249/1988.

[218]*Gas Authority of India Ltd. v. SPIE-CAPAG SA and ors*, High Court of Delhi, India, 15 October 1993, Suit No. 1440; IA No. 5206.

[219]*Copape Produtos de Pétroleo LTDA. v. Glencore LTD.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 8 February 2012, 11 Civ. 5744 LAK.

[220]*Société Bomar Oil N.V. v. Entreprise tunisienne d'activités pétrolières (ETAP)*, Court of Appeal of Versailles, France, 23 January 1991, upheld by *Société Bomar Oil N.V. v. Entreprise tunisienne d'activités pétrolières (ETAP)*, Court of Cassation, France, 9 November 1993, 91-15.194. See also *SA Groupama transports v. Société MS Régine Hans und Klaus Heinrich KG*, Court of Appeal of Basse Terre, France, 18 April 2005.

referred to in the main contract.[221] In the same vein, in a dispute arising out of a bill of lading expressly referring to a charter party agreement,[222] the Indian Supreme Court upheld an arbitration agreement contained in the charter party agreement. As confirmation of this approach, article 7(6) (Option I) of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration expressly provides that a reference in a contract to any document containing an arbitration clause qualifies as an arbitration agreement in writing.[223]

22. *Fifth*, courts have relied on the procedural behaviour of the parties to infer their consent to arbitrate their disputes. Hence, participation in the arbitral proceedings without any objection to the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal has been held to establish the parties' agreement to arbitrate.[224] For instance, having found that an unsigned arbitration agreement did not comply with the requirements of article II (2), the Brazilian Superior Court of Justice nevertheless enforced an award rendered under that arbitration agreement on the grounds that the parties had consented to the arbitral tribunal's jurisdiction by participating in the arbitral proceedings without raising any objections to the arbitral tribunal's jurisdiction.[225] Likewise, an Australian court enforced an arbitral award on costs rendered under the auspices of the ICC in Paris where the arbitral tribunal found that it did not have jurisdiction as the arbitration agreement was invalid. The Australian court held that, by signing the Terms of Reference, the parties had consented to submit their dispute to arbitration.[226]

23. The reliance placed by courts on the parties' consent to arbitration is consistent with the Convention's philosophy of providing "satisfactory evidence of the

[221] *Del Medico & C. SAS v. Iberprotein Sl*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 16 June 2011, 13231; *Copape Produtos de Pétroleo LTDA. v. Glencore LTD.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 8 February 2012, 11 Civ. 5744 LAK; *Standard Bent Glass Corp. v. Glassrobots OY [Fin.]*, Court of Appeals, Third Circuit, United States of America, 20 June 2003, 02-2169; *SA Groupama transports v. Société MS Régine Hans und Klaus Heinrich KG*, Court of Cassation, France, 21 November 2006, 05-21.818; Court of Appeal of the Canton of Basel-Landschaft, Switzerland, 5 July 1994, 30-94/261; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Cologne, Germany, 16 December 1992, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 535 (1996).

[222] *Owners & Parties Interested in the Vessel M.V. Baltic Confidence, et al. v. State Trading Corp. of India, et al. (India)*, Supreme Court, India, 20 August 2001, Special Leave Petition (civil) 17183 of 2001. See also *Tradax Export SA v. Amoco Iran Oil Company*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 7 February 1984; *Welex A.G. v. Rosa Maritime Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 3 July 2003, A3/02/2230 A3/02/2231.

[223] Article 7(6) (Option I) of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration.

[224] *CTA Lind & Co. Scandinavia AB in Liquidation's bankruptcy Estate v. Erik Lind*, District Court, Middle District of Florida, Tampa Division, United States of America, 7 April 2009, 8:08-cv-1380-T-30TGW; *China Nanhai Oil Joint Service Corporation Shenzhen Branch v. Gee Tai Holdings Co. Ltd.*, High Court, Supreme Court of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, 13 July 1994, 1992 No. MP 2411; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Schleswig, Germany, 30 March 2000, 16 SchH 05/99.

[225] *L'Aiglon S/A v. Têxtil União S/A*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 18 May 2005, SEC 856.

[226] *Commonwealth Development Corp v. Montague*, Supreme Court of Queensland, Australia, 27 June 2000, Appeal No. 8159 of 1999; DC No. 29 of 1999.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

agreement".[227] Commentators have emphasized the importance of the intention of the parties and whether there is a "meeting of minds".[228]

C. Scope of the "agreement in writing"

24. Article II (1) requires national courts to recognize an agreement in writing under which the parties have undertaken to submit to arbitration all "differences" in respect of a legal relationship which is capable of settlement by arbitration.

a. Meaning of "differences"

25. Article II (1) refers to the parties' undertaking to submit to arbitration "all or any differences" which have arisen or which may arise between them, and which are covered by their agreement.

26. Very few reported cases have addressed this issue and all of them have adopted a broad interpretation of "differences" in line with the pro-arbitration bias of the Convention.

27. In interpreting the word "differences", the High Court of Hong Kong has held that the parties should be referred to arbitration even when there is a dispute as to the existence of a dispute.[229] The court concluded that whether or not a dispute existed was a matter for the arbitral tribunal to determine. The Australian Supreme Court relied on the words "all or any" in article II (1) to confirm that article II (1) should be construed broadly.[230] Similarly, the Court of Appeal of England and Wales in *Fiona Trust* held that, in the absence of clear language to the contrary, arbitration clauses are to be given the broadest interpretation possible, since the parties, as rational businessmen, were likely to have intended any dispute arising out of the relationship into which they had entered to be decided by the same tribunal.[231]

---

[227] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Comments by the United Kingdom, E/2822/Add.4,Annex I, p. 5.

[228] Reinmar Wolff, *Commentary on Article II*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 85, 128-132 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); ICCA's Guide to the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention: A Handbook for Judges 45 (P. Sanders ed., 2011).

[229] *Guangdong Agriculture Ltd. v. Conagra International Far East Company Ltd.*, High Court, Supreme Court of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, 24 September 1992, HCA003032/1992.

[230] *Seeley International Pty Ltd. v. Electra Air*, Federal Court, Australia, 29 January 2008, SAD 157 of 2007.

[231] *Fiona Trust & Holding Corp. v. Privalov*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 24 January 2007, 2006 2353 A3 QBCMF, upheld by *Fili Shipping Co. Ltd. and others v. Premium Nafta Products Ltd. and others*, House of Lords, England and Wales, 17 October 2007.

b. "Defined legal relationship"

28. Article II (1)'s requirement that the dispute must have arisen "in respect of a defined legal relationship, whether contractual or not", is very broad and seldom disputed in case law.

29. Relying on the text of article II, the Canadian Supreme Court has held that extra-contractual claims could fall within the scope of an arbitration agreement when the claims relate to contractual obligations.[232]

c. "Subject matter capable of settlement by arbitration"

30. The requirement that the dispute concerns a "subject matter capable of settlement by arbitration" refers to the arbitrability of the dispute.[233] Given the New York Convention's lack of guidance on this topic, national courts have determined whether a specific subject matter can be settled by arbitration either by referring to the law applicable to the arbitration agreement or by referring to their own law.

31. Some courts have determined that this issue should be resolved according to the law applicable to the arbitration agreement. In making this determination, they have referred to the conflict of laws rule in article V (1)*(a)* of the Convention, i.e., "the law to which the parties have subjected [the arbitration agreement] or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of the country where the award was made."[234] By analogy, courts have interpreted the expression "where the award was made" to mean "where the award shall be made", i.e., by reference to the seat of arbitration. Swiss and Austrian courts have followed this approach.[235]

32. Other courts have assessed whether a dispute was capable of settlement by arbitration pursuant to their own system of law. In so doing, courts have followed three different approaches to conclude that the lex fori should apply to determine whether a dispute is capable of settlement by arbitration.

---

[232]*Kaverit Steel and Crane v. Kone Corp.*, Alberta Court of Queen's Bench, Canada, 14 May 1991, AJN° 450 and *Kaverit Steel v. Kone Corp.*, Court of Appeal of Alberta, Canada, 16 January 1992, ABCA 7.

[233]Dorothee Schramm, Elliott Geisinger, Philippe Pinsolle, *Article II*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 37, 69-73 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Albert Jan van den Berg, *The New York Convention of 1958: An Overview*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention 1958 in Practice 39, 53 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Jan Paulsson, *Arbitrability, Still Through a Glass Darkly*, in Arbitration in the Next Decade 95, 96 (ICC Pub. No. 612E, 1999).

[234]*Misr Insurance Company v. Alexandria Shipping Agencies Company*, Court of Cassation, Egypt, 23 December 1991, 547/51 (unofficial translation).

[235]Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 21 March 1995, 5C.215/1994/lit; Supreme Court, Austria, 17 November 1971, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 183 (1976).

33. *First*, a number of courts have relied on article V (2)*(a)* of the Convention which provides that whether the subject matter of a dispute is capable of settlement by arbitration is to be assessed pursuant to the law of the country where recognition and enforcement is sought. By analogy, the Italian Court of Cassation determined that the *lex fori*, that is, the law of the State of the court seized, should be applied to determine whether a dispute is capable of settlement by arbitration.[236] Belgian courts have followed the same approach.[237]

34. *Second*, in assessing whether a dispute is capable of settlement by arbitration and consequently deciding whether to refer the parties to arbitration pursuant to article II (3), courts in the United States have applied the Federal Arbitration Act, that is the *lex fori*, but without any reference to article V (2)*(a)*.[238] Hence, United States courts have recognized that disputes arising out of a Statute are capable of settlement by arbitration under the Convention. By way of example, disputes arising out of the Sherman Antitrust Act,[239] the Securities Act and Exchange Act,[240] the Jones Act on employment,[241] and bankruptcy legislation[242] were held to be capable of settlement by arbitration. United States courts have also accepted that disputes arising out of employment[243] and distributorship contracts[244] are capable of settlement by arbitration.[245]

35. *Third*, French courts have rejected the application of a particular national law to assess whether or not a dispute is capable of settlement by arbitration. Relying on article VII of the Convention, the Paris Court of Appeal held that French law should apply because it was more favourable than article II, and that the principle of the validity of international arbitration agreements, which is a "substantive rule

---

[236] *Compagnia Generale Construzioni "COGECO" S.p.A. v. Piersanti*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 27 April 1979, XVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 229 (1996).

[237] *Colvi N.V. v. Interdica*, Supreme Court, Belgium, 15 October 2004, C.02.0216.N.

[238] *Scherk v. Alberto-Culver Company*, Supreme Court, United States of America, 17 June 1974, 73-781; *Rhone Mediterranee Compagnia Francese v. Lauro*, Court of Appeals, Third Circuit, United States of America, 6 July 1983, 82-3523.

[239] *Mitsubishi Motors Corp v. Soler Chrysler-Plymouth*, Supreme Court, United States of America, 2 July 1985, 3-1569.

[240] *Scherk v. Alberto-Culver Company*, Supreme Court, United States of America, 17 June 1974, 73-781.

[241] *Lindo v. NCL, Ltd.*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 29 August 2011, 10-10367.

[242] *Société Nationale Algérienne Pour La Recherche, La Production and others v. Distrigas Corp.*, District Court, District of Massachusetts, United States of America, 17 March 1987, 86-2014-Y.

[243] *Lindo v. NCL, Ltd.*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 29 August 2011, 10-10367; *Jane Doe v. Princess Cruise Lines, LTD., a foreign corporation, d.b.a. Princess Cruises*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 23 September 2011, 10-10809.

[244] *Becker Autoradio U.S.A., Inc. v. Becker Autoradiowerk GmbH*, Court of Appeals, Third Circuit, United States of America, 17 July 1978, 77-2566, 77-2567; *Travelport Global Distribution Systems B.V. v. Bellview Airlines Limited*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 10 September 2012, 12 Civ. 3483(DLC).

[245] In so doing, courts have assessed whether, for each Statute, it was the congressional intent to have a specific category of disputes capable of settlement by arbitration: *Mitsubishi Motors Corp v. Soler Chrysler-Plymouth*, Supreme Court, United States of America, 2 July 1985, 437 United States 614. More generally, see Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 769, 778 (2009).

of French international arbitration law", establishes the validity of any arbitration clause "irrespective of any reference to national law".[246] The Paris Court of Appeal expressly distinguished this principle from articles II and V of the Convention "which call, in particular, for the application of national laws to render the clause valid."[247] By way of example, a French court referred the parties to arbitration on the basis of an arbitration agreement contained in an employment contract notwithstanding the petitioner's argument that employment disputes were not capable of settlement by arbitration. The court noted that the Convention applied since the employment contract was international and France had withdrawn its commercial reservation.[248]

Article II (2)

36. Article II (2) defines the "in writing" requirement. An "agreement in writing" includes "an arbitral clause in a contract, or an arbitration agreement, signed by the parties or contained in an exchange of letters or telegrams."

37. Prior to UNCITRAL addressing the issue, national courts had diverged on whether the more-favourable-rule principle embodied in article VII (1) of the Convention applied to the requirement that an arbitration agreement be "in writing" within the meaning of article II. In 2006, UNCITRAL confirmed that article VII (1) "should be applied to allow any interested party to avail itself of rights it may have, under the law or treaties of the country where an arbitration agreement is sought to be relied upon, to seek recognition of the validity of such an arbitration agreement."[249] Since then, national courts have more consistently enforced arbitration agreements pursuant to the less stringent formal requirements available under their national laws or treaties as provided for by article VII with respect to arbitral awards.[250]

---

[246] *Ste A.B.S. American Bureau of Shipping v. Copropriété Maritime Jules Verne et autres*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 4 December 2002, 2001/17293, upheld by *Copropriété Maritime Jules Verne et autres v. Société A.B.S. American bureau of shipping*, Court of Cassation, France, 7 June 2006, 03-12.034

[247] *Ste A.B.S. American Bureau of Shipping v. Copropriété Maritime Jules Verne et autres*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 4 December 2002, 2001/17293.

[248] *SA C.F.T.E. v. Jacques Dechavanne*, Court of Appeal of Grenoble, France, 13 September 1993.

[249] Recommendation regarding the interpretation of article II, paragraph 2, and article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York, 10 June 1958 (2006), *Official Records of the General Assembly*, Sixty-first Session, Supplement No. 17 (A/61/17), paras. 177-81 and Annex II, available at www.uncitral.org/pdf/english/texts/arbitration/NY-conv/A2E.pdf. The *Travaux préparatoires* to the Recommendation are contained in *Official Records of the General Assembly*, Fifty-sixth Session, Supplement No. 17 (A/56/17), para. 313; *Ibid.*, Fifty-seventh Session, Supplement No. 17 (A/57/17), para. 183; and in United Nations documents A/CN.9/468, paras. 88-106; A/CN.9/485, paras. 60-77; A/CN.9/487, paras. 42-63; A/CN.9/508, paras. 40-50; A/CN.9/592, paras. 82-88; A/CN.9/WG.II/WP.118, paras. 25-33; A/CN.9/607; and A/CN.9/609, and its addenda 1 to 6.

[250] For a more detailed analysis on the interaction between articles II and VII, see the chapter of the Guide on article VII, paras. 31-35.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

A. "Arbitral clause in a contract" versus "arbitration agreement"

38. The Convention provides that an "agreement in writing" may be either an "arbitral clause in a contract" or an "arbitration agreement".

39. Examples of "arbitral clauses in a contract" within the meaning of article II (2) have been found when the arbitration agreement is printed on the back of the contract.[251]

40. Regarding the "arbitration agreement", an Australian court has confirmed that the Terms of Reference signed in arbitration proceedings under the auspices of the ICC International Court of Arbitration qualified as an "arbitration agreement" and an "agreement in writing" within the meaning of article II (2).[252] In that case, one of the respondents in the arbitral proceedings had successfully objected to the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal. The arbitral tribunal then issued an award on costs in favour of that respondent who then sought to enforce the award. The appellant opposed enforcement on the grounds that the arbitral tribunal had found that there was no valid arbitration agreement binding the respondent. The Supreme Court of Queensland enforced the award, finding that the Terms of Reference signed by the parties to the arbitration proceedings constituted an "agreement in writing" within the meaning of article II.

41. The distinction between an arbitration clause in a contract and a "submission agreement"[253] has lost most of its relevance in contemporary arbitral practice. In a 1994 decision, the United States Court of Appeals for the Fifth Circuit distinguished between an arbitral clause in a contract and an arbitration agreement. It ruled that, within the meaning of article II (2), while the former needed to be signed by the parties, no such requirement applied to the latter.[254] This position was subsequently rejected by the United States Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit. It held that the signature requirement in article II (2) of the Convention

[251] See the chapter of the Guide on article II, para. 19. See also Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht [BayObLG], Germany, 17 September 1998, BayObLG 4 Z Sch 1/98; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 25 May 1970, VII ZR 157/68; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Schleswig, Germany, 30 March 2000, 16 SchH 05/99; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 12 February 1976, III ZR 42/74.

[252] *Commonwealth Development Corp v. Montague*, Supreme Court of Queensland, Australia, 27 June 2000, Appeal No. 8159 of 1999; DC No. 29 of 1999.

[253] The expression "arbitration agreement" is generally used to include both arbitration clauses and submission agreements. See Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 193-96 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999).

[254] *Sphere Drake Insurance PLC v. Marine Towing*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 23 March 1994, 93-3200. See also *Borsack v. Chalk & Vermilion Fine Arts, Ltd.*, District Court, South District of New York, United States of America, 7 August 1997, 96 CV 6587 (BDP).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

applies to both contracts containing an arbitral clause and arbitration agreements, unless they are contained in an exchange of letters or telegrams.[255]

B. The signature requirement

42. Pursuant to article II (2), the requirement of an agreement in writing is met when an arbitral clause or an arbitration agreement is signed by the parties.

43. When the parties to the contract or instrument containing the arbitration agreement have signed such contract or instrument, the signature requirement of article II (2) is to be regarded as satisfied. This has been generally followed by courts.[256]

44. Conversely, certain courts have refused to enforce arbitration agreements against parties that have not signed it.[257] For example, the Chinese Supreme Court denied enforcement of an award on the ground that only one party had signed the contract containing the arbitration clause.[258] Similarly, the Brazilian Superior Court of Justice refused to enforce an arbitration agreement because the parties had not signed the contract containing the arbitration agreement.[259]

45. In the same vein, in *Javor v. Francoeur*, the Canadian Supreme Court of British Columbia refused to enforce an award rendered against the respondent because it had not signed the arbitration agreement. During the arbitral proceedings, the tribunal found that the respondent was the alter-ego of the corporate party which had signed the arbitration agreement and consequently ordered the respondent to participate in the arbitral proceedings. The court relied on the text of article II (2)

[255] *Kahn Lucas Lancaster, Inc. v. Lark International Ltd.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 9 July 1999, 97-9436. See also *Czarina, L.L.C. v. W.F. Poe Syndicate*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 4 February 2004, 03-10518; *Moscow Dynamo v. Alexander M. Ovechkin*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 18 January 2006, 05-2245 (EGS).

[256] *Sunward Overseas S.A. v. Servicios Maritimos Limitada Semar*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 20 November 1992, 472; *Krauss Maffei Verfahrenstechnik GmbH et al. v. Bristol Myers Squibb S.p.A.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 10 March 2000, 58; *Steve Didmon v. Frontier Drilling (United States), INC., et al.*, District Court, Southern District of Texas, Houston Division, United States of America, 19 March 2012, H-11-2051; *Kahn Lucas Lancaster, Inc. v. Lark International Ltd.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 29 July 1999, 97-9436; *Smita Conductors Ltd. v. Euro Alloys Ltd.*, Supreme Court, India, 31 August 2001, Civil Appeal No. 12930 of 1996; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 8 June 2010, XI ZR 349/08; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 25 January 2011, XI ZR 350/08.

[257] Court of Appeal of the Republic and Canton of Ticino, Second civil Chamber, Switzerland, 2 April 2003, 14.2002.81.

[258] *Concordia Trading B.V. v. Nantong Gangde Oil Co., Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 3 August 2009, [2009] MinSiTaZi No. 22.

[259] *Plexus Cotton Limited v. Santana Têxtil S/A*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 15 February 2006, SEC 967; *Indutech SpA v. Algocentro Armazéns Gerais Ltda.*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 17 December 2008, SEC 978; *Kanematsu USA Inc. v. ATS—Advanced Telecommunications Systems do Brasil Ltda.*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 18 April 2012, SEC 885.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

of the British Columbia Foreign Arbitral Awards Act (which incorporates article II (2) of the Convention) and ruled that the purpose of the Act was to limit enforcement of awards to "part[ies] signatory to the [arbitration] agreement." It held that since the respondent was not a named party or a signatory to the arbitration agreement, the award could not be enforced against it.[260]

46. By contrast, a number of courts have enforced arbitration agreements against parties that had not signed the arbitration agreement. For instance, United States courts have held that non-signatories can be bound by an arbitration agreement to the extent that the arbitration agreement is not null and void under the Convention and that a contract law theory—such as agency, estoppel, or principles relating to alter-egos and third party beneficiaries—applies to the case at hand.[261] In France, entities that had not signed the arbitration agreement have been referred to arbitration pursuant to the group of companies doctrine.[262]

C. An arbitral clause or an arbitration agreement included in an exchange of documents

a. An exchange

47. Under article II (2), an agreement will also meet the "in-writing" requirement if it is contained in an exchange of letters or telegrams. As noted by a German court, the essential factor in the exchange of documents requirement under the New York Convention is mutuality; that is, reciprocal transmission of documents.[263]

48. The United States District Court for the District of Colombia has confirmed that one party's unilateral conduct is insufficient to establish an "agreement in

[260] *Javor v. Francoeur*, Supreme Court of British Columbia, Canada, 6 March 2003. See also *Dallah Real Estate and Tourism Holding Company v. Ministry of Religious Affairs, Government of Pakistan*, Supreme Court, England and Wales, 3 November 2010, UKSC 2009/0165.

[261] *Formostar, LLC, et al. v. Henry Florentius, et al.*, District Court, District of Nevada, United States of America, 13 July 2012, 2:11-cv-01166-GMN-CWH; *Flexi-Van Leasing, Inc. v. Through Transport Mutual Insurance Association, Ltd., et al.*, Court of Appeals, Third Circuit, United States of America, 18 August 2004, 03-3383; *Sarhank Group v. Oracle Corporation*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 14 April 2005, 02-9383; *Milton Escobal v. Celebration Cruise Operator Inc., Celebration Cruise Line LLC*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 20 July 2012, 11-14022. See also for a case where none of the contract law theories were found applicable: *Bel-Ray Co., Inc. (United States) v. Chemrite (Pty) Ltd. (South Africa)*, Court of Appeals, Third Circuit, United States of America, 28 June 1999, 98-6297; *Sarhank Group v. Oracle Corporation*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 14 April 2005, 02-9383.

[262] *Société Kis France et autres v. Société Générale et autres*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 31 October 1989, 1992 Rev. Arb. 90.

[263] Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Frankfurt, Germany, 26 June 2006, 26 Sch 28/05; Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht [BayObLG], Germany, 12 December 2002, 4 Z Sch 16/02.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

writing" within the meaning of article II (2) of the Convention.[264] In that case, the counter-party never responded either explicitly or implicitly to the letters containing the arbitration agreements.

49. In the context of an investment arbitration dispute, the United States Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit has confirmed that the requirement of an exchange of documents within the meaning of article II of the Convention is fulfilled by an offer to arbitrate contained in a bilateral investment treaty and its subsequent acceptance by an investor in the Request for Arbitration.[265]

b. Non-exhaustive list of documents

50. Even though article II (2) only makes express reference to "an exchange of letters or telegrams", it is widely accepted that article II (2) covers any exchange of documents and is not limited to letters and telegrams. Most courts recognize that an arbitration agreement contained in an exchange of documents or other written communications, whether physical or electronic, satisfies the requirement of article II (2).[266]

51. By way of example, a Canadian court ruling upon the validity of an arbitration agreement under article V (1)*(a)* has confirmed that an "agreement in writing" under article II (2) can take various forms and should be given a functional and pragmatic interpretation.[267]

52. Indeed, at its thirty-ninth session, in July 2006, UNCITRAL expressly recommended that article II (2) be applied "recognizing that the circumstances described

[264]*Moscow Dynamo v. Alexander M. Ovechkin*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 18 January 2006, 05-2245 (EGS).

[265]*Republic of Ecuador v. Chevron Corp. (United States)*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 17 March 2011, 10-1020-cv (L), 10-1026 (Con). See also *Ministry of Defense of the Islamic Republic of Iran v. Gould Inc., Gould Marketing, Inc., Hoffman Export Corporation, and Gould International, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, United States of America, 23 October 1989, 88-5879/88-5881 for the Iran-US Claims Tribunal Statutes qualifying as an "agreement in writing".

[266]For an exchange of telexes and faxes, see *Compagnie de Navigation et Transports S.A. v. MSC Mediterranean Shipping Company S.A.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 16 January 1995; *C S.A. v. E. Corporation*, Court of Justice of Geneva, Switzerland, 14 April 1983, 187. For an exchange by e-mails with a confirmation by fax, see *Great Offshore Ltd. v. Iranian Offshore Engineering & Construction Co.*, Supreme Court, Civil Appellate Jurisdiction, India, 25 August 2008, Arbitration Petition No. 10 of 2006.

[267]*Sheldon Proctor v. Leon Schellenberg*, Court of Appeal of Manitoba, Canada, 11 December 2002.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

therein are not exhaustive".[268] As further confirmation, at the same session, UNCITRAL amended the Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration to clarify that "the requirement that an arbitration agreement be in writing is met by an electronic communication [...]".[269] In accordance with the UNCITRAL Recommendation, a recent Spanish decision has held that the list of documents set out in article II is not exhaustive and therefore an arbitration agreement concluded by electronic means of communications fulfils the "in-writing" requirement.[270]

53. Relying on the wording "include" in article II (2), certain commentators have also considered that the circumstances described in article II (2) are not exhaustive.[271]

C. *Whether the signature requirement applies to an exchange of documents*

54. Where the arbitration agreement is contained in an exchange of documents, the text of article II (2) does not, on its face, require the parties' signature on the agreement to arbitrate.

55. The Swiss Federal Tribunal has confirmed that when the arbitration agreement is contained in an exchange of documents, the signature requirement does not apply.[272] Similarly, ruling upon Section 7 of the Indian Arbitration Act of 1996 (which mirrors article II (2) of the Convention), the Supreme Court of India has

[268]Recommendation regarding the interpretation of article II, paragraph 2, and article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York, 10 June 1958 (2006), para. 1. *Official Records of the General Assembly, Sixty-first Session, Supplement No. 17* (A/61/17), paras. 177-81 and Annex II, available at www.uncitral.org/pdf/english/texts/arbitration/NY-conv/A2E.pdf. As early as 2005, the United Nations Convention on the Use of Electronic Communications in International Contracts prepared by UNCITRAL provided that it applies, pursuant to its article 20, to the use of electronic communications in connection with the formation or performance of an agreement falling under the New York Convention. See the Resolution 60/21 adopted by the General Assembly on 23 November 2005 on the United Nations Convention on the Use of Electronic Communications in International Contracts, available at www.uncitral.org/pdf/english/texts/electcom/06-57452_Ebook.pdf.

[269]Article 7(4) (Option I) of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration.

[270]High Court of Justice of Cataluña, Spain, 15 March 2012, RJ 2012/6120.

[271]See, e.g., Toby Landau, Salim Moollan, *Article II and the Requirement of the Form*, in ENFORCEMENT OF ARBITRATION AGREEMENTS AND INTERNATIONAL ARBITRAL AWARDS—THE NEW YORK CONVENTION 1958 IN PRACTICE 189, 244-47 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Gabrielle Kaufmann-Kohler, *Arbitration Agreements in Online Business to Business Transactions*, in LIBER AMICORUM K.-H. BOCKSTIEGEL 355, 358-62 (2001). In fairness, taken in isolation, this argument is not determinative as it is not supported by the Convention's other official languages. For instance, the French uses the expression "*On entend par "convention écrite"* [...]" which does not suggest a non-exhaustive list but rather a definition of the "agreement in writing".

[272]*Compagnie de Navigation et Transports S.A. v. MSC Mediterranean Shipping Company S.A.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 16 January 1995; *Tradax Export SA v. Amoco Iran Oil Company*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 7 February 1984.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

upheld an arbitration agreement contained in an unsigned contract exchanged between parties.[273] This approach has been followed in many jurisdictions.[274]

56. By contrast, a limited number of decisions have refused to enforce an unsigned arbitration agreement that had been exchanged via telexes.[275]

57. The *travaux préparatoires* and the wording of article II (2) support the approach that the signature requirement does not apply to an exchange of documents. The drafters of the New York Convention sought to adopt a flexible "in-writing" requirement in order to reflect business reality.[276] For this reason, a distinction was drawn between "an arbitral clause [...] or an arbitration agreement, signed by the parties" "or" "contained in an exchange of letters or telegrams".

Article II (3)

58. Where there is an agreement in writing as defined under article II (1) and (2), article II (3) requires national courts to refer the parties to arbitration, if requested to do so by at least one party, unless the court finds that the agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed.

A. General principles

a. Obligation to refer the parties to arbitration

59. Article II (3) provides that a "court of a Contracting State, when seized of an action in a matter in respect of which the parties have made an agreement in

[273] *M/S Unissi (India) Pvt Ltd. v. Post Graduate Institute of Medical Education and Research*, Supreme Court, India, 1 October 2008, Civil Appeal No. 6039 of 2008.

[274] *Not Indicated v. Not Indicated*, Supreme Court, Austria, 21 February 1978, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 418 (1985); *Standard Bent Glass Corp. v. Glassrobots OY*, Court of Appeals, Third Circuit, United States of America, 20 June 2003, 02-2169. See also at the award enforcement stage: Landgericht [LG] Zweibrücken, Germany, 11 January 1978, 6.0 H 1/77; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Schleswig, Germany, 30 March 2000, 16 SchH 05/99.

[275] See, e.g., *Oleaginosa Moreno Hermanos Sociedad Anonima Comercial Industrial Financeira Imobiliaria y Agropecuaria v. Moinho Paulista Ltd*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 17 May 2006, SEC 866, upheld by *Oleaginosa Moreno Hermanos Sociedad Anónima Comercial Industrial Financeira Imobiliaria y Agropecuaria v. Moinho Paulista Ltda.*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 7 March 2007, Motion for Clarification on SEC 866.

[276] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/2822/Add. 4 (United Kingdom); *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Thirteenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.13 (Representative of the Hague Conference on Private International Law); *Travaux préparatoires*, Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, E/AC.42/SR.7 (Sweden, India); *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Ninth Meeting E/CONF.26/SR.9 (Representative of Germany), p. 3.

writing within the meaning of this article, shall [...] refer the parties to arbitration [...]." As noted by the Supreme Court of Canada, the object and purpose of article II (3) is to strengthen the obligation to enforce arbitration agreements.[277]

60. The *travaux préparatoires* are silent on the scope of the obligation of courts to refer parties to arbitration. The expression "refer the parties to arbitration" has its origin in the 1923 Geneva Protocol on Arbitration Clauses, which provides, in relevant part, that the "tribunals of the Contracting Parties [...] shall refer the parties on the application of either of them to the decision of the arbitrators."[278] The expression was proposed by the Swedish delegation at the Conference and adopted after further modification by the drafting committee.[279]

61. Courts interpret the word "shall" in article II (3) to indicate that referral to arbitration is mandatory and cannot be left to the courts' discretion.[280] In practice, courts have fulfilled their obligation to refer the parties to arbitration in two different manners.

62. The first approach, endorsed in civil law jurisdictions, consists in declining jurisdiction in the presence of an arbitration agreement. For instance, in a number of decisions, French and Swiss courts have held that, pursuant to article II of the Convention, the presence of an arbitration agreement rendered national courts incompetent and have thus referred the parties to arbitration.[281]

63. The second approach, endorsed in most common law jurisdictions, consists in staying judicial proceedings, thereby giving effect to the courts' obligation to enforce arbitration agreements. By way of example, the Australian Federal Court,

---

[277] *GreCon Dimter Inc. v. J.R. Normand Inc. and Scierie Thomas-Louis Tremblay Inc.*, Supreme Court, Canada, 22 July 2005, 30217.

[278] 1923 Geneva Protocol on Arbitration Clauses, Article 4.

[279] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Twenty-First Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.21, pp. 17-23; *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Consideration on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/L.59.

[280] See, e.g., *Renusagar Power Co. Ltd. v. General Electric Company and anor*, Supreme Court, India, 16 August 1984; *Shin-Etsu Chemical Co. Ltd. v. Aksh Optifibre Ltd. and anor*, Supreme Court, India, 12 August 2005; *Ishwar D. Jain v. Henri Courier de Mere*, Court of Appeals, Seventh Circuit, United States of America, 3 April 1995, 94-3314; *Aasma et al. v. American Steamship Owners Mutual Protection and Indemnity Association Inc. (USA)*, Court of Appeals, Sixth Circuit, United States of America, 29 August 1996, 94-3881, 94-3883; *InterGen N.V. (Netherlands) v. Grina (Switzerland)*, Court of Appeals, First Circuit, United States of America, 22 September 2003, 03-1056; *Ingosstrakh v. Aabis Rederi Sovfrakht*, City Court of Moscow, Former USSR, 6 May 1968, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 206 (1976); *Louis Dreyfus Corporation of New York v. Oriana Soc. di Navigazione S.p.a*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 27 February 1970, 470, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 189 (1976); *Nile Cotton Ginning Company v. Cargill Limited*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 29 June 2003, 92-7876.

[281] *Société Sysmode S.A.R.L. et Société Sysmode France v. Société Metra HOS et Société SEMA*, Court of Appeal of Paris, 8 December 1988; *Les Trefileries & Ateliers de Commercy v. Société Philipp Brothers France et Société Derby & Co. Limited*, Court of Appeal of Nancy, 5 December 1980. See also *Fondation M v. Banque X*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 29 April 1996.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

in interpreting Section 7(2) of the Australian International Arbitration Act in light of article II (3) of the Convention, has held that the expression "shall refer the parties to arbitration [...] should not be taken as to having the meaning of obliging the parties to arbitrate."[282] Rather, the court explained that courts should stay judicial proceedings, but cannot compel the parties to arbitrate if they do not wish to do so.

64. Both approaches are consistent with the obligation of the courts of Contracting Parties to the Convention to refer the parties to arbitration.

65. Courts in certain jurisdictions go as far as issuing anti-suit injunctions in favour of arbitration. In particular, the Court of Appeal of England and Wales has held that such anti-suit injunctions designed to compel parties to comply with an arbitration agreement were not in violation of the New York Convention.[283]

b. Party request necessary

66. Pursuant to article II (3), the courts' obligation to refer the parties to arbitration is triggered by the "request of one of the parties".

67. Whether or not a court can refer the parties to arbitration *ex officio* is not expressly settled by article II (3). However, as arbitration, by definition, is premised on consent, the parties are always at liberty to waive their prior agreement to arbitrate. If neither party alleges the existence of an arbitration agreement, the court will not *ex officio* refer the parties to arbitration but rather will, as a result, uphold its own jurisdiction.[284] In such situations, courts often consider that the parties have waived their right to arbitrate.

68. For instance, United States courts generally find that parties waive their right to arbitrate when they "substantially" participate in litigation, or when they seek to invalidate the arbitration agreement before the courts of another country.[285] In assessing whether the conduct of the parties amounted to a waiver of their right to arbitrate, a Brazilian court held that such waiver must be clearly established; i.e.,

[282] *Hi-Fert Pty Ltd. v. Kuikiang Maritime Carriers Inc.*, Federal Court, Australia, 26 May 1998, NG 1100 & 1101 of 1997. See also *Westco Airconditioning Ltd. v. Sui Chong Construction and Engineering Ltd*, Court of First Instance, High Court of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, Hong Kong, 3 February 1998, No. A12848.

[283] *Aggeliki Charis Compania Maritima SA v. Pagnan SpA*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 17 May 1994; *Midgulf International Ltd. v. Groupe Chimiche Tunisien*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 10 February 2010, A3/2009/1664; A3/2009/1664(A); A3/2009/1664(B); A3/2009/1664(C).

[284] See, e.g., *British Telecommunications Plc v. SAE Group Inc*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 18 February 2009, HT-08-336, [2009] EWHC 252 (TCC).

[285] *Anna Dockeray v. Carnival Corporation*, District Court, Southern District of Florida, Miami Division, United States of America, 11 May 2010, 10-20799; *Apple & Eve LLC v. Yantai North Andre Juice Co. Ltd*, District Court, Eastern District of New York, United States of America, 27 April 2009, 07-CV-745 (JFB)(WDW).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

all the parties had to act in a manner that unequivocally demonstrated their wish to waive the arbitration agreement.[286]

69. The *travaux préparatoires* to the Convention reflect the drafters' contemplation that parties would fail to raise the existence of an arbitration agreement in proceedings before national courts. Indeed, the drafters specifically deleted the expression "of its own motion" from an earlier draft of article II (3) in order to leave greater freedom to the parties and to preserve the possibility for the parties to waive their right to have a particular dispute resolved through arbitration.[287]

c. *Matters in respect of which there is an agreement*

70. Article II (3) limits the obligation to refer the parties to arbitration to "matter[s] in respect of which" there is an agreement in writing, as defined in article II (1) and (2).

71. The Court of Appeal of England and Wales has indicated that, under both the English Arbitration Act of 1975 and the New York Convention, courts "are bound to send a dispute to arbitration if it is a dispute with regard to any matter to be referred."[288] To interpret the word "matter", the Australian Federal Court relied on the pro-arbitration policy of the Convention and held that the term was of "wide import" and was not limited, for the purposes of Section 7(2)*(b)* of the Australian Arbitration Act (which is similar to article II (3) of the Convention), to issues arising out of the parties' pleadings.[289]

72. In determining whether a dispute or a particular claim falls under the obligation to refer the parties to arbitration, national courts assess the scope of the agreement to arbitrate.[290] For instance, an Australian Court stayed proceedings pursuant to Section 7(2) of the Arbitration Act (implementing article II (3) of the New York Convention) by construing the broad language of the arbitration agreement which covered "all dispute arising in connection with this agreement or execution

[286] *Companhia Nacional de Cimento Portland—CNCP v. CP Cimento e Participações S/A*, Court of Justice of Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, 18 September 2007, Civil Appeal 24.798/2007. Compare with *L'Aiglon S/A v. Têxtil União S/A*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 18 May 2005, SEC 856 (chapter of the Guide on article II, para. 22) where the Superior Court of Justice held that participation in arbitral proceedings amounts to consent to arbitration.

[287] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Twenty-fourth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.24.

[288] *Kammgarn Spinnerei GmbH v. Nova (Jersey) Knit Ltd*, Court of Appeal, England, 2 April 1976.

[289] *Casaceli v. Natuzzi S.p.A. (formerly known as Industrie Natuzzi S.p.A.)*, Federal Court, Australia, 29 June 2012, NSD 396 of 2012. See also *CTA International Pty Ltd. v. Sichuan Changhong Electric Co.*, Supreme Court of Victoria, Australia, 6 September 2002, 4278 of 2001.

[290] *Nicola v. Ideal Image Development Corporation Inc.*, Federal Court, Australia, 16 October, NSD 1738 of 2008; *Commonwealth Development, Corp v. Montague*, Supreme Court of Queensland, Australia, 27 June 2000, Appeal No 8159 of 1999, DC No 29 of 1999.

thereof [...]". The court concluded that claims related to the performance of the agreement were within the scope of the arbitration agreement.[291] Conversely, when parties have voluntarily excluded certain issues from the scope of their arbitration agreement, courts will refer them to arbitration to the extent that the dispute does not fall within the exclusion.[292]

73. Similarly, in determining whether or not to refer the dispute to arbitration under both the Federal Arbitration Act and the Convention, the United States Court of Appeals for the Eleventh Circuit assessed whether the dispute related to, arose from, or was connected with the employment agreements at stake. The court determined that claims of false imprisonment, intentional infliction of emotional distress, spoliation of evidence, invasion of privacy, and fraudulent misrepresentation were not dependent on the parties' employment relationship and therefore did not fall within the scope of the arbitration clause.[293]

d. Provisional and conservatory measures

74. The duty to refer the parties to arbitration does not extend to provisional and conservatory measures, except if the arbitration agreement itself refers to such measures. Most courts exercise jurisdiction to order interim or provisional relief in support of arbitration upon application by a party notwithstanding the presence of an arbitration agreement.[294]

75. For example, a French court has confirmed that the presence of an arbitration agreement does not prevent one of the parties from obtaining urgent provisional measures which do not require a ruling on the merits of the dispute.[295] The Australian Federal Court has similarly held that the existence of an otherwise applicable

[291] *CTA International Pty Ltd. v. Sichuan Changhong Electric Co.*, Supreme Court of Victoria, Australia, 6 September 2002, 4278 of 2001.

[292] *Société Générale Assurance Méditerranéenne— G.A.M. v. Société FSA-RE et S.A. Garantie Assistance*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 14 March 2008, 07/16773.

[293] *Jane Doe v. Princess Cruise Lines, LTD., a foreign corporation, d.b.a. Princess Cruises*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 23 September 2011, 10-10809.

[294] *Hi-Fert Pty Ltd. v. Kuikiang Maritime Carriers Inc.*, Federal Court, Australia, 26 May 1998, NG 1100 & 1101 of 1997; *Société Fieldworks-INC v. Société Erim, S.A. Logic Instrument et Société ADD-on Computer Distribution (A.C.D.)*, Court of Appeal of Versailles, France, 4 July 1996, 3603/96, 3703/96, 3998/96; *Toyota Services Afrique (TSA) v. Société Promotion de Représentation Automobiles (PREMOTO)*, Supreme Court, Côte d'Ivoire, OHADA, 4 December 1997, Arrêt n°317/97.

[295] *Société Fieldworks-INC v. Société Erim, S.A. Logic Instrument et Société ADD-on Computer Distribution (A.C.D.)*, Court of Appeal of Versailles, France, 4 July 1996. The new 2011 French arbitration law limits the jurisdiction of the French courts' to order interim relief to the period prior to the constitution of the arbitral tribunal: see article 1449 of the French Code of civil procedure.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

arbitration clause did not prevent a party from seeking injunctive or declaratory relief.[296]

76. Commentators have confirmed that national courts' jurisdiction to order provisional measures does not breach the New York Convention as it does not prejudice the merits of the dispute.[297]

B. Enforcement of arbitration agreements under article II (3)

77. Article II (3) requires national courts to refer the parties to arbitration unless they find that the relevant agreement is "null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed."

78. Neither the *travaux préparatoires* nor the text of the Convention provides any indication of the standard of review that should be applied by national courts in this exercise, or any further elucidation of the terms "null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed."

a. Standard of review

79. The New York Convention does not address the issue of the standard of review of arbitration agreements under article II (3).[298]

80. Two trends are discernible in the case law. Some courts perform a full review of the agreement to arbitrate to assess whether it is "null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed", while others confine themselves to a limited or *prima facie* inquiry, which itself can take on various forms and distinctions.

[296] *Electra Air Conditioning BV v. Seeley International Pty Ltd*, Federal Court, Australia, 8 October 2008, SAD 16 of 2008.

[297] Dorothee Schramm, Elliott Geisinger, Philippe Pinsolle, *Article II*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 37, 139-144 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

[298] The same conclusion may be drawn from case law regarding article 8 of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, see UNCITRAL, 2012 Digest of Case Law on the Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, Article 16 (2012), 75-76, para. 3, available at www.uncitral.org/pdf/english/clout/MAL-digest-2012-e.pdf.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

81. As the Convention does not prohibit courts from conducting either a *prima facie* review of the arbitration agreement[299] or a full review of its existence and validity, none of the two approaches can be held to breach the New York Convention.

82. The full review standard has been endorsed by certain jurisdictions, notably Italy and Germany.

83. The Italian Court of Cassation held that article II (3) allows national courts to assess the validity and efficacy of the arbitration agreement, noting that it is an inherent part of the power of the domestic court to review the validity of the arbitration agreement.[300]

84. While not expressly referring to the Convention, German courts also conduct a full review of the arbitration agreement in assessing whether to refer the parties to arbitration. In so doing, courts rely on the German Code of Civil Procedure that expressly provides that prior to the constitution of the arbitral tribunal, a party may apply to a court to establish the admissibility or inadmissibility of arbitration proceedings.[301] By way of example, relying on Section 1032 of the Code of Civil Procedure, the German Federal Supreme Court conducted a full review of the arbitration agreement contained in a standard form consumer contract. It held that, notwithstanding the principle of competence-competence, the lower court had erred in limiting its scrutiny of the arbitration agreement, as the court's competence may not be curtailed by agreement of the parties. Having confirmed that the arbitration agreement complied with the formal and substantive requirements of German law, the court referred the parties to arbitration.[302] German commentators confirm that German courts follow the same approach under the New York Convention.[303]

---

[299]This view is mirrored under the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration where article 8(1) in fine exactly reflects the text of article II (3) of the Convention: Frédéric Bachand, *Does Article 8 of the Model Law Call for Full or Prima Facie Review of the Arbitral Tribunal's Jurisdiction?*, 22 Arb. Int'l 463 (2006).

[300]*Heraeus Kulzer GmbH v. Dellatorre Vera SpA*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 5 January 2007, 35.

[301]See Section 1032 of the Code of Civil Procedure (ZPO).

[302]Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 13 January 2005, III ZR 265/03.

[303]Dorothee Schramm, Elliott Geisinger, Philippe Pinsolle, *Article II*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 37, 99-100 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Peter Huber, *Arbitration Agreement and Substantive Claim Before Court*, in Arbitration in Germany: The Model Law in Practice 139, 143-44, para. 15 (K. H. Böckstiegel, S. Kröll and P. Nacimiento eds., 2007).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

85. Other jurisdictions have restricted their review of the arbitration agreement to a limited analysis to confirm *prima facie* that it is not "null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed".[304]

86. For instance, in France, courts apply a *prima facie* standard of review of the arbitration agreement. They hold that courts are precluded from performing an in-depth analysis of the arbitration agreement and must refer the parties to arbitration unless the arbitration agreement is manifestly null and void.[305]

87. Similarly, in India, the Supreme Court has relied on the spirit and the pro-enforcement bias of the New York Convention in order to determine the standard of review of arbitration agreements. In *Sin-Etsu*, the Supreme Court held that, although nothing in the language of article II (3) itself "indicated whether a finding as to the nature of the arbitral agreement has to be *ex facie* or *prima facie*, requiring only a *prima facie* showing better served the purpose of the New York Convention, which was to enable expeditious arbitration without avoidable intervention by judicial authorities".[306] The court emphasized that a *prima facie* review of the arbitration agreement at the pre-award stage would allow an expedited arbitral process while ensuring a fair opportunity to contest the award after full trial.

88. In Venezuela, the Supreme Court of Justice relied on the competence-competence principle and article II (3) of the Convention to conclude that it could not conduct a full analysis of the arbitration agreement, but should instead limit itself to a *prima facie* analysis of whether the arbitration agreement was "null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed." The Supreme Court of Justice further held that, in applying the *prima facie* standard, Venezuelan courts should

[304] For an argument in favour of a *prima facie* standard, see R. Doak Bishop, Wade M. Coriell, Marcelo Medina, *The 'Null and Void' Provision of the New York Convention*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention 1958 in Practice 275, 280-86 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Yas Banifatemi, Emmanuel Gaillard, *Negative Effect of Competence-Competence—The Rule of Priority in Favour of the Arbitrators*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention 1958 in Practice 257 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 407-08 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1996). *Contra*, see Jean-François Poudret, Gabriel Cottier, *Remarques sur l'application de l'article II de la Convention de New York (Arrêt du Tribunal Fédéral du 16 janvier 1995)*, 13 ASA Bull. 383, 388-89 (1995).

[305] *Legal Department du Ministère de la Justice de la République d'Irak v. Société Fincantieri Cantieri Navali Italiani, Société Finmeccanica et Société Armamenti E Aerospazio*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 15 June 2006; *SA Groupama transports v. Société MS Régine Hans und Klaus Heinrich KG*, Court of Cassation, France, 21 November 2006, 05-21.818; *Ste A.B.S. American Bureau of Shipping v. Copropriété Maritime Jules Verne et autres*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 4 December 2002; *Société Generali France Assurances et al. v. Société Universal Legend et al.*, Court of Cassation, France, 11 July 2006, 05-18.681. The new 2011 French arbitration law confirmed that even *prima facie* review by courts of an arbitration agreement is time-barred after the arbitral tribunal is seized (see article 1448 of the French Code of civil procedure).

[306] *Shin-Etsu Chemical Co. Ltd. (Japan) v. Aksh Optifibre Ltd. & Anr. (Ind)*, Supreme Court, India, 12 August 2005, Appeal (civil) 5048 of 2005; Emmanuel Gaillard, Yas Banifatemi, *Prima Facie Review of Existence, Validity of Arbitration Agreement*, N.Y.L.J., 1 December 2005, 3. See also *JS Ocean Liner LLC v. MV Golden Progress, Abhoul Marine LLC*, High Court of Bombay, India, 25 January 2007.

limit themselves to an assessment of whether there is an arbitration agreement in writing and should not enter into an analysis of whether a party had consented to arbitrate.[307]

89. The *prima facie* standard has also been embraced in the Philippines by adopting the Special Rules of Court on Alternative Dispute Resolution ("Special ADR Rules") which constitute guidelines by the Supreme Court binding on lower courts. Rule 2.4 of the Special ADR Rules explicitly provides for a *prima facie* test in order to determine whether the arbitration agreement is "null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed".[308] The same approach has been followed in Singapore.[309]

90. In a number of jurisdictions, courts have adopted a *prima facie* standard of review, but have confined its scope to certain situations or issues.

91. For instance, Swiss courts apply a *prima facie* standard of review to the extent that the arbitration agreement provides for Switzerland as the seat of arbitration.[310] Under such a scenario, the Swiss Federal Tribunal held that the court's review was limited to a *prima facie* verification of the existence and validity of the arbitration clause.[311] On the other hand, where the arbitration agreement provides for a seat outside Switzerland, the Swiss Federal Tribunal has held that it was entitled to conduct a full review of the existence and validity of the arbitration agreement.[312]

92. In Canada, courts have adopted a *prima facie* standard of review of the arbitration agreement, but have limited its scope to questions of facts. As a result, Canadian courts are entitled to conduct a full review of the arbitration agreement to the extent that the challenge to the arbitrators' jurisdiction pertains to "question[s] of law". This principle was established by the Supreme Court of Canada in *Dell*. Having set out the two schools of thought on the standard of review, the court held that article II (3) of the Convention did not provide that a court is required to rule on whether the arbitration agreement is null and void,

---

[307] *Astivenca Astilleros de Venezuela, C.A. v. Oceanlink Offshore A.S.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Venezuela, 10 November 2011, Exp. No. 09-0573, XXXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 496 (2011).

[308] Rule 2.4 of the Special ADR Rules. See Arbitration in the Philippines Under the Alternative Dispute Resolution Act of 2004 R.A. 9285 (E. Lizares ed., 2011), 200-212, paras. 11.01-11.02.

[309] *Tomolugen Holdings v. Silica Investors Ltd. and other appeals*, Singapore Court of Appeal, 26 October 2015.

[310] On the issue whether this solution should be extended to all arbitration agreements, see in favour: Emmanuel Gaillard, *La reconnaissance, en droit suisse, de la seconde moitié du principe d'effet négatif de la compétence-compétence*, in Global Reflections on International Law, Commerce and Dispute Resolution—Liber Amicorum in Honour of Robert Briner 311 (G. Aksen et al. eds., 2005); *contra* Jean-François Poudret, Gabriel Cottier, *Remarques sur l'application de l'Article II de la Convention de New York*, 13 ASA Bull. 383 (1995).

[311] *Fondation M v. Banque X*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 29 April 1996.

[312] *Compagnie de Navigation et Transports S.A. v. MSC Mediterranean Shipping Company S.A.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 16 January 1995; Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 25 October 2010, 4 A 279 / 2010.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

inoperative or incapable of being performed before the arbitrators do. The court continued and held that, as a general rule, "any challenge to the arbitrator's jurisdiction must be resolved first by the arbitrator" in accordance with the competence-competence principle.[313] While the Canadian Supreme Court has clearly adopted a *prima facie* standard of review as a general rule, it then limited the arbitrators' power to rule on their jurisdiction to the sole facts of the case, thus upholding the courts' competence to rule on the arbitrators' jurisdiction in relation to questions of law and to assessing whether the challenge to the arbitrators' jurisdiction constituted a dilatory tactic.

93. In England, courts have endorsed the principle that arbitrators should be the first tribunal to rule on their jurisdiction, but have limited this principle in a number of ways. In the seminal *Fiona Trust* decision,[314] the Court of Appeal of England and Wales established that "it will, in general, be right for the arbitrators to be the first tribunal to consider whether they have jurisdiction to determine the dispute." However, the court further held that courts maintain within their jurisdiction the right to determine whether an arbitration agreement had come into existence at all. Relying on *Fiona Trust*, the High Court of Justice in *Albon* explained that, despite the fact that the arbitral tribunal had jurisdiction to determine whether the arbitration agreement was ever concluded in accordance with the principle of competence-competence, such principle "does not preclude the court itself from determining that question."[315] It held that, prior to staying judicial proceedings and referring the parties to arbitration under Section 9(1) of the 1996 Arbitration Act,[316] it should be satisfied that (i) there existed a valid arbitration agreement and (ii) the dispute fell within its scope. In reviewing this two-step process in *Berezovsky*, the Court of Appeal held that a stay would be granted when the applicant had proven, on the balance of probabilities, that the arbitration agreement existed and apparently covered the matters in dispute.[317]

94. In practice, once a court is satisfied that an arbitration agreement exists and that the dispute falls within its terms pursuant to Section 9(1) of the 1996 Arbitration Act, it will grant a stay pursuant to Section 9(4) of the 1996 Arbitration Act

[313] *Dell Computer Corporation v. Union des consommateurs and Olivier Dumoulin*, Supreme Court of Canada, 13 July 2007.

[314] *Fiona Trust & Holding Corp. v. Privalov*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 24 January 2007, 2006 2353 A3 QBCMF, upheld by *Fili Shipping Co. Ltd. and others v. Premium Nafta Products Ltd. and others*, House of Lords, England and Wales, 17 October 2007.

[315] *Albon (t/a NA Carriage Co) v. Naza Motor Trading Sdn Bhd*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 29 March 2007, HC05C02150, [2007] EWHC 665 (Ch).

[316] Section 9(1) of the English 1996 Arbitration Act gives effect to article II of the Convention. It provides: "A party to an arbitration agreement against whom legal proceedings are brought (whether by way of claim or counterclaim) in respect of a matter which under the agreement is to be referred to arbitration may (upon notice to the other parties to the proceedings) apply to the court in which the proceedings have been brought to stay the proceedings so far as they concern that matter."

[317] *Joint Stock Company "Aeroflot-Russian Airlines" v. Berezovsky & Ors*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 2 July 2013, [2013] EWCA Civ 784.

(giving effect to article II (3) of the Convention) unless it finds that the arbitration agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed.[318] As ruled by the High Court of Justice in *A v. B.*, courts should conduct a cost analysis to determine whether the issue of whether the arbitration agreement is "null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed" should be dealt with by the arbitral tribunal or by the courts.[319] The court held that it will "depend heavily on the extent to which the resolution of that issue will involve findings of fact which impact on substantive rights and obligations of the parties which are already in issue and whether in general the trial can be confined to a relatively circumscribed area of investigation or is likely to extend widely over the substantive matters in dispute between the parties. If the latter is the case the appropriate tribunal to resolve the jurisdictional issues is more likely to be the arbitration tribunal, provided it has *Kompetenz-Kompetenz*." English courts have consistently followed this approach.[320]

95. In the United States, courts have approached the standard of review issue in terms of whether the court or the arbitral tribunal has "primary power" to determine the validity of an arbitration agreement. The leading case in this regard, although it does not cite the New York Convention, was rendered by the Supreme Court in *First Options*.[321]

96. In *First Options*, the Supreme Court held that there is a presumption in favour of courts deciding whether the arbitral tribunal has jurisdiction, unless the parties have agreed explicitly to submit this issue to the arbitral tribunal in their arbitration agreement. However, once the court is satisfied that a valid arbitration agreement exists, and that it complies with the requirements of both the Federal Arbitration Act and the Convention, the Supreme Court held that the presumption reverses in favour of the arbitral tribunal.[322]

97. United States courts have found that parties agreed to empower the arbitrators to determine the existence and validity of the arbitration agreement when the arbitration rules explicitly allowed the arbitrators to do so. For instance, the Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit held that a reference to the UNCITRAL

[318] *Golden Ocean Group Ltd. v. Humpuss Intermoda Transportasi TBK Ltd. & anr*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 16 May 2013, [2013] EWHC 1240; *Joint Stock Company "Aeroflot-Russian Airlines" v. Berezovsky & Ors*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 2 July 2013, [2013] EWCA Civ 784.

[319] *A v. B.*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 28 July 2006, 2005 FOLIO 683, [2006] EWHC 2006 (Comm).

[320] *Joint Stock Company "Aeroflot-Russian Airlines" v. Berezovsky & Ors*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 2 July 2013, [2013] EWCA Civ 784; *Golden Ocean Group Ltd. v. Humpuss Intermoda Transportasi TBK Ltd. & anr*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 16 May 2013, [2013] EWHC 1240.

[321] *First Options of Chicago Inc. v. Kaplan*, Supreme Court, United States of America, 22 May 1995, 514 United States 938 (1995). See also William Park, *The Arbitrability Dicta in First Options v. Kaplan: What Sort of Kompetenz-Kompetenz Has Crossed the Atlantic?*, 12 Arb. Int'l 137 (1996), reprinted in 11 Int'l Arb. Rep. 28 (1996).

[322] *First Options of Chicago Inc. v. Kaplan*, Supreme Court, United States of America, 22 May 1995, 514 United States 938 (1995).

Arbitration Rules constituted "clear and unmistakable evidence of the parties' intent" to have arbitrators decide on their jurisdiction.[323] Such "clear and unmistakable evidence" has also been inferred from arbitration agreements stating that "any and all" disputes are to be resolved by arbitration.[324]

98. In the absence of clear and unmistakable evidence of the parties' intention, the Supreme Court in *Prima Paint* held that, if a claim goes to the "making" of the arbitration agreement, courts have jurisdiction.[325] Subsequent decisions applying the New York Convention have followed the same reasoning.[326] In so doing, courts have determined that both challenges to the existence of the contract containing the arbitration agreement and to the validity of the arbitration agreement go to the "making" of the arbitration agreement, and thus should be adjudicated by the courts.[327] For instance, in *Sphere Drake*, the Court of Appeals of the Second Circuit held that if "a party alleges that a contract is void and provide some evidence in support, then the party need not specifically allege that the arbitration clause in that contract is void and the party is entitled to trial [this issue before the court]."[328] Similarly, in *Nanosolutions*, the District Court of Columbia, relying on the decision of the Supreme Court in *Buckeye*, held that "challenges [specific to] the validity of the agreement to arbitrate may be adjudicated by this Court."[329] However, when assessing the validity of the arbitration agreement, courts have performed a "very limited inquiry" in line with the "strong federal policy favouring arbitration"

[323] *Republic of Ecuador v. Chevron Corp. (United States)*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 17 March 2011, 10-1020-cv (L), 10-1026 (Con). For a similar reasoning regarding the AAA Arbitration Rules, see also *JSC Surgutneftegaz v. President and fellows of Harvard College*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 3 August 2005, 04 Civ. 6069 (RCC).

[324] *Oriental Republic of Uruguay, et al. v. Chemical Overseas Holdings, Inc., Chemical Overseas Holdings, Inc. and others v. Republica Oriental del Uruguay, et al.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 24 January 2006, 05 Civ. 6151 (WHP) and 05 Civ. 6154 (WHP), XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 1406 (2006).

[325] *Prima Paint Corporation v. Flood & Conklin MFG*, Supreme Court, United States of America, 12 June 1967, 388 United States 395 (87 S.Ct. 1801, 18 L.Ed.2d 1270).

[326] See, e.g., *Phoenix Bulk Carriers Ltd. v. Oldendorff Carriers GmbH & Co., KG*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 6 November 2002, 2002 United States Dust. LEXIS 21421, XXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 1088 (2003).

[327] *The Canada Life Assurance Company v. The Guardian Life Insurance Company of America*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 22 January 2003, 242 F. Supp. 2d 344; *Guang Dong Light Headgear Factory v. ACI International, Inc.*, District Court, District of Kansas, United States of America, 10 May 2005, 03-4165-JAR; *Dedon GMBH and Dedon Inc. v. Janus et CIE*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 6 January 2011, 10-4331.

[328] *Sphere Drake Insurance Limited v. Clarendon America Insurance Company*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 28 August 2001, 00-9464, XXVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 700 (2002).

[329] *Nanosolutions, LLC et al. v. Rudy Prajza, et al.*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 2 June 2011, 10-1741.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

stemming from the Federal Arbitration Act implementing the New York Convention.[330]

99. On the other hand, when United States courts face a challenge which goes to the validity of the contract as a whole, they have referred the parties to arbitration pursuant to both the New York Convention and the Federal Arbitration Act.[331]

b. Courts' review of the existence and validity of an "agreement in writing"

100. Article II (3) requires national courts to refer the parties to arbitration "unless [they find] that the said agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed."

101. United States courts have held that the grounds for refusing to refer parties to arbitration listed under article II (3) are exhaustive.[332] Similarly, an Indian court has held that there are only three grounds under article II (3) for refusing enforcement of an arbitration agreement: (i) the agreement is null and void; (ii) the agreement is inoperative; and (iii) the agreement is incapable for being performed.[333]

102. On the other hand, the United States Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit determined that it had jurisdiction to establish whether an arbitration agreement existed before referring the dispute to the arbitrators.[334] In so ruling, the Court did not refer to any exceptions provided for under article II (3).

---

[330] *Bautista v. Star Cruises and Norwegian Cruise Line, Ltd.*, District Court, Southern District of Florida, United States of America, 14 October 2003, 03-21642-CIV. See also *Agnelo Cardoso v. Carnival Corporation*, District Court, Southern District of Florida, United States of America, 15 March 2010, 09-23442-CIV-GOLD/MCALILEY; *Boston Telecommunications Group, Inc. et al. v. Deloitte Touche Tohmatsu, et al.*, District Court, Northern District of California, United States of America, 7 August 2003, C 02-5971 JSW.

[331] *Prima Paint Corporation v. Flood & Conklin MFG*, Supreme Court, United States of America, 12 June 1967, 388 United States 395 (87 S.Ct. 1801, 18 L.Ed.2d 1270); *Sphere Drake Insurance Limited v. Clarendon America Insurance Company*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 28 August 2001, 00-9464, XXVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 700 (2002); *Nanosolutions, LLC et al. v. Rudy Prajza, et al.*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 2 June 2011, 10-1741; *Ascension Orthopedics, Inc. v. Curasan AG*, District Court, Western District of Texas, Austin Division, United States of America, 20 September 2006, A-06-CA-424 LY.

[332] *Lindo (Nicaragua) v. NCL (Bahamas), Ltd. (Bahamas)*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 29 August 2011, 10-10367; *Aggarao (Philippines) v. MOL Ship Management Company Ltd. (Japan), Nissan Motor Car Carrier Company, Ltd., trading as Nissan Carrier Fleet (Japan), World Car Careers (Lebanon)*, Court of Appeals, Fourth Circuit, United States of America, 16 March 2012, 10-2211.

[333] *Gas Authority of India Ltd. v. SPIE-CAPAG SA and ors*, High Court of Delhi, India, 15 October 1993, Suit No. 1440, IA No. 5206. See also in Canada: *Automatic Systems Inc. v. Bracknell Corporation*, Court of Appeal of Ontario, Canada, 17 February 1994.

[334] *Dedon GMBH and Dedon Inc. v. Janus et CIE*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 6 January 2011, 10-4331.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

(i) "Null and void"

103. Article II (3) of the Convention is silent with regards to the legal standard for determining whether an arbitration agreement is null and void. Some courts consider that the issue is to be determined under the applicable municipal law, either the *lex fori*[335] or the law applicable pursuant to the conflict-of-laws rule contained in article V (1)*(a)* of the Convention.[336]

104. United States courts and English courts have defined the expression "null and void" to mean "devoid of legal effect".[337] In practice, they have applied an international standard of contract law defences. In accordance with longstanding case law, United States courts have ruled upon the "null and void" ground pursuant to "standard breach-of-contract defences that can be applied neutrally on an international scale, such as fraud, mistake, duress, and waiver."[338] In applying such international standards, United States courts have adopted a narrow interpretation in light of "a general policy of enforceability of agreements to arbitrate".[339] For instance, courts have dismissed the argument that the arbitration agreement was void and unenforceable as contrary to public policy of the United States, reasoning that this defence "could not be applied neutrally on an international scale and, moreover, does not outweigh the policy favouring arbitration."[340]

105. In addition, parties have sought to invalidate arbitration agreements and escape their obligation to arbitrate by arguing that the main contract containing the agreement was null and void. The vast majority of courts distinguish between

---

[335]Piero Bernardini, *Arbitration Clauses: Achieving Effectiveness in the Law Applicable to the Arbitration Clause*, in Improving the Efficiency of Arbitration Agreements and Awards: 40 Years of Application of the New York Convention 197, 200 (A.J. van den Berg ed., 1998).

[336]Federal Supreme Court, Switzerland, 21 March 1995, 5C.215/1994/lit.

[337]*Rhone Mediterranee Compagnia Francese v. Lauro*, Court of Appeals, Third Circuit, United States of America, 6 July 1983, 82-3523. See also *Albon (t/a NA Carriage Co) v. Naza Motor Trading Sdn Bhd*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 29 March 2007, HC05C02150, [2007] EWHC 665 (Ch); *Golden Ocean Group Ltd. v. Humpuss Intermoda Transportasi TBK Ltd. & anr*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 16 May 2013, [2013] EWHC 1240.

[338]*St. Hugh Williams v. NCL (Bahamas) LTD., d.b.a. NCL.*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 9 July 2012, 11-12150; *Allen v. Royal Caribbean Cruise, Ltd.*, District Court, Southern District of Florida, United States of America, 29 September 2008, 08-22014.

[339]*Rhone Mediterranee Compagnia Francese v. Lauro*, Court of Appeals, Third Circuit, United States of America, 6 July 1983, 82-3523; *Anna Dockeray v. Carnival Corporation*, District Court, Southern District of Florida, Miami Division, United States of America, 11 May 2010, 10-20799; *Oriental Commercial and Shipping (UK) v. Rosseel, N.V. (Belgium)*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 4 March 1985, 84 Civ. 7173 (PKL).

[340]*Allen v. Royal Caribbean Cruise, Ltd.*, District Court, Southern District of Florida, United States of America, 29 September 2008, 08-22014. See also *Aggarao (Philippines) v. MOL Ship Management Company Ltd. (Japan), Nissan Motor Car Carrier Company, Ltd., trading as Nissan Carrier Fleet (Japan), World Car Careers (Lebanon)*, Court of Appeals, Fourth Circuit, United States of America, 16 March 2012, 10-2211; *Ledee (Puerto Rico) v. Ceramiche Ragno (Italy)*, Court of Appeals, First Circuit, United States of America, 4 August 1982, 684 F.2d 184, 82-1057. Concerning the unconscionability defence, see *Rizalyn Bautista, et al. v. Star Cruises, et al.*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 15 July 2005, 03-15884.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

the invalidity of the contract and the invalidity of the arbitration agreement in accordance with the principle of the severability of the arbitration agreement—sometimes referred to as the principle of autonomy.

106. In *Fiona Trust*, the Court of Appeal of England and Wales stayed the judicial proceedings before it pursuant to Section 9(1) of the 1996 Arbitration Act (giving effect to article II (1) of the New York Convention) as the applicant alleged the invalidity of the overall contract, but did not challenge the validity of the arbitration agreement itself.[341] Relying heavily on the severability principle, the Court of Appeal held that a dispute regarding the invalidity of the overall contract, but not specifically directed at the arbitration agreement, should be addressed by the arbitrators. In the same manner, a Dutch court held that "the validity of the arbitration agreement is ascertained separately, independent of the validity of the main contract in respect of which arbitration has been agreed, even if both are contained in the same document."[342] The Madras High Court similarly made express reference to the "doctrine of separability", and referred the parties to arbitration on the basis that "[t]he plaintiffs cannot ignore the Arbitration Clause and invoke the jurisdiction of a Civil Court, just on the basis that even according to the defendants the underlying agreement was void."[343]

107. The severability doctrine has been endorsed by most countries,[344] arbitral institutions,[345] UNCITRAL instruments on arbitration,[346] and leading commentators who consider that an arbitration agreement constitutes an agreement within an agreement.[347]

---

[341] *Fiona Trust & Holding Corp. v. Privalov*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 24 January 2007, 2006 2353 A3 QBCMF, upheld by *Fili Shipping Co. Ltd. and others v. Premium Nafta Products Ltd. and others*, House of Lords, England and Wales, 17 October 2007.

[342] *Claimant v. Ocean International Marketing B.V., et al.*, Court of First Instance of Rotterdam, Netherlands, 29 July 2009, 194816/HA ZA 03-925.

[343] *Ramasamy Athappan and Nandakumar Athappan v. Secretariat of Court, International Chamber of Commerce*, High Court of Madras, India, 29 October 2008. See also Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 8 Sch 3/01, 2 October 2001.

[344] See, e.g., Swiss Private International Law, Chapter 12, article 178(3), Colombian Arbitration Act, article 5; French arbitration law, article 1447; English Arbitration Act, article 7; Australian Arbitration Act, Chapter VI, article 16; Brazilian Arbitration Act, article 8; Chinese Arbitration Act, article 19.

[345] ICC Arbitration Rules, article 6(4); LCIA Arbitration Rules, article 23(1).

[346] Article 16(1) of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration provides that "an arbitration clause which forms part of a contract shall be treated as an agreement independent of the other terms of the contract. A decision by the arbitral tribunal that the contract is null and void shall not entail *ipso jure* the invalidity of the arbitration clause." A list of countries that have enacted legislation based on the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration is available on the Internet at www.uncitral.org. See also UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules, article 23(1).

[347] R. Doak Bishop, Wade M. Coriell, Marcelo Medina, *The 'Null and Void' Provision of the New York Convention*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 275, 278 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

(ii) "Inoperative"

108. Courts generally assess the standard of "inoperability" under the broader expression "null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed" without any further distinction. However, the relevant case law suggests that the word "inoperative" covers situations where the arbitration agreement has become inapplicable to the parties or their dispute.[348]

109. For instance, in circumstances where the parties had waived their right to arbitrate by initiating judicial proceedings, an Indian court has held that the arbitration agreement was inoperative under Section 45 of the Indian Arbitration Act of 1996, which mirrors article II (3) of the Convention.[349] Accordingly, it refused to refer to arbitration the parties which had submitted numerous civil and criminal suits before Indian courts.

110. A French court has found that it had jurisdiction as the timeframe specified for the constitution of the arbitral tribunal had expired, thereby dismissing the argument that there was no manifest inapplicability of the arbitration agreement pursuant to article II of the Convention. The court ruled that the arbitration agreement was "*caduc*" and concluded that it had jurisdiction over the dispute without any reference to the Convention.[350]

111. Another situation of the alleged inoperability of an arbitration agreement can be found in the *Westco* decision rendered by the High Court of Hong Kong. A party alleged that non-compliance with procedural conditions prior to the commencement of the arbitral proceedings rendered the agreement to arbitrate inoperative. The High Court dismissed the argument and referred the parties to arbitration.[351]

(iii) "Incapable of being performed"

112. The "incapable of being performed" provision is generally understood as relating to situations where the arbitration cannot effectively be set in motion.[352]

---

[348] See, e.g., *Golden Ocean Group Ltd. v. Humpuss Intermoda Transportasi TBK Ltd. & anr*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 16 May 2013, [2013] EWHC 1240.

[349] *Ramasamy Athappan and Nandakumar Athappan v. Secretariat of Court, International Chamber of Commerce*, High Court of Madras, India, 29 October 2008. See also the citations para. 67.

[350] *Société Gefu Kuchenboss GmbH & CO.KG et Société Gefu Geschafts-Und Verwaltungs GmbH v. Société Coréma*, Court of Appeal of Toulouse, France, 9 April 2008.

[351] *Westco Airconditioning Ltd. v. Sui Chong Construction & Engineering Co. Ltd*, Court of First Instance, High Court of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, Hong Kong, 3 February 1998, A12848.

[352] Stefan Kröll, *The 'Incapable of Being Performed' Exception in Article II (3) of the New York Convention*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards—The New York Convention 1958 in Practice 323, 326 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

As explained by an Indian court relying on Section 45 of the Indian Arbitration Act of 1996 (which mirrors article II (3) of the Convention) "the phrase incapable of being performed signifies, in effect, frustration and the consequent discharge. If, after the making of the contract, the promise becomes incapable of being fulfilled or performed, due to unforeseen contingencies, the contract is frustrated."[353]

113. It emerges from case law that an arbitration agreement has been held incapable of being performed when the arbitration agreement was pathological, i.e., in two main situations: (i) when the arbitration agreement is unclear and does not provide sufficient indication to allow the arbitration to proceed, and (ii) when the arbitration agreement designates an inexistent arbitral institution.

114. For instance, ruling upon Section 44 of the Indian Arbitration Act of 1996 (implementing articles I and II of the Convention), an Indian court denied enforcement of an arbitral clause providing for "Durban Arbitration and English Law to apply".[354] The court held that the alleged arbitration agreement was "absolutely vague, ambiguous and self-contradictory". Similarly, the Swiss Federal Tribunal refused to enforce an arbitral clause providing for arbitration "through the American Arbitration Association or to any other American court" on the ground that the arbitration agreement was not sufficiently clear so as to exclude beyond doubt the jurisdiction of the state courts under both article II (3) and Swiss law.[355]

115. In a case where the arbitration agreement designated a non-existent arbitral institution, a United States court nevertheless compelled the parties to arbitration pursuant to article II (3) of the Convention and the Federal Arbitration Act. The court reasoned that the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules referred to in the arbitration agreement provided for a method for constituting an arbitral tribunal in the absence of a prior agreement by the parties and dismissed the plaintiff's claims that the agreement was incapable of being performed.[356]

116. In Russian Federation, the Highest Arbitrazh Court of the Russian Federation held that, in order for the arbitration agreement to be enforceable under the Convention, the agreement had to contain clear language from which the true intentions of the parties to refer the dispute to an arbitration body could be

[353] *Ramasamy Athappan and Nandakumar Athappan v. Secretariat of Court, International Chamber of Commerce*, High Court of Madras, India, 29 October 2008. See also the references cited in para. 67.

[354] *Swiss Singapore Overseas Enterprises Pvt Ltd. v. M/V African Trader*, High Court of Gujarat, India, 7 February 2005, Civil Application No. 23 of 2005.

[355] Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 25 October 2010, 4A279/2010. It is unclear from that case whether the Federal Tribunal analysed the arbitration agreement under the "incapable of being performed" ground as the decision concluded that the arbitration agreement was invalid under the "null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed" provision.

[356] *Travelport Global Distribution Systems B.V. v. Bellview Airlines Limited*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 10 September 2012, 12 Civ. 3483(DLC).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

ascertained.[357] Another Russian court held an arbitration agreement to be "incapable of being performed" within the meaning of article II (3) of the Convention because it was not a standard arbitration clause pursuant to the UNCITRAL Rules and it was therefore impossible to conclude that the parties had agreed on those Rules.[358] It further added that the appointing authority, the "President of the International Chamber of Commerce", did not exist.

117. Other courts have adopted a pro-arbitration stance and interpreted vague or inconsistent arbitration agreements so as to uphold such agreements. For instance, French courts have enforced an arbitral award rendered under the auspices of the Arbitration Court of the Chamber of Commerce of Yugoslavia notwithstanding that the wording of the arbitration agreement provided for arbitration under the auspices of a non-existent institution, the "Belgrade Chamber of Commerce". The court held that the parties intended to refer to the Arbitration Court of the Chamber of Commerce of Yugoslavia, which has its headquarters in Belgrade.[359] Similar reasoning has been adopted in Switzerland,[360] Germany,[361] and Hong Kong[362] where the courts have held that the intention of the parties to have their dispute resolved by arbitration should prevail.

[357] *Tula Ammunition Factory (Russian Federation) v. Sporting Supplies International (United States)*, Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, 27 July 2011, VAS-7301/11.

[358] *ZAO UralEnergoGaz (Russian Federation) v. OOO ABB Electroengineering (Russian Federation)*, Ninth Arbitrazh Court of Appeal, Russian Federation, 24 June 2009, No. A40-27854/09-61-247.

[359] *Epoux Convert v. Société Droga*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 14 December 1983, 1994 Rev. Arb. 483.

[360] Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 8 July 2003, 129 III 675.

[361] Kammergericht [KT] Berlin, 15 October 1999, XXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 328 (2001).

[362] *Lucky Goldstar International Limited v. Ng Moo Kee Engineering Limited*, High Court, Supreme Court of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, 5 May 1993, XX Y.B. Com. Arb. 280 (1995).

Article III

Each Contracting State shall recognize arbitral awards as binding and enforce them in accordance with the rules of procedure of the territory where the award is relied upon, under the conditions laid down in the following articles. There shall not be imposed substantially more onerous conditions or higher fees or charges on the recognition or enforcement of arbitral awards to which this Convention applies than are imposed on the recognition or enforcement of domestic arbitral awards.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article III as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards:

- Enforcement of international arbitral awards: statement submitted by the International Chamber of Commerce, a non-governmental organization having consultative status in category A: E/C.2/373.
- Summary Records of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, 3rd meeting: E/AC.42/SR.3.
- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/4.
- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards (Resolution of the Economic and Social Council establishing the Committee, Composition and Organisation of the Committee, General Considerations, Draft Convention): E/2704 : E/AC.42/4/Rev.1.
- Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:
- Comments on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/CONF.26/2.

- Report by the Secretary-General, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, 31 Jan 1956: E/2822.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.11.
- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.15.
- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.21.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee on 6 June 1958: E/CONF.26/L.61.
- Report on article I, paragraph 1 and article II of the draft Convention (E/2704 and Corr.1): E/CONF.26/L.42/Corr.1.
- Text of article 2 as adopted by the Conference at its 16th meeting: E/CONF.26/L.47.
- Text of the Convention as provisionally approved by the Drafting Committee on 9 June 1958: E/CONF.26/8.
- Final Act and Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.

Summary records:

- Report of Working Party No. 1 on Art. I, para. 1, and Art. II of the draft Convention: E/CONF.26/L.42.
- Summary Records of the Second, Tenth, Eleventh, Sixteenth and Twenty-third Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR.2; E/CONF.26/SR.10; E/CONF.26/SR.11; E/CONF.26/SR.16; E/CONF.26/SR.23.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Introduction

1. Article III embodies the pro-enforcement policy of the New York Convention, and sets forth the general principle that "each Contracting State shall recognize arbitral awards as binding and enforce them". As a result of article III, foreign arbitral awards are entitled to a *prima facie* right to recognition and enforcement in the Contracting States.

2. The text of article III follows the wording of the 1927 Geneva Convention, which provided that an "arbitral award [...] shall be recognized as binding and shall be enforced in accordance with the rules of procedure of the territory where the award is relied upon".[363] However, the 1927 Geneva Convention did not include any safeguards that would prevent national courts from imposing unduly complicated or onerous procedural hurdles at the recognition and enforcement stage.

3. Following lengthy discussions between the drafters to the Convention, the final text of article III achieved a balanced solution that permits each Contracting State to apply its own national rules of procedure to the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards, while guaranteeing that such recognition and enforcement will comply with a number of fundamental principles.[364]

4. The first principle is that, while the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards under the Convention shall be conducted "in accordance with the rules of procedure of the territory where the award is relied upon", the "conditions" under which recognition and enforcement of foreign awards can be granted are exclusively governed by the Convention.

5. The second principle is that the national rules of procedure governing the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards in each Contracting State shall not impose "substantially more onerous conditions or higher fees or charges on the recognition or enforcement of arbitral awards to which this Convention

[363] Article 1 of the 1927 Geneva Convention.

[364] The Conference's delegates initially envisaged a uniform set of rules that would govern the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards in all Contracting States. See *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Comments on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/2, para.7, p. 4. They eventually decided to refer to "the rules of procedure of the country where the award is relied upon". See *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Comments on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/2, p. 4. Various alternative texts were also proposed. See *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Report on article I, paragraph 1 and article II of the draft Convention (E/2704 and Corr.1), E/CONF.26/L.42/Corr.1; *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Twenty-Third Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.23, p. 14. The principle set by the drafters of article III nevertheless remained similar to that previously provided for by articles 1 and 5 of the 1927 Geneva Convention.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

applies than are imposed on the recognition or enforcement of domestic arbitral awards."

6. While article III grants Contracting States the freedom to apply their own national rules of procedure at the recognition and enforcement stage, courts have applied article III in accordance with the Convention's policy of promoting recognition and enforcement to the greatest extent possible.

Analysis

A. General principle

a. Obligation to recognize arbitral awards as binding and enforce them

7. The first sentence of article III provides that "[e]ach Contracting State shall recognize arbitral awards as binding and enforce them".[365]

8. The general principle set forth by article III has been referred to by a number of courts as embodying Convention's "pro-enforcement bias". For example, a United States court stated that "[t]he Convention and its implementing legislation have a pro-enforcement bias [...]", of which "[a]rt. III of the Convention is illustrative".[366] The Court of Appeal of England and Wales also held that, pursuant to this principle, foreign arbitral awards are entitled to a "*prima facie*" right to recognition and enforcement.[367] A number of other courts have expressed the same view.[368]

[365]The obligation to recognize and enforce arbitral awards under the Convention is not binding on States that are not parties to the Convention. See *The Attorney General of Belize v. BCB Holdings Limited and The Belize Bank Limited*, Supreme Court, Belize, 8 August 2012, XXXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 324 (2013), in which the Belize Supreme Court ruled that it had no legal obligation to recognize and enforce arbitral awards in accordance with Article III because Belize was not a Contracting State.

[366]*Glencore Grain Rotterdam B.V. v. Shivnath Rai Harnarain Company*, Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, United States of America, 26 March 2002, 01-15539.

[367]See, e.g., *Yukos Oil Co. v. Dardana Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 18 April 2002, A3/2001/102.

[368]See, e.g., *Gouvernement de la région de Kaliningrad (Fédération de Russie) v. République de Lituanie*, Court of Appeals of Paris, France, 18 November 2010, 09/19535; *Sojuznefteexport (SNE) (Russian Federation) v. Joc Oil Ltd. (Bermuda)*, Court of Appeal of Bermuda, Bermuda, 7 July 1989, XV Y.B. Com. Arb. 384 (1990); *AO Techsnabexport (Russian Federation) v. Globe Nuclear Services and Supply, Limited (United States of America)*, District Court, District of Maryland, United States of America, 28 August 2009, AW-08-1521, XXXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 1174 (2009); *WTB—Walter Thosti Boswau Bauaktiengesellschaft (Germany) v. Costruire Coop. srl (Italy)*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 7 June 1995, 6426.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

9. Courts of the Contracting States have frequently pointed to the mandatory nature of the obligation under article III, which results from the word "shall".[369] For example, a court in Cameroon noted that "the meaning of article I and article III [...] is that Cameroon having signed the New York Convention of 1958 is bound to recognize and enforce arbitral awards made in another contracting State".[370] A Bulgarian court similarly found that "by virtue of Art. III [...], each signatory country [to the Convention] shall recognize the validity of the final arbitration award and shall allow its enforcement".[371] An Italian court ruled that "article III of the Convention obliges sic et simpli[ci]ter a Contracting State to recognize and enforce an arbitral award".[372] Courts in England[373] and in Germany[374] have also recognized the mandatory nature of article III.

10. Leading commentators similarly describe article III of the Convention as the source of the Contracting States' obligation to recognize and enforce foreign arbitral awards.[375] A number of these commentators also characterize this obligation

[369]See, e.g., *Altain Khuder LLC v. IMC Mining Inc., et al. and IMC Aviation Solutions Pty. Ltd. v. Altain Khuder LLC*, Supreme Court of Victoria, Commercial and Equity Division, Commercial Court, Australia, 28 January 2011 and Supreme Court of Victoria, Court of Appeal, Australia, 22 August 2011, XXXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 242 (2011); *Merck & Co. Inc. (United States), Merck Frosst Canada Inc. (Canada), Frosst Laboratories Inc. (Colombia) v. Tecnoquimicas SA (Colombia)*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 24 March 1999, XXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 755 (2001); *Brace Transport Corp. of Monrovia, Bermuda v. Orient Middle East Lines Ltd.*, Supreme Court, India, 12 October 1993, 5438-39 of 1993; *Guarantor (Russian Federation) v. Borrower (Swedish Company)*, Supreme Court, Judicial Collegium, Russian Federation, 22 May 1997, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 641 (2000); *Jorf Lasfar Energy Company S.C.A. v. AMCI Export Corporation*, District Court, Western District of Pennsylvania, United States of America, 5 May 2006, 05-0423.

[370]*African Petroleum Consultants (APC) v. Société Nationale de Raffinage*, High Court of Fako Division, OHADA, Cameroon, 15 May 2002, HCF/91/M/2001-2002.

[371]*ECONERG Ltd. (Croatia) v. National Electricity Company AD (Bulgaria)*, Supreme Court of Appeal, Civil Collegium, Fifth Civil Department, Bulgaria, 23 February 1999, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 641 (2000).

[372]*S.a.S. Wieland K. G. (Austria) v. Società Industriale Meridionale (S.I.M.) (Italy)*, Court of Appeal of Messina, Italy, 19 May 1976, V Y.B. Com. Arb. 266 (1980).

[373]*Gater Assets Ltd. v. Nak Naftogaz Ukrainiy*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 17 October 2007, A3/2007/0738, para. 11.

[374]*Claimant (UK) v. Defendant (Germany)*, Oberlandesgericht, Rostock, Germany, 22 November 2001, 1 Sch 03/00, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 732 (2004).

[375]See, e.g., ICCA's Guide to the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention: A Handbook for Judges 69 (P. Sanders ed., 2011); Ramona Martinez, *Recognition and Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards Under the United Nations Convention of 1958: The "Refusal" Provisions*, 24 Int'l Law 487, 495-96 (1990); Emilia Onyema, *Formalities of the Enforcement Procedure (Articles III and IV)*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 597 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Loukas A. Mistelis, Domenico D. Pietro, *New York Convention, Article III [Obligation to Recognise and Enforce Arbitral Awards]*, in Concise International Arbitration 10 (L.A. Mistelis ed., 2010).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

as a "presumptive" one, or have referred to it as embodying the "pro-enforcement bias" of the Convention.[376]

11. While parties seeking recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards have often seized the courts of Contracting States where the award-debtor had assets, or where they believed the collection of a monetary award was more likely,[377] neither article III nor any other provision of the Convention requires the presence of assets in the jurisdiction where recognition and enforcement is sought. With the exception of a German decision that refused enforcement of a foreign arbitral award in a case where the award-debtor had no assets in Germany,[378] the courts of the Contracting States have not conditioned recognition and enforcement under the Convention to the presence of assets. Leading commentators confirm that the presence of assets in the jurisdiction in which recognition and enforcement is sought is not a condition of the recognition and enforcement of an award under the Convention.[379]

12. Although article III does not expressly provide that arbitral awards have *res judicata* effect, a number of national courts have ruled that it has such a consequence in practice. For example, a United States court ruled that "[t]hough the convention does not expressly speak to the res judicata effect of an international arbitral award [...] it reflects the principle that until it is successfully challenged, an arbitral award presumptively establishes the rights and liabilities of the parties

[376]See, e.g., Maxi Scherer, *Article III (Recognition and Enforcement of Arbitral Awards; General Rule)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958 of 10 June 1958—Commentary 193, 196 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Emilia Onyema, *Formalities of the Enforcement Procedure (Articles III and IV)*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 597 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Andreas Börner, *Article III*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 115 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010). See also Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 3394 (2014).

[377]See, e.g., *Gulf Petro Trading Company Inc., et al. v. Nigerian National Petroleum Corporation, et al.*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 7 January 2008, 06-40713; *Far Eastern Shipping Company v. AKP Sovocomflot (United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland)*, Queen's Bench Division, 14 November 1994, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 699 (1996); *Brace Transport Corp. of Monrovia v. Orient Middle East Lines Ltd. and ors*, Supreme Court, India, 12 October 1993, 5438-39 of 1993, in which the Supreme Court of India observed that "[w]hen it becomes necessary to enforce an international award [...] [t]he first step is to determine the country or countries in which enforcement is to be sought. In order to reach this decision, the party seeking enforcement needs to locate the State or States in which the losing party has (or is likely to have) assets available to meet the award".

[378]Kammergericht [KG], Berlin, Germany, 10 August 2006, 20 Sch 07/04.

[379]See, e.g., Loukas A. Mistelis, Domenico D. Pietro, *New York Convention, Article III [Obligation to Recognise and Enforce Arbitral Awards]*, in Concise International Arbitration 10 (L.A. Mistelis ed., 2010); Emilia Onyema, *Formalities of the Enforcement Procedure Procedure (Articles III and IV)*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 597, 603 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

to the arbitration."[380] This view is equally shared in commentary on the New York Convention.[381]

b. Conditions laid down in the Convention

13. Article III provides that Contracting States shall recognize and enforce arbitral awards "under the conditions laid down in the following articles [of the Convention]".

14. Various courts have held that these "conditions" refer to the conditions set out in articles IV, V, VI and VII of the Convention.[382]

15. National courts have applied these conditions in reported case law on article III.[383] For example, the Italian Court of Cassation overturned the decision of an appeals court granting recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award where

[380] *American Express Bank Ltd. v. Banco Español de Crédito S.A.*, Southern District Court of New York, United States of America, 13 February 2009, 1:06-cv-03484-RJH. See also *Gulf Petro Trading Company Inc., et al. v. Nigerian National Petroleum Corporation, et al.*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 7 January 2008, 06-40713.

[381] See, e.g., Andreas Börner, *Article III*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 115 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Maxi Scherer, *Article III (Recognition and Enforcement of Arbitral Awards; General Rule)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 193, 196-97 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 3741 (2014).

[382] For a detailed discussion of these provisions, see the chapters of the Guide on articles IV, V, VI and VII. For example, a Swiss court stated that: "According to Art. III first sentence [...], foreign arbitral decisions are recognized and enforced in Switzerland if the requirements in Arts. IV et seq. Convention are met," *Italian party v. Swiss company*, Bezirksgericht of Zurich, Switzerland, 14 February 2003, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 819 (2004); See also *D. S.A. (Spain) v. W. G.m.b.H. (Austria)*, Oberster Gerichtshof, Austria, 26 April 2006, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 259 (2007). An English court referred to "article III's requirement that enforcement be accorded 'under the conditions laid down in the following articles' (viz articles IV/VI)"; *Gater Assets Ltd. v. Nak Naftogaz Ukrainiy*, Court of Appeals, England and Wales, 17 October 2007, A3/2007/0738.

[383] See, e.g., *Czarina, L.L.C. v. W.F. Poe Syndicate*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 4 February 2004, 03-10518; *Greek Buyer v. Ukrainian Seller*, Administrative Court of Appeal of Athens, Greece, 18 July 2011, XXXVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 234 (2012); *Daihatsu Motor Co., Inc. (Japan) v. Terrain Vehicles, Inc. (United States)*, District Court, Northern District of Illinois, Eastern Division, United States of America, 29 May 1992, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 575 (1993); *WTB—Walter Thosti Boswau Bauaktiengesellschaft v. Costruire Coop. srl*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 7 June 1995, 6426; *Zeevi Holdings Ltd. (in receivership) (Israel) v. The Republic of Bulgaria*, District Court of Jerusalem, Israel, 13 January 2009, XXXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 632 (2009); *Adamas Management & Services Inc. v. Aurado Energy Inc.*, Court of Queen's Bench of New Brunswick, Canada, 28 July 2004, S/M/57/04, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 479 (2005); *Brothers for Import, Export and Supply Company (Egypt) v. Hano Acorporish (Republic of Korea)*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 2 July 2008, 23/125; *Egyptian British Company for General Development (GALINA) v. Danish Agriculture Seelizer Company*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 26 May 2004, 7/121; *Engineering Industries Company & Sobhi A. Farid Institute v. Roadstar Management & Roadstar International*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 29 September 2003, 22/119; *Nile Cotton Ginning Company v. Cargill Limited*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 29 June 2003, 129/118; *Hamdy Mohamed Abdel-Al v. Faj Henwa Berenger Corporation*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 26 March 2003, 10/119; *Cairo for Real Estate Company v. Abdel Rahman Hassan Sharbatly*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 26 February 2003, 23/119.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

the applicant had not produced an authenticated copy of the award as required by article IV, holding that this was an application condition of the Convention pursuant to article III.[384] The Supreme Court of Georgia held that arbitral awards "shall be recognized as binding and enforceable" pursuant to article III and thus upheld an award after observing that there were no grounds to refuse recognition under article V of the Convention.[385]

16. Courts of the Contracting States have confirmed that the "conditions" referred to in article III are those exclusively listed in the Convention and that no other condition contained in the Contracting States' national laws shall apply at the recognition and enforcement stage. For instance, in a case where a party argued that enforcement should be refused because the award was rendered by an even number of arbitrators, which Italian law prohibits, the Italian Court of Cassation observed that none of the Convention's exhaustive grounds included such a condition, and that the conditions under Italian law were irrelevant in this respect.[386]

17. Leading commentators confirm that the "conditions" governing the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards are those exclusively listed by the Convention.[387]

B. Rules of procedure of the territory where the award is relied upon

18. Article III provides that the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards shall be granted "in accordance with the rules of procedure of the territory where the award is relied upon."

19. As the *travaux préparatoires* make clear, the drafters of the New York Convention refrained from devising a harmonized set of procedural rules applicable to the

[384] *Globtrade Italiana srl v. East Point Trading Ltd*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 8 October 2008, 24856.

[385] "*S.F.M.*" *LLC v. Batumi City Hall*, Supreme Court, Georgia, 15 May 2009, a-471-sh-21-09. See also *Ltd. "R.L." v. JSC "Z. Factory"*, Supreme Court, Georgia, 2 April 2004, a-204-sh-43-03.

[386] *Nigi Agricoltura srl v. Inter Eltra Kommerz und Produktion GmbH*, Supreme Court, Italy, 23 July 2009, 17312. See also *Privilegiata Fabbrica Maraschino Excelsior Girolamo Luxardo SpA v. Agrarcommerz AG*, Supreme Court of Cassation, Italy, 15 January 1992, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 427 (1993).

[387] See, e.g., Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 239 (1981); Andreas Börner, *Article III*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 115, 116 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Maxi Scherer, *Article III (Recognition and Enforcement of Arbitral Awards; General Rule)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 193, 202 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards in each Contracting State.[388] As a result, the Convention does not refer to any specific set of rules, leaving it to each Contracting State to define the rules of procedure applicable to the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards in its territory.[389]

a. Meaning of the rules of procedure of the territory where the award is relied upon

20. Reported case law shows that the "rules of procedure of the territory where the award is relied upon" refer to the national procedural rules applicable in each Contracting State where recognition and enforcement is sought.

21. In accordance with the wording of article III, courts of the Contracting States have applied the procedural rules of their national laws to the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards, and not the laws of the country where the arbitration took place or any other law.[390] For example, a United States court rejected the application of English procedural rules to the recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award in the United States, on the ground that enforcement was sought in the United States.[391] The Supreme Court of Canada held that the word "territory" in article III referred to the relevant provincial unit where enforcement was sought (in the case at hand, the province of Alberta), instead of the Contracting State in

[388] See *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Comments on Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/2, p. 4; *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Consideration of other measures for increasing the effectiveness of arbitration in the settlement of private law disputes, E/CONF.26/6, p. 12; *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Consideration of the draft convention on the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards, Text of Article II as adopted by the Conference at its 16th meeting, E/CONF.26/L.47.

[389] The Spanish Supreme Court observed that Spanish procedural rules shall be applied to the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards pursuant to article III of the New York Convention because that article "does not itself provide for a particular recognition and enforcement mechanism". *Saroc, S.p.A. (Italy) v. Sahece, S.A. (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Spain, 4 March 2003, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 571 (2007). See also *Zeevi Holdings Ltd. v. The Republic of Bulgaria*, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 29 March 2011, 09 Civ. 8856 (RJS), XXXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 464 (2011).

[390] *Kuwait No. 1, contract party v. contract party*, Supreme Appeal Court, Cassation Circuit, (Kuwait), 21 November 1988, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 748 (1997). See also *TermoRio S.A. E.S.P. (Colombia), LeaseCo Group and others v. Electranta S.P. (Colombia), et al.*, Court of Appeals, District of Columbia Circuit, United States of America, 25 May 2007, 06-7058, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 955 (2008); *China National Building Material Investment Co., Ltd. (PR China) v. BNK International LLC (United States)*, District Court, Western District of Texas, United States of America, 4 December 2009, A-09-CA-488-SS, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 507 (2010).

[391] *Artemis Shipping & Navigation Co. S.A. v. Tormar Shipping AS*, District Court, Eastern District of Louisiana, United States of America, 9 December 2003, 03-217.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

its entirety.[392] The courts of Cameroon,[393] Bulgaria,[394] the Czech Republic,[395] Colombia,[396] Egypt,[397] England and Wales,[398] France,[399] Germany,[400] Greece,[401] India,[402] Italy,[403] Japan,[404] the Netherlands,[405] Portugal[406], and Spain[407] have followed

[392]*Yugraneft Corporation v. Rexx Management Corporation*, Supreme Court, Canada, 20 May 2010, 2010 SCC 19.

[393]*African Petroleum Consultants (APC) v. Société Nationale de Raffinage*, High Court of Fako Division, OHADA, Cameroon, 15 May 2002, HCF/91/M/2001-2002.

[394]See, e.g., *ECONERG Ltd. (Croatia) v. National Electricity Company AD (Bulgaria)*, Supreme Court of Appeal, Civil Collegium, Fifth Civil Department, Bulgaria, 23 February 1999, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 641 (2000).

[395]See, e.g., *F&G A.S.R. v. K, s.p.*, Supreme Administrative Court, Czech Republic, 29 March 2001, XXXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 363 (2013).

[396]See, e.g., *Merck & Co. Inc. (United States), Merck Frosst Canada Inc. (Canada), Frosst Laboratories Inc. (Colombia) v. Tecnoquimicas S.A. (Colombia)*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 24 March 1999, XXVI Y.B. Com. Arb.755 (2001); *Merck & Co. Inc. (United States), Merck Frosst Canada Ind. & Frosst Laboratories Inc. (Colombia) v. Tecnoquimicas S.A. (Colombia)*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 1 March 1999, E-7474; *Sunward Overseas S.A. v. Servicios Maritimos Limitada Semar (Ltda.) (Colombia)*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 20 November 1992, XX Y.B. Com. Arb. 651 (1995); *Petrotesting Colombia S.A. et al. v. Ross Energy S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 27 July 2011, XXXVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 200 (2012).

[397]See, e.g., *Omnipol v. Samiram*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 30 May 2005, 10/122.

[398]See, e.g., *Gater Assets Ltd. v. Nak Naftogaz Ukrainiy*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 17 October 2007, A3/2007/0738.

[399]See, e.g., *S.A. Recam Sonofadex v. S.N.C. Cantieri Rizzardi de Gianfranco Rizzardi*, Court of Appeal of Orleans, France, 5 October 2000; *Société I.A.I.G.C.—Inter-Arab Investment Guarantee Corporation v. Société B.A.I.I.—Banque arabe et internationale d'investissement SA (BAII)*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 23 October 1997, 96/80232; *Société Acteurs Auteurs Associés (A.A.A.) v. Société Hemdale Film Corporation*, Court of First Instance of Paris, France, 22 November 1989, 10247/89.

[400]See, e.g., Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 4 October 2005, VII ZB 09/05; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 4 October 2005, VII ZB 8/05.

[401]See, e.g., *Not indicated v. Not indicated*, Court of First Instance of Piraeus, Greece, 1968, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 185 (1976); *Greek Buyer v. Ukrainian Seller*, Court of Appeal of Athens, Greece, 18 July 2011, XXXVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 234 (2012).

[402]See, e.g., *Orient Middle East Lines Ltd., Bombay and others (India) v. M/s Brace Transport Corporation of Monrovia and another (Liberia)*, High Court of Gujarat, India, 19 April 1985, XIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 648 (1989).

[403]See, e.g., *WTB—Walter Thosti Boswau Bauaktiengesellschaft (Germany) v. Costruire Coop. srl (Italy)*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 7 June 1995, 6426.

[404]See, e.g., *Zhe-jiang Provincial Light Industrial Products Import & Export Corp. (China) v. Takeyari K. K. (Japan)*, District Court of Okayama, Civil Section II, Japan, 14 July 1993, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 744 (1997).

[405]See, e.g., *Société d'Etudes et de Commerce SA (France) v. Weyl Beef Products BV*, Court of First Instance of Amelo, Netherlands, 19 July 2000, XXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 827 (2001).

[406]*T. S.A. v. S. S.A.*, Court of Appeal of Lisbon, Portugal, 8 June 2010, XXXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 438 (2013).

[407]See, e.g., *Unión Naval de Levante S.A. (Spain) v. Bisba Comercial Inc. (Panama)*, Supreme Court, Spain, 9 October 2003, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 623 (2005); *Saroc, S.p.A. (Italy) v. Sahece, S.A. (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Plenary Session, Spain, 4 March 2003, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 571 (2007); *Unión Naval de Levante S.A. (Spain) v. Bisba Comercial Inc. (Panama)*, Supreme Court, Spain, 9 October 2003, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 623 (2005); *Mr. Genaro (Spain), Mr. Carmelo (Spain) and Agraria del Tormes S.A. (Spain) v. Majeriforeningen Danish Dairy Board (Denmark)*, Court of Appeal of Zamora, Spain, 27 November 2009, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 454 (2010).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

the same approach. Leading commentators also confirm that article III requires courts to apply the national rules of procedure of their own country.[408]

22. In a number of reported cases on article III, courts have considered whether certain rules should be characterized as "conditions" governing the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards (which are exclusively listed in the Convention) or "rules of procedure" applicable to the recognition and enforcement of these awards (which are contained in national laws).

23. Courts have considered that the "rules of procedure" that may be applied under article III should be interpreted narrowly, and should be determined independently of the categories observed under national laws. For instance, the Italian Court of Cassation held that "rules of procedure" should be interpreted restrictively and that the principle of *lis pendens*, despite being part of the Italian Code of Civil Procedure, could not be applied by the court by virtue of article III.[409]

24. In the absence of any guidance in the text of the Convention, Contracting States are free to determine the content of the rules of procedure applicable to the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards. For instance, the Supreme Court of Canada stated that the text of the Convention, including article III, must "be construed in a manner that takes into account the fact that it was intended to interface with a variety of legal traditions".[410] The English High Court, when

[408]See, e.g., William W. Park, *Respecting the New York Convention*, 18(2) ICC Bull. 65, 70 (2007); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 236 (1981); Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 982, para. 1671 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Andreas Börner, *Article III*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 115, 117 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Maxi Scherer, *Article III (Recognition and Enforcement of Arbitral Awards; General Rule)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 193, 197 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Emilia Onyema, *Formalities of the Enforcement Procedure (Articles III and IV)*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 597, 603 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Ramona Martinez, *Recognition and Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards Under the United Nations Convention of 1958: The "Refusal" Provisions*, 24 Int'l Law 487, 496 (1990); ICCA's Guide to the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention: A Handbook for Judges 69 (P. Sanders ed., 2011).

[409]*Privilegiata Fabbrica Maraschino Excelsior Girolamo Luxardo SpA v. Agrarcommerz AG*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 15 January 1992, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 427 (1993). See also *Società La Naviera Grancebaco S.A. (Panama) v. Ditta Italgrani (Italy)*, Court of First Instance of Naples, Italy, 30 June 1976, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 277 (1979).

[410]*Yugraneft Corporation. v. Rexx Management Corporation*, Supreme Court, Canada, 20 May 2010, 2010 SCC 19.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

applying article III, also noted that "the court is not directly concerned to ensure that the English approach is the same as that adopted in other Convention states".[411]

25. The flexibility afforded under article III to Contracting States to apply their national rules of procedure gives rise to the possibility that an award could be granted recognition and enforcement in one Contracting State and denied recognition and enforcement in another based on a rule of procedure that exists in the former but not the latter. However, reported case law provides very few examples of such situations.[412]

[411] *IPCO v. Nigerian National Petroleum Corp.*, High Court of Justice Queen's Bench Division, England and Wales, 17 April 2008, 2004 Folio 1031. Courts of the United States have also recognized that the wording of article III entails that different procedural rules would be applied in the courts of various Contracting States. See *Zeevi Holdings Ltd. v. The Republic of Bulgaria*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 29 March 2011, 09 Civ. 8856 (RJS), XXXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 464 (2011); *Monegasque de Reassurances S.A.M. (Monde Re) v. Nak Naftogaz of Ukraine and State of Ukraine*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 15 November 2002, 017947, 01-9153; *TermoRio S.A. E.S.P. (Colombia), LeaseCo Group and others v. Electranta S.P. (Colombia), et al.*, Court of Appeals, District of Columbia Circuit, United States of America, 25 May 2007, 06-7058, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 955 (2008).

[412] For example, both an Israeli court and a United States court were faced with the same award in which the underlying agreement to arbitrate provided that the award could only be enforced in Bulgaria. The United States Court, applying article III, enforced the forum selection clause pursuant to the doctrine of *forum non conveniens* and dismissed the case. Conversely, an Israel court granted enforcement, holding that the award could only be refused based on the grounds under article V of the Convention, which did not include the *forum non conveniens* doctrine. See *Zeevi Holdings Ltd. (in receivership) (Israel) v. The Republic of Bulgaria*, District Court of Jerusalem, Israel, 13 January 2009, XXXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 632 (2009) and *Zeevi Holdings Ltd. v. The Republic of Bulgaria*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 29 March 2011, 09 Civ. 8856 (RJS), XXXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 464 (2011). On the issue of the applicability of the *forum non conveniens* doctrine under article III, see the chapter of the Guide on article III para. 32 and fn. 427.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

c. Application by national courts

26. In many of the reported cases on article III, courts have applied specific rules of procedure from their national legislation that govern the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards.[413]

27. Only a few reported cases have addressed the situation where the national law of a Contracting State does not contain any rules of procedure specifically applicable to the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards. Indian courts have held that, in the absence of such rules, procedural rules applicable to the recognition and enforcement of domestic arbitral awards should be transposed to foreign arbitral awards.[414] The Cairo Court of Appeal confirmed that Contracting States are not obliged to enact specific rules of procedure to govern the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards.[415] Commentators on the New York Convention equally consider that where a Contracting State's national law does not contain specific procedural rules applicable to the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards, the procedural rules governing domestic arbitral awards should be applied.[416]

---

[413]See, e.g., *Privilegiata Fabbrica Maraschino Excelsior Girolamo Luxardo SpA v. Agrarcommerz AG*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 15 January 1992, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 427 (1993); *ECONERG Ltd. (Croatia) v. National Electricity Company AD (Bulgaria)*, Supreme Court of Appeal, Civil Collegium, Fifth Civil Department, Bulgaria, 23 February 1999, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 641 (2000); *F&G A.S.R. v. K, s.p.*, Supreme Administrative Court, Czech Republic, 29 March 2001, XXXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 363 (2013); *Société d'Etudes et de Commerce SA (France) v. Weyl Beef Products BV*, Court of First Instance of Amelo, Netherlands, 19 July 2000, XXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 827 (2001); *Union Naval de Levante S.A. v. Bisba Comercial Inc.*, Supreme Court, Spain, 9 October 2003, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 623 (2005); *Brace Transport Corporation of Monrovia, Bermuda v. Orient Middle East Lines Ltd. and ors*, High Court of Gujarat, India, 19 April 1985, AIR 1986 Guj 62; *Romanian Company v. Panamanian Company*, Supreme Court, Romania, 3 June 1984, XIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 691 (1989); *WTB—Walter Thosti Boswau Bauaktiengesellschaft (Germany) v. Costruire Coop. srl (Italy)*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 7 June 1995, 6426; *Contract party v. Contract party*, Supreme Appeal Court, Cassation Circuit, Kuwait, 21 November 1988, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 748 (1997); *Al Ahram Beverages Company v. Société Française d'Etudes et de Construction*, Court of Appeal of Tanta, Egypt, 17 November 2009, 42/42; *Abdel Wahed Hassan Suleiman v. Danish Dairy and Agriculture Seelizer Company*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 25 September 2005; *Omnipol v. Samiram*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 30 May 2005, 10/122; *El Nasr Company for Fertilizers & Chemical Industries (SEMADCO) v. John Brown Deutsche Engineering*, Court of Cassation, Egypt, 10 January 2005, 966/73; *Orient Middle East Lines Ltd., Bombay and others (India) v. M/s Brace Transport Corporation of Monrovia and another (Liberia)*, High Court of Gujarat, India, 19 April 1985, XIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 648 (1989).

[414]*Orient Middle East Lines Ltd., Bombay and others (India) v. M/s Brace Transport Corporation of Monrovia and another (Liberia)*, High Court of Gujarat, India, 19 April 1985, XIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 648 (1989). The Indian court held that "if the said [domestic] Act is silent with regard to any procedural aspect [...], then [the Code of Civil Procedure and other procedural statutes] of this country where the award is relied upon have to be followed".

[415]*Ahmed Mostapha Shawky v. Andersen Worldwide & Wahid El Din Abdel Ghaffar Megahed & Emad Hafez Ragheb & Nabil Istanboly Akram Istanboly*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 23 May 2001, 25/116.

[416]See, e.g., Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 982, para. 1671 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Emilia Onyema, *Formalities of the Enforcement Procedure (Articles III and IV)*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards—The New York Convention in Practice 597, 603 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 238 (1981).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

28. Different types of domestic procedural rules have been applied in reported case law on article III.

29. In a number of cases, courts have applied national rules that determine the competent authority to hear applications for recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards. For example, the Supreme Court of Romania held that, in accordance with article III, the court having jurisdiction to hear applications for recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards was to be determined in accordance with rules of procedure of Romanian law.[417] Similarly, a court in Cameroon observed that the determination of the specific court having jurisdiction to hear a request for recognition and enforcement of a foreign arbitral award should be a matter of Cameroon law.[418]

30. In other reported cases on article III, courts have held that the limitation period applicable to an application for recognition and enforcement of a foreign arbitral awards is a procedural rule governed by national law. For instance, the Supreme Court of Canada, after interpreting the text of the Convention and its *travaux préparatoires*, held that the Convention "was intended to allow Contracting States to impose time limits on the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards if they so wished".[419] Courts in Russian Federation,[420] India[421] and the United Kingdom[422] have equally applied limitation periods found in their national procedural rules pursuant to article III of the Convention.

31. Leading commentators confirm that the determination of the court having jurisdiction to hear requests for recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards, or of the limitation periods applicable to recognition and enforcement,

[417] *Romanian Company v. Panamanian Company*, Supreme Court, Romania, 3 June 1984, XIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 691 (1989).

[418] *African Petroleum Consultants (APC) v. Société Nationale de Raffinage*, High Court of Fako Division, OHADA, Cameroon, 15 May 2002, HCF/91/M/2001-2002. For other examples, see, e.g., Court of Appeal of Porto, Portugal, 21 June 2005, 0427126; *Brace Transport Corporation of Monrovia, Bermuda v. Orient Middle East Lines Ltd. and ors*, High Court of Gujarat, India, 19 April 1985, AIR 1986 Guj 62; *Centrotex, S.A. (Czech Republic) v. Agencia Gestora de Negocios, S.A. (Agensa) (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Spain, 13 November 2001, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 834 (2006).

[419] *Yugraneft Corporation. v. Rexx Management Corporation*, Supreme Court, Canada, 20 May 2010, 2010 SCC 19.

[420] *OAO Ryazan Metal Ceramics Instrumentation Plant (Russian Federation)*, Constitutional Court, Russian Federation, 2 November 2011, 1479-O-O/2011.

[421] *Brace Transport Corporation of Monrovia, Bermuda v. Orient Middle East Lines Ltd. and ors*, High Court of Gujarat, India, 19 April 1985, AIR 1986 Guj 62.

[422] *The Government of Kuwait v. Sir Frederick Snow & Partners and Others (United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland)*, Court of Appeal, United Kingdom, 17 March 1983, IX Y.B. Com. Arb. 451 (1984).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

constitute procedural issues that should be governed by the Contracting States' national laws.[423]

32. Reported case law provides other isolated examples where courts have applied national rules of procedure to the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards, some of which have been criticized by commentators. These include rules concerning the ranking of creditors' claims,[424] the setting-off of claims,[425] the enforcement of a forum selection clause,[426] the doctrine of *forum non conveniens*[427] and issues of diplomatic protection.[428]

---

[423]See Maxi Scherer, *Article III (Recognition and Enforcement of Arbitral Awards; General Rule)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 193, 199-202 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Andreas Börner, *Article III*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 115, 122-27 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 240 (1981). See also United Nation Commission on International Trade Law, Report on the survey relating to the legislative implementation of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards (New York, 1958), A/CN.9/656/Add.1, at 2/3.

[424]See, e.g., *Artemis Shipping & Navigation Co. SA v. Tormar Shipping AS*, District Court, Eastern District of Louisiana, United States of America, 9 December 2003, 03-217.

[425]See *Rumanian Firm C. v. German (F.R.) party* Landgericht [LG] Hamburg, Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamburg, Germany, 27 March 1974, 27 March 1975, II Y.B. Com. Arb. 240 (1977). This decision has been criticized in the doctrine. See, e.g., Andreas Börner, *Article III*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 115, 130-31 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Maxi Scherer, *Article III (Recognition and Enforcement of Arbitral Awards; General Rule)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: Commentary 193, 203-04 (R. Wolff ed., 2012), who considers that "permitting counter-claims or set-off defenses during recognition or enforcement proceedings is contrary to Articles III and V."

[426]*Zeevi Holdings Ltd. v. The Republic of Bulgaria*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 29 March 2011, 09 Civ. 8856 (RJS), XXXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 464 (2011).

[427]*Monegasque de Reassurances S.A.M. (Monde Re) v. Nak Naftogaz of Ukraine and State of Ukraine*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 15 November 2002, 01-7947, 01-9153. Such an interpretation has been widely criticized by commentators. See, e.g., American Law Institute, Restatement of the Law—The United States Law of International Commercial Arbitration, Tentative Draft No. 4 (April 17, 2015); George A. Bermann, *'Domesticating' the New York Convention: the Impact of the Federal Arbitration Act*, 2(2) J. Int. Disp. Settlement 317, 326 (2011); Maxi Scherer, *Article III (Recognition and Enforcement of Arbitral Awards; General Rule)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 193, 203 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); William W. Park, *Respecting the New York Convention*, 18(2) ICC Bull. 65, 68-72 (2007); Dimitri Santoro, *Forum Non Conveniens: A Valid Defense under the New York Convention?*, 21 ASA Bull. 713, 723 (2003).

[428]See, e.g., Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 4 October 2005, VII ZB 09/05; Bundesgerichtshof, Germany, 4 October 2005, VII ZB 8/05.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

C. There should not be imposed substantially more onerous conditions or higher fees or charges than are imposed on the recognition or enforcement of domestic arbitral awards

33. The second sentence of article III provides that "[t]here shall not be imposed substantially more onerous conditions or higher fees or charges on the recognition or enforcement of arbitral awards to which this Convention applies than are imposed on the recognition or enforcement of domestic arbitral awards". This rule limits the Contracting States' discretion to determine the rules of procedure applicable to the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards in their territories. As the *travaux préparatoires* show, the purpose of this limitation, which has been referred to as the "national treatment" or "non-discrimination" rule,[429] is to prevent national courts from imposing "unduly complicated enforcement procedures" and insurmountable procedural hurdles at the recognition and enforcement stage.[430]

34. While the second sentence of article III prevents Contracting States from discriminating against foreign arbitral awards, nothing prevents Contracting States from imposing conditions to the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards that are less onerous than those imposed on domestic awards. The *travaux préparatoires* confirm that the drafters of the New York Convention intentionally rejected the idea that the rules of procedure applicable to the recognition and enforcement of foreign and domestic awards should be identical.[431]

---

[429] See *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Tenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.10, pp. 3 and 7. Other expressions have been used by national courts, such as "the non-discrimination provision", "the discrimination prohibition in article III" or the "principle of equivalence". *OAO Rosneft (Russian Federation) v. Yukos Capital s.a.r.l. (Luxembourg)*, Supreme Court, Netherlands, 25 June 2010, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 423 (2010); *Catz International B.V. v. Gilan Trading KFT, Provisions Judge of the District Court of Rotterdam* and Court of Appeal of The Hague, Netherlands, 28 February 2011 and 20 December 2011, XXXVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 271 (2012); Supreme Court of Justice, Portugal, 19 March 2009, 299/09; Supreme Court of Justice, Portugal, 22 April 2004, 04B705; *Gater Assets Ltd. v. Nak Naftogaz Ukrainiy*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 17 October 2007, A3/2007/0738; *Monegasque de Reassurances S.A.M. (Monde Re) v. Nak Naftogaz of Ukraine and State of Ukraine*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 15 November 2002, 01-7947, 01-9153.

[430] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Comments on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/2, p. 4; *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Consideration of the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards—Amendment to article II of the Draft Convention (United Kingdom), E/CONF.26/L.11; *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Tenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.10, p. 3; *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Consideration of the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards—Proposed amendment to the United Kingdom amendment to Article II of the draft Convention (Israel), E/CONF.26/L.21.

[431] See *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Tenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.10, p. 5; *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Eleventh Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.11, p. 5.

35. This view is also confirmed in reported case law. For example, an Italian Court of Appeal held that Article 825 of the Italian Code of Civil Procedure, which requires a deposit of a domestic award within five days after it has been signed by the arbitrators and an order for enforcement of the award by the court, should not apply to foreign arbitral awards.[432]

36. Leading commentators confirm that the second sentence of article III does not entail that the rules of procedure applicable to the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards should necessarily be identical to the ones applicable to domestic awards.[433]

a. Meaning of "conditions or fees or charges"

37. The Convention does not define the terms "conditions", "fees" or "charges". The specific meaning of these terms has been considered in very few reported cases.

38. In one reported case where a party objected to the enforcement of an award on the ground that the costs of the arbitration awarded by the arbitral tribunal were "extravagant", a Greek court held that the notion of "fees or charges" under the Convention refers to "the expenses of the proceedings for the declaration of enforcement of the foreign arbitral award", and not to the procedural costs awarded by the foreign arbitral tribunal.[434]

39. The term "conditions" has been interpreted as referring to the procedural rules and conditions for recognition and enforcement under a Contracting State's national law, and not the substantive grounds for refusal to recognize and enforce under article V of the Convention.[435]

---

[432] *Ditte Frey, Milota and Seitelberger v. Ditte F. Cuccaro e figli*, Court of Appeal of Naples, Italy, 13 December 1974, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 193 (1976).

[433] See, e.g., Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 982, para. 1671 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Andreas Börner, *Article III*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 115, 119 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

[434] *Shipowner (Malta) v. Contractor*, Supreme Court, Greece, 2007, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 565 (2008).

[435] See Maxi Scherer, *Article III (Recognition and Enforcement of Arbitral Awards; General Rule)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 193, 205 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

b. Application by national courts

40. The second sentence of article III has been applied in a number of reported cases.[436]

41. In some cases, courts have declined to impose certain conditions on the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards which they held did not apply to domestic awards. For example, the Portuguese Supreme Court ruled that a party seeking enforcement of a foreign arbitral award did not need to obtain prior recognition of that award, because such a requirement did not apply to domestic awards.[437] The Dutch Supreme Court held that imposing a rule that allowed parties to appeal in cassation a decision granting enforcement to foreign arbitral awards would violate article III, because the same possibility was not available for domestic awards rendered in the Netherlands.[438] In a similar vein, an Egyptian court considered that the provisions of the Egyptian Code of Civil and Commercial Procedure governing the enforcement of foreign arbitral awards imposed conditions that were more onerous than the conditions imposed by the Egyptian Arbitration Law to the recognition and enforcement of domestic awards and, on that basis, decided to apply the latter provisions to the recognition and enforcement of a foreign arbitral award.[439] A Hong Kong court similarly held that requiring a creditor to provide security to enforce a foreign award would impose more onerous conditions than

[436]See, e.g., *Glencore Grain Rotterdam B.V. v. Shivnath Rai Harnarain Company*, Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, United States of America, 26 March 2002, 01-15539; *Company Y v. State X and Company Z*, Court of Appeal, Berlin, Germany, 10 August 2006, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 363 (2007); *B. v. A.*, Court of Appeal of Lisbon, Portugal, 12 July 2012, XXXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 443 (2013); *Xilam Films v. Lnk-Video S.A*, Court of Appeal of Lisbon, Portugal, 12 July 2012, 7328/10.0TBOER.L1-1; Court of Appeal of Coimbra, Portugal, 19 January 2010, 70/09.6TBCBR.C1; Court of Appeal of Evora, Portugal, 31 January 2008, 1141/06-2; Court of Appeal of Porto, Portugal, 26 October 2004, 0325170; Court of Appeal of Porto, Portugal, 2 October 2001, 0120965; *OAO Rosneft (Russian Federation) v. Yukos Capital s.a.r.l. (Luxembourg)*, Supreme Court, First Chamber, Netherlands, 25 June 2010, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 423 (2010); *S.A. (Belgium) v. B Sociedade Nacional, S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Portugal, 19 March 2009, 299/09, XXXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 313 (2011).

[437]*S.A. (Belgium) v. B Sociedade Nacional, S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Portugal, 19 March 2009, XXXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 313 (2011).

[438]*OAO Rosneft (Russian Federation) v. Yukos Capital s.a.r.l. (Luxembourg)*, Supreme Court, Netherlands, 25 June 2010, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 423 (2010).

[439]*Al Ahram Beverages Company v. Société Française d'Etudes et de Construction*, Court of Appeal of Tanta, Egypt, 17 November 2009, 42/42; *Omnipol v. Samiram*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 30 May 2005, 10/122; *Abdel Wahed Hassan Suleiman v. Danish Dairy and Agriculture Seelizer Company*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 25 September 2005; *El Nasr Company for Fertilizers & Chemical Industries (SEMADCO) v. John Brown Deutsche Engineering*, Court of Cassation, Egypt, 10 January 2005, 966/73; *John Brown Deutsche Engineering v. El Nasr Company for Fertilizers & Chemical Industries (SEMADCO)*, 32/119, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 6 August 2003, 32/119; *United Engineering Industrial v. Mirco Trading SI*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 27 July 2003, 7/120.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

the ones faced by a creditor seeking to enforce a domestic award because "a creditor seeking to enforce a domestic award [...] would have no such liability".[440]

42. In other cases, courts have rejected arguments that the conditions applicable to the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards were more onerous than those applicable to domestic ones.[441] For instance, a Swiss court considered that the use of oral proceedings in the context of the enforcement of a foreign award was not contrary to article III on the ground that oral proceedings could also be used for the enforcement of domestic awards.[442] Likewise, a United States court held that the fact that the legislation applicable to domestic awards which automatically designated the venue in the district where the arbitral award was rendered, but not for foreign awards, was "not so onerous [to the recognition or enforcement of foreign arbitral awards] that [the court] should disregard the plain meaning of [its national law] in an effort to honor the spirit of Article III".[443] The court observed that, in such a situation, parties could achieve the same result by providing for a place of arbitration in their agreement.

[440] *T.K. Bulkhandling GmbH v. Meridian Success International Ltd.*, Court of First Instance, High Court of Hong Kong Special Administrative Division, 28 November 1990, 1998 No. MP 4765. See also *Shandong Hongri Acron Chemical Joint Stock Company Limited v. PetroChina International (Hong Kong) Corporation Limited*, Court of Appeal, Hong Kong, 13 June 2011, 25 July 2011 and 11 August 2011, XXXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 287 (2011).

[441] See, e.g., *Monegasque de Reassurances S.A.M. (Monde Re) v. Nak Naftogaz of Ukraine and State of Ukraine*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 15 November 2002, 01-7947, 01-9153, where a United States court held that the doctrine of *forum non conveniens* did not create more onerous conditions on foreign arbitral awards since this doctrine also applies to domestic arbitrations.

[442] *N. Z. v. I. (Romania)*, Court of Appeal of Basel-Stadt, Switzerland, 27 February 1989, XVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 581 (1992). For other examples, see also *Gouvernement de la Fédération de Russie v. Compagnie Noga d'importation et d'exportation*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 22 March 2001, 2001/208101.

[443] *Canada Inc. (f/k/a Nora Beverages, Inc.) v. North Country Natural Spring Water Ltd.*, District Court, Eastern District Pennsylvania, United States of America, 21 October 2002, 02-1416.

Article IV

1. To obtain the recognition and enforcement mentioned in the preceding article, the party applying for recognition and enforcement shall, at the time of the application, supply:

(a) The duly authenticated original award or a duly certified copy thereof;

(b) The original agreement referred to in article II or a duly certified copy thereof.

2. If the said award or agreement is not made in an official language of the country in which the award is relied upon, the party applying for recognition and enforcement of the award shall produce a translation of these documents into such language. The translation shall be certified by an official or sworn translator or by a diplomatic or consular agent.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article IV as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704 and Annex.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: Annexes I-II of E/2822; E/CONF.26/3; E/CONF.26/3/Add.1.
- Activities of Inter-Governmental and Non-Governmental Organizations in the Field of International Commercial Arbitration: Consolidated Report by the Secretary-General: E/CONF.26/4.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.17; E/CONF.26/L31; E/CONF.26/L.34.
- Comparison of Drafts Relating to Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention: E/CONF.26/L.33/Rev.1.
- Further Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.40.
- Text of Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention Proposed by Working Party III: E/CONF.26/L.43.
- Text of Articles Adopted by the Conference: E/CONF.26/L.48.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/L.61; E/CONF.26/8.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Eleventh, Twelfth, Thirteenth, Fourteenth, Seventeenth and Twenty-third Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR.11; E/CONF.26/SR.12: E/CONF.26/SR.13; E/CONF.26/SR.14; E/CONF.26/SR.17; E/CONF.26/SR.23.
- Summary Record of the Seventh Meeting of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.7.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Introduction

1. Article IV of the Convention governs the formal conditions which an applicant must meet in order to obtain recognition and enforcement of an award in accordance with article III. Its purpose is to ensure that the enforcing court has before it the necessary evidence that the applicant's request for recognition and enforcement "represents the true state of affairs".[444]

2. In line with the overall goals of the Convention, article IV aims to overcome the drawbacks of the formal requirements that an applicant had to meet under the previous regimes for obtaining recognition and enforcement of awards.

3. As discussed elsewhere in this Guide,[445] one of the principal barriers to recognition and enforcement prior to the adoption of the Convention was the requirement of *double exequatur*.[446] The 1927 Geneva Convention required that the party relying upon an award or seeking its enforcement supply, *inter alia*, "[d]ocumentary or other evidence to prove that the award ha[d] become final [...] in the country in which it was made".[447] In practice, in most countries, proof of finality could only be obtained by seeking leave for recognition and enforcement before the national courts and, thus, applicants seeking enforcement of an award had to provide proof of *exequatur* of the award in the country of the seat of the arbitration.[448] In addition to proof of finality of the award, the 1927 Geneva Convention required that the applicant produce a variety of other documentation.[449] As a result, an important burden was placed on the party seeking to obtain recognition and enforcement of an award.

---

[444]Emilia Onyema, *Formalities of the Enforcement Procedure (Articles III and IV)*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 597, 605 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

[445]See the chapter of the Guide on article V (1)*(e)*, paras. 2-4.

[446]See Jan Kleinheisterkamp, *Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards*, in Max Planck Encyclopedia of Public International Law paras. 9-12 (www.mpepil.com/, last updated 2008); Dirk Otto, *Article IV*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 143, 145 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

[447]Article 4 of the 1927 Geneva Convention.

[448]Dirk Otto, *Article IV*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 143, 145 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Reinmar Wolff, *Commentary on Article IV*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 207, 209 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[449]See article 4(3) of the 1927 Geneva Convention (obligating the applicant to provide documentation showing, *inter alia*, that the prerequisites of article 1*(a)* and *(c)* were met, which in turn required that "the award ha[d] been made in pursuance of a submission to arbitration which [was] valid under the law applicable thereto" and that "the award ha[d] been made by the Arbitral Tribunal provided for in the submission to arbitration or constituted in the manner agreed upon by the parties and in conformity with the law governing the arbitration procedure").

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

4. The New York Convention eliminated the requirement that the applicant provide proof of finality of the award. While the first draft of article IV set out very similar requirements to those of the 1927 Geneva Convention,[450] in the course of the negotiations, this idea was abandoned. The initiative first came from the delegate of the Netherlands who noted that demanding that the applicant prove that the award had become final or that its enforcement had not been suspended by a court in the country where it was made meant requiring proof of negative facts and thus placing a significant onus on the applicant.[451] The Dutch delegate proposed that the applicant be required to provide only the arbitral award and the arbitration agreement (and, where relevant, a translation thereof) and that the burden of proving that the award was not final in the country of the seat be shifted onto the party opposing recognition and enforcement. In the course of the negotiations, other delegations supported the Dutch proposal,[452] and the final version of article IV ultimately abolished the requirement that proof of finality be furnished by the applicant.[453]

5. Pursuant to article IV (1), an applicant seeking recognition and enforcement of an award is required to supply the enforcing court with two documents: the duly authenticated original award (or a duly certified copy) and the original agreement referred to in article II (or a duly certified copy). Pursuant to article IV (2), if these two documents are not made in an official language of the country in which recognition or enforcement is sought, the applicant is required to produce a translation thereof.

6. Thus, article IV of the Convention imposes significantly fewer requirements compared to the 1927 Geneva Convention. In this way, the Convention eliminates unnecessary formalities and ensures that foreign arbitral awards are recognized and enforced as early as possible.[454]

---

[450] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, E/2704, E/AC.42/4/Rev.1, Annex, p. 3.

[451] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Comments by Governments on the draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/3/Add.1, para. 7.

[452] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Twelfth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.12, p. 4; *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Seventeenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.17, p. 2.

[453] This has been hailed as a "revolution" and "one of the principal achievements of the New York Convention". See Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation (1981), 247; Emmanuel Gaillard, *The Relationship of the New York Convention with Other Treaties and with Domestic Law*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 69, 87 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

[454] It should be noted that article 35 (2) of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, which mirrors article IV of the Convention, has been amended in 2006 to liberalize formal requirements: no "duly authenticated" or "certified copies" of the award are required and presentation of a copy of the arbitration agreement is also no longer required.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Analysis

General principles

A. Prima facie right to recognition and enforcement

7. National courts have held that, once the applicant has supplied the documents referred to in article IV, it is deemed that it has obtained a *prima facie* right to recognition and enforcement of the award.

8. For example, the Court of Appeal of England and Wales has held that, once a party seeking recognition or enforcement has, under section 102(1) of the 1996 Arbitration Act (which gives effect to article IV of the Convention), produced the duly authenticated award or a duly certified copy and the original arbitration agreement or a duly certified copy, it attains a *prima facie* right to recognition and enforcement.[455] Thereafter, according to that court, recognition and enforcement may be refused only if the party opposing recognition and enforcement proves that the situation falls within the scope of section 103(2) of the Arbitration Act (which directly incorporates and whose wording is equivalent to article V (1) of the Convention).[456] The Italian Court of Cassation has similarly held that the burden on the party requesting enforcement is limited to the production of the documents required under article IV, whereupon there is a presumption of enforceability of the award.[457] Courts from other jurisdictions, including Japan, Spain and the United States, have adopted the same approach.[458]

B. An exhaustive set of requirements

9. Article IV (1) lists two items that the applicant should supply to the enforcing court in order to have the award recognized and enforced: the duly authenticated

[455] *Yukos Oil Co. v. Dardana Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 18 April 2002, [2002] EWCA Civ 543.

[456] *Id.*

[457] *WTB—Walter Thosti Boswau Bauaktiengesellschaft v. Costruire Coop. srl*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 7 June 1995, 6426.

[458] See, e.g., *Buyer v. Seller*, High Court of Tokyo, Japan, 27 January 1994, XX Y.B. Com. Arb. 742 (1995); *Cominco France S. A. v. Soquiber S. L.*, High Court of Justice, Spain, 24 March 1982, VIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 408 (1983); *Czarina, L.L.C. v. W.F. Poe Syndicate*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 4 February 2004, 358 F.3d 1286. See also Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 247-48; Emilia Onyema, *Formalities of the Enforcement Procedure (Articles III and IV)*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 597, 605 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

original award (or a duly certified copy) and the original agreement referred to in article II (or a duly certified copy). A handful of cases have addressed the issue of whether the documents referred to under article IV (1) and, if applicable, a translation thereof, are the only documents that an applicant must supply in order to obtain recognition or enforcement.

10. The majority of courts have ruled that the documents required under article IV are the only documents an applicant should provide to obtain recognition and enforcement of an award. For example, the Italian Court of Cassation has held that, pursuant to article IV, the party seeking enforcement has to submit only the original award and the arbitration agreement.[459] In the same vein, the Spanish Supreme Court has ruled that article IV requires the party seeking enforcement to supply only the award and arbitration agreement when filing its application. According to the Spanish Supreme Court, further documentation may be filed in response to any defences raised by the party opposing enforcement, but only after these have been raised.[460] The Supreme Court of Greece has also held that, in order to obtain enforcement, an applicant has only to provide the documents referred to under article IV.[461] Courts from other jurisdictions—including Austria, Mexico and the Netherlands—have followed the same path.[462]

11. During the drafting of article IV, a proposal was made that the applicant be required—as under the 1927 Geneva Convention—to supply additional "documentary and other evidence" in order to obtain the right to recognition and enforcement of an award.[463] This proposal was rejected. It is thus clear that the drafters of the Convention considered the possibility of requiring additional documents to be provided by applicants and squarely dismissed it.

[459] *Tortora Amedeo v. Tolimar S.A.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 27 June 1983, 4399, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 470 (1985).

[460] *Kil Management A/S (Denmark) v. J. García Carrión, S.A. (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Civil Chamber, Spain, 28 March 2000, 1724 of 1998, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 518 (2007).

[461] See Supreme Court, Greece, 1973, Case No. 926, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 186 (1976). See also Court of Appeal of Athens, Greece, 1972, Case No. 2768, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 186 (1976).

[462] See Supreme Court, Austria, 21 February 1978, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 418 (1985); *Presse Office S.A. v. Centro Editorial Hoy S.A.*, High Court of Justice, Eighteenth Civil Court of First Instance for the Federal District of Mexico, Mexico, 24 February 1977, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 301 (1979); *Palm and Vegetable Oils SDN. BHD. v. Algemene Oliehandel International B.V.*, President of the Court of Utrecht, Netherlands, 22 November 1984, XI Y.B. Com. Arb. 521 (1986). For a minority view pursuant to which denial of recognition and enforcement could be based on the failure to provide additional documents such as a certificate that the award had entered into force or the applicable arbitration rules, see, respectively, *ECONERG Ltd. v. National Electricity Company AD*, Supreme Court of Appeal, Civil Collegium, Fifth Civil Department, Bulgaria, 23 February 1999, 356/99, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 641 (2000); *Glencore Grain Ltd. v. TSS Grain Millers Ltd.*, High Court of Mombasa, Kenya, 5 July 2002, Civil Suit No. 388 of 2000, XXXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 666 (2009).

[463] See *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Seventeenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.17, pp. 6-7 (the proposal was that the applicant be required to supply "documentary and other evidence to prove that the conditions laid down in the following articles have been fulfilled").

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

12. Commentators have confirmed the understanding that, in order to have an award recognized and enforced, an applicant is only required to supply the documents listed under article IV.[464]

C. Whether applicants can supply some, but not all, article IV documents

13. Article IV requires that the applicant "shall [...] supply" the documents specified therein. The issue has arisen before courts whether an applicant must strictly comply with article IV or whether a more flexible approach could be applied.

a. Documents specified under article IV (1)

14. Reported case law shows that some courts have insisted that the applicant provide all documents in the form prescribed by article IV (1), whereas others have granted recognition and enforcement of an award despite the fact that the applicant had not provided the duly authenticated award or the original arbitration agreement (or duly certified copies thereof).

15. In some cases, courts have denied enforcement due to the applicant's failure to provide one or both of the documents as required under article IV (1). For example, Italian courts have denied requests for recognition and enforcement on the ground that the applicant had not submitted a duly authenticated award or a certified arbitration agreement.[465] Similarly, the Spanish Supreme Court has denied enforcement where the applicant failed to provide the documents listed under article IV. In one case, enforcement was not granted because the applicant had failed to provide the arbitration agreement referred to under article IV (1)*(b)* of the Convention.[466] In another, the court denied enforcement because, contrary to the requirements of article IV, the applicant supplied uncertified and

[464]See Emilia Onyema, *Formalities on the Enforcement Procedure (Articles III and IV)*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 597, 605 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Dirk Otto, *Article IV*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 143, 148 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 248 (1981).

[465]*Jassica S.A. v. Ditta Polojaz*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 12 February 1987, 1526, XVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 525 (1992). See also *Israel Portland Cement Works (Nesher) Ltd. v. Moccia Irme SpA*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 19 December 1991, 13665, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 419 (1993); *Globtrade Italiana srl v. East Point Trading Ltd.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 8 October 2008, 24856

[466]*Glencore Grain Limited (United Kingdom) v. Sociedad Ibérica de Molturación, S.A. (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Spain, 14 January 2003, 16508/2003, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 605 (2005).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

non-authenticated copies of the awards and also failed to provide the arbitration agreement.[467] Both Chinese[468] and United States[469] courts have also denied enforcement in circumstances where a party had failed to provide a document as required under article IV.

16. Swiss courts have adopted a more flexible approach and, in cases where the applicant had failed to show that the relevant document was duly authenticated or duly certified, have held that enforcement should be granted if the party opposing recognition and enforcement does not dispute the authenticity of that document.[470] In a different case before the Commercial Court in Zurich, the court granted enforcement, despite the fact that the applicant had submitted a non-certified photocopy of the award.[471] The court held that too strict a standard should not be applied to the formal requirement for the submission of documents when the conditions for recognition are undisputed and are beyond doubt.

17. Other courts have granted enforcement despite the fact that the applicant had not provided the original arbitration agreement (or a duly certified copy thereof). To do so, German courts have often relied on the more-favourable-right principle set out in article VII (1),[472] holding that it is not necessary that the applicant supply the arbitration agreement under article IV (1)*(b)*, because domestic German law does not so require.

b. Documents specified under article IV (2)

18. Courts have sometimes taken a flexible approach in relation to the article IV (2) requirement that the applicant provide a translation of the documents referred to under article IV (1). For example, Dutch courts have deemed

[467] *Satico Shipping Company Limited (Cyprus) v. Maderas Iglesias (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Civil Chamber, Spain, 1 April 2003, 2009 of 2001, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 582 (2007).

[468] *Hanjin Shipping Co., Ltd. v. Guangdong Fuhong Oil Co., Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 2 June 2006, [2005] Min Si Ta Zi No. 53; *Concordia Trading B.V. v. Nantong Gangde Oil Co., Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 3 August 2009, [2009] Min Si Ta Zi No. 22.

[469] See *Czarina, L.L.C. v. W.F. Poe Syndicate*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 4 February 2004, 358 F.3d 1286; *Guang Dong Light Headgear Factory Co. v. ACI Int'l, Inc*, District Court, District of Kansas, United States of America, 10 May 2005, 03-4165-JAR.

[470] Commercial Court of Zurich, Switzerland, 20 April 1990, 21, XVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 584 (1992); *Inter Maritime Management S.A. v. Russin & Vecchi*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 9 January 1995, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 789 (1997); Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 4 October 2010, 4A_124/2010; Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 10 October 2011, 5A_427/2011.

[471] Commercial Court of Zurich, Switzerland, 20 April 1990, 21, XVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 584 (1992).

[472] See Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht [BayObLG], Germany, 11 August 2000, 4 Z Sch 05/00; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 15 March 2006, 34 Sch 06/05; Kammergericht [KG], Germany, 10 August 2006, 20 Sch 07/04; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 14 December 2006, 8 Sch 14/05; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 23 February 2007, 34 Sch 31/06. For a more detailed discussion on the interaction of articles IV and VII, see the chapter of the Guide on article VII, paras. 36-38.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

translations to be unnecessary where the relevant documents were drawn up in languages that they understand.[473] In a case before the District Court of Amsterdam, the applicant provided certified copies of the award and the arbitral agreement, both of which were in English, but failed to supply Dutch translations.[474] Noting that it mastered the English language sufficiently, the court did not require translations to be submitted and concluded that the article IV requirements were met.[475]

19. A Norwegian court also held that, in light of the fact that it had sufficient command of the language in which the award was drafted, there was no need for a translation thereof to be submitted.[476]

20. As in the case of documents required under article IV (1), German courts have relied on article VII (1) of the Convention and held that an applicant need not provide a translation for its request to be deemed admissible.[477] Similarly, they have held that when translations are provided, they are not subject to the certification requirements of article IV (2).[478]

D. "[A]t the time of the application"

21. Article IV expressly provides that the applicant shall supply the documents listed thereunder "at the time of the application". The question has arisen whether, where an applicant has failed to submit the requisite documents at the time of application, it can do so at a later stage in the enforcement proceedings.

22. Italian courts have held that failure to provide the requisite documents listed under article IV at the very moment when the application is made would lead to

[473] *China Packaging Design Corporation v. SCA Recycling Reukema Trading B.V.*, Court of First Instance of Zutphen, Netherlands, 11 November 1998, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 724 (1999). See also *LoJack Equipment Ireland Ltd. (Ireland) v. A*, Commercial Court of Amsterdam, Netherlands, 18 June 2009, 411230/KG RK 08-3652, XXXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 715 (2009).

[474] *China Packaging Design Corporation v. SCA Recycling Reukema Trading B.V.*, Court of First Instance of Zutphen, Netherlands, 11 November 1998, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 724 (1999).

[475] *SPP (Middle East) Ltd. v. The Arab Republic of Egypt*, President of the District Court of Amsterdam, Netherlands, 12 July 1984, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 487 (1985).

[476] *Pulsarr Industrial Research B.V. (Netherlands) v. Nils H. Nilsen A.S. (Norway)*, Enforcement Court of Vardø, Norway, 10 July 2002, XXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 821 (2003).

[477] Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht [BayObLG], Germany, 11 August 2000, 4 Z Sch 05/00; *K Trading Company (Syria) v. Bayerischen Motoren Werke AG (Germany)*, Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht [BayObLG], Germany, 23 September 2004, 4Z Sch 005-04; Kammergericht [KG], Germany, 10 August 2006, 20 Sch 07/04.

[478] Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Schleswig, Germany, 15 July 2003, 16 Sch 01/03; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 25 September 2003, III ZB 68/02.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

a rejection of the application for recognition and enforcement.[479] The approach of Italian courts appears to stem from their consideration of the production of the arbitral award and the arbitration agreement as a procedural prerequisite for the commencement of the enforcement proceedings.[480] At the same time, the Italian Court of Cassation has clarified that the rejection of an application for failure to produce the requisite documents does not affect the merits of the enforcement request and, therefore, does not prevent a subsequent application to be made *de novo*.[481]

23. Most other courts have held that an applicant could provide the requisite documents in the course of the enforcement proceedings. For example, in a case before the Chinese courts, the Supreme People's Court reversed a ruling of the Shanxi Province High Court denying enforcement because the applicant had failed to provide a certified copy of the arbitration agreement.[482] The Supreme People's Court found that the application should not be rejected on the sole ground that the submitted materials were incomplete and that such incompleteness should not be a basis for refusal to recognize and enforce the arbitral award. It held that, rather, in such circumstances, the applicant should be ordered to supplement the outstanding materials within a reasonable period.

24. Courts in Switzerland,[483] the United States[484] and India[485] have also taken this approach and have generally granted enforcement of an award where the relevant document had not been supplied with the application, but was ultimately produced in the course of the proceedings.

[479]See *Lezina Shipping Co. S.A. v. Casillo Grani snc*, Court of Appeal of Bari, Italy, 19 March 1991, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 585 (1996); *Israel Portland Cement Works (Nesher) Ltd. v. Moccia Irme SpA*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 19 December 1991, 13665, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 419 (1993); *s.r.l. Ditta Michele Tavella v. Palmco Oil Mill L.D.N. B.M.D.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 12 November 1992, 12187, XIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 692 (1994); *srl Campomarzio Impianti v. Lampart Vegypary Gepgyar*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 20 September 1995, 9980, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 698 (1999); *Microware s.r.l. in liquidation v. Indicia Diagnostics S.A.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 23 July 2009, 17291.

[480]*Lezina Shipping Co. S.A. v. Casillo Grani snc*, Court of Appeal of Bari, Italy, 19 March 1991, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 585 (1996).

[481]*s.r.l. Campomarzio Impianti v. Lampart Vegypary Gepgyar*, Court of Cassation, 20 September 1995, Italy, 9980, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 698 (1999) (overruling *Israel Portland Cement Works (Nesher) Ltd. v. Moccia Irme SpA*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 19 December 1991, 13665, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 419 (1993)).

[482]*Wei Mao International (Hong Kong) Co. Ltd. (Hong Kong SAR) v. Shanxi Tianli Industrial Co. Ltd. (China PR)*, Supreme People's Court, China, 5 July 2004.

[483]Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 8 December 2003, 4P.173/2003/ech.

[484]*China National Building Material Investment Co. Ltd. v. BNK International*, District Court, Western District of Texas, Austin Division, United States of America, 3 December 2009, A-09-CA-488-SS.

[485]*Renusagar Power Company v. General Electric Company*, High Court of Bombay, India, 12 October 1989.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Article IV (1)*(a)*

25. Article IV (1)*(a)* requires the applicant to produce "[t]he duly authenticated original award or a duly certified copy thereof" in order to obtain recognition and enforcement of an award.

26. Reported case law on article IV (1)*(a)* addresses principally issues related to the form and content in which the award[486] is supplied by the applicant and the processes of authentication and certification.

A. The requirement that the applicant provide the "award"

a. The content of the award

27. Article IV does not set out any specific requirements as to what must be contained in an award in order for it to be deemed appropriate for recognition and enforcement. Several elements of this kind have been considered by courts.

28. The entirety of the award. In an *obiter dictum*, an Austrian court has stated that the term "award" under article IV refers to the entirety of the award, including the introduction, *dictum* and reasons for the decision.[487]

29. *The names of the parties*. In one case, the Supreme Court of New South Wales held that the names of the parties must appear on the award. In that case, the party opposing enforcement argued that the name used for the respondent in the award was not its name. The court examined the award and ascertained that the award did refer to the party opposing enforcement, albeit using an incorrect name.[488]

30. One commentator has argued that the names of the parties should be present in the award supplied by the applicant in order for the award to be enforceable.[489]

---

[486]The question of what constitutes an award is dealt with above, and will not be discussed here.

[487]*D S.A. (Spain) v. W GmbH (Austria)*, Supreme Court, Austria, 26 April 2006, 3Ob211/05h, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 259 (2007).

[488]*LKT Industrial Berhad (Malaysia) v. Chun*, Supreme Court of New South Wales, Australia, 13 September 2004, 50174.

[489]Dirk Otto, *Article IV*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 143, 154 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

31. *The names and signatures of the arbitrators*. There has been more debate among courts as to whether the award supplied by an applicant must contain the names and signatures of all arbitrators and whether the signatures of all arbitrators must be authenticated.

32. In past decisions, two courts—in two different contexts—have required that the award produced bear the (authenticated) signatures of the three arbitrators. Thus, in the first case, an Italian court had held that the signatures of all arbitrators must be authenticated on the copy provided by the applicant.[490] In that case, the applicant sought enforcement of an award rendered in London. The court denied enforcement of the award, having found that only two of the three arbitrators' signatures were authenticated. The court noted that, while under English law the authentication of two signatures would have sufficed for the award to be considered authentic, under Italian law—which the enforcing court deemed to govern the authentication—all signatures needed to be authenticated. Thus, the court's ruling is not founded on article IV, but rather stems from its application of Italian law.

33. In the second case, a German court denied an application for the enforcement of an award rendered pursuant to the Copenhagen Arbitration Committee for Grain and Feedstuff Trade, *inter alia*, on the ground that the copy of the award presented by the applicant did not contain the names of the arbitrators.[491] The court noted that, under the Rules of the Copenhagen Arbitration Committee for Grain and Feedstuff Trade in force at the time, the parties to an arbitration are provided an extract of the award which does not contain the names of the arbitrators other than the president of the Committee. The court held that this did not alter the fact that, under article IV, a copy of an award must fully reflect the original award, including the names and signatures of the arbitrators.

34. On the other hand, in a 2010 decision, the Swiss Federal Tribunal granted enforcement despite the fact that one or more signatures were not present on the award provided by the applicant. The court rejected the argument of the party opposing enforcement that the applicant had failed to satisfy the conditions of article IV because it had produced an award signed only by the chairman of the arbitral tribunal. The court held that the form requirements under article IV were not to be interpreted restrictively since the purpose of the Convention was to facilitate the enforcement of arbitral awards.[492]

[490] *SODIME—Società Distillerie Meridionali v. Schuurmans & Van Ginneken BV*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 14 March 1995, 2919, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 607 (1996).

[491] Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Köln, Germany, 10 June 1976, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 258 (1979).

[492] Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 4 October 2010, 4A_124/2010. The Austrian Supreme Court has held that an award signed by a majority of arbitrators can be recognized as long as there is an explanation as to why an arbitrator has not signed the award. See Supreme Court, Austria, 13 April 2011, 3 Ob 154/10h.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

b. The form of the award

(i) Partial awards

35. In two cases before the Italian courts, an issue arose whether, in addition to supplying the final award on damages, the applicant should have provided the partial award on liability in order to obtain recognition and enforcement.

36. In the first, the Court of Appeal of Bologna denied enforcement after finding that, in the circumstances of that case, the final award was inseparable from the partial award. The court reasoned that the latter was necessary as the former did not ascertain liability nor did it order the party against whom enforcement was sought to make any payment.[493]

37. In the second, the Court of Cassation reversed the decision of the lower court rejecting a request for enforcement on the ground that the applicant had failed to provide a copy of the partial award together with the final award.[494] The Court of Cassation held that once the applicant supplied the final award, it satisfied the requirements of article IV, and that the lower court should rather have analysed whether the enforcement of the final award separately from the partial award could fall within one of the exhaustively listed grounds for refusing enforcement under article V (1) or article V (2).

(ii) Dissenting opinions

38. Courts have consistently held that the applicant satisfies the requirements of article IV even if it has not provided the dissenting opinion in cases where such dissenting opinion exists.[495]

39. The Austrian Supreme Court considered an argument from the party opposing enforcement that, in order to obtain recognition and enforcement of an award under the auspices of the ICC International Court of Arbitration, the applicant was obligated to also supply the dissenting opinion of one of the arbitrators. In dismissing the argument, the court held that a dissenting opinion was a separate document from the award, which is not approved by the International Court of

[493]Court of Appeal of Bologna, Italy, 4 February 1993, XIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 700 (1994).

[494]*WTB—Walter Thosti Boswau Bauaktiengesellschaft v. Costruire Coop. srl*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 7 June 1995, 6426.

[495]Unless the applicable arbitration rules provide otherwise, a dissenting opinion does not form part of the award. See Fouchard Gaillard goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 768, para. 1404 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Arbitration of the ICC and that there was no obligation to supply the dissenting opinion, since it was not part of the arbitral award.[496]

40. The High Court of Bombay has also held that the applicant need not provide the "minority opinion".[497] The party opposing enforcement argued that the applicant had failed to comply with section 8(1)*(a)* of the Indian Foreign Awards Act of 1961 (like article IV, requiring that the petitioner produce the original award or a copy thereof) because it had failed to supply the minority opinion prepared by one of the arbitrators. The court rejected the submission, noting that, in accordance with the ICC arbitration rules in force at the time, the award was to be declared by a majority opinion and, therefore, what was enforceable was solely the majority award.[498]

(iii) Merger of a judgment and an award

41. A Swiss court has considered whether a judgment of a United States court confirming an award could be sufficient basis for enforcement.[499] The Camera di Esecuzione e Fallimenti del Tribunale d'Appello (Debt Collection and Bankruptcy Chamber of the Court of Appeal) held that an enforcement decision could not be issued based on the judgment of the United States court. It acknowledged that under the "doctrine of merger" applicable in the United States, a court could confirm an award rendered in the United States with the effect that the judgment of the United States court and the award become one and the same. It then held that Swiss law did not have the doctrine of merger and under Swiss law, enforcement had to be based on an enforceable award. The Court of Appeal also observed that the award creditor had not complied with the requirements of article IV as it had not provided the original arbitration agreement and a duly certified copy of the award.

B. Authentication and certification

42. Neither the text of article IV nor the *travaux préparatoires* of the provision provide a definition of the terms "authenticated" and "certified".

[496] *D S.A. (Spain) v. W GmbH (Austria)*, Supreme Court, Austria, 26 April 2006, 3Ob211/05h, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 259 (2007).

[497] The High Court of Bombay appears to have used the terms "minority opinion" and "minority award" interchangeably, whereas it did not use the term "dissenting opinion".

[498] *General Electric Company v. Renusagar Power Company*, High Court of Bombay, India,21 October 1988

[499] Debt Collection and Bankruptcy Chamber of the Court of Appeal of the Republic and Canton of Ticino, Switzerland, 27 November 2008, 14.2008.78.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

43. There is very little case law in which an express definition of the terms "authenticated" and "certified" is discussed. An Austrian court has held that authentication means confirmation that the signatures of the arbitrators are authentic.[500] The same court has held that certification is the process by which a copy of a document is attested to be a true copy of the original document.[501]

44. Commentators are in agreement that the process of authentication entails a confirmation of the authenticity of the arbitrators' signatures and that certification is a confirmation that the document provided is a true copy of the original.[502]

45. Under the rubric of article IV (1)*(a)*, courts have dealt with a number of issues, including, principally, the law governing the process of authentication and/or certification, the authority competent to perform the authentication and/or certification, and whether certification must be done of an authenticated award.

a. Governing law

46. While the 1927 Geneva Convention required that the authentication of an award be done in accordance with the law of the country in which the award was made,[503] article IV (1)*(a)* does not provide the law governing authentication and certification. During the drafting of the New York Convention, the ECOSOC *ad hoc* Committee considered that a different approach should be taken in the New York Convention. The Committee explained that "it was preferable to allow greater latitude with regard to this question to the tribunal of the country in which the recognition or enforcement was being requested".[504] It considered that the term "duly authenticated" allows such an approach.[505] At the same time, some delegates did not consider that the terms "duly authenticated" and "duly certified" made it

[500] *O Limited (Cyprus) v. M Corp. (formerly A, Inc.) (United States) and others*, Supreme Court, Austria, 3 September 2008, 3Ob35/08f, XXXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 409 (2009).

[501] *Ibid.*, See also *Glencore Grain Ltd. v. TSS Grain Millers Ltd.*, High Court of Mombasa, Kenya, 5 July 2002, Civil Suit No. 388 of 2000, XXXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 666 (2009); Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 4 October 2010, 4A_124/2010.

[502] See Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 970, para. 1675 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Albert Jan van den Berg, the New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 251 (1981); Dirk Otto, *Article IV*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 143, 177 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); ICCA's Guide to the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention: A Handbook for Judges 72, 74 (P. Sanders ed., 2011); Maxi Scherer, *Article IV (Formal Requirements for the Recognition and Enforcement of Arbitral Awards)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 207, 210 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[503] See article 4(1) of the 1927 Geneva Convention.

[504] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, E/2704, E/AC.42/4/Rev.1, p. 14.

[505] *Ibid.*

sufficiently clear that the enforcing court was given wide discretion.[506] The final text of the Convention maintained the wording "duly authenticated" and "duly certified" and no applicable law was specified.

47. The lack of a stipulated governing law on authentication and certification has enabled courts to adopt varying approaches. Some courts have considered that the law of the State in which the award was made ought to be applied to the process of authentication, whereas others have emphasized the fact that authentications carried out in accordance with either the law of the enforcing State or the law of the State in which the award was made would be compliant with article IV (1).

48. One German court has considered that, for the sake of practicality, authentication should be governed by the law of the country where enforcement is sought.[507] Similarly, Italian courts have taken the position that the applicable rules ought to be those of the enforcing State.[508]

49. Another court reasoned that the New York Convention does not specify the governing law and held that a party seeking enforcement is free to submit an award authenticated pursuant to either the law in which the award was made or the law of the country where enforcement was sought.[509] The court added that authentication by the diplomatic or consular agents of the enforcing State might help avoiding difficulties on the practical level.

50. A number of authors have taken the view that, under article IV, and consistent with the *travaux préparatoires*,[510] an applicant can comply with the

[506] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Comments by Governments on the draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/3, p. 3; *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Activities of Inter-Governmental and Non-Governmental Organizations in the Field of International Commercial Arbitration, Consolidated Report by the Secretary-General, E/CONF.26/4, p. 29.

[507] Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Schleswig, Germany, 15 July 2003, 16 Sch 01/03.

[508] See *Globtrade Italiana srl v. East Point Trading Ltd.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 8 October 2008, 24856. See *SODIME—Società Distillerie Meridionali v. Schuurmans & Van Ginneken BV*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 14 March 1995, 2919, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 607 (1996). Previously, an Italian court had taken the position that the law governing authentication should be the law of the State in which the award was made, see *Renato Marino Navegacio s.a. v. Chim-Metal s.r.l*, Court of Appeal of Milan, Italy, 21 December 1979, VII Y.B. Com. Arb. 338 (1982). See also *ECONERG Ltd. v. National Electricity Company AD*, Case No. 356/99, Supreme Court of Appeal, Civil Collegium, Fifth Civil Department, Bulgaria, 23 February 1999, 356/99, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 641 (2000); *Renusagar Power Company v. General Electric Company*, High Court of Bombay, India, 12 October 1989.

[509] Supreme Court, Austria, 11 June 1969, 3, II Y.B. Com. Arb. 232 (1977).

[510] Dirk Otto, *Article IV*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 143, 145 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

authentication requirements under either the law of the country in which the award was made or the law of the country in which enforcement is sought.[511]

b. Competent authority

51. Article IV (1)*(a)* does not specify the competent authority that should perform the authentication or certification. During the drafting, a proposal that the authority competent to authenticate an award should be the consulate of the country where the award is relied upon was not adopted.[512]

52. Accordingly, courts have found various authorities to be competent to authenticate an award or certify a copy of an award.

53. In different contexts, consular officers,[513] notaries public,[514] the chairperson of the tribunal,[515] and domestic courts[516] have all been considered as authorities competent to perform an authentication.

54. Similarly, consular representatives[517] or notaries public[518] have also been considered to be authorities competent to certify a copy of an award. Some courts have found the arbitral institution under the rules of which the award was made

[511]See Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 970, para. 1675 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 252-54 (1981); Dirk Otto, *Article IV*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 143, 178-79 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Maxi Scherer, *Article IV (Formal Requirements for the Recognition and Enforcement of Arbitral Awards)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 207, 212 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[512]*Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Seventeenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.17, p. 7.

[513]*Guang Dong Light Headgear Factory Co. v. ACI Int'l, Inc*, District Court, District of Kansas, United States of America, 10 May 2005, 03-4165-JAR; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 16 December 2010, III ZB 100/09.

[514]Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Rostock, Germany, 28 October 1999; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 16 December 2010, III ZB 100/09.

[515]*Inter-Arab Investment Guarantee Corporation v. Banque Arabe et Internationale d'Investissements*, Court of Appeal of Brussels, Belgium, 24 January 1997, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 643 (1997).

[516]*ECONERG Ltd. v. National Electricity Company AD*, Case No. 356/99, Supreme Court of Appeal, Civil Collegium, Fifth Civil Department, Bulgaria, 23 February 1999, 356/99, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 641 (2000).

[517]*Guang Dong Light Headgear Factory Co. v. ACI Int'l, Inc*, District Court, District of Kansas, United States of America, 10 May 2005, 03-4165-JAR; *Presse Office S.A. v. Centro Editorial*, Supreme Court of Justice, Mexico, 24 February 1977, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 301 (1979); Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht [BayObLG], Germany, 23 September 2004, 4Z Sch 005-04.

[518]*Transpac Capital Pte Limited v. Buntoro*, Supreme Court of New South Wales, Common Law Division, Australia, 7 July 2008, 2008/11373; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Rostock, Germany, 28 October 1999; *Trans-Pacific Shipping Co. v. Atlantic & Orient Shipping Corporation (BVI)*, Federal Court, Canada, 27 April 2005, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 601 (2006).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

to be competent to certify awards.[519] Members of the arbitral tribunal[520] or its chairperson,[521] as well as attorneys[522] have also been considered as authorities competent to perform a certification of an award.

55. A Canadian court has held that, in the circumstances of that case, a private individual was competent to certify the copy of the award.[523] The holder of the original award—a private individual—had provided an affidavit that the copy provided to the court was an accurate one. Having noted that the party opposing enforcement did not challenge the accuracy or authenticity of the copy but rather merely objected to the attestation, the court accepted the affidavit as sufficient proof that the copy of the award was an accurate copy.

56. Other courts have found that the applicant had not shown that the person who authenticated or certified the copy of the award could, under the circumstances, be deemed competent to do so under the relevant applicable law.[524]

c. Whether certification must be of an authenticated original award

57. Article IV (1)*(a)* requires the applicant to provide either "the duly authenticated original award" or "a duly certified copy thereof". The question has arisen

[519] *Continental Grain Company, et al. v. Foremost Farms Incorporated, et al.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 23 March 1998, 98 Civ. 0848 (DC), XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 641 (2000); Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamburg, Germany, 27 July 1978, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 266 (1979); Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 16 December 2010, III ZB 100/09.

[520] See, e.g., *Bergesen v. Joseph Müller Corp*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 17 June 1983, 710 F.2d 928, IX Y.B. Com. Arb. 487 (1984) (even though here the chairman of the tribunal certified the award, the decision does not exclude the possibility that the other members of the tribunal could do the same: "copies of award and the agreement which have been certified by a member of the arbitration panel provide a sufficient basis upon which to enforce the award").

[521] *Bergesen v. Joseph Müller Corp*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 17 June 1983, 710 F.2d 928, IX Y.B. Com. Arb. 487 (1984); *Inter-Arab Investment Guarantee Corporation v. Banque Arabe et Internationale d'Investissements*, Court of Appeal of Brussels, Belgium, 24 January 1997, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 643 (1997).

[522] *Overseas Cosmos, Inc. v. NR Vessel Corp.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 8 December 1997, 97 Civ. 5898 (DC), XXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 1096 (1998). The Court previously noted that the genuineness of the arbitration award was not in dispute. See also *Guangdong v. Chiu Shing Trading*, High Court, Supreme Court of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, 23 August 1991, Miscellaneous proceedings No. 1625 of 1991.

[523] *Trans-Pacific Shipping Co. v. Atlantic & Orient Shipping Corporation (BVI)*, Federal Court, Canada, 27 April 2005, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 601 (2006).

[524] *Glencore Grain Ltd. v. TSS Grain Millers Ltd.*, High Court of Mombasa, Kenya 5 July 2002, Civil Suit No. 388 of 2000, XXXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 666 (2009) (finding that the applicant had not proven that the Director General of the institution that rendered the award had the authority to authenticate awards); *O Limited (Cyprus) v. M Corp. (formerly A, Inc.) (United States) and others*, Supreme Court, Austria, 3 September 2008, 3Ob35/08f, XXXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 409 (2009) (finding that "it cannot be deduced from the LCIA Arbitration Rules that [they] provide that certifications are to be issued by a secretary"); *ECONERG Ltd. v. National Electricity Company AD*, Supreme Court of Appeal, Civil Collegium, Fifth Civil Department, Bulgaria, 23 February 1999, 356/99, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 641 (2000) (finding that the award was authenticated neither by the competent authority under the law applicable to the arbitration agreement nor under the law of the enforcing court).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

whether, when supplying a certified copy of an award, that copy must be of a previously authenticated copy or whether a certified copy of the award, without authentication of the signatures of the arbitrators, would suffice. The drafting history of article IV shows that, for a large part of the negotiations, the text of article IV (1)(a) required the applicant to provide either the original award or a certified copy thereof, without there being any requirement for authentication.[525] The authentication prerequisite was added at a later stage.[526] In other words, the certification requirement had been inserted by the drafters independently from the authentication requirement.

58. Reported case law on this point is scarce, with two courts having taken different approaches.

59. One court has held that when an applicant supplies certified copies of the award, the arbitrators' signatures on the award must be previously authenticated.[527]

60. Conversely, another court has held that in cases where the authenticity of the original award is not disputed, a certified copy of an award which was not previously authenticated would meet the requirements of article IV (1)*(a)*.[528]

61. Commentators have argued that requiring certification to be done on an authenticated award would not accord with the spirit of article IV which, they contend, is to eliminate unnecessary formalism.[529]

Article IV (1)*(b)*

62. Article IV (1)*(b)* provides that, in order to obtain recognition and enforcement, an applicant must also submit to the enforcing court "the original agreement referred to in article II or a duly certified copy thereof". In this context, courts have often considered whether an arbitration agreement provided by the applicant is in

[525] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Working Party No. 3, Consideration of the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards (Item 4 of the Agenda), E/CONF.26/L.43, p. 1.

[526] *Travaux préparatoires*, Summary Records of the Seventeenth Meeting of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, E/CONF.26/SR.17, p. 7.

[527] *O Limited (Cyprus) v. M Corp. (formerly A, Inc.) (United States) and others*, Supreme Court, Austria, 3 September 2008, 3Ob35/08f, XXXIV Y.B. COM. ARB. 409 (2009).

[528] Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 22 February 2001, III ZB 71/99; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Rostock, Germany, 28 October 1999.

[529] Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 256-57 (1981); Maxi Scherer, *Article IV (Formal Requirements for the Recognition and Enforcement of Arbitral Awards)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 207, 215 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

conformity with the requirements of article II. This has been examined in detail in the chapter of the Guide on article II and will not be discussed here anew.

A. The requirement that the applicant provide the arbitration agreement "referred to in article II"

63. Article IV (1)*(b)* requires the applicant to supply "the original agreement referred to in article II". Accordingly, courts have often considered issues arising out of article II in conjunction with article IV (1)*(b)*, in particular, issues of proof required to meet the requirements of "the original agreement referred to in article II".

64. Courts have found that the applicant bears the burden of supplying documentary evidence that constitutes an "agreement in writing" under article II (2). For example, the Swiss Federal Tribunal has held that, under article IV (1)*(b)*, the burden is upon the applicant to provide an arbitration agreement which meets the requirements of form under article II of the Convention.[530] Likewise, the Spanish courts have held that the applicant bears the burden of proving that the conditions of article IV (1)*(b)* are met, *inter alia*, by supplying an arbitration agreement "in the form established by Art. IV (1)*(b)* together with Art. II".[531] The United States Court of Appeals for the Eleventh Circuit has also held that the applicant is required to "meet Article II's agreement-in-writing requirement".[532]

65. Courts have further clarified that, for the purposes of article IV (1)*(b)*, the applicant need only provide *prima facie* proof of an arbitration agreement.[533] For instance, the Court of Appeal of England and Wales has held that an applicant can produce "terms in writing, containing an arbitration clause" or a "record" of an arbitration agreement made in writing, explaining that "all that is probably required at the first stage [...] is apparently valid documentation containing an arbitration

[530] Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 31 May 2002, 4P.102/2001.

[531] *Glencore Grain Limited (United Kingdom) v. Sociedad Ibérica de Molturación, S.A. (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Spain, 14 January 2003, 16508/2003, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 605 (2005). See also *Shaanxi Provincial Medical Health Products I/E Corporation (PR China) v. Olpesa, S.A. (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Spain, 7 October 2003, 112/2002, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 617 (2005); *Satico Shipping Company Limited (Cyprus) v. Maderas Iglesias (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Civil Chamber, Plenary Session, Spain, 1 April 2003, 2009 of 2001, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 582 (2007).

[532] *Czarina, L.L.C. v. W.F. Poe Syndicate*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 4 February 2004, 358 F.3d 1286. See also *Guang Dong Light Headgear Factory Co. v. ACI Int'l, Inc*, District Court, District of Kansas, United States of America, 10 May 2005, 03-4165-JAR.

[533] *Aloe Vera of America, Inc (United States) v. Asianic Food (S) Pte Ltd. (Singapore) and Another*, Supreme Court of Singapore, High Court, Singapore, 10 May 2006, OS 762/2004, RA 327/2005, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 489 (2007) (the Court held that at this stage the "examination [...] is a formalistic one and not a substantive one"); *Seller v. Buyer*, Supreme Court, Austria, 22 May 1991, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 521 (1996); *Denmark Skibstekniske Konsulenter A/S I Likvidation (formerly known as Knud E Hansen A/S) v. Ultrapolis 3000 Investments Ltd. (formerly known as Ultrapolis 3000 Theme Park Investments Ltd.)*, High Court, Singapore, 9 April 2010, 108, 2010 S.L.R. 661.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

claus[e]".[534] Similarly, the High Court in Singapore ruled that "a document produced to a court in accordance with [the Section of the Singaporean International Arbitration Act transposing article IV (1)*(b)* of the Convention] shall, upon mere production be received by the court as *prima facie* evidence of the matters to which it relates".[535]

66. As discussed above and elsewhere in this Guide,[536] German courts have often relied on the more-favourable-right principle under article VII (1) to hold that it is not necessary for an applicant to supply the arbitration agreement at all.[537]

67. Commentators have also taken the view that, under article IV (1)*(b)*, an applicant need only provide *prima facie* proof that the arbitration agreement conforms to the formal requirements of article II.[538]

B. No requirement to prove the validity of the arbitration agreement

68. Closely related to the issue of whether or not an applicant must establish that the arbitration agreement which it has supplied meets the requirements of an "agreement in writing" is the question of whether, under article IV, an applicant must show that the arbitration agreement is valid.

69. Enforcing courts are in agreement that, under article IV (1)*(b)*, an applicant need not prove the validity of an arbitration agreement and that it is for the party opposing enforcement to raise this issue under article V.[539]

70. For example, the Court of Appeal of England and Wales held that, once an applicant provides an arbitration agreement that meets the requirements of article IV (1)*(b)*, the burden shifts onto the defendant to prove that the arbitration

[534] *Yukos Oil Co. v. Dardana Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 18 April 2002, [2002] EWCA Civ 543.

[535] *Denmark Skibstekniske Konsulenter A/S I Likvidation (formerly known as Knud E Hansen A/S) v. Ultrapolis 3000 Investments Ltd. (formerly known as Ultrapolis 3000 Theme Park Investments Ltd.)*, High Court, Singapore, 9 April 2010, 108, 2010 S.L.R. 661.

[536] See the chapter of the Guide on article IV, para. 17, and the chapter on article VII, paras. 36-38.

[537] See also Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht [BayObLG], Germany, 11 August 2000, 4 Z Sch 05/00; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 15 March 2006, 34 Sch 06/05; Kammergericht [KG], Germany, 10 August 2006, 20 Sch 07/04; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 14 December 2006, 8 Sch 14/05; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 23 February 2007, 34 Sch 31/06.

[538] ICCA's Guide to the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention: A Handbook for Judges 75 (P. Sanders ed., 2011).

[539] For a more detailed discussion on the burden of proof under article V, see the chapter of the Guide on the introduction to article V, paras. 13-16 and the chapter on article V (1)*(a)*, paras. 43-47.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

agreement is not valid under article V (1)*(a)*.[540] The Court of Appeal of Bermuda also held that an applicant is required to only provide the arbitration agreement, with the party opposing enforcement bearing the burden of making out a case with respect to the validity of the agreement.[541]

71. The same approach has been applied by courts in other jurisdictions, including Italy,[542] Spain[543] and Austria.[544]

72. The above approach finds support in the *travaux préparatoires* of article IV (1)*(b)*[545] and in commentary.[546]

C. No requirement to authenticate the arbitration agreement

73. While article IV (1)*(a)* requires the applicant to supply an authenticated copy of the award (or a certified copy), article IV (1)*(b)* does not mandate authentication of the arbitration agreement.

[540] *Yukos Oil Co. v. Dardana Ltd*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 18 April 2002, [2002] EWCA Civ 543. The approach in *Dardana* was followed by the High Court of Justice of England and Wales in *Dallah v. Pakistan* and by the High Court of Singapore in *Ultrapolis*. See *Dallah Real Estate and Tourism Holding Company v. Ministry of Religious Affairs, Government of Pakistan*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 1 August 2008, [2008] EWHC 1901, Annex 6; *Denmark Skibstekniske Konsulenter A/S I Likvidation (formerly known as Knud E Hansen A/S) v. Ultrapolis 3000 Investments Ltd. (formerly known as Ultrapolis 3000 Theme Park Investments Ltd.)*, High Court, Singapore, 9 April 2010, 108, 2010 S.L.R. 661.

[541] *Sojuznefteexport (SNE) v. Joc Oil Ltd.*, Court of Appeal of Bermuda, Bermuda, 7 July 1989, XV Y.B. Com. Arb. 384 (1990).

[542] *Jassica S.A. v. Ditta Polojaz*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 12 February 1987, 1526, XVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 525 (1992).

[543] *Union Générale de Cinéma, SA (France) v. X Y Z Desarrollos, S.A. (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Civil Chamber, Spain, 11 April 2000, 3536 of 1998, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 525 (2007); *Strategic Bulk Carriers Inc. (Liberia) v. Sociedad Ibérica de Molturación, S.A. (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Civil Chamber, Spain, 26 February 2002, 153 of 2001, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 550 (2007).

[544] *Seller v. Buyer*, Supreme Court, Austria, 22 May 1991, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 521 (1996).

[545] The delegate of the ICC at the Conference stated that "when there was a prima facie proof that the parties had agreed to submit their dispute to arbitration, it should be for the defendant to prove that the contrary was the case". *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Eleventh Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.11, p. 12.

[546] Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 968, para. 1673 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); ICCA's Guide to the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention: A Handbook for Judges 75 (P. Sanders ed., 2011); Dirk Otto, *Article IV*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 143, 167 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

74. During the drafting of article IV, the Belgian delegate proposed that the arbitration agreement be authenticated as well.[547] This was opposed by the French delegate who considered that the production of the arbitration agreement should not be subject to excessive requirements, particularly in light of the fact that many arbitrations were based on arbitral clauses agreed to in an exchange of correspondence.[548] The final text of article IV (1)*(b)* does not include an authentication requirement.

75. None of the court decisions reviewed contain any discussion on this point.

Article IV (2)

76. Article IV (2) requires the applicant to supply a translation of the award or the arbitration agreement if these are not made in an official language of the country in which recognition and enforcement is sought. The translations are to be provided in addition to the original documents and not in lieu thereof.[549] Article IV (2) further provides that such translations are to be certified by an official or sworn translator or a diplomatic or consular agent.

77. Under the rubric of article IV (2), enforcing courts have examined issues related to the law governing translation, the authorities competent to perform the translation, and the object of translation.

A. Governing law

78. Like article IV (1) which does not provide for an applicable law in relation to authentication and certification, article IV (2) does not provide for a law governing translations.

79. Very little case law exists on the issue of governing law. In one case, a Swiss court stated that the certification of the translation by a translator or a consular or diplomatic agent needed to comply with the law of the seat of the arbitration and

[547] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Seventeenth meeting of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, United Nations document E/CONF.26/SR.17, pp. 6-7.

[548] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Seventeenth meeting of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, United Nations document E/CONF.26/SR.17, p. 7.

[549] *Inter Maritime Management S.A. v. Russin & Vecchi*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 9 January 1995, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 789 (1997).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

that this law could impose less stringent certification requirements or even dispose of such requirements entirely.[550]

80. The Austrian Supreme Court has held that the applicant is free to choose from either the law of the State in which the award was made or the law of the State in which enforcement is sought.[551]

B. Certification "by an official or sworn translator or by a diplomatic or consular agent"

81. Unlike article IV (1), article IV (2) does specify the authority competent to perform the certification of the translation: an official or sworn translator or a diplomatic or consular agent.

82. Applying this requirement, a Swiss court has denied enforcement in a case where the translation was certified not by an official translator or a diplomatic or consular agent, but rather by a notary public. However, it noted that the notary had certified only the authenticity of the copy of the arbitral award used for the translation.[552] The same court also added that, generally, a translation made by a third party and certified by a notary public who is capable of understanding the language of the translation could meet the criteria of article IV (2).

83. Article IV (2) does not indicate whether the official or sworn translator or the diplomatic or consular agent must be of the State in which the award was made or of the State in which enforcement is sought. Reported case law on this point is scarce. In line with its ruling on the law governing translation,[553] the Austrian Supreme Court has noted that the applicant is free to choose from translators either from the enforcing State or from the State in which the award was made.[554] Similarly, French courts have held that applicants do not need to submit a translation from a translator featuring on the list of experts of the enforcing court.[555]

[550]Court of Appeal of the Canton of Zug, Switzerland, 27 February 1998, JZ 1997/104.161.
[551]Supreme Court, Austria, 11 June 1969, 3, II Y.B. Com. Arb. 232 (1977).
[552]Court of Appeal of the Canton of Zug, Switzerland, 27 February 1998, JZ 1997/104.161.
[553]Supreme Court, Austria, 13 April 2011, 3 Ob 154/10h.
[554]Supreme Court, Austria, 11 June 1969, 3, II Y.B. Com. Arb. 232 (1977).
[555]*S.A.R.L. Synergie v. Société SC Conect S.A.*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 18 March 2004, 2001/18372, 2001/18379, 2001/18382; *Société GFI Informatique S.A. v. Société Engineering Ingegneria Informatica S.P.A. et Société Engineering Sanita Enti Locali S.PA. (ex GFI SANITÀ S.P.A.)*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 27 November 2008, 07/11672.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

C. The object of translation

84. Article IV (2) specifies that the object of the translation is the award and the arbitration agreement. In this context, courts have dealt with the issue of whether or not an applicant would meet the requirements of article IV if it provided translations of excerpts of these documents.

85. An Austrian court held that the applicant should provide a full translation of the relevant document.[556] However, the court did not deny enforcement to the applicant, but rather, returned the case to the lower court and instructed it to afford the applicant an opportunity to provide a full translation.[557]

86. Swiss courts have taken a pragmatic approach in this regard. For example, a Zurich court accepted that the party supplying a translation of the arbitral agreement met the requirements of article IV by supplying a translation of the arbitration clause and not the entire contract.[558]

87. Moreover, the Swiss Federal Tribunal has ruled that a partial translation of an award met the requirements of article IV (2).[559] The court stated that based on a flexible, pragmatic and non-formalistic interpretation of article IV (2), the provision of only a partial translation of the arbitral award was sufficient, and that a more restrictive interpretation would run counter to the recognition and enforcement friendly spirit and objective of the Convention. It concluded that it would be too formalistic to require a translation of the full award in light of the fact that the applicant had presented the court with a translation that covered the dispositif of the award and the section on costs which was in dispute between the parties.

[556] *D S.A. (Spain) v. W GmbH (Austria)*, Supreme Court, Austria, 26 April 2006, 3Ob211/05h, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 259 (2007).

[557] *Ibid.* The same court has also explained that there is no requirement that dissenting opinions be translated given that dissenting opinions are not normally a part of the award.

[558] Court of Appeal of Zurich, Switzerland, 17 July 2003, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 819 (2004). See also *R S.A. v. A Ltd*, Court of Justice of Geneva, Switzerland, 15 April 1999.

[559] Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 2 July 2012, 5A_754/2011.

Article V

1. Recognition and enforcement of the award may be refused, at the request of the party against whom it is invoked, only if that party furnishes to the competent authority where the recognition and enforcement is sought, proof that:

(a) The parties to the agreement referred to in article II were, under the law applicable to them, under some incapacity, or the said agreement is not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of the country where the award was made; or

(b) The party against whom the award is invoked was not given proper notice of the appointment of the arbitrator or of the arbitration proceedings or was otherwise unable to present his case; or

(c) The award deals with a difference not contemplated by or not falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or it contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration, provided that, if the decisions on matters submitted to arbitration can be separated from those not so submitted, that part of the award which contains decisions on matters submitted to arbitration may be recognized and enforced; or

(d) The composition of the arbitral authority or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties, or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with the law of the country where the arbitration took place; or

(e) The award has not yet become binding on the parties, or has been set aside or suspended by a competent authority of the country in which, or under the law of which, that award was made.

2. Recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award may also be refused if the competent authority in the country where recognition and enforcement is sought finds that:

(a) The subject matter of the difference is not capable of settlement by arbitration under the law of that country; or

(b) The recognition or enforcement of the award would be contrary to the public policy of that country.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article V as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704 and Annex.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822, Annexes I-II; E/2822/Add.1; E/2822/Add.2; E/2822/Add.4; E/2822/Add.5; E/2822/Corr.1; E/2840; E/CONF.26/3; E/CONF.26/3/Add.1.
- Activities of Inter-Governmental and Non-Governmental Organizations in the Field of Intertional Commercial Arbitration: Consolidated Report by the Secretary-General: E/CONF.26/4.

Comments on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: Note by the Secretary General: E/CONF.26/2. United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.8; E/CONF.26/L.15; E/CONF.26/L.15/Rev.1; E/CONF.26/L.16; E/CONF.26/L.17; E/CONF.26/L.23; E/CONF.26/L.24; E/CONF.26/L.30; E/CONF.26/L.31; E/CONF.26/L.32; E/CONF.26/L.34; E/CONF.26/L.35.
- Comparison of Drafts Relating to Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention: E/CONF.26/L.33; E/CONF.26/L.33/Rev.1.
- Further Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.37/Rev.1; E/CONF.26/L.38; E/CONF.26/L.39; E/CONF.26/L.40.
- Text of Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention Proposed by Working Party III: E/CONF.26/L.43.
- Amendments by Governmental Delegations to the Drafts Submitted by the Working Parties and Further Suggested Drafts: E/CONF.26/L.45.
- Text of Articles Adopted by the Conference: E/CONF.26/L.48.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/L.61; E/CONF.26/8.

- New text of Articles I (3), V (1)*(a)*, *(b)*, and *(e)* Adopted by the Conference at its 23rd meeting: E/CONF.26/L.63.

Final Act and Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Second, Third, Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Seventh, Ninth, Tenth, Eleventh, Twelfth, Thirteenth, Fourteenth, Sixteenth, Seventeenth, Twentieth, Twenty-First; Twenty-Third and Twenty-Fourth Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR.2; E/CONF.26/SR.3; E/CONF.26/SR.4; E/CONF.26/SR.5; E/CONF.26/SR.6; E/CONF.26/SR.7; E/CONF.26/SR.9; E/CONF.26/SR.10; E/CONF.26/SR.11; E/CONF.26/SR.12; E/CONF.26/SR.13; E/CONF.26/SR.14;E/CONF.26/SR.16; E/CONF.26/SR.17; E/CONF.26/SR.20; E/CONF.26/SR.21; E/CONF.26/SR.23; E/CONF.26/SR.24. Summary Records of the First, Second, Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Seventh and Eighth Meetings of the Committee on Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.1; E/AC.42/SR.2; E/AC.42/SR.4; E/AC.42/SR.5; E/AC.42/SR.6; E/AC.42/SR.7; E/AC.42/SR.8.

Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards:

- Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: statement submitted by the International Chamber of Commerce, a non-governmental organization having consultative status in category A: E/C.2/373.
- Comments received from Governments regarding the Draft Convention on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/1.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Introduction

1. Article V of the New York Convention sets forth the limited and exhaustive grounds on which recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award may be refused by a competent authority in the Contracting State where recognition and enforcement is sought. Article V (1) lists the grounds for refusal that must be raised "at the request of the party against whom [the award] is invoked". Article V (2) lists the grounds on which a court may refuse enforcement of its own motion.

2. The drafters of the New York Convention sought to overcome the hurdles that an applicant had to meet under the previous regime for recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards. The 1927 Geneva Convention placed the burden on the party relying on an arbitral award to prove five cumulative conditions in order to obtain recognition and enforcement, including that the award was "final", which in practice required the party to effectively obtain two decisions of exequatur, one at the country where the award was issued, and one at the place of enforcement.[560] As a further obstacle, under the 1927 Geneva Convention a court was required to refuse recognition and enforcement if the award had been annulled in its country of origin, if the respondent had not been given proper notice or was under a legal incapacity, or if the award dealt with differences not contemplated in the parties' arbitration agreement.[561] The 1927 Geneva Convention also allowed a party opposing recognition and enforcement to raise any additional grounds for refusal available under the law governing the arbitration.[562]

3. While the first draft of article V of the New York Convention closely followed the wording of the 1927 Geneva Convention,[563] significant changes were introduced during the drafting process. The final text of article V reflects the recommendation of the Dutch delegation to eliminate the requirement of *double exequatur*, to restrict the grounds for refusal of recognition and enforcement as much as possible and to place the burden of proving such grounds on the party opposing recognition and enforcement.[564] Furthermore, while the 1927 Geneva Convention provided that recognition and enforcement "shall be refused" if one of the grounds for non-enforcement in its article II were present, the final text of

[560] Article 1 of the 1927 Geneva Convention. See the chapter of the Guide on article V (1)*(e)* of the New York Convention, paras. 2-4.

[561] Article 2 of the 1927 Geneva Convention.

[562] Article 3 of the 1927 Geneva Convention.

[563] *Travaux préparatoires*, Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, E/2704, E/AC.42/4/Rev. 1, Annex, p. 2.

[564] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Comments by Governments on the draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/3/Add.1, para. 7. See also Pieter Sanders, *The Making of the Convention*, in Enforcing Arbitration Awards under the New York Convention: Experience and Prospects (United Nations, 1999).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

article V omits any language that makes refusal to recognize and enforce mandatory.

4. As discussed in the following chapters on article V of the Guide, courts in the Contracting States have generally construed the grounds for refusal under the Convention narrowly, and have exercised their discretion to refuse recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards under the New York Convention in exceptional cases only.[565]

A. Court discretion under article V

5. The objective of the New York Convention is to facilitate the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards to the greatest extent possible and to provide a maximum level of control which Contracting States may exert over arbitral awards. In accordance with this objective, the Convention grants courts of the Contracting States the discretion to refuse to recognize and enforce an award on the grounds listed in article V, without obligating them to do so.[566]

6. In some Contracting States, courts have exercised this discretion by reference to the permissive language of the English version of the Convention (or equivalent phrasing in legislation implementing the Convention in their territory), which provides that recognition and enforcement "may be refused" if one of the grounds for refusal under article V is present.[567] Certain commentators similarly note that the wording of the official versions of the Convention, with the exception of the French version which uses the present tense, permits a court to exercise its discretion to recognize and enforce.[568]

---

[565]See, e.g., the chapters of the Guide on articles V (1)*(a)*, V (1)*(b)*, V (1)*(c)*, V (1)*(d)*, V (2)*(a)* and V (2) *(b)*.

[566]Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 265 (1981); Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 3428-33 (2014); Teresa Cheng, *Celebrating the Fiftieth Anniversary of the New York Convention*, in 50 Years of the New York Convention: ICCA International Arbitration Conference 679, 680 (A.J. van den Berg, ed., 2009).

[567]*China Agribusiness Development Corporation v. Balli Trading*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 20 January 1997, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 732 (1999); *Nigerian National Petroleum Corporation v. IPCO (Nigeria) Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 21 October 2008,[2008] EWCA Civ 1157; *Chromalloy Aeroservices v. Arab Republic of Egypt*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 31 July 1996, 94-2339; *China Nanhai Oil Joint Service Corporation Shenzhen Branch v. Gee Tai Holdings Co. Ltd.*, High Court, Supreme Court of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, 13 July 1994, 1992 No. MP 2411.

[568]Jan Paulsson, *May or Must Under the New York Convention: An Exercise in Syntax and Linguistics*, 14 Arb. Int'l 227 (1998); Gary H. Sampliner, *Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards After Annulment in their Country of Origin*, 11(9) Int'l Arb. Rep. 22, 23 (1996); Fifi Junita, *Public Policy Exception in International Commercial Arbitration—Promoting Uniform Model Norms*, 5 Contem. Asia Arb. J. 45, 59-60 (2012).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

7. As other commentators point out, the French version of the Convention is equally permissive, as reflected by the more-favourable-right provision at article VII (1), which confirms the intention of the Convention's drafters to establish a "ceiling", or maximum level of control for the enforcement of arbitral awards, leaving each State free to act less restrictively.[569] Courts in France have recognized and enforced arbitral awards based on a narrower range of grounds for refusal under French law than under article V in accordance with article VII (1).[570]

B. Exhaustive character of grounds under article V

8. The New York Convention contains an exhaustive list of the grounds upon which courts in the Contracting States may refuse recognition and enforcement. Article V (1) states that recognition and enforcement may be refused "only if" the requesting party furnishes proof that one of the enumerated grounds in that paragraph is present. Article V (2) states that recognition and enforcement "may also be refused" if the enforcing court finds that one of the two grounds listed in that paragraph is present.

9. The grounds for refusal under article V do not include an erroneous decision in law or in fact by the arbitral tribunal. A court seized with an application for recognition and enforcement under the Convention may not review the merits of the arbitral tribunal's decision. This principle is unanimously confirmed in the case law[571] and commentary[572] on the New York Convention.

10. Courts of the Contracting States have also consistently found that the Convention does not allow refusal to recognize and enforce based on procedural

[569]Emmanuel Gaillard, *Enforcement of Awards Set Aside in the Country of Origin: The French Experience*, in Improving the Efficiency of Arbitration Agreements and Awards: 40 Years of Application of the New York Convention, ICCA Congress Series No. 9, 505, 517 (1998); Thomas Clay, *La Convention de New York vue par la doctrine française*, 27 ASA Bull. 50, 54-56 (2009).

[570]See the chapters of the Guide on article V (1)*(e)*, para. 29, fn. 992 and article VII, paras. 42-44.

[571]See, e.g., *Trading company (Israel) v. Buyer (Germany)*, Oberlandesgericht, Cologne, Germany, 23 April 2004, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 557 (2005); *Kotraco, Inc. v. V/O Rosvneshtorg*, Moscow District Court, Russian Federation, 31 October 1995, XXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 735 (1998); *AB Götaverken (Sweden) v. General National Maritime Transport Company (Libya)*, Supreme Court, Sweden, 13 August 1979, VI Y.B. Com. Arb. 237 (1981); *Generica Ltd. v. Pharmaceutical Basics, Inc. et al.*, District Court, Northern District of Illinois, Illinois, United States of America, 18 September 1996, 95 C 5935, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 1029 (1997); *Xiamen Xinjindi Group Ltd. v. Eton Properties Ltd.*, High Court, Hong Kong, 14 June 2012, HCLL 13/2011.

[572]See, e.g., Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 983, para. 1693 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 3707 (2014); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 269-73 (1981); Julian D.M.Lew, Loukas A. Mistelis, Stefan M. Kröll, Comparative International Commercial Arbitration paras. 26-66 (2003); Nigel Blackaby et al., Redfern and Hunter on International Arbitration para. 11.56 (2015); Pieter Sanders, *A Twenty Years' Review of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards*, 13 Int'l Law 269 (1979); Michael Hwang and Amy Lai, *Do Egregious Errors Amount to a Breach of Public Policy?*, 71 Arbitration 1 (2005).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

grounds other than those listed in article V. For instance, a Swiss appeals court rejected a challenge to recognition and enforcement on the ground that one party was invited to participate in the arbitration in a language it did not understand shortly before the commencement of the arbitration, holding that this did not constitute one of the enumerated grounds under article V.[573] Courts in Belgium,[574] the United Kingdom,[575] Colombia,[576] Luxembourg,[577] Israel,[578] Canada,[579] Germany,[580] Hong Kong,[581] the Netherlands,[582] Italy[583] and Bermuda[584] have advanced the same position. Leading commentators on the New York Convention equally confirm that the grounds for refusal under article V are exhaustive.[585]

11. In certain early cases, courts of the United States considered that an arbitrator's manifest disregard of the law, which constitutes a ground for vacating domestic arbitral awards under the United States Federal Arbitration Act, could also constitute a ground for refusing to enforce a foreign arbitral award under the Convention.[586] In more recent cases, however, United States courts have held that the exhaustive nature of the grounds for refusal under article V bars the application of

[573] *N.Z. v. I*, Appellationsgericht, Basel-Stadt, Switzerland, 27 February 1989, XVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 581 (1992).

[574] *Inter-Arab Investment Guarantee Corp. v. Banque Arabe et Internationale d'Investissements*, Cour d'Appel, Brussels, Belgium, 25 January 1996, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 643 (1997).

[575] *Rosseel NV v. Oriental Commercial Shipping*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 16 November 1990, XVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 615 (1991).

[576] *Petrotesting Colombia S.A. v. Southeast Investment Corporation*, Corte Suprema de Justicia, Colombia, 27 July 2011; *Drummond Ltd. v. Instiuto Nacional de Concesiones*, Corte Suprema de Justicia, Colombia, 3 May 2012, XXXVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 205 (2012).

[577] *Sovereign Participations International S.A. v. Chadmore Developments Ltd.*, Cour d'Appel, Luxembourg, 28 January 1999, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 714 (1999).

[578] *Zeevi Holdings Ltd. (in receivership) (Israel) v. The Republic of Bulgaria*, District Court, Jerusalem, Israel, 13 January 2009, XXXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 632 (2009).

[579] *Abener Energia, S.A. and Sunopta Inc. v. Suopta Inc. and Abener Energia, S.A.*, Ontario Superior Court of Justice, Canada, 15 June 2009, 2009 CanLII 30678.

[580] *Parties not indicated*, Oberlandesgericht, Hamm, Germany, 2 November 1983, XIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 629 (1989).

[581] *Karaha Bodas Company LLC v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara*, Court of Final Appeal, Hong Kong, 5 December 2008, FACV 6/2008.

[582] *German Party v. Dutch Party*, President of Rechtbank, The Hague, The Netherlands, 26 April 1973, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 305 (1979).

[583] *C.G. Impianti SpA (Italy) v. B.M.A.A.B. and Sons International Contracting Company WLL (Kuwait)*, Corte di Appello, Milan, Italy, 29 April 2009, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 415 (2010).

[584] *Sojuznefteexport v. Joc Oil Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, Bermuda, 7 July 1989, XV Y.B. Com. Arb. 384 (1990).

[585] Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 3426-27 (2014); Roy Goode, *The Role of the Lex Loci Arbitri in International Commercial Arbitration*, 17 Arb. Int'l 19, 22 (2001); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 265 (1981); Julian Lew and Loukas Mistelis, Comparative International Commercial Arbitration, para. 26-70 (2003); Nigel Blackaby et al., Redfern and Hunter on International Arbitration para. 11.57 (2015); Marike R.P. Paulsson, The 1958 New York Convention in Action 166 (2016).

[586] *Wilko v. Swan*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United Stated of America, 7 December 1953, 346 United States 427; *Office of Supply, Government of the Republic of Korea v. New York Navigation Company, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 8 November 1972, 469 F.2d 377 (1972); *American Construction Machinery & Equipment Corp. Ltd. v. Mechanised Construction of Pakistan Ltd.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 23 March 1987, 659 F. Supp. 426 (S.D.N.Y. 1987).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

this doctrine to awards falling under the Convention. In the words of one United States appeals court, "[t]here is now considerable caselaw holding that, in an action to confirm an award rendered in, or under the law of, a foreign jurisdiction, the grounds for relief enumerated in Art. V of the Convention are the only grounds available for setting aside an arbitral awards [sic]".[587] Commentators confirm this view.[588]

12. An Australian court interpreted the legislation originally implementing the Convention in Australia, which omitted the words "only" in the chapeau to article V,[589] as granting it residual discretion to refuse recognition and enforcement for reasons not enumerated in the Convention.[590] In 2010, the legislation was amended to provide that "[t]he court may only refuse to enforce the foreign award in the circumstances" listed in article V.[591]

C. Burden of proof under article V

13. Article 1 of the 1927 Geneva Convention expressly required the party seeking to rely on an award to prove a number of positive conditions before recognition and enforcement was granted. However, it provided no guidance on whether the court where recognition and enforcement was sought should examine the grounds for non-enforcement under article 2 *ex officio*, or only at the request of the party opposing recognition and enforcement. It was also silent on which party had the ultimate burden of proving these grounds for refusal.

[587] *Yusuf Ahmed Alghanim & Sons, W.LL v. Toys "R" Us, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 10 September 1997, XXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 1058 (1998). See also *Brandeis Intsel Ltd. v. Calabrian Chemicals*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 5 January 1987, 656 F. Supp. 160 (S.D.N.Y. 1987).

[588] Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 3711 (2014); Kenneth R. Davis, *Unconventional Wisdom: A New Look at Articles V and VII of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards*, 37 Tex. Int'l L.J. 43 (2002), 70-71; Ray Y. Chan, *The Enforceability of Annulled Foreign Arbitral Awards in the United States: A Critique of Chromalloy*, 17 Boston U. Int'l L.J. 141, 160 (1999); Eric A. Schwartz, *A Comment on Chromalloy: Hilmarton, à l'américaine*, 14(2) J. Int'l Arb. 126, 132 (1997); Stephen T. Ostrowski and Yuval Shany, *Chromalloy: United States Law and International Arbitration at the Crossroads*, 73 N.Y.U. L. Rev. 1650, 1675 (1998).

[589] See Section 8(5) of the International Arbitration Act 1974 (Cth), which, prior to enumerating the grounds on which recognition and enforcement could be refused, stated that "the court may, at the request of the party against whom it is invoked, refuse to enforce the award if that party proves to the satisfaction of the court that [...]".

[590] *Resort Condominiums International Inc. v. Ray Bowell*, Supreme Court of Queensland, Australia, 29 October 1993, XX Y.B. Com. Arb. 628 (1995).

[591] See International Arbitration Act 1974 (Cth), section 8(3A), as amended by International Arbitration Amendment Act 2010 (Cth), section 7.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

14. Following a proposal made by the German delegation during the drafting of the New York Convention,[592] article V sets forth a clear rule with respect to the burden of proving the grounds for refusing to recognize and enforce an arbitral award.

15. The introductory sentence of article V (1) provides that recognition and enforcement may only be refused "at the request of the party against whom [the award] is invoked", and if that party "furnishes proof" of the grounds listed in that paragraph. In accordance with this wording, courts in the Contracting States have consistently recognized that the party opposing recognition and enforcement has the burden of raising and proving the grounds for non-enforcement under article V (1).[593]

16. Article V (2) provides that the grounds under the second paragraph may be observed by a court *ex officio*. Courts of the Contracting States have confirmed that the grounds for refusal under article V (2) do not have to be pleaded by the party opposing recognition and enforcement.[594] While article V (2) does not specifically allocate the burden of proof to either party, courts of the Contracting States have considered that the party opposing recognition and enforcement has the ultimate burden of proving such grounds.[595] Leading commentators on the Convention express the same view.[596]

---

[592] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Comparison of Drafts Relating to Articles III, IV and V of the draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/L.33/Rev.1, p. 3.

[593] See, e.g., *Dutch Shipowner v. German Cattle and Meat Dealer*, Bundesgerichtshof, Germany, 1 February 2001, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 700 (2004); *Trans World Film SpA v. Film Polski Import and Export of Films*, Corte di Cassazione, Italy, 22 February 1992, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 433 (1993); *Europcar Italia SpA v. Maiellano Tours Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 2 September 1998, 97-7224, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 860 (1999); *Encyclopedia Universalis S.A. v. Encyclopedia Britannica Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 31 March 2005, 04-0288-cv, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 1136 (2005).

[594] See, e.g., *Efxinos Shipping Co. Ltd. v. Rawi Shipping Lines Ltd.*, Corte Di Appello Genova, Italy, 2 May 1980, VIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 381 (1983); *Rosseel NV v. Oriental Commercial Shipping*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 16 November 1990, XVI Com. Arb. 615 (1991); *Sovereign Participations International S.A. v. Chadmore Developments Ltd.*, Cour d'Appel, Luxembourg, 28 January 1999, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 714 (1999).

[595] See, e.g., *Licensee v. Licensor*, Oberlandesgericht, Düsseldorf, Germany, 21 July 2004, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 315 (2007); *Gater Assets Ltd. v. Nak Naftogaz Ukrainiy*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 17 October 2007, [2007] EWCA Civ 988; *Hebei Import & Export Corp. v. Polytek Engineering Co. Ltd.*, Court of Final Appeal, Hong Kong, 9 February 1999, [1999] 2 HKC 205; *NTT Docomo Inc. v. Ultra D.O.O.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 12 October 2010, 10 Civ. 3823 (RMB)(JCF). See also the chapter of Guide on article V (2)*(b)*, para. 57.

[596] See, e.g., Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 3418-19 (2014); Dirk Otto, Omaia Elwan, *Article V (2)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 345, 348 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

Article V (1)*(a)*

1. Recognition and enforcement of the award may be refused, at the request of the party against whom it is invoked, only if that party furnishes to the competent authority where the recognition and enforcement is sought, proof that:

(a) The parties to the agreement referred to in article II were, under the law applicable to them, under some incapacity, or the said agreement is not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of the country where the award was made; or [...]

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article V (1)*(a)* as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704 and Annex.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822, Annexes I-II; E/CONF.26/3; E/CONF.26/3/Add.1.
- Comments on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: Note by the Secretary General: E/CONF.26/2.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.17; E/CO.26/L.34.
- Comparison of Drafts Relating to Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention: E/CONF.26/L.33/Rev.1.

- Further Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.40.
- Text of Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention Proposed by Working Party III: E/CONF.26/L.43.
- Text of Articles Adopted by the Conference: E/CONF.26/L.48.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/L.61; E/CONF.26/8.
- New text of Articles I (3), V (1)*(a)*, *(b)*, and *(e)* Adopted by the Conference at its 23rd meeting: E/CONF.26/L.63.
- Final Act and Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Eleventh, Thirteenth, Fourteenth, Seventeenth, Twenty-Third and Twenty-Fourth Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR.11; E/CONF.26/SR.13; E/CONF.26/SR.14; E/CONF.26/SR.17; E/CONF.26/SR.23; E/CONF.26/SR.24.
- Summary Records of the Sixth Meeting of the Committee on Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.6.

Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards:

- Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: statement submitted by the International Chamber of Commerce, a non-governmental organization having consultative status in category A: E/C.2/373.
- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/4.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

Introduction

1. Article V (1)*(a)* sets forth the first enumerated defence to the recognition and enforcement of a foreign arbitral award. It enables the courts of a Contracting State to refuse recognition and enforcement in two situations: first, if "[t]he parties to the [arbitration] agreement [...] were, under the law applicable to them, under some incapacity" and, second, if the "[arbitration] agreement is not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of the country where the award was made."

2. The 1927 Geneva Convention addressed these defences to recognition and enforcement in a different manner. Pursuant to article 1*(a)* of the 1927 Geneva Convention, it was for the party seeking recognition and enforcement of an award to prove the validity of an arbitration agreement under the law applicable to it. In accordance with article 2*(b)*, the enforcing court was required to refuse recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award if it was satisfied that "the party against whom it is sought to use the award [...], being under a legal incapacity, [...] was not properly represented [...]".

3. Initially, the draft of the ECOSOC *ad hoc* Committee reiterated only the provision related to the legal incapacity of a party but not that related to the validity of the arbitration agreement.[597] However, during the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration convened for the preparation and adoption of the Convention, State delegates decided to abandon this provision on the ground that, as reported by the Norwegian delegate, it would be rare in practice for a party to be improperly represented during arbitral proceedings.[598] Furthermore, during the Conference, the drafters of the Convention introduced a provision related to the validity of the arbitration agreement. It was, at first, added as an independent ground for obtaining recognition and enforcement, but then modified to become a ground for refusing to recognize and enforce an arbitral award.[599] This provision was revised to clarify that the "law applicable" to the arbitration agreement should mean the "national law to which the parties have subjected their agreement, or,

[597]See *Travaux préparatoires*, Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, E/2704, E/AC.42/4/Rev.1, Annex, p. 2. Article IV *(c)* of the ECOSOC draft provided that recognition and enforcement may be refused if "the competent authority in the country where recognition of enforcement is sought, is satisfied: [...] that the party against whom the award is invoked, being under a legal incapacity, was not properly represented."

[598]See *Travaux préparatoires*, Text of the Convention as provisionally approved by the Drafting Committee on 6 June 1958, E/CONF.26/L.61, p. 3; *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Seventeenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.17, p. 9.

[599]See *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Seventeenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.17, p. 3; *Travaux préparatoires*, Text of Articles III, IV and V of the draft Convention proposed by the Working Party for adoption of the Conference, E/CONF.26/L.43, p. 1.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

failing any indication thereon, under the law of the country where the award was made".[600]

4. It was on the very last day of the Conference that article V (1)*(a)* surfaced in its current form at the recommendation of the Dutch delegate, who proposed to reintroduce a defence based on party incapacity.[601]

5. Article V (1)*(a)* extends the principles enriched in article II to the recognition and enforcement stage. Just as parties cannot be referred to arbitration under article II if they are not bound by a valid arbitration agreement,[602] national courts may deny recognition and enforcement of an award pursuant to article V (1)*(a)* if the consent of the parties is not valid either because the parties lacked the capacity to agree to arbitrate or because the arbitration agreement is invalid under the law applicable to it.

6. While the incapacity defence under article V (1)*(a)* has been of limited relevance in practice, the invalidity of the arbitration agreement defence is often invoked by parties opposing recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award.[603] However, in the majority of reported cases, courts have rejected challenges to recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award based on article V (1)*(a)*.

Analysis

Incapacity of the parties

7. Article V (1)*(a)* provides in its first limb that recognition and enforcement may be refused if "[t]he parties to the agreement referred to in article II were, under the law applicable to them, under some incapacity [...]".

A. Meaning of "the parties to the agreement referred to in article II"

8. Article V (1)*(a)* refers to "the parties to the agreement referred to in article II". This departs from the language of the 1927 Geneva Convention, which referred

[600] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Twenty-third Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.23, p. 14.

[601] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Twenty-fourth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.24, p. 7.

[602] For a more detailed discussion, see the chapter of the Guide on article II, paras. 13-23.

[603] See. e.g., Stefan Kröll, *Recognition and Enforcement of Awards*, in Arbitration in Germany: The Model Law in Practice 506, 530 (K. H. Böckstiegel, S. Kröll and P. Nacimiento eds., 2007).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

to "the party against whom it is sought to use the award".[604] This change in the wording suggests that the incapacity defence may be raised with respect to the party opposing enforcement or the party seeking enforcement.[605] The Italian Court of Cassation confirmed that the party opposing enforcement could raise the incapacity defence with respect to the parties seeking enforcement.[606]

9. Although article V (1)*(a)* refers to the incapacity of "the parties" in the plural, courts have interpreted this provision as meaning that the lack of capacity of one party is sufficient for the enforcing court to deny recognition and enforcement.[607] Commentators have generally supported the reading of article V (1)*(a)* that proof of the incapacity of one, and not necessarily both, of the parties suffices to deny recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award.[608]

B. Concept of incapacity

10. Neither the Convention nor the *travaux préparatoires* define "incapacity".

11. "Capacity" is traditionally defined as the legal ability of a person to act and enter into an agreement in its own name and on its own behalf.[609] The text of article V (1)*(a)* confirms that incapacity refers to the legal restriction preventing a party from entering into a legal and binding relationship, here an arbitration agreement,

---

[604]See article 2*(b)* of the 1927 Geneva Convention. See also Ignacio Suarez Anzorena, *The Incapacity Defence Under the New York Convention*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 615, 616-18 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds. 2008).

[605]See Patricia Nacimiento, *Article V (1)(a)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 205, 218 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Todd J. Fox, Stephan Wilske, *Commentary of Article V (1)(a)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 267, 271 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[606]*Société Arabe des Engrais Phosphates et Azotes—SAEPA and Société Industrielle d'Acide Phosphorique et d'Engrais—SIAPE v. Gemanco srl*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 9 May 1996, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 737 (1997).

[607]See, e.g., *Sokofl Star Shipping Co. Inc. v. GPVO Technopromexport*, District Court of Moscow (Civil Department), Russian Federation, 11 April 1997, XXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 742 (1998); *Agrimpex S.A. v. J.F. Braun & Sons, Inc.*, Supreme Court, Greece, 14 January 1977, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 269 (1979).

[608]See Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 275 (1981) who gives the section on incapacity the title "Incapacity of a party"; Patricia Nacimiento, *Article V (1)(a)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 205, 218 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Todd J. Fox, Stephan Wilske, *Commentary of Article V (1)(a)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 267, 271-72 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[609]Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 242, para. 453 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999). See also Ignacio Suarez Anzorena, *The Incapacity Defence Under the New York Convention*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 615, 621 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

in its own name and on its own account.[610] In the few reported cases, parties have alleged the incapacity of individuals and of legal entities.

12. With respect to the incapacity of individuals, in one Canadian reported case, a party opposed recognition and enforcement on grounds that that party did not have the opportunity to obtain independent legal advice during the negotiation and conclusion of the contract at issue, which contained the arbitration agreement.[611] In interpreting the Canadian law incorporating the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration which contains a similar provision to that of article V (1)*(a)*, the court did not object that the incapacity defence could apply in this situation. It, however, ultimately rejected it on the facts as the defendant had failed to show evidence of "oppression, high pressure tactics or misrepresentation."

13. There are no reported cases where recognition has been challenged pursuant to article V (1)*(a)* on the grounds that an arbitration agreement was entered into by a minor or a disabled person. However, commentators generally agree that the incapacity defence should cover the situation in which an individual is unable to judge where its own interest lies.[612]

14. With respect to incapacity of legal entities, national courts have entertained the incapacity defence in relation to both public and private legal entities. The text of the Convention confirms this approach. Indeed, article V (1)*(a)* refers only to a "party" and draws no distinction between public and private entities. Furthermore, article I, which defines the scope of application of the Convention, refers to

[610]Ignacio Suarez Anzorena, *The Incapacity Defence Under the New York Convention*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 615, 621 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

[611]*Grow Biz International Inc. v. D.L.T. Holdings Inc.*, Supreme Court, Province of Prince Edward Island, Canada, 23 March 2001, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 450 (2005). See also in a case where the court denied recognition and enforcement because he was not given proper notice pursuant to Section 103(2)*(c)* of the English 1996 Arbitration Act (implementing article V (1)*(b)* of the Convention) as a result of his serious and life-threatening cancer: *Ajay Kanoria, Esols Worldwide Limited, Indekka Software PVT Ltd. v. Tony Francis Guinness*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 21 February 2006, [2006] EWCA Civ 222.

[612]ICCA'S Guide to the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention: a Handbook for Judges 84 (P. Sanders ed., 2011); Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 317, para. 539 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); also Ignacio Suarez Anzorena, *The Incapacity Defence Under the New York Convention*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 615, 621, 625, 628 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

"persons, whether physical or legal".[613] In this context, parties have, in a number of situations, opposed recognition and enforcement on the grounds of a legal entity's incapacity, although courts have often rejected this defence.

15. *First*, the District Court of Moscow accepted a challenge to enforcement based on article V (1)*(a)* where an award was rendered in favour of a company which did not exist, as it had never been registered at its purported seat of incorporation.[614]

16. *Second*, legal entities have challenged enforcement pursuant to article V (1)*(a)* on the grounds that one party was under some legal restriction. For instance, relying on the New York Convention generally, a Syrian court refused to enforce an award rendered against the Syrian Ministry of Defence because the arbitration agreement had been entered into in breach of a Syrian public policy provision requiring the preliminary advice of the Syrian Council of State for the referral of the dispute to arbitration.[615] Conversely, a Russian court confirmed the recognition and enforcement of an award pursuant to the Convention on the ground that no legal restriction prohibited a company's general director from signing the arbitration agreement and binding the company.[616]

17. *Third*, in a few early cases, courts have confirmed that issues of alleged lack of representative power fall under the incapacity defence of article V (1)*(a)*.[617] The Spanish Supreme Court, for instance, confirmed that issues of alleged powers conferred by a company's board of directors and issues of alleged contractual representative powers, such as those given under a power of attorney, fall under the incapacity defence of article V (1)*(a)*. In this case, the court found that the party opposing recognition and enforcement had not proven that the power of attorney

[613]See, e.g., Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 276-79 (1981); Domenico Di Pietro, Martin Platte, Enforcement of International Arbitration Awards—the New York Convention of 1958, 138 (Cameron May 2001); Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 984, para. 1695 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Ignacio Suarez Anzorena, *The Incapacity Defence Under the New York Convention*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 615, 622 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Todd J. Fox, Stephan Wilske, *Commentary of Article V (1)(a)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 267, 271 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[614]*Sokofl Star Shipping Co. Inc v. GPVO Technopromexport*, District Court of Moscow (Civil Department), Russian Federation, 11 April 1997, XXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 742 (1998). See also *Sojuznefteexport v. Joc Oil Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, Bermuda, 7 July 1989, XV Y.B. Com. Arb. 384 (1990).

[615]*Fougerollem S.A. v. Ministry of Defence of the Syrian Arab Republic*, Administrative Tribunal of Damascus, Syria, 31 March 1988, XV Y.B. Com. Arb. 515 (1990). See also *Société Arabe des Engrais Phosphates et Azotes—SAEPA and Société Industrielle d'Acide Phosphorique et d'Engrais—SIAPE v. Gemanco srl*, Court of Appeal of Bari, Italy, 2 November 1993, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 737 (1997).

[616]*Dana Feed A/S v. OOO Arctic Salmon*, Federal Arbitrazh Court, Northwestern District, Russian Federation, 9 December 2004, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 658 (2008).

[617]See, e.g., *Ltd. "R.L." v. JSC "Z. Factory"*, Supreme Court, Georgia, 2 April 2004, a-204-sh-43-03; *Agrimpex S.A. v. J.F. Braun & Sons, Inc.*, Supreme Court, Greece, 14 January 1977, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 269 (1979).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

was not valid under the applicable law.[618] In *Dalmine*, the Italian Court of Cassation held that the incapacity defence under article V (1)*(a)* encompasses whether a natural person has the authority to act on behalf of a company pursuant to its constitutional documents, but ultimately rejected the article V (1)*(a)* defence as individuals that had signed the arbitration agreement had the necessary power to conclude it.[619] In another situation, the Austrian Supreme Court held that lack of proper representation could be found where the power of attorney to sign the contract containing the arbitration agreement was invalid. However, in that case, the court found that the party opposing enforcement had failed to show that the party who signed the agreement on its behalf lacked the required authority.[620]

18. Although issues of proper representation and authority differ from that of capacity *stricto sensu*,[621] commentators support the idea that the incapacity defence should extend to situations where legal entities allegedly act *ultra vires* their constitutional documents, or where the representative power is alleged to be invalid.[622]

C. Meaning of the "law applicable to them"

19. Pursuant to article V (1)*(a)*, the incapacity of the parties is to be assessed under "the law applicable to them".[623] It is clear however from the text of article V (1)*(a)* that the law applicable to the capacity of a party is different from the law governing the validity of an arbitration agreement, as stated in the second part of the provision.[624]

---

[618] *Unión de Cooperativas Agrícolas Epis-Centre v. La Palentina S.A.*, Supreme Court, Spain, 17 February 1998, XXXVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 533 (2002).

[619] *Dalmine S.p.A. v. M.& M. Sheet Metal Forming Machinery A.G.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 23 April 1997, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 709 (1999). See also Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 23 April 1998, III ZR 194/96.

[620] *K v. F AG*, Oberster Gerichtshof, Austria, 23 October 2007, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 354 (2008). See also *O Limited v. S GmbH*, Oberster Gerichtshof, Austria, 24 August 2005, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 254 (2007).

[621] Emmanuel Gaillard, Le pouvoir en droit privé 48, para. 64 (Economica 1985).

[622] Ignacio Suarez Anzorena, *The Incapacity Defence Under the New York Convention*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 615, 623-24 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds. 2008); Russell on Arbitration 463 (D. Sutton, J. Gill, M. Gearing eds., 2007).

[623] The expression "under the law applicable to them" was deleted from articles 34 and 36 of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, because, as explained by the UNCITRAL Secretariat, this expression "was viewed as containing [...] potentially misleading conflict-of-law rule": Explanatory Note by the UNCITRAL Secretariat on the Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, para. 54. See also Summary Records of the 317th meeting of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law for meetings devoted to the preparation of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, A/CN.9/246, Annex, Yearbook of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law, 1985, Vol. XVI, 446.

[624] See, e.g., Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 984, para. 1695 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 277 (1981).

20. As reflected in the *travaux préparatoires* to the Convention, the expression "law applicable to them" was meant to be determined "according to the law governing [a party's] personal status".[625] The Convention is however silent on how to determine the applicable law.

21. Courts applying article V (1)*(a)* have followed different approaches in choosing the law applicable to determine a party's capacity, depending on what is being alleged by the party opposing recognition and enforcement: (i) the incapacity of a party *stricto sensu*, or (ii) the lack of authority of the party to enter into an agreement on behalf of another party.

22. In the few cases addressing the issue of incapacity of a natural or legal person *stricto sensu*, courts have generally determined the law applicable to that party's capacity pursuant to their own system of law. For instance, when deciding on a challenge to enforcement under article V (1)*(a)*, the Spanish Supreme Court applied Spanish conflict of laws rule to determine that the capacity of a party should be assessed pursuant to its personal law, i.e., the law of the nationality of that party.[626] With respect to the capacity of an individual, commentators have distinguished between civil law jurisdictions, where such capacity is generally governed by the law of the person's nationality, and common law jurisdictions, where it is generally governed by the law of the person's domicile or habitual residence.[627] As regards the capacity *stricto sensu* of legal persons, in many jurisdictions, the applicable law will be the law of the place of incorporation or the place of business of the entity at issue.[628]

23. In cases that concern challenging the authority of a party to conclude an arbitration agreement on behalf of another party, some courts have assessed the validity of a party's power to conclude an arbitration agreement on behalf of another party pursuant to the personal law of the party that was purportedly bound

[625] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Twenty-fourth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.24, p. 7.

[626] *Unión de Cooperativas Agrícolas Epis-Centre v. La Palentina S.A.*, Supreme Court, Spain, 17 February 1998, XXVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 533 (2002).

[627] Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 276 (1981); Patricia Nacimiento, *Article V (1)(a)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 205, 219 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Stefan Kröll, *Recognition and Enforcement of Awards,* in Arbitration in Germany: the Model Law in Practice 506, 528-29 (K. H. Böckstiegel, S. Kröll, P. Nacimiento eds., 2007).

[628] Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 276 (1981); Patricia Nacimiento, *Article V (1)(a)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 205, 220 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Stefan Kröll, *Recognition and Enforcement of Awards*, in Arbitration in Germany: The Model Law in Practice 528-29 (K. H. Böckstiegel, S. Kröll, P. Nacimiento eds., 2007) for the position in Germany.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

by the arbitration agreement.[629] For instance, in *La Palentina*, the Spanish Supreme Court held that when the act of representation is carried out by a company's organs, the national law of that entity will apply.[630] When the authority of a party to conclude an arbitration agreement on behalf of another party is based on a power of attorney, a German court held that its validity should be assessed pursuant to the law of the State where the power of attorney was to be exercised.[631]

D. Relevant time for incapacity

24. Article V (1)*(a)* of the Convention does not specify the point in time at which a party must be under an incapacity. However, the use of the past tense in article V (1)*(a)* "[...] that the parties were [...] under some incapacity" indicates that incapacity should be assessed at the time of conclusion of [the contract containing] the arbitration agreement.[632] The drafters of the New York Convention sought to abandon the approach followed under the 1927 Geneva Convention, which focused on improper representation during the arbitral proceedings.[633]

25. With very few exceptions,[634] courts have assessed the capacity of a party at the time of conclusion of the arbitration agreement. For example, the Italian Court of Cassation accepted that the point in time at which representative capacity should be examined under article V (1)*(a)* was the time of conclusion of the arbitration

[629]See, e.g., *Dana Feed A/S v. OOO Artic Salmon*, Federal Arbitrazh Court, Northwestern District, Russian Federation, 9 December 2004, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 658 (2008).

[630]*Unión de Cooperativas Agrícolas Epis-Centre v. La Palentina S.A.*, Supreme Court, Spain, 17 February 1998, XXXVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 533 (2002). See also *Dalmine S.p.A. v. M.&M. Sheet Metal Forming Machinery A.G.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 23 April 1997, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 709 (1999).

[631]Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 4 September 2003, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 528 (2005).

[632]See Ignacio Suarez Anzorena, *The Incapacity Defence Under the New York Convention*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 615, 631 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Patricia Nacimiento, *Article V (1)(a)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 205, 218 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Todd J. Fox, Stephan Wilske, *Commentary of Article V (1)(a)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 267, 272 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[633]See *Travaux préparatoires*: United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of Seventeenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.17, p. 9.

[634]See *James P. Corcoran, Superintendent of Insurance of the State of New York et al. v. Ardra Insurance Co. Ltd., Richard A. and Jeanne S. DiLoreto*, Supreme Court of New York County, United States of America, 10 April 1990, XVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 663 (1991).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

agreement.[635] In more recent decisions, courts in the United States,[636] Russian Federation[637] and Canada[638] have followed the same approach.

Invalidity of the arbitration agreement

26. The second limb of article V (1)*(a)* provides that recognition and enforcement may be refused on the ground that the arbitration agreement "is not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of the country where the award was made."

27. Courts have generally determined the validity of an arbitration agreement within the meaning of article V (1)*(a)* by following the conflict of laws rule set out in that provision. Certain courts have however considered that the reference to article II in article V (1)*(a)* requires the validity of the arbitration agreement to be determined pursuant to the form requirements set by article II.

A. The choice of law rule under article V (1)*(a)*

28. Article V (1)*(a)* provides that validity of an arbitration agreement is to be determined "under the law to which the parties have subjected it", or "failing any indication thereon", "under the law of the country where the award was made".

a. The primacy of the parties' choice of law

29. Pursuant to article V (1)*(a)*, the invalidity of an arbitration agreement shall, in the first instance, be assessed pursuant to the law chosen by the parties.[639]

[635] *Dalmine S.p.A. v. M.& M. Sheet Metal Forming Machinery A.G.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 23 April 1997, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 709 (1999).

[636] *Seung Woo Lee, as Co-Receiver for Medison Co. Ltd. a Korean corporation and others v. Imaging3, Inc. and others*, Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, United States of America, 19 June 2008, 06-55993, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 1180 (2008); *China National Building Material Investment Co. Ltd. v. BNK International LLC*, District Court, Western District of Texas, Austin Division, United States of America, 3 December 2009, A-09-CA-488-SS.

[637] *Dana Feed A/S v. OOO Arctic Salmon*, Federal Arbitrazh Court, Northwestern District, Russian Federation, 9 December 2004, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 658 (2008).

[638] *Grow Biz International Inc. v. D.L.T. Holdings Inc.*, Supreme Court, Province of Prince Edward Island, Canada, 23 March 2001, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 450 (2005).

[639] See, e.g., *Mabofi Holdings Limited v. RosGas A.G.*, Federal Arbitrazh Court for the Moscow District, Russian Federation, 24 January 2012, A40-65888/11-8/553; Supreme Court, Spain, 10 February 1984, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 493 (1985). See also Patricia Nacimiento, *Article V (1)(a)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 205, 227 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 282 (1981); Todd J. Fox, Stephan Wilske, *Commentary of Article V (1)(a)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 267, 275 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Accordingly, courts have often applied the law chosen by the parties to govern the main agreement, or the law chosen by the parties governing the arbitral procedure, as an implicit choice of law governing the arbitration agreement.

30. In practice, parties seldom expressly choose the law to govern their arbitration agreement. In reported case law, courts have looked to other factors to find that the parties have implicitly chosen the law to govern the arbitration agreement. For instance, a United States court held that the choice of the parties with respect to the law governing the arbitral proceedings amounted to an implicit choice of law regarding the validity of the arbitration agreement.[640] In another case, the Egyptian Court of Cassation ruled that the law governing the parties' main agreement should also govern the validity of the arbitration agreement.[641] The Egyptian Court of Cassation found that because the parties chose Swedish law to govern their contract, that law should apply to the arbitration agreement in order to determine its validity within the meaning of article V (1)*(a)*.

b. The applicable law in the absence of the parties' choice

31. Where the parties have not expressly or implicitly selected a law to govern their arbitration agreement, courts have turned to the subsidiary rule and have assessed the validity of an arbitration agreement under the "law of the country where the award was made" pursuant to article V (1)*(a)*.[642]

32. For instance, the Supreme Court of Austria, in assessing the validity of an arbitration agreement under article V (1)*(a)* held that, since neither party had contended that the arbitration agreement was governed by a particular law, its validity would be assessed according to the law of the country where the arbitral award was made.[643]

33. In a few reported cases, courts have looked directly to the law of the country where the award was made without expressly examining whether the parties had

[640]*Telenor Mobile Communications AS v. Storm LLC*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 2 November 2007, 524 F. Supp. 2d 332.

[641]*Egyptian Company for Concrete & Hashem Ali Maher v. STC Finance & Ismail Ibrahim Mahmoud Thabet & Sabishi Trading and Contracting Company*, Court of Cassation, Egypt, 27 March 1996, 2660/59. See also *Stena RoRo AB v. OAO Baltiysky Zavod*, Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, 13 September 2011, A56-60007/2008; *Ltd. "R.L." v. JSC "Z. Factory"*, Supreme Court, Georgia, 2 April 2004, a-204-sh-43-03.

[642]See, e.g., *Rocco Giuseppe e Figli s.n.c. v. Federal Commerce and Navigation Ltd.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 15 December 1982, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 464 (1985); *Official Receiver in the bankruptcy of Lanificio Walter Banci S.a.s. v. Bobbie Brooks Inc.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 15 April 1980, VI Y.B. Com. Arb. 233 (1981); Supreme Court, Spain, 10 February 1984, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 493 (1985).

[643]*K v. F AG*, Oberster Gerichtshof, Austria, 23 October 2007, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 354 (2008).

chosen a law applicable to the arbitration agreement.[644] In these cases, the challenging parties have not expressly relied on any law chosen by the parties to govern the validity of the arbitration agreement. For example, the Svea Court of Appeal, in assessing the validity of an arbitration agreement, applied the law of the country where the award was made, without first expressly considering whether the parties had explicitly or implicitly selected a governing law for the arbitration agreement.[645]

34. The Convention is silent on how to determine where the award "was made". Courts have, with the exception of one reported case,[646] determined that the seat of arbitration as determined in the arbitration agreement was the place where the award was "made".[647] For example, the English High Court in *Dallah* noted that the validity of the arbitration agreement was to be assessed according to the law of the country where the award was made, i.e., the law of the country of the seat of arbitration.[648] The court concluded that the seat of arbitration being in France, the validity of the arbitration agreement ought to be assessed pursuant to French law. Similarly, a Dutch court reasoned that, given the absence of a determination as to the law governing the arbitration agreement and the fact that the arbitration clause designated England as the seat of arbitration, English law would apply to determine the validity of the arbitration agreement.[649]

---

[644] *G. A. Pap-KG Holzgrosshandlung v. Ditta Giovanni G. Pecoraro*, Court of Appeal of Naples (Salerno Section), Italy, 13 February 1978, VI Y.B. Com. Arb. 228 (1981). See also where the decision does not make any reference to the parties' agreement: *United States VOEST ALPINE International Trade Company v. Jiangsu Provincial Foreign Trade Corporation*, Nanjing Intermediate People's Court, China, 13 April 2009, (2008) Ning Min Wu Chu Zi No. 43.

[645] *Planavergne S.A., Fontanes v. Kalle Bergander i Stockholm AB*, Svea Court of Appeal, Sweden, 7 September 2001, T 4645-99.

[646] *Richard Henry Moffit Outhwaite v. Robert Ralph Scrymegeour Hiscox*, House of Lord, England and Wales, 24 July 1991, XVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 599 (1992). In this case, the House of Lords determined that the award is "made" at the place where it is signed and not at the seat of arbitration designated by the parties.

[647] See, e.g., *K v. F AG*, Oberster Gerichtshof, Austria, 23 October 2007, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 354 (2008); Supreme Court, Spain, 10 February 1984, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 493 (1985); *Shandong Textiles Import and Export Corporation v. Da Hua Non-ferous Metals Company Limited*, Court of First Instance, High Court of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, Hong Kong, 6 March 2002, HCCT 80/1997.

[648] *Dallah Real Estate and Tourism Holding Company v. Ministry of Religious Affairs*, Government of Pakistan, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 1 August 2008, [2008] EWHC 1901, upheld by *Dallah Real Estate and Tourism Holding Company v. Ministry of Religious Affairs*, Government of Pakistan, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 20 July 2009, 2008/2613; *Dallah Real Estate and Tourism Holding Company v. Ministry of Religious Affairs*, Government of Pakistan, Supreme Court, United Kingdom, 3 November 2010, UKSC 2009/0165.

[649] *Société d'Etudes et de Commerce SA v. Weyl Beef Products BV, Arrondissementsrechtbank*, Court of First Instance of Almelo, Netherlands, 19 July 2000, XXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 827 (2001).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

35. It is well established in arbitral practice, as well as reflected in institutions' arbitral rules and in arbitration laws, that an award is made at the seat of the arbitration.[650]

B. Meaning of "invalidity"

36. Reported case law shows that parties have seldom been successful in opposing recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award pursuant to article V (1)*(a)* on the ground that the arbitration agreement was invalid.

37. In a number of cases, the party opposing recognition and enforcement argued that a defect in the main agreement rendered the arbitration agreement invalid. Courts have generally dismissed this argument pursuant to the principle of severability, which holds that an arbitration agreement is legally independent from the underlying contract which contains it, and the nullity of a contract does not imply that the arbitration agreement therein is invalid.[651]

38. In some cases, parties have argued that the arbitration agreement was invalid pursuant to article V (1)*(a)* on the ground that one of the parties had not signed the arbitration agreement. For instance, in *Dallah*, the Supreme Court of the United Kingdom denied enforcement of an award on the ground that one party to the award was not validly bound by the arbitration agreement.[652] Conversely, the Supreme Court of Victoria in *IMC Mining Solutions*, in assessing a challenge based on Section 8(5)*(a)* of the Australian International Arbitration Act of 1974 (implementing article V (1)*(a)* of the Convention), held that the party which had allegedly not signed the arbitration agreement was validly bound by it in accordance with the law applicable to the arbitration agreement, which was different from the

[650]See, e.g., Article 31(3) of the ICC Rules (2012) ("The award shall be deemed to be made at the place of the arbitration and on the date stated therein"); Article 31(3) of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration ("The award shall state its date and the place of arbitration as determined in accordance with article 20(1). The award shall be deemed to have been made at that place"); Section 53 of the English Arbitration Act 1996 ("Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, where the seat of the arbitration is in England and Wales, or Northern Ireland, any award in the proceedings shall be treated as made there, regardless of where it was signed, despatched or delivered to any of the parties").

[651]See, e.g., *Altain Khuder LLC v. IMC Mining Inc and IMC Mining Solutions Pty Ltd*, Supreme Court of Victoria, Australia, 28 January 2011; *China Minmetals Materials Import & Export Co. v. Chi Mei Corp.*, Court of Appeals, Third Circuit, United States of America, 26 June 2003, 02-2897 and 02-3542; *International Investor Kcsc v. Sanghi Polyesters Ltd.*, High Court of Andhra, India, 9 September 2002, Civil Revision Petition Nos 331 and 1441 of 2002; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Koblenz, Germany, 28 July 2005, 2 Sch 4/05; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamburg, Germany, 12 March 1998, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 663 (2004); Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Saarbrücken, Germany, 30 May 2011, 4 Sch 03/10. For a more detailed analysis on the issue of severability, see the chapter of the Guide on article II, paras. 105-07.

[652]*Dallah Real Estate and Tourism Holding Company v. Ministry of Religious Affairs*, Government of Pakistan, Supreme Court, United Kingdom, 3 November 2010, UKSC 2009/0165.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

law applicable to the main agreement.[653] Similarly, a Swiss court enforced an arbitral award rendered on the basis of an arbitration agreement by reference despite it not being signed by one of the parties.[654] In some jurisdictions, courts have ruled that, despite not having signed the arbitration agreement, a party's behaviour in the arbitral proceedings, including its participation therein, could constitute a valid arbitration agreement within the meaning of article V (1)*(a)*.[655]

C. Formal validity of an arbitration agreement

39. Although article V (1)*(a)* sets outs the choice of law rules for assessing the validity of the arbitration agreement, parties opposing enforcement have often argued that enforcement should be denied on the basis that the arbitration agreement fails to comply with the form requirements of article II.[656]

40. In one reported case, the Italian Court of Cassation held that the requirements of article II do not apply in the context of assessing the validity of the arbitration agreement pursuant to article V (1)*(a)*.[657] The court reasoned that an arbitration agreement that fails to comply with the form requirement of article II could be held valid under article V (1)*(a)*, as article V deals with recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards whereas article II deals with recognition and enforcement of arbitration agreements.

---

[653] *Altain Khuder LLC v. IMC Mining Inc and IMC Mining Solutions Pty Ltd*, Supreme Court of Victoria, Australia, 28 January 2011.

[654] Camera di esecuzione e fallimenti del Tribunale d'appello, Repubblica e Cantone Ticino, Switzerland, 22 February 2010, 14.2009.104.

[655] *Comverse Inc. v. American Telecommunications do Brazil Ltda*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 14 June 2012, SEC 3.709; *China National Building Material Investment Co. Ltd. v. BNK International LLC,* District Court, Western District of Texas, Austin Division, United States of America, 3 December 2009, A-09-CA-488-SS. See also the cases referenced in the chapter of the Guide on article II, para. 22.

[656] For a more detailed discussion on the form requirements in article II (2), see the chapter of the Guide on article II, paras. 36-57.

[657] *Official Receiver in the bankruptcy of Lanificio Walter Banci S.a.s. v. Bobbie Brooks Inc.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 15 April 1980, VI Y.B. Com. Arb. 233 (1981). See also G. Haight, Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: Summary Analysis of Record of United Nations Conference 51 (1958).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

41. In a number of reported cases, however, courts have assessed the validity of the arbitration agreement pursuant to the form requirements of article II.[658] As explained by a United States appeals court in China Minmetals, articles II, IV (1) *(b)* and V (1)*(a)* of the Convention contemplate as a whole that an enforcing court should enforce only valid agreements to arbitrate and only awards based on those agreements.[659]

42. In this context, courts have generally accepted that, if the arbitration agreement fails to comply with the form requirements of article II, enforcement will still be ordered if, on the basis of the more-favourable-right provision at article VII (1), the agreement complies with the more liberal rules of the jurisdiction where enforcement is sought.[660] In a series of decisions, German courts have applied the more favourable provisions of the German Code of Civil Procedure at the award enforcement stage to assess the validity of an arbitration agreement under article V (1)*(a)*.[661]

Procedural issues arising in connection with article V (1)*(a)*

A. Burden of proof

43. Article V (1) provides that the party against whom the award is invoked must furnish proof of the ground for denying recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award.

---

[658]See, e.g., *Concordia Trading B.V. v. Nantong Gangde Oil Co., Ltd*, Supreme People's Court, China, 3 August 2009, [2009] MinSiTaZi No. 22; *Misr Foreign Trade Co. v. R.D Harboties (Mercantile)*, Court of Cassation, Egypt, 22 January 2008, 2010/64; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 18 September 2003, 8 Scg 12/02; *C S.A. v. E. Corporation*, Court of Justice of Geneva, Switzerland, 14 April 1983, 187; *Agrimpex S.A. v. J.F. Braun & Sons, Inc.*, Supreme Court, Greece, 14 January 1977, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 269 (1979); Landgericht [LG] Bremen, Germany, 8 June 1967, 11-OH 11/1966. See also a decision rendered in Russian Federation applying the same reasoning without mentioning article II: *Lugana Handelsgesellschaft mbH (Germany) v. OAO Ryazan Metal Ceramics Instrumentation Plant (Russian Federation)*, Presidium of the Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, 2 February 2010, A54-3028/2008-S10. For a more detailed discussion on the forms requirement in article II (2), see the chapter of the Guide on article II, paras. 36-57.

[659]*China Minmetals Materials Import & Export Co. v. Chi Mei Corp.*, Court of Appeals, Third Circuit, United States of America, 26 June 2003, 02-2897 and 02-3542.

[660]See, e.g., *Société Bomar Oil N.V. v. Entreprise tunisienne d'activités pétrolières (ETAP)*, Court of Appeal of Versailles, France, 23 January 1991, 1994 Rev. Arb. 108; *Ste A.B.S. American Bureau of Shipping v. Copropriété Maritime Jules Verne et autres*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 4 December 2002, 2001/17293, 2006 Rev. Arb. 945.

[661]Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 14 December 2006, 8 Sch 14/05. See also Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 18 September 2003, 8 Sch 12/02; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Frankfurt, Germany, 18 October 2007, 26 Sch 1/07; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH] Germany, 30 September 2010, III ZB 69/09; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH] Germany, 21 September 2005, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 679 (2006). See *contra* Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Schleswig, Germany, 30 March 2000, 16 SchH 05/99. For a more detailed discussion on the relationship between article II and article VII, see the chapter of the Guide on article VII, paras. 31-35.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

44. With respect to article V (1)*(a)*, courts have typically ruled that it is for the party opposing recognition and enforcement to prove either that one of the parties was under some legal incapacity at the time of the conclusion of the arbitration agreement or that the arbitration agreement was invalid under the applicable law.[662] The party seeking recognition and enforcement only bears the burden of supplying documentary evidence of the arbitration agreement pursuant to article IV (1)*(b)*, which provides that the party applying for recognition and enforcement shall supply the original arbitration agreement or a copy thereof.[663]

45. For example, the Court of Appeal of England and Wales in *Yukos Oil Company v. Dardana Ltd.* held that, once the party seeking enforcement has provided *prima facie* evidence of the existence of the arbitration agreement, the burden shifts to the party opposing enforcement to prove any of the grounds for refusal under article V (1), including that the parties never entered into a valid arbitration agreement under article V (1)*(a)*.[664] Courts in other jurisdictions including those in Italy,[665] Spain,[666] Austria,[667] Australia,[668] and Bermuda[669] have followed the same approach.

46. However, certain courts have required the party seeking enforcement to prove that the arbitration agreement was valid in order to rely on it. Certain German courts, on the basis of the reference in article V (1)*(a)* to the "agreement referred to in Article II", have ruled that the party relying on the arbitration

[662]See generally: *O Limited v. S GmbH*, Oberster Gerichtshof, Austria, 24 August 2005, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 254 (2007). For cases concerning the incapacity defence, see, e.g, *Dalmine S.p.A. v. M.& M. Sheet Metal Forming Machinery A.G.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 23 April 1997, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 709 (1999); *Grow Biz International Inc. v. D.L.T. Holdings Inc.*, Supreme Court, Province of Prince Edward Island, Canada, 23 March 2001, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 450 (2005); *China National Building Material Investment Co. Ltd. v. BNK International LLC*, District Court for the Western District of Texas, Austin Division, United States of America, 3 December 2009, A-09-CA-488-SS. For cases concerning the invalidity of the arbitration agreement, see, e.g., *Dallah Real Estate and Tourism Holding Company v. Ministry of Religious Affairs, Government of Pakistan*, Supreme Court, United Kingdom, 3 November 2010, UKSC 2009/0165; *Altain Khuder LLC v. IMC mining Inc and IMC Mining Solutions Pty Ltd*, Supreme Court of Victoria, Australia, 28 January 2011.

[663]For a more detailed analysis on article IV (1)*(b)*, see the chapter of the Guide on article IV, paras. 62-75.

[664]*Yukos Oil Company v. Dardana Ltd*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 18 April 2002, A3/2001/1029. See also *Dallah Real Estate and Tourism Holding Company v. Ministry of Religious Affairs*, Government of Pakistan, Supreme Court, United Kingdom, 3 November 2010, UKSC 2009/0165.

[665]*Jassica S.A. v. Ditta Gioacchino Polojaz*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 12 February 1987, XVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 525 (1992).

[666]*Union Générale de Cinéma, S.A. (France) v. X Y Z Desarrollos, S.A. (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Spain, 11 April 2000, 3536 of 1998, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 525 (2007); *Strategic Bulk Carriers Inc. (Liberia) v. Sociedad Ibérica de Molturación, S.A. (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Spain, 26 February 2002, 153 of 2001, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 550 (2007).

[667]*Seller v. Buyer*, Supreme Court, Austria, 22 May 1991, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 521 (1996).

[668]See also *Altain Khuder LLC v. IMC mining Inc and IMC Mining Solutions Pty Ltd*, Supreme Court of Victoria, Australia, 28 January 2011.

[669]*Sojuznefteexport (SNE) v. Joc Oil Ltd.*, Court of Appeal of Bermuda, Bermuda, 7 July 1989, XV Y.B. COM. ARB. 384 (1990).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

agreement has the onus of proving its conformity with the requirements of article II.[670]

47. The text and the drafting history of the Convention suggest that the applicant should only prove *prima facie* the existence of the arbitration agreement while the party opposing recognition and enforcement has the onus of proving its invalidity.[671] Commentators have generally favoured this approach.[672]

B. Relevance of the findings of arbitral tribunals or courts

48. Article V (1)*(a)* is silent with respect to the standard of judicial review by enforcing courts.

49. In assessing challenges to recognition and enforcement under article V (1)*(a)*, certain courts have decided matters related to the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal and the validity of the arbitration agreement de novo. For instance, in *China Minmetals*, a United States appeals court held that it "must make an independent determination of the agreement's validity [...] at least in the absence of a waiver precluding the defence."[673] In *Dallah*, the Supreme Court of the United Kingdom referred to *China Minmetals* and noted that article V (1)*(a)* does not restrict the nature of the review to be carried out by the court asked to enforce the award.[674] Similarly, in Germany, some courts have found that they were not bound by the arbitral tribunal's findings on jurisdiction, including issues relating to the incapacity of a party and the invalidity of the arbitration agreement.[675]

---

[670]Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 12 October 2009, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 383 (2010); Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 4 September 2003, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 528 (2005). See also with respect to Switzerland: Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 31 May 2002, 4P.102/2001; *C S.A. v. E. Corporation*, Court of Justice of Geneva, Switzerland, 14 April 1983, 187.

[671]See *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Eleventh Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.11, p. 12.

[672]Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 968, para. 1673 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Todd J. Fox, Stephan Wilske, *Commentary of Article V (1)(a)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 267, 278, para. 126 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Patricia Nacimiento, *Article V (1)(a)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 205, 211 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

[673]*China Minmetals Materials Import & Export Co. v. Chi Mei Corp.*, Court of Appeals, Third Circuit, United States of America, 26 June 2003, 02-2897 and 02-3542.

[674]*Dallah Real Estate and Tourism Holding Company v. Ministry of Religious Affairs*, Government of Pakistan, Supreme Court, United Kingdom, 3 November 2010, UKSC 2009/0165.

[675]Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Schleswig, Germany, 30 March 2000, 16 SchH 5/99; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 18 September 2003, 8 Sch 12/02. See also Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 4 September 2003, 8 Sch 11/02, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 528 (2005) (although the Court did not relied on article V (1)(a) of the Convention), and with respect to the second limb of article V (1)*(a)*, see Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 14 December 2006, 8 Sch 14/05.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

50. In the United States, certain courts have held that, under article V (1)*(a)*, a court could not or should not review *de novo* the findings of the arbitral tribunal with respect to its own jurisdiction.[676] Other courts on the contrary have considered that they have jurisdiction to review factual and legal questions to determine jurisdiction unless there is "clear and unmistakable evidence" that the parties intended to submit this issue to the arbitrators.[677] They have been lenient in finding such "clear and unmistakable evidence" and have accepted that evidence of the parties' consent to submit the issue of jurisdiction to the arbitral tribunal may be found in the arbitral rules selected by the parties. For instance, in the context of an award rendered on the basis of a bilateral investment treaty, a United States Court of Appeals held that the parties' choice of the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules (providing that the tribunal has the power to rule on objections that it has no jurisdiction) constituted "clear and unmistakable evidence" of their intent to arbitrate issues going to the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal.[678]

51. Other courts have directly relied on the findings of the arbitral tribunal in assessing its jurisdiction under an arbitration agreement.[679] For example, the Svea Court of Appeal relied on the findings of the arbitral tribunal to hold the arbitration agreement valid within the meaning of article V (1)*(a)*. In so ruling, it reviewed neither the legal nor the factual arguments presented by the party opposing recognition and enforcement.[680]

52. Going one step further, certain courts have refrained from examining factual or legal issues as they are prohibited from reviewing the merits of an award. For example, the Highest Arbitrazh Court in Russian Federation ruled that under article V (1) of the Convention, it "[did] not have the right to re-examine a foreign arbitral award on the merits". It therefore relied on the findings of the arbitral tribunal regarding the issue whether the party applying for recognition and enforcement was properly bound by the arbitration agreement pursuant to the applicable law.[681] Similarly, the High Court of Singapore, relying on Section 31(2)*(a)* and *(b)*

[676] *Thai-Lao Lignite Co. Ltd. et al. v. Government of the Lao People's Democratic Republic*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 3 August 2011, 10 Civ. 5256 (KMW); *Joseph Walker and Company, LLC. v. Oceanic Fats and Oil(s) Pte, Ltd.*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 11 September 2002, 01-2693.

[677] *Sarhank Group v. Oracle Corporation*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 14 April 2005, 02-9383.

[678] *Werner Schneider, acting in his capacity as insolvency administrator of Walter Bau AG (In Liquidation) v. the Kingdom of Thailand*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 8 August 2012, 11-1458-cv. See also *Republic of Ecuador v. Chevron Corp.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 17 March 2011, 10-1020-cv (L), 10-1026 (Con).

[679] See, e.g., *Four Seasons Hotels and Resorts, B.V., et al. v. Consorcio Barr, S.A.*, United States District Court, Southern District of Florida, Miami Division, United States of America, 4 June 2003, 02-23249.

[680] *Planavergne S.A., Fontanes v. Kalle Bergander i Stockholm AB*, Svea Court of Appeal, Sweden, 7 September 2001, T 4645-99.

[681] *Stena RoRo AB v. OAO Baltiysky Zavod*, Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, 13 September 2011, A56-60007/2008.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

of the Singapore International Arbitration Act (implementing article V (1)*(a)* of the Convention), held that a court could not review the arbitral tribunal's findings with respect to jurisdiction unless extraordinary circumstances exist. Therefore, the court found that the party opposing recognition and enforcement had not brought new evidence and rejected the challenge.[682]

53. Some courts have even considered themselves to be bound by the arbitrator's findings on their jurisdiction and the validity of the arbitration agreement.[683]

C. Preclusion

54. The Convention is silent on whether a party's actions or inactions during the course of arbitration or court-related proceedings may preclude it from later raising a defence under article V in general, and more specifically under article V (1)*(a)*.

55. Certain courts have held that a party is precluded from relying on any defence it failed to raise during the course of arbitration proceedings, including on the grounds that a party was under some incapacity or that the arbitration agreement was invalid. For instance, the Greek Supreme Court ruled that a party opposing enforcement is precluded from relying on any defects of the arbitration agreement if it failed to raise those during the course of the arbitral proceedings.[684] The same principle has been applied in many other jurisdictions, including Germany,[685] Australia,[686] and the United States.[687] In France, the Arbitration Act expressly provides that a party who fails to object to an irregularity before the arbitral tribunal shall be deemed to have waived the right to invoke it before the enforcing court.[688]

[682] *Aloe Vera of America, Inc v. Asianic Food (S) Pte Ltd. and another*, High Court, Singapore, 10 May 2006, [2006] SGHC 78.

[683] Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Schleswig, Germany, 24 June 1999, 16 SchH 01/99.

[684] *Agrimpex S.A. v. J.F. Braun & Sons, Inc.*, Supreme Court, Greece, 14 January 1977, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 269 (1979).

[685] Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 11 July 2011, 34 Sch 15/10; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Frankfurt, Germany, 18 October 2007, 26 Sch 1/07; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamm, Germany, 27 September 2005, 29 Sch 01/05; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Koblenz, Germany, 28 July 2005, 2 Sch 4/05; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Schleswig, Germany, 30 March 2000, 16 SchH 05/99.

[686] *Altain Khuder LLC v. IMC mining Inc. and IMC Mining Solutions Pty Ltd*, Supreme Court of Victoria, Australia, 28 January 2011.

[687] *China National Building Material Investment Co. Ltd. v. BNK International LLC*, District Court, Western District of Texas, Austin Division, United States of America, 3 December 2009, A-09-CA-488-SS; *China Minmetals Materials Import & Export Co. v. Chi Mei Corp.*, Court of Appeals, Third Circuit, United States of America, 26 June 2003, 02-2897 and 02-3542; *Joseph Walker and Company LLC v. Oceanic Fats and Oil(s) Ptd, Ltd.*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 11 September 2002, 01-2693.

[688] Article 1466 of the French Code of Civil Procedure, applicable to international arbitration as per article 1506 of the French Code of Civil Procedure.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

56. On the other hand, certain courts have held that a party would not be precluded from raising a defence under article V (1)*(a)* on the ground that it had not participated in the arbitral proceedings[689] or had not raised those grounds in setting aside proceedings.[690]

57. In a different context, certain courts have upheld arbitration agreements that, although initially defective, had been cured during the course of an arbitration. For instance, an Italian court held that the signature of the Terms of Reference in an arbitration proceeding under the auspices of the ICC International Court of Arbitration cured the otherwise defective arbitration agreement.[691] In the same vein, courts have relied on the procedural behaviour of the parties to infer the existence of a valid arbitration agreement within the meaning of article V (1)*(a)*.[692] For example, the Presidium of the Highest Arbitrazh Court in Russian Federation held that the participation of the parties in the arbitral proceedings was deemed to be a confirmation of the written arbitration agreement pursuant to article V (1)*(a)* of the Convention, notwithstanding the lack of a proper arbitration agreement between the parties.[693]

[689] *Dallah Real Estate and Tourism Holding Company v. Ministry of Religious Affairs*, Government of Pakistan, Supreme Court, United Kingdom, 3 November 2010, UKSC 2009/0165

[690] See, e.g., Bundesgerichtshof, [BGH], Germany, 16 December 2010, III ZB 100/09.

[691] *Société Arabe des Engrais Phosphates et Azotes—SAEPA and Société Industrielle d'Acide Phosphorique et d'Engrais—SIAPE v. Gemanco srl*, Court of Appeal of Bari, Italy, 2 November 1993, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 737 (1997). The Italian Court of Cassation has subsequently reversed the decision of the Court of Appeal of Bari on grounds unrelated to the New York Convention. See also *Commonwealth Development Corp v. Montague*, Supreme Court of Queensland, Australia, 27 June 2000, Appeal No 8159 of 1999; DC No 29 of 1999.

[692] *CTA Lind & Co. Scandinavia AB in Liquidation's bankruptcy Estate v. Erik Lind*, District Court, Middle District of Florida, Tampa Division, United States of America, 7 April 2009, 8:08-cv-1380-T-30TGW; *China Nanhai Oil Joint Service Corporation Shenzhen Branch v. Gee Tai Holdings Co. Ltd*, High Court, Supreme Court of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, 13 July 1994, 1992 No. MP 2411; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Schleswig, Germany, 30 March 2000, 16 SchH 05/99; Landgericht [LG] Bremen, Germany, 8 June 1967, 11-OH 11/1966; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamburg, Germany, 30 July 1998, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 641 (2000); *L'Aiglon S/A v. Têxtil União S/A*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 18 May 2005, SEC 856 (relying on the practice of international contracts in the matter of cotton-trade to assess to validity of the arbitration agreement).

[693] *Lugana Handelsgesellschaft mbH v. OAO Ryazan Metal Ceramics Instrumentation Plant*, Presidium of the Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, 2 February 2010, A54-3028/2008-S10.

Article V (1)*(b)*

1. Recognition and enforcement of the award may be refused, at the request of the party against whom it is invoked, only if that party furnishes to the competent authority where the recognition and enforcement is sought, proof that:

[…]

(b) The party against whom the award is invoked was not given proper notice of the appointment of the arbitrator or of the arbitration proceedings or was otherwise unable to present his case;

[…]

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article V (1)*(b)* as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704 and Annex.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822, Annexes I-II; E/CONF.26/3; E/CONF.26/3/Add.1.
- Comments on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: Note by the Secretary General: E/CONF.26/2.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.17; E/CONF.26/L.34.
- Comparison of Drafts Relating to Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention: E/CONF.26/L.33/Rev.1.

- Further Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.40.
- Text of Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention Proposed by Working Party III: E/CONF.26/L.43.
- Text of Articles Adopted by the Conference: E/CONF.26/L.48.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/L.61; E/CONF.26/8.
- New text of Articles I (3), V (1)*(a)*, *(b)*, and *(e)* Adopted by the Conference at its 23rd meeting: E/CONF.26/L.63.
- Final Act and Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Eleventh, Thirteenth, Fourteenth, Seventeenth, and Twenty-Third Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR.11; E/CONF.26/SR.13; E/CONF.26/SR.14; E/CONF.26/SR.17; E/CONF.26/SR.23.
- Summary Records of the Sixth Meeting of the Committee on Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.6.

Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards:

- Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: statement submitted by the International Chamber of Commerce, a non-governmental organization having consultative status in category A: E/C.2/373.
- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/4.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Introduction

1. Article V (1)*(b)* addresses due process in arbitral proceedings. Specifically, it provides that parties must have had proper notice of the appointment of the arbitrators and of the arbitration proceedings as well as, more broadly, an opportunity to present their case.

2. Procedural irregularities under article V (1)*(b)* have to be raised and proven by the party opposing recognition and enforcement of an award, and cannot be raised by a court on its own motion.[694]

3. The drafters of the New York Convention followed the language of the 1927 Geneva Convention[695] but went further to enhance and facilitate enforcement.[696] In furtherance of this goal, although article V (1)*(b)* is modelled after article 2*(b)* of the 1927 Geneva Convention, it is more limited and is interpreted more narrowly.[697]

4. Article V (1)*(b)* also includes different requirements than its predecessor. As indicated in the *travaux préparatoires*, an early draft of what became article V (1)*(b)*, mirroring article 2*(b)* of the 1927 Geneva Convention, stated that there were grounds for refusal of enforcement of an award where a party "was not given notice [...] of the arbitration proceedings in due form or in sufficient time to enable him to present his case".[698] The drafters of the New York Convention retained the notice requirements of due process as they appeared in article 2*(b)* of the 1927 Geneva Convention. However, they wished to also cover other serious breaches of due process and thus included the inability of a party to present its own case as a

[694] *Travaux préparatoires*, Comments by Governments and Organisations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Annex I of E/2822/ADD.1, p. 2. See also *Travaux préparatoires*, Amendments to Articles 3, 4 and Suggestion of Additional Articles (Sweden), E/CONF.26/L.8.

[695] Article 2*(b)* of the 1927 Geneva Convention states that "[...] recognition and enforcement of the award shall be refused if the Court is satisfied: That the party against whom it is sought to use the award was not given notice of the arbitration proceedings in sufficient time to enable him to present his case; or that, being under a legal incapacity, he was not properly represented".

[696] See, e.g., *Travaux préparatoires*, Memorandum by the Secretary General, E/2840, p. 2, para. 4. See also Albert Jan van den Berg, *Summary of Court Decisions on the N.Y. Convention*, in The New York Convention of 1958, ASA Special Series No. 9, para. 508 (M. Blessing ed., 1996); *Consorcio Rive S.A. de C.V. (Mexico) v. Briggs of Cancun, Inc. (United States)*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 26 November 2003, 01-30553, (citing *Parsons & Whittemore Overseas Co. v. Société Generale de L'Industrie du Papier (RAKTA)*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 23 December 1974, 508 F.2d 969, 975).

[697] See Maxi Scherer, *Violation of Due Process, Article V (1)(b)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 279, paras. 132-35 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[698] *Travaux préparatoires*, Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and Comments by Governments and Organizations, Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, E/2704 and Annex, p. 2.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

separate requirement. The proposal of the delegate of the Netherlands to the Conference to draft article V (1)*(b)*, as it now stands, was ultimately adopted.[699]

5. Article V (1)*(b)* is often raised by parties opposing recognition and enforcement of an award despite the fact that the vast majority are unsuccessful in proving a breach.[700]

6. Courts are usually not formalistic in their approach to article V (1)*(b)*, but focus on the actual facts and conduct of the parties, which leads to a restrictive application of article V (1)*(b)*.[701]

7. Article V (1)*(b)* has some interaction and overlap with article V (2)*(b)*, the latter of which provides that a court may refuse to recognize or enforce an award if the award "would be contrary to the public policy of that country." In many respects, due process is closely connected to public policy.[702] It is therefore not unusual for parties to raise both provisions in their attempt to resist enforcement of an award. However, courts may not *sua sponte* raise possible breaches of article V (1)*(b)* whereas they may do so with respect to public policy under article V (2)*(b)*.[703]

---

[699] *Travaux préparatoires*, Summary Records of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Twenty-third Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.23, p. 15.

[700] See Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 1001-03, para. 1698 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 297 (1981); Andrés Jana, Angie Armer et al., *Article V (1)(b)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 231, 233 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Pierre A. Karrer, *Must an Arbitral Tribunal Really Ensure that its Award is Enforceable?*, in Global Reflections on International Law, Commerce and Dispute Resolution, Liber Amicorum in Honour of Robert Briner 431 (G. Asken et al. eds., 2005).

[701] See, e.g., *X v. Y*, Bundesgericht [BLG], Switzerland, 4 October 2010, 4A_124/2010; *OOO Sandora (Ukraine) v.OOO Euro-Import Group (Russian Federation)*, Federal Arbitrazh Court, Moscow District, Russian Federation, 12 November 2010, A40-51459/10-63-440; Camera di esecuzione e fallimenti del Tribunale d'appello, Repubblica e Cantone Ticino, Switzerland, 22 February 2010, 14.2009.104; *OAO Byerezastroymaterialy (Belarus) v. Individual Entrepreneur D.V. Goryelov (Russian Federation)*, Federal Arbitrazh Court, North Caucasus District, Russian Federation, 14 September 2009, No. A01-342/2009; *Consorcio Rive S.A. de C.V. (Mexico) v. Briggs of Cancun, Inc. (United States)*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 26 November 2003, 01-30553; *Geotech Lizenz A.G. v. Evergreen Systems, Inc.*, District Court, Eastern District of New York, United States of America, 27 October 1988, CV 88-1406 (697 F. Supp 1248 (E.D.N.Y. 1988); *Union Générale de Cinéma SA (France) v. XYZ Desarrollos, S.A. (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Spain, 11 April 2000, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 525 (2007); *M.F. Global Inc., et al. v. Elio D. Cattan, et al.*, District Court, Western District of Pennsylvania, United States of America, 6 March 2006, 04cv0593; *Karaha Bodas Co. (Cayman Islands) v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara (Indonesia)*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 23 March 2004, 02-20042, 03-20602.

[702] See the chapter of the Guide on article V (2)*(b)*, para 42.

[703] *X SA v. Y. Ltd.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 8 February 1978, P. 217/76. See also Andrés Jana, Angie Armer et al., *Article V (1)(b)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 231, 235 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Analysis

A. The requirement that the parties be given "proper notice"

8. Article V (1)*(b)* provides that parties against whom the award is invoked must have been given proper notice, failing which recognition and enforcement of the award may be refused.

a. Courts consider the parties' knowledge and conduct in assessing "proper notice"

9. Proper notice has been interpreted narrowly by courts, which usually apply more liberal standards than would be required for giving notice under domestic law. For example, a Mexican court held that parties waived Mexican procedural formalities on notice when they decided to submit their case to arbitration. Therefore, the fact that the notice did not comply with those formalities did not make the notice insufficient and did not prevent recognition and enforcement of the award.[704]

10. Some courts have been reluctant to graft external notice requirements onto article V (1)*(b)*. For example, in two cases, Chinese courts refused to apply the additional treaty requirements on notice contained in the mutual legal assistance treaties between China and Korea. The courts found that notice was adequate for the purposes of the New York Convention even though it did not conform to the treaty's definition of notice.[705] In assessing notice, an Egyptian court found that notice was sufficient on the basis that it was adequate under Swedish law, which was the law governing the arbitration.[706] A German court took a similar approach and applied the law of the arbitration, in that case Ukrainian law, in assessing whether proper notice had been given.[707]

[704] *Presse Office S.A. v. Centro Editorial Hoy S.A.*, High Court of Justice, Eighteenth Civil Court of First Instance, Federal District of Mexico, Mexico, 24 February 1977, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 301 (1979).

[705] *TS Haimalu Co., Ltd. v. Daqing PoPeyes Food Co., Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 3 March 2006, Min Si Ta Zi No. 46; *Boertong Corp. (Group) v. Beijing Liantaichang Trade Co. Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 14 December 2006, Min Si Ta Zi No. 36.

[706] *Egyptian Concrete Company & Hashem Ali Maher v. STC Finance & Ismail Ibrahim Mahmoud Thabet & Sabishi Trading and Contracting Company*, Court of Cassation, Egypt, 27 March 1996, 2660/59.

[707] Kammergericht [KG], Berlin, Germany, 17 April 2008, 20 Sch 02/08.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

11. The burden to prove that notice was not properly given is on the party opposing recognition and enforcement and the evidence must be provided[708] and be clear.[709]

12. Courts have applied high standards regarding the burden of proof that notice was improperly given. For example, an Australian court rejected a party's insistence that it had never received notice of the arbitration when the carrier's records showed that someone signed for the papers even when the addressee himself was overseas at the time of delivery.[710] Additionally, where a claimant asserted that notice was sent and received and the party opposing recognition and enforcement could not provide evidence to the contrary, an Australian court and an Egyptian court both refused to find a breach of due process.[711]

13. Courts have upheld recognition and enforcement of awards in the face of notice challenges by looking beyond the notice itself to evaluate the parties' access to, and involvement in, the arbitration. This has been the case where parties were aware of a proceeding or hearing and thus able to participate in the arbitral proceedings.[712] For example, a Russian court rejected a party's argument that notice was insufficient when the party's representative attended the proceedings.[713] A Swiss court also refused to deny recognition and enforcement of an award when a party alleged insufficient notice because the court reasoned that the party had been able to present its case.[714] The Spanish Supreme Court likewise upheld the recognition and enforcement of an award in the face of a claim that notice was insufficient because there was proof in the record, including receipts for the delivery of registered letters, that notice was adequate.[715]

---

[708] *Egyptian Saudi Hotels Company v. Kurt & Daves Corporation*, Court of Cassation, Egypt, 16 July 1990, 2994/57.

[709] Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Celle, Higher Regional Court, of Celle, Germany, 14 December 2006, 8 Sch 14/05; *A v. B*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 16 December 2011, 5A_441/2011.

[710] *LKT Industrial Berhad (Malaysia) v. Chun*, Supreme Court of New South Wales, Australia, 13 September 2004, 50174 of 2003.

[711] *Egyptian Saudi Hotels Company v. Kurt & Daves Corporation*, Court of Cassation, Egypt, 16 July 1990, 2994/57; *Uganda Telecom Ltd. v. Hi-Tech Telecom Pty Ltd.*, Federal Court, Australia, 22 February 2011, NSD 171 of 2010.

[712] *OOO Sandora (Ukraine) v. OOO Euro-Import Group (Russian Federation)*, Federal Arbitrazh Court, District of Moscow, Russian Federation, 12 November 2010, A40-51459/10-63-440; Camera di esecuzione e fallimenti del Tribunale d'appello, Repubblica e Cantone Ticino, Switzerland, 22 February 2010, 14.2009.104; *Consorcio Rive S.A. de C.V. (Mexico) v. Briggs of Cancun, Inc. (United States)*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 26 November 2003, 01-30553; *Geotech Lizenz A.G. v. Evergreen Systems, Inc.*, District Court, Eastern District of New York, United States of America, 27 October 1988, CV 88-1406 (697 F. Supp 1248 (E.D.N.Y. 1988)); *Union Générale de Cinéma S.A. (France) v. XYZ Desarrollos, S.A. (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Spain, 11 April 2000, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 525 (2007); *R.M.F. Global Inc., et al. v. Elio D. Cattan, et al.*, District Court, Western District of Pennsylvania, United States of America, 6 March 2006, 04cv0593.

[713] *OOO Sandora (Ukraine) v. OOO Euro-Import Group (Russian Federation)*, Federal Arbitrazh Court, District of Moscow, Russian Federation, 12 November 2010, A40-51459/10-63-440

[714] Camera di esecuzione e fallimenti del Tribunale d'appello, Repubblica e Cantone Ticino, Switzerland, 22 February 2010, 14.2009.104.

[715] *Union Générale de Cinéma SA (France) v. XYZ Desarrollos, S.A. (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Spain, 11 April 2000, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 525 (2007).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

14. As a further illustration, an Italian court found that there was no breach where a party's actions demonstrated that it was aware of the proceedings.[716] A United States court similarly refused to find a breach where the party claiming it had not received notice had in fact been referred to arbitration by a court. Under the circumstances, the form and technicality of the notice itself did not matter.[717]

15. Recognition and enforcement has been refused under article V (1)*(b)* where there was clear proof that no notice had been given. For example, a Chinese court refused recognition and enforcement of an award on the basis that there was clearly no notice.[718] A Georgian court also refused recognition and enforcement when there was no evidence before the Georgian court that any notice was ever sent.[719] Similarly, a German court refused recognition and enforcement of an award when there was evidence that no effort had been made to find the defendant's current address to notify it of the arbitration.[720] Likewise, a Russian court denied recognition and enforcement of an award where there was no evidence that a party had received notice. In the absence of proof of delivery of the notice, combined with the fact that the party was not present at the proceedings, the court concluded that notice was insufficient.[721]

b. Content of the notice

16. Article V (1)*(b)* requires that the parties be given proper notice of the appointment of the arbitrator and of the arbitration proceedings.

(i) Proper notice of the appointment of the arbitrator

17. Article V (1)*(b)* is silent as to what the notice of an appointment of the arbitrator must include. What is clear from the plain language of the text is that parties must receive some notice of the appointment of an arbitrator. In the absence

[716] *Bobbie Brooks Inc. v. Lanificio Walter Bucci s.a.s.*, Court of Appeal, Florence, Italy, 8 October 1977, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 289 (1979).

[717] *R.M.F. Global Inc., et al. v. Elio D. Cattan et al.*, District Court, Western District of Pennsylvania, United States, 6 March 2006, 04cv0593.

[718] *Aiduoladuo (Mongolia) Co., Ltd. v. Zhejiang Zhancheng Construction Group Co., Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 8 December 2009, Min Si Ta Zi No. 46; *Cosmos Marine Managements S.A. v. Tianjin Kaiqiang Trading Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 10 January 2007, Min Si Ta Zi No. 34.

[719] *The Kiev […] Institute v. "M", Scientific-Industrial Technological Institute of Tbilisi*, Supreme Court, Georgia, 17 March 2003, 3a-17-02.

[720] Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht [BayObLG], Germany, 16 March 2000, 4 Z Sch 50/99.

[721] *OAO Byerezastroymaterialy (Belarus) v. Individual Entrepreneur D.V. Gorelov (Russian Federation)*, Federal Arbitrazh Court, North Caucasus District, Russian Federation, 14 September 2009, No. A01-342/2009.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

of any notice, a court may refuse to enforce an award.[722] Courts have therefore been left to draw the contours of this notice requirement.

18. For instance, a Spanish court found that notification of the request to appoint an arbitrator, of the appointment, and confirmation thereof was sufficient notice.[723] Certain courts have confirmed that parties should receive a request to nominate an arbitrator.[724]

19. Courts have considered whether the notice of the appointment of the arbitrators must necessarily include the names of the arbitrators. A German court held that notice of the appointment of the arbitrators was insufficient where the notice did not include the names of the arbitrators, even if, in that case, the applicable arbitral rules did not provide for disclosure of the arbitrators' names.[725]

(ii) Proper notice of the arbitration proceedings

20. Article V (1)*(b)* requires that a party be given notice of the arbitration proceedings. Notice of the arbitration proceedings requires that all respondents are notified of an arbitration so that they are aware of the proceedings.[726]

21. Some courts have held that this notice requirement continues as the arbitration progresses requiring that all parties be informed of the arbitration procedures, including the dates, times and locations of any hearings so that parties can participate in the arbitration proceedings.[727] However, as noted by the Supreme Court of Colombia, if a party chooses not to participate in the proceedings, it cannot then avail itself of the defence under article V (1)*(b)*.[728]

---

[722] *Cosmos Marine Managements S.A. v. Tianjin Kaiqiang Trading Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 10 January 2007, Min Si Ta Zi No. 34.

[723] *English Company X v. Spanish Company Y*, Supreme Court, Spain, 10 February 1984, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 493 (1985).

[724] Oberlandesgericht, Celle, Germany, 14 December 2006, 8 Sch 14/05; *Guang Dong Light Headgear Factory Co. v. ACI International Inc.*, District Court, District of Kansas, United States of America, 10 May 2005, 03-4165-JAR.

[725] *Danish Buyer v. German (F.R.) Seller*, Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Köln, Germany, 10 June 1976, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 258 (1979).

[726] *Cosmos Marine Managements S.A. v. Tianjin Kaiqiang Trading Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 10 January 2007, Min Si Ta Zi No. 34; *Petrotesting Colombia S.A. & Southeast Investment Corporation v. Ross Energy S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 27 July 2011, 11001-0203-000-2007-01956-00; *Guang Dong Light Headgear Factory Co. v. ACI International Inc.*, District Court, District of Kansas, United States of America, 10 May 2005, 03-4165-JAR.

[727] *Loral Space & Communications Holdings Corporation (United States) v. ZAO Globalstar—Space Telecommunications (Russian Federation)*, Presidium of the Highest Court of the Russian Federation, Russian Federation, 20 January 2009, A40-31732/07-30-319; *Consorcio Rive S.A. de C.V. (Mexico) v. Briggs of Cancun, Inc. (United States)*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 26 November 2003, 01-30553.

[728] *Petrotesting Colombia S.A. & Southeast Investment Corporation v. Ross Energy S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 27 July 2011, 11001-0203-000-2007-01956-00.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

c. Mechanics of the "notice" requirement

(i) Form of notice

22. Article V (1)*(b)* is silent as to the form of notice. As a result, no specific form is required for notice.

23. The *travaux préparatoires* reveal that the drafters of the New York Convention contemplated the possibility of specifying the form of notice. One of the early drafts of the clause included the term "due form." The delegates to the Conference discussed the notion of "due form" and ultimately rejected it. The German delegation questioned the criteria that would be applied to determine "due form" and suggested its deletion because it would be difficult to determine in practice what constitutes "due form."[729] The delegates of the United Kingdom and of the former Union of Soviet Socialist Republics suggested that "notified in [...] due form" be replaced with "notified [...] in writing."[730] Furthermore, it was highlighted that "due form" did not appear in article 2*(b)* of the 1927 Geneva Convention, and therefore should be deleted.[731] "Due form" was ultimately removed and the drafters of the New York Convention did not add a requirement that notice be in writing or in any other specific form.

24. Courts are thus left to interpret what is acceptable notice and what constitutes a breach.[732] For example, the Swiss Federal Tribunal stated that a simple letter would constitute adequate notice and thus did not require any particular form.[733]

(ii) Service of notice

25. Article V (1)*(b)* is also silent on the service of notice. Thus there are no formal requirements under the Convention for service of notice either.[734]

---

[729] *Travaux préparatoires*, Report by the Secretary-General, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, 31 January 1956, E/2822, Annex I, p. 23.

[730] *Travaux préparatoires*, Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, Sixth Meeting, E/AC.42/SR.6, p. 4.

[731] *Travaux préparatoires*, Comments by Governments and Organisations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Annex I of E/2822, p. 23.

[732] Albert Jan van den Berg, *Summary of Court Decisions on the N.Y. Convention*, in The New York Convention of 1958, ASA Special Series No. 9, para. 509 (M. Blessing ed., 1996).

[733] *Y v. X*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 3 January 2006, 5P.292/2005.

[734] *Petrotesting Colombia S.A. & Southeast Investment Corporation v. Ross Energy S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 27 July 2011, 11001-0203-000-2007-01956-00; *Drummond Ltd. v. Ferrovias en Liquidación, Ferrocariles Nacionales de Colombia S.A. (FENOCO)*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 19 December 2011, 11001-0203-000-2008-01760-00; *Y v. X*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 3 January 2006, 5P.292/2005.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

26. The delivery and receipt of notice have been interpreted practically and flexibly, the courts having generally considered the conduct of the parties, not the technicalities of service, to evaluate whether or not the parties knew or ought to have known of the existence of the arbitration.[735] In that vein, the reasonable attempt by a claimant to notify a respondent is relevant even if a respondent does not receive the notice. For example, notice delivered by registered mail was held to be sufficient despite the fact that the addressee never picked it up.[736]

27. The majority of courts have not been formalistic with regards to who receives notice. Arguments that the party who received the notice was not the legal representative, authorized agent or precise legal entity have generally failed.[737]

(iii) Whether the notice should be served in a timely manner

28. Article V (1)*(b)* does not provide that notice of the appointment of the arbitrator or of the arbitration proceedings should be served in a timely manner. The language "in sufficient time", contained in article 2*(b)* of the 1927 Geneva Convention and in the early drafts of the article,[738] was later deleted.

29. Generally, timeliness of notice has been interpreted narrowly and with a focus on substance rather than form. As noted by the Supreme Court of Lithuania, late notice is not necessarily improper if the party was still able to participate in the proceedings.[739] Similarly, a Russian court held that late notice of a hearing, which prevented a party from obtaining visas to attend the hearing, was not a violation of the obligation to give proper notice because the party was otherwise aware several months in advance that the hearings would be held in London.[740]

---

[735] *Project XJ220 Ltd. v. Mohamed Yassin D. (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Spain, 1 February 2000, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 507 (2007).

[736] Kammergericht [KG], Germany, 17 April 2008, 20 Sch 02/08.

[737] *Uganda Telecom Ltd. v. Hi-Tech Telecom Pty Ltd.*, Federal Court, Australia, 22 February 2011, NSD 171 of 2010; *Consortium Codest Engineering (Italy) v. OOO Gruppa Most (Russian Federation)*, Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, 22 February 2005, A40-47341/03-25-179; *TH&T International Corp. v. Chengdu Hualong Auto Parts Co., Ltd.*, Sichuan Higher People's Court, China, 12 December 2003, Cheng Min Chu Zi No. 531; *Altain Khuder LLC v. IMC Mining Inc.*, Supreme Court of Victoria, Australia, 28 January 2011, 3827 of 2010; *A v. B*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 16 December 2011, 5A_441/2011.

[738] *Travaux préparatoires*, Report by the Secretary General, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, 31 January 1956, Annex II of E/2822, p. 19.

[739] *Jusimi Corporation v. UAB "Cygnus"*, Supreme Court, Lithuania, 8 September 2003, 3K-3-782/2003.

[740] *Loral Space & Communications Holdings Corporation (United States) v. ZAO Globalstar—Space Telecommunications (Russian Federation)*, Presidium of the Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, 20 January 2009, A40-31732/07-30-319.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

B. Evidence that a party was "unable to present his case"

30. Article V (1)*(b)* also provides that a court may refuse to recognize or enforce an award if the party against whom the award is invoked successfully proves that it was unable to present its case.

a. Meaning of "unable to present his case"

31. This second protection in article V (1)*(b)* means that parties should have been provided with an opportunity to present their case;[741] that they should have had an opportunity to be heard regarding their claims, evidence and defences.

32. Some courts in the United States have interpreted this provision to mean that parties must have an opportunity to be heard at a "meaningful time and in a meaningful manner".[742] As stated by the Swiss Federal Tribunal, "[b]y its general wording, this provision covers any restriction, whatever its nature, of the parties' rights. It appears to contemplate, amongst others, the violation of the right to be heard".[743]

33. In practice, courts have refused recognition and enforcement of awards on the grounds in article V (1)*(b)* where the process has been particularly egregious or where the arbitration radically strayed from standards of due process, such as when a party was prevented from submitting crucial evidence[744] or from receiving or commenting on evidence from an opposing party.[745] For example, a court found a breach of due process when an arbitral tribunal declared inadmissible the submission filed by a party after the closing of the proceedings while relying on a subsequent submission filed thereafter by the other party.[746] Similarly, a Dutch court

[741]See Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration para. 1698 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999).

[742]*Iran Aircraft Indus. v. Avco Corp.*, Courts of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 24 November 1992, 92-7217, 980 F.2d 141, 146; *Karaha Bodas Co. (Cayman Islands) v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara (Indonesia)*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 23 March 2004, 02-20042, 03-20602.

[743]*Chrome Resources S.A. v. Leopold Lazarus Ltd.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 8 February 1978, XI Y.B. Com. Arb. 538 (1986).

[744]*Iran Aircraft Indus v. Avco Corp.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 24 November 1992, 92-7217.

[745]*M. Adeossi v. Sonapra*, Court of First Instance, Cotonou, Benin, 25 January 1994, Ordonnance No. 19/94; Landgericht [LG] Regional Court, Bremen, Germany, 20 January 1983, 12-O-184/1981.

[746]*M. Adeossi v. Sonapra*, Court of First Instance, Cotonou, Benin, 25 January 1994, Ordonnance No. 19/94.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

found a breach of due process when a party was denied the right to comment on or respond to evidence and arguments from the opposing party.[747]

34. Exceptional circumstances may also lead to a finding of a breach of due process. For example, an Italian court found that a month had not been enough time for a party to prepare and present its case in light of the fact that there had been a recent earthquake.[748]

35. The onus is on the parties to present their cases and there will not be a breach where a party could have presented its case but did not.[749] Courts have usually considered that there is no breach of due process where a party has impeded its own ability to present its case, such as by failing to demand an extension of time or by otherwise failing to participate in the arbitral proceedings.[750]

36. In the same vein, most courts have been strict in refusing to find breaches where parties did not remedy their own defaults. The United States Court of Appeals for the First Circuit rejected an alleged breach of due process when a party claimed that its counsel was not representing it meaningfully. The Court reasoned that it was the fault of its own representatives.[751] Another United States Court held that there was no breach of due process when a party complained about a tribunal-appointed expert because that party never objected to the expert or requested a copy of the report.[752] An Italian court held that article V (1)*(b)* "concerns the impossibility rather than the difficulty of presenting one's case."[753] Similarly, a Swiss court found that a party had ample opportunity to present its case when its counsel resigned and it failed to appoint new counsel. The Court reasoned that the party had the time to appoint new counsel but failed to do so.[754]

---

[747] *Rice Trading (Guyana) Ltd. v. Nidera Handelscompagnie BV*, Court of Appeal, The Hague, Netherlands, 28 April 1998, XXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 731 (1998).

[748] *Bauer & Grobmann OHG v. Fratelli Cerrone Alfredo e Raffaele*, Court of Appeal, Naples, Salerno Section, Italy, 18 May 1982, X Y.B. Com. Arb, (1985).

[749] *First State Ins. Co. (United States) v. Banco de Seguros Del Estado (Uruguay)*, Court of Appeals, First Circuit, United States of America, 27 June 2001, 00-2454 (254 F.3d 354); *Standard Elec. Corp. v. Bridas Sociedad Anonima Petrolera, Indus. Y Commercial*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 24 August 1990, 90 Civ. 0720 (KC); *D v. Franz J*, Supreme Court, Austria, 1 September 2010, 3 Ob 122/10b. See also Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 1001-03, para. 1698 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999).

[750] *Dutch Seller v. German (F.R.) Buyer*, Regional Court, Zweibrucken, Germany, 11 January 1978; *Bobbie Brooks Inc. v. Lanificio Walter Bucci s.a.s.*, Court of Appeal, Florence, Italy, 8 October 1977, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 289 (1979).

[751] *First State Ins. Co. (United States) v. Banco de Seguros Del Estado (Uruguay)*, Court of Appeals, First Circuit, United States of America, 27 June 2001, 00-2454 (254 F.3d 354).

[752] *Standard Elec. Corp. v. Bridas Sociedad Anonima Petrolera, Indus. Y Commercial*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 24 August 1990, 90 Civ. 0720 (KC).

[753] *De Maio Giuseppe e Fratelli snc v. Interskins Ltd.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 21 January 2000, 671, XXVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 492 (2002).

[754] *X v. Y*, Camera di esecuzione e fallimenti del Tribunale d'appello, Repubblica e Cantone Ticino, Switzerland, 7 August 1995, 14.9400021.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

b. Tribunals' discretion to organize and control the arbitral proceedings

37. Courts have uniformly emphasized that parties who had the opportunity to correct an issue or procedural flaw but did not, will not benefit from the protections of article V (1)*(b)*. In addition to respecting the spirit and the pro-enforcement bias of the New York Convention, the majority of courts have taken into account the wide discretion vested in arbitral tribunals to organize and control the arbitral proceedings.

38. Courts allow arbitral tribunals significant discretion to establish procedural rules and control their implementation.[755] For instance, a German court found no breach of due process when an arbitral tribunal refused applications to submit evidence.[756] The United States District Court for the Southern District of New York similarly found no breach of due process when an arbitral tribunal imposed the United States Federal Rules of Civil Procedure on an arbitration at the last minute. The Court held that arbitrators have broad discretion to determine arbitral procedure and noted that they had, in that case, referred to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure for guidance.[757]

39. Courts have considered that the rules imposed by arbitral tribunals do not need to conform to domestic standards of due process.[758] A German court found that there was no breach of due process when a tribunal did not hold oral hearings because that was within its discretion and the arbitral rules so permitted.[759] A Swiss court likewise found that an arbitral tribunal had the discretion to consult an industry expert ex parte and thus upheld the recognition and enforcement of the award.[760] The United States District Court for the Northern District of California held that discovery was not guaranteed in arbitration and that its absence does not interfere with the ability of a party to present its case.[761] The United States Court of Appeals for the Fifth Circuit also upheld the recognition and enforcement of an award

[755]Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Celle, Germany, 31 May 2007, 8 Sch 06/06; *Century Indemnity Company, et al. v. Axa Belgium (f/k/a Royale Belge Incendie Reassurance)*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 24 September 2012, 11 Civ. 7263 (JMF); *Compagnie des Bauxites de Guinee v. Hammermills, Inc.*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 29 May 1992, 90-0169.

[756]Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Celle, Germany, 31 May 2007, 8 Sch 06/06.

[757]*Century Indemnity Company, et al. v. Axa Belgium (f/k/a Royale Belge Incendie Reassurance)*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 24 September 2012, 11 Civ. 7263 (JMF).

[758]Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Hamburg, Germany, 30 July 1998, 6 Sch 3/98; *X S.A. v. Y Ltd.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 8 February 1978, P.217/76; *L Ltd. v. C S.A. (GE)*, Court of Justice, Geneva, Switzerland, 17 September 1976, 549.

[759]Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Hamburg, Germany, 30 July 1998, 6 Sch 3/98.

[760]*X S.A. v. Y Ltd.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 8 February 1978, P.217/76; *L Ltd. v. C S.A. (GE)*, Court of Justice, Geneva, Switzerland, 17 September 1976, 549.

[761]*Anthony N. LaPine v. Kyosera Corporation*, District Court, Northern District of California, United States of America, 22 May 2008, C 07-06132 MHP.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

where an arbitral tribunal refused additional discovery because the parties already had sufficient opportunity to present their cases.[762]

40. Courts have held that arbitral tribunals are not obliged to consider every issue raised by a party,[763] nor are they required to divulge every detail of their reasoning.[764] Arbitral tribunals similarly have the power to reformulate the issues presented by the parties.[765]

41. Arbitral tribunals can exercise their discretion to determine what is necessary for a party to present its case and most courts have demonstrated that they give tribunals great leeway in so doing.[766] For example, the Paris Court of Appeal decided to uphold the order recognizing and enforcing an award when the complaining party alleged that it had not received documents used by an expert because neither the tribunal nor the opposing party had relied on those documents.[767] Similarly, the Supreme Court of Austria rejected an alleged breach of due process, when a party claimed that the tribunal failed to investigate facts and refused certain evidence, because the party was still able to present its case.[768]

c. Narrow interpretation of "unable to present his case"

(i) Presence of parties and witnesses

42. A number of courts have interpreted the notion of being "unable to present his case" narrowly when parties have been unable to attend proceedings or hearings.[769]

---

[762] *Karaha Bodas Co. (Cayman Islands) v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara (Indonesia)*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 23 March 2004, 02-20042, 03-20602.

[763] *Budejovicky Budvar, N.P. v. Czech Beer Importers, Inc.*, District Court, District of Connecticut, United States of America, 10 July 2006, 1246 (JBA); Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Frankfurt, Germany, 27 August 2009, 26 SchH 03/09.

[764] *Gas Natural Aprovisionamientos SDG S.A. v. Atlantic LNG Company of Trinidad and Tobago*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 16 September 2008, 08 Civ. 1109 (DLC); Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Frankfurt, Germany, 27 August 2009, 26 SchH 03/09.

[765] *Inter-Arab Investment Guarantee Corporation v. Banque Arabe et Internationale d'Investissements*, Court of Appeal, Brussels, Belgium, 24 January 1997, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 643 (1997).

[766] *Société Unichips Finanziaria SPA et Société Unichips International BV v. Consorts Gesnouin*, Court of Appeal, Paris, France, 12 February 1993, 92-14017; Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Munich, Germany, 14 November 2011, 34, Sch 10/11; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 14 April 1988, III ZR 12/87; *Ministry of Defense & Support for the Armed Forces of Iran v. Cubic Defense Systems, Inc.*, District Court, Southern District of California, United States of America, 7 December 1998, 98-1165-B; *Austria C v. Vladimir Z*, Supreme Court, Austria, 31 March 2005, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 583 (2006).

[767] *Société Unichips Finanziaria SPA et Société Unichips International BV v. Consorts Gesnouin*, Court of Appeal, Paris, France, 12 February 1993, 92-14017.

[768] *Austria C v. Dr. Vladimir Z*, Supreme Court, Austria, 31 March 2005, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 583 (2006).

[769] *Ukraine Kryukovskiy Car Building Works v. Shenyang Changcheng Economic and Trade Company*, Shenyang Intermediate People's Court, China, 22 April 2003, Shen Min Zi No. 16; Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Dusseldorf, Germany, 15 December 2009, I-4 Sch 10/09; *Geotech Lizenz A.G. v. Evergreen Systems, Inc.*, District Court, Eastern District of New York, United States of America, 27 October 1988, CV 88-1406 (697 F. Supp 1248 (E.D.N.Y. 1988)).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

43. For example, a Chinese court found that there was no breach of due process where a party, unable to attend the proceedings, sent its defences in a letter.[770] As a further illustration, a German court found that there was no breach of due process despite the fact that the complaining party was unable to attend a hearing because the court reasoned that it could have sent a representative in its stead.[771] The United States Court of Appeals for the Fifth Circuit similarly found that there was no breach where a party alleged that it was unable to present its case because it could not be present due to a fear of being arrested. The Court noted that physical presence was not necessary to participate in a hearing and that the party could have sent a representative or participated remotely.[772] Likewise, the Supreme Court of Victoria in Australia held that even if a party itself did not present its own case, the requirements of article V (1)*(b)* have been met as long as a related entity has done so.[773]

44. United States courts have applied the same narrow interpretation where the presence of a party's representative is concerned.[774] For example, a United States court held that there was no violation when the tribunal refused to adjourn the proceedings when the Chief Executive Officer of one of the parties was medically unfit to attend.[775]

45. In addition, in a series of decisions, United States courts have held that the inability to cross-examine or present witnesses does not constitute a breach of a party's ability to present its case.[776]

---

[770] *Ukraine Kryukovskiy Car Building Works v. Shenyang Changcheng Economic and Trade Company*, Shenyang Intermediate People's Court, China, 22 April 2003, Shen Min Zi No. 16.

[771] Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Karlsruhe, Germany, 27 March 2006, 9 Sch 02/05.

[772] *Consorcio Rive S.A. de C.V. (Mexico) v. Briggs of Cancun, Inc. (United States)*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 26 November 2003, 01-30553.

[773] *Altain Khuder LLC v. IMC Mining Inc.*, Supreme Court of Victoria, Australia, 28 January 2011, 3827 of 2010.

[774] *Jiangsu Changlong Chemicals Co. (China) v. Burlington Bio-Medical & Scientific Corp. (United States)*, District Court, Eastern District of New York, United States of America, 22 November 2005, CV 05-2082; *Budejovicky Budvar, N.P. v. Czech Beer Importers, Inc.*, District Court, District of Connecticut, 10 July 2006, 1246 (JBA).

[775] *China National Building Material Investment Co. Ltd. v. BNK International LLC*, District Court, Western District of Texas, Austin Division, United States of America, 3 December 2009, A-09-CA-488-SS.

[776] *Generica Ltd. v. Pharma Basics, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Seventh Circuit, United States of America, 29 September 1997, 96-4004; *Parsons & Whittemore Overseas Co. v. Société Generale de L'Industrie du Papier (RAKTA)*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 23 December 1974, 74-1642, 74-1676; *Sonera Holdings B.V. v. Cukurova Holding A.S.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 10 September 2012, 11 Civ. 8909 (DLC); *Agility Public Warehousing CO. K.S.C., Professional Contract Administrators, Inc. v. Supreme Foodservice GMBH*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 6 September 2012, 11-5201-CV; *Phoenix Aktiengesellschaft v. Ecoplas, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 10 December 2004, 03-9000; *Dalmine S.p.A. v. M. & M. Sheet Metal Forming Machinery A.G.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 23 April 1997, 10229, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 709 (1999).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

(ii) Language of the arbitration

46. Arguments that the language of the proceeding affected a party's ability to present its case have generally failed.[777]

47. Most courts consider the context of the language used in the arbitration in assessing whether or not there is a breach of due process. For example, the Spanish Supreme Court did not find a breach of due process when a party complained that the proceedings were conducted in English, holding that English was the common language in international commercial transactions.[778] A German Court found that there was no breach when the proceedings and correspondence were in Russian and the respondent could not understand Russian because the burden was on the respondent to find a translator or interpreter and it should have done so.[779]

48. Some courts take into consideration the arbitration agreement[780] or the applicable procedural rules[781] to determine the language chosen by the parties and have been reluctant to refuse enforcement when parties have previously agreed to the language of an arbitration even if that later poses difficulties. For example, the Supreme Court of Colombia upheld recognition and enforcement of an award when the complaining party was unable to afford the costs of translators or interpreters and could not understand the language of the arbitration.[782]

C. Procedural hurdles to showing a breach of article V (1)*(b)*

a. Outcome determinative requirement

49. It is not uncommon for courts to require parties opposing enforcement under article V (1)*(b)* to prove not only a breach of due process, but also that the

[777] *Kastrup Trae-Aluvinduet A/S (Denmark) v. Aluwood Concepts Ltd. (Ireland)*, High Court, Ireland, 13 November 2009, 2009 169 MCA, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 404 (2009).

[778] *Precious Stones Shipping Limited (Thailand) v. Querqus Alimentaria S.L. (Spain)*, Supreme Court, Spain, 28 November 2000, 2658 of 1999, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 540 (2007).

[779] Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Celle, Germany, 2 October 2001, 8 Sch 3/01.

[780] *Petrotesting Colombia S.A. & Southeast Investment Corporation v. Ross Energy S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 27 July 2011, 11001-0203-000-2007-01956-00; *K (Ukraine) v. F AG (Austria)*, Supreme Court, Austria, 23 October 2007, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 354 (2008).

[781] Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Munich, Germany, 22 June 2009, 34 Sch 26/08.

[782] *Petrotesting Colombia S.A. & Southeast Investment Corporation v. Ross Energy S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 27 July 2011, 11001-0203-000-2007-01956-00.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

outcome of the case would have been different had the alleged breach not occurred.[783]

50. In a recent German decision, a higher regional court found that there was no basis for rejecting enforcement on the grounds of a violation of the right to be heard under article V (1)*(b)*, as the alleged failure to properly inform the buyer of the constitution of the arbitral tribunal was not relevant because it had failed to show that it would have raised any additional defences had it been properly informed of such constitution.[784] The court followed the same reasoning in relation to the alleged failure to duly summon the buyer to the oral hearing. As stated by the higher regional court, violations of the right to be heard would only form the basis for rejecting enforcement if such violations had in fact prevented the affected party from raising its claims and defences. It concluded that in this case, the buyer knew of the arbitration proceedings and could thus have raised its defences, but failed to do so.[785]

b. Waiver

51. Violation of due process, under article V (1)*(b)*, may, as a general matter, be waived, subject to limitations.

52. A number of courts have considered that parties ought to object promptly to any violation of due process, rather than waiting until the enforcement stage to raise the issue for the first time. Courts have not found a violation of due process under article V (1)*(b)* where parties have waited until after the arbitration to raise a due process issue for the first time.[786] For example, in the face of a party's objec-

[783] *Firm P v. Firm F*, Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Hamburg, Germany, 3 April 1975, II Y.B. Com. Arb. 241 (1977); *German (F.R.) charterer v. Romanian shipowner*, Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 15 May 1986, XII Y.B. Com. Arb. 489 (1987); *Seller v. Buyer*, Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 26 April 1990, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 532 (1996); *Manufacturer (Slovenia) v. Exclusive Distributor (Germany)*, Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Schleswig, Germany, 24 June 1999, 16 SchH 01/99; *Buyer v. Seller*, Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Frankfurt, Germany, 27 August 2009, 26 SchH 03/09, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 377 (2010); *Apex Tech Investment Ltd. (China) v. Chuang's Development (China) Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, Hong Kong, 15 March 1996, CACV000231/1995; *Polytek Engineering Company Limited v. Hebei Import & Export Corporation*, High Court of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of Appeal, Hong Kong, 16 January 1998, 116 of 1997; Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Frankfurt, Germany, 18 October 2007, 26 Sch 1/07.

[784] Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Frankfurt, Germany, 18 October 2007, 26 Sch 1/07.

[785] Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Frankfurt, Germany, 18 October 2007, 26 Sch 1/07.

[786] *AO Techsnabexport v. Globe Nuclear Services and Supply GNSS Lmt.*, Court of Appeals, Fourth Circuit, United States of America, 15 December 2010, 09-2064; Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Germany, 26 January 1989, 6 U 71/88; *Standard Elec. Corp. v. Bridas Sociedad Anonima Petrolera, Indus. Y Commercial*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 24 August 1990, 90 Civ. 0720 (KC); Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Hamm, Germany, 2 November 1983, 20 U 57/83; *Consultant company (United Kingdom) v. Painting contractors (Germany)*, Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Munich, Germany, 28 November 2005, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 722 (2006); Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Karlsruhe, Germany, 27 March 2006, 9 Sch 02/05, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 342 (2007); *Shenzhen Nan Da Industrial and Trade United Co. Ltd. v. FM International Ltd.*, High Court, Supreme Court, Hong Kong, 2 March 1992, MP 12492.

tion at the enforcement stage that one of the arbitrator's had given an opinion in a related case, the Paris Court of Appeal found that the party should have objected to the arbitrator's appointment at the time of the arbitral proceedings.[787] A German court similarly refused to find a breach when a party claimed that it had not been timely informed of the opposing party's counterclaims because it failed to object promptly at the time of the arbitral proceedings.[788] As stated by an Indian court, "if the Defendant after receipt of the interim award failed to contest the matter, the blame cannot be laid at the door of the arbitrators for no fault of theirs."[789]

53. Even though Article V (1)*(b)* does not mention the possibility of advance waivers, German courts have accepted limited waivers of certain procedures or deadlines,[790] but not complete waivers of all due process requirements.[791]

[787] *Compagnie Française d'études et de construction Technip (Technip) v. Entreprise nationale des engrais et des produits phyosanitaires (Asmidal)*, Court of Appeal, Paris, France, 2 April 1998, 97/6929.

[788] Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Germany, 26 January 1989, 6 U 71/88.

[789] *Glencore Grain Rotterdam B.V. v. Shivnath Rai Harnarain*, High Court, Delhi, India, 27 November 2008.

[790] *K Trading Company (Syria) v. Bayerischen Motoren Werke AG (Germany)*, Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht [BayObLG], Germany, 23 September 2004, 4Z Sch 05-04, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 568 (2005).

[791] *Danish Buyer v. German (F.R.) Seller*, Oberlandesgericht, Koln, Germany, 10 June 1976, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 256 (1979).

Article V (1)*(c)*

1. Recognition and enforcement of the award may be refused, at the request of the party against whom it is invoked, only if that party furnishes to the competent authority where the recognition and enforcement is sought, proof that:

[…]

(c) The award deals with a difference not contemplated by or not falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or it contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration, provided that, if the decisions on matters submitted to arbitration can be separated from those not so submitted, that part of the award which contains decisions on matters submitted to arbitration may be recognized and enforced;

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article V (1)*(c)* as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704 and Annex.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822, Annexes I-II; E/2822/Add.4; E/2822/Add.5; E/2822/Corr.1; E/CONF.26/3; E/CONF.26/3/Add.1.
- Comments on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: Note by the Secretary General: E/CONF.26/2.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.17; E/CONF.26/L.31; E/CONF.26/L.32; E/CONF.26/L.34.
- Comparison of Drafts Relating to Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention: E/CONF.26/L.33; E/CONF.26/L.33/Rev.1.
- Further Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.40.
- Text of Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention Proposed by Working Party III: E/CONF.26/L.43.
- Text of Articles Adopted by the Conference: E/CONF.26/L.48.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/L.61; E/CONF.26/8.
- Final Act and Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Eleventh, Twelfth, Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Seventeenth Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR.11; E/CONF.26/SR.12; E/CONF.26/SR.13; E/CONF.26/SR.14; E/CONF.26/SR.17.
- Summary Records of the First and Sixth Meetings of the Committee on Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.1; E/AC.42/SR.6.

Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards:

- Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: statement submitted by the International Chamber of Commerce, a non-governmental organization having consultative status in category A: E/C.2/373.
- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/4.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

Introduction

1. Article V (1)(c) of the New York Convention allows the competent authorities in Contracting States to refuse recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award, or part of that award, where the award contains decisions on matters "beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration".

2. Article V (1)(c) finds its roots in article 2(c) of the 1927 Geneva Convention.[792] The language at the outset of article V (1)(c), providing a ground for refusal of recognition or enforcement of awards exceeding the scope of the arbitration agreement, is largely unchanged from its counterpart in the 1927 Geneva Convention. The New York Convention, however, limits the scope of article V (1)(c) by omitting language found in article 2 of the 1927 Geneva Convention which permitted enforcing authorities to delay, or create conditions in relation to, the enforcement of awards, where the award did not cover all the questions submitted to the arbitral tribunal.[793]

3. The drafters of the New York Convention further built on the 1927 Geneva Convention by explicitly allowing for severability of the part of the award dealing with a difference not contemplated by or not falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or containing decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration, in order to permit recognition and enforcement of the part of the award containing decisions on matters submitted to arbitration. Although there is generally little discussion of article V (1)(c) in the *travaux préparatoires*, the inclusion of the provision allowing for partial recognition and enforcement was the subject of some debate. The *travaux préparatoires* show that various concerns were raised over the form and substance of this principle, including concerns that severability of arbitral awards would in practice "open the door to a review as to substance",[794] which the drafters of the New York Convention sought to prevent. Courts have since uncompromisingly asserted that article V (1)(c) does not permit an enforcing authority to reconsider the merits of a dispute.[795]

---

[792]Article 2(c) of the 1927 Geneva Convention states: "Even if the conditions laid down in Article 1 hereof are fulfilled, recognition and enforcement of the award shall be refused if the Court is satisfied: [...] (c) That the award does not deal with the differences contemplated by or falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration or that it contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration."

[793]Article 2 of the 1927 Geneva Convention states in relevant part: "If the award has not covered all the questions submitted to the arbitral tribunal, the competent authority of the country where recognition or enforcement of the award is sought can, if it think fit, postpone such recognition or enforcement or grant it subject to such guarantee as that authority may decide".

[794]*Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Report by the Secretary-General - Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/2822, p. 23.

[795]See the chapter of the Guide on article V (1)(c), paras. 43-45.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

4. Another concern raised at the time of drafting the provision that allows for partial recognition and enforcement was that "an arbitral award constitutes an organic whole, the spirit of which may be violated if it is split up into component parts."[796] That concern was not shared, and recent English case law, for example, has observed that "[i]mmediate enforcement of discrete parts of the award would go with the grain of the award, not undermine it or second guess it."[797] Ultimately the interest of facilitating enforcement of awards prevailed and the provision allowing partial enforcement of awards has since been applied broadly.

Analysis

A. General principles

a. Meaning of "submission to arbitration"

5. Article V (1)*(c)* provides that courts may refuse to recognize or enforce an award if it addresses disputes outside of the terms of the "submission to arbitration".

6. Courts and commentators agree that an arbitration agreement[798] constitutes a "submission to arbitration" within the meaning of article V (1)*(c)*. Consequently, where an arbitral tribunal has rendered an award which decides matters beyond the scope of the arbitration agreement, there is a ground for refusing to enforce an award under article V (1)*(c)*.[799]

---

[796]*Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Report by the Secretary-General —Corrigendum—Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/2822/Corr. 1, p. 1.

[797]*IPCO (Nigeria) Ltd. v. Nigerian National Petroleum Corp.*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 17 April 2008, [2008] EWHC 797 (Comm), para. 103.

[798]An arbitration agreement could take the form of either an arbitral clause in a contract or a separate arbitration agreement: for a further discussion about the form of the arbitration agreement, see the chapter of the Guide on article II, paras. 36-57.

[799]Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 987-88, para. 1700 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Christian Borris, Rudolf Hennecke, *Commentary to Article V (1)(c)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 309, 311, paras. 201-02 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Paolo Michele Patocchi & Cesare Jermini, *Article 194*, in International Arbitration in Switzerland: an Introduction to and a Commentary on Articles 176-194 of the Swiss Private International Law Statute 661, para. 95 (S.V. Berti et al. eds., 2000); Ulrich Haas, *The New York Convention on recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards of 1958*, in Practitioner's Handbook on International Arbitration 499, paras. 39-40 (F.-B. Weigand ed., 2002); *Parsons & Whittemore Overseas Co. v. Société Générale de l'Industrie du Papier (RAKTA)*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 23 December 1974, 508 F.2d 969 , 976, para. 11.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

7. Courts have also held that the term "submission to arbitration" can include an arbitration agreement modified, amended or supplemented by an arbitral institution's terms of reference agreed to by the arbitrators and disputing parties. Terms of reference may indeed supplement or modify the arbitration agreement. For example, a German court of appeal held that the parties had concluded a new arbitration agreement by signing ICC Terms of Reference.[800] Similarly, a decision by the English House of Lords stated that "[i]n the present case one is dealing with an ICC arbitration agreement. In such a case the terms of reference which under article 18 of the ICC rules are invariably settled may, of course, amend or supplement the terms of the arbitration agreement."[801]

8. Authors and courts have also considered whether article V (1)*(c)* provides grounds for refusing to recognize or enforce where the arbitrator's decision goes beyond the parties' pleadings or prayers for relief to render an award *ultra petita*. Though some authors have argued that article V (1)*(c)* provides a second, separate ground for refusal to enforce an award rendered *ultra petita*,[802] courts have rejected challenges to recognition or enforcement under article V (1)*(c)* based on the fact that the arbitrators had exceeded their authority by deciding on issues or granting forms of relief beyond those pleaded by the parties. As one United States court observed, "[u]nder the New York Convention, we examine whether the award exceeds the scope of the [arbitration agreement], not whether the award exceeds the scope of the parties' pleadings".[803] This interpretation of article V (1)*(c)* which distinguishes the parties' pleadings or prayers for relief from the "submission to arbitration" referred to in article V (1)*(c)*, is consistent with a narrow interpretation of the grounds for refusal to recognize or enforce an award.

9. A United States District Court rejected a challenge to an award in which the tribunal had ordered relief that neither party had requested, including conditional divestiture of a party's shares and an anti-suit injunction, in connection with an arbitration agreement which specifically empowered the tribunal to "grant any

[800] *Seller v. Buyer*, Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Stuttgart, Germany, 6 December 2001, 1 Sch 12/01, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 742 (2004).

[801] *Lesotho Highlands Development Authority v. Impreglio SpA et al.*, House of Lords, England and Wales, 30 June 2005, [2005] UKHL 43, para. 21.

[802] Jean François Poudret, Sébastien Besson, Comparative Law of International Arbitration 836-37, para. 913 (2007); Stefan Michael Kröll, *Commentary on the German Arbitration Law (10th Book of the German Code of Civil Procedure)*, in Arbitration in Germany: The Model Law in Practice 541-42, para. 84 (K. H. Böckstiegel, S. Kröll, P. Nacimiento eds., 2007); Mercédeh Azeredo da Silveira & Laurent Levy, *Transgression of the Arbitrators' Authority: Article V (1)(c) of the New York Convention*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 639, 650-53 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

[803] *Ministry of Defense of the Islamic Republic of Iran v. Gould, Inc.; Gould Marketing, Inc.; Hoffman Export Corporation; Gould International, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, United States of America, 30 June 1992, 969 F.2d 764; see also *The Ministry of Defense and Support for the Armed Forces of the Islamic Republic of Iran v. Cubic Defense Systems, Inc.*, District Court, Southern District of California, United States of America, 8 December 1998, Civ. Case No. 98-1165-B.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

remedy or relief that they deem just and equitable." The court considered that "while an arbitrator may not award relief expressly forbidden by the [arbitration agreement], an arbitrator may award relief not sought by either party, so long as the relief lies within the broad discretion conferred by the [United States Federal Arbitration Act]."[804]

10. The United States Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit found that explicit authority in an arbitration agreement to award costs was not necessary under the ICC Rules of Arbitration.[805] The United States Court of Appeals for the Ninth Circuit later stated more broadly that "[s]ince we find the arbiters' authority to reach the main decision was within the scope of the letter agreement, it follows the arbiters also had the authority to award costs and fees for obtaining the arbitral decision."[806]

11. With respect to the award of interest, the Hamburg Court of Appeal rejected a challenge to enforcement under article V (1)*(c)*, made on the basis that the arbitral tribunal had awarded more interest than had been claimed, considering that an "arbitral tribunal can in its discretion and on its own initiative award interest and compound interest for the time until the rendition of the award and for the time after the rendition of the award."[807]

b. Article V (1)(c) *only concerns issues "beyond" the scope*

12. Leading commentators agree that article V (1)*(c)* does not apply to awards which fail to address all the issues submitted to the arbitral tribunal for resolution.[808] Though there are no reported cases addressing whether article V (1)*(c)* applies to awards rendered infra petita, the view that such awards do not provide grounds for refusal of recognition or enforcement is consistent with the text and spirit of the Convention.

---

[804] *Telenor Mobile Communications AS v. Storm LLC*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 2 November 2007, 524 F. Supp. 2d 332.

[805] *Parsons & Whittemore Overseas Co. v. Société Générale de l'Industrie du Papier (RAKTA)*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 23 December 1974, 508 F.2d 969.

[806] *Mgmt. & Tech. Consultants S.A. v. Parsons-Jurden Int'l Corp.*, Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, United States of America, 8 July 1987, 820 F.2d 1531.

[807] *Shipowner v. Time Charterer*, Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamburg, Germany, 30 July 1998, 6 Sch 3/98, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 641 (2000).

[808] Jean-François Poudret, Sebastien Besson, Comparative Law of International Arbitration 836-37, para. 914 (2007); Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 987-88, para. 1700 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Stefan Michael Kröll, *Commentary on the German Arbitration Law (10th Book of the German Code of Civil Procedure)*, in Arbitration in Germany: The Model Law in Practice 541-42, para. 84 (K. H. Böckstiegel, S. M. Kröll, P. Nacimiento eds., 2007).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

13. *First*, the pleadings and requests for relief submitted by the parties to the arbitral tribunal do not constitute a "submission to arbitration" within the meaning of article V (1)*(c)* and therefore cannot provide the basis for a challenge to recognition or enforcement of an award under article V (1)*(c)*, regardless of whether the award extends beyond the pleadings or requests for relief, or fails to address all of the issues raised therein.

14. *Second*, the text of article V (1)*(c)* only provides grounds for refusing to recognize or enforce awards that decide on issues which go "beyond" the parties' agreement to arbitrate. Nothing in the language of article V (1)*(c)* grants enforcing authorities the discretion to refuse or otherwise limit the recognition or enforcement of an award which has failed to address all issues submitted by the parties, but which is otherwise enforceable as to the issues addressed.

15. As recorded in the *travaux préparatoires* of the New York Convention, the omission of language in the 1927 Geneva Convention allowing postponement of recognition or enforcement, or granting enforcement subject to a guarantee, of any award that "has not covered all the questions submitted to the arbitral tribunal", was a "significant change" from the wording of the 1927 Geneva Convention.[809] The omission is particularly notable given that article V (1)*(c)* contains very similar language to article 2*(b)* of the 1927 Geneva Convention.[810]

c. *Interpretation of "matters"*

16. Article V (1)*(c)* provides grounds for refusing to recognize or enforce awards that decide on "matters" which are outside the scope of the arbitration agreement. "Matters" has broadly been defined in two ways: first, as the subject matter over which the arbitral tribunal has jurisdiction pursuant to the arbitration agreement; and second, in some jurisdictions, as the personal jurisdiction over one of the parties addressed in the award. In relation to the latter interpretation, it is notable that in any event, article V (1)*(a)* directly addresses consent of the parties.[811]

(i) Subject matter jurisdiction

17. Courts and commentators have consistently considered that "matters" refers to the subject matter that is encompassed by the arbitration agreement and thus

[809] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Comments by Governments on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/2822/Add. 4, p. 6.

[810] Albert Jan van Den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 320 (1981).

[811] See the chapter of the Guide on article V (1)*(c)*, paras. 5-11.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

subject to the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal that issued the award in question.[812]

18. For example, pursuant to article V (1)*(c)*, the Trento Court of Appeal in Italy refused to enforce part of an award which granted damages in connection with "technical" disputes. The arbitration clause provided that the local arbitral tribunal issuing the award only had jurisdiction over "non-technical" disputes, and any "technical" disputes were to be resolved by an international arbitral tribunal under the ICC Arbitration Rules.[813]

19. Parties have also successfully challenged enforcement of awards under article V (1)*(c)* on the grounds that an award was based on an underlying contract which was not within the subject matter of the arbitration agreement. Although an arbitration agreement may extend to contracts which are not explicitly included within its scope, such extension is by no means automatic, and depends on the intention of the parties.[814]

(ii) Personal jurisdiction

20. Parties have brought successful challenges to enforcement of arbitral awards under article V (1)*(c)* in several jurisdictions on the grounds that the arbitral award addressed a party that was not bound by the arbitration agreement. Several courts have therefore considered that *ratione personae* is also a "matter" within the meaning of article V (1)*(c)* and can therefore constitute a valid basis for an article V (1)*(c)* challenge to recognition or enforcement of an award.

21. For example, some Chinese courts have refused to enforce arbitral awards under article V (1)*(c)* on the grounds that the awards dealt with parties that were

---

[812]Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 3544 (2014); Alan Redfern, Martin Hunter et al., Redfern & Hunter on International Arbitration 645-47 (2009); Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 986-87, para. 1700 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); *Parsons & Whittemore Overseas Co. v. Société Générale de l'Industrie du Papier (RAKTA)*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 23 December 1974, 508 F.2d 969, 977, para. 13.

[813]*General Organization of Commerce and Industrialization of Cereals of the Arab Republic of Syria v. S.p.a. SIMER (Società delle Industrie Meccaniche di Rovereto)*, Court of Appeal of Trento, Civil Section, Italy, 14 January 1981, VIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 386 (1983).

[814]See Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 1369-72 (2014); Bernard Hanotiau, Complex Arbitrations: Multiparty, Multicontract, Multi-Issue and Class Actions (2005), Chapter III. See also *York Airconditioning & Refrigeration Inc. v. Lam Kwai Hung T/A North Sea A/C Elect Eng. Co.*, High Court, Supreme Court of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, 16 December 1994, [1995] 1 HKC 287; and *Four Seasons Hotels And Resorts B.V. et al. v. Consorcio Barr, S.A.*, District Court, Southern District of Florida, United States of America, 12 May 2009, Case No. 04-20673-CIV-MOORE/ISIMONTON.

not bound by the arbitration agreement.[815] In one case, the Supreme People's Court overturned a lower court's decision denying recognition of an award pursuant to article V (1)*(c)* and decided to enforce the award.[816] A United States District Court denied enforcement of part of an arbitral award under article V (1)*(c)* on the basis that the arbitral tribunal had "exceeded its authority when it purported to bind a non-signatory who was not expressly covered by the arbitration agreement."[817]

22. In a multiparty context, where disputes under two separate contracts were joined in one arbitration, and where both contracts were not signed by the same parties, the Federal Arbitrazh Court of the Russian Federation refused to enforce an award which determined responsibilities between two parties who were not both signatories to the same arbitration agreement, and as such had not together agreed to arbitrate their disputes.[818] Similarly, a Russian Federal Arbitrazh Court refused enforcement under article V (1)*(c)* on the grounds that no valid arbitration agreement existed, though this decision was ultimately overturned by the Highest Arbitrazh Court based on the facts.[819]

23. The Court of Appeal of England and Wales considered a challenge to enforcement under article V (1)*(c)* on the basis that the award addressed parties who were not bound by the arbitration agreement. The court ultimately rejected this challenge because the arbitral award, though mentioning other parties who were not bound by the arbitration agreement, did not make any award in their favour or any determination with respect to the rights of those parties.[820]

24. Though some courts have considered that challenges to personal jurisdiction may fall under article V (1)*(c)*, these challenges may alternatively be deemed to constitute disputes in relation to consent and the existence of a valid arbitration agreement, which fall more squarely under article V (1)*(a)*. Indeed, some commentators consider that only the subject matter jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal

---

[815] *Gerald Metals Inc. v. Wuhu Smelter & Refinery Co., Ltd. and Wuhu Hengxin Copper (Group) Inc.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 12 November 2003, [2003] Min Si Ta Zi No. 12; *First Investment Corp. (Marshall Island) v. Fujian Mawei Shipbuilding Corp. and Fujian Shipbuilding Corp.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 27 February 2008, [2007] Min Si Ta Zi No. 35, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 349 (2010); *Hemofarm DD, MAG International Trade Holding DD, Suram Media Ltd. v. Jinan Yongning Pharmaceutical Co. Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 2 June 2008, [2008] Min Si Ta Zi No. 11; *Aoetker Germany v. Sinotrans Nanjing Co., Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 11 September 2001, [2000] Jiao Ta Zi No. 11.

[816] *Aoetker Germany v. Sinotrans Nanjing Co.*, Ltd., Supreme People's Court, China, 11 September 2001, [2000] Jiao Ta Zi No. 11.

[817] *FIAT S.p.A. v. The Ministry of Finance and Planning of the Republic of Suriname, Suriname Rice Export Company N.V. et al. v. Alvaro N. Sardi*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 12 October 1989, 1989 WL 122891, 4, para. 5.

[818] *O&Y Investments Ltd. v. OAO Bummash*, Federal Arbitrazh Court, Northwestern District, Russian Federation, 12 October 2005, F09-2110/05-S6, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 687 (2008).

[819] *HiPP GmbH & Co. Export KG v. ZAO SIVMA*, Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, 14 June 2011, 1787/11.

[820] *Deutsche Schachtbau-und Tiefbohrgesellschaft mbH v. R'as al-Khaimah National Oil Co.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 24 March 1987, 3 W.L.R. [1986 D No. 2196] [1987 R No. 273].

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

is a "matter" within the meaning of article V (1)*(c)*, as opposed to the arbitral tribunal's jurisdiction over a particular party.[821]

d. Scope of the arbitration agreement versus scope of the underlying contract

25. The language of article V (1)*(c)* is clear that recognition or enforcement of an award may be refused if it addresses issues which exceed the scope of the parties' agreement to arbitrate. Following a narrow interpretation of article V (1)*(c)*, courts have consistently distinguished between examining the scope of the arbitration agreement itself and the scope of the underlying contract.

26. Courts have thus rejected challenges under article V (1)*(c)* brought by parties on the basis that an award has somehow exceeded limits imposed by the scope of the underlying contract, rather than the arbitration agreement. As stated in an often-cited decision by the United States Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit, "[a]lthough the Convention recognizes that an award may not be enforced where predicated on a subject matter outside the arbitrator's jurisdiction, it does not sanction second-guessing the arbitrator's construction of the parties' agreement".[822]

27. One United States District Court found that an award for consequential damages was within the submission to arbitrate even though consequential damages were explicitly precluded by the terms of the underlying contract, in circumstances where consequential damages were included in the terms of reference and a reasoned award by the arbitral tribunal justified their application.[823]

28. In another example, a party challenged enforcement of an arbitral award before the Svea Court of Appeal in Sweden, claiming that the award determined disputes relating to a particular product that was not in existence at the time the

[821] Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 3544-45 (2014); Alan Redfern, J. Martin Hunter et al., Redfern & Hunter on International Arbitration 645, para. 11.76 (2009) (referring to The Arab Republic of Egypt v. Southern Pacific Properties, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 12 July 1984, 23 ILM (1984)); Paolo Michele Patocchi & Cesare Jermini, Article 194, in International Arbitration in Switzerland: an Introduction to and a Commentary on Articles 176-194 of the Swiss Private International Law Statute 660-61, para. 94 (S.V. Berti et al. eds., 2000); Stefan Michael Kröll, Commentary on the German Arbitration Law (10th Book of the German Code of Civil Procedure), in Arbitration in Germany: The Model Law in Practice 541, para. 83 (K.H. Böckstiegel, S. Kröll, P. Nacimiento eds., 2007); Mercédeh Azeredo da Silveira & Laurent Levy, Transgression of the Arbitrators' Authority: Article V (1)(c) of the New York Convention, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 639, 639-40 (E. Gaillard, D. di Pietro eds., 2008). But see Jean François Poudret, Sébastien Besson, Comparative Law of International Arbitration 836-37, para. 913 (2007).

[822] *Parsons & Whittemore Overseas Co. v. Société Générale de l'Industrie du Papier (RAKTA)*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 23 December 1974, 508 F.2d 969.

[823] *Fertilizer Corp. of India v. IDI Mgmt. Inc.*, District Court, Southern District of Ohio, United States of America, 9 June 1981, 517 F. Supp. 948.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

underlying contract was entered into, and thus could not be within the scope of the arbitration agreement contained within the contract. Considering the challenge to enforcement pursuant to Section 54(3) of the Swedish Arbitration Act, which mirrors article V (1)*(c)*, the court found that the issue of whether the product was included in the subject matter of the relevant contract could not be resolved without an interpretation of the contract, which would go to the merits of the arbitral award, and therefore could not be considered by the court.[824]

B. Partial recognition of an award

29. In keeping with the pro-enforcement bias of the New York Convention, article V (1)*(c)* provides "that part of the award which contains decisions on matters submitted to arbitration may be recognized and enforced", provided that matters properly within the scope of the arbitration agreement "can be separated from those not so submitted."

30. The limited discussion in the *travaux préparatoires* on this issue could be understood as suggesting that severability would be appropriate in cases where the matters in the award going beyond the scope of the agreement were "secondary" in nature or which constituted, as one delegate put it, "a small detail" in the context of the rest of the award.[825] In practice, its application is much broader.[826]

31. A United States District Court partially enforced an award that covered multiple contracts, after finding that one of the contracts was not within the scope of the arbitration agreement. The court enforced the part of the award dealing with the contracts that were covered by the arbitration agreement.[827]

32. Courts have also applied article V (1)*(c)* in the context of multiparty arbitrations to exclude from enforcement portions of an award which address a party not bound by the arbitration agreement, but enforce the award with respect to the remaining parties. This was the case in a challenge to enforcement brought under article V (1)*(c)* before the Supreme People's Court of China, which found that one of the respondents named in the award was not a party to the arbitration

[824] *American Pacific Corp. v. Sydsvensk Produktutveckling AB*, Svea Court of Appeal, Sweden, 21 March 2001, Ö 4859-00, XXVII Y.B. Com. Arb. 551 (2002).

[825] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Seventeenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.17, p. 9. See also Albert Jan van den Berg, *The New York Convention of 1958: An Overview*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 59-60 (E. Gaillard, D. di Pietro eds., 2008).

[826] Mercédeh Azeredo da Silveira & Laurent Levy, *Transgression of the Arbitrators' Authority: Article V (1)(c) of the New York Convention*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 639, 676 (E. Gaillard, D. di Pietro eds., 2008).

[827] *Four Seasons Hotels And Resorts B.V. et al. v. Consorcio Barr, S.A.*, District Court, Southern District of Florida, United States of America, 12 May 2009, 1:04-cv-20673-KMM.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

agreement. The court recognized only the portion of the award that dealt specifically and exclusively with the liability of the other respondent, who was a party to the arbitration agreement.[828] Similarly, following a challenge brought under article V (1)*(c)*, a United States District Court declined to enforce part of an arbitral award which was made against a non-signatory to the arbitration agreement, but enforced the remainder of the award against another respondent who was a party to the arbitration agreement.[829]

33. The severability provision of article V (1)*(c)*, permitting the part of an award to be recognized and enforced where it does address issues within the scope of the submission to arbitration, is consistent with the aim of the Convention to facilitate the enforcement of arbitral awards.[830] Some authors have gone so far as to suggest, in the same spirit, that despite the use of the word "may" in article V (1)*(c)*, in light of the Convention's pro-enforcement bias, courts "must" recognize those parts of an award which are recognizable.[831]

C. Relationship with other articles in the Convention

a. *Article V (1)*(a)

34. Article V (1)*(a)* provides that courts may refuse recognition or enforcement of arbitral awards which are not based on a valid arbitration agreement.[832] Article V (1)*(a)* is similar in nature to article V (1)*(c)* in that both articles concern whether an arbitral award has been rendered on the basis of a valid arbitration agreement. Thus both articles V (1)*(a)* and V (1)*(c)* may be engaged by challenges regarding the validity of an arbitration agreement.[833]

---

[828] *Gerald Metals Inc. v. Wuhu Smelter & Refinery Co., Ltd. and Wuhu Hengxin Copper (Group) Inc.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 12 November 2003, [2003] Min Si Ta Zi No. 12.

[829] *FIAT S.p.A. v. The Ministry of Finance and Planning of the Republic of Suriname, Suriname Rice Export Company N.V. et al. v. Alvaro N. Sardi,* District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 12 October 1989, 1989 WL 122891.

[830] See Christian Borris, Rudolf Hennecke, *Commentary to Article V (1)(c)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 309, 328, para. 259 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[831] Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 3444 (2014); Nicola Christine Port, Scott Ethan Bowers, Bethany Davis Noll, *Article V (1)(c)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 257, 276 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

[832] See the chapter of the Guide on article V (1)*(a)*.

[833] *Astro Nusantara International BV et al. v. PT Ayunda Prima Mitra et al.*, Court of First Instance, High Court of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, Hong Kong, 21 March 2012, HCCT 45/2010, para. 19.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

35. At the same time, the provisions serve distinct purposes. Where article V (1) *(a)* concerns the existence of a valid arbitration agreement which is binding on all the parties addressed by an award, article V (1)*(c)* assumes the existence of a valid arbitration agreement between the parties and is concerned instead with whether an award has gone beyond the scope of the subject matter the parties intended to submit to arbitration.

36. However, this distinction is not always clearly made in practice. As noted above, courts in several jurisdictions have addressed the issue of whether a party has consented to be bound by an arbitration agreement as one falling under article V (1)*(c)* rather than V (1)*(a)*. In practice, it is uncontroversial that a party's lack of consent to arbitrate provides grounds for challenging recognition or enforcement of an award, regardless of which sub-paragraph of article V is invoked. However, addressing whether a party has consented to arbitrate under article V (1)*(a)* is ultimately consistent with the distinct purposes articles V (1)*(a)* and V (1)*(c)* that were given by the drafters of the Convention.

b. Extended application of the partial enforcement principle established by article V (1)(c)

37. Article V (1)*(c)* is the only article in the Convention which expressly states that courts may partially enforce an award when there are grounds for refusing to recognize or enforce some aspects of the award.[834] Courts have referred to the principle for partial enforcement expressed in article V (1)*(c)* to partially enforce awards in connection with challenges brought under other provisions of the Convention. For example, some courts have partially recognized or enforced awards which would otherwise be refused enforcement on public policy grounds.[835]

38. Further, where an application to set aside the arbitral award was pending before a court at the seat of the arbitration, the Court of Appeal of England and Wales considered that the partial enforcement provisions of article V (1)*(c)* could be applied to enforce the parts of the award that were not subject to challenge.[836]

---

[834]Article V (1)*(c)* provides that where grounds for refusal of recognizing or enforcing an award exist with respect to only part of an arbitral award, "that part of the award which contains decisions on matters submitted to arbitration may be recognized and enforced", provided that matters properly within the scope of the arbitral agreement "can be separated from those not so submitted." See the chapter of the Guide on article V (1)*(c)*, paras. 29-33.

[835]See, e.g., *J. J. Agro Industries (P) Ltd. v. Texuna International Ltd.*, High Court, Supreme Court of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, 12 August 1992, HCMP000751/1992; *Buyer (Austria) v. Seller (Serbia and Montenegro)*, Supreme Court, Austria, 26 January 2005, 3 Ob 221/04b. See also Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 3445-46 (2014).

[836]*Nigeria (NNPC) v. IPCO (Nigeria) Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 21 October 2008, [2008] EWCA Civ 1157. See also *IPCO (Nigeria) Ltd. v. Nigerian National Petroleum Corp.*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 17 April 2008, [2008] EWHC 797 (Comm).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

D. Procedural aspects

a. Standing

39. Article V (1) provides that it is the party against whom the award is invoked that may raise a challenge with respect to the grounds for refusal set forth in article V (1).

40. Courts have consistently confirmed this in relation to article V (1)*(c)*.[837] For example, the United States Court of Appeals for the Fifth Circuit denied a party's attempt to raise a challenge under article V (1)*(c)* to oppose an order compelling arbitration, that is, before the arbitral proceedings had even taken place.[838] The court noted that the provision could only be invoked by a party opposing enforcement of an award, which was not possible in circumstances where no award had been issued, and also unlikely where the party raising the challenge was the claimant in the would-be arbitration, and thus not the party who would be in a position to challenge any resulting arbitral award absent any counterclaims.[839]

b. Standard of review

41. Though the language of article V (1)*(c)* does not explicitly impose any particular standard of review, any decision by the arbitral tribunal as to its own subject matter jurisdiction and the scope of the submission to arbitration cannot be binding on the enforcing court, as this would render article V (1)*(c)* otiose. Accordingly, a Swiss court specified that it was not bound by the arbitral tribunal's decisions with respect to the scope of the submission to arbitration, nor by that of authorities in other States, though following its own determination of the issue, the court ultimately rejected the challenge to enforcement.[840]

42. Similarly, though noting that United States Federal Arbitration Act has established a general "presumption that an arbitral body has acted within its powers", the United States Court of Appeals for the Ninth Circuit clarified that it would

[837] *Ernesto Francisco v. Stolt Achievement MT; Stolt Achievement, Inc.; Stolt-Nielsen Transportation Group, Ltd.; Stolt Parcel Tankers, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 4 June 2002, 293 F.3d 270; *Odfjell SE v. OAO PO Sevmash*, Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, 26 May 2011 VAS-4369/11; *Not indicated v. Not indicated*, Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Bremen, Germany, 30 September 1999, (2) Sch 04/99, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 640 (2006).

[838] *Ernesto Francisco v. Stolt Achievement MT; Stolt Achievement, Inc.; Stolt-Nielsen Transportation Group, Ltd.; Stolt Parcel Tankers, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 4 June 2002, 293 F.3d 270.

[839] *Id.*

[840] Debt Collection and Bankruptcy Chamber of the Court of Appeal, Switzerland, 16 September 2002, 14.2002.00042.

"review de novo a contention that the subject matter of the arbitration lies outside the scope of a contract."[841]

43. However, courts have consistently held that article V (1)*(c)* must be construed narrowly, and as such, does not permit under any circumstances that an enforcing court review the merits of a dispute, as this would run contrary to the spirit and purpose of the Convention.[842]

44. In this vein, courts have resisted attempts, advanced as challenges under article V (1)*(c)*, by parties to reopen an examination on the merits. For example, the Spanish Supreme Court was faced with a challenge by a party claiming that the arbitral tribunal had not taken into account all relevant factors presented to the arbitral tribunal, which would have led to a different result. The court considered that the challenge failed under its own terms as the challenging party did not suggest that the decision was outside the scope of the arbitration agreement, but rather that it disagreed with the "basis and reasons for the decision". The court concluded that such a challenge "undoubtedly falls without the scope of [...] Article V (1)(c) of the New York Convention".[843]

45. Similarly, a United States District Court found that a party's argument that the arbitral tribunal had impermissibly acted as amiable compositeur was "a not especially elegant masque that [sought] to conceal the fatal weakness" of that party's case on the merits, noting that the court was "forbidden under the Convention to reconsider factual findings of the arbitral panel."[844]

c. Waiver/preclusion

46. The language of article V (1)*(c)* does not explicitly impose any requirements that the challenges invoked under article V (1)*(c)* must be raised at any particular time during the arbitral procedure or thereafter.

47. In practice, some courts have held that a failure to raise appropriate objections during the arbitral proceedings would impair a party's ability to raise a challenge under article V (1)*(c)* during enforcement proceedings. For example, the Paris Court of Appeal rejected a challenge to enforcement in which a party argued

[841] *Mgmt. & Tech. Consultants S.A. v. Parsons-Jurden Int'l Corp.*, Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, United States of America, 8 July 1987, 820 F.2d 1531.

[842] *Lesotho Highlands Development Authority v. Impreglio SpA et al.*, House of Lords, England and Wales, 30 June 2005, [2005] UKHL 43. See also *Kersa Holding Co. Luxembourg v. Infancourtage, Famajuk Investment and Isny*, Superior Court of Justice, Luxemburg, 24 November 1993, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 617 (1996).

[843] *Saroc S.p.A. v. Sahece, S.A.*, Supreme Court, Spain, 4 March 2003, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 571 (2007).

[844] *Standard Elec. Corp. v. Bridas Sociedad Anonima Petrolera, Industrial y Comercial*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 24 August 1990, 745 F. Supp. 172.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

that the arbitral tribunal had disregarded the "submission to arbitration" by refusing to hold a third hearing following the submission of an expert report. The arbitral award noted that this decision was taken with the agreement of the parties, and the party opposing enforcement had not reserved it rights at the time of the decision or following receipt of letters confirming the decision. The court concluded that the party had therefore "impliedly but unequivocally waived their right to a third hearing", and as such its objection under article V (1)*(c)* should be dismissed.[845]

48. Similarly, though without specific reference to waiver or preclusion, the Moscow Arbitrazh Court, in rejecting a challenge to enforcement under article V (1)*(c)* (and other provisions), took into account the fact that the party did not object to examination of the case by the tribunal, filed a statement of defence recognizing jurisdiction of the tribunal and filed counterclaims for offset.[846] A United States District Court also rejected a challenge under article V (1)*(c)*, finding that where the challenging party had requested, agreed to submit and briefed the question whether certain matters should be decided by the arbitrators, and the arbitrators had made a determination on that basis, the party could not later claim that the issue was outside the scope of submission.[847]

[845] *Société Unichips Finanziaria SpA and Société Unichips International Bv Beslotene Venootschap v. François Gesnouin and Michèle Gesnouin*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 12 February 1993, XIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 658 (1994).

[846] *Ansell S.A. v. OOO MedBusinessService-2000*, Moscow Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, 15 April 2010, A40-24208/10-63-209.

[847] *Halcot Navigation Limited Partnership v. Stolt-Nielsen transportation Group, BV and Anthony Radcliffe Steamship Co. Ltd*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 11 June 2007, 491 F. Supp. 2d 413.

Article V (1)*(d)*

1. Recognition and enforcement of the award may be refused, at the request of the party against whom it is invoked, only if that party furnishes to the competent authority where the recognition and enforcement is sought, proof that:

[…]

(d) The composition of the arbitral authority or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties, or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with the law of the country where the arbitration took place.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article V (1)*(d)* as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704 and Annex.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822, Annexes I-II; E/2822/Add.2; E/2822/Add.4; E/CONF.26/3; E/CONF.26/3/Add.1.
- Activities of Inter-Governmental and Non-Governmental Organizations in the Field of International Commercial Arbitration: Consolidated Report by the Secretary-General: E/CONF.26/4.
- Comments on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: Note by the Secretary General: E/CONF.26/2.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.15; E/CONF.26/L.15/Rev.1; E/CONF.26/L.17; E/CONF.26/L.32; E/CONF.26/L.34.
- Comparison of Drafts Relating to Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention: E/CONF.26/L.33/Rev.1.
- Further Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.39; E/CONF.26/L.40.
- Text of Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention Proposed by Working Party III: E/CONF.26/L.43.
- Amendments by Governmental Delegations to the Drafts Submitted by the Working Parties and Further Suggested Drafts: E/CONF.26/L.45.
- Text of Articles Adopted by the Conference: E/CONF.26/L.48.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/L.61; E/CONF.26/8.
- Final Act and Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Second, Fourth, Eleventh, Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Seventeenth Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR.2; E/CONF.26/SR.4; E/CONF.26/SR.11; E/CONF.26/SR.13; E/CONF.26/SR.14; E/CONF.26/SR.17.
- Summary Records of the Fourth, Fifth, Seventh and Eighth Meetings of the Committee on Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.4; E/AC.42/SR.5; E/AC.42/SR.7; E/AC.42/SR.8.

Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards:

- Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: statement submitted by the International Chamber of Commerce, a non-governmental organization having consultative status in category A: E/C.2/373.
- Comments received from Governments regarding the Draft Convention on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/1.
- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/4.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

Introduction

1. Article V (1)*(d)* of the Convention sets out the fourth enumerated defence to the recognition and enforcement of a foreign arbitral award. It enables the courts of a Contracting State to refuse recognition and enforcement where the constitution of the arbitral tribunal or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties or, in the absence of an agreement, with the law of the country where the arbitration took place.

2. Procedural irregularities under article V (1)*(d)* have to be raised and proven by the party challenging the recognition and enforcement of an award,[848] and cannot be raised by a court of its own motion.[849]

3. Under article V (1)*(d)* the drafters of the Convention gave priority to the parties' agreement concerning the composition of the tribunal and the arbitral procedure. The law of the country where the arbitration took place plays only a subsidiary role in the event that the parties have not reached an express or implied agreement on the procedural point at issue.[850]

4. Article V (1)*(d)* may be regarded as an important step forward compared to the 1927 Geneva Convention, under which an award had to comply with the parties' agreement and, cumulatively, the law governing the arbitral procedure, in order to gain recognition and enforcement.[851] The novelty of the New York Convention lies in the supremacy given to the parties under article V (1)*(d)* to agree on the composition of the tribunal and the procedure.[852] This is consistent with the limited power of review of awards by enforcing courts under article V (1) of the

[848]See, e.g., Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Schleswig, Germany, 24 June 1999, 16 SChH 01/99; *DMT S.A. v. Chaozhou City Huayi Packing Materials Co., Ltd. Chaoan County Huaye Packing Materials Co., Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 12 October 2010, [2010] Min Si Ta Zi No. 51; *Conceria G. De Maio & F. snc v. EMAG AG*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 20 January 1995, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 602 (1996); *Deiulemar Compagnia di Navigazione, S.p.A. v. Transocean Coal Company, Inc. and others*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 30 November 2004, 03 Civ. 2038 (RCC), XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 990 (2005).

[849]Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 983, para. 1694 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 2731 (2009).

[850]*Report of the Secretary-General: Study on the Application and Interpretation of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards* (New York, 1958), A/CN.9/168, in X Yearbook of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law 106 (1979).

[851]See article 1*(c)* of the 1927 Geneva Convention, which provided that the party seeking recognition and enforcement had to demonstrate "[t]hat the award has been made by the Arbitral Tribunal provided for in the submission to arbitration or constituted in the manner agreed upon by the parties and in conformity with the law governing the arbitration procedure."

[852]*Polimaster Ltd. and NA&SE Trading Co. Ltd. v. Rae Systems, Inc.*, District Court, Northern District of California, United States of America, 23 January 2009, C 05-1887; *Joseph Müller A. G. v. Sigval Bergesen*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 26 February 1982; *Encyclopedia Universalis S.A. v. Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 31 March 2005, 04-0288-CV.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Convention,[853] and reduces the risk that the recognition and enforcement of awards will be refused based on grounds of procedural irregularities in national laws.

5. Although article V (1)*(d)* moves beyond the text of the 1927 Geneva Convention, it is not as liberal as certain arbitration statutes, which attach even less importance than the New York Convention to the law of the country where the arbitration took place at the recognition and enforcement stage.[854] As explained in the chapter on article VII,[855] the Convention sets only a "ceiling", or the maximum level of control, which courts of the Contracting States may exert over foreign arbitral awards. A court will not breach the New York Convention by applying more liberal rules than article V (1)*(d)*, in accordance with article VII (1).

6. In the vast majority of reported cases, parties have been unsuccessful in proving the grounds for non-enforcement under article V (1)*(d)*. It rarely occurs that the composition of a tribunal deviates from the parties' agreement or the applicable rules. Further, courts have taken into account the wide discretion vested in arbitral tribunals to organize and control the arbitral proceedings.[856]

7. Courts are usually not formalistic in their approach to article V (1)*(d)* and as a result have applied it in a restrictive manner.[857] This is consistent with the general discretion of courts to refuse challenges under article V (1) of the Convention, which provides that a court "may" refuse recognition and enforcement.[858]

---

[853] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Comments on Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Note by the Secretary-General, E/CONF.26/2, pp. 5-6.

[854] For instance, article 1520 of the New French Code of Civil Procedure provides that an award should not be recognized where *"the arbitral tribunal was not properly constituted"*. Under this provision, as well as the equivalent provision of the former French Code of Civil Procedure, the composition of the arbitral tribunal is measured against the will of the parties. Where the alleged irregularity resulted solely from a violation of the law of the place of the arbitration, recognition and enforcement would not be refused unless that law had been chosen by the parties to govern their procedure. Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 989, para. 1701 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999).

[855] See the chapter of the Guide on article VII, para. 2.

[856] See, e.g., *K Trading Company v. Bayerischen Motoren Werke AG*, Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht [BayObLG], Germany, 23 September 2004, 4 Z Sch 05/04; *Industrial Risk Insurers v. M.A.N. Gutehoffnungshutte GmbH*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 22 May 1998, 94-2982, 94-2530. See also Martin Platte, *Multi-party Arbitration: Legal Issues Arising out of Joinder and Consolidation*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: the New York Convention in Practice 481, 491 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 323 (1994).

[857] See, e.g., *Al Haddad Bros. Enterprises Inc. v. M/S "Agapi" and Diakan Love S.A.*, District Court, District of Delaware, United States of America, 9 May 1986, 635 F. Supp. 205; *China Nanhai Oil Joint Service Corporation Shenzen Branch v. Gee Tai Holdings Co. Ltd.*, High Court, Supreme Court of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, 13 July 1994, 1992 No. MP 2411.

[858] Sigvard Jarvin, *Irregularity in the Composition of the Arbitral Tribunal and the Procedure*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 729, 734 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

8. Article V (1)*(d)* has some interaction and overlap with article V (2)*(b)* of the Convention, which provides that a court may refuse to recognize or enforce an award if the award "would be contrary to the public policy of that country." It is not unusual for parties to raise both provisions in their attempt to challenge recognition and enforcement. However, a defence based on article V (1)*(d)* must be raised by "the party against whom [the award] is invoked", whereas courts may raise *sua sponte* possible grounds based on article V (2)*(b)*. In practice, most courts have considered that the grounds for non-enforcement under each provision are distinct and have analysed them separately.[859]

Analysis

General principles

A. Prevalence of party autonomy

9. Article V (1)*(d)* expressly affirms the supremacy of the parties' agreement concerning the composition of the tribunal and arbitral procedure, and that the law of the place of arbitration should apply only "failing such agreement."[860] Courts have consistently recognized that the grounds enumerated in article V (1)*(d)* must be measured, in the first instance, against the agreement of the parties.[861]

10. Article V (1)*(d)* is silent as to the form of the parties' agreement. Such an agreement includes an oral agreement or one in writing, and can be express or implied.[862]

---

[859]See, e.g., Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Schleswig, Germany, 24 June 1999, 16 SChH 01/99; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 14 April 1988, III ZR 12/87; *Goldtron Limited v. Media Most B.V.*, Court of First Instance of Amsterdam, Netherlands, 27 August 2002, XXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 814 (2003); *Eddie Javor v. Fusion-Crete, Inc. and others*, Supreme Court of British Columbia, Canada, 6 March 2003, L022829, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 596 (2004).

[860]*Travaux préparatoires*, Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and Comments by Governments and Organizations, Report by the Secretary-General, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/2822, Annex II, pp. 18-19; Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 454, para. 756 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999).

[861]See, e.g., *Polimaster Ltd., NA&SE Trading Co., Limited v. RAE Systems, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, United States of America, 28 September 2010, 08-15708, 09-15369; *Rederi Aktiebolaget Sally v. S.r.l. Termarea*, Court of Appeal of Florence, Italy, 13 April 1978, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 294 (1979); *Deiulemar Compagnia di Navigazione, S.p.A. v. Transocean Coal Company, Inc. and others*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 30 November 2004, 03 Civ. 2038 (RCC), XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 990 (2005); Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Bremen, Germany, 30 September 1999, (2) Sch 04/99.

[862]See Sigvard Jarvin, *Irregularity in the Composition of the Arbitral Tribunal and the Procedure*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 729, 730 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 2771 (2009).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

11. Article V (1)*(d)* does not stipulate any minimum requirements for the content of the parties' agreement. The parties can agree on a national procedural law or institutional rules to govern these matters,[863] or can agree on their own rules independent of any system.[864]

12. Under the Convention, the choice of a place of arbitration by the parties is not to be construed as an agreement to adopt the procedural rules of that jurisdiction. Article V (1)*(d)* itself distinguishes between situations in which procedural rules apply as a result of the agreement of the parties and, as explained below, situations in which they apply as a function of the place of the arbitration.[865]

13. Accordingly, courts have rejected arguments that the composition of the tribunal or the procedure did not comply with the law of the place of the arbitration where the parties had agreed on other procedural rules. For instance, a German court enforced an award rendered in Turkey where the parties had agreed to the rules of the Arbitral Commission of the Istanbul Chamber of Commerce and Industry, and rejected a party's argument that the procedure was not in accordance with the requirements of the Turkish Code of Civil Procedure.[866]

14. Even where the composition of the tribunal or the procedure was valid under the procedural rules of the country where the arbitration took place, courts have denied recognition and enforcement under article V (1)*(d)* where those elements deviated from the parties' agreement. In a 1978 decision, for instance, the Court of Appeal of Florence refused to enforce an award rendered in England by only two arbitrators, who had declined to appoint a third arbitrator on the basis of the 1950 English Arbitration Act, pursuant to which a clause providing for a three-member tribunal was deemed to take effect as if it provided for an umpire. According to the Court of Appeal, since the parties had in fact agreed on a three-member tribunal, their agreement was to be given precedence over the requirements of English procedural law.[867]

---

[863]See, e.g., *Joseph Müller A,G, v. Sigval Bergesen*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 26 February 1982; Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Bremen, Germany, 30 September 1999, (2) Sch 04/99; *Mechanised Construction of Pakistan Ltd. v. American Construction Machinery & Equipment Corporation (ACME)*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 14 September 1987, 828 F.2d 117, XV Y.B. Com. Arb. 539 (1990); *Pactrans Air & Sea, Inc. v. China National Chartering Corp., et al.,* Northern District Court of Florida, United States of America, 29 May 2010, 3:06-cv-00369-RS-EMT.

[864]See, e.g., *Encyclopedia Universalis S.A. v. Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 31 March 2005, 04-0288-CV; *Société Européenne d'Etudes et d'Entreprises (S.E.E.E.) v. Federal Republic of Yugoslavia*, Court of Appeal of Rouen, France, 13 November 1984, 982/82.

[865]Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 990, para. 1702 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999).

[866]Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Bremen, Germany, 30 September 1999, (2) Sch 04/99.

[867]*Rederi Aktiebolaget Sally v. S.r.l. Termarea*, Court of Appeal of Florence, Italy, 13 April 1978, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 294 (1979).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

B. Subsidiary role of the law of the country where the arbitration took place

15. Recognition and enforcement may be refused under article V (1)*(d)* if, "failing" an express or implied agreement between the parties, the composition of the tribunal or the procedure did not accord with the "law of the country where the arbitration took place". The place of arbitration may result from the choice made by the parties, or by an arbitral institution or the arbitral tribunal. A court that rules on an application for recognition and enforcement in reference to the procedural law of the country where the arbitration took place, without first ascertaining the existence of a party agreement, will thus violate the Convention.[868]

16. Courts have assessed challenges under article V (1)*(d)* by reference to the provisions of the place of the arbitration in very few cases. This may be explained by the circumstances that typically give rise to situations covered by article V (1)*(d)*. As one commentator notes, where the parties have not agreed on how the arbitral tribunal should be constituted, this will be determined either by an arbitral institution or a court, which will likely follow the requirements of the law where the arbitration takes place.[869]

17. In one reported case where procedural rules of the country where the arbitration took place were applied, a United States court held that, because there was no agreement between the parties concerning the arbitral procedure, the allegation that the arbitrator had improperly refused to hear oral evidence that was pertinent and material to the dispute had to be assessed with reference to the arbitration procedure of the United States, where the arbitration took place.[870] The court found that the arbitrator's decision to decide the matter based solely on documentary evidence did not constitute misconduct under the rules of the place of arbitration, and enforced the award.

18. Article V (1)*(d)* places no express limitation on the autonomy of the parties to agree on the composition of the arbitral tribunal or the arbitral procedure.

19. However, the question whether parties' agreement should be limited by the mandatory rules of the seat has been raised by commentators. One commentator has suggested that a failure to comply with the parties' agreement should not constitute a ground for refusal under article V (1)*(d)*, where such failure is justified

[868]*Rederi Aktiebolaget Sally v. S.r.l. Termarea*, Court of Appeal of Florence, Italy, 13 April 1978, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 294 (1979).

[869]Sigvard Jarvin, *Irregularity in the Composition of the Arbitral Tribunal and the Procedure*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 729, 740 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

[870]*InterCarbon Bermuda, Ltd. v. Caltex Trading and Transport Corporation*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 12 January 1993, 91 Civ. 4631 (MJL), XIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 802 (1994).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

by the obligation to comply with the mandatory rules of the place of the arbitration.[871] Other authors have argued that it should be assumed that the parties' intention was to be bound by an agreement that is valid at the place of arbitration, and that the reference to "agreement of the parties" must therefore be understood within the limits of the mandatory rules of the forum.[872]

20. These interpretations do not seem to accord with the intention of the drafters of the Convention which, as shown in the explicit terms of article V (1)*(d)*, was to ensure that the parties' agreement should prevail over the provisions—mandatory or not—of the law of the seat. In this respect, the wording of article V (1)*(d)* departed from the 1927 Geneva Convention, in which the law of the country where the arbitration took place retained paramount importance.[873]

21. The secondary role of the procedural rules where the arbitration took place was confirmed in a 1979 Report on the Convention by the United Nations Secretary General, which stated that the "priority given to the parties' wishes" under article V (1)*(d)* "is merely limited by the public policy ground under paragraph 2*(b)*."[874] The Swiss Federal Tribunal affirmed this view in a 1982 case, where it considered that "by virtue of the agreement of the parties, even the mandatory rules of procedure of a State also can be declared inapplicable and they can be substituted with the parties' own rules."[875]

[871] Jörg Gentinetta, Die Lex Fori Internationaler Handesscheidsgerichte 302 (1973).

[872] Jean-François Poudret, Sébastien Besson, Comparative Law of International Arbitration 839-40(2007).

[873] See article 1*(c)* of the 1927 Geneva Convention, which provided that the party seeking recognition and enforcement had to demonstrate "[t]hat the award has been made by the Arbitral Tribunal provided for in the submission to arbitration or constituted in the manner agreed upon by the parties and in conformity with the law governing the arbitration procedure".

[874] Report of the Secretary-General: Study on the Application and Interpretation of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards (New York, 1958), A/CN.9/168, in X Yearbook of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law 106 (1979). Another commentator has noted that any potential conflict between the rules chosen by the parties and the mandatory rules of the forum is counterbalanced under the Convention by the public policy provision of article V (2)*(b)*, as well as the due process requirement of article V (1)*(b)*. Patricia Nacimiento, *Article V (1)(d)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 281, 286 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

[875] *Joseph Müller A. G. v. Sigval Bergesen*, Federal Supreme Court, Switzerland, 26 February 1982; see also Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Bremen, Germany, 30 September 1999, (2) Sch 04/99.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Application

A. The requirement that the composition of the arbitral tribunal accord with the governing rules

22. Article V (1)*(d)* provides that the composition of the arbitral authority must have been in accordance with the agreement of the parties, or in the absence of an agreement, the law of the country where the arbitration took place, failing which recognition and enforcement of the award may be refused.

23. The standard of proof for showing that the constitution of the arbitral tribunal was irregular is high.[876] In the words of one United States court, the burden is "substantial because the public policy in favour of international arbitration is strong."[877]

24. Courts may require a showing that the alleged irregularity would have resulted in a different award had the procedural rule been observed. For example, a German court rejected the argument of a party that a three-member tribunal had been appointed by the wrong authority, since that party had failed to demonstrate that a different appointment procedure would have led to a different ruling.[878]

25. Furthermore, even where it has been established that the composition of the tribunal is irregular, courts may consider that the parties' subsequent behaviour results in a mutually agreed modification to the applicable procedure. For instance, a German court considered that, where both parties had appointed arbitrators who were not members of the institution specified in their agreement, the parties had tacitly modified their agreement. The court consequently rejected the challenge to enforcement based on article V (1)*(d)*.[879]

---

[876] See, e.g., *Conceria G. De Maio & F. snc v. EMAG AG*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 20 January 1995, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 602 (1996); *Transocean Shipping Agency P. Ltd. v. Black Sea Shipping & Ors.*, Supreme Court, India, 14 January 1998; *Polimaster Ltd., NA&SE Trading Co., Limited v. RAE Systems, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, United States of America, 28 September 2010, 08-15708, 09-15369; *Encyclopedia Universalis S.A. v. Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 31 March 2005, 04-0288-CV; *Karaha Bodas Co. (Cayman Islands) v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara (Indonesia)*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 23 March 2004, 02-20042, 03-20602.

[877] *Polimaster Ltd., NA&SE Trading Co., Limited v. RAE Systems, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, United States of America, 28 September 2010, 08-15708, 09-15369.

[878] *Creditor under the award v. Debitor under the award*, Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Karlsruhe, Germany, 14 September 2007, 9 Sch 02/07.

[879] Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Dresden, Germany, 20 February 2001, 11 SchH 02/00.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

26. Courts have sometimes interpreted article V (1)*(d)* restrictively and have enforced awards where the composition of the tribunal deviated from the parties' agreement.

27. For instance, the Hong Kong Supreme Court enforced an award rendered in China, even though its members were selected from a different list of arbitrators than provided in the parties' agreement.[880]

28. Courts have rejected challenges under article V (1)*(d)* where the parties choose institutional rules to govern their procedure that provide for flexibility concerning the manner in which the tribunal is to be composed.[881] On the other hand, a German court refused recognition and enforcement where an award was rendered by two, instead of three arbitrators, as expressly required by the rules of the International Arbitration Court of the Belarusian Chamber of Commerce that the parties had agreed would govern their arbitration.[882]

29. Courts have exercised the residual discretion they enjoy under article V (1) and have rejected challenges based on an irregular composition of the tribunal where it is clear that a party had previously intended to frustrate the arbitral procedure. For instance, the Supreme Court of Spain enforced an award rendered by a sole arbitrator appointed by one of the parties, where the party opposing enforcement had refused to appoint a co-arbitrator.[883] Similarly, a United States court enforced an award rendered by one of the party appointees as a sole arbitrator where the other party chose not to participate in the arbitration.[884]

30. In the few cases where courts have refused to enforce awards pursuant to article V (1)*(d)*, the manner in which the tribunal was constituted materially deviated from the parties' agreement.

31. For example, a United States court refused enforcement in a case where the parties had agreed that they would each appoint a co-arbitrator, who would appoint a president if they failed to reach a decision, and where one of the arbitrators had

[880] *China Nanhai Oil Joint Service Corporation Shenzen Branch v. Gee Tai Holdings Co. Ltd.*, High Court, Supreme Court of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, 13 July 1994, 1992 No. MP 2411.

[881] See, e.g., *Shaheen Natural Resources Company Inc. v. Société Nationale pour la Recherche, la Production and others*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 15 November 1983, 733 F. Supp. 2d 260, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 540 (1985).

[882] *E20, Supplier (United States) v. State enterprise (Belarus)*, Bundesgerichthof [BGH], Germany, 21 May 2007, III ZB 14/07, XXXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 504 (2009).

[883] *X v. Naviera Y S.A.*, Supreme Court, Spain, 3 June 1982, XI Y.B. Com. Arb. 527 (1986).

[884] *Al Haddad Bros. Enterprises Inc. v. M/S "Agapi" and Diakan Love S.A.*, District Court, District of Delaware, United States of America, 9 May 1986, 635 F. Supp. 205. See also *China Nanhai Oil Joint Service Corporation Shenzen Branch v. Gee Tai Holdings Co. Ltd.*, High Court, Supreme Court of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, 13 July 1994, 1992 No. MP 2411; *Conceria G. De Maio & F. snc v. EMAG AG*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 20 January 1995, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 602 (1996).

failed to even contact the other before requesting the appointing authority to appoint the third arbitrator.[885]

32. An Italian court upheld a challenge where the parties' agreement that the tribunal should constitute a specific number of arbitrators was not followed, and noted that the composition of the tribunal would also have been invalid according to the laws of the place of the arbitration.[886]

33. Certain authors have considered that courts may refuse enforcement under article V (1)*(d)* based on the alleged bias of an arbitrator.[887] This may also constitute a ground for refusal under article V (2)*(b)* where it is contrary to public policy.[888]

34. The standard of proof for arbitrator bias under article V (1)*(d)* is particularly high. For example, a United States court held that the mere fact that the tribunal President and the counsel of one of the parties both served on the same board of directors and were members of the same organization was insufficient to justify a refusal, where the party bringing the challenge had provided no evidence that they had otherwise communicated with each other.[889] A Hong Kong court has equally affirmed this high burden of proof, finding that the party opposing enforcement had failed to prove its allegation that the tribunal's deliberations had been affected by the alleged bias of one member.[890]

---

[885]*Encyclopedia Universalis S.A. v. Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 31 March 2005, 04-0288-CV.

[886]*Rederi Aktiebolaget Sally v. S.r.l. Termarea*, Court of Appeal of Florence, Italy, 13 April 1978, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 294 (1979).

[887]Christian Borris, Rudolf Henneke, *Article V (1)(d)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 329, 339 (R. Wolff ed., 2012);

[888]See the chapter of the Guide on article V (2)*(b)*, paras. 59-61.

[889]*HSN Capital LLC v. Productora y Comercializador de Television, S.A. de C.V.*, District Court, Middle District of Florida, Tampa Division, United States of America, 5 July 2006, 8:05-cv-1769-T-30TBM. See also *Nicor International Corporation v. El Paso Corporation*, District Court, Southern District of Florida, United States of America, 24 November 2003, 02-21769, where the court decided that the parties opposing enforcement had failed to prove that a sole arbitrator's previous representations or nationality influenced his decision-making; *Shaanxi Provincial Medical Health Products I/E Corporation v. Olpesa, S.A.*, Supreme Court, Spain, 7 October 2003, 112/2002, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 617 (2005).

[890]*Logy Enterprises Ltd. v. Haikou City Bonded Area Wansen Products Trading Co.*, Court of Appeal, Hong Kong, 22 May 1997, No. 65 (Civil).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

B. The requirement that the arbitral procedure accord with the governing rules

a. Criteria for procedural irregularities

35. The recognition and enforcement of an award may be refused under article V (1)*(d)* where the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties or, "failing such agreement", with the law of the country where the arbitration took place.

36. The term "arbitral procedure" encompasses the period beginning with the filing of an action and ending when the award is rendered.[891] The application of the law by a tribunal, on the other hand, goes to the actual merits of a dispute and therefore falls outside the scope of review at the recognition and enforcement stage.[892]

37. The burden of proof for an alleged procedural irregularity is on the party opposing recognition and enforcement. The evidence must be provided[893] and it must be clear.[894]

38. As with the composition of the tribunal, the threshold of proof for showing an irregular arbitral procedure under article V (1)*(d)* is high. One United States court observed that the Convention does not "permit reviewing courts to police every procedural ruling made by the arbitrator and to set aside the award if any violation of the [...] procedures is found. Such an interpretation would directly conflict with the 'pro-enforcement bias' of the Convention and its intention to remove obstacles to confirmation of arbitral awards."[895]

39. Article V (1)*(d)* is silent as to what types of procedural irregularities should lead to a refusal to recognize and enforce. Most courts require a substantial defect

---

[891] Christian Borris, Rudolf Henneke, *Article V (1)(d)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 329, 344 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Patricia Nacimiento, *Article V (1)(d)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 281, 292 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

[892] *Vigel S.p.A. v. China National Machine Tool Corporation*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 8 April 2004, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 802 (2006). See also *Venture Global Engineering, LLC v. Satyam Computer Services, Ltd.*, Court of Appeals, Sixth Circuit, United States of America, 15 May 2007, 062056, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 970 (2008).

[893] *Grow Biz International Inc. v. D.L.T. Holdings Inc., and Debbie Tanton*, Supreme Court of the Province of Prince Edward Island, Canada, 23 March 2001, GSC-17431, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 450 (2005).

[894] See, e.g., *Manufacturer v. Exclusive distributor*, Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Schleswig, Germany, 24 June 1999, 16 SchH 01/99.

[895] *Compagnie des Bauxites de Guinée v. Hammermills Inc.*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 29 May 1992, 90-0169, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 566 (1993).

in the arbitral procedure and/or a causal nexus between the defect and the award. A range of approaches have been adopted for determining these criteria.[896]

40. One approach is to ascertain whether the alleged irregularity substantially prejudiced one of the parties.

41. In one case, an English court enforced an award where the tribunal applied a revised set of procedural rules that had superseded those provided for in the parties' agreement, holding the party opposing enforcement had not suffered sufficient prejudice to justify a refusal.[897] In another case where the arbitration was held at a different place than the agreed place of arbitration and a party had refused to participate, an English court held that the different location did not affect the fairness of the proceedings or prejudice that party. The court reasoned that the wording of the arbitration agreement had not made it clear that the parties regarded the venue as critically important.[898] The courts of the United States have similarly considered that the "appropriate standard of review would be to set aside an award based on a procedural violation only if such violation caused substantial prejudice to the complaining party."[899]

42. Another approach is to require a party opposing enforcement to prove that the outcome of the case would have been different had the alleged irregularity not occurred. As noted above, this approach has also been followed in challenges based on the composition of the tribunal.[900]

43. For example, in a 2004 decision, a German court enforced an award that was rendered five months after the time limit set in the parties' agreement. The Court found that the party opposing enforcement had not proven that the tribunal would

[896]Christian Borris, Rudolf Henneke, *Article V (1)(d)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 329, 344 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Patricia Nacimiento, *Article V (1)(d)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 281, 292-93 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

[897]*China Agrobusiness Development Corporation v. Balli Trading*, High Court of Justice, Queen's Bench Division, England and Wales, 20 January 1997, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 732 (1999).

[898]*Tongyuan International trading Group v. Uni-Clam Limited*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 19 January 2001, 2000 Folio No 1143.

[899]*Compagnie des Bauxites de Guinée v. Hammermills Inc.*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 29 May 1992, 90-0169, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 566 (1993). See also *P.T. Reasuransi Umum Indonesia v. Evanston Insurance Company, Utica Mutual Insurance Company and others*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 21 December 1992, 92 Civ. 4623 (MGC), XIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 788 (1994).

[900]See, e.g., *Creditor under the award v. Debitor under the award*, Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Karlsruhe, Germany, 14 September 2007, 9 Sch 02/07, where the court required that the party arguing that a three-member tribunal had been appointed by the wrong authority was required to demonstrate that a different appointment procedure would have led to a different ruling.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

have decided differently had the tribunal respected the time limit.[901] Other German courts have followed this approach.[902]

44. The distinction between the varying approaches may be more apparent than real, and in many cases may lead to the same outcome particularly since not all courts distinguish between them and/or refer to them simultaneously.[903] Of the few decisions where a foreign award has been refused enforcement pursuant to the second alternative of article V (1)*(d)*, the party opposing enforcement brought evidence of fundamental or unjustifiable procedural defects that one could consider would have met the criteria of both approaches. For instance, in a 1968 case, a Swiss court refused to issue an enforcement order on the grounds that the arbitral tribunal had not complied with the agreement of the parties that "all disputes should be settled in one and the same arbitral proceedings" and instead conducted the arbitration in two stages.[904] In a 2001 case, the Italian Supreme Court enforced a first award but not a second award made with respect to the same dispute. The Court held that the second award was contrary to the parties' agreement that contemplated only one arbitration, depending on which party commenced arbitration first.[905]

b. Tribunal's discretion to organize and control the arbitral proceedings

45. In assessing challenges to recognition and enforcement under article V (1)*(d)*, courts have recognized the broad discretion of arbitral tribunals to organize and control the arbitral proceedings.

46. For instance, a United States court rejected an argument that the tribunal had deviated from the parties' agreement by consolidating claims arising out of two separate contracts. In the Court's view, the decision to consolidate the claims was within the tribunal's discretion, and this decision was reached after a careful

[901] *K Trading Company v. Bayerischen Motoren Werke AG*, Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht [BayObLG], Germany, 23 September 2004, 4 Z Sch 05/04.

[902] *Exclusive distributor v. Manufacturer*, Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Munich, Germany, 22 June 2009, 34 Sch 26/08; *SpA Ghezzi v. Jacob Boss Söhne*, Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 14 April 1988, XV Y.B. Com. Arb. 450 (1990).

[903] Christian Borris, Rudolf Henneke, *Article V (1)(d)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 329, 347 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Patricia Nacimiento, *Article V (1)(d)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 281, 298 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

[904] *Firm in Hamburg (buyer) v. Corporation (A.G.) in Basel (seller)*, Court of Appeal of the Canton of Basel-Stadt, Switzerland, 6 September 1968, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 200 (1976).

[905] *Tema Frugoli SpA, in liquidation v. Hubei Space Quarry Industry Co. Ltd*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 7 February 2001, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 390 (2001).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

interpretation of the parties' contract.[906] In another decision, a United States court held that there was no deviation from the rules of the American Arbitration Association agreed to by the parties where the tribunal had considered a belatedly submitted technical report, adding that "[a]rbitration proceedings are not constrained by formal rules of procedure or evidence."[907]

47. Courts have similarly held that a tribunal's adjudication of a case based on documentary evidence without an oral hearing does not justify a refusal under article V (1)*(d)*. A German court reached this decision where the provisions of the 1996 English Arbitration Act agreed to by the parties granted discretion to the tribunal to schedule an oral hearing.[908] A United States court held that a tribunal's decision of an issue of contract interpretation based solely on documentary evidence was not fundamentally unfair where the parties had not agreed on the applicable procedure. In this instance, the tribunal assessed the issue by reference to the laws of the United States, where the arbitration had taken place.[909]

c. Failure to state reasons

48. Certain national laws expressly require an arbitral tribunal to provide the reasons for its final decision.[910] The same is true of certain institutional rules that the parties may choose to govern their dispute.[911] If the parties' agreement, or the agreed upon arbitration rules or national law, require the award to contain reasons, the failure to provide reasons may be a ground for refusal under article V (1)*(d)*.[912]

---

[906]*Karaha Bodas Co. (Cayman Islands) v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara (Indonesia)*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 23 March 2004, 02-20042, 03-20602.

[907]*Industrial Risk Insurers v. M.A.N. Gutehoffnungshutte GmbH*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 22 May 1998, 94-2982, 94-2530. See also *Compagnie des Bauxites de Guinée v. Hammermills Inc.*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 29 May 1992, 90-0169, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 566 (1993), concerning the tribunal's application of the ICC Arbitration Rules; *China National Metal Products Import/Export Company v. Apex Digital, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, United States of America, 16 August 2004, 03-55231, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 908 (2005), concerning the tribunal's application of the CIETAC Rules.

[908]Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamburg, Germany, 30 July 1998, 6 Sch 3/98. See also Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Bremen, Germany, 30 September 1999, (2) Sch 04/99.

[909]*InterCarbon Bermuda, Ltd. v. Caltex Trading and Transport Corporation*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 12 January 1993, 91 Civ. 4631 (MJL), XIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 802 (1994).

[910]For instance, the laws of Australia, Belgium, England, France, Germany, Italy, Ireland, the Netherlands and Switzerland all expressly require arbitrators to state the reasons for their decision in their award.

[911]For instance, Article 31(2) of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration presumes that, in the absence of any indication to the contrary, the parties' intention is that the arbitrators should state the grounds for their awards.

[912]See however *Food Services of America, Inc. v. Pan Pacific Specialties Ltd.*, Supreme Court of British Columbia, Canada, 24 March 1997, A970243, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 581 (2004), where the court held that an arbitrator's failure to state reasons, as required by the rules of the American Arbitration Association agreed upon by the parties, was not considered part of the arbitral procedure.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Courts have observed the limited scope of review of arbitral awards at the enforcement stage when examining these types of challenges.[913]

49. Where an arbitration agreement or award falls within the field of application of both the New York Convention and the 1961 European Convention on International Commercial Arbitration, the requirement to state reasons will be assessed in light of the provisions of the European Convention. Article VIII of the European Convention provides that the parties to an arbitration shall be presumed to have agreed that reasons shall be given for the award unless they expressly declare otherwise, or have assented to an arbitral procedure under which it is not customary to give reasons, provided that neither party requests before the end of the hearing or the making of the award that reasons be given.[914]

50. In a case concerning an application for enforcement that was subject to both the New York Convention and the European Convention, the Italian Court of Cassation decided that enforcement should be denied where the presumption under Article VIII had not been rebutted because one party seeking enforcement had expressly requested during the arbitral proceeding that reasons be given for the award. This was notwithstanding the fact that the Arbitration Rules of the Sugar Association of London, which the parties agreed would govern the arbitral procedure, did not require that reasons for an award be provided.[915]

C. Procedural issues in raising a challenge based on article V (1)*(d)*

51. The question has arisen whether a party may be estopped from raising the defence to enforcement under article V (1)*(d)*, where it has failed to do so before the arbitral tribunal. A number of courts have held that a complaint concerning the composition of the tribunal or the arbitral procedure will not be entertained at the enforcement stage if it existed at the time of the arbitral proceedings and could have been raised before the tribunal.

---

[913]Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Bremen, Germany, 30 September 1999, (2) Sch 04/99. See also *Inter-Arab Investment Guarantee Corp. v. Banque Arabe et Internationale d'Investissements*, Court of Appeal of Brussels, Belgium, XXII. Y.B. Com. Arb. 643 (1997).

[914]European Convention on International Commercial Arbitration, Geneva, 21 April 1961, Article VIII: "The parties shall be presumed to have agreed that reasons shall be given for the award unless they (a) either expressly declare that reasons shall not be given; or (b) have assented to an arbitral procedure under which it is not customary to give reasons for awards, provided that in this case neither party requests before the end of the hearing, or if there has not been a hearing then before the making of the award, that reasons be given."

[915]*Fratelli Damiano s.n.c. v. August Tropfer & Co.*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 8 February 1982, 722, IX Y.B. Com. Arb. 418 (1984).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

52. A German court has held that, even where it was shown that the tribunal was irregularly composed, the party raising the challenge was precluded from relying on article V (1)*(d)* because it had been aware of the defect but nonetheless participated in the arbitration without raising any objection.[916] The courts of China[917] and Italy[918] have also held that a party that has failed to raise an irregularity during the arbitral proceeding, although it could have done so, has waived its right to do so at the enforcement stage.

53. A refusal to uphold a challenge under article V (1)*(d)* that could have been raised during the proceedings has been linked by some courts to the principle of good faith. The Supreme Court of Hong Kong has considered that "there is indeed a duty of good faith which in the circumstances of this case required the defendant to bring [...] its objections to the formation of this particular arbitral tribunal. Its failure to do so and its obvious policy of keeping this point up its sleeve to be pulled out only if the arbitration was lost, is not one that I find consistent with the obligation of good faith nor with any notions of justice and fair play."[919]

54. Courts have similarly considered that a party will be barred from invoking a defence under article V (1)*(d)* based on an irregular procedure at the exequatur stage if it failed to object to the irregular arbitral proceedings during the course of the arbitration. In *Chrome Resources S.A. v. Leopold Lazarus Ltd.*, the Swiss Federal Tribunal rejected a challenge that the arbitral tribunal had consulted an expert in the absence of the parties, finding that the party's attempt to raise this objection at the enforcement stage was in bad faith and constituted an abuse of rights.[920] Courts in England,[921] Germany,[922] Greece,[923] and the United States[924] have similarly

[916] *Manufacturer v. Supplier, in liquidation*, Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Munich, Germany, 15 March 2006, 34 Sch 06/05.

[917] *DMT S.A. v. Chaozhou City Huayi Packing Materials Co., Ltd. Chaoan County Huaye Packing Materials Co., Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 12 October 2010, [2010] Min Si Ta Zi No. 51.

[918] *Conceria G. De Maio & F. snc v. EMAG AG*, Court of Cassation, Italy, 20 January 1995, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 602 (1996)

[919] *China Nanhai Oil Joint Service Corporation Shenzen Branch v. Gee Tai Holdings Co. Ltd.*, High Court, Supreme Court of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, 13 July 1994, 1992 No. MP 2411. See also *X AG v. Y AS*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 4 October 2010, 4A 124/2010, XXXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 340 (2011).

[920] *Chrome Resources S.A. v. Léopard Lazarus Ltd.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 8 February 1978, XI Y.B. Com. Arb. 538 (1986).

[921] *China Agrobusiness Development Corporation v. Balli Trading*, High Court of Justice, Queen's Bench Division, England and Wales, 20 January 1997, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 732 (1999).

[922] *Manufacturer v. Exclusive distributor*, Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Schleswig, Germany, 24 June 1999, 16 SchH 01/99.

[923] *Greek Company v. FR German Company*, Court of Appeal of Athens, Greece, 4458, 1984, XIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 638 (1989).

[924] *Shaheen Natural Resources Company Inc. v. Société Nationale pour la Recherche, la Production and others*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 15 November 1983, 733 F. Supp. 2d 260, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 540 (1985); *Imperial Ethiopian Government v. Baruch Foster Corporation*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 19 July 1976, 535 F.2d 334, II Y.B. Com. Arb. 251 (1977); *Karaha Bodas Co. (Cayman Islands) v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara (Indonesia)*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 23 March 2004, 02-20042, 03-20602.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

barred a party from asserting any defect of the arbitral procedure at a later stage if it had the opportunity to raise a reservation in a timely manner during the arbitral proceedings.

55. The same result has been reached in cases where the party opposing enforcement has alleged that the arbitral procedure was irregular, but at the same time chose not to participate in the proceedings. In a 1995 decision, a Singapore court held in a case where a party chose deliberately not to participate in an arbitration, that it had waived its rights to criticize the way in which the arbitration proceeding had been conducted.[925] Similarly, an English court decided that "in view of the fact that the sellers chose to take no part in the proceedings, it is impossible [...] to submit that any failure to comply with the agreement of the parties as to venue had any prejudicial effect as far as [the party] is concerned."[926] A German court has also considered that the participation of a party in an arbitration without raising any objection may be construed as an implicit agreement with the procedural rules applied by the tribunal.[927]

[925] *Hainan Machinery Import and Export Corporation v. Donald & McArthy Pte Ltd*, High Court, Singapore, 29 September 1995, 1056 of 1994, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 771 (1997).

[926] *Tongyuan International Trading Group v. Uni-Clam Limited*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 19 January 2001, 2000 Folio No 1143.

[927] *Manufacturer v. Supplier, in liquidation*, Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Munich, Germany, 15 March 2006, 34 Sch 06/05.

Article V (1)*(e)*

1. Recognition and enforcement of the award may be refused, at the request of the party against whom it is invoked, only if that party furnishes to the competent authority where the recognition and enforcement is sought, proof that:

(e) The award has not yet become binding on the parties, or has been set aside or suspended by a competent authority of the country in which, or under the law of which, that award was made.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article V (1)*(e)* as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704 and Annex.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822, Annexes I-II; E/2822/Add.2; E/2822/Add.5; E/CONF.26/3/Add.1.
- Activities of Inter-Governmental and Non-Governmental Organizations in the Field of International Commercial Arbitration: Consolidated Report by the Secretary-General: E/CONF.26/4.
- Comments on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: Note by the Secretary General: E/CONF.26/2.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.8; E/CONF.26/L.15; E/CONF.26/L.15 Rev.1; E/CONF.26/L.16; E/CONF.26/L.17; E/CONF.26/L.24; E/CONF.26/L.30; E/CONF.26/L.34; E/CONF.26/L.35.

- Comparison of Drafts Relating to Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention: E/CONF.26/L.33/Rev.1.
- Further Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.39; E/CONF.26/L.40.
- Text of Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention Proposed by Working Party III: E/CONF.26/L.43.
- Text of Articles Adopted by the Conference: E/CONF.26/L.48.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/L.61; E/CONF.26/8.
- New text of Articles I (3), V (1)*(a)*, *(b)*, and *(e)* Adopted by the Conference at its 23rd meeting: E/CONF.26/L.63.
- Final Act and Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Eleventh, Twelfth, Thirteenth, Fourteenth, Seventeenth, Twenty-Third and Twenty-Fourth Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR.11; E/CONF.26/SR.12; E/CONF.26/SR.13; E/CONF.26/SR.14; E/CONF.26/SR.17; E/CONF.26/SR.23; E/CONF.26/SR.24.
- Summary Records of the Fifth, and Sixth Meetings of the Committee on Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.5; E/AC.42/SR.6.

Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards:

- Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: statement submitted by the International Chamber of Commerce, a non-governmental organization having consultative status in category A: E/C.2/373.
- Comments received from Governments regarding the Draft Convention on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/1.
- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/4.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Introduction

1. Article V (1)*(e)* allows national courts to refuse the recognition or enforcement of an award if the party opposing enforcement establishes that the award (i) has not yet become binding on the parties or (ii) has been set aside or suspended. Article V (1)*(e)* further requires that the setting aside or suspension of the award be ordered by a competent authority of the country in which, or under the law of which, the award was made.

2. Under the 1927 Geneva Convention, a party seeking enforcement or recognition of an award had to prove, among other conditions, that the award had become "final" in the country in which it was made. The 1927 Geneva Convention specified that the award would not be final if the award were still "open to opposition, appeal or *pourvoi en cassation*" or if it was "proved that any proceedings for the purpose of contesting the validity of the award [were] pending".[928] In practice, establishing the finality of the award could only be achieved by obtaining a leave of enforcement in the courts of the country of the seat of the arbitration. This required the party seeking enforcement to effectively obtain two decisions of exequatur, one at the country where the award was issued and one at the place of enforcement, thus generating more costs and delaying proceedings.[929] In addition, the requirement that the award be final in the country in which the award was rendered made it particularly easy for a party to obstruct or delay the enforcement by simply instituting proceedings for contesting the award's validity in the courts of the country where the award was issued.[930]

3. Article V (1)*(e)* of the New York Convention was drafted with a view to remedy these shortcomings. The drafters of the New York Convention abandoned the requirement of finality of the award, thereby putting an end to the mechanism of *double exequatur*, while providing that the non-binding nature of the award could still constitute a valid ground for refusing recognition and enforcement.[931] The

[928]See article 1*(d)* of the 1927 Geneva Convention.

[929]See *Travaux préparatoires*, Comments on Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/SR.11, pp. 5-6. See also Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 333 (1981); Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 971, para. 1677 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Nadia Darwazeh, *Article V (1)(e)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 301, 302, 304 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Christoph Liebscher, *Article V (1)(e)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 356, 356, paras. 353-56 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[930]Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards A Uniform Judicial Interpretation 333 (1981).

[931]Nadia Darwazeh, *Article V (1)(e)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 301, 306-07 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); ICCA's Guide To the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention: A Handbook for Judges 110 (P. Sanders ed., 2011).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Chairman of the Working Party in charge of drafting article V (1)*(e)* explained this decision as follows: "The text of paragraph 1 *(e)* of [article V] was drafted with the aim of making the Convention acceptable to those States which considered an arbitral award to be enforceable only if it fulfilled certain formal requirements which alone made the award binding on the parties. The Working Party agreed that an award should not be enforced if under the applicable arbitral rules it was still subject to an appeal which had a suspensive effect, but at the same time felt that it would be unrealistic to delay the enforcement of an award until all the time limits provided for by the statutes of limitations had expired or until all possible means of recourse, including those which normally did not have a suspensive effect, have been exhausted and the award has become 'final'."[932]

4. Courts from various countries have consistently referred to the abrogation of *double exequatur* as one of the major innovations of the New York Convention. For example, the English High Court of Justice held that "[i]t is common ground that the intention of the New York Convention was to make enforcement of a Convention award more straightforward, and in particular to remove the previous necessity for a *double exequatur*—i.e., the need, before a Convention award could be enforced in any other jurisdiction, for it to be shown that it has first been rendered enforceable in the jurisdiction whose law governs the arbitration [...]."[933] Likewise, the Swiss Federal Tribunal held that "the authors of the Convention wanted to exclude the requirement of exequatur in the award's country of origin, as well as any other proceedings to confirm that the award is enforceable in that country [...]."[934] Numerous other courts have similarly confirmed this principle.[935]

---

[932] *Travaux préparatoires*, Comments on Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/SR.17, p. 3.

[933] *Dowans Holding S.A. v. Tanzania Electric Supply Co. Ltd.*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 27 July 2011, 2010 Folio 1539.

[934] *Y v. X*, Swiss Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 3 January 2006, 5P.292/2005.

[935] See, e.g., *SPP (Middle East) Ltd. v. The Arab Republic of Egypt*, President of the District Court of Amsterdam, Netherlands, 12 July 1984, X Y.B. Com. Arb. (1985) (stating that "the drafters of the Convention chose the word 'binding' in order to abolish the requirement of the *double exequatur* which was the result of the word 'final' in the Geneva Convention of 1927)"; *German (F.R.) party v. Dutch party*, President of Rechtbank, The Hague, Netherlands, 26 April 1973, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 305 (1979) (stating that "[a]n important improvement of the New York Convention for the Execution of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 1927 is the fact that the *double exequatur* 'leave for enforcement' is abolished"); *Joseph Müller AG v. Bergesen und Obergericht (II. Zivilkammer) des Kantons Zürich*, Court of First Instance, Switzerland, 26 February 1982 (holding that "the aim of the New York Convention it to avoid the double exequatur"); *Company X SA v. Y Federation*, Swiss Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 9 December 2008, 4A_403/2008 (holding that "the New York Convention sought to prevent "double enforcement"). See also *Palm and Vegetable Oils SDN. BHD. v. Algemene Oliehandel International B.V.*, President of Rechtbank, Court of First Instance of Utrecht, Netherlands, 22 November 1984, XI Y.B. Com. Arb. (1986) (ruling that "in view of the legislative history of the Convention, the latter implies that for obtaining a leave for enforcement abroad, i.e., the Netherlands, it is not required that in the country of origin, i.e., England, a definitive leave for enforcement be given"); Court of Appeal of the Republic and Canton of Ticino, Switzerland, 22 August 2012, 14.2012.102; Obergericht des Kantons Zürich, Switzerland, 8 December 1980, II.ZK.Nr. 8 A/80 (stating that "the New York Convention sought to avoid 'double exequatur'").

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Analysis

A. The "binding" nature of an award

a. When does an award become binding?

5. The question of when an award becomes binding gave rise to a number of discussions among members of the Working Party in charge of drafting article V (1)*(e)*. Some delegates' view was that it should mean that the award is no longer open to ordinary, as opposed to extraordinary, means of recourse.[936] This distinction, being unknown in a number of legal systems, was eventually not retained. The drafters of the Convention decided not to define the term "binding" in the Convention itself, leaving it to the courts to decide the conditions under which an award should be considered as such.

6. Some courts have assessed the binding nature of the award by reference to the law of the country in which the award was rendered.[937] For instance, in a case where a party opposed enforcement on the ground that the award had not been duly delivered to it, and hence was allegedly not binding, a Swiss court decided that "[t]he issue whether an arbitral award has become binding on the parties, for instance by rendition, oral communication, written statement or communication to the parties or by expiry of the time limit for a legal means [of appeal] is governed in first instance by the law applicable to the arbitration". In that case, the court considered that the party opposing enforcement had not proved that the alleged difficulties in the delivery of the award resulted in it being non-binding under Swiss law, and therefore rejected the party's request that enforcement be denied.[938] In *Compagnie de Saint-Gobain-Pont-à-Mousson*, where the party opposing enforcement had argued that the award had not become binding on the parties in the country of the seat, the Court of Appeal of Paris noted that the courts of the seat themselves, namely Indian courts, had declared that the award was binding, and on that

[936] *Travaux préparatoires*, Comments on Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/SR.11-14, SR17. See also Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards A Uniform Judicial Interpretation 334-36 (1981).

[937] For a description of this approach, see Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 974-75, paras. 1681-83 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Nadia Darwazeh, *Article V (1)(e)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 301, 312-13. (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

[938] *Italian Party v. Swiss Company*, Court of First Instance, Zurich, Switzerland, 14 February 2003, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. (2004).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

ground granted the request for enforcement.[939] Courts in Germany,[940] Italy,[941] the United States,[942] and Switzerland[943] have similarly referred to the law of the country where the arbitration took place as being the law applicable to determining the binding nature of the award.

7. Under a second approach, sometimes referred to as an "autonomous approach", courts have relied on their own interpretation of what a binding award under article V (1)*(e)* should be. In the majority of cases, courts following this approach have ruled that an award shall be considered as binding if it is no longer open to ordinary means of recourse, namely those where the substance of the award is reviewed, even if extraordinary means of recourse are still available, including actions to set aside.[944] For example, the Swiss Federal Tribunal ruled that foreign arbitral awards are binding on parties under article V (1)*(e)* when they "can no longer be appealed by ordinary means."[945] Likewise, in a case where the place of the arbitration was London, a Dutch court held that because "no ordinary means of recourse [could] be made against the arbitral award in question", the award had "become binding

[939] *Compagnie de Saint-Gobain—Pont-à-Mousson v. The Fertilizer Corporation of India Limited*, Paris Court of Appeal, France, 10 May 1971.

[940] Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Düsseldorf, Germany, 19 January 2005, I-26 Sch 5/03 (dismissing the request for recognition of an award on the ground that the claims decided in the award had been set-off under Romanian law, the law of the seat of the arbitration); *Seller v. Buyer*, Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 6 October 2005, 8 Sch 06/05 (holding that whether an award is binding is to be determined pursuant to the law of the arbitration, in this case Russian law, and that the Russian law requirement that each party receive a copy of the arbitral award signed by the arbitrators for the award to be binding was met in this case).

[941] *Carters (Merchants) Ltd. v. Francesco Ferraro*, Corte di Appello di Napoli, Italy, 20 February 1975, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. (1979) (referring to the law applicable at the seat of the arbitration, namely English law, to rule on the binding nature of the award).

[942] *Pactrans Air & Sea, Inc. v. China National Chartering Corp., et al.*, District Court, Northern District of Florida, United States of America, 29 March 2010, 3:06-cv-369/RS-EMT (in a case where the seat of the arbitration was China, holding that the award was binding on the ground that, under Chinese arbitration law, "the legal effects of the award letter begin on the day it is written").

[943] *Denysiana S.A. v. Jassica S.A.*, Swiss Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 14 March 1984 (in a case where the seat of the arbitration was Paris, stating that "the party opposing the enforcement must prove that the award has not yet become binding or set aside or suspended, pursuant to the law governing the arbitration", namely French law).

[944] For a description of this second approach, see Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 972, para. 1679 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Nadia Darwazeh, *Article V (1)(e)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 301, 311-312 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Christoph Liebscher, *Article V (1)(e)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 356, 360, paras. 361, 364 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[945] *Company X SA v. State Y*, Swiss Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 9 December 2008, 4A_403/2008. See also *Y v. X*, Swiss Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 3 January 2006, 5P.292/2005 (stating that an award can be considered as binding under art. V (1)*(e)* when "an ordinary appeal against the award is no longer possible"); *X v. Y*, Swiss Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 21 February 2005, 5P.353/2004 (stating that the binding nature of an award shall been recognised as soon as the award becomes "*res judicata* and can no longer be appealed"); *X v. Y*, Cour de justice de Genève, 1ère section, Switzerland, 23 September 2004 (ruling that an award is binding as soon as the award has *res judicata* effect and is not subject to ordinary recourse).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

on the parties within the meaning of the Convention."[946] In Hong Kong, courts have ruled that an award is "binding" when it is "no longer open to an appeal on the merits."[947]

8. These approaches to assessing the binding nature of an award are not necessarily mutually exclusive, and in a number of instances, courts have applied them in combination.[948] For example, in a case where the place of the arbitration was Paris, and after declaring that an award should be considered as binding "if it is no longer open to an appeal on the merits", the High Court of Hong Kong referred to both the arbitration rules and the provisions of the French arbitration law to determine whether the award could be subject to an appeal on the merits.[949] In other cases, national courts refrained from applying the requirements of the law of the seat when these requirements would have led to a result contrary to the purpose of the New York Convention, for instance a requirement that the award be granted a national exequatur to become binding.[950]

9. In line with these decisions, for the purposes of assessing the binding nature of an award under the Convention, some commentators have distinguished between, on the one hand, the principles which were clearly intended to apply under the Convention and, on the other hand, the residual grounds found in the law of the country where the award was rendered which the party opposing enforcement is likely to invoke.[951]

10. The first of these principles is that the binding nature of the award does not depend on whether the award is enforceable in the country where it was issued. National courts have repeatedly recalled that this requirement would amount to

[946] *Palm and Vegetable Oils SDN. BHD. v. Algemene Oliehandel International B.V.*, President of Rechtbank of Utrecht, Netherlands, 22 November 1984. See also *SPP (Middle East) Ltd. v. The Arab Republic of Egypt*, President of the District Court of Amsterdam, Netherlands, 12 July 1984, X Y.B. Com. Arb. (1985) (ruling that "an arbitral award is not binding if it is open to appeal on the merits before a judge or an appeal arbitral tribunal").

[947] *Société Nationale d'Opérations Pétrolières de la Côte d'Ivoire—Holding v. Keen Lloyd Resources Limited*, High Court of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Hong Kong, 20 December 2001, 55 of 2011, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. (2004). See also *Diag Human SE v. Czech Republic*, High Court, Queen's Bench Division, United Kingdom, 22 May 2014 (stating that "if an award is subject to 'ordinary' recourse, it will not be binding").

[948] See Christoph Liebscher, *Article V (1)(e)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 356, 362, paras. 364-65 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 975, para. 1683 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999).

[949] *Société Nationale d'Opérations Pétrolières de la Côte d'Ivoire—Holding v. Keen Lloyd Resources Limited*, High Court of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Hong Kong, 20 December 2001, 55 of 2011, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. (2004).

[950] See chapter of the Guide on article V (1)*(e)*, para. 11.

[951] See Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 976, para. 1684 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Christoph Liebscher, *Article V (1)(e)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 356, 360, para. 360 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

reinstating the mechanism of *double exequatur*; and they have systematically rejected arguments that an award would not be binding on the parties on the ground that it had not been enforced at the place of the arbitration. In *AB Götaverken v. General National Maritime Transport Company (GMTC), Libya and others*, for example, the Swedish Supreme Court expressly stated that, for an award to be binding under article (V)(1)*(e)*, the party relying on the award does not need to "prove that the award is enforceable according to the authorities of the country in which it was rendered."[952] A Spanish court likewise expressly stated that "the binding character of the award may not be made to depend on an exequatur by the courts of the State of rendition."[953]

11. The second principle is that the fact that an action to set aside the award still lies in the jurisdiction of the seat does not lead that award to be non-binding for the purposes of the Convention.[954] This principle has been continuously affirmed

[952] *AB Götaverken v. General National Maritime Transport Company (GMTC), Libya and others*, Supreme Court, Sweden, 13 August 1979, SO 1462. See also *German (F.R.) party v. Dutch party*, President of Rechtbank, The Hague, Netherlands, 26 April 1973, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 305 (1979).

[953] *Antilles Cement Corporation v. Transficem*, Supreme Court, Civil Chamber, First Section, Spain, 20 July 2004, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. (2006). For the same solution, see also *Joseph Müller AG v. Bergesen und Obergericht (II. Zivilkammer) des Kantons Zürich*, Court of First Instance, Switzerland, 26 February 1982 (stating that "[t]he requirement of a declaration of enforcement in the country of the arbitral award's origin would go squarely against the New York Convention's aim of avoiding the double exequatur"); Swiss Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 8 December 2003, 4P.173/2003/ech.; *Company X SA v. Y Federation,* Swiss Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 9 December 2008, 4A_403/2008; *X v. Y*, Swiss Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 21 February 2005, 5P.353/2004 (stating that "a foreign arbitral award does not have to be enforceable in its country of origin; it merely has to be binding on the parties, and its binding nature must have been recognised as soon as the award becomes *res judicata* and can no longer be appealed").

[954] Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 976, para. 1684 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Christoph Liebscher, *Article V (1)(e)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 356, 358, para. 357 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 350 (1981).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

by national courts, for instance in the Netherlands,[955] Germany,[956] France,[957] the United States,[958] the United Kingdom[959] and Switzerland.[960]

12. Furthermore, regardless of the approach followed, courts assessing the binding nature of an award have often paid particular attention to the parties' intention resulting from the arbitration agreement or the arbitration rules. The Belgium Cour de cassation, for instance, stated that the binding nature of the award should be determined "by referring, successively and one in the absence of the other, to the arbitration agreement, the law that it designates for such purpose, and last, the law of the country in which the award was rendered."[961] In *Joseph Müller*, a Swiss court ruled that whether an award has become binding on the parties is a question to be determined according to "in the first place [...] the agreement of the parties and, failing such agreement, subsidiarily [...] the law of the country where the arbitration takes place."[962] In the same vein, a Spanish court ruled that "the binding nature of

[955] *SPP (Middle East) Ltd. v. The Arab Republic of Egypt*, President of the District Court of Amsterdam, Netherlands, 12 July 1984, X Y.B. Com. Arb. (1985) (ruling that "the mere initiation of an action for setting aside [...] does not have as consequence that the arbitral award must be considered as not binding").

[956] *Film distributor v. Film producer,* Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht [BayObLG], Germany, 22 November 2002, 4 Z Sch 13/02 (granting a request for enforcement of the award despite annulment proceedings having been commenced by the Respondent at the seat of the arbitration); *Seller v. Buyer*, Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], III ZB 06/02, Germany, 30 January 2003 (stating that "[t]he mere fact that the defendant states that it filed an 'appeal' from the decision of the Russian arbitral tribunal does not mean that there is a ground for refusal pursuant to Art. V (1)(e)"); *Supplier v. Carrier,* Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 20 November 2003, 8 Sch 02/03 (stating that the pending action for annulment in Sweden had no impact on the recognition of the award); Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 23 February 2007, 34 Sch 31/06 (stating that the possibility of having the award annulled at the seat does not hinder the recognition of the arbitral award).

[957] *S.A. Recam Sonofadex v. S.N.C. Cantieri Rizzardi de Gianfranco Rizzardi*, Court of Appeal of Orleans, France, 5 October 2000 (stating that the recognition and enforcement of an award can only be rejected if the award has been effectively suspended by a competent authority of the country in which the award was rendered; initiating setting aside proceedings is not sufficient).

[958] *Fertilizer Corporation of India et al. v. IDI Management, Inc.*, District Court, Southern District of Ohio, United States of America, 9 June 1981, C-1-79-570.

[959] *IPCO (Nigeria) Ltd. v.* NNPC (*Nigeria)*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 27 April 2005, 2004 1031 (stating that the application of article V (1)*(e)* is not triggered automatically by a challenge being brought before a court in the country of origin); *Continental Transfer Technique Ltd. v. Federal Government of Nigeria*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 30 March 2010, 2008 Folio 1280 (stating that article V (1)*(e)* only applies where the award "has been set aside or suspended" and noting that "the fact that there is an application to set aside an award does not mean that the award has been set aside").

[960] *Company X SA v. Y Federation,* Swiss Federal Tribunal, 9 December 2008, 4A_403/2008 (ruling that the mere fact that an action for setting aside an award is admissible or has been filed in the country in which the award was made does not make the award any less binding).

[961] *Inter-Arab Investment Guarantee Corporation v. Banque Arabe et Internationale d'Investissements*, Cour de cassation, Belgium, 5 June 1998, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. (1999).

[962] *Joseph Müller AG v. Bergesen und Obergericht (II. Zivilkammer) des Kantons Zürich*, Court of First Instance, Switzerland, 26 February 1982. See also *X v. Y*, Swiss Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 21 February 2005, 5P.353/2004 (stating that the binding nature of an award "must have been recognised as soon as the award becomes *res judicata* and can no longer be appealed" and ruling that, in the case at hand, the award was final and binding pursuant to the provisions of the contract entered into between the parties); *X v. Y*, Cour de justice de Genève, 1ère section, Switzerland, 23 September 2004 (ruling that an award is binding as soon as the award has *res judicata* effect and is not subject to ordinary recourse, and that in this case the award was binding pursuant to the provisions of the agreement entered into between the parties).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

the award must be examined under the rules governing the arbitration [...] rather than under the norms of the State where the arbitration took place of the award was rendered." The court went on to state that "pursuant to [the ICC] Rules, the binding character of the award ensues from the submission to ICC arbitration and the valid waiver of any means of recourse implied in the submission to [ICC] institutional arbitration," and on that basis, decided that the award was binding.[963]

b. Burden of proving that an award has become binding

13. One of the main innovations of the New York Convention was to transfer the burden of proof from the party seeking enforcement to the party opposing it.[964] As with the other grounds for refusing recognition and enforcement listed under article V, this principle applies to article V (1)*(e)*.

14. A party seeking to enforce an arbitral award is not required to establish that the award is binding; rather, it falls on the party opposing enforcement to establish that the award is not binding. This principle has been repeatedly affirmed by national courts. A Swiss court stated for instance that "[i]t is [...] the party opposing enforcement that must prove, pursuant to article V (1)*(e)* of the Convention, that the arbitral award is not yet binding or has been set aside."[965] Likewise, an Italian court ruled that "[the party seeking enforcement] has not to prove that the award is binding, but [the party opposing enforcement] has to prove that the

[963] *Antilles Cement Corporation v. Transficem*, Supreme Court, Civil Chamber, First Section, Spain, 20 July 2004, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. (2006). See also *AB Götaverken v. General National Maritime Transport Company (GMTC), Libya and others*, Supreme Court, Sweden, 13 August 1979, SO 1462 (after noting that "[a] case in which a foreign award is not binding is when its merits are open to appeal to a higher jurisdiction", decided that the award was binding because the arbitration clause provided that the award would be "finally binding and enforceable," and because the ICC Rules applicable in this case provided that the arbitral award shall be final); *Dowans Holding S.A. v. Tanzania Electric Supply Co. Ltd.*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 27 July 2011, 2010 Folio 1539 (after holding that "the binding effect of an award depends upon whether it is or remains subject to ordinary recourse", referred to the arbitration agreement and the ICC Rules, which stated that "[t]he decision of the arbitration shall be final and binding upon the Parties, and shall not be subject to appeal", to conclude that the award was binding on the parties); *International Trading and Industrial Investment Company v. Dyncorp Aerospace Technology*, District Court for the District of Columbia, United States of America, 21 January 2011, Civil Action No. 09-791 (RBW) (referring to the ICC Rules to conclude that the award was binding on the parties).

[964] See the introduction to the chapter of the Guide on article V.

[965] *Italian Party v. Swiss Company*, Court of First Instance, Zurich, Switzerland, 14 February 2003, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. (2004). See also *Denysiana S.A. v. Jassica S.A.*, Swiss Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 14 March 1984 (stating that "the party opposing the enforcement must prove that the award has not yet become binding or set aside or suspended").

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

binding force is lacking [...]."[966] Commentators of the Convention also confirm this interpretation.[967]

c. *Binding nature of partial and interim awards*

15. In a number of reported cases, parties have relied on article V (1)*(e)* to challenge the binding nature of partial or interim arbitral awards. While some national courts have upheld such challenges and refused to enforce interim or partial awards under this provision,[968] others have considered that, in certain circumstances, interim and partial awards could be considered binding within the meaning of article V (1)*(e)*.[969]

16. In some cases, courts have distinguished between awards relating to jurisdictional and procedural issues, and awards relating to the merits of a dispute, and have excluded that the former category of awards be considered as binding. For instance, the Colombian Supreme Court of Justice refused to enforce an interim award on jurisdiction on the ground that it was "clear that according to the Convention, 'arbitral awards' are those which materially end the arbitration by defining the disputes submitted in the request for arbitration, not those which arise out of the arbitration itself", such as an interim award on the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal.[970] A Russian court similarly stated that article V (1)*(e)* was not applicable

[966] *Carters (Merchants) Ltd. v. Francesco Ferraro*, Corte di Appello di Napoli, Italy, 20 February 1975, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. (1979). See also *C.C.M. Sulzer v. Société Maghrébienne de Génie Civil (SOMAGEC) et al.*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 17 February 1987, 864787 (stating that pursuant to article V (1)*(e)*, it is for the party opposing the enforcement to demonstrate that the award has not yet become binding on the parties); *Antilles Cement Corporation v. Transficem*, Supreme Court, Civil Chamber, First Section, Spain, 20 July 2004, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. (2006); *Diag Human SE v. Czech Republic*, High Court, Queen's Bench Division, United Kingdom, 22 May 2014 (stating that the burden of proof is "firmly" on the party resisting opposing enforcement).

[967] Nadia Darwazeh, *Article V (1)(e)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 301, 305, 310 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 338 (1981); Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 968, para. 1673 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Christoph Liebscher, *Article V (1)(e)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 356, paras. 353-56 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[968] *Merck & Co. Inc. v. Merck Frosst Canada Inc., Frosst Laboratories Inc. v. Tecnoquímicas S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 24 March 1999, XXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. (2001); *Living Consulting Group AB (Sweden) v. OOO Sokotel (Russian Federation)*, Presidium of the Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, 5 October 2010, A56-63115/2009; *Hall Steel Company (United States) v. Metalloyd Ltd. (United Kingdom)*, District Court, Eastern District of Michigan, Southern Division, United States of America, 7 June 2007, 05-70743, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. (2008). For further developments on the conditions under which procedural orders and interim and partial awards are enforceable under the Convention, see the chapter of the Guide on article I.

[969] *Resort Condominiums International Inc. v. Ray Bolwell and Resort Condominiums, Pty. Ltd.*, Supreme Court of Queensland, Australia, 29 October 1993, XX Y.B. Com. Arb. (1995). See also *Misr Foreign Trade Co. v. R.D. Harboties (Mercantile)*, Court of Cassation, Egypt, 22 January 2008, 2010/64.

[970] *Merck & Co. Inc. v. Merck Frosst Canada Inc., Frosst Laboratories Inc. v. Tecnoquímicas S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 24 March 1999, XXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. (2001).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

to "interlocutory awards, including decisions of arbitrators on procedural matters (collection of arbitration costs, determination of jurisdiction, and security measures)" but only to "arbitral awards related to the procedural examination of the dispute on the merits and rendered at the end of the arbitral proceedings."[971]

17. Other courts looked to whether the partial or interim award finally settled a discrete claim on the merits, or could still be revised by the arbitral tribunal at a later stage of the arbitration, and excluded that the latter category of awards be considered as binding. For example, in a case where a party sought to enforce an "Interim Arbitration Order and Award", the Supreme Court of Queensland held that the award referred to under Article V (1)*(e)* is a type of award which "has determined some or all of the issues submitted to the arbitrator for determination rather than an interlocutory order of an arbitrator." The court further held that "[a]n interlocutory order which may be rescinded, suspended, varied or reopened by the tribunal which pronounced it" was not enforceable under the Convention.[972] Likewise, a United States District Court held that notwithstanding the absence of an award that finally disposes of all the claims that were submitted to arbitration, an award that "finally and definitely disposes of a separate independent claim" could be considered as binding. As a result, the court upheld the enforcement of an interim award directing the parties to continue performing under the contract until the arbitrator had decided the underlying contractual issue.[973]

d. Doctrine of merger

18. While the practice of courts leaves no doubt that obtaining a leave of enforcement at the place of the arbitration is not necessary for an award to be enforced under the Convention,[974] some parties have argued that, *a contrario*, if a leave of enforcement has been issued by the courts at the seat of arbitration and the award has been merged into a judgment, such an award could no longer be considered as binding under article V (1)*(e)*.

19. This interpretation has been rejected by courts, in line with the opinion of a commentator of the Convention, who pointed that it would run contrary to the

[971] *Living Consulting Group AB (Sweden) v. OOO Sokotel (Russian Federation)*, Presidium of the Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, 5 October 2010, A56-63115/2009 (denying enforcement of an interim award ordering one of the parties to reimburse the advance on arbitration costs to the other party).

[972] *Resort Condominiums International Inc. v. Ray Bolwell and Resort Condominiums, Pty. Ltd.*, Supreme Court of Queensland, Australia, 29 October 1993, XX Y.B. Com. Arb. (1995).

[973] *Island Creek Coal Sales Company v. City of Gainesville*, Florida, Court of Appeals, Sixth Circuit, United States of America, March 15, 1984, 729 F.2d 1046.

[974] See the chapter of the Guide on article V (1)*(e)*, para. 11.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Convention's purpose of facilitating enforcement.[975] For example, in a case where the party opposing enforcement argued that the award had been merged into a judgment in the United Kingdom, and therefore could no longer be enforced under the Convention, an Australian court held that, even if a judgment had been entered into in the United Kingdom, the award would not be considered as having merged in this judgment for the purpose of enforcement in Australia.[976] Similarly, a German court held that, although an award had been merged into the judgment of an English court, this merger did not imply that the award should be considered as having been absorbed by the judgment in Germany, the purpose of the Convention being to facilitate enforcement of foreign arbitral awards.[977] German courts have however specified that, while the merger of an award into a judgment does not deprive the award of its binding nature under article V (1)*(e)* for the purposes of enforcement abroad, only the award itself, not the judgment absorbing the award, can be enforced under the Convention.[978]

B. What is a "competent authority" of the country "in which, or under the law of which", the award was made?

20. Under article V (1)*(e)*, a court may refuse recognition or enforcement of an award if the party opposing enforcement proves that the award has been set aside or suspended by a "competent authority" in "the country in which" the award was made or "under the law of which" the award was made.

a. Meaning of "competent authority"

21. While article V (1)*(e)* does not define the terms "competent authority", there is little doubt that these terms refer to the court or courts having jurisdiction to

[975] Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 346-48 (1981). See also Christoph Liebscher, *Article V (1)(e)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 356, 378, paras. 413-14 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[976] *Brali v. Hyundai Corp.*, Supreme Court of New South Wales, Commercial Division, Australia, 17 October 1988.

[977] *German (F. R.) buyer v. English seller*, Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamburg, Germany, 27 July 1978, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. (1979). See also *COSID Inc. Steel Authority of India Ltd.*, High Court of Delhi, India, 12 July 1985, XI Y.B. Com. Arb. (1986) (holding that the merger of an award into a judgment under Section 26 of the English Arbitration Act is no bar to the enforcement of the award in India).

[978] Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, 1 September 2009, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. (2010).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

suspend and/or set aside awards in each country.[979] A court from the Cayman Islands also envisaged that in a certain country, this power could be entrusted to a special tribunal or a "special executive arm of government."[980]

b. The country "in which" or "under the law of which" the award was made

22. The terms "in which [...] that award was made" are understood to refer to the country of the place of the arbitration.[981] In a case where the place of the arbitration was Singapore, for instance, a United States District Court stated, by reference to article V (1)*(e)*, that "clearly, Singapore was the country in which the award was made."[982]

23. Although the Convention does not provide guidance as to the meaning of the expression "under the law of which", with very few exceptions, courts have generally rejected arguments that these terms referred to the law applicable to the merits. Courts have decided that it referred instead to the procedural law governing the arbitration, in the rare situation where the parties have selected a law to govern the arbitration that is different from the law of the place of arbitration. In *Steel Corporation of the Philippines v. International Steel Services*, a United States District Court held that this expression "refers to the theoretical case that on the basis of an agreement of the parties the award is governed by an arbitration law which is different from the arbitration law of the country in which the award was made". In this case the place of the arbitration was Singapore, but the arbitration clause specified that "[t]he validity, performance and enforcement of this contract shall be governed by Philippine law". The respondent contended that the award had been made under the law of the Philippines and that, because it had filed a petition to vacate the award in the Philippines courts, the award should not be recognized under article V (1)*(e)*. The court held that "while it would be rare for the parties to choose a procedural law different from the arbitral situs, if they do, the selection

[979] *Resort Condominiums International Inc. v. Ray Bolwell and Resort Condominiums, Pty. Ltd.*, Supreme Court of Queensland, Australia, 29 October 1993, XX Y.B. Com. Arb. (1995) (stating that the reference to "competent authority" in article V (1)*(e)* "means a Court and not the arbitrator"). See also the developments and references cited in the chapter of the Guide on article VI.

[980] *The Republic of Gabon v. Swiss Oil Corporation*, Grand Court, Cayman Islands, 17 June 1988, XIV Y.B. Com. Arb. (1989).

[981] Nadia Darwazeh, *Article V (1)(e)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on The New York Convention 301, 319 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Christoph Liebscher, *Article V (1)(e)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 356, 374, para. 404 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[982] *Steel Corporation of the Philippines v. International Steel Services, Inc.*, District Court for the Western District of Pennsylvania, United States of America, 31 July 2006, Civil Action No. 06-386. See also *International Trading and Industrial Investment Company v. Dyncorp Aerospace Technology*, District Court for the District of Columbia, United States of America, 21 January 2011, Civil Action No. 09-791 (RBW).

must be clear", which it considered was not the case here.[983] In *Karaha Bodas*, the High Court of Hong Kong similarly stated that the reference to the law under which the award was made "undoubtedly refers to the law which governed the procedural law of the arbitration, not the substantive law of the contract."[984]

24. In contrast with the solution stated above, in previous decisions the Indian Supreme Court considered that the expression "under the law of which" could designate the law applicable to the arbitration agreement or to the merits of the case. In most recent decisions, however, the Indian Supreme Court revised this case law. In the Balco case, the Indian Supreme Court ruled that the expression "under the law of which" referred to the procedural law of the arbitration in the case that it was different from the law of the seat of the arbitration, and not to the substantive law governing the underlying contract.[985]

[983] *Steel Corporation of the Philippines v. International Steel Services, Inc.*, District Court for the Western District of Pennsylvania, United States of America, 31 July 2006, Civil Action No. 06-386, affirmed by *Steel Corporation of the Philippines v. International Steel Services, Inc.*, Court of Appeals for the Third Circuit, United States of America, 19 November 2009, Nos. 08-1853 and 08-2568. See also *Coutinho Caro & Co. USA, Inc. v. Marcus Trading, Inc. and others*, District Court, District of Connecticut, United States of America, 14 March 2000, Civil Action Nos. 3:95cv2362, 3:96cv2218, 3:96cv2219 (ruling that "the phrase 'under the law of which' the award was made refers to the theoretical case that on the basis of an agreement of the parties the award is governed by an arbitration law which is different from the arbitration law of the country in which the award was made"); *International Standard Electric Corp. v. Bridas Sociedad Anonima Petrolera, Industrial y Comercial*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 24 August 1990, 90 Civ. 0720 (KC); *Belize Social Development Ltd. (Belize) v. Government of Belize*, Court of Appeals, D.C. Circuit, United States of America, 13 January 2012, 10-7167 (stating that the phrase "under the law of which" refers to "the procedural law governing the arbitration, not the substantive law governing the Agreement"); *M&C Corp. v. Erwin Behr GmbH & co.*, Court of Appeals, Sixth Circuit, United States of America, 3 July 1996, 95-1390; *International Trading and Industrial Investment Company v. Dyncorp Aerospace Technology et al.*, 21 January 2011, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 09-791 (RBW); *Four Seasons Hotels and Resorts, B.V., et al. v. Consorcio Barr, S.A.*, District Court, Southern District of Florida Miami Division, United States of America, 4 June 2003, 02-23249 (stating that a competent authority is "a court of the country that supplied the procedural law used in the arbitration" and not the substantive law); *The Commercial Company for Investment v. Bell Rover Shipping Limited*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 19 March 1997, 68/113.

[984] *Karaha Bodas Company LLC v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara - Pertamina*, Court of First Instance, High Court of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, Hong Kong, 27 March 2003, [2003] HKCU 288.

[985] *Bharat Aluminum Co. v. Kaiser Aluminum Technical Service, Inc.*, Supreme Court, India, 6 September 2012, Civil Appeal No. 7019 of 2005. The Supreme Court added that the position adopted by Indian courts in the past, on the basis of which awards were set aside by Indian courts even when the seat of the arbitration was located abroad, amounted to ignoring "the spirit underlying the New York Convention which embodies a consensus evolved to encourage consensual resolution of complicated, intricate and in many cases very sensitive International Commercial Disputes".

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

25. The same interpretation is shared by the commentators of the Convention.[986]

26. As a result, an award can in practice only be denied enforcement under the Convention if it has been set aside or suspended by the competent courts of the place of the arbitration, or as the case may be, competent courts in the country of the law chosen by the parties to govern the arbitration. If the award has been set aside or suspended in any other country, this does not constitute a valid ground for denying enforcement. For example, a United States court refused to dismiss the enforcement of an award on the ground that the Belize courts had ordered that its enforcement be suspended "in any jurisdiction outside of Belize", while the place of the arbitration was England and the applicable procedural law was English law.[987] A number of courts have held that, in practice, this provision amounts to granting the courts of the place of the arbitration exclusive jurisdiction to rule on requests for the setting aside or suspension of an arbitral award.[988]

C. Award set aside or suspended

27. Article V (1)*(e)* allows national courts to refuse recognition or enforcement if it is established that, in the courts of the country in which, or under the law of which, the award was made, the award has been set aside or suspended.

---

[986]Nadia Darwazeh, *Article V (1)(e)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 301, 320-23 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 350 (1981); Christoph Liebscher, *Article V (1)(e)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement Of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 356, 376, para. 409 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[987]*Belize Social Development Ltd. (Belize) v. Government of Belize*, Court of Appeals, D.C. Circuit, United States of America, 13 January 2012, 10-7167. See also *Continental Transfert Technique Limited v. Federal Government of Nigeria*, District Court for the District of Columbia, United States of America, 23 March 2010, Civil Action No. 08-2026 (PLF) (in a case where the seat of the arbitration was in the United Kingdom, ruling that an *ex parte* order issued by the courts of Nigeria and temporarily barring the Claimant "from seeking or continuing to [seek] the recognition and enforcement of the Final Award [...] pending the hearing and determination" does not constitute a valid ground for refusing the enforcement of the award under article V (1)*(e)*).

[988]This has been repeatedly stated by the Court of Appeal of Cairo, for instance in *Brothers for Import, Export and Supply Company (Egypt) v. Hano Acorporish (Republic of Korea)*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 2 July 2008, 23/125 (stating that only the Courts of the country where the award was issued have jurisdiction to rule on requests for setting aside); *The Commercial Company for Investment v. Bell Rover Shipping Limited*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 19 March 1997, 68/113 (stating that only the Courts of the country where the award was issued have jurisdiction to rule on requests for the suspension of the enforcement of the arbitral award or its setting aside); *Cairo for Real Estate Company v. Abdel Rahman Hassan Sharbatly*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 26 February 2003, 23/119 (stating that only the Courts of the place of the arbitration have jurisdiction to rule on requests for setting aside). See also *Karaha Bodas Co. (Cayman Islands) v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara (Indonesia)*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 23 March 2004, 02-20042, 03-20602. See also ICCA's Guide To the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention: A Handbook for Judges102 (P. Sanders ed., 2011).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

28. As pointed out in the commentary on the chapeau of article V, the use of the term "may" in the chapeau of article V (1) indicates that national courts have the possibility to refuse enforcement of an award on the grounds listed in this article, but they are not obliged to do so.[989] Furthermore, as discussed in the chapter of the Guide on article VII, a court will not breach the Convention by enforcing an arbitral award pursuant to more favourable provisions found in its domestic laws, in accordance with article VII (1). Accordingly, a number of courts have accepted to enforce awards suspended or set aside at the seat of the arbitration, either on the basis of the use of the term "may" in article V (1), or on the basis of a more favourable provision in the domestic law than article V (1)*(e)* in accordance with article VII (1).[990]

a. Award set aside

29. According to a commentator, this ground for refusal "seldom occurs and is almost never successful",[991] in a number of instances, national courts have rejected this ground for denying enforcement by applying national laws more favourable to enforcement than article V (1)*(e)* of the Convention.[992] On the other hand, the Convention does not obligate courts to enforce awards that have been set aside at

[989]See the introduction to the chapter of the Guide on article V (1). See also Nadia Darwazeh, *Article V (1)(e)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 301, 307-09 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Christoph Liebscher, *Article V (1)(e)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 356, 356, para. 351 (R. Wolff ed., 2012). Some authors have however questioned this interpretation, relying on the French version of the text of the Convention. See, on this debate, Philippe Fouchard, *La portée internationale de l'annulation de la sentence arbitrale dans son pays d'origine*, 1997 Rev. arb 344; Jan Paulsson, *Enforcing Arbitral Awards Notwithstanding a Local Standard Annulment* (LSA), 9(1) ICC Bull. 17 (1998).

[990]See, e.g., *Société Bargues Agro Industrie SA v. Société Young Pecan Company*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 10 June 2004, 2003/09894; *Chromalloy Aeroservices v. Arab Republic of Egypt*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 31 July 1996, 94-2339; *Nigerian National Petroleum Corporation v. IPCO (Nigeria) Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 21 October 2008, A3/2008/1037.PTA+(A); *Buyer (Poland) v. Seller (Poland)*, Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamburg, Germany, 24 January 2003, 11 Sch 06/01 and see the decisions cited in the chapter of the Guide on article VII (1).

[991]Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention Of 1958: Towards A Uniform Judicial Interpretation 332 (1981).

[992]See in particular the practice of the courts of France: *Société Pabalk Ticaret Sirketi v. Société Anonyme Norsolor*, Court of Cassation, France, 83-11.355, 9 October 1984, 1985 Rev. Arb. 431, with English translation in 24 ILM 360 (1985); *Bargues Agro Industrie S.A. v. Young Pecan Company*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 10 June 2004, 2006 Rev. Arb.; *Société PT Putrabali Adyamulia v. Société Rena Holding et Société Moguntia Est Epices*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 31 March 2005, 2006 Rev. Arb. 665, *affirmed by Société PT Putrabali Adyamulia v. Rena Holding Société Moguntia Est Epices*, Court of Cassation, France, 05-18053, 29 June 2007, 2007 Rev. Arb.; *Direction Générale de l'Aviation Civile de l'Emirat de Dubaï v. Société International Bechtel Co.*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 29 September 2005, 2006 Rev. Arb.; *Société S.A. Lesbats et Fils v. Volker le Docteur Grub*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 18 January 2007, 05/10887.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

the place of arbitration, and in some cases, courts have denied enforcement pursuant to article V (1)*(e)* on this ground.[993]

30. In cases where this ground for denying enforcement has been applied, courts have held that the award must have been effectively set aside for it to be denied enforcement, and that the mere initiation of setting aside proceedings does not constitute a valid ground.[994] A Russian court decided that if the award had effectively been set aside, however, this would constitute a sufficient ground for denying enforcement; whether or not the decision setting aside the award is subject to appeal is irrelevant.[995]

b. Award suspended

31. Article V (1)*(e)* of the Convention also allows parties to challenge the enforcement of an award if the award has been "suspended". The Convention does not provide guidance as to the definition of the term "suspended"; nevertheless, with very few exceptions,[996] the majority of courts agree that this refers to a formal suspension resulting from a court decision. The Swiss Federal Tribunal, for instance, held that this rule covers a situation in which a court, "noticing that a fault is likely to impact the award, prevents its enforcement until such time as the issue is settled substantively by the court examining the action to set aside the award". In that case, a court decision dismissing the claimant's request to wind up the respondent was found not to call into question the validity of the award or to formally suspend its enforcement.[997]

32. Likewise, it is understood that the automatic suspension resulting from the initiation of an action to set aside the award in the court of the originating jurisdiction does not meet the requirement of article V (1)*(e)*. As noted by some

[993]See in particular the practice of the courts of the United States and Germany: *Baker Marine Ltd. v. Chevron Limited, Chevron Corp., Inc. and others v. Danos and Curole Marine Contractors, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 12 August 1999, 97-9615 and 97-9617 (refusing to enforce an award on the ground that it was annulled by the Nigerian courts of the seat); *TermoRio S.A. E.S.P. (Colombia) v. Electranta S.P. (Colombia)*, Court of Appeals, D.C. Circuit, United States of America, 25 May 2007, 06-7058 (refusing to enforce an award annulled by the courts of the seat, namely Colombian courts); Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Rostock, Germany, 28 October 1999, 1 Sch 03/99 (denying enforcement of an award set aside at the seat of the arbitration, namely Moscow).

[994]See the chapter of the Guide on article V (1)*(e)*, para. 12.

[995]*Ciments Français (France) v. OAO Holding Company Siberian Cement (Russian Federation)*, OOO *Financial Industrial Association Sibconcord (Russian Federation), Istanbul Çimento Yatırımları (Turkey)*, Federal Arbitrazh Court for the West-Siberian District, Russian Federation, 5 December 2011, A27-781/2011.

[996]See, e.g., *Creighton Limited v. The Government of the State of Qatar (Ministry of Public Works)*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 22 March 1995, 94-1035 RMU, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. (1996) (refusing to enforce an award on the ground that the initiation of annulment proceedings in France had, at the time, the effect of automatically suspending it).

[997]Swiss Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 21 March 2000, 5P.371/1999.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

commentators, if the term "suspension" were to refer to the automatic suspension of an award in the originating jurisdiction pending an action to set aside, this would defeat the whole system of the Convention, as it would suffice that the party opposing enforcement could initiate an application to set aside the award at the place of arbitration so that the award be refused enforcement everywhere.[998] In Switzerland, for instance, a party challenged the enforcement pursuant to article V (1)*(e)* on grounds that the initiation of setting aside proceedings at the courts of the place of arbitration in France automatically suspended the effects of the award. The Swiss Federal Tribunal held that the correct interpretation of the Convention should be that the suspension of the award in the originating jurisdiction would only constitute a ground for challenge if it were granted by a judicial decision, but not when it simply arises from an action brought against the award.[999] In *AB Götaverken*, the Swedish Supreme Court confirmed that the reference to a "suspended" award under article V (1)*(e)* refers to "a situation where, after specific consideration of the matter, the foreign authority orders the setting aside of a binding and enforceable award or the suspension of its enforcement". As a result, the court rejected the respondent's contention that enforcement should be denied on the ground that a recourse to set aside had been initiated in France, the country where the award was issued.[1000] The same principle led a United States court to deny the enforcement of an award. After confirming that "article V (1)*(e)* of the Convention require[s] a 'competent authority' to suspend the award, not just a statutory stay", the court held that, in that case, the stay ordered by the Argentinian courts was not merely an "automatic" stay resulting from the initiation of setting aside proceedings or a "pre-ordered" formality, and on that basis dismissed the request to enforce the award.[1001]

[998] Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 352 (1981). See also Nadia Darwazeh, *Article V (1)(e)*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 301, 341-42 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010); Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 980-81, para. 1690 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); Christoph Liebscher, *Article V (1)(e)*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 356, 372, paras. 395-96 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

[999] *Company X S.A. v. Y Federation*, Swiss Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 9 December 2008, 4A_403/2008.

[1000] *AB Götaverken v. General National Maritime Transport Company (GMTC), Libya and others*, Supreme Court, Sweden, 13 August 1979, SO 1462. See also *The Republic of Gabon v. Swiss Oil Corporation*, Grand Court, Cayman Islands, 17 June 1988, XIV Y.B. Com. Arb. (1989) (ruling that the automatic suspension of the effect of the award due to the initiation of a recourse to set aside the award under French law does not amount to "a competent authority [acting] consciously to stay the [award]" and therefore is not a ground to refuse enforcement under art. V (1)*(e)*); *S.A. Recam Sonofadex v. S.N.C. Cantieri Rizzardi de Gianfranco Rizzardi*, Court of Appeal of Orleans, France, 5 October 2000 (stating that the suspensive effect of setting aside proceedings initiated at the seat of the arbitration, namely Italy, does not amount to an effective suspension required by article V (1)*(e)* and cannot serve as a valid ground to reject the recognition and enforcement of the Award).

[1001] *EDF International S.A. v. YPF S.A.*, District Court for the District of Delaware, United States of America, 20 November 2008, Civil Action No. 08-167-JJF.

Article V (2)*(a)*

Recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award may also be refused if the competent authority in the country where recognition and enforcement is sought finds that:

(a) The subject matter of the difference is not capable of settlement by arbitration under the law of that country; or

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article V (2)*(a)* as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704 and Annex.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822, Annexes I-II; E/2822/Add.2; E/2822/Add.5; E/CONF.26/3/Add.1.
- Comments on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: Note by the Secretary General: E/CONF.26/2.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.17; E/CONF.26/L.32.
- Comparison of Drafts Relating to Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention: E/CONF.26/L.33/Rev.1.

- Further Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.38.
- Text of Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention Proposed by Working Party III: E/CONF.26/L.43.
- Text of Articles Adopted by the Conference: E/CONF.26/L.48.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/L.61; E/CONF.26/8.
- Final Act and Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Eleventh, Thirteenth, Fourteenth, Seventeenth, and Twenty-First Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR.11; E/CONF.26/SR.13; E/CONF.26/SR.14; E/CONF.26/SR.17; E/CONF.26/SR.21.
- Summary Records of the Fifth, and Seventh Meetings of the Committee on Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.5; E/AC.42/SR.7.

Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards:

- Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: statement submitted by the International Chamber of Commerce, a non-governmental organization having consultative status in category A: E/C.2/373.
- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/4.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Introduction

1. Article V (2)*(a)* of the New York Convention enables the courts of a Contracting State to refuse recognition and enforcement of an award if they find that the subject matter of the difference which led to the award is not capable of settlement by arbitration under the law of the country where recognition and enforcement is sought.

2. Article 1*(b)* of the 1927 Geneva Convention conditioned recognition and enforcement on a positive showing that the subject matter of the award was capable of settlement by arbitration under the law of the country where the award was relied upon.[1002] By contrast, the New York Convention simply provides, in article V (2)*(a)*, that recognition and enforcement "may" be refused if the subject matter of a difference is not capable of settlement by arbitration. This departure from the text of the 1927 Geneva Convention underlines the pro-enforcement policy of the New York Convention.

3. The New York Convention also refers to the question whether the subject matter of a dispute is "capable of settlement by arbitration" in relation to the recognition of an arbitration agreement, under article II (1).[1003] As noted by commentators, the meaning of the phrase "capable of settlement by arbitration" in article II (1) and article V (2)*(a)* should be understood in the same manner.[1004]

4. The ground for refusal under article V (2)*(a)* may be raised by a court ex officio.[1005] Nonetheless, certain courts have considered that the party opposing recognition and enforcement retains the ultimate burden to prove that the subject matter of the underlying dispute is not capable of settlement by arbitration.[1006]

[1002]Article 1*(b)* of the 1927 Geneva Convention refers to the "subject matter of the award" being "capable of settlement by arbitration". The change to "subject matter of the difference" in the New York Convention has not given rise to any controversy or discussion.

[1003]Pursuant to article II (1), courts of the Contracting States shall recognize an agreement in writing under which the parties have undertaken to submit to arbitration all "differences" in respect of a legal relationship, concerning a subject which is "capable of settlement by arbitration". See the chapter of the Guide on article II.

[1004]Jan Paulsson, *Arbitrability, Still Through a Glass Darkly*, in Arbitration in the Next Decade 95, 96 (ICC Pub. No, 612E, 1999); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 359 (1981); David Quinke, *Article V (2)(a)*, in The New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 380, 383, para. 427 (R. Wolff ed., 2012). This chapter addresses decisions of national courts that analyse the ground to refuse recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award under article V (2)*(a)*. For cases interpreting the words "capable of settlement by arbitration" under article II (1), see the chapter of the Guide on article II.

[1005]Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 983, para. 169 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999) 3; Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 359 (1981).

[1006]*Italian Party v. Swiss Company*, Court of Appeal of Zurich, Switzerland, 17 July 2003, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 819 (2004); *English Company X v. Spanish Company Y*, Supreme Court, Spain, 10 February 1984, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 493 (1985).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

5. During the deliberations on article V (2)*(a)*, the French delegation questioned whether article V (2)*(a)* would allow national courts to apply local laws as a basis for refusing to recognize and enforce foreign arbitral awards.[1007] The practice of courts in the Contracting States has allayed these concerns. The question of whether the subject matter of a difference resulting in an arbitral award is capable of settlement by arbitration has been raised in a relatively small number of cases, and courts of the Contracting States have exercised their discretion to refuse recognition and enforcement pursuant to article V (2)*(a)* in only a handful of instances.

Analysis

A. Concept

6. Article V (2)*(a)* of the Convention provides that a court "may" refuse recognition and enforcement if the "subject matter of the difference" is "not capable of settlement by arbitration". The Convention does not define the phrases "subject matter of the difference" and "capable of settlement by arbitration". The *travaux préparatoires* to the Convention do not address the wording of article V (2)*(a)*.

7. It is generally accepted that article V (2)*(a)* allows national courts to refuse to recognize and enforce an arbitral award where there is a legal impediment to the resolution of the subject matter of the underlying dispute by arbitration, i.e., where the underlying dispute is not "arbitrable".[1008] In the context of article V (2)*(a)*, arbitrability is to be understood to mean whether a subject matter can be resolved through arbitration, or is reserved for resolution by courts.[1009] It should not be

[1007] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Eleventh Meeting E/CONF.26/SR.11, p. 7.

[1008] See Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 948 (2014); W. Laurence Craig, William W. Park, Jan Paulsson, International Chamber of Commerce Arbitration 60 (2000). During the drafting of the Convention, the Society of Comparative Legislation proposed to replace the language "not capable of settlement by arbitration" by "not arbitrable". The proposal was not discussed further, nor was it taken up by the Drafting Committee. *Travaux préparatoires*, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Report by the Secretary-General, Annex II, Comments by Non-Governmental Organizations, E/2822, p. 22.

[1009] W. Laurence Craig, William W. Park, Jan Paulsson, International Chamber of Commerce Arbitration 60 (2000); Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 944, fn. 3 (2014); Albert Jan van den Berg, *Consolidated Commentary Cases Reported in Volumes XXII (1997) - XXVII (2002)*, XXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 666 (2003), para. 519; ICCA's Guide to the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention: A Handbook for Judges 104 (P. Sanders ed., 2011).

understood to mean whether a dispute falls within the scope of an arbitration agreement.[1010]

8. "Arbitrability" is not a concept that is unique to the New York Convention. Rather, arbitrability forms part of a wider range of tools, such as the mandatory rules of the forum, which override party autonomy and enable a national court to protect the core interests of the legal order to which it belongs.

9. The drafters of the Convention rejected a proposal by the French delegation that article V (2)*(a)* be deleted on the grounds that it unduly attributed international importance to domestic rules, and that it would be sufficient that an award comply with international public policy under what is now article V (2)*(b)*.[1011] Instead, the final text of the Convention followed the approach of the 1927 Geneva Convention, which treated public policy ground (article 1*(e)*) and arbitrability ground (article 1*(b)*) in separate subsections, and maintained article V (2)*(a)* and article V (2)*(b)* as distinct grounds.

10. Furthermore, while the ground for refusal set forth at article V (2)*(a)* may sometimes coincide with that at article V (2)*(b)*, in other cases it does not. For instance, certain family law issues which also touch upon financial matters, such as the resolution of financial arrangements between spouses, are in some jurisdictions not capable of settlement by arbitration,[1012] while allowed in others to be settled by arbitration[1013] without falling under the concept of international public policy.

[1010]See in particular the terminology used by the United States Supreme Court in *First Options of Chicago, Inc. v. Manuel Kaplan, et ux. and MK Investments, Inc.*, Supreme Court, United States of America, 22 May 1995, 514 United States 938. This broader understanding of arbitrability is not generally used in international practice; see, e.g., in the context of negotiation of UNCITRAL Model Law on Arbitration, Howard M. Holtzmann and Joseph E. Neuhaus, A Guide To The Uncitral Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration—Legislative History and Commentary 135 *et seq.* (1989).

[1011]*Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Eleventh Meeting E/CONF.26/SR.11, p. 7. The later, tri-state proposal of France, the Netherlands and the Federal Republic of Germany also contemplated the deletion of what is now article V (2)*(a)*: *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Fourteenth Meeting E/CONF.26/SR.14, p. 2. The Greek delegation proposed a re-wording "*in such a way that the fact that a foreign award was incompatible with fundamental principles of law (ordre public) would be sufficient grounds for refusing recognition*". *Travaux préparatoires*, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, Report by the Secretary-General, Annex I Comments by Governments, E/2822/Add. 2, p. 2.

[1012]See, e.g., Article 806 of the Italian Code of Civil Procedure, which allows parties to elect for dispute settlement through arbitration apart from disputes concerning, *inter alia,* "issues of personal status and marital separation"; Article 2060 of the French Civil Code, which provides *inter alia* that "[o]ne may not enter into arbitration agreements in matters [...] relating to divorce and judicial separation". Although this text does not apply to international arbitration, it nevertheless reveals the importance that the French legislature attaches to these issues.

[1013]See, e.g., Article 177 of the Swiss Private International Law Statute, under which "[a]ny dispute of financial interest may be the subject of an arbitration", i.e., any dispute which can be assessed in monetary terms, is capable of settlement by arbitration.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

11. In line with the approach of the New York Convention to differentiate arbitrability and public policy, courts of the Contracting States have consistently addressed the grounds in articles V (2)*(a)* and V (2)*(b)* separately, without questioning whether they refer to the same concept.[1014]

12. It has been suggested that the fact that a particular matter is not capable of settlement by arbitration under a national law should not necessarily entail that it will not give rise to an enforceable award under the New York Convention. In *Parsons*, a United States Appeals court considered that "it may well be that the special considerations and policies" underlying international arbitration "call for a narrower view of non-arbitrability in the international than the domestic context".[1015] A number of commentators have also considered that the Convention's pro-enforcement policy requires courts to apply an international, rather than a domestic, notion of which subject matters are to be capable of settlement by arbitration.[1016]

[1014]See, e.g., *Parsons & Whittemore Overseas Co. v. Société Générale de L'Industrie du Papier (RAKTA)*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 23 December 1974, 508 F.2d 969, 975; *Angel v. Bernardo Alfageme, S.A.*, Supreme Court, Civil Chamber, First Section, Spain, 20 March 2001, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 821 (2006); *Hemofarm DD, MAG International Trade Holding DD, Suram Media Ltd. v. Jinan Yongning Pharmaceutical Co. Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 2 June 2008, Min Si Ta Zi No. 11; *Javor v. Francoeur*, Supreme Court of British Columbia, Canada, 6 March 2003, BCSC 2003 350; *Bobbie Brooks Inc. v. Lanificio Walter Banci s.a.s.*, Court of Appeal, Florence, Italy, 8 October 1977, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 289 (1979); *KM v. JSC*, Supreme Court, Lithuania, 21 February 2011, XXXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 414 (2013); *Drummond Ltd. v. Ferrovias en Liquidación, Ferrocariles Nacionales de Colombia S.A. (FENOCO)*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 19 December 2011, 11001-0203-000-2008-01760-00.

[1015]*Parsons & Whittemore Overseas Co. v. Société Générale de L'Industrie du Papier (RAKTA)*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 23 December 1974, 508 F.2d 969, 975. The Court of Appeal found that there was no special national interest in the judicial, rather than arbitral, resolution of a breach of contract claim that would justify a refusal to recognize and enforce the ensuing award pursuant to article V (2)*(a)*, and that it need not reach any distinction between the domestic and international arbitrability of the award. In a different context, courts in the United States have also confirmed that disputes involving issues of American antitrust law, which are normally subject to the jurisdiction of domestic courts, are capable of settlement by arbitration within the meaning of article II of the Convention. See, e.g., *Mitsubishi Motors Corp v. Soler Chrysler-Plymouth*, Supreme Court, United States of America, 20 December 1983, 473 United States 614, XI Y.B Com. Arb 555 (1986), where the Supreme Court affirmed that it is "necessary for national courts to subordinate domestic notions of arbitrability to the international policy favouring commercial arbitration".

[1016]Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 995, para. 1707 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999); W. Laurence Craig, William W. Park, Jan Paulsson, International Chamber of Commerce Arbitration 62-63 (2000); Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 3697-98 (2014); Albert Jan van Den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 152-53 (1981); ICCA's Guide to the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention: A Handbook for Judges 105 (P. Sanders ed., 2011); David Quinke, *Article V (2)(a)*, in The New York Convention on the recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 380, 388-89, paras. 438-40 (R. Wolff ed., 2012).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

B. Application

13. Article V (2)*(a)* provides that a court may refuse to recognize and enforce an award where the subject matter of the dispute which gave rise to the award is not capable of settlement by arbitration.

14. The Convention does not identify the types of subject matters that are capable of settlement by arbitration. The wording of article V (2)*(a)* specifically directs the enforcing court to determine whether the subject matter of the dispute is capable of settlement by arbitration "under the law of that country" where recognition and enforcement is sought. In accordance with this wording, courts of the Contracting States have consistently applied their national laws to assess whether a dispute is capable of settlement by arbitration, and not the law of the country where the arbitration took place or any other law.[1017]

15. Courts applying article V (2)*(a)* have adopted different approaches to delineate which disputes are capable of settlement by arbitration under their laws. For instance, the Supreme Court of Lithuania, when deciding whether a dispute arising out of a contract between a basketball player and a local club was capable of settlement by arbitration, considered whether the dispute fell within the scope of Article 11(1) of the Commercial Arbitration Law of the Republic of Lithuania, which provides that certain disputes, such as employment and labor disputes, cannot be submitted to arbitration.[1018] Courts in other jurisdictions have applied article V (2)*(a)* by reference to similar provisions in their national laws.[1019]

16. Courts of Contracting States which do not specifically define in their legislation which disputes are arbitrable have adopted a different approach. In one reported case, the Supreme Court of Singapore determined whether the underlying difference, which concerned whether a person was the "alter ego of a company", was capable by settlement by arbitration by considering whether it touched on an element of public interest. The Court held that that there was no special public

[1017] See, e.g., *Société O.A.O. NPO Saturn v. Société Unimpex Entreprises*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, October 2009, 07/17049; *Bankruptcy estate of Kommandiittiyhtiö Finexim O. Ivanoff (Finexim) v. Ferromet Aussenhandelsunternehmen*, Supreme Court, Finland, 27 February 1989, S88/310; *ED & F Man (Hong Kong) Co., Ltd. v. China National Sugar & Wines Group Corp.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 1 July 2003, Min Si Ta Zi No. 3; *Aloe Vera of America, Inc. v. Asianic Food (S) Pte Ltd. and Another*, Supreme Court of Singapore, High Court, Singapore, 10 May 2006, OS 762/2004, RA 327/2005, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 489 (2007); *Construction Company Z v. State X*, Kammergericht [KG] Berlin, Germany, 11 June 2009, 20 Sch 04/07.

[1018] *KM v. JSC*, Supreme Court, Lithuania, 21 February 2011, XXXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 414 (2013).

[1019] See, e.g., *Quaglia v. Daros*, Court of Genoa, Italy, 30 April 1980, referring to Article 806 of the Italian Code of Civil Procedure, which provides as a default rule that parties may submit their disputes to arbitration, with the exception of disputes concerning issues of personal status and marital separation, and disputes concerning labour and social security issues; *Hemofarm DD, MAG International Trade Holding DD, Suram Media Ltd. v. Jinan Yongning Pharmaceutical Co. Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 2 June 2008, Min Si Ta Zi No. 11, referring to Article 2 of the Arbitration Law of China, which provides that only disputes between citizens, legal persons and other organisations concerning contractual and commercial matters are capable of settlement by arbitration.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

interest in such a dispute and dismissed the appeal of the order by a lower court granting the award enforcement.[1020]

17. In the United States, courts have resolved challenges to recognition and enforcement based on article V (2)*(a)* by reference to the implied legislative intent of entering into the New York Convention, namely to promote the use of international arbitration.[1021]

18. Regardless of the approach followed, courts of the Contracting States have set very few limits on the types of disputes that are capable of settlement by arbitration in the application of article V (2)*(a)*. This reflects the trend of reserving only a small category of disputes solely to the jurisdiction of courts and the growing confidence of most jurisdictions in arbitration. In the words of one United States Court, "the incapable of settlement by arbitration exception has been narrowly construed in light of the strong judicial interest in encouraging the use of arbitration".[1022]

19. The types of disputes which have been analysed in the limited case law on article V (2)*(a)* may be separated into two broad categories, namely those that concern commercial matters, and those types of non-commercial disputes which courts have, in exceptional circumstances, considered incapable of settlement by arbitration under their national laws.

a. Commercial disputes

20. There is broad agreement among courts of the Contracting States that a dispute whose subject matter is of a commercial nature is capable of being settled by arbitration, and an arbitral award that results from a commercial difference should not be refused enforcement pursuant to article V (2)*(a)*.

[1020] *Aloe Vera of America, Inc. v. Asianic Food (S) Pte Ltd. and Another*, Supreme Court of Singapore, High Court, Singapore, 10 May 2006, OS 762/2004, RA 327/2005, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 489 (2007).

[1021] *Mitsubishi Motors Corp v. Soler Chrysler-Plymouth*, Supreme Court, United States of America, 20 December 1983, 473 United States 614, XI Y.B Com. Arb 555 (1986); *McDermott International Inc. v. Underwriters at Lloyd's*, United States District Court, E.D. Louisiana, May 29 1996, Civ.A. No. 91—841; *Saudi Iron And Steel Co. v. Stemcor USA Inc*, United States District Court, Southern District of New York, 17 October 1997, 97 CIV. 5976 (DLC), XXIII Y.B. 1082 Com. Arb. (1998); *Parsons & Whittemore Overseas Co. v. Société Générale de L'Industrie du Papier (RAKTA)*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 23 December 1974, 508 F.2d 969, 975; *Shaheen Natural Resources Company Inc. v. Société Nationale pour la Recherche, la Production and others*, United States District Court, Southern District of New York, 585 F. Supp. 57; United States Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, 15 November 1983, 733 F. Supp. 2d 260, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 540 (1985); *VRG Linhas Aereas S.A. v. Matlin Patterson Global Opportunities Partners II L.P*, United States Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, Docket No. 12-593-cv, 3 June 2013.

[1022] *Saudi Iron And Steel Co. v. Stemcor USA Inc*, United States District Court, Southern District of New York, 16 October 1997, No. 97 CIV. 5976 (DLC), XXIII Y.B. 1082 Com. Arb. (1998).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

21. Courts in Germany,[1023] Switzerland,[1024] Italy,[1025] Spain,[1026] Colombia,[1027] the United States[1028] and Singapore[1029] have all expressly held that a difference arising out of a commercial matter should not be refused enforcement pursuant to article V (2)*(a)*.

22. Breach of contract claims are the most frequently reported example of differences found to be commercial in nature and, therefore, capable of settlement by arbitration. For instance, an Italian Court of Appeal found that a dispute concerning a product quality issue was capable of settlement by arbitration.[1030] Courts in Spain[1031] and China[1032] have reached similar conclusions when deciding applications to enforce arbitral awards deciding differences arising out of sale of goods contracts.

23. Courts have found other types of contractual disputes capable of settlement by arbitration. For instance, the Supreme Court of Colombia held that a dispute concerning the performance of a contract for the transportation of coal was capable

[1023]Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamm, Germany, 2 November 1983, 20 U 57/83; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 23 February 2007, 34 Sch 31/06.

[1024]*Italian party v. Swiss company*, High Court of Zurich, Switzerland, 17 July 2003, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 819 (2004).

[1025]*Società La Naviera Grancebaco S.A. v. Ditta Italgrani*, Court of Naples, Italy, 30 June 1976, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 277 (1979); *Renault Jacquinet v. Sicea*, Court of Appeal, Milan, Italy, 3 May 1977, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 284 (1979); *Bobbie Brooks Inc. v. Lanificio Walter Banci s.a.s.*, Court of Appeal, Florence, Italy, 8 October 1977, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 289 (1979); *Efxinos Shipping Co. Ltd. v. Rawi Shipping Lines Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, Genoa, Italy, 2 May 1980, VIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 381 (1983).

[1026]*English Company X v. Spanish Company Y*, Supreme Court, Spain, 10 February 1984, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 493 (1985); *Thyssen Haniel Logistic International GmbH v. Barna Consignataria S.L.*, Supreme Court, Spain, 14 July 1998, XXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 851 (2001); *Angel v. Bernardo Alfageme, S.A.*, Supreme Court, Civil Chamber, First Section, Spain, 20 March 2001, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 821 (2006).

[1027]*Sunward Overseas S.A. v. Servicios Marítimos Limitada Semar (Ltda.)*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 20 November 1992, XX Y.B. Com. Arb. 651 (1995); *Drummond Ltd. v. Ferrovias en Liquidación, Ferrocariles Nacionales de Colombia S.A. (FENOCO)*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 19 December 2011, 11001-0203-000-2008-01760-00.

[1028]*Seven Seas Shipping Ltd. v. Tondo Limitada*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 25 June 1999, 99 CIV. 1164 (DLC), XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 641 (2000); *Stellar Lines, S.A. v. Euroleader Shipping and Trading Corp.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 16 August 1999, 99 CIV. 4073 (DLC), XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 641 (2000).

[1029]*Aloe Vera of America, Inc. v. Asianic Food (S) Pte Ltd. and Another*, Supreme Court of Singapore, High Court, Singapore, 10 May 2006, OS 762/2004, RA 327/2005, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 489 (2007).

[1030]*Renault Jacquinet v. Sicea*, Court of Appeal, Milan, (Sez. I), Italy, 3 May 1977, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 284 (1979). See also *Bobbie Brooks Inc. v. Lanificio Walter Banci s.a.s.*, Court of Appeal, Florence, Italy, 8 October 1977, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 289 (1979).

[1031]*Angel v. Bernardo Alfageme, S.A.*, Supreme Court, Civil Chamber, First Section, Spain, 20 March 2001, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 821 (2006).

[1032]*English Company X v. Spanish Company Y*, Supreme Court, Spain, 10 February 1984, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 493 (1985); *ED & F Man (Hong Kong) Co., Ltd. v. China National Sugar & Wines Group Corp.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 01 July 2003, Min Si Ta Zi No. 3.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

of settlement by arbitration.[1033] Courts in the United States,[1034] Colombia,[1035] Italy,[1036] and Spain[1037] have also consistently held that differences arising out of charter parties were capable of settlement by arbitration within the meaning of article V (2)*(a)*.

24. In another case, a Swiss court held that an award rendered in a dispute arising under a licence agreement concerning monetary claims can be subject to arbitration under Swiss law, and found that enforcement should not be denied under article V (2)*(a)*.[1038] Disputes arising under services contracts have also been held to be of a commercial nature, and therefore capable of settlement by arbitration within the meaning of article V (2)*(a)*.[1039]

b. Non-commercial disputes

25. Different categories of non-commercial disputes have been analysed in the case law on article V (2)*(a)*. As discussed above, the wording of article V (2)*(a)* directs national courts to determine the arbitrability of a particular dispute in accordance with their national law.

26. Concerning employment and labor disputes, the laws of some jurisdictions allow such disputes to be submitted to arbitration, while others do not.[1040] In the

[1033] *Drummond Ltd. v. Ferrovias en Liquidación, Ferrocariles Nacionales de Colombia S.A. (FENOCO)*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 19 December 2011, 11001-0203-000-2008-01760-00.

[1034] *Seven Seas Shipping Ltd. v. Tondo Limitada*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 25 June 1999, 99 CIV. 1164 (DLC), XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 641 (2000); *Stellar Lines, S.A. v. Euroleader Shipping and Trading Corp.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 16 August 1999, 99 CIV. 4073 (DLC), XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 641 (2000).

[1035] *Sunward Overseas S.A. v. Servicios Marítimos Limitada Semar (Ltda.)*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 20 November 1992, XX Y.B. Com. Arb. 651 (1995).

[1036] *Società La Naviera Grancebaco S.A. v. Ditta Italgrani*, Court of Naples, Italy, 30 June 1976, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 277 (1979); *Efxinos Shipping Co. Ltd. v. Rawi Shipping Lines Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, Genoa, Italy, 2 May 1980, VIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 381 (1983).

[1037] *Thyssen Haniel Logistic International GmbH v. Barna Consignataria S.L.*, Supreme Court, Spain, 14 July 1998, XXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 851 (2001).

[1038] *Italian party v. Swiss company*, High Court of Zurich, Switzerland, 17 July 2003, XXIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 819 (2004).

[1039] See, e.g., *Parsons & Whittemore Overseas Co. v. Société Générale de L'Industrie du Papier (RAKTA)*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 23 December 1974, 508 F.2d 969, 975; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 23 February 2007, 34 Sch 31/06.

[1040] For instance, the United States legislature has favoured the arbitration of many types of labour disputes. See §1 of the United States Federal Arbitration Act, which excludes from the Act's coverage agreements arising from only a limited range of employment relations involving "contracts of employment of seamen, railroad employees, or any other class of workers engaged in foreign or interstate commerce." Switzerland has also taken a liberal stance on the arbitration of labour and employment disputes. See Alexandra Johnson, Isabelle Wildhaber, *Arbitrating Labor Disputes in Switzerland*, 27(6) J. Int'l Arb. 631-55 (2010). In other jurisdictions such as Germany, an arbitration agreement between an employer and individual employees regarding the employment contract is invalid. Jean-François Poudret, Sébastien Besson, Comparative Law of International Arbitration 313 (2007).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

only reported case on article V (2)*(a)* that concerns an employment law dispute,[1041] the Supreme Court of Lithuania reversed an order of a lower court that refused recognition and enforcement of an award that had decided a dispute involving a local sports club, on the ground that it was an employment dispute that was incapable of settlement by arbitration under Lithuanian law. The Supreme Court reasoned that professional sports agreements are underpinned by the principle of freedom of contract and that there was no impediment to submitting disputes arising under those contracts to arbitration.[1042]

27. At this time, there are no reported cases analysing whether an arbitral award that decides matters of competition law should be refused recognition and enforcement pursuant to article V (2)*(a)*. In a different context, the United States Supreme Court held in the 1983 Mitsubishi Motors decision that statutory antitrust claims arising out of an "international transaction" was validly subject to the New York Convention, and that an agreement to arbitrate those claims should be enforced under article II. In reaching its decision, the Supreme Court noted that at the time of acceding to the Convention, the United States Congress did not expressly exclude any matters from the scope of the Convention's application, and that "[the utility of the Convention in promoting the process of international commercial arbitration depends upon the willingness of national courts to let go of matters they normally would think of as their own."[1043]

28. It is generally accepted that the authority to commence and administer bankruptcy proceedings rests solely with national courts.[1044] Different conclusions have been reached concerning whether bankruptcy law related disputes are capable of settlement by arbitration under article V (2)*(a)*. For instance, the Supreme Court of Finland held that claims concerning debts of an insolvent company were capable of settlement by arbitration.[1045] In a different context, the Court of Appeal of Lithuania held that a dispute between two companies was not capable of settlement by

[1041]The arbitrability of employment and labour disputes has more often arisen at the pre-award stage. See the chapter of the Guide on article II.

[1042]*KM v. JSC*, Supreme Court, Lithuania, 21 February 2011, XXXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 414 (2013). The Supreme Court referred the case back to the Court of Appeal to decide the separate ground of whether the award was contrary to public policy and should be refused recognition and enforcement under article V (2)*(b)*.

[1043]*Mitsubishi Motors Corp v. Soler Chrysler-Plymouth*, Supreme Court, United States of America, 20 December 1983, 473 United States 614, XI Y.B Com. Arb 555 (1986).

[1044]See Gabrielle Kaufmann-Kohler, Laurent Lévy, *International Commercial Arbitration, Insolvency and International Arbitration*, in The Challenges of Insolvency Law Reform in the 21st Century 257, 262-63 (H. Peter, N. Jeandin, J. Kilborn eds., 2006); Fernando Mantilla-Serrano, *International Arbitration and Insolvency Proceedings*, 11 Arb. Int'l 51, 65 (1995) (quoting from unpublished award: "only those issues that have a direct connection with the insolvency proceedings, that is the issues that arise out of the application of rules particular to those proceedings" are nonarbitrable); Adam Samuel, Jurisdictional Problems in International Commercial Arbitration: A Study of Belgian, Dutch, English, French, Swedish, Swiss, United States and West German Law 143 (1989) ("an arbitrator cannot officially declare someone bankrupt").

[1045]*Bankruptcy estate of Kommandiittiyhtiö Finexim O. Ivanoff (Finexim) v. Ferromet Aussenhandelsunternehmen*, Supreme Court, Finland, 27 February 1989, S88/310.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

arbitration because the legal status of their relationship had changed after one company had entered into insolvency. The Court concluded that the arbitration agreement in the original contract could not be relied on, and refused enforcement pursuant to article V (2)*(a)*.[1046]

29. In one reported case concerning issues of succession, the Supreme People's Court of China refused to recognize and enforce an award involving a wife's inheritance of her deceased husband's share in a company. The Court referred to Article 3 of the Arbitration Law of the People's Republic of China, which provides that matters of succession cannot be submitted to arbitration.[1047] Although there are no further reported cases on the issue at the time, it is noteworthy that the laws of some of the Contracting States, such as Switzerland,[1048] do not prohibit the settlement by arbitration of disputes relating to monetary issues between heirs.

[1046]*Shipping Services A/S v. RAB Sevnaučflot, Fishery Group*, Court of Appeal, Lithuania, 13 May 2011, 2-1545/2011.

[1047]*Wu Chunying v. Zhang Guiwen*, Supreme People's Court, China, 2 September 2009, Min Si Ta Zi No. 33.

[1048]Article 177 of the Swiss Private International Law Statute, under which "[a]ny dispute of financial interest may be the subject of an arbitration", i.e., any dispute which can be assessed in monetary terms, is capable of settlement by arbitration.

Article V (2)*(b)*

2. Recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award may also be refused if the competent authority in the country where recognition and enforcement is sought finds that: [...]

(b) The recognition or enforcement of the award would be contrary to the public policy of that country.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article V (2)*(b)* as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704 and Annex.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822, Annexes I-II; E/2822/Add.1; E/2822/Add.4; E/CONF.26/3; E/CONF.26/3/Add.1.
- Activities of Inter-Governmental and Non-Governmental Organizations in the Field of International Commercial Arbitration: Consolidated Report by the Secretary-General: E/CONF.26/4.
- Comments on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: Note by the Secretary General: E/CONF.26/2.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.8; E/CONF.26/L.15; E/CONF.26/L.15/Rev.1; E/CONF.26/L.17; E/CONF.26/L.31; E/CONF.26/L.34; E/CONF.26/L.35.

- Comparison of Drafts Relating to Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention: E/CONF.26/L.33/Rev.1.
- Further Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.40.
- Text of Articles III, IV and V of the Draft Convention Proposed by Working Party III: E/CONF.26/L.43.
- Text of Articles Adopted by the Conference: E/CONF.26/L.48.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/L.61; E/CONF.26/8.
- Final Act and Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Second, Seventh, Eleventh, Thirteenth, Fourteenth, Seventeenth, Twenty-first, and Twenty-fourth Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR.2; E/CONF.26/SR.7; E/CONF.26/SR.11; E/CONF.26/SR.13; E/CONF.26/SR.14; E/CONF.26/SR.17; E/CONF.26/SR.21; E/CONF.26/SR.24.
- Summary Records of the First, Second, Fifth, and Seventh Meetings of the Committee on Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.1; E/AC.42/SR.2; E/AC.42/SR.5; E/AC.42/SR.7.

Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards:

- Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: statement submitted by the International Chamber of Commerce, a non-governmental organization having consultative status in category A: E/C.2/373.
- Comments received from Governments regarding the Draft Convention on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/1.
- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/4.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Introduction

1. Article V (2)*(b)* of the New York Convention enables the courts of a Contracting State to refuse recognition and enforcement of an award when they find that such recognition or enforcement would be contrary to its public policy.

2. Public policy is not a concept unique to the New York Convention. Rather, public policy forms part of a wider range of tools, such as the mandatory rules of the forum that override private autonomy, that allow a court to protect the integrity of the legal order to which it belongs. It is, therefore, impossible to sever the concept of public policy in the sense of article V (2)*(b)* of the New York Convention from the concept of public policy as is understood in international law.

3. Nor did the New York Convention first introduce public policy as a ground for refusing the recognition and enforcement of awards. Article 1*(e)* of the 1927 Geneva Convention required that, in order for recognition and enforcement to be granted, it had to be positively demonstrated that such "recognition or enforcement of the award [was] not contrary to the public policy or to the principles of law of the country in which it is sought to be relied upon". The New York Convention simply provides, in article V (2)*(b)*, that recognition may be refused on the basis of public policy.[1049] In addition, the omission in the New York Convention of any reference to an award being contrary to "principles of law"[1050] is notable and underscores the strong pro-enforcement bias of the Convention.[1051]

[1049]See Anton G. Maurer, The Public Policy Exception Under the New York Convention: History, Interpretation and Application 61 (2012); Bernard Hanotiau, Olivier Caprasse, *Public Policy in International Commercial Arbitration*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 787, 802 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

[1050]For various comments on this phrase which was eventually omitted, see *Travaux préparatoires*, Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, E/AC.42/4/Rev.1, p. 13; Report by the Secretary-General, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/2822, Annex II, pp. 20-21 and 23; Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: Comments by Governments on the draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards E/2822/Add.4, p. 2; Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: Comments by Governments on the draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/3, p. 3; Activities of Inter-Governmental and Non-Governmental Organizations in the Field of International Commercial Arbitration: Consolidated Report by the Secretary-General, E/CONF.26/4, p. 29; Comments on draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/2, pp. 6-7; Yugoslavia: amendment to Articles III and IV of the draft Convention, E/CONF. 26/L.35; Federal Republic of Germany: amendment to Articles III and IV of the draft Convention, E/CONF. 26/L.34; Summary Record of the Sixth Meeting, E/AC.42/SR.6, p. 11; Summary Record of the Seventh Meeting, E/AC.42/SR. 7; Comments of the representative of the Peruvian Government, Mr. Maurtua: Summary Record of the Fourteenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.14, pp. 9; Summary Record of the Seventeenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.17, pp. 15-16. See also Joel R. Junker, *The Public Policy Defense to Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards*, 1977 Cal. W. Int'l L.J. 228, 229-30.

[1051]See *Parsons & Whittemore Overseas v. Société Générale de L'Industrie du Papier (RAKTA)*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 508 F.2d 969, 973 (1974).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Analysis

A. Concept

a. The public policy exception under the Convention

4. Although different jurisdictions define public policy differently, case law tends to refer to a public policy basis for refusing recognition and enforcement of an award under article V (2)*(b)* of the New York Convention when the core values of a legal system have been deviated from. Invoking the public policy exception is a safety valve to be used in those exceptional circumstances when it would be impossible for a legal system to recognize an award and enforce it without abandoning the very fundaments on which it is based.[1052]

5. In the words of the often-quoted judgment of the Second Circuit of the United States Court of Appeals in Parsons, "[e]nforcement of foreign arbitral awards may be denied on [the basis of public policy] only where enforcement would violate the forum state's most basic notions of morality and justice".[1053] Several jurisdictions outside the United States have relied on this passage when assessing the public policy exception.[1054]

[1052]For the exceptional nature of the defence, see the Comments of the Netherlands Government, *Travaux préparatoires*, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: Comments by Governments on the draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards E/2822/Add.4, p. 2. See also the Comments of the representative of the French Government, Mr. Holleaux, *Travaux préparatoires*, Summary Record of the Eleventh Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.11, p. 7. See also Jan Paulsson, *The New York Convention in International Practice—Problems of Assimilation*, ASA Special Series No. 9, 100, 113 (1996).

[1053]*Parsons & Whittemore Overseas v. Société Générale de L'Industrie du Papier (RAKTA)*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 508 F.2d 969, 974 (1974). Dealing with the argument of the party opposing enforcement that its actions had been dictated by the severance of diplomatic relations between the United States and Egypt, the Second Circuit of the United States Court of Appeals stated that "[t]o read the public policy defence as a parochial device protective of national political interests would seriously undermine the Convention's utility. This provision was not meant to enshrine the vagaries of international politics under the rubric of 'public policy'". See also *National Oil Corp. v. Libyan Sun Oil Co.*, District Court, District of Delaware, United States of America, 15 March 1990, 733 F. Supp. 800, XVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 651 (1991) (concerning an award whose recognition and enforcement was alleged to violate the United States sanctions against Libya). See also *Ameropa A.G. v. Havi Ocean Co. LLC*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 16 February 2011, 2011 WL 570130 (concerning an award whose recognition and enforcement was alleged to violate the United States sanctions against Iran). See also Linda Silberman, *The New York Convention After Fifty Years: Some Reflections on the Role of National Law*, 2009-2010 GA. J. Int'l & Comp. L. 25, 35.

[1054]See, e.g., *BCB Holdings Limited and The Belize Bank Limited v. The Attorney General of Belize*, Caribbean Court of Justice, Appellate Jurisdiction, 26 July 2013, [2013] CCJ 5 (AJ); *Traxys Europe S.A. v. Balaji Coke Industry Pvt Ltd.*, Federal Court, Australia, 23 March 2012, [2012] FCA 276; *Uganda Telecom Ltd. v. Hi-Tech Telecom Pty Ltd.*, Federal Court, Australia, 22 February 2011, [2011] FCA 131; *Petrotesting Colombia S.A. & Southeast Investment Corporation v. Ross Energy S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 27 July 2011; *Hebei Import & Export Corp. v. Polytek Engineering Co. Ltd.*, Court of Final Appeal, Hong Kong, 9 February 1999, [1999] 2 HKC 205; *Renusagar Power Co. Ltd. v. General Electric Company & anor.*, Supreme Court, India, 7 October 1993, 1994 AIR 860; *Brostrom Tankers AB v. Factorias Vulcano S.A.*, High Court, Dublin, Ireland, 19 May 2004, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 591 (2005).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

6. Similarly, the Federal Court of Australia has recently decided that "it is only those aspects of public policy that go to the fundamental, core questions of morality and justice in [the] jurisdiction [where enforcement is sought] which enliven this particular statutory exception to enforcement".[1055] In the same vein, the Hong Kong Court of Final Appeal defined an award that violates public policy as an award that is "so fundamentally offensive to [the enforcement jurisdiction]'s notions of justice that, despite its being party to the Convention, it cannot reasonably be expected to overlook the objection".[1056]

7. The Swiss courts have also defined the public policy exception under the Convention by reference to the concept of justice. In a seminal judgment regarding the definition of public policy, albeit in the context of an action to set aside, the Swiss Federal Tribunal held that an award contravenes public policy "if it disregards essential and widely recognized values which, according to the conceptions prevailing in Switzerland, should form the basis of any legal order".[1057] In more recent decisions, the Swiss Federal Tribunal has defined an award which is contrary to public policy as an award which violates the Swiss concepts of justice in an "intolerable manner".[1058]

8. The French courts have taken a similar approach. For example, the Court of Appeal of Paris defined international public policy as "the body of rules and values whose violation the French legal order cannot tolerate even in situations of international character".[1059]

9. The German courts have considered that an award contravenes public policy when it violates a norm which affects the basis of German public and economic

[1055] *Traxys Europe S.A. v. Balaji Coke Industry Pvt Ltd.*, Federal Court, Australia, 23 March 2012, [2012] FCA 276.

[1056] *Hebei Import & Export Corp. v. Polytek Engineering Co. Ltd.*, Court of Final Appeal, Hong Kong, 9 February 1999, [1999] 2 HKC 205. For a similar definition, see *Karaha Bodas Company LLC v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara and PT. PLN (Persero)*, Alberta Court of Queen's Bench, Canada, 9 December 2004, 2004 ABQB 918. For an insistence on the "essential" nature of the legal principles that public policy seeks to protect, see *Soc. Des Ciments d'Abijan v. Soc. Burkinabè des Ciments et Matériaux*, Court of First Instance, Ouagadougou, Burkina Faso, 13 June 2001.

[1057] *X S.p.A. v. Y S.r.l.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 8 March 2006, Arrêts du Tribunal Fédéral (2006) 132 III 389; Paolo Michele Patocchi, *The 1958 New York Convention: The Swiss Practice*, 1996 ASA Bull. 145, 188-96. For a similar definition, see *Kersa Holding Co. Luxembourg v. Infancourtage Famajuk Investment & Isny*, Superior Court of Justice, Luxembourg, 24 November 1993, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 617 (1996).

[1058] See, e.g., Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 10 October 2011, Decision 5A_427/2011; Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 28 July 2010, Decision 4A_233/2010. For a similar definition, see Supreme Court, Austria, Case 3Ob221/04b, 26 January 2005, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 421 (2005): it is for the Austrian courts to decide "whether the arbitral award is irreconcilable with the fundamental principles of the Austrian legal system because it is based on a foreign legal principle which is totally irreconcilable with the domestic legal system".

[1059] *Agence pour la sécurité de la navigation aérienne en Afrique et à Madagascar v. M. N'DOYE Issakha*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 16 October 1997.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

life or irreconcilably contradicts the German perception of justice.[1060] The Supreme Court of Cyprus also interpreted public policy exception under the Convention to mean the fundamental principles which a society recognizes, at a given time, as governing transactions as well as other manifestations of the life of its members, and on which the legal order to which the enforcement court belongs is based.[1061]

10. There have been occasions where courts considered that public policy is not a concept that lends itself to a precise definition. The Court of Appeal of England and Wales held that the public policy exception under the New York Convention encompasses cases where "the enforcement of the award would be clearly injurious to the public good or, possibly, enforcement would be wholly offensive to the ordinary reasonable and fully informed member of the public on whose behalf the powers of the state are exercised".[1062] At the same time, the Court of Appeal acknowledged that "[c]onsiderations of public policy can never be exhaustively defined, but they should be approached with extreme caution".[1063]

11. Some jurisdictions have emphasized the relationship between public policy and national interest or national sovereignty. For example, when reviewing the compatibility of awards with public policy under the New York Convention, the Brazilian Superior Court of Justice has indicated that "the issue [before it] does not have a public policy character and that it does not relate to the concept of national sovereignty".[1064] Similarly, the Indian courts have held that an award is contrary to public policy if its enforcement would be contrary to "the interests of India".[1065]

[1060] See, e.g., Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 34 Sch 019/05, 28 November 2005; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Düsseldorf, Germany, VI Sch (Kart) 1/02, 21 July 2004; Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Bremen, Germany, (2) Sch 04/99, 30 September 1999; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH] Germany, III ZR 269/88, 18 January 1990.

[1061] *The Attorney General of the Republic of Kenya v. Bank für Arbeit und Wirtschaft AG*, Supreme Court, Cyprus, 28 April 1999, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 641 (2000). See also for a similar definition, Court of Cassation, Greece, Case No. 1665/2009, 30 June 2009, XXXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 284 (2011); *Misr Insurance Co. v. Alexandria Shipping Agencies Co.*, Court of Cassation, Egypt, 23 December 1991; *BCB Holdings Limited and The Belize Bank Limited v. The Attorney General of Belize*, Caribbean Court of Justice, Appellate Jurisdiction, 26 July 2013, [2013] CCJ 5 (AJ).

[1062] *Deutsche Schachtbau-und Tiefbohrgesellschaft m.b.H. v. Shell International Petroleum Co. Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 24 March 1987, [1990] 1 A.C. 295.

[1063] *Id.*

[1064] See *Grain Partners S.p.A. v. Cooperativa dos Produtores Trabalhadores Rurais de Sorriso Ltda.*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 18 October 2006.

[1065] See *Renusagar Power Co. Ltd. v. General Electric Company & anor.*, Supreme Court, India, 7 October 1993, 1994 AIR 860; *Penn Racquet Sports v. Mayor International Ltd.*, High Court of Delhi, India, 11 January 2011; *Shri Lal Mahal Ltd. v. Progetto Grano S.p.A.*, Supreme Court, India, 3 July 2013. See also for a national-interest-based analysis of public policy, *Petrotesting Colombia S.A. & Southeast Investment Corp. v. Ross Energy S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 27 July 2011. The Indonesian courts are also reported to have taken a similar approach by which national interest is considered part of Indonesian public policy: see Fifi Junita, *Refusing Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards Under Article V (2)(b) of the New York Convention: The Indonesian Perspective*, 2009 Contemp. Asia Arb. J. 301, 320.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

12. The Russian courts have taken the following view. The Highest Arbitrazh Court of the Russian Federation has relied on the concept of public policy to deny recognition and enforcement of awards that produce results contrary to the "universally recognized moral and ethical rules or threaten the citizens' life and health or the security of the State".[1066]

b. International—transnational public policy

13. It is widely accepted that public policy within the meaning of article V (2)*(b)* of the New York Convention refers to the public policy of the forum State.[1067] Indeed, article V (2)*(b)* explicitly refers to "the public policy of that country", in reference to the country where recognition and enforcement is sought.[1068] However, in relation to the assessment of the international or domestic character of public policy, most jurisdictions recognize that a mere violation of domestic law is unlikely to amount to a ground to refuse recognition or enforcement on the basis of public policy.[1069]

14. In relation to the question whether there is a universal or transnational character to the concept of public policy, different jurisdictions have taken different approaches. The Supreme Court of India has held that providing a transnational definition of the concept of public policy is unworkable and accepted the principle that public policy in article V (2)*(b)* of the New York Convention should be taken to mean the public policy of the enforcement forum.[1070] In contrast, the Italian

[1066]See *Ansell S.A. v. OOO MedBusinessService-2000*, Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, Ruling No. VAS-8786/10, 3 August 2010. See also Patricia Nacimiento, Alexey Barnashov, *Recognition and Enforcement of Arbitral Awards in Russian Federation*, 27(3) J. Int'l Arb. 295, 300-01 (2010).

[1067]See, e.g., *Traxys Europe S.A. v. Balaji Coke Industry Pvt Ltd.*, Federal Court, Australia, 23 March 2012, [2012] FCA 276; *IPCO (Nigeria) Ltd. v. Nigerian National Petroleum Corp.*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 27 April 2005, [2005] EWHC 726; *Gao Haiyan & anor v. Keeneye Holdings Ltd. & anor*, Court of Appeal, Hong Kong, CACV 79/2011, 2 December 2011; *Renusagar Power Co. Ltd. v. General Electric Company & anor.*, Supreme Court, India, 7 October 1993, 1994 AIR 860; *Brostrom Tankers AB v. Factorias Vulcano S.A.*, High Court, Dublin, Ireland, 19 May 2004, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 591 (2005); *A v. B & Cia Ltda. & ors*, Supreme Court of Justice, Portugal, 9 November 2003, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 474 (2007); Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 10 October 2011, Decision 5A_427/2011; *Agility Public Warehousing CO. K.S.C., Professional Contract Administrators, Inc. v. Supreme Foodservice GmbH*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 6 September 2012, 11-5201-cv. See also Anton G. Maurer, The Public Policy Exception Under The New York Convention: History, Interpretation And Application 54 (2012).

[1068]See *BCB Holdings Limited and The Belize Bank Limited v. The Attorney General of Belize*, Caribbean Court of Justice, Appellate Jurisdiction, 26 July 2013, [2013] CCJ 5 (AJ).

[1069]See, e.g., *Traxys Europe S.A. v. Balaji Coke Industry Pvt Ltd.*, Federal Court, Australia, 23 March 2012, [2012] FCA 276; *Petrotesting Colombia S.A. & Southeast Investment Corporation v. Ross Energy S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 27 July 2011; *Agence pour la sécurité de la navigation aérienne en Afrique et à Madagascar v. M. N'DOYE Issakha*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 16 October 1997; *K.M. v. UAB A. Sabonio Žalgirio krepšinio centras*, Court of Cassation, Lithuania, 4 November 2011.

[1070]See *Renusagar Power Co. Ltd. v. General Electric Company & anor.*, Supreme Court, India, 7 October 1993, 1994 AIR 860. See also *Hebei Import & Export Corp. v. Polytek Engineering Co. Ltd.*, Court of Final Appeal, Hong Kong, 9 February 1999, [1999] 2 HKC 205, agreeing with the conclusion reached by the Supreme Court of India.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

courts have stated that public policy refers to "a body of universal principles shared by nations of the same civilization, aiming at the protection of fundamental human rights, often embodied in international declarations or conventions".[1071]

15. The Highest Arbitrazh Court of the Russian Federation has often referred to public policy as constituting "universally recognized moral and ethical rules"[1072] or "fundamental and universal legal principles of highest imperative nature, of particular social and public significance, and forming the basis of the economic, political and legal system of the State".[1073]

16. In Switzerland, a 2006 decision of the Federal Tribunal concluded that "an award is incompatible with public policy if it disregards essential and widely recognized values which, according to the conceptions prevailing in Switzerland, should form the basis of any legal order".[1074]

c. *Mandatory rules as public policy*

17. As public policy is generally interpreted to mean those fundamental rules of the State where recognition and enforcement of an award is sought from which no derogation can be allowed, the question arises as to whether the forum's mandatory rules should be considered as part of its public policy, and consequently an exception to recognition and enforcement of an award under the New York Convention.[1075]

18. It is not disputed that certain mandatory rules meet the standard of the public policy defence to recognition and enforcement of awards.[1076] However, different views have been expressed as to whether specific sets of mandatory rules do rise to that standard in the context of recognition and enforcement of foreign awards in fields such as of competition law, bankruptcy, employment and consumer protection, interest rates, foreign exchange regulations, export prohibitions and futures contracts.

[1071] *Allsop Automatic Inc. v. Tecnoski snc*, Court of Appeal of Milan, Italy, 4 December 1992, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 725.

[1072] *Ansell S.A. v. OOO MedBusinessService-2000*, Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, Ruling No. VAS-8786/10, 3 August 2010.

[1073] Presidium of the Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, Information Letter No. 156 of 26 February 2013.

[1074] *X S.p.A. v. Y S.r.l.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 8 March 2006, Arrêts du Tribunal Fédéral (2006) 132 III 389, 395.

[1075] Bernard Hanotiau, Olivier Caprasse, *Public Policy in International Commercial Arbitration*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 787, 791-94 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds. 2008).

[1076] See Luke Villiers, *Breaking in the "Unruly Horse": The Status of Mandatory Rules of Law as a Public Policy Basis for the Non-Enforcement of Arbitral Awards*, 2011 Austl. Int'l L.J. 155, 179-80 (2011).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

19. For example, in the field of competition law, the Court of Justice of the European Union (CJEU) held that article 101 of the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union (TFEU), which renders automatically void certain anti-competitive agreements or decisions, constitutes "a fundamental provision which is essential for the accomplishment of the tasks entrusted to the [Union] and, in particular, for the functioning of the internal market". The CJEU held that for this reason it should be regarded as a matter of public policy within the meaning of article V (2) *(b)* of the New York Convention.[1077] It has thus imposed on the courts of the EU Member States the obligation to refuse recognition and enforcement to all awards which conflict with article 101 TFEU.[1078]

20. In proceedings to set aside an award handed down in Switzerland regarding a dispute between two Italian companies, the Federal Tribunal acknowledged the existence of other economic systems based on a planned economy and favoring State intervention in the economy. It concluded though that "no one would consider labeling them immoral or contrary to fundamental legal principles simply because they do not follow the Swiss model.[1079] The Federal Tribunal thus held that "the provisions of competition law do not form part of the essential and widely-recognized values, which, according to the prevailing position in Switzerland, should form the basis of any legal order".[1080]

21. These decisions highlight the fact that Article V (2)*(b)* refers to the public policy of the country where recognition and enforcement is sought. It does not require a New York Convention signatory to uphold the public policy of another State. As Switzerland has not acceded to the European Union, it is not required to consider that Article 101 TFEU forms part of Swiss public policy.

22. The United States Supreme Court held that claims arising out of the Sherman Antitrust Act are arbitrable but that public policy can be used to ensure that the legitimate interest in the antitrust issues had been appropriately addressed, leaving the issue to be decided on an *ad hoc* basis.[1081]

[1077] *Eco Swiss China Time Ltd. v. Benetton International NV*, Court of Justice of the European Union, 1 June 1999, Case C-126/97, [1999] ECR I-3055, paras. 37-39.

[1078] See, e.g., *SNF SAS v. Cytec Industries B.V.*, Court of Appeal of Paris, 23 March 2006, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 282 (2008), where the French court accepted that EU competition law forms part of French public policy; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Düsseldorf, Germany, VI Sch (Kart) 1/02, 21 July 2004, Court of Cassation, Greece, Case No. 1665/2009, 30 June 2009, XXXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 284 (2011), and *Marketing Displays International Inc. v. VR Van Raalte Reclame B.V.*, Court of Appeal, The Hague, Netherlands, 24 March 2005, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 808 (2006), where the German, Greek and Dutch courts respectively recognized that article 101 TFEU formed part of their public policy.

[1079] *X S.p.A. v. Y S.r.l.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 8 March 2006, Arrêts du Tribunal Fédéral (2006) 132 III 389.

[1080] *Id.*

[1081] *Mitsubishi Motors Corp v. Soler Chrysler-Plymouth*, Supreme Court, United States of America, 2 July 1985, 473 United States 614.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

23. In the field of insolvency, the French courts have held that the principle according to which individual actions brought by creditors against the estate of the bankrupt are stayed during bankruptcy to be part of public policy,[1082] while the German courts have not considered the arbitration of insolvency disputes to be contrary to public policy.[1083]

24. In the context of interest rates, while acknowledging that a mere incompatibility of a foreign award with domestic mandatory rules does not amount to a breach of public policy, several courts have refused to recognize and enforce awards, or the part of the award which was considered to be contrary to public policy,[1084] where they considered that the awarded interest was unreasonably high.[1085]

25. Other examples of domestic mandatory rules that have been considered to be a public policy matter under which recognition and enforcement can be refused, include foreign exchange regulations, with regard to which the German Federal Court of Justice held that an award conflicting with German foreign exchange regulations is contrary to public policy;[1086] export prohibitions, in relation to which the Indian courts have refused recognition of awards which conflict with an Indian ban on the export of hot rolled steel sheet coils due to a shortage in the domestic market;[1087] and offshore futures transactions, in relation to which the Chinese courts have refused recognition to an award on the basis that it conflicted with the Chinese mandatory rules forbidding futures contracts.[1088]

26. The criteria forming the basis of the determination as to whether mandatory national law constitutes public policy are often not specified by national courts. Commentators note that it is consistent with the letter and spirit of the New York Convention that, as a matter of principle, the mandatory rules of the enforcement forum should be considered as part of its public policy when they reflect that

[1082] *Mandataires judiciaires Associés, in the person of Mrs. X as liquidators of Jean Lion et Cie S.A. v. International Company for Commercial Exchanges*, Court of Cassation, France, 6 May 2009, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 353 (2010).

[1083] Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Karlsruhe, Germany, 9 Sch 02/09, 4 January 2012.

[1084] See *J. J. Agro Industries (P) Ltd. v. Texuna International Ltd.*, High Court, Hong Kong, 12 August 1992.

[1085] See Supreme Court, Austria, Case 3Ob221/04b, 26 January 2005, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 421 (2005). See to the same effect, *Laminoires-Trefileries-Cablerie de Lens S.A. v. Southwire Co. and Southwire International Corp.*, District Court, Northern District of Georgia, United States, 484 F. Supp. 1063 (1980); *Misr Foreign Trade Co. v. R.D. Harboties (Mercantile)*, Court of Cassation, Egypt, 22 January 2008; *Belaja Rus v. Westintorg Corp.*, Court of Cassation, Lithuania, 10 November 2008.

[1086] See Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, II ZR 124/86, 15 June 1987. See also Susan Choi, *Judicial Enforcement of Arbitration Awards Under the ICSID and New York Conventions*, 1196 N.Y.U. J. Int'l L. & Pol. 175, 202-04 (1995).

[1087] See *COSID Inc. v. Steel Authority of India Ltd.*, High Court of Delhi, India, 12 July 1985, XI Y.B. Com. Arb. 502 (1986).

[1088] See *ED & F Man (Hong Kong) Co., Ltd. v. China National Sugar & Wines Group Corp.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 1 July 2003, [2003] Min Si Ta Zi No. 3. See also Lanfang Fei, *Public Policy as a Bar to Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: A Review of the Chinese Approach*, 26(2) Arb. Int'l 301, 305-06 (2010).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

forum's fundamental concepts of morality and justice, from which no derogation can be allowed.[1089]

d. Public policy and constitutional principles

27. Constitutional principles may also interact with the public policy exception to the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards under the New York Convention.[1090]

B. Application

28. Public policy allows the courts of the Contracting Party where recognition and enforcement is sought to consider the merits of an award so as to satisfy themselves that there is nothing in the award that would infringe the fundamental values of that State. The enforcement court's assessment also extends to procedural matters, such that it might refuse to recognize or enforce an award where the procedure followed by the arbitral tribunal contradicts the understanding of basic procedural fairness in the State where recognition and enforcement is sought.[1091]

29. The Swiss Federal Tribunal distinguishes between substantive and procedural public policy (*ordre public matériel et ordre public procédural*).[1092] In its words: "[there is a difference between substantive and procedural public policy [...] procedural public policy guarantees parties the right to an independent judgment on their submissions and the facts submitted to the arbitral tribunal, in accordance with the applicable procedural law; substantive public policy is breached when fundamental and generally recognized principles are breached, leading to an untenable contradiction with the notion of justice, so that the decision appears incompatible with the values recognized in a state governed by the rule of law".[1093]

[1089]See Fouchard Gaillard Goldman On International Commercial Arbitration 996 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1996).

[1090]*BCB Holdings Limited and The Belize Bank Limited v. The Attorney General of Belize*, Caribbean Court of Justice, Appellate Jurisdiction, 26 July 2013, [2013] CCJ 5 (AJ).

[1091]See, e.g., *X S.p.A. v. Y S.r.l.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 8 March 2006, Arrêts du Tribunal Fédéral (2006) 132 III 389, 392.

[1092]For a similar distinction between substantive and procedural public policy (*ordre public quant à la procedure et ordre public quant au fond*), see *Soc. Excelsior Film TV v. Soc. UGC-PH*, Court of Cassation, France, 24 March 1998, 95-17.285

[1093]*X S.p.A. v. Y S.r.l.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 8 March 2006, Arrêts du Tribunal Fédéral (2006) 132 III 389, 392.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

a. Substantive public policy

30. Even though the defence of public policy allows courts to consider the merits of the award, the scope of such review is not unlimited. Courts have recognized that public policy does not furnish an opportunity to the party opposing recognition and enforcement to reargue the merits of the case or to allege that the case was wrongly decided.[1094]

31. In addition, most courts ascribe a narrow interpretation to public policy. It is thus not surprising that applications to refuse recognition and enforcement of a foreign arbitral award made under article V (2)*(b)* of the New York Convention have rarely been successful.[1095]

32. Such rare instances include cases where:

- The award conflicted with a previous judgment of the courts of the forum;[1096]
- The award ordered the party opposing recognition and enforcement to pay interest at an amount considered excessive according to the standards of the *lex fori*;[1097]

[1094]See, e.g., *BCB Holdings Limited and The Belize Bank Limited v. The Attorney General of Belize*, Caribbean Court of Justice, Appellate Jurisdiction, 26 July 2013, [2013] CCJ 5 (AJ); *Karaha Bodas Company, L.L.C. v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara and P.T. PLN (Persero)*, Alberta Court of Queen's Bench, Canada, 24 October 2007, 2007 ABQB 616; *Atecs Mannesmann GmbH v. Rodrimar S/A Transportes Equipamentos Industriais e Armazéns Gerais*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 19 August 2009; *GRD Minproc Limited v. Shanghai Feilun Industrial Co.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 13 March 2009, [2008] Min Si Ta Zi No. 48; *Société I.A.I.G.C.- Inter-Arab Investment Guarantee Corporation v. Société B.A.I.I.- Banque arabe et internationale d'investissement S.A.*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 23 October 1997; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 34 Sch 26/08, 22 June 2009, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 371 (2010); Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Karlsruhe, Germany, 9 Sch 02/05, 27 March 2006; *Qinhuangdao Tongda Enterprise Development Company, et al. v. Million Basic Co. Ltd.*, High Court, Supreme Court of Hong Kong, 5 January 1993, XIX Y.B. Com. Arb. 675 (1994); *C.G. Impianti S.p.A. v. B.M.A.A.B. & Sons International Contracting Co. WLL*, Court of Appeal of Milan, Italy, 29 April 2009, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 802 (2010); *Inter Maritime Management S.A. v. Russin & Vecchi*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 9 January 1995, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 789 (1997); *Odfjell SE v. OAO PO Sevmash*, Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, Ruling No. VAS-4369/11, 26 May 2011; Presidium of the Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, Information Letter No. 156 of 26 February 2013; Supreme Court, Austria, Case 3Ob221/04b, 26 January 2005, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 421 (2005). See also William W. Park, *Private Adjudicators and the Public Interest: the Expanding Scope of International Arbitration*, 1986 Brook. J. Int'l L. 629, 646-47.

[1095]See Pieter Sanders, *A Twenty Years' Review of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards*, 1979 Int'l Law 269, 270; Susan Choi, *Judicial Enforcement of Arbitration Awards Under the ICSID and New York Conventions*, 28 N.Y.U. J. Int'l & Pol. 175, 206-07 (1995-1996).

[1096]See *Hemofarm DD, MAG International Trade Holding DD, Suram Media Ltd. v. Jinan Yongning Pharmaceutical Co. Ltd.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 2 June 2008, [2008] Min Si Ta Zi No. 11; *Ciments Français v. OAO Holding Company Siberian Cement, Istanbul Çimento Yatırımları*, Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, No. VAS-17458/11, 27 August 2012.

[1097]See Supreme Court, Austria, Case 3Ob221/04b, 26 January 2005, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 421 (2005); *Ahmed Mostapha Shawky v. Andersen Worldwide & Wahid El Din Abdel Ghaffar Megahed & Emad Hafez Raghed & Nabil Istanboly Akram Instanboly*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 23 May 2001; *Harbottle Co. Ltd. v. Egypt for Foreign Trade Co.*, Court of Cassation, Egypt, 21 May 1990, 815/52; *Belaja Rus v. Westintorg Corp.*, Court of Cassation, Lithuania, 10 November 2008, 3K-3-562/2008.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

- The parties to the arbitration settled secretly from the arbitral tribunal and the claimant in the arbitration failed to stop the arbitration so as to acquire an award condemning the respondent to pay twice the same debt;[1098]
- The award contravened mandatory rules of the forum in the area of competition law, consumer protection, foreign exchange regulation or bans on exports;[1099]
- The award was contrary to core constitutional values such as the separation of powers and sovereignty of Parliament;[1100]
- The award was contrary to the national interest of the forum State.[1101]

33. By contrast, without purporting to set out an exhaustive list of instances where applications made under article V (2)*(b)* of the New York Convention have been unsuccessful, courts have dismissed such applications on the merits where:

- It was alleged that the law applicable to the merits of the dispute was incorrectly applied by the arbitral tribunal;[1102]
- It was alleged that the recognition and enforcement of the award would violate the *exceptio non adimpleti contractus*;[1103]
- The benefit of domestic mandatory rules was sought by a sophisticated business person who should have been aware of the risks he/she had undertaken;[1104]

[1098]See Bayerisches Oberstes Landgericht [BayObLG], Germany, 4 Z Sch 17/03, 20 November 2003.

[1099]See Court of Cassation, Greece, Case No. 1665/2009, 30 June 2009, XXXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 284 (2011); *SNF SAS v. Cytec Industries B.V.*, Court of Appeal of Paris, 23 March 2006, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 282 (2008); *Elisa María Mostaza Claro v. Centro Móvil Milenium SL*, Court of Justice of the European Union, 26 October 2006, Case C-168/05, [2006] ECR I-10421; *Marketing Displays International Inc. v. VR Van Raalte Reclame B.V.*, Court of Appeal of The Hague, Netherlands, 24 March 2005, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 808 (2006); Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Düsseldorf, Germany, VI Sch (Kart) 1/02, 21 July 2004; *Eco Swiss China Time Ltd. v. Benetton International NV*, Court of Justice of the European Union, 1 June 1999, Case C-126/97, [1999] ECR I-3055; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, II ZR 124/86, 15 June 1987; *COSID Inc. v. Steel Authority of India Ltd.*, High Court of Delhi, India, 12 July 1985, XI Y.B. Com. Arb. 502 (1986).

[1100]See *BCB Holdings Limited and The Belize Bank Limited v. The Attorney General of Belize*, Caribbean Court of Justice, Appellate Jurisdiction, 26 July 2013, [2013] CCJ 5 (AJ).

[1101]See *United World v. Krasny Yakor*, Federal Arbitrazh Court of the Volgo-Vyatsky Region, Russian Federation, Case No. A43-10716/02-27-10, 17 February 2003. See the chapter of the Guide on article V (2)*(b)*.

[1102]See Presidium of the Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, Information Letter No. 156 of 26 February 2013; *Sei Societa Esplosivi S.p.A. v. L-3 Fuzing and Ordnance Systems, Inc.*, District Court, District of Delaware, United States of America, 17 February 2012, 11-149-RGA; *Penn Racquet Sports v. Mayor International Ltd.*, High Court of Delhi, India, 11 January 2011; *Odfjell SE v. OAO PO Sevmash*, Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, 26 May 2011, Ruling No. VAS-4369/11; *Atecs Mannesmann GmbH v. Rodrimar S/A Transportes Equipamentos Industriais e Armazéns Gerais*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 19 August 2009.

[1103]See *Grain Partners S.p.A. v. Cooperativa dos Produtores Trabalhadores Rurais de Sorriso Ltda.*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 18 October 2006.

[1104]See *Bad Ass Coffee Company of Hawaii Inc. v. Bad Ass Enterprises Inc.*, Alberta Court of Queen's Bench, Canada, 2 July 2008, 2008 ABQB 404.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

- The award debtor would have to obtain regulatory approval in order to perform an act necessary to comply with the award;[1105]
- The award included a substantial sum which appeared to represent an acceleration of future damages;[1106]
- It was alleged that the arbitration agreement was null and void because the parties submitted a non-foreign-related dispute to a foreign arbitration tribunal;[1107]
- The transaction in question was an offshore future transaction which violated the enforcement forum's mandatory rules;[1108]
- Compliance with the award was alleged to offend the law of the place of incorporation of the respondent company;[1109]
- The award concerned matters that were normally subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of the employment tribunals;[1110]
- The award granted compensation for legal costs;[1111]
- It was alleged that the arbitral tribunal awarded damages in an arbitrary fashion;[1112]
- It was alleged that the award debtor had no legal remedies against the decision of the sole arbitrator;[1113]
- It was alleged that the contractual penalty imposed by the arbitral tribunal rising to 40 per cent of the value of the main obligation under the contract was disproportionately high;[1114]
- It was alleged that the arbitral tribunal should have applied the Convention on the International Sale of Goods to the contract rather than the governing law chosen by the parties;[1115]

[1105]See *Adamas Management & Services Inc. v. Aurado Energy Inc.*, New Brunswick Court of Queen's Bench, Canada, 28 July 2004, 2004 NBQB 342.
[1106]See *Schreter v. Gasmac*, Ontario Court (General Division), Canada, 13 February 1992, 89 D.L.R. (4th) 365.
[1107]See *Lifu Candy (Shanghai) Corporation v. Shanghai Lianfu Foodstuff Corporation*, Shanghai No. 2 Intermediate People's Court, China, 24 June 2009, [2008] Hu Er Zhong Min Wu (Shang) Chu Zi No. 19.
[1108]See *ED & F Man (Hong Kong) Co., Ltd. v. China National Sugar & Wines Group Corp.*, Supreme People's Court, China, 1 July 2003, [2003] Min Si Ta Zi No. 3.
[1109]See *Soinco SACI & anor. v. Novokuznetsk Aluminium Plant & Ors.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 16 December 1997, [1998] CLC 730.
[1110]See *Agence pour la sécurité de la navigation aérienne en Afrique et à Madagascar v. M. N'DOYE Issakha*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 16 October 1997.
[1111]See Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 34 Sch 14/09, 1 September 2009.
[1112]See Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Frankfurt, Germany, 26 Sch 13/08, 16 October 2008.
[1113]See Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Frankfurt, Germany, 26 Sch 1/07, 18 October 2007.
[1114]See Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 8 Sch 06/05, 6 October 2005.
[1115]See Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Cologne, Germany, 9 Sch 13/99, 15 February 2000.

- Lump sum damages were prohibited under the law of the country where recognition and enforcement was sought but were allowed by the law applied to the dispute by the arbitral tribunal;[1116]
- The award granted compound interest which was allowed under the law of the seat of the arbitration;[1117]
- It was alleged that the award was contrary to EU competition law;[1118]
- The arbitrator had failed to expressly order one of the parties to pay certain taxes due in the United States;[1119]
- The party opposing enforcement failed to establish that the contractually stipulated penalties imposed by the tribunal was not reasonably related to the actual damages resulting from the breach;[1120]
- Compliance with the award resulting in the making of certain payments to the Iranian Government breached United States sanctions;[1121]
- The party opposing enforcement alleged that an order of specific performance breached public policy because an award of monetary damages would have been adequate and appropriate;[1122]
- The party opposing enforcement alleged that the award improperly imported and endorsed the conclusions of foreign prosecuting authorities;[1123]

[1116]See Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Dresden, Germany, 11 Sch 06/98, 13 January 1999.

[1117]See Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG], Germany, 6 U 71/88, 26 January 1989. For the view that the domestic prohibition of compound interest does not amount to public policy see *Inter Maritime Management S.A. v. Vecchi*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 9 January 1995, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 789 (1997).

[1118]See *X S.p.A. v. Y S.r.l.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 8 March 2006, Arrêts du Tribunal Fédéral (2006) 132 III 389. For the opposite view, see *SNF SAS v. Cytec Industries B.V.*, Court of Appeal of Paris, 23 March 2006, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 282 (2008); Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Düsseldorf, Germany, VI Sch (Kart) 1/02, 21 July 2004; Court of Cassation, Greece, Case No. 1665/2009, 30 June 2009, XXXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 284 (2011); *Marketing Displays International Inc. v. VR Van Raalte Reclame B.V.*, Court of Appeal of The Hague, Netherlands, 24 March 2005, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 808 (2006).

[1119]See *Subway International B.V. v. Panayota Bletas and John Bletas*, District Court, District of Connecticut, United States of America, 13 March 2012, 3:10-cv-01715 (JCH).

[1120]See *Chelsea Football Club Ltd. v. Adrian Mutu*, District Court, Southern District of Florida, United States of America, 13 February 2012, 1:10-cv-24028-FAM. See also See Presidium of the Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, Information Letter No. 156 of 26 February 2013; *Stena RoRo AB v. OAO Baltiysky Zavod*, Presidium of the Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, 13 September 2011, Resolution No. 9899/09.

[1121]See *The Ministry of Defense and Support for the Armed Forces of the Islamic Republic of Iran, as Successor in Interest to the Ministry of War of the Government of Iran v. Cubic Defense Systems, Inc*, Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, United States of America, 15 December 2011, 665 F.3d 1091. See also *Ameropa A.G. v. Havi Ocean Co. LLC*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 16 February 2011, 2011 WL 570130.

[1122]See *NTT Docomo Inc. v. Ultra D.O.O.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 12 October 2010, 1:10-cv-03823-RMB -JCF.

[1123]See *AO Techsnabexport v. Globe Nuclear Services and Supply Ltd.*, District Court, District of Maryland, United States of America 28 August 2009, AW-08-1521.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

- The award conflicted with judgments handed down by the courts of a foreign country;[1124]
- The party opposing enforcement alleged that its actions that resulted in the breach of the contract were justified as compliance with a change in its country's foreign policy;[1125]
- The tribunal calculated interest that would not be available under the law of the enforcement forum;[1126]
- The person seeking the enforcement was not a party to the arbitration but a successor to that party.[1127]

b. Procedural public policy

34. In applying article V (2)*(b)* of the New York Convention, courts review not only the substantive outcome of the award but also the procedure leading to the award.

35. Where the procedure followed in the arbitration suffered from serious irregularities, recognition and enforcement may be refused under article V (2)*(b)*. It is thus common for courts to review awards brought before them for recognition and enforcement for fraud, bribery or some other significant due process irregularity.[1128]

[1124]See *Telenor Mobile Communications AS v. Storm LLC*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 2 November 2007, 524 F. Supp. 2d 332.

[1125]See *Parsons & Whittemore Overseas v. Société Générale de L'Industrie du Papier (RAKTA)*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 508 F.2d 969 (1974).

[1126]See *Lugana Handelsgesellschaft mbH v. OAO Ryazan Metal Ceramics Instrumentation Plant*, Presidium of the Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, 2 February 2010, Resolution No. 13211/09.

[1127]See *Joy-Lud Distributors International Inc. v. OAO Moscow Refinery*, Presidium of the Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, 22 January 2008, Ruling No. 5243/06.

[1128]See, e.g., *Karaha Bodas Company, L.L.C. v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara and P.T. PLN (Persero)*, Alberta Court of Queen's Bench, Canada, 24 October 2007, 2007 ABQB 616; *Gater Assets Ltd. v. Nak Naftogaz Ukrainiy*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 15 February 2008, [2008] EWHC 237, [2008] 1 CLC 141; *Westacre Investments Inc. v. Jugoimport-SPDR Holding Ltd. & others*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 12 May 2000, [2000] 1 QB 288; *Karaha Bodas Co. LLC v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara (Petarmina)*, Court of Appeal, Hong Kong, 9 October 2007; *Karaha Bodas Co. LLC v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 23 March 2004, 364 F.3d 274; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Düsseldorf, Germany, I-4 Sch 10/09, 15 December 2009; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Frankfurt, Germany, 26 SchH 03/09, 27 August 2009; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 34 Sch 019/05, 28 November 2005; *Drummond Ltd. v. Ferrovias en Liquidación, Ferrocariles Nacionales de Colombia S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 19 December 2011; *SAS C22 v. Soc. John K. King & Sons Ltd. Frontier Agriculture Ltd.*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 10 April 2008; *Cie de Saint-Gobain-Pont-à-Mousson v. The Fertilizer Corporation of India Ltd.*, Court of Appeal of Paris, 10 May 1971. See also Stephen M. Schwebel, Susan G. Lahne, *Public Policy and Arbitral Procedure*, in Comparative Arbitration Practice and Public Policy in Arbitration, ICCA Congress Series No. 3, 205 (P. Sanders ed.,1987).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

36. As with substantive public policy, applications to refuse recognition and enforcement on the basis of procedural public policy have rarely been successful. Courts have found a violation of public policy in cases where they considered that the right to be heard had been breached. For example, the Canadian courts have refused recognition and enforcement of an award where the tribunal had granted a remedy not requested by the parties on the basis that it violated the principle of *audiatur et altera pars*.[1129]

37. The same conclusion has been reached in a case in which the court found a failure of the arbitral tribunal to give reasons where the agreement of the parties contained stipulations to that effect. In such circumstances, the Canadian courts have refused to grant recognition and enforcement of an award on the basis that "recognition of the award would be contrary to public policy because [the award], contrary to the express wish of the parties, does not contain reasons. [...] What is at odds with fairness, equal treatment of the parties and consequently public policy, is not that an award lacks reasons but that it lacks reasons contrary to what the parties wanted. [...] in a democratic country one cannot imagine that the judiciary renders a decision without being able to verify if that decision is not arbitrary".[1130]

38. Courts have also found a breach of procedural public policy where arbitrators have acted in a manner that breaches the principles of independence and impartiality. For example, in a dispute involving two parallel arbitrations between the same parties, one of the arbitrators, who was sitting in both panels, provided false information to one tribunal about the other arbitration which had an impact on that tribunal's decision regarding its jurisdiction.[1131] In that case, the French Court of Cassation found that by acting in this manner, the arbitrator created an inequality between the parties which contravened the most basic requirements of due process.

39. In a Swiss case, the fact that counsel for one of the parties in contractual negotiations inserted a provision in the contract appointing himself as the sole arbitrator should a dispute arise between the parties, was held to violate public policy.[1132] The Swiss court found that "the behavior of arbitrator Dr. E. is so extreme, that it is hard to imagine that any free and democratic legal system could equate the award rendered by such an arbitrator to a sovereign State act and enforce it.

[1129]See *Louis Dreyfus S.A.S. v. Holding Tusculum B.V.*, Superior Court of Quebec, Canada, 12 December 2008, 2008 QCCS 5903.

[1130]*Smart Systems Technologies Inc. v. Domotique Secant Inc.*, Court of Appeal of Quebec, Canada, 11 March 2008, XXXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 464 (2008). For circumstances where the failure of the arbitrators to adhere to the agreement of the parties was considered to amount to a breach of public policy see also *Société Dubois & Vanderwalle S.A.R.L. v. Société Boots Frites BV*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 22 September 1995.

[1131]See *Soc. Excelsior Film TV v. Soc. UGC-PH*, Court of Cassation, France, 24 March 1998.

[1132]See District Court of Affoltern am Albis, Switzerland, 26 May 1994, XXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 754, paras. 18-24 (1998).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

[...] it is totally unacceptable that the person who draws up a contract must also, as an arbitrator, give a binding interpretation of it, particularly when he has been for years one of the parties' lawyer".[1133]

40. Another significant example of breach of procedural public policy, albeit in the context of an action to set aside, is that of the case where two parties to a tripartite contact and dispute were required to appoint one arbitrator. The French Court of Cassation considered that the principle of equality of the parties in the appointment of arbitrators was part of the French understanding of international public policy and could be waived only after a dispute had arisen. The court concluded that an award which was rendered by a three-member tribunal, one of whom was appointed, under protest and with all reservations, jointly by the two defendants, should be set aside.[1134]

41. An unusual example of a breach of procedural public policy is that of a case where the party opposing enforcement in Germany was a small franchisee that sold sandwiches and salads in a German provincial town but had been ordered by the arbitral tribunal to attend a hearing in New York. The German courts held that the location of such hearing placed an excessive burden on that party given its small size and refused recognition and enforcement on grounds of public policy.[1135]

c. Relationship with article V (1)

42. The public policy defence can be based on facts which may also give rise to a defence under article V (1) of the New York Convention. This is particularly so in cases in which the arbitration agreement is invalid[1136] or where there has been a violation of due process[1137] amounting to a breach of public policy.

43. For example, the Brazilian courts found that the fact that an arbitral tribunal had established its jurisdiction despite the failure of a party to sign the contract containing the arbitration agreement amounted to lack of consent to arbitrate and thus constituted a breach of public policy.[1138] Similarly, the German courts have

[1133] *Id.*, paras. 21-22

[1134] See *Siemens A.G. v. BKMI Industrienlagen GmbH*, Court of Cassation, France, 7 January 1992, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 140 (1993). See also Martin Platte, *Multi-Party Arbitration: Legal Issues Arising out of Joinder and Consolidation*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: the New York Convention in Practice 481, 491, 492-94 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

[1135] See Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Dresden, Germany, 11 Sch 08/07, 7 December 2007.

[1136] See the chapter of the Guide on article V (2)(*b*), para. 36.

[1137] See the chapter of the Guide on article V (2)(*b*), paras. 36, 38-39

[1138] See, e.g., *Kanematsu USA Inc. v. Advanced Telecommunications Systems do Brasil Ltda.*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 18 April 2012; *Indutech S.p.A. v. Algocentro Armazéns Gerais Ltda.*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 17 December 2008; *Plexus Cotton Ltd. v. Santana Têxtil S/A*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 15 February 2006.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

refused recognition and enforcement on public policy grounds due to the arbitral tribunal's failure to examine whether the arbitration agreement was valid.[1139]

44. Some courts have taken the view that a proper characterization of the matter as one falling either under article V (1) or under article V (2)*(b)* is necessary. For example, the Highest Arbitrazh Court of the Russian Federation endorsed the practice of Russian lower courts according to which improper notice of the appointment of an arbitrator or of the arbitration proceedings as well as the inability of a party to present its case constitute an independent defence to recognition and enforcement of a foreign award pursuant to article V (1)*(b)* and that, in light of its exceptional nature, there is no need to apply the public policy defence contained in article V (2)*(b)* of the New York Convention.[1140]

45. Other courts have simply acknowledged this duplication of grounds on which the same matter could be raised. For example, in the words of the Court of Final Appeal of Hong Kong, "[i]t has become fashionable to raise specific grounds in [...] Article V.1(b) [...], which are directed to procedural irregularities, as public policy grounds (Article V.2(b)). There is no reason why this course cannot be followed".[1141] Several courts have followed this approach. They simply address under article V (2) the allegations of procedural irregularities, without taking issue with the fact that they could also be properly brought under one of the grounds of article V (1).[1142]

46. Indeed, nothing in article V prevents a party from putting forward an argument under article V (2)*(b)* that could also properly be brought under one of the grounds of article V (1). To the contrary, there is some support in the *travaux*

[1139]See Landgericht [LG] München, Germany, 20 June 1978, V Y.B. Com. Arb. 260 (1980).

[1140]See Presidium of the Highest Arbitrazh Court, Russian Federation, Information Letter No. 156 of 26 February 2013, 10. See also Anton G. Maurer, The Public Policy Exception Under The New York Convention: History, Interpretation And Application 67-70 (2012).

[1141]See *Hebei Import & Export Corp. v. Polytek Engineering Co. Ltd.*, Court of Final Appeal, Hong Kong, 9 February 1999, [1999] 2 HKC 205.

[1142]See, *Inter-Arab Investment Guarantee Corporation v. Banque Arabe et Internationale d'Investissement*, Court of Appeal of Brussels, Belgium, 24 January 1997, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 643 (1997); Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Frankfurt, Germany, 26 Sch 03/09, 27 August 2009, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 377; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 34 Sch 26/08, 22 June 2009, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 371 (2010); Kammergericht [KG] Berlin, Germany, 20 Sch 02/08, 17 April 2008; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Frankfurt, Germany, 26 Sch 1/07, 18 October 2007; *Goldtron Ltd. v. Media Most B.V.*, Rechtbank, Amsterdam, Netherlands, 27 August 2002, XXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 814 (2003); *Shaanxi Provincial Helath Products I/E Corporation v. Olpesa S.A.*, Supreme Court, Spain, No. 112/2002, 7 October 2003, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 617 (2005); Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 28 July 2010, Decision 4A_233/2010; *G. S.A. v. T. Ltd.*, Federal Tribunal, Switzerland, 12 January 1989, XV Y.B. Com. Arb. 509 (1990). See also Albert Jan van den Berg, *The New York Convention of 1958: An Overview*, in Enforcement Of Arbitration Agreements And International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention In Practice 39, 57-58 and 64 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds. 2008); Herman Verbist, *Challenges on Grounds of Due Process Pursuant to Article V (1)(b) of the New York Convention*, in Enforcement Of Arbitration Agreements And International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention In Practice 679 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

préparatoires for the proposition that parties wishing to argue that their procedural rights had been violated should be free do so on the basis of a violation of public policy.[1143] It should be noted that courts have generally taken a restrictive interpretation of public policy and implemented a high standard of proof in that respect, by comparison to the standard of proof under article V (1). One notable difference between the two paragraphs of article V is that article V (2)*(b)* allows a complaint to be examined by the court *ex officio*[1144] whereas a complaint under article V (1) can only be brought by the party seeking to oppose recognition and enforcement of an award.

C. Procedural issues in raising the defence of article V (2)*(b)*

a. Estoppel and waiver

47. The question has arisen whether a party may be estopped from raising the defence of article V (2)*(b)* of the New York Convention where, to the extent possible, it has failed to do so before the arbitral tribunal.

48. In some instances, courts have held that failure of a party to raise a defect in procedure or on the merits of the award amounts to a waiver of its right to avail itself of this ground of complaint at the recognition and enforcement stage. One court however indicated that although a party may be precluded from raising complaints at the recognition and enforcement stage that it could have raised before the arbitral tribunal, this does not apply to complaints brought under article V (2) *(b)* of the New York Convention.[1145]

49. Certain courts have endorsed the proposition that a substantive complaint will not be entertained as a public policy complaint at the enforcement stage if it existed at the time of the arbitral proceedings and it could have been raised before the arbitral tribunal,[1146] or if it has been raised and rejected on the merits by the arbitral tribunal.[1147]

[1143] See *Travaux préparatoires*, Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, E/AC.42/4/Rev.1, p. 10; Comments of the Representative of the Egyptian Government, Mr. Osman: Summary Record of the Sixth Meeting, E/AC.42/SR.6, p. 4.

[1144] See the chapter of the Guide on article V (2)*(b)*, paras. 53-61.

[1145] Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht [BayObLG], Germany, 4 Z Sch 17/03, 20 November 2003.

[1146] See *Soinco SACI & anor. v. Novokuznetsk Aluminium Plant & Ors.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 16 December 1997, [1998] CLC 730; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Saarbrücken, Germany, 4 Sch 03/10, 30 May 2011; *Epis S.A. v. Roche Diagnostics GmbH*, District Court of Jerusalem, Israel, 23 November 2004, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 786 (2006).

[1147] See Bundesgerichtshof [BGH] Germany, III ZR 269/88, 18 January 1990.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

50. This conclusion is more commonly reached with regard to procedural irregularities. For example, in a case where it was alleged that the award was procured through fraud, the English courts held that it would not be appropriate to refuse recognition if the relevant evidence was available at the hearing before the arbitral tribunal or if the allegation has been raised with the tribunal and has been rejected.[1148] Other common law jurisdictions have also held that a party that failed to raise a procedural irregularity with the arbitral tribunal, while it could do so, has waived its right to do so at the enforcement stage.[1149]

51. Similarly, civil law jurisdictions have considered that a party that has failed to seize the arbitral tribunal of a procedural irregularity should be barred from doing so at the enforcement stage.[1150] By contrast, where the party has lodged the complaint with the arbitral tribunal and reserved its rights, the French Court of Cassation held that that party ought to be permitted to raise the same complaint at the enforcement stage.[1151]

52. Certain courts have accepted that procedural irregularities may not be raised at the enforcement stage if the party opposing recognition and enforcement has failed to raise them in annulment proceedings brought before the courts of the seat of the arbitration.[1152] Given the rejection by the New York Convention of the *double exequatur* requirement,[1153] this line of case law seems somewhat at odds with the text and spirit of the Convention which enables a party to rely on an irregularity in the procedure before the arbitral tribunal in order to oppose recognition and enforcement under the New York Convention.

[1148]See *Westacre Investments Inc. v. Jugoimport-SDPR Holding Co. Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 12 May 1999, [2000] QB 288; *Minmetals Germany GmbH v. Ferco Steel Ltd.*, High Court of Justice, Queen's Bench Division, Commercial Court, England and Wales, 20 January 1999, [1999] CLC 647; *Omnium de Traitement et de Valorisation S.A. v. Hilmarton Ltd.*, High Court of Justice, Queen's Bench Division, Commercial Court, England and Wales, 24 May 1999, [1999] 2 Lloyd's Rep. 222.

[1149]See, e.g., *Gao Haiyan & anor. v. Keeneye Holdings Ltd. & anor.*, Court of Appeal, Hong Kong, CACV 79/2011, 2 December 2011; *Karaha Bodas Co. LLC v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 23 March 2004, 364 F.3d 274; *Europcar Italia S.p.A. v. Maiellano Tours Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 2 September 1998, 156 F.3d 310; *AAOT Foreign Economic Association (VO) Technostroyexport v. International Development & Trade Services Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 23 March 1998, 97-9075, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 813 (1999).

[1150]See, e.g., *SAS C22 v. Soc. John K. King & Sons Limited Frontier Agriculture Ltd.*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 10 April 2008. See also Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, III ZR 12/87, 14 April 1988, where the German Federal Supreme Court held that there is no breach of public policy where a party fails to raise a procedural irregularity in a timely manner with the tribunal or the institution administering the arbitration. See also Bundesgerichtshof [BGH], Germany, VII ZR 163/68, 6 March 1969; *K.S. A.G. v. C.C. S.A.*, Execution and Bankruptcy Chamber of Tessin, Switzerland, 19 June 1990, XX Y.B. Com. Arb. 762 (1995); Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamm, Germany, 20 U 57/83, 2 November 1983.

[1151]See *Siemens A.G. v. BKMI Industrienlagen GmbH*, Court of Cassation, France, 7 January 1992, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 140 (1993).

[1152]Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Frankfurt, Germany, 26 Sch 1/07, 18 October 2007.

[1153]See the chapter of the Guide on article V (1)*(e)*.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

b. Ex officio *review, burden of proof and standard of proof*

53. Article V (2)*(b)* of the New York Convention provides that a foreign award may be refused recognition if the court where recognition and enforcement is sought "finds that" that the recognition and enforcement is contrary to the public policy of the forum where recognition and enforcement is sought. The question has thus arisen as to whether the courts can review an award on grounds of public policy *ex officio*, the identity of the party which bears the burden of proof, and the standard of proof to be met.

54. Regarding the ability of a court to review a foreign award on public policy grounds *ex officio*, there is a notable difference in wording between article V (1) and V (2) of the New York Convention. Article V (1) states that recognition and enforcement of an award may be refused "at the request of the party against whom it is invoked". By contrast, article V (2)*(b)* provides that recognition and enforcement may be refused "if the competent authority in the country where recognition and enforcement is sought finds that [...] the recognition and enforcement of the award would be contrary to the public policy of that country".[1154]

55. On the basis of this difference of wording, certain courts have acknowledged that they can review an award for breach of public policy *ex officio*.[1155]

56. However, the ability to review an award for breach of public policy does not solely arise out of the difference in wording of paragraphs (1) and (2) of article V. It is also linked to the essence of public policy as a concept that allows the courts to reject a violation of it most fundamental norms of justice. The English courts have thus held that "the defence that enforcement would be contrary to public policy is stated without an express burden of proof [...]. This is no doubt because

[1154]During the negotiation of the Convention, the Netherlands Government pointed out that courts are allowed to proceed to an *ex officio* review of public policy: see *Travaux préparatoires*, Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: Comments by Governments on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/CONF.26/3/Add.1, p. 4. The same view was expressed by the Swedish Government: Summary Record of the Seventeenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.17, p. 2. See also Albert Jan van den Berg, *The New York Convention of 1958: An Overview*, in Enforcement Of Arbitration Agreements And International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention In Practice 39, 56, 64 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds. 2008).

[1155]See, e.g., *Hebei Import & Export Corp. v. Polytek Engineering Co. Ltd.*, Court of Final Appeal, Hong Kong, 9 February 1999, [1999] 2 HKC 205; Kammergericht [KG] Berlin, Germany, 20 Sch 4/07, 11 June 2009, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 369 (2010); Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 17 December 2008, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 359 (2010); *Efxinos Shipping Co. Ltd. v. Rawi Shipping Lines Ltd.*, Court of Appeal of Genoa, Italy, 2 May 1980, VIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 381 (1983); *Petrotesting Colombia S.A. & Southeast Investment Corp. v. Ross Energy S.A.*, Supreme Court of Justice, Colombia, 27 July 2011; *BCB Holdings Limited and The Belize Bank Limited v. The Attorney General of Belize*, Caribbean Court of Justice, Appellate Jurisdiction, 26 July 2013, [2013] CCJ 5 (AJ). See also Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 299, 359 (1981).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

it must always be open to the court to take a point of public policy of its own motion".[1156]

57. Irrespective of whether a jurisdiction has the authority to review an award for breach of public policy *ex officio* or solely at the request of the party challenging recognition or enforcement, the burden of proof rests on this latter party.[1157]

58. The exceptional nature of the public policy defence explains the heightened standard of proof that courts normally require in order to refuse recognition and enforcement under article V (2)*(b)*. Thus the Canadian courts have requested that the party opposing recognition and enforcement should present compelling evidence.[1158] It is thus of no surprise that, while the enforcement courts recognize in principle that recognition of an award should be refused on the grounds of public policy in specific instances, such as for example bribery or fraud, parties alleging a breach of public policy more often than not fail on the facts.[1159]

59. In a case heard by the Court of Appeal of Hong Kong, it was held there was no proof of actual bias in a case where one of the arbitrators had had dinner with a person related to the respondent in the arbitration in the context of mediation, even though that would have been seen as bias in Hong Kong, because such dinners were normal course of business in the context of mediation at the place of the arbitration.[1160] The Court of Final Appeal of Hong Kong held that what is required is proof of actual bias and not of mere impartiality.[1161]

[1156] *Gater Assets Ltd. v. Nak Naftogaz Ukrainiy*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 17 October 2007, [2007] EWCA Civ 988, [2007] 2 CLC 567.

[1157] See, e.g., Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Düsseldorf, Germany, VI Sch (Kart) 1/02, 21 July 2004; *Gater Assets Ltd. v. Nak Naftogaz Ukrainiy*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 17 October 2007, [2007] EWCA Civ 988, [2007] 2 CLC 567; *Hebei Import & Export Corp. v. Polytek Engineering Co. Ltd.*, Court of Final Appeal, Hong Kong, 9 February 1999, [1999] 2 HKC 205; *NTT Docomo Inc. v. Ultra D.O.O.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 12 October 2010; *Europcar Italia S.p.A. v. Maiellano Tours Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 2 September 1998, 156 F.3d 310; *Telenor Mobile Communications AS v. Storm LLC*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 2 November 2007, 524 F. Supp. 2d 332; *Stawski Distributing Co., Inc. v. Zywiec Breweries plc*, District Court, Northern District of Illinois, United States of America, 29 September 2004, 02 C 8708.

[1158] See *Karaha Bodas Company, L.L.C. v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara and P.T. PLN (Persero)*, Alberta Court of Queen's Bench, Canada, 24 October 2007, 2007 ABQB 616.

[1159] See, e.g., *El Nasr Company for Fertilizers & Chemical Industries (SEMADCO) v. John Brown Deutsche*, Court of Cassation, Egypt, 10 January 2005; *Compagnie française d'études et de construction Technip (Technip) v. Entreprise nationale des engrais et des produits phytosanitaires (Asmidal)*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 2 April 1998; *Soc. I.A.I.G.C.-Inter-Arab Investment Guarantee Corporation v. Soc. B.A.I.I. - Banque arabe et international d'investissement S.A.*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 23 October 1997; *Soc. Unichips Finanziaria S.p.A. & Soc. Unichips International BV v. Consorts Gesnouin*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 13 February 1993; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 34 Sch 26/08, 22 June 2009, XXXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 371 (2010); Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamm, Germany, 25 Sch 09/08, 28 November 2008.

[1160] See *Gao Haiyan & anor. v. Keeneye Holdings Ltd. & anor.*, Court of Appeal, Hong Kong, CACV 79/2011, 2 December 2011.

[1161] See *Hebei Import & Export Corp. v. Polytek Engineering Co. Ltd.*, Court of Final Appeal, Hong Kong, 9 February 1999, [1999] 2 HKC 205.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

60. Although it is not clear whether other courts would have followed the reasoning of the courts of Hong Kong in assessing the existence of bias by reference to the standard existing at the place where the relevant facts took place, rather than the standard existing under their own law, several courts have demanded that the party alleging fraud should present clear and convincing evidence to that effect, show that the fraud in question was not discoverable during the arbitration and that it was materially related to an issue in the arbitration. In other words, in cases of fraud or bias, where the public policy exception under the New York Convention is invoked, courts often require an additional fact to be proven, namely that the defect is such to influence the outcome of the arbitration.[1162]

61. This heightened standard of proof is compatible with the exceptional nature of the public policy defence as well as with the fact that article V (2)*(b)* provides a mere facility to the courts and not an obligation. Although courts may proceed to an *ex officio* review of the award for a breach of public policy, the fact that they place the burden of proof on the party opposing recognition and enforcement as well as the heightened standard of proof demonstrate an international consensus as to the pro-enforcement bias of the New York Convention and the conservative manner in which the public policy defence should be employed.

c. Consequences

62. The sanction for an award that is found to be contrary to public policy is that the courts of a Contracting State may refuse to grant recognition and enforcement. While that power is discretionary in the sense that the New York Convention does not require that recognition and enforcement be refused ("[r]ecognition and enforcement of an arbitral award may also be refused"), certain courts have decided that, where it is possible to sever the part of the award which is contrary to public policy, the rest of the award will be recognized and enforced.

63. The High Court of Hong Kong was faced with this issue in a case concerning an award which had been challenged on the ground of fraud and in particular that a witness had been kidnapped and forced to make a false affidavit. The High Court held that "[i]f an award contained an objectionable part it would be absurd if the

[1162]See, e.g., *Westacre Investments Inc. v. Jugoimport-SPDR Holding Ltd. & others*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 12 May 2000, [2000] 1 QB 288; *Karaha Bodas Co. LLC v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara (Petarmina)*, Court of Appeal, Hong Kong, 9 October 2007; *Karaha Bodas Co. LLC v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 23 March 2004, 364 F.3d 274. German courts apply the same approach as to fraud, namely that it should be such to influence the outcome of the arbitration, also to due process violations: see Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Bremen, Germany, (2) Sch 04/99, 30 September 1999; Bundesgerichtshof [BGH] Germany, III ZR 192/84, 15 May 1986.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

remainder of the award was to fail as well".[1163] It thus allowed the enforcement of the award insofar as it related to the reimbursement of a deposit for the sale of undelivered goods, an issue which in its view would not be affected by the public policy challenge.

64. While article V (2)*(b)* of the New York Convention does not explicitly limit itself to the part of the award which is challenged under public policy, the High Court of Hong Kong considered that such an interpretation was appropriate and compatible with article V (1)*(c)*, which provides for the severability of the part of the award that "deals with a difference not contemplated by or falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration".

65. Other examples of awards where the part contrary to public policy was severed and the recognition and enforcement was granted to the rest of the award include cases where the award ordered the payment of interest of such magnitude that was considered contrary to public policy. In those cases, the courts severed either the part of the award on interest as a whole[1164] or the part of the interest sum exceeding what would be considered appropriate in the enforcement State.[1165]

[1163] *J. J. Agro Industries (P) Ltd. v. Texuna International Ltd.*, High Court, Hong Kong, 12 August 1992.

[1164] See *Laminoires-Trefileries-Cablerie de Lens S.A. v. Southwire Co. and Southwire International Corp.*, District Court, Northern District of Georgia, United States, 484 F. Supp. 1063 (1980); Oberster Gerichtshof, Austria, Case 3Ob221/04b, 26 January 2005, XXX Y.B. Com. Arb. 421 (2005).

[1165] See *Harbottle Co. Ltd. v. Egypt for Foreign Trade Co.*, Court of Cassation, Egypt, 21 May 1990.

Article VI

If an application for the setting aside or suspension of the award has been made to a competent authority referred to in article V(1)*(e)*, the authority before which the award is sought to be relied upon may, if it considers it proper, adjourn the decision on the enforcement of the award and may also, on the application of the party claiming enforcement of the award, order the other party to give suitable security.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article VI as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.34; E/CONF.26/L.16; E/CONF.26/L.44.
- Summary Records of the 11th, 12th, 13th, 14th and 17th meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org.)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Introduction

1. Article VI of the Convention addresses the situation where a party seeks to set aside an award in the country where it was issued, while the other party seeks to enforce it elsewhere.

2. In this context of parallel proceedings, article VI achieves a compromise between the two equally legitimate concerns of promoting the enforceability of foreign arbitral awards and preserving judicial oversight over awards by granting courts of Contracting States the freedom to decide whether or not to adjourn enforcement proceedings.[1166]

3. Article VI was not included in the early drafts of the Convention and the issues it addresses were first considered during the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration convened for the preparation and adoption of the Convention. In turning their minds to these issues, the drafters of the Convention sought to ensure that a party wishing to frustrate the enforcement of an award could not circumvent the Convention by simply initiating proceedings to set aside or suspend the award, while at the same time limiting the risk that an enforced award would be subsequently set aside in the country in which it was made.

4. As explained by Mr. de Sydow, Chairman of Working Party No. 3 that drafted article VI: "[T]he Working Party recommended the adoption of that article in order to permit the enforcement authority to adjourn its decision if it was satisfied that an application for annulment of the award or for its suspension was made for a good reason in the country where the award was given. At the same time, to prevent an abuse of that provision by the losing party which may have started annulment proceedings without a valid reason purely to delay or frustrate the enforcement of the award, the enforcement authority should in such a case have the right either to enforce the award forthwith or to adjourn its enforcement only on the condition that the party opposing enforcement deposits a suitable security."[1167]

5. Article VI may be regarded as an important step forward compared to the 1927 Geneva Convention under which a foreign court was required to refuse

[1166] See Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration 981 (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1996); Nicola C. Port, Jessica R. Simonoff et al., *Article VI*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 415, 416 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010). See also *Continental Transfer Technique Ltd. v. Federal Government of Nigeria*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 30 March 2010, [2010] EWHC 780 (Comm); *IPCO v. Nigeria* (NNPC), High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 27 April 2005, [2005] EWHC 726 (Comm).

[1167] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Seventeenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.17, p. 4.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

enforcement upon the mere application to set aside the award in the country where it was issued.[1168] By contrast, article VI merely allows national courts to adjourn their decision on enforcement should they "consider it proper".[1169] The same principle is provided for, in substance, in article 36(2) of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration.[1170]

6. Although article VI is often raised alongside article V (1)*(e)*, which provides that a court may refuse to recognize and enforce an award if it "has not yet become binding on the parties, or has been set aside or suspended by a competent authority of the country",[1171] it covers a different situation. By adjourning the enforcement proceedings, courts seek to preserve the status quo in order to enable the application to set aside or suspend the award to be made in the country where it was issued.[1172] In this sense, article VI may be regarded as "a corollary" to article V (1)*(e)* and as closing a "temporal gap" that exists when an action to set aside the award is pending before a competent authority.[1173]

7. It took a while for practitioners to avail themselves of the possibilities offered by article VI.[1174] Now, courts around the world have applied this provision with a view to promoting the objectives of the Convention by facilitating the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards.

[1168]See article 1 of the 1927 Geneva Convention: "To obtain such recognition or enforcement, it shall, further, be necessary: [...] (*d*) That the award has become final in the country in which it has been made, in the sense that it will not be considered as such if it is open to opposition, appel or *pourvoi en cassation* (in the countries where such forms of procedure exist) or if it is proved that any proceedings for the purpose of contesting the validity of the award are pending; [...]." See also Philippe Fouchard, L'arbitrage commercial international 535 (1965); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 353 (1981).

[1169]The District Court of Columbia has provided the following definition of "adjourn" within the meaning of article VI of the Convention: "stay or dismiss without prejudice". See *Telcordia Technologies, Inc. v. Telkom SA, Limited*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 9 April 2004, 02-1990. See also *CPConstruction Pioneers Baugesellschaft Anstalt v. The Government of the Republic Ghana, Ministry of Roads and Transport*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 12 August 2008, 1:04-01564 (LFO); *Continental Transfert Technique Lmt. v. Federal Government of Nigeria et al.*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 23 March 2010, 08-2026 (PLF).

[1170]Article 36(2) of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration provides that: "If an application for setting aside or suspension of an award has been made to a court referred to in paragraph (1)(a)(v) of this article, the court where recognition or enforcement is sought may, if it considers it proper, adjourn its decision and may also, on the application of the party claiming recognition or enforcement of the award, order the other party to provide appropriate security."

[1171]For a more detailed analysis, see the chapter of the Guide on article V (1)*(e)*.

[1172]*ESCO Corp v. Bradken Resources Pty Ltd*, Federal Court, Australia, 9 August 2011, NSD 876 of 2011.

[1173]Christoph Liebscher, *Article VI*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 438, 439 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Michael H. Strub, *Resisting Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards Under Article V (1)(e) and Article VI of the New York Convention: A Proposal for Effective Guidelines*, 68 Tex. L. Rev. 1031, 1047 (1989-1990).

[1174]See Pieter Sanders, *A Twenty Years' Review of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards*, 13 Int'l Law 269, 273 (1979).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Analysis

A. General principles

a. *The requirement that an application for the setting aside or suspension of an award be pending*

8. Article VI of the Convention requires that an application for the setting aside or suspension of an award "has been made" before a competent authority. In the absence of such an application, courts must refuse to adjourn the decision on the enforcement of the award.

9. Several courts have considered whether to adjourn enforcement proceedings pursuant to article VI in cases where it was not established that the pending application constituted an attempt to set aside or suspend the award. For example, the United States District Court for the Western District of Washington held that a damages claim in a second set of arbitral proceedings did not amount to an action to set aside or suspend the award within the meaning of article VI.[1175] In another case, the United States Court of Appeals for the Third Circuit dismissed a request for adjournment on the grounds that an action, initiated before the same arbitral tribunal, to remedy a harm that occurred after a first award was issued did not amount to an action to set aside or suspend the award.[1176] In a further case, the Supreme Court of New South Wales refused to grant an adjournment in a situation where the defendant had failed to establish that the application made before a competent authority in Sweden related to the setting aside or suspension of the award.[1177]

10. Courts also require the party opposing enforcement to demonstrate that an application to set aside or suspend an award is still pending. If the application has already been dismissed, courts will refuse to adjourn the decision on the enforcement of an award.[1178] By way of example, a French court denied adjournment on the ground that even though the party seeking adjournment had initiated

[1175] *Korea Wheel Corporation v. JCA Corporation*, District Court, Western District of Washington at Seattle, United States of America, 16 December 2005, C05-1590C.

[1176] *Stephen and Mary Birch Foundation, Inc. v. Admart AG, Heller Werkstatt GesmbH and others*, Court of Appeals, Third Circuit, United States of America, 8 August 2006, 04-4014.

[1177] *Hallen v. Angledal*, Supreme Court of New South Wales, Australia, 10 June 1999, 50055 of 1999.

[1178] *S.A. Recam Sonofadex v. S.N.C. Cantieri Rizzardi de Gianfranco Rizzardi*, Court of Appeal of Orléans, France, 5 October 2000; Debt Collection and Bankruptcy Chamber of the Court of Appeal of the Republic and Canton of Ticino, Switzerland, 9 December 2010, 14.2010.98.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

proceedings to suspend the enforcement of the award in Italy, those proceedings had been dismissed by the Rome Court of Appeal.[1179]

b. The application for the setting aside or suspension of an award must be made to a "competent authority"

11. Article VI of the Convention provides that courts may adjourn the enforcement decision if the application to set aside or suspend the award has been made in front of a "competent authority." To determine whether this prerequisite has been satisfied, courts refer to the standards found in article V (1)*(e)* of the Convention.[1180]

12. As pointed out in the chapter of the Guide on article V (1)*(e)*, the country under the laws of which the award is made is often the same as the country in which the award is issued and thus, in practice, courts have mainly referred to the country in which the arbitration took place.[1181]

13. If the court is not satisfied that an application has been made before a "competent authority", within the meaning of articles V (1)*(e)* and VI, the request to adjourn proceedings will be denied. For example, the Luxembourg Court of Appeal dismissed a request for adjournment noting that there was no setting aside procedure pending in Belgium, the "court of the country of rendition".[1182] Similarly, the Court of First Instance of Rotterdam refused an adjournment request based on a setting aside application pending in the Belgian courts on the ground that Israeli courts had exclusive jurisdiction to hear a setting aside application of an award issued in Israel.[1183] The United States Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia held that where an arbitration occurred in London under the arbitration laws of England, the courts of England were the "competent authority with primary jurisdiction over the Final Award" and that, absent proceedings for the setting aside or suspension of the award in those courts, adjournment should be denied.[1184] In that

[1179] *S.A. Recam Sonofadex v. S.N.C. Cantieri Rizzardi de Gianfranco Rizzardi*, Court of Appeal of Orléans, France, 5 October 2000.

[1180] See, e.g., *Four Seasons Hotels and Resorts, B.V., et al. v. Consorcio Barr, S.A.*, District Court, Southern District of Florida, Miami Division, United States of America, 4 June 2003, 02-23249; *Belize Social Development Ltd. v. Government of Belize*, Court of Appeals, D.C. Circuit, United States of America, 13 January 2012, 10-7167; *The Commercial Company for Investment v. Bell Rover Shipping Limited*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 19 March 1997, 68/113.

[1181] For a detailed analysis of the case law, see the chapter of the Guide on article V (1)*(e)*.

[1182] *Kersa Holding Company Luxembourg v. Infancourtage, Famajuk Investment and Isny*, Superior Court of Justice, Luxembourg, 24 November 1993. See also *The Commercial Company for Investment v. Bell Rover Shipping Limited*, Court of Appeal of Cairo, Egypt, 19 March 1997.

[1183] *Isaac Glecer v. Moses Israel Glecer and Estera Glecer-Nottman*, President of the District Court of Rotterdam, Netherlands, 24 November 1994, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 635 (1996).

[1184] *Belize Social Development Ltd. v. Government of Belize*, Court of Appeals, D.C. Circuit, United States of America, 13 January 2012, 10-7167.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

case, the court recalled that enforcement may be adjourned "only if [...] an application for the setting aside or suspension of the award has been made to a competent authority."[1185]

14. In line with the principle that the party opposing enforcement of an arbitral award has the burden of proving that one or more of the defences under the Convention apply,[1186] the burden of proving that the authority to which the application was made is competent to hear the application lies with the party seeking the adjournment. On that basis, the Supreme Court of New South Wales in *Hallen v. Angledal* refused to adjourn its decision on enforcement as it did not "consider that the defendants have established that the necessary application has been made to competent authority in Sweden."[1187]

c. *Whether the party must request an adjournment and/or an order for security*

15. Pursuant to article VI of the Convention, the authority before which the award is sought to be relied upon may order that the party opposing enforcement give suitable security "on the application of the party claiming enforcement". The language of article VI allows the courts to order security only if the party seeking enforcement so requests.

16. In *Spier*, the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York first noted that it should not order security since "neither party [...] had briefed the question of security", but still requested the defendant to show cause as to the reasons why security in the full amount should not be required, even though neither party had addressed the issue.[1188] Since then, courts in the United States have consistently held that security should be ordered "on the application of the plaintiff".[1189] In a recent case, the United States District Court for the Western

[1185] *Id.*

[1186] See, e.g., *Encyclopaedia Universalis, S.A. v. Encyclopaedia Britannica, Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 31 March 2005, 403 F.3d 85. See also *Thai-Lao Lignite Co. Ltd. et al. v. Government of the Lao People's Democratic Republic*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 3 August 2011, 10 Civ. 5256 (KMW); *Europcar Italia, S.p.A. v. Maiellano Tours*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 2 September 1998, 97-7224.

[1187] *Hallen v. Angledal*, Supreme Court of New South Wales, Australia, 10 June 1999, 50055 of 1999. See also *Four Seasons Hotels and Resorts, B.V., et al. v. Consorcio Barr, S.A.*, District Court, Southern District of Florida, Miami Division, United States of America, 4 June 2003, 02-23249.

[1188] *Spier v. Calzaturificio Tecnica S.p.A ("Spier I")*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 29 June 1987, 663 F. Supp. 871.

[1189] *Skandia America Reinsurance Corporation v. Caja Nacional de Ahorro y Seguros*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 21 May 1997, 96 Civ. 2301 (KMW), XXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 956 (1998); *Consorcio Rive, S.A. de C.V. v. Briggs of Cancun, Inc., David Briggs Enterprises, Inc.*, District Court, Eastern District of Louisiana, United States of America, 26 January 2000, 99-2205, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 1115 (2000).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

District of Michigan recognized its power to order security under article VI, but refused to make such an order as the party opposing enforcement had failed to make the appropriate motion.[1190]

17. It is thus accepted that article VI requires that the party seeking enforcement must "affirmatively" apply for security.[1191]

18. Article VI does not however contain a similar requirement for courts adjourning proceedings. Courts may adjourn enforcement proceedings without any of the parties having applied for such an adjournment. For example, the Court of Appeal of England and Wales held that, even though neither party had requested an adjournment, "a court might conclude of its own motion that the determination of an application under s. 103(5) [which directly incorporates and whose wording is equivalent to article VI] would be an inappropriate use of court time and/or contrary to comity or likely to give rise to conflict of laws problem."[1192] In the United States, courts have held that they have "inherent power to control [their] docket", irrespective of article VI of the Convention, and to stay the enforcement proceedings.[1193]

19. Commentators have also noted that courts could, pursuant to article VI, decide *sua sponte* to adjourn enforcement proceedings.[1194]

d. The discretionary power of the courts to adjourn the decision on enforcement or order security

20. Under article VI of the Convention, a court of a Contracting State "may, if it considers it proper, adjourn" proceedings and "may also [...] order the other party to give suitable security". In light of the "permissive language" of article VI,[1195]

[1190] *Leonard Higgins v. SPX Corporation*, District Court, Western District of Michigan, United States of America, 18 April 2006, 2006 WL 1008677.

[1191] Nicola C. Port, Jessica R. Simonoff et al., *Article VI*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on The New York Convention 415, 434 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

[1192] *Yukos Oil Co. v. Dardana Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 18 April 2002, [2002] EWCA Civ 543.

[1193] *Oriental Republic of Uruguay, et al. v. Chemical Overseas Holdings, Inc. et al.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 24 January 2006, 05 Civ. 6154 (WHP); *Belize Social Development Ltd. v. Government of Belize*, Court of Appeals, D.C. Circuit, United States of America, 13 January 2012, 10-7167; *Korea Wheel Corporation v. JCA Corporation*, District Court, Western District of Washington at Seattle, United States of America, 16 December 2005, C05-1590C.

[1194] See, e.g., Christoph Liebscher, *Article VI*, in New York Convention on The Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 438, 440 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Rena Rico, *Searching for Standards: Suspension of Enforcement Proceedings under Article VI of the New York Convention*, 1 Asian Int'l Arb. J. 69, 79 (2005).

[1195] See *Europcar Italia, S.p.A. v. Maiellano Tours*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 2 September 1998, 97-7224

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

courts have full discretion to adjourn enforcement proceedings or order the defendant to provide security. As noted by the Supreme Court of Hong Kong, use of the term "may" indicates that the application for adjournment is a matter of discretion.[1196]

21. The fact that courts were granted full discretion in that respect has been widely recognized throughout the world. The President of the First Instance Court of Paris acknowledged, in *Saint-Gobain*, that article VI of the Convention gives discretion to the enforcing judge to decide whether enforcement proceedings should be adjourned when an application to set aside or suspend an award has been made to a competent authority in the country where the award was issued. Similar rulings have been rendered in many countries, including Canada, Italy, Germany, Sweden and the United States of America.[1197] Australian courts have found that section 8(8) of the International Arbitration Act 1974 (which implements article VI of the Convention) gives them "wide discretion" or a "general discretion" to adjourn enforcement proceedings if they are satisfied that an application for the setting aside or suspension of an award had been brought before a competent authority of the country in which, or under the law of which, the award was rendered.[1198] Similarly, English courts consider that they have "wide" discretion[1199] under article VI and are "unfettered when considering the exercise of [their] discretion".[1200]

[1196] *Hebei Import & Export Corp v. Polytek Engineering Co. Ltd.*, High Court, Supreme Court of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, 1 November 1996, [1996] 3 HKC 725.

[1197] *Powerex Corp. v. Alcan Inc.*, Supreme Court of British Columbia, Canada, 10 July 2003, 2003 BCSC 1096; *Nuovo Pignone SpA v. Schlumberger S.A.*, Court of Appeal of Florence, Italy, 17 May 2005, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 403 (2007); Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Schleswig, Germany, 16 June 2008, 16 Sch 02/07; *AB Götaverken v. General National Maritime Transport Company (GMTC), Libya and others*, Supreme Court, Sweden, 13 August 1979, VI Y.B. Com. Arb. 237 (1981); *Korea Wheel Corporation v. JCA Corporation*, District Court, Western District of Washington at Seattle, United States of America, 16 December 2005, C05-1590C; *China National Chartering Corp. et al. v. Pactrans Air & Sea Inc.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 13 November 2009, 06 Civ. 13107 (LAK); *DRC Inc. v. Republic of Honduras*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 28 March 2011, 10-0003 (PLF).

[1198] *ESCO Corp v. Bradken Resources Pty Ltd.*, Federal Court, Australia, 9 August 2011, [2011] FCA 905; *Hallen v. Angledal*, Supreme Court of New South Wales, Australia, 10 June 1999, 50055 of 1999.

[1199] *IPCO v. Nigeria (NNPC)*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 27 April 2005, [2005] EWHC 726 (Comm). See also *Dowans Holding S.A. v. Tanzania Electric Supply Co. Ltd.*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 27 July 2011, [2011] EWHC 1957 (Comm).

[1200] *Continental Transfer Technique Ltd. v. Federal Government of Nigeria*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 30 March 2010, [2010] EWHC 780 (Comm). In the United States, article VI has also been construed as granting "unfettered discretion" to adjourn pending the outcome of an application to set aside: see *Ukrvneshprom State Foreign Economic Enterprise v. Tradeway, Inc.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 11 March 1996, 95 Civ. 10279, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 958 (1997).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

22. The courts' discretionary power applies not only to the decision to adjourn enforcement proceedings but also to whether a defendant should provide security and the amount of that security.[1201]

23. Leading commentators agree that, on the basis of the permissive language used in article VI and the *travaux préparatoires*,[1202] the decision to stay enforcement proceedings and/or order security is discretionary.[1203]

B. The decision to grant or deny adjournment

a. The absence of a standard

24. The Convention does not provide any standard by which a court should decide whether to stay enforcement proceedings, thereby leaving courts in Contracting States to use their discretion.[1204]

25. In the 1981 *Fertilizer Corporation of India* case, the United States District Court for the Southern District of Ohio noted that it had been unable to discover any standard on which to base an adjournment decision, other than to ascertain whether an application for the setting aside or suspension of the award had been brought before a competent authority of the country in which, or under the law

[1201] *Spier v. Calzaturificio Tecnica S.p.A*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 29 June 1987, 663 F. Supp. 871; *Consorcio Rive, S.A. de C.V. v. Briggs of Cancun, Inc., David Briggs Enterprises, Inc.*, District Court, Eastern District of Louisiana, United States of America, 26 January 2000, 99-2205, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 1115 (2000); *Yukos Oil Co. v. Dardana Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 18 April 2002, [2002] EWCA Civ 543; *IPCO v. Nigeria (NNPC)*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 27 April 2005, [2005] EWHC 726 (Comm); *The Republic of Gabon v. Swiss Oil Corporation*, Grand Court, Cayman Island, 17 June 1988, XIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 621 (1989).

[1202] See the chapter of the Guide on Article VI, para. 4. See also a proposal of the Dutch delegate to the Conference, providing that the "judge in the country of enforcement must be given complete latitude either to grant an exequatur immediately, if he considered that there was no reason to refuse it, or to await the outcome of proceedings for its annulment instituted in the country in which it had been made." *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Eleventh Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.11, p. 5.

[1203] See, e.g., Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 2873-2874 (2009); W. Michael Tupman, *Staying Enforcement of Arbitral Awards under the New York Convention*, 3 Arb.Int'l 209, 211 (1987); Christoph Liebscher, *Article VI*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 438, 438 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 353, 358 (1981).

[1204] W. Michael Tupman, *Staying Enforcement of Arbitral Awards under the New York Convention*, 3 Arb. Int'l 209, 220 (1987); Nicola C. Port, Jessica R. Simonoff et al., *Article VI*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 415, 419 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

of which, the award was made.[1205] Similarly, the English High Court of Justice held that the 1996 Arbitration Act did not furnish a threshold test in respect of the exercise of the court's wide discretion pursuant to section 103(5) (which implements article VI of the Convention).[1206]

26. It is widely recognized that discretion should be "rationally" exercised.[1207] As stated by the United States Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit, "where a parallel proceeding is ongoing in the originating country and there is a possibility that the award will be set aside, a district court may be acting improvidently by enforcing the award prior to the completion of the foreign proceedings."[1208]

27. In the absence of a recognized standard, certain jurisdictions had in the past adjourned enforcement proceedings on the sole basis that setting aside proceedings were pending before the competent authority, as defined in articles V (1)*(e)* and VI of the Convention. For example, in *Norsolor*, the Paris Court of Appeal suspended enforcement proceedings pending the outcome of an application to set aside the award before the Vienna Court of Appeal on the ground that, if the award were to be set aside in Vienna, the enforcement proceedings would be stripped of their object.[1209] In the United States, the District Court for the Southern District of New York also adjourned enforcement proceedings in *Spier* by deference to the ruling of the competent authority.[1210]

28. However, the Convention does not provide that enforcement proceedings are to be automatically stayed when a setting aside application is brought.[1211] As suggested by the *travaux préparatoires*, in appropriate circumstances, an award may be enforced despite a pending application to set it aside.[1212]

[1205] *Fertilizer Corp. of India (India) v. IDI Mgmt. Inc. (United States)*, District Court, Southern District of Ohio, United States of America, 9 June 1981, C-1-79-570.

[1206] *IPCO v. Nigerian National Petroleum Corp.*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 17 April 2008, [2008] EWHC 797 (Comm).

[1207] *Dowans Holding S.A. v. Tanzania Electric Supply Co. Ltd.*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 27 July 2011, [2011] EWHC 1957 (Comm); Rena Rico, *Searching for Standards: Suspension of Enforcement Proceedings under Article VI of the New York Convention*, 1 Asian Int'l Arb. J. 69, 79 (2005).

[1208] *Europcar Italia, S.p.A. v. Maiellano Tours*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 2 September 1998, 97-7224.

[1209] *Norsolor S. A. v. Pabalk Ticaret Limited Sirket*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 15 December 1981. See also *C.C.M. SULZER v. Société Maghrébienne de Génie Civil (SOMAGEC), Société des Anciens Etablissements Riad Sahyoun (S.A.E.R.S.) et M. Riad Sahyoun*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 17 February 1987, 86.4767. On the current position in France, see chapter of the Guide on article VI, para. 30.

[1210] *Spier v. Calzaturificio Tecnica S.p.A*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 29 June 1987, 663 F. Supp. 871.

[1211] Rena Rico, *Searching for Standards: Suspension of Enforcement Proceedings under Article VI of the New York Convention*, 1 Asian Int'l Arb. J. 69, 77 (2005); W. Michael Tupman, *Staying Enforcement of Arbitral Awards under the New York Convention*, 3 Arb. Int'l 209, 221 (1987).

[1212] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Seventeenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.17, p. 4.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

29. In accordance with the discretionary power granted to courts of Contracting States under article VI, courts maintain the discretion to enforce an arbitral award even if setting aside proceedings are pending in the country where the award was issued. For example, courts in the United States have more recently held that they are not required to stay an action "merely because an action is pending in the originating country"[1213] and that they "should not automatically stay enforcement proceedings on the ground that parallel proceedings are pending in the originating country".[1214] Similarly, the Supreme Court of New South Wales has held that Australian courts should not stay an action to enforce an arbitration agreement merely because an action to set aside the award is pending before the competent authority.[1215] In the words of the Supreme Court of New South Wales, "more must be established than that".[1216]

30. Similarly, in recent years, French courts have repeatedly refused to adjourn enforcement proceedings under article VI of the Convention. In the 2004 *Bargues* case, the Paris Court of Appeal held that the potential setting aside of the award in the country where it is rendered does not impact the existence of the award in a way that would prevent its recognition and enforcement in other national legal orders and, as a result, that article VI "is of no use in the context of the recognition and enforcement of an award".[1217]

b. Various factors considered by courts

31. Courts have been developing their own reasons in exercising their discretion and have considered a wide variety of factors when deciding whether to grant a request for adjournment. Those factors include the Convention's goal of facilitating the enforcement of arbitral awards and expediting dispute resolution, the likelihood of the party prevailing in the setting aside proceeding, the expected duration of the proceedings pending in the country where the award was issued, the potential hardship to parties, judicial efficiency and international comity.

32. Swedish and Australian courts have taken the view that the duration of annulment proceedings, as well as their chances of success, should be taken into account by a court deciding whether to adjourn enforcement proceedings under article VI.

[1213] *Sarhank Group v. Oracle Corporation*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 9 October 2002, 2002 WL 31268635, XXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 1043 (2003).

[1214] *MGM Productions Group, Inc. v. Aeroflot Russian Airlines*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 14 May 2003, 573 F. Supp. 2d 772, XXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 1271 (2003). See also *Alto Mar Girassol v. Lumbermens Mutual Casualty Company*, District Court, Northern District of Illinois Eastern Division, United States of America, 12 April 2005, 04 C 773.

[1215] *Hallen v. Angledal*, Supreme Court of New South Wales, Australia, 10 June 1999, 50055 of 1999.

[1216] *Id.*

[1217] *Société Bargues Agro Industries S.A. v. Société Young Pecan Company*, Court of Appeal of Paris, France, 10 June 2004, 2003/09894

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

German and Dutch courts have assessed the chances of success of annulment proceedings and weighed the interests of the parties when considering whether an adjournment is appropriate. A similar approach was followed by the Grand Court of the Cayman Islands in *Republic of Gabon v. Swiss Oil Corporation*. In this case, the Grand Court considered the duration and the probability of success of the annulment proceedings pending before the Paris Court of Appeal. In light of the expected short duration of the French proceedings and the fact that the "serious grounds" advanced by the applicant suggested that the application was not "merely a delaying tactic", the Grand Court decided to adjourn the enforcement proceedings. It held that that adjournment would not cause "any very substantial further hardship on the plaintiff [i.e., the Republic of Gabon]" and that "if this court were to render its decision before that of the Paris Court in this instance it would run the risk of giving free rein to enforcement of an award which in a few days' time might no longer provide a valid basis for its action."[1218] Similarly, the English High Court in *IPCO* found the following considerations to be relevant: whether the application before the court in the country where the arbitration took place is bona fide and not simply a delaying tactic, whether the application before the court in that country has at least a real (i.e., realistic) prospect of success, the extent of the delay occasioned by the potential adjournment and any resulting prejudice.[1219]

33. In the United States, the Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit Court provided a non-exhaustive list of factors to be considered when deciding an adjournment request in *Europcar Italia SpA v. Maeillano Tours Inc*. These factors include the general objective of arbitration (i.e., the expeditious resolution of disputes and the avoidance of protracted and expensive litigation), the status of the foreign proceedings and the estimated time for resolving those proceedings, whether the award sought to be enforced would receive greater scrutiny in the foreign proceedings under a less deferential standard of review, the characteristics of the foreign proceedings, a weighing of the possible hardship caused to the parties, and any other circumstances that could shift the balance in favour of or against adjournment.[1220]

[1218] *The Republic of Gabon v. Swiss Oil Corporation*, Grand Court, Cayman Islands, 17 June 1988, XIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 621 (1989).

[1219] *IPCO v. Nigeria* (NNPC), High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 27 April 2005, [2005] EWHC 726 (Comm).

[1220] *Europcar Italia, S.p.A. v. Maiellano Tours Inc*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 2 September 1998, 97-7224. Subsequent decisions rendered in the United States applied these factors in determining whether or not enforcement proceedings should be adjourned: see, e.g., *MGM Productions Group, Inc. v. Aeroflot Russian Airlines*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 14 May 2003, 573 F. Supp. 2d 772, XXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 127 (2003); *G. E. Transp. S.P.A. v. Republic of Albania*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 28 March 2011, 08-2042 (RMU); *DRC Inc. v. Republic of Honduras*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 10-0003(PLF).

34. A similar multifactor approach was adopted in Canada by the Supreme Court of British Columbia in *Powerex Corp. v. Alcan Inc.*[1221] In this case, the Supreme Court initially adjourned the proceedings after consideration of various factors, including whether the setting aside application in the United States was frivolous, whether an adjournment would inordinately delay the proceedings, and whether it would not be more convenient and efficient for a court in the United States to decide questions of domestic law. When the court in the United States dismissed the application to set aside the award, the decision was appealed by Alcan, and Powerex renewed its request for recognition and enforcement of the award. The Supreme Court of British Columbia held that the party seeking an adjournment must meet the threshold test of establishing that there is a "serious issue to be tried." In weighing the balance of convenience and irreparable harm, the court noted that it should consider a number of factors, including the estimated time to complete the case in the originating jurisdiction, whether the party opposing enforcement is "merely delaying the inevitable," whether a court in the originating jurisdiction has already refused to set aside the award, the availability of security and the possibility that the party opposing enforcement would hide or disperse its assets prior to enforcement, and the willingness of the party opposing enforcement to undertake diligent prosecution of the action in the originating jurisdiction.

c. Whether there are any prevailing factors to be considered by courts

35. Although courts tend to consider the same set of factors when deciding whether to adjourn enforcement proceedings, some of them are most commonly referred to and the decision to adjourn enforcement proceedings often depends in significant part on one or two of these factors.

36. Certain courts place significant weight on the estimated time required for annulment proceedings in the country where the award was issued. The Supreme Court of Victoria held that "the determinative factor is that the adjournment will be only for a relatively short time".[1222] Courts applying this factor have denied enforcement when the decision on the setting aside application was "years rather

[1221] *Powerex Corp. v. Alcan Inc.*, Supreme Court of British Columbia, Canada, 30 June 2004, 2004 BCSC 876. See also *Powerex Corp. v. Alcan Inc.*, Supreme Court of British Columbia, Canada, 10 July 2003, 2003 BCSC 1096.

[1222] *Toyo Engineering Corp v. John Holland Pty Ltd.*, Supreme Court of Victoria, Australia, 20 December 2000, 7565 of 2000. See also *Powerex Corp. v. Alcan Inc.*, Supreme Court of British Columbia, Canada, 10 July 2003, 2003 BCSC 1096.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

than days away",[1223] and granted it when the decision was expected within a matter of days or a couple of months.[1224]

37. Likelihood of success in the setting aside proceedings is also an important factor relied upon by courts in determining whether to stay enforcement proceedings.[1225]

38. In the United States, a survey of the relevant case law prior and subsequent to *Europcar* suggests that courts often grant or refuse adjournments depending primarily on their assessment of the chances of success of the setting aside proceedings in the country where the award was issued.[1226] A similar approach is found in other common law countries. In *Powerex Corp v. Alcan Inc.*, the Supreme Court of British Columbia emphasized the "possibility of success" factor in determining whether enforcement proceedings should be adjourned. Similarly, the Court of Appeal of England and Wales noted that one of the most important factors is "the strength of the argument that the award is invalid".[1227]

39. A number of courts require that the party opposing enforcement provide evidence of a reasonable chance of success of the application to set aside the award. When courts find that the proceedings to set aside the award are frivolous and dilatory, they will enforce the award in the belief that the chances of obtaining a judgment to set aside the award are remote.[1228]

40. Among the courts that have adjourned enforcement proceedings, the Supreme Court of Hong Kong held in *Hebei* that the party opposing enforcement had the burden of showing that a bona fide application had been made in the

[1223] *Far Eastern Shipping Co. v. AKP Sovcomflot*, High Court of Justice, Queen's Bench Division (Commercial Court), England and Wales, 14 November 1994, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 699 (1996).

[1224] See *The Republic of Gabon v. Swiss Oil Corporation*, Grand Court, Cayman Islands, 17 June 1988, XIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 621 (1989); *Toyo Engineering Corp v. John Holland Pty Ltd.*, Supreme Court of Victoria, Australia, 20 December 2000, 7565 of 2000.

[1225] Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 2876 (2009); Christoph Liebscher, *Article VI*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 438, 441 (R. Wolff ed. 2012).

[1226] See *Fertilizer Corp. of India v. IDI Mgmt. Inc.*, District Court, Southern District of Ohio, United States of America, 9 June 1981, 517 F. Supp. 948; *Spier v. Calzaturificio Tecnica S.p.A*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 29 June 1987, 663 F. Supp. 871; *Ukrvneshprom State Foreign Economic Enterprise v. Tradeway, Inc.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 11 March 1996, 95 Civ. 10279, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 958 (1997).

[1227] *Soleh Boneh International Ltd. v. Government of the Republic of Uganda and National Housing Corporation*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 12 March 1993, [1993] 2 Lloyd's Rep 208. See also *Inter-Arab Investment Guarantee Corporation v. Banque Arabe et Internationale d'Investissements*, Court of First Instance, Belgium, 25 January 1996; *Hallen v. Angledal*, Supreme Court of New South Wales, Australia, 10 June 1999, 50055 of 1999; *Dowans Holding S.A. v. Tanzania Electric Supply Co. Ltd.*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 27 July 2011, [2011] EWHC 1957 (Comm); Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 20 November 2003, 8 Sch 02/03.

[1228] Rena Rico, *Searching for Standards: Suspension of Enforcement Proceedings under Article VI of the New York Convention*, 1 Asian Int'l Arb. J. 69, 74 (2005).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Beijing court and that there were grounds on which the Beijing court could reasonably set aside the award. The party opposing enforcement did not, however, need to show that it was likely to succeed in the Beijing proceedings. On the facts of the case, the court adjourned the proceedings pending the outcome of the application before the Beijing court on the ground that there was *prima facie* evidence indicating that the setting aside application had some prospect of success.[1229] In *Powerex Corp v. Alcan Inc.*, the Supreme Court of British Columbia adjourned the enforcement proceedings on the ground that *inter alia* Alcan's action to set aside the award before the Oregon court was not frivolous and had an "arguable case which [was] not bound to fail".[1230] In *IPCO*, the English High Court of Justice adjourned enforcement proceedings on the ground that the setting aside application had a "realistic prospect of success".[1231] In *Toyo Engineering*, the Supreme Court of Victoria held that "it could not be stated with confidence that the impeachment application is unarguable" and, after noting the short expected duration of the setting aside proceedings, decided to adjourn the enforcement proceedings.[1232]

41. While applying a similar approach, a number of courts have refused to adjourn enforcement proceedings. For example, in *Inter-Arab Investment Guarantee Corporation v. Banque Arabe et Internationale d'investissements*, the Brussels Court of First Instance refused to adjourn proceedings, holding that the party opposing enforcement had not proven the existence of a "reasonable possibility of annulment".[1233] Similarly, the Supreme Court of New South Wales refused to adjourn enforcement proceedings on the ground that the party opposing enforcement failed to provide "some evidence to show that there is a *prima facie* or reasonably arguable case" to set aside the award in the country where it was issued.[1234] In Germany, the Higher Regional Court of Celle refused to adjourn proceedings as it did not appear that the party opposing enforcement had a "prevailing interest" and the "prospects of success" of the application to set aside the award were "entirely uncertain".[1235] In England, the High Court of Justice denied adjournment in *Far Eastern Shipping* on the ground that the "proceedings upon which the

[1229] *Hebei Import & Export Corp v. Polytek Engineering Co. Ltd.*, High Court in the Supreme Court of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, 1 November 1996, [1996] 3 HKC 725.

[1230] *Powerex Corp. v. Alcan Inc.*, Supreme Court of British Columbia, Canada, 10 July 2003, 2003 BCSC 1096.

[1231] *IPCO v. Nigeria (NNPC)*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 27 April 2005, [2005] EWHC 726 (Comm).

[1232] *Toyo Engineering Corp v. John Holland Pty Ltd.*, Supreme Court of Victoria, Australia, 20 December 2000, 7565 of 2000.

[1233] *Inter-Arab Investment Guarantee Corporation v. Banque Arabe et Internationale d'Investissements*, Court of First Instance, Belgium, 25 January 1996. This decision was upheld by the Brussels Court of Appeal: see *Inter-Arab Investment Guarantee Corporation v. Banque Arabe et Internationale d'Investissements*, Court of Appeal of Brussels, Belgium, 24 January 1997, XXII Y.B. Com. Arb. 643 (1997).

[1234] *Hallen v. Angledal*, Supreme Court of New South Wales, Australia, 10 June 1999, 50055 of 1999.

[1235] Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 20 November 2003, 8 Sch 02/03.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

defendants rely to justify their application for a stay afford no more than a remote and uncertain prospect of recovery at best."[1236]

42. A different approach has been adopted by some courts which have granted adjournments when the determination of the chances of success of a setting aside application involved issues of domestic law of the country where the application was pending. In *Construction Pioneers*, the United States District Court for the District of Columbia found that adjournment under article VI was proper as "for the court to decide this issue now, it would have to decide an intricate point of Ghana law that is more properly decided by a Ghana court." It held that "[i]f a final Ghanaian decision setting aside the Awards existed, the court would not be 'free as it sees fit to ignore [that] judgment'."[1237] This is based on the notion that domestic courts are "better situated" to resolve domestic legal issues.[1238] In the same vein, the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York stated that "the limited scope of review allowed under the Convention favors deference to proceedings in the originating country on the premise that a foreign court well versed in its own law is better suited to determine the validity of the award."[1239]

43. Certain commentators have argued that the appropriate standard for determining whether to adjourn enforcement proceedings under article VI of the Convention should not be the mere possibility or even the probability of inconsistent judgments, but rather a balancing of the potential harm to the parties.[1240] These commentators consider that the Convention refrains from stating that the operation of article VI depends upon the chances of success of the application to set aside the award and that, in light of the Convention's objective of facilitating and expediting the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards, the enforcing court retains independent discretion to either enforce or suspend enforcement of the award.

[1236] *Far Eastern Shipping Co. v. AKP Sovcomflot*, High Court of Justice, Queen's Bench Division (Commercial Court), England and Wales, 14 November 1994, XXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 699 (1996).

[1237] *CPConstruction Pioneers Baugesellschaft Anstalt v. The Government of the Republic Ghana, Ministry of Roads and Transport*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 12 August 2008, 1:04-01564(LFO); *Spier v. Calzaturificio Tecnica S.p.A*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 29 June 1987, 663 F. Supp. 871; *Powerex Corp. v. Alcan Inc.*, Supreme Court of British Columbia, Canada, 30 June 2004, 2004 BCSC 876.

[1238] *Consorcio Rive, S.A. de C.V. v. Briggs of Cancun, Inc., David Briggs Enterprises, Inc.*, District Court, Eastern District of Louisiana, United States of America, 26 January 2000, 99-2205, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 1115 (2000). See also *IPCO v. Nigeria (NNPC)*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 27 April 2005, [2005] EWHC 726 (Comm).

[1239] *Sarhank Group v. Oracle Corporation*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 9 October 2002, 2002 WL 31268635, XXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 1043 (2003).

[1240] Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 2876 (2009); Christoph Liebscher, *Article VI*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 438, 443 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); W. Michael Tupman, *Staying Enforcement of Arbitral Awards under the New York Convention*, 3 Arb. Int'l 209, 222 and 225 (1987).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

44. This approach has been endorsed in a number of decisions in which courts have balanced factors supporting adjournment against the Convention's main goal of facilitating and expediting the enforcement of foreign arbitral awards. In the words of the Federal Court of Australia, discretion must be weighed against the obligation of the Court to pay due regard to the objectives of the Act and "the spirit and intendment of the [Convention]".[1241] Similarly, United States courts have held that courts must exercise their discretion in determining whether to adjourn or stay the confirmation of an arbitral award "by balancing the Convention's policy in favor of confirming such award against the principle of international comity embraced by the Convention"[1242] and that the primary goal of the Convention to facilitate the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards should weigh heavily on the district courts' determination.[1243] In *AB Götaverken v. General National Maritime Transport Co.*, the Supreme Court of Sweden refused to adjourn enforcement proceedings pending the outcome of the judicial proceedings in France, "[h]aving regard to the general aim of the New York Convention [...] to facilitate the enforcement of foreign arbitral awards."[1244] The President of the District Court of Amsterdam issued a similar ruling.[1245]

45. This approach has been followed by a number of decisions applying a multi-factor approach—such as *Europcar Italia SpA v. Maeillano Tours Inc* (and subsequent decisions in the United States which considered the same factors)[1246]—which invites courts to balance various factors in order to ascertain whether the rights of the parties are better preserved and protected through adjournment or enforcement.

C. The decision to order suitable security

46. A court that adjourns enforcement proceedings pursuant to article VI of the Convention "may also [...] order the other party to give suitable security". The

[1241] *ESCO Corp v. Bradken Resources Pty Ltd.*, Federal Court, Australia, 9 August 2011, [2011] FCA 905.

[1242] *Jorf Lasfar Energy Company, S.C.A. v. AMCI Export Corporation*, District Court, Western District of Pennsylvania, United States of America, 22 December 2005, 05-0423; *Alto Mar Girassol v. Lumbermens Mutual Casualty Company*, District Court, Northern District of Illinois Eastern Division, United States of America, 12 April 2005, 04 C 773.

[1243] *Europcar Italia, S.p.A. v. Maiellano Tours*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 2 September 1998, 97-7224.

[1244] *AB Götaverken v. General National Maritime Transport Company (GMTC), Libya and others*, Supreme Court, Sweden, 13 August 1979, VI Y.B. Com. Arb. 237 (1981).

[1245] *Southern Pacific Properties v. Arab Republic of Egypt*, President of the District Court of Amsterdam, Netherlands, 12 July 1984, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 487 (1985).

[1246] See, e.g., *China National Chartering Corp. et al. v. Pactrans Air & Sea Inc*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 13 November 2009, 06 Civ. 13107 (LAK); *DRC Inc. v. Republic of Honduras*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 28 March 2011, 10-0003 (PLF); *Alto Mar Girassol v. Lumbermens Mutual Casualty Company*, District Court, Northern District of Illinois Eastern Division, United States of America, 12 April 2005, 04 C 773.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Convention offers little guidance as to how this provision is to be applied, and instead provides the courts with a wide discretion to determine when to require security and in what amount and form.

47. The purpose of this provision is threefold. First, it seeks to avoid dissipation and concealment of assets pending the setting aside proceedings in the country where the award was rendered and thus guarantees that the award may be successfully enforced if the setting aside action is dismissed.[1247] Second, it provides an incentive to the party opposing enforcement to proceed with its application to set aside or suspend the award "as expeditiously as possible",[1248] thereby preventing delays.[1249] Third, it provides the party seeking to enforce the award with adequate assurances of prompt payment once the dispute is resolved.[1250]

a. Relationship between adjournment and security

48. Notwithstanding the discretionary power granted to courts to adjourn enforcement proceedings and order security, most courts only consider ordering the party opposing enforcement to post security in situations where they decide to adjourn enforcement proceedings. As a result, adjournment is sometimes considered as a pre-condition for the ordering of security.[1251]

49. Under article VI, only the party opposing enforcement can be ordered to provide security. In one reported case, a court decided that it was "justified that the claimants give security [...] for the case of anticipatory enforcement."[1252] Several years later, another court in the same jurisdiction held that the Convention offers no basis to order security from the party seeking enforcement.[1253] In 1993, a court

[1247] See *Soleh Boneh International Ltd. v. Government of the Republic of Uganda and National Housing Corporation*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 12 March 1993, [1993] 2 Lloyd's Rep 208; *Alto Mar Girassol v. Lumbermens Mutual Casualty Company*, District Court, Northern District of Illinois Eastern Division, United States of America, 12 April 2005, 04 C 773. See also Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 2877 (2009).

[1248] *Continental Transfert Technique Ltd. v. Federal Government of Nigeria*, High Court, England and Wales, 30 March 2010, [2010] EWHC 780 (Comm); *Soleh Boneh International Ltd. v. Government of the Republic of Uganda and National Housing Corporation*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 12 March 1993, [1993] 2 Lloyd's Rep 208.

[1249] *Europcar Italia S.p.A. v. Alba Tours International Inc.*, Court of Justice of Ontario, Canada, 21 January 1997, CLOUT Case 366, XXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 311 (2001).

[1250] *Jorf Lasfar Energy Company, S.C.A. v. AMCI Export Corporation*, District Court, Western District of Pennsylvania, United States of America, 22 December 2005, 05-0423.

[1251] *Gater Assets Ltd. v. Nak Naftogaz Ukrainiy*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 17 October 2007, [2007] EWCA Civ 988; *Yukos Oil Co. v. Dardana Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 18 April 2002, [2002] EWCA Civ 543.

[1252] *Henri Lièvremont and v. Adolphe Cominassi, Maatschappij voor Industriele Research en Ontwikkeling B.V.*, President of Rechtbank, Court of First Instance of Zutphen, Netherlands, 9 December 1981, VII Y.B. Com. Arb. 399 (1982).

[1253] *Southern Pacific Properties v. Arab Republic of Egypt*, President of the District Court of Amsterdam, Netherlands, 12 July 1984, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 487 (1985).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

in Germany held that pursuant to article VI of the Convention, a court may only order the party opposing enforcement to provide adequate security, but not the party seeking enforcement.[1254] Since then, it appears that courts have consistently refused to order the party seeking enforcement to provide security as a condition for enforcing the award.[1255]

50. The fact that courts of Contracting States only consider whether to order security when contemplating adjournment does not mean that those courts should always order the party opposing enforcement to provide suitable security when an adjournment is granted.

51. In practice, courts often order security when adjourning proceedings. As stated by the Court of Appeal of England and Wales, security is the price to pay for adjournment and serves to protect the party seeking enforcement.[1256]

52. In *IPCO*, the English High Court of Justice held that it had jurisdiction, pursuant to section 103(5) of the 1996 Arbitration Act (implementing article VI of the Convention), to make adjournment of the decision on the enforcement of the award conditional upon the giving of security.[1257] In the United States, courts also require the party opposing enforcement to provide suitable security as a condition for granting an adjournment.[1258] In *Nedagro*, the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York refused to require the posting of security given that the defendant had already provided "suitable security" by attaching property in the amount due.[1259] In the Netherlands, the President of the District Court of Amsterdam denied a request for adjournment on the ground that the defendant "had not shown any readiness to give suitable security".[1260]

[1254]Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Frankfurt, Germany, 10 November 1993, 27 W 57/93. See also *Powerex Corp., formerly British Columbia Power Exchange Corporation v. Alcan Inc., formerly Alcan Aluminum Ltd.*, Court of Appeal of British Columbia, Canada, 4 October 2004, 2004 BCCA 504.

[1255]See, e.g., *Gater Assets Ltd. v. Nak Naftogaz Ukrainiy*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 17 October 2007, [2007] EWCA Civ 988; *Yukos Oil Co. v. Dardana Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 18 April 2002, [2002] EWCA Civ 543.

[1256]*Yukos Oil Co. v. Dardana Ltd*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 18 April 2002, [2002] EWCA Civ 543.

[1257]*IPCO v. Nigeria (NNPC)*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 27 April 2005, [2005] EWHC 726 (Comm).

[1258]See, e.g., *Alto Mar Girassol v. Lumbermens Mutual Casualty Company*, District Court, Northern District of Illinois, Eastern Division, United States of America, 12 April 2005, 04 C 773; *Nedagro B.V. v. Zao Konversbak*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 21 January 2003, 02 Civ. 3946 (HB); *Skandia America Reinsurance Corporation v. Caja Nacional de Ahorro y Seguros*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 21 May 1997, 96 Civ. 2301 (KMW), XXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 956 (1998); *Consorcio Rive, S.A. de C.V., Briggs of Cancun, Inc., David Briggs Enterprises, Inc.*, District Court, Eastern District of Louisiana, United States of America, 26 January 2000, 99-2205, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 1115 (2000).

[1259]*Nedagro B.V. v. Zao Konversbak*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 21 January 2003, 02 Civ. 3946 (HB).

[1260]*Southern Pacific Properties v. Arab Republic of Egypt*, President of the District Court of Amsterdam, Netherlands, 12 July 1984, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 487 (1985).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

53. In cases where the courts have found adjournments to be conditional on the posting of security,[1261] courts have held that if the party opposing enforcement failed to provide the ordered security within the timeframe provided by the court, the court may decide to proceed with the enforcement.[1262] As stated by the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York in *Spier*: "[I]f a party such as [the defendant] fails to post security, then it would seem that the proper remedy would be to deny its application for an adjournment of the decision."[1263]

54. Courts in Australia and Canada have also ordered security when adjourning enforcement proceedings.[1264] In *Toyo*, the Supreme Court of Victoria held that the adjournment "will be subject to an undertaking by [the party opposing enforcement] that it will diligently prosecute its application in Singapore and, further, subject to a condition that suitable security be given by it for the unpaid amount of the award including interest to the adjourned date of the enforcement application."[1265]

55. This approach finds some support in the *travaux préparatoires* which state that adjournment may be granted "only on the condition that the party opposing enforcement deposits a suitable security."[1266] This view is shared by some commentators who consider that, in order to safeguard the rights of the party seeking enforcement, it should always be a condition of a stay that the party opposing enforcement provides security.[1267]

56. Still, in light of the permissive language of article VI, which provides that courts may, within the ambit of their discretion, decide whether or not to order security, a number of courts have, as is evidenced below, decided to adjourn enforcement proceedings without ordering security.

[1261] *Consorcio Rive, S.A. de C.V. v. Briggs of Cancun, Inc., David Briggs Enterprises, Inc.*, District Court, Eastern District of Louisiana, United States of America, 26 January 2000, 99-2205, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 1115 (2000).

[1262] *Ingaseosas International Co. v. Aconcagua Investing Ltd.*, Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, United States of America, 5 July 2012, 11-10914; *Skandia America Reinsurance Corporation v. Caja Nacional de Ahorro y Seguros*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 21 May 1997, 96 Civ. 2301 (KMW), XXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 956 (1998).

[1263] *I. Martin Spier v. Calzaturifico Tecnica S.p.A.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 12 September 1988, 1988 WL 96839.

[1264] *Toyo Engineering Corp v. John Holland Pty Ltd.*, Supreme Court of Victoria, Australia, 20 December 2000, 7565 of 2000. See also *Powerex Corp. v. Alcan Inc.*, Supreme Court of British Columbia, Canada, 30 June 2004, 2004 BCSC 876.

[1265] *Toyo Engineering Corp v. John Holland Pty Ltd.*, Supreme Court of Victoria, Australia, 20 December 2000, 7565 of 2000.

[1266] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Record of the Seventeenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.17, p. 4.

[1267] Gary B. Born, International Commercial Arbitration 2877 (2009); W. Michael Tupman, *Staying Enforcement of Arbitral Awards under the New York Convention*, 3 Arb. Int'l 209, 223 (1987).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

b. Factors considered by courts in deciding whether to order "suitable security"

57. In deciding whether to order that the party opposing enforcement give security, courts usually consider various factors, including the likelihood of success of the petition to set aside or suspend the award, the likelihood that assets will still be available if enforcement is delayed, and the relative hardship caused to the parties by the order.

58. English courts take into account the likelihood that the award will be set aside in the country where it was issued and that assets will still be available if the court decides to adjourn the enforcement proceedings. In *Soleh Boneh*, the Court of Appeal of England and Wales held that two important factors must be considered: the strength of the argument that the award is invalid and the "ease or difficulty of enforcement of the award".[1268] As to the strength of the award, the court stated that "[i]f the award is manifestly invalid, there should be an adjournment and no order for security; if it is manifestly valid, there should either be an order for immediate enforcement, or else an order for substantial security." A similar approach was adopted in *APIS AS v. Fantazia*.[1269] In *IPCO*, the Court of Appeal overturned the lower court's decision ordering security on the basis that there was little risk of dissipation of assets and that the party opposing enforcement had a strong case in the setting aside proceedings.[1270]

59. Similarly, the High Court of Hong Kong considered the same factors in *Karaha Bodas Co. v. Perusahaan Minyak Dan Bumi Negara (Pertamina)*. After noting that the uncertain merits of Pertamina's case "appear [...] to weigh in favour of KBC's application for security", the High Court turned to the difficulty of enforcement and found that requiring Pertamina to pay a substantial amount in the short period of time remaining before the enforcement hearing in Hong Kong could have a "seriously adverse and unnecessarily unjust effect on Pertamina's position", while the absence of security would have "little adverse effect on KBC's position in the Hong Kong litigation" given Pertamina's substantial assets throughout the world. Accordingly, the High Court refused to order Pertamina to give security.[1271] In *Hebei*, the Supreme Court of Hong Kong dismissed the application to order security on the ground that the defendant was a "substantially local company with

[1268] *Soleh Boneh International Ltd. v. Government of the Republic of Uganda and National Housing Corporation*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 12 March 1993, [1993] 2 Lloyd's Rep 208.

[1269] *Apis AS v. Fantazia Kereskedelmi KFT*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 21 September 2000, [2001] 1 All ER (Comm).

[1270] *IPCO v. Nigeria (NNPC)*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 27 April 2005, [2005] EWHC 726 (Comm).

[1271] *Karaha Bodas Co. LLC v. Perusahaan Pertambangan Minyak Dan Gas Bumi Negara—Pertamina*, High Court of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, Hong Kong, 20 December 2002, XXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 752 (2003).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

ample assets and that there was no reason to suppose that any risk existed for the plaintiff to be protected by an order of security."[1272]

60. In the Cayman Islands, the Grand Court declined to order security in light of the "impracticability" of requiring the effective provision of security by the defendant within the short period of time remaining before the decision of the Paris Court of Appeal in the setting aside proceedings.[1273]

61. Courts in the United States do not assess the likelihood of the award being set aside when determining whether to order security, but rather focus on the effect a security order would have on the parties. In *Jorf*, the District Court for the Western District of Pennsylvania refused to order that the defendant give security on the ground that while there was no indication that the plaintiff had suffered financial hardship as a result of its inability to immediately enforce the award (notwithstanding that it had gone nearly a year without being able to access the money owed under the award), the security order would cause "real harm" to the defendant.[1274]

62. Certain courts in the United States have assessed whether a sovereign state or its instrumentalities could be ordered to give security. In 1997, the District Court for the Southern District of New York found that article VI of the Convention allowed it to require sovereigns to post pre-judgment security if they moved to set aside or suspend an arbitral award.[1275] In a recent decision, the District Court for the District of Columbia refused to require the Republic of Honduras "a sovereign state that presumably is solvent and will comply with legitimate orders issued by courts in this country or in Honduras" to post any security.[1276]

c. *Form and amount of the security*

63. Courts determine at their own discretion the amount and form of the security to be posted by the party opposing enforcement.

[1272] *Hebei Import & Export Corp v. Polytek Engineering Co. Ltd.*, High Court, Supreme Court of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, 1 November 1996, [1996] 3 HKC 725.

[1273] *The Republic of Gabon v. Swiss Oil Corporation*, Grand Court, Cayman Island, 17 June 1988, XIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 621 (1989).

[1274] *Jorf Lasfar Energy Company, S.C.A. v. AMCI Export Corporation*, District Court, Western District of Pennsylvania, United States of America, 22 December 2005, 05-0423. See also *Alto Mar Girassol v. Lumbermens Mutual Casualty Company*, District Court, Northern District of Illinois Eastern Division, United States of America, 12 April 2005, 04 C 773.

[1275] *Skandia America Reinsurance Corporation v. Caja Nacional de Ahorro y Seguros*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 21 May 1997, 96 Civ. 2301 (KMW), XXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 956 (1998).

[1276] *DRC Inc. v. Republic of Honduras*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 28 March 2011, 10-0003 (PLF).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

64. In most jurisdictions, courts order defendants to provide either a bank guarantee,[1277] a deposit of a given amount in an escrow account,[1278] a bond or other form of equally satisfactory security.[1279] As noted by a commentator, courts have expressed a preference for cash paid into escrow accounts or internationally recognized instruments of payment.[1280]

65. In *Spier*, the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York refused to allow the Italian party opposing enforcement to post a guarantee in an Italian Bank, holding that "the party seeking to enforce the award is entitled to security giving him a direct claim against either property or a guarantor resident in the country of enforcement", whereas the security suggested by the party opposing enforcement "could only be issued under and subject to Italian law" and would therefore be subject to "the inherent risk of further proceedings in Italy". The District Court therefore suggested that the party opposing enforcement either post a bond or issue "an irrevocable letter of credit from a bank located in New York".[1281]

66. In determining the amount of the security, courts have adopted different approaches which have taken into account the expected value of the award, the solvency of the party opposing enforcement, and the disincentive effect the security would have on a party considering dilatory tactics.[1282] Courts often order security in the amount of the entire award and require that any interest made on the security go to the party seeking enforcement so as to protect its economic interests.[1283]

67. In England, courts rarely grant security in the full amount of the award when the award is likely to be set aside by the competent authority in the country where it was issued.[1284] As stated by the Court of Appeal in *Soleh*, "if the award is mani-

[1277] *Apis AS v. Fantazia Kereskedelmi KFT*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 21 September 2000, [2001] 1 All ER (Comm).

[1278] *The Republic of Gabon v. Swiss Oil Corporation*, Grand Court, Cayman Islands, 17 June 1988, XIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 621 (1989).

[1279] *Consorcio Rive, S.A. de C.V., Briggs of Cancun, Inc., David Briggs Enterprises, Inc.*, District Court, Eastern District of Louisiana, United States of America, 26 January 2000, 99-2205, XXV Y.B. Com. Arb. 1115 (2000).

[1280] Nicola C. Port, Jessica R. Simonoff et al., *Article VI*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on The New York Convention 415, 435 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

[1281] *I. Martin Spier v. Calzaturifico Tecnica S.p.A.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 12 September 1988, 1988 WL 96839.

[1282] Nicola C. Port, Jessica R. Simonoff et al., *Article VI*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A global Commentary on The New York Convention 415, 435 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds, 2010).

[1283] *Toyo Engineering Corp v. John Holland Pty Ltd.*, Supreme Court of Victoria, Australia, 20 December 2000, 7565 of 2000; *Alto Mar Girassol v. Lumbermens Mutual Casualty Company*, District Court, Northern District of Illinois Eastern Division, United States of America, 12 April 2005, 04 C 773; *Europcar Italia S.p.A. v. Alba Tours International Inc.*, Court of Justice of Ontario, Canada, 21 January 1997, CLOUT Case 366, XXVI Y.B. Com. Arb. 311 (2001).

[1284] *Soleh Boneh International Ltd. v. Government of the Republic of Uganda and National Housing Corporation*, Court of Appeal, England and Wales, 12 March 1993, [1993] 2 Lloyd's Rep 208.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

festly valid, there should either be an order for immediate enforcement, or else an order for substantial security." Similarly, the Federal Court of Australia, referring to *Soleh*, ordered the party opposing enforcement to provide "substantial security".[1285] In *IPCO*, the English High Court of Justice ordered security in the amount of a percentage of the award and the immediate payment of the amount that was "indisputably due".[1286]

68. As to the timeframe for posting security, reported cases suggest that courts usually order the relevant party to post security within a 20-30 day period.[1287] This period may be longer depending on the form of the security.[1288]

[1285] *ESCO Corp v. Bradken Resources Pty Ltd.*, Federal Court, Australia, 9 August 2011, NSD 876 of 2011.

[1286] *IPCO v. Nigeria (NNPC)*, High Court of Justice, England and Wales, 27 April 2005, [2005] EWHC 726 (Comm).

[1287] *Skandia America Reinsurance Corporation v. Caja Nacional de Ahorro y Seguros*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 21 May 1997, 96 Civ. 2301 (KMW), XXIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 956 (1998); *Jorf Lasfar Energy Company, S.C.A. v. AMCI Export Corporation*, District Court, Western District of Pennsylvania, Unites States of America, 22 December 2005, 05-0423; *IPCO v. Nigeria (NNPC)*, High Court, England and Wales, 27 April 2005, [2005] EWHC 726 (Comm).

[1288] See *Martin Spier v. Calzaturifico Tecnica S.p.A.*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 12 September 1988, 1988 WL 96839: in this case, the Court directed the defendant to issue a letter of credit within ninety days.

Article VII

1. The provisions of the present Convention shall not affect the validity of multilateral or bilateral agreements concerning the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards entered into by the Contracting States nor deprive any interested party of any right he may have to avail himself of an arbitral award in the manner and to the extent allowed by the law or the treaties of the country where such award is sought to be relied upon.

2. The Geneva Protocol on Arbitration Clauses of 1923 and the Geneva Convention on the Execution of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 1927 shall cease to have effect between Contracting States on their becoming bound and to the extent that they become bound, by this Convention.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article VII as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704 and annex.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822, annexes I-II; E/2822/Add.1, annex I.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/Conf. 26/7; E/Conf. 26/L.16; E/Conf. 26/L.44.

Summary records

- Summary Records of the Eighteenth, Nineteenth and Twentieth Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR.18; E/CONF.26/SR.19; E/CONF.26/SR.20.
- Summary Record of the Eighth Meeting of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.8. See also E/AC.42/4/Rev.1.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Article VII (1)

Introduction

1. Article VII (1) governs the relationship of the New York Convention with other treaties and domestic law and is considered to be one of the cornerstones of the Convention.[1289] By stipulating that the Convention shall not affect the validity of other treaties concerning the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards, and facilitating the application of rules on recognition and enforcement that may be more liberal than the Convention, article VII (1) ensures the Convention's compatibility with other international instruments as well as its durability, with the result that foreign arbitral awards are recognized and enforced to the greatest extent possible.

2. By virtue of article VII (1), Contracting States will not be in breach of the Convention by enforcing arbitral awards pursuant to provisions of domestic laws or treaties that are more favourable to enforcement. This reflects the notion that the New York Convention sets a "ceiling", or the maximum level of control, which national courts of the Contracting States may exert over the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards.[1290]

3. Article VII (1) was based on the text of article 5 of the 1927 Geneva Convention, which granted an interested party the right to avail itself of an arbitral award in the manner and to the extent allowed by the law or treaties of the State where the award was sought to be relied upon.[1291]

4. The drafters of the New York Convention built on article 5 of the 1927 Geneva Convention by adding the rule that the provisions of the Convention shall not affect the validity of multilateral or bilateral agreements concerning the recognition

[1289]One commentator has described this provision as "the treasure, the ingenious idea" of the New York Convention. See Philippe Fouchard, *Suggestions pour accroître l'efficacité internationale des sentences arbitrales*, 1998 Rev. Arb. 653, 663.

[1290]See Philippe Fouchard, *La portée internationale de l'annulation de la sentence arbitrale dans le pays d'origine*, 1997 Rev. Arb. 329; Emmanuel Gaillard, *Enforcement of Awards Set Aside in the Country of Origin: The French Experience*, in Improving the Efficiency of Arbitration Agreements and Awards: 40 Years of Application of the New York Convention, ICCA Congress Series No. 9, 505 (A.J. van den Berg ed., 1998); Emmanuel Gaillard, *The Urgency of Not Revising the New York Convention*, in 50 Years of the New York Convention: ICCA International Arbitration Conference, ICCA Congress Series No. 14, 689 (A.J. van den Berg ed., 2009).

[1291]For the legislative history of article VII (1) of the New York Convention and article 5 of the 1927 Geneva Convention, see Gerald H. Pointon, *The Origins of Article VII.1 of the New York Convention 1958*, in Liber Amicorum en l'honneur de Serge Lazareff 499 (L. Lévy, Y. Derains eds., 2011).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

and enforcement of awards entered into by the Contracting States.[1292] This first part of article VII (1) has been referred to as "the compatibility provision". The second part of article VII (1), which allows an interested party to rely on a more favourable treaty or domestic law concerning recognition or enforcement instead of the Convention, has become widely known as the "more-favourable-right" provision.[1293]

5. While it may be useful for certain analytical purposes to bisect the paragraph into two parts, article VII (1), when read as a whole, enshrines the notion of "more favourable right". The first part of article VII (1) is merely a precursor to the second part, confirming that the validity of other treaties is not affected by the Convention, such that they can be relied upon by an interested party if more favourable. Thus, article VII (1) ensures that whenever the New York Convention proves to be less favourable than the provisions of another treaty or law of the country where recognition or enforcement is sought by a party seeking "to avail himself of an arbitral award", the more favourable rules shall prevail over the rules of the New York Convention.

Analysis

A. General principles

a. Meaning of "interested party"

6. Article VII (1) provides that, in addition to the New York Convention, any "interested party" shall not be deprived of the right to rely on a more favourable domestic law or treaty.

7. A Swiss court has confirmed that the term "interested party" refers only to the party seeking enforcement of an award, and not to the party opposing enforcement.[1294] In a case where an Italian party sought enforcement of an arbitral award against a Swiss party, the Zurich Court of First Instance rejected the argument of the Swiss party that it was, in application of article VII (1), entitled to rely on the

[1292] *Travaux préparatoires*, Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, E/AC.42/4/Rev.1, p. 15.

[1293] Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 81 (1981); Emmanuel Gaillard, *The Relationship of the New York Convention with other Treaties and with Domestic Law*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 69, 70 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

[1294] *Italian party v. Swiss company*, Bezirksgericht, Zurich, Switzerland, 14 February 2003.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

more stringent conditions of the Swiss-Italian bilateral treaty on the Recognition and Enforcement of Judgments of 1933 to resist enforcement of the award. In the words of the Court, "the more-favourable-right principle does not provide the party opposing enforcement with further grounds for refusal than are listed in the Convention."

8. As leading commentators have noted, allowing a respondent to assert the more stringent conditions of another law or treaty would run counter to the pro-enforcement basis of the New York Convention.[1295]

9. According to the *travaux préparatoires* to the New York Convention, an "interested party" may also be a Contracting State. During the negotiation of the Convention, the State delegates considered that to expressly stipulate this eventuality would be superfluous, as it was self-evident from the text of article VII (1).[1296] At the date of this Guide, there is, however, no publicly available case law where a State has sought to rely on article VII (1).

b. Subject matter of more favourable right

10. Article VII (1) refers without restriction to "any right" allowed by the laws or the treaties of the country where such award is sought to be relied upon. The German Federal Court of Justice has confirmed that, in application of article VII (1), an enforcing court may take into account the domestic law's conflict-of-laws rules, which may result in the application of a foreign law more favourable to recognition and enforcement than the New York Convention.[1297]

c. Party request not necessary

11. Article VII (1) provides that the Convention shall not deprive any "interested party" from "availing" itself of an arbitral award.

[1295] Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 333-34 (1981); Emmanuel Gaillard, *The Relationship of the New York Convention with other Treaties and with Domestic Law*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 69, 74-75 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008).

[1296] *Travaux préparatoires*, Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, E/AC.42/4/Rev.1, p. 15.

[1297] Bundesgerichtshof, Germany, III ZB 18/05, 21 September 2005, SchiedsVZ 2005, 306, where the application of German conflict-of-laws rules via article VII (1) of the Convention directed the Court to apply Dutch law, which contained more liberal formal requirements for an arbitration agreement than those under article II of the Convention.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

12. Most courts have adopted the view that an interested party need not explicitly request recognition or enforcement on the basis of laws or treaties that are more favourable to enforcement.[1298] As a court will not be in breach of the New York Convention by applying more liberal rules on recognition and enforcement, it may rely on article VII (1) of its own motion. The French Court of Cassation, accordingly, has stated that "[t]he judge cannot refuse enforcement when its own national system permits it, and [...] he should, even *sua sponte*, research the matter if such is the case."[1299]

d. Multiple enforcement regimes permissible

13. In certain decisions, German courts have considered that a party seeking to rely on another treaty or domestic law by virtue of article VII (1) must rely on it in its entirety, to the exclusion of the New York Convention.[1300] According to these decisions, it would not be permissible for a party to base a request for enforcement on the Convention and, at the same time, rely on the more liberal formal requirements for an arbitration agreement under German law.

14. A view advanced by a number of other German courts[1301] is that the pro-enforcement policy of the Convention would permit an interested party to select the more favourable rules and combine them with the provisions of the New York Convention.[1302] For instance, a Higher Regional Court has enforced an award pursuant to procedural requirements under German domestic law, which are more favourable than article IV of the Convention, while applying article V of the Convention in respect of possible grounds for refusal to enforce.[1303] A court in the United States of America has also granted enforcement to a foreign arbitral award

[1298] *Société Pabalk Ticaret Sirketi v. Société Anonyme Norsolor*, Court of Cassation, France, 83-11.355, 9 October 1984, 1985 Rev. Arb. 431, with English translation in 24 I.L.M. 360 (1985). German courts have adopted the same view. See Bundergerichtshof, Germany, III ZB 50/05, 23 February 2006, SchiedsVZ 2006, 161. The Swiss Federal Supreme Court has deviated from this view, without discussion. *Sudan Oil Seeds Co. Ltd. (U.K.) v. Tracomin S.A. (Switz.)* Federal Supreme Court, Switzerland, 5 November 1985, Arrêts du Tribunal Fédéral (1985) 111 Ib 253.

[1299] *Société Pabalk Ticaret Sirketi v. Société Anonyme Norsolor*, Court of Cassation, France, 83-11.355, 9 October 1984, 1985 Rev. Arb.431, with English translation in 24 I.L.M. 360 (1985).

[1300] Bundesgerichtshof, Germany, III ZB 18/05, 21 September 2005; Bundesgerichtshof, Germany, III ZB 50/05, 23 February 2006; Bundesgerichtshof, Germany, III ZB 68/02, 25 September 2003. See also Albert Jan van den Berg, *The German Arbitration Act 1998 and the New York Convention 1958*, in Law of International Business and Dispute Settlement in the 21st Century—Liber Amicorum Karl-Heinz Bockstiegel 783 (R. Briner et al. eds., 2001).

[1301] For instance, Oberlandesgericht[OLG] Celle, 8 Sch 06/06, 31 May 2007; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Karlsruhe, 9 Sch 02/07, 14 September 2007; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Köln, Germany, 9 Sch 01-03, 23 April 2004; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 34 Sch 31/06, 23 February 2007.

[1302] Julian Lew, Loukas A. Mistelis, Comparative International Commercial Arbitration 697-98 (2003); Fouchard Gaillard Goldman on International Commercial Arbitration (E. Gaillard, J. Savage eds., 1999), 350.

[1303] Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Köln, Germany, 9 Sch 01-03, 23 April 2004.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

by combining elements of the New York Convention and more favourable domestic law.[1304]

15. Furthermore, as described at para. 17 below, the Swiss Federal Supreme Court has held that where competing legal provisions concerning recognition and enforcement apply to the enforcement of an arbitral award, precedence should be given to "the provision that allows for making such recognition and enforcement easier," thus implicitly accepting a combined application of two systems.[1305]

B. Interaction of the Convention with other treaties

16. Certain arbitral awards or agreements may fall under the field of application of the New York Convention as well as the field of application of a multilateral or bilateral treaty. Article VII (1) provides the basic rule that the Convention shall not affect the validity of multilateral or bilateral treaties concerning the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards entered into by the Contracting States to the Convention, and that an interested party may rely on those treaties if they are more favourable to enforcement than the Convention. This is in keeping with the broader objective of the New York Convention to provide for the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards and agreements whenever possible, either on the basis of its own provisions or those of another instrument.

17. As the Swiss Federal Supreme Court has confirmed, article VII (1) thus derogates from the rules that normally govern the application of conflicting provisions of treaties, namely that a later legal rule prevails over a prior inconsistent legal rule ("*lex posterior derogat legi priori*") and that wherever two or more norms deal with the same subject matter, priority should be given to the norm that is more specific ("*lex specialis derogat legi generali*"). As the Court explained, the Convention replaces these rules with the principle of maximum effectiveness ("*règle d'efficacité maximale*") by providing that the instrument which prevails is neither the more recent nor the more specific, but instead that which is the more favourable to the enforcement of the foreign arbitral award. In the words of the Court, "[t]his solution corresponds to the so-called rule of maximum effectiveness [...]. According to this rule, in case of discrepancies between provisions in international conventions regarding the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards, preference will be given to the provision allowing or making such recognition and enforcement easier, either because of more liberal substantive conditions or because of a simpler procedure. This rule is in conformity with the aim of bilateral or multilateral

[1304] *Chromalloy Aeroservices v. Arab Republic of Egypt*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 31 July 1996, 94-2339.

[1305] *Denysiana S.A. v. Jassica S.A.*, Federal Supreme Court, Switzerland, March 14, 1984, Arrêts du Tribunal Fédéral 110 Ib 191, 194.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

conventions in this matter, which is to facilitate, as much as possible, the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards."[1306]

18. While the provisions of the New York Convention rarely compete with other international instruments concerning recognition and enforcement, where courts have been faced with such conflicts, they have typically resolved them under the more-favourable-right provision under article VII (1).

a. European Convention of 1961

19. The European Convention on International Commercial Arbitration (done in Geneva, 21 April 1961) is one of the few regional instruments containing more liberal rules governing the arbitral process than the New York Convention. It is the first international instrument to treat international arbitration as a whole, and consequently to provide rules governing all of its various stages. As of the date of this Guide, 32 States have signed the European Convention.[1307]

20. Under the European Convention, the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards is considered only very indirectly.[1308] Accordingly, where an arbitration agreement or award falls within the field of application of both the European Convention and the New York Convention, courts have correctly considered that the provisions of the New York Convention concerning enforcement complement the provisions of the European Convention and that they need not apply the more-favourable-right provision at article VII (1). For instance, when considering an application for the enforcement of a foreign arbitral award, a Spanish court applied both instruments, noting that "the European Convention concerns the applicable law and the jurisdiction of judicial authorities and arbitrators, whereas the New York Convention concerns the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards."[1309]

[1306] *Id.* Courts in Spain have also endorsed that article VII (1) follows the principle of maximum effectiveness. See *Actival Internacional S.A. v. Conservas El Pilar S.A.*, Tribunal Supremo, Spain, 16 April 1996, 3868/1992; *Unión de Cooperativas Agrícolas Epis-Centre v. La Palentina S.A.*, Tribunal Supremo, Spain, 17 February 1998, 3587/1996, 2977/1996; *Delta Cereales España S.L. v. Barredo Hermanos S.A.*, Tribunal Supremo, Spain, 6 October 1998.

[1307] For the current status of the European Convention, see the United Nations Treaty Collection, http://treaties.un.org/

[1308] Pursuant to its article I, the European Convention applies to "arbitration agreements concluded for the purpose of settling disputes from international trade between physical legal persons having, when concluded the agreement, their habitual place of residence or their seat in different Contracting States" and to "arbitral procedures and awards based on" such agreements. Its application thus differs from that of the New York Convention in two respects: (i) the European Convention applies only to disputes arising from international trade; and (ii) the European Convention requires that the parties to the arbitration agreement come from different Contracting States. The scope of application of the New York Convention contains neither of these two requirements and is thus broader.

[1309] *Nobulk Cargo Services Ltd. v. Compania Española de Laminación S.A.*, Tribunal Supremo, Spain, 27 February 1991. See also the same view expressed by French courts in *Société Européenne d'Etudes et d'Entreprises (S.E.E.E.) v. République Socialiste Fédérale de Yougoslavie*, Court of Appeal, Rouen, France, 13 November 1984, 982/82.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

German courts have affirmed the complementary nature of these instruments by reference to Section 1061(1) of the German Code of Civil Procedure, which provides that the stipulations of other treaties concerning the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards will remain unaffected by the application of the New York Convention.[1310]

b. Panama Convention of 1975

21. The Inter-American Convention on International Commercial Arbitration (done in Panama, 30 January 1975) was modelled after the New York Convention and written to be fully compatible with it.[1311] The Panama Convention contains provisions concerning the recognition and enforcement of awards which are similar, but not identical, to those found in the New York Convention.[1312] At the date of this Guide, the Panama Convention is applicable in 19 countries, all of which are also Contracting Parties to the New York Convention.[1313]

22. According to a 2008 survey of decisions from Latin America, most Latin American States that are party to both instruments have relied exclusively on the New York Convention when recognizing and enforcing foreign arbitral awards.[1314]

23. The majority of reported cases expressly discussing the Panama Convention were rendered in the United States of America, whose Federal Arbitration Act contains provisions governing the relationship between the New York Convention and the Panama Convention. Section 305 of the Federal Arbitration Act provides that when both Conventions are applicable to an arbitral award or agreement, the Panama Convention shall apply if a majority of the parties to the arbitration agreement are citizens of a State or States that have ratified or acceded to the Panama

[1310]For instance, Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 34 Sch 019/08, 27 February 2009. In contrast, where a party opposing enforcement has alleged that an interested party may not rely on both the European Convention and the New York Convention in support of its request for enforcement, an Italian court has referred to the compatibility in the first clause of article VII (1) to support its finding that both instruments would apply. See *Arenco-BMD Maschinenfabrik GmbH v. Societá Ceramica Italiana Pozzi-Richard Ginori S.p.A.*, Corte di Appello, Milan, Italy, 16 March 1984.

[1311]Albert Jan van den Berg, *The New York Convention 1958 and the Panama Convention of 1975: Redundancy or Compatibility?*, 5 Arb. Int'l 214 (1989).

[1312]For instance, unlike article II (3) of the New York Convention, the Panama Convention nowhere specifically requires the courts of a Contracting State to refer the parties to arbitration when seized of an action subject to an arbitration agreement falling under its field of application. While article 5 of the Panama Convention largely incorporates the grounds for refusal under article V of the New York Convention, the precise wording of these articles differs in several respects. Furthermore, unlike the New York Convention, the Panama Convention contains provisions governing other aspects of the arbitral process, such as the appointment of arbitrators (article 2), the conduct of the arbitral proceedings (article 3).

[1313]The current status of the Panama Convention is available online at: www.oas.org/juridico/english/sigs/b-35.html.

[1314]Cristián Conejero Roos, *The New York Convention in Latin America: Lessons From Recent Court Decisions*, in 2009 The Arbitration Review of the Americas 21.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Convention and are member States of the Organization of American States. At the same time, Section 302 of the Federal Arbitration Act mandates that certain provisions of the Federal Arbitration Act shall apply together with the provisions of the Panama Convention.[1315]

24. In practice, courts in the United States of America have applied the New York Convention and the Panama Convention as if they were identical. For instance, in a case before the United States District Court, when a party seeking to enforce an award relied on both the New York Convention and the Panama Convention, the Court limited its consideration to the New York Convention on the grounds that "codification of the Panama Convention incorporates by reference the relevant provisions of the New York Convention [...] making discussion of the Panama Convention unnecessary."[1316]

25. The effect of article VII (1) in cases where both the New York Convention and the Panama Convention apply has not been considered in reported case law. In specific cases, however, the Panama Convention may offer enhanced enforcement options compared to those of the New York Convention. For instance, Article 4 of the Panama Convention may, in certain cases, imply more favourable options for enforceability for arbitral awards than the New York Convention by equating final arbitral awards with final judicial judgments.[1317] Pursuant to the more-favourable-right provision of the New York Convention, a party seeking to enforce an award falling under both instruments could take advantage of such an option.

c. Bilateral treaties

26. In accordance with article VII (1), an interested party may base its request for enforcement on a bilateral agreement that specifically concerns the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards and agreements, as well as bilateral

[1315] United States Code, Title 9—Arbitration, § 302, which specifies: "Sections 202, 203, 204, 205, and 207 of this title shall apply to this chapter as if specifically set forth herein, except that for the purposes of this chapter 'the Convention' shall mean the Inter-American Convention."

[1316] *TermoRio S.A. E.S.P. v. Electrificadora del Atlantico S.A. E.S.P.*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 17 March 2006, 421 F. Supp. 2d 87, (D.D.C. 2006). See also *Productos Mercantiles E Industriales, S.A. v. Faberge USA Inc.*, United States Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 18 April 1994, 23 F.3d. 41, where the court noted, "The legislative history of the Inter-American Convention's implementing statute [...] clearly demonstrates that Congress intended the Inter-American Convention to reach the same results as those reached under the New York Convention."

[1317] Article 4 of the Panama Convention provides as follows: "An arbitral decision or award that is not appealable under the applicable law or procedural rules shall have the force of a final judicial judgment. Its execution or recognition may be ordered in the same manner as that of decisions handed down by national or foreign ordinary courts, in accordance with the procedural laws of the country where it is to be executed and the provisions of international treaties." This provision however mitigates the equality of treatment between arbitral awards and judicial judgements by stating that the recognition or enforcement of an award "may be ordered", in contrast to the imperative "shall" of article III of the New York Convention.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

agreements that contain, *inter alia*¸ provisions on these issues.[1318] The conditions for recognition and enforcement under bilateral agreements may be more or less favourable than the New York Convention, depending on the circumstances surrounding the award.

27. As an illustration, German courts have applied more favourable provisions of bilateral treaties in accordance with article VII (1). In a case before the German Federal Court of Justice, an interested party was permitted to rely on the 1958 German-Belgian Treaty concerning the Reciprocal Recognition and Enforcement of Judicial Decisions, Arbitral Awards and Official Documents in Civil and Commercial Matters, which provides that an award rendered in Belgium must be recognized and enforced in Germany when it has been declared enforceable in Belgium and does not violate German public policy.[1319]

28. Courts have also inquired whether an applicable bilateral treaty specifically excludes the application of the New York Convention, and in the event that it does not, have enforced awards pursuant to either the New York Convention, or more favourable domestic law provisions. For instance, in a 1997 decision —*Chromalloy*— the Paris Court of Appeal considered an argument advanced by Egypt that enforcement of an award should be denied, *inter alia*, because it violated Article 33 of the 1982 France-Egypt Convention on Judicial Cooperation (the "France-Egypt Convention").[1320] According to the Court, since the France-Egypt Convention expressly stipulates that the recognition and enforcement of awards should be granted in accordance with the provisions of the New York Convention, the States had implicitly consented to the application of any more favourable domestic law pursuant to article VII (1). Enforcing the award, the Court relied on the more limited grounds for refusal of enforcement under the then applicable Article 1502 of the French Code of Civil Procedure.[1321]

[1318]Franz Matscher, *Experience with Bilateral Treaties*, in Improving The Efficiency of Arbitration Agreements and Awards: 40 Years of Application of the New York Convention, ICCA Congress Series No. 9, 452 (A.J. van den Berg ed., 1999).

[1319]Bundesgerichtshof, Germany, III ZR 78/76, 9 March 1978. See also Bundesgerichtshof, Germany, III ZB 50/05, 23 February 2006, in which the Federal Supreme Court remanded a case back to the Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Karlsruhe, which, it considered, had erroneously examined a request to refuse enforcement to an arbitral award rendered in Minsk in light of the provisions of the New York Convention, instead of the more restricted grounds for non-enforcement of the 1958 Bilateral Treaty on General Issues of Commerce and Navigation between Germany and the former USSR, which continue to apply in respect of Belarus.

[1320]*République arabe d'Egypte v. Société Chromalloy Aero Services*, Court of Appeal, Paris, France, 14 January 1997.

[1321]For similar reasoning by German courts, see Bundesgerichtshof, Germany, XI ZR 349/89, 26 February 1991; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Frankfurt, Germany, 6 U (Kart) 115/88, 29 June 1989; and by an Italian court see *Viceré Livio v. Prodexport*, Corte di Cassazione, 11 July 1992.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

C. Interaction of the Convention with domestic law

29. Article VII (1) facilitates the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards by ensuring that Contracting States will not be in breach of the Convention by enforcing arbitral awards pursuant to more favourable provisions found in their domestic laws.

30. The domestic laws of Contracting States to the New York Convention take a variety of approaches to the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards. While the domestic arbitration law of some jurisdictions provides that recognition and enforcement is to take place pursuant to the New York Convention,[1322] others contain specific provisions concerning recognition and enforcement.[1323] Other laws provide that a foreign award can be enforced if the court in the country where the award was rendered has entered a judgment on the award.[1324]

a. Domestic law more favourable than article II

31. Article VII (1) refers only to the enforcement of "arbitral awards" and not "arbitration agreements". As commentators have noted, the omission of arbitration agreements from the text of article VII (1) was unintentional[1325] and can be explained by the inclusion of the provisions concerning arbitration agreements in the New York Convention at a very late stage of its negotiation.[1326]

32. French courts have long considered that article VII (1) applies to the recognition and enforcement of arbitration agreements. Thus, in a series of decisions beginning in 1993, French courts have held that pursuant to article VII (1) of the Convention, arbitration agreements could be enforced under the more favourable

[1322]See, e.g., Switzerland, Private International Law Act, 1987, Article 194; Germany, Arbitration Act, 1998, Article 1061.

[1323]See, e.g., France, New Code of Civil Procedure, Articles 1504-1527; Netherlands, Code of Civil Procedure, Article 1076.

[1324]For instance, Italy, Code of Civil Procedure, Article 830; Colombia, Code of Civil Procedure, Decree Number 1400 and 2019 of 1970, Article 694(3).

[1325]ICCA's Guide to the Interpretation of the 1958 New York Convention: A Handbook for Judges 27 (P. Sanders ed., 2011); Albert Jan van den Berg, The New York Arbitration Convention of 1958: Towards a Uniform Judicial Interpretation 86-88 (1981).

[1326]*Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Sixteenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.l6.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

provisions of French arbitration law, rather than the more stringent requirements of article II of the New York Convention.[1327]

33. As confirmation that article VII (1) also applies to arbitration agreements, at its thirty-ninth session, in 2006, UNCITRAL adopted a Recommendation regarding the interpretation of articles II (1) and VII (1) of the New York Convention. The Recommendation clarifies that article VII (1) "should be applied to allow any interested party to avail itself of rights it may have, under the law or treaties of the country where an arbitration agreement is sought to be relied upon, to seek recognition of the validity of such an arbitration agreement."[1328]

34. Since the UNCITRAL Recommendation, courts from a number of Contracting States have, in the application of article VII (1), enforced arbitration agreements pursuant to any less stringent formal requirements under their domestic laws. For instance, in a recent decision the German Federal Court of Justice enforced an arbitral award involving two commercial parties in light of the theory of *kaufmännisches Bestätigungsschreiben*, which recognizes that commercial contracts, including arbitration agreements, may be concluded by the tacit acceptance of a confirmation letter between merchants.[1329] Dutch courts have similarly applied article VII (1) to enforce awards pursuant to a domestic law provision which stipu-

[1327]See *Bomar Oil N.V. v. Etap - L'Entreprise Tunisienne d'Activités Pétrolières*, Court of Cassation, France, 87-15.094, 9 November 1993, 1994 Rev. Arb. 108; *American Bureau of Shipping (ABS) v. Copropriété maritime Jules Verne*, Court of Cassation, France, 03-12.034, 7 June 2006, 2006 Rev. Arb.945; *S.A. Groupama transports v. Société MS Regine Hans und Klaus Heinrich K.G.*, Court of Cassation, France, 05-21.818, 21 November 2006. The former Article 1443 of the French Code of Civil Procedure, in force from 1981, stipulated that an arbitration agreement shall be contained in the main convention or in a document to which the convention refers, without setting further requirements for the validity of an arbitration agreement in international arbitration matters. The current Article 1507 of the French Code of Civil Procedure applicable to international commercial arbitration provides that "[a]n arbitration agreement shall not be subject to any requirements as to its form." At the date of this Guide, there were no reported cases where a French court relied on this provision by virtue of article VII (1) of the Convention.

[1328]Recommendation regarding the interpretation of article II, paragraph 2, and article VII, paragraph 1, of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, done in New York, 10 June 1958 (2006), *Official Records of the General Assembly*, Sixty-first Session, Supplement No. 17 (A/61/17), paras. 177-181 and Annex II, available at www.uncitral.org/pdf/english/texts/arbitration/NY-conv/A2E.pdf. The *Travaux préparatoires* to the Recommendation are contained in *Official Records of the General Assembly*, Fifty-sixth Session, Supplement No. 17 (A/56/17), para. 313; *Ibid.*, Fifty-seventh Session, Supplement No. 17 (A/57/17), para. 183; and in United Nations documents A/CN.9/468, paras. 88-106; A/CN.9/485, paras. 60-77; A/CN.9/487, paras. 42-63; A/CN.9/508, paras. 40-50; A/CN.9/592, paras. 82-88; A/CN.9/WG.II/WP.118, paras. 25-33; A/CN.9/607; and A/CN.9/609, and its addenda 1 to 6.

[1329]Bundesgerichtshof, Germany, III ZB 69/09, 30 September 2010, SchiedsVZ 2010, 332. See also Kammergericht Berlin, Germany, 20 Sch 09/09, 20 January 2011; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 8 Sch 14/05, 14 December 2006. German courts enforced arbitration agreements pursuant to this notion even before the 2006 UNCITRAL Recommendation. See Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Köln, Germany, 16 W 43/92, 16 December 1992. The concept, as it relates to arbitration agreements, was codified in 1998 at Section 1031(2) of the new German Code of Civil Procedure, which is contained in the rules concerning domestic awards. The Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Frankfurt has considered that article VII (1) of the Convention, which refers to the laws that relate to the enforcement of foreign arbitral awards, would not necessarily lead to the application of Section 1031(2). See Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Frankfurt, Germany, 26 Sch 28/05, 26 June 2006.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

lates that, upon request, a court shall deem effective an arbitration agreement which is not included in a contract signed by the parties or contained in an exchange of letters or telegrams, conditions which are otherwise required to be met by article II of the New York Convention.[1330]

35. The domestic laws of certain other national legal systems also contain fewer formal requirements for an arbitration agreement than the New York Convention. For example, Switzerland's international arbitration law provides that an arbitration agreement shall be valid if it is made "in writing, by telegram, telex, telecopier or any other means of communication which permits it to be evidenced by text."[1331] In a still broader manner, the United Kingdom Arbitration Act explicitly stipulates that the writing need not be signed by one of the parties and may result from a recording by one of the parties, or by a third party if authorized by parties to the agreement. A party seeking enforcement of an arbitral award could avail itself of these provisions pursuant to article VII (1) of the Convention.[1332]

b. Domestic law more favourable than article IV

36. Article IV of the New York Convention sets out the documents to be submitted by a petitioner to the enforcing court at the time of a request for recognition and/or enforcement, namely: a duly authenticated original award or duly certified copy thereof, the original agreement referred to in article II or a duly certified copy thereof and translations of these documents into the language of the country where the award is relied upon, where relevant.

37. Courts in Germany have consistently applied the more-favourable-right principle in article VII (1) to allow an interested party to rely on the less stringent requirements of German law, pursuant to which a party seeking enforcement of a

[1330] *Claimant v. Ocean International Marketing B.V., et al.*, Rechtbank, Rotterdam, Netherlands, 29 July 2009, 194816/HA ZA 03-925.
[1331] Switzerland, Private International Law Act, 1987, Article 178(1).
[1332] United Kingdom, Arbitration Act 1996, c. 23, Section 5.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

foreign arbitral award in Germany need only supply the authenticated original arbitral award or a certified copy.[1333]

38. Likewise, German courts have referred to the more favourable provisions of their domestic law to dispense with the requirement under article IV (2) of the Convention that an interested party produce translations of the award and the original arbitration agreement.[1334] The same approach has been followed by courts in Switzerland, which apply the more favourable provision in Article 193(1) of the Swiss Private International Law Act.[1335]

c. Domestic law more favourable than article V (1)(e)

39. Pursuant to article VII (1) of the New York Convention, an interested party may seek the application of a national law if that is more favourable than the provisions of the Convention, including the grounds for refusal listed in article V. Among these grounds, article V (1)*(e)* provides that recognition and enforcement may be refused if the award "has been set aside or suspended by a competent authority of the country in which, or under the law of which, that award was made."

40. The legislative history of the Convention does not discuss the relationship between articles V (1)*(e)* and VII (1). In particular, there is no record that the State delegates or their governments contemplated whether an award that has been set aside or suspended could be enforced through the application of article VII (1).

41. The final text of the New York Convention does not prohibit a court in a Contracting State from recognizing or enforcing such an award, if it can be recognized or enforced pursuant to that State's domestic law or another treaty to which

[1333]Germany, Code of Civil Procedure, Sections 1064(1) and (3). See, e.g., Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, Germany, 34 Sch 14/09, 1 September 2009; Bundesgerichtshof, Germany, III ZB 68/02, 25 September 2003. See also Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, 22 June 2009; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, 34 Sch 19/08, 27 February 2009; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, 34 Sch 18/08, 17 December 2008; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Frankfurt, 17 October 2007; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, 23 February 2007; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, 14 December 2006; Kammergericht, 10 August 2006; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, 15 March 2006; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, 28 November 2005; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Dresden, 7 November 2005; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Dresden, 2 November 2005; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamm, 27 September 2005; Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht, 11 August 2000. For a contrary opinion, see Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Rostock, Germany, 1 Sch 03/00, 22 November 2001, in which the court considered that Article VII (1) could not allow a party to dispense with the formal requirements for enforcement under the New York Convention.

[1334]For instance, Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 8 Sch 14/05, 14 December 2006; Kammergericht Berlin, 20 Sch 07/04, 10 August 2006. See also Oberlandesgericht [OLG] München, 28 November 2005; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamm, 27 September 2005; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Köln, 23 April 2004.

[1335]Federal Supreme Court, Switzerland, 2 July 2012, Decision 5A_754/2011. Courts in the Netherlands have also enforced awards pursuant to Article 1076 of the Netherlands Civil Procedure Code, which is more favourable than article IV of the Convention: *Dubai Drydocks v. Bureau voor Scheeps- en Werktuigbouw [X] B.V.*, Rechtbank, Dordrecht, Netherlands, 30 June 2010, 79684/KG RK 09-85.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

it is party. In application of the more-favourable-right provision under article VII (1), courts in certain Contracting States have thus consistently enforced awards that have been set aside or suspended.

42. For instance, in a series of decisions beginning in 1984, French courts have established a rule that a party opposing enforcement is precluded from relying on grounds for non-enforcement under article V (1)*(e)* of the Convention in light of the more limited grounds under French law.[1336] In the *Hilmarton* case of 1994, the Court of Cassation enforced an award rendered in Switzerland despite the fact that it had been set aside by the Swiss Federal Supreme Court and a new arbitral tribunal had been constituted to hear the dispute. The Court reasoned that "the award rendered in Switzerland is an international award which is not integrated in the legal system of that State, so that it remains in existence even if set aside and its recognition in France is not contrary to public policy."[1337]

43. French courts have followed this reasoning in a series of subsequent cases.[1338] In the 2007 *Putrabali* decision, for instance, the Court of Cassation affirmed that "[a]n international arbitral award, which is not anchored in any national legal order, is a decision of international justice whose validity must be ascertained with regard to the rules applicable in the country where its recognition and enforcement is sought. Under article VII [the interested party] [...] could invoke the French rules on international arbitration, which do not provide that the annulment of an award in the country of origin is a ground for refusing recognition and enforcement of an award rendered in a foreign country".[1339]

44. The same year, the Paris Court of Appeal found that the rule according to which the setting aside of an arbitral award in a foreign country does not affect the right of the interested party to request the enforcement of the award in France

[1336] The former Article 1502 of the French Code of Civil Procedure, in force until 2011, provided an exhaustive list of the five grounds upon which recognition and enforcement could be refused in France. See *Société Pabalk Ticaret Sirketi v. Société Anonyme Norsolor*, Court of Cassation, France, 83-11.355, 9 October 1984, 1985 Rev. Arb. 431, with English translation in 24 I.L.M. 360 (1985). Articles 1520 and 1525(4) of the French Code of Civil Procedure that is currently in force provide for the same grounds for refusal.

[1337] *Société OTV v. Société Hilmarton*, Court of Cassation, France, 10 June 1997. XX Y.B. Com. Arb. 663 (1995). The new tribunal ordered to be constituted by the Swiss Federal Supreme Court then rendered a conflicting second award ordering the respondent to pay a consulting fee under the contract at issue. The French Court of Cassation rejected a lower court ruling recognizing the second award and held that only the first award was recognized in France, ruling that the recognition in France of the first award, set aside outside France, necessarily prevented the recognition or enforcement in France of the second award.

[1338] *Bargues Agro Industrie S.A. (France) v. Young Pecan Company (United States)*, Court of Appeal, Paris, France, 10 June 2004, 2004 Rev. Arb. 733; *PT Putrabali Adyamulia v. S.A. Rena Holding*, Court of Appeal, Paris, France, 31 March 2005, 2006 Rev. Arb. 665, *affirmed by PT Putrabali Adyamulia v. S.A. Rena Holding*, Court of Cassation, France, 05-18053, 29 June 2007, 2007 Rev. Arb. 507; *Direction Générale de l'Aviation Civile de l'Emirat de Dubaï v. International Bechtel Co., LLP*, Court of Appeal, Paris, France, 29 September 2005, 2006 Rev. Arb. 695.

[1339] *PT Putrabali Adyamulia v. S.A. Rena Holding*, Court of Cassation, France, 05-18053, 29 June 2007, 2007 Rev. Arb. 507, *affirming PT Putrabali Adyamulia v. S.A. Rena Holding*, Court of Appeal, Paris, France, 31 March 2005, 2006 Rev. Arb. 665.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

(since the arbitrator is not part of the national legal order of the country where the award was rendered) constitutes a "fundamental principle under French law."[1340]

45. In the 1996 *Chromalloy* decision, the United States District Court of Columbia took a similar view and allowed an application to enforce an award rendered in Egypt and subsequently annulled by a Court of Appeal in Egypt.[1341] The Court considered that in contrast to article V of the Convention, which sets out a "permissive standard" under which a court "may" refuse to enforce an award, article VII (1) "mandates that this Court must consider [the interested party's] claims under applicable U.S. law." The Court analysed whether the Egyptian Court's reasons for vacating the award were grounds that would have justified vacating a domestic award under Section 10 of the Federal Arbitration Act, Chapter 1. It held that, because the award would not have been vacated under Section 10, it should enforce the award in accordance with article VII (1) of the Convention.

46. Conversely, the New York Convention does not require courts in the Contracting States to recognize an award that has been set aside or suspended and they will not violate the Convention by refusing to do so.

47. Some courts have decided that the enforcement of an award should be refused if it has been set aside in the country where it was rendered. German courts, for instance, have adopted this position based on the previous version of the Code of Civil Procedure, which required the validity ("*Rechtswirksamkeit*") of a foreign arbitral award as a precondition for its enforcement,[1342] as well as the new German Code of Civil Procedure, which provides that recognition and enforcement "shall be granted in accordance with [the New York Convention]", including the grounds for refusal under article V (1)*(e)*.[1343]

48. Similarly, courts in the United States of America have distinguished the 1996 *Chromalloy* decision and have declined to enforce awards that have been annulled

[1340]Court of Appeal, Paris, France,18 January 2007, *Société S.A. Lesbats et Fils v. Volker le Docteur Grub.*

[1341]*Chromalloy Aeroservices v. Arab Republic of Egypt*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 31 July 1996, 94-2339. See David W. Rivkin, *The Enforcement of Awards Nullified in the Country of Origin: The American Experience*, in Improving the Efficiency of Arbitration Agreements and Awards: 40 Years of Application of the New York Convention, ICCA Congress Series No. 9, 528 (A.J. van den Berg ed., 1998); See Emmanuel Gaillard, *The Relationship of the New York Convention with other Treaties and with Domestic Law*, in Enforcement of Arbitration Agreements and International Arbitral Awards: The New York Convention in Practice 69, 80-86 (E. Gaillard, D. Di Pietro eds., 2008); Georgios C. Petrochilos, *Enforcing Awards Annulled In Their State Of Origin Under The New York Convention*, 48 Int'l Comp. L.Q. 856 (1999).

[1342]Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Rostock, Germany, 1 Sch 03/99, 28 October 1999. See Klaus Sachs, *The Enforcement of Awards Nullified in the Country of Origin: The German Experience*, in Improving the Efficiency of Arbitration Agreements and Awards: 40 Years of Application of the New York Convention, ICCA Congress Series No. 9, 552 (A.J. van den Berg ed., 1998).

[1343]Bundesgerichtshof, Germany, III ZB 14/07, 21 May 2007.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

or suspended.[1344] For instance, in the 1999 decision *Baker Marine*, the Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit refused to enforce two awards rendered in Nigeria and set aside by the Nigerian courts, rejecting the argument of the interested party that the awards were set aside for reasons that would not be recognized under United States law as valid grounds for vacating an award. The Court reasoned that the "mechanical application of domestic arbitral law to foreign awards under the Convention would seriously undermine finality and regularly produce conflicting judgments."[1345]

49. By contrast, a court's refusal to enforce an award that has been set aside or suspended could constitute a violation of the European Convention which, when applicable,[1346] expressly limits the grounds for refusal that are set out at article V of the New York Convention. In this relation, Article IX(2) of the European Convention provides that where a State is party to both the European Convention and the New York Convention, a court's discretion to refuse enforcement on the basis of an award having been set aside shall be limited to those cases where the award has been set aside for one of the limited reasons enumerated in its Article IX(1).[1347]

50. Pursuant to its obligation under the European Convention, the Austrian Supreme Court has enforced an award that had been set aside for violation of public policy in Slovenia, reasoning that "[p]ursuant to Article IX(1) of the

[1344] *Baker Marine Ltd. v. Chevron Ltd.*, United States Court of Appeal, Second Circuit, United States of America, 12 August 1999, 191 F.3d 194; *TermoRio S.A. E.S.P. v. Electrificadora del Atlantico S.A. E.S.P.*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 17 March 2006, 421 F. Supp. 2d 87; *Martin Spier v. Calzaturificio Tecnica, S.p.A*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 22 October 1999, 86 Civ. 3447.

[1345] *Baker Marine Ltd. v. Chevron Ltd.*, United States Court of Appeal, Second Circuit, United States of America, 12 August 1999, 191 F.3d 194. The Court distinguished *Chromalloy* on the basis of the nationality of the interested party, who was not a United States citizen, and of a provision in the arbitration clause stating that the decision of the arbitrator "could not be subject to any appeal or other recourse".

[1346] For the application of the European Convention, see the United Nations Treaty Collection, available at http://treaties.un.org/pages/ViewDetails.aspx?src=TREATY&mtdsg_no=XXII-2&chapter=22&lang=en.

[1347] Article IX(1) of the European Convention provides in full: "1. The setting aside in a Contracting State of an arbitral award covered by this Convention shall only constitute a ground for the refusal of recognition or enforcement in another Contracting State where such setting aside took place in a State in which, or under the law of which, the award has been made and for one of the following reasons: (a) the parties to the arbitration agreement were under the law applicable to them, under some incapacity or the said agreement is not valid under the law to which the parties have subjected it or, failing any indication thereon, under the law of the country where the award was made, or (b) the party requesting the setting aside of the award was not given proper notice of the appointment of the arbitrator or of the arbitration proceedings or was otherwise unable to present his case; or (c) the award deals with a difference not contemplated by or not falling within the terms of the submission to arbitration, or it contains decisions on matters beyond the scope of the submission to arbitration, provided that, if the decisions on matters submitted to arbitration can be separated from those not so submitted, that part of the award which contains decisions on matters submitted to arbitration need not be set aside; (d) the composition of the arbitral authority or the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties, or failing such agreement, with the provisions of Article IV of this Convention. 2. In relations between Contracting States that are also parties to the New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10th June 1958, paragraph 1 of this Article limits the application of Article V (1)(e) of the New York Convention solely to the cases of setting aside set out under paragraph 1 above."

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

European Convention, even the annulment of an award for public policy of the country of origin [...] is not one of the grounds for refusal exhaustively listed [...] and is therefore not a ground for refusing enforcement in the enforcement state."[1348]

d. Domestic law more favourable than article VI

51. Article VI of the New York Convention provides that a court before which the enforcement of the award is sought "may", if it considers it proper, adjourn its decision on enforcement if the award is subject to an action for setting aside in the country in which, or under the law of which, it is made. In application of article VII (1) of the Convention, courts have applied domestic laws more favourable to recognition and enforcement than article VI in order to dispense with any suspensive effect of an action for setting aside.

52. For instance, in a 1999 decision, the Luxembourg Court of Appeal considered the argument of the party opposing enforcement that an award rendered in Switzerland had no *res judicata* effect in light of proceedings to set the award aside at the Swiss Federal Supreme Court and that pursuant to article VI of the New York Convention, enforcement proceedings in Luxembourg should be suspended pending this decision. Rejecting this argument, the Court noted that "the principle of *favor arbitrandum* [...] permeates the Convention" and in particular article VII (1), which is "aimed at making the enforcement of foreign awards possible in the highest number of cases." The Court reasoned that "according to the Convention the Luxembourg court can only deny enforcement on one of the grounds provided for in its national law." Since Article 1028(3) of the Luxembourg Code of Civil Procedure does not include the challenge of the award abroad among its grounds for refusal, it refused to suspend its decision and enforced the award.[1349]

53. French courts have also refused to suspend enforcement proceedings pending an action to set aside an award. In the 2004 *Bargues Agro* case, for instance, the Paris Court of Appeal refused to stay the enforcement of an award rendered in Belgium pending the conclusion of setting aside proceedings there, applying the more favourable provisions of French law.[1350] The Court noted that because the award was rendered in the context of an international arbitration, it was not anchored in the national legal order of Belgium and its potential setting aside could not prevent its recognition and enforcement in another Contracting State. The Court thus held that article VI of the Convention "is of no use in the context of

[1348] Supreme Court, Austria, 26 January 2005, 3Ob221/04b.

[1349] *Sovereign Participations International S.A. v. Chadmore Developments Ltd.*, Court of Appeal, Luxembourg, 28 January 1999.

[1350] *Société Bargues Agro Industries S.A. v. Société Young Pecan Company*, Court of Appeal, Paris, France, 10 June 2004.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

the recognition and enforcement of an award under [the then applicable] Article 1502 of the Code of Civil Procedure."

e. *Other more favourable domestic law practice*

54. German courts have relied on article VII (1) of the New York Convention to apply the domestic law principle of preclusion, which provides that a party that has participated in an arbitration proceeding without objecting to a known defect before the arbitral tribunal will not, in general, be able to rely on that defect as a ground for refusal to recognize or enforce the award.[1351] German courts have interpreted Section 1044(2)(1) of the former Code of Civil Procedure as requiring the preclusion of objections against the award, for instance based on the invalidity of an arbitration agreement, if that ground could have been asserted in an action to set aside the award in the country where the award was made and a party had not availed itself of that possibility.

55. The German Code of Civil Procedure does not contain specific provisions setting out the grounds for refusal to recognize and enforce an award, but instead provides that "recognition and enforcement of foreign awards shall be granted in accordance with the New York Convention."[1352] There is a divergence of opinion among German courts on the question of whether the preclusion principle may be applied on the basis of the New York Convention only. Some courts have held that while the grounds for non-enforcement under article V of the New York Convention do not preclude defences in this manner, a German court may nonetheless apply this principle despite the fact that it finds no explicit expression in the current Civil Code of Procedure.[1353]

56. At the date of this Guide, the most recent decision of the German Federal Court of Justice on this issue has affirmed that the preclusion of defences should have limited applicability. According to the Court, it would not necessarily amount to bad faith for a party to raise a defect for the first time at the enforcement stage and such party would be precluded from doing so only where circumstances make

[1351]Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Düsseldorf, Germany, 8 November 1971; Bundesgerichtshof, Germany, III ZR 206/82, 10 May 1984. See also Albert Jan van den Berg, *The German Arbitration Act 1998 and the New York Convention 1958*, in Law of International Business and Dispute Settlement in the 21st Century—Liber Amicorum Karl-Heinz Bockstiegel 783 (R.G. Briner, Y.L. Fortier, P.K. Berger, J. Bredow eds., 2001).

[1352]Germany, Code of Civil Procedure, Section 1061.

[1353]For instance, Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Karlsruhe, Germany, 9 Sch 02/05, 27 March 2006; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Karlsruhe, Germany, 9 Sch 02/09, 4 January 2012. Certain lower courts have deduced from the absence of such an explicit provision that no preclusion of defences may be applied under New York Convention. See, e.g., Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht, Germany, 4 Z Sch 50/99, 16 March 2000; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Celle, Germany, 8 Sch 11/02, 4 September 2003.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

the party's behaviour appear to be contrary to good faith and the principle of consistency with previous conduct ("*venire contra factum proprium*").[1354]

Article VII (2)

57. The New York Convention was conceived as a replacement for the 1923 Geneva Protocol on Arbitration Clauses and the 1927 Geneva Convention (together, the "Geneva Treaties"), which were considered too cumbersome a legal framework for the enforcement of arbitral awards in the context of the growth of international trade after the Second World War.

58. According to the *travaux préparatoires*, it was suggested that article VII (2) should expressly provide that the Geneva Treaties shall become extinct ("cease to have effect") between Contracting States "on their becoming bound by [the New York Convention]". The addendum, "to the extent they become bound", was introduced in the text to accommodate the Contracting States that would not become bound by the New York Convention in all their territories simultaneously and not to ensure the continued application of the Geneva Treaties.[1355] The *travaux préparatoires* further confirm that the replacement mandated by article VII (2) refers to the entirety of the Geneva Treaties: a proposal to limit their replacement to the degree that they were incompatible with the New York Convention was rejected during the drafting process.[1356]

59. The rules for recognition and enforcement under the New York Convention introduced a number of improvements to the regime provided by the Geneva Treaties.

60. *First*, the 1927 Geneva Convention, which applied to awards based on agreements covered by the 1923 Geneva Protocol, provided for the execution of a foreign award only if the party seeking to rely on it could demonstrate that the award was "final" in its country of origin.[1357] An interested party thus had to seek an exequatur (or leave for enforcement) in the country where the award was made before seeking enforcement in another country, thus giving rise to a requirement

[1354]Bundesgerichtshof, Germany, III ZB 100/09, 16 December 2010.

[1355]*Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as provisionally approved by the drafting Committee on 6 June 1958, E/CONF.26/L.61, pp. 3-4; *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Twenty-fourth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.24, p. 4. See also comments in Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Düsseldorf, 8 November 1971.

[1356]*Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Eighteenth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.18, p. 7.

[1357]This notion was defined in article 1(d) of the 1927 Geneva Convention as an award that was not (i) open to any form of recourse or (ii) the subject of pending proceedings contesting its validity.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

of *double exequatur*. The more liberal regime under the New York Convention does not require an award to be final, but only requires it to be "binding".

61. *Second*, in order for the 1923 Geneva Protocol and 1927 Geneva Convention to be applicable, the parties to the arbitration both had to be subject to the jurisdiction of the States parties to the respective treaties. The New York Convention, by contrast, only requires that the award be made in the territory of another Contracting State or in the enforcing State if the award is considered as non-domestic in the State where recognition and enforcement is sought.

62. *Third*, the burden of proof under the New York Convention is less onerous on the party seeking enforcement. Pursuant to article 1 of the 1927 Geneva Convention, an interested party was required to demonstrate the existence of a valid arbitration agreement, concerning an arbitral subject matter, that the arbitral proceedings had been conducted in accordance with the parties' agreement and also that the award had become final in the place of arbitration and was not contrary to the public policy of the recognizing State. Under the New York Convention, a party seeking enforcement need only supply to a court the original award (or a duly certified copy thereof) along with the original arbitration agreement (or a duly certified copy thereof), and a translation of those documents where they are not in the official language of the country where recognition and enforcement is sought. Under the New York Convention, it is up to the party opposing enforcement to prove the existence of one of the grounds for refusal enumerated in article V of the New York Convention.

63. Reported case law on article VII (2) confirms the principle that the Geneva Treaties shall cease to apply to the recognition and enforcement of foreign arbitral awards in Contracting States that have become bound by the New York Convention.[1358]

64. With very few exceptions, all States which had adhered to the Geneva Treaties have now become Parties to the New York Convention.[1359] Article VII (2) is therefore of limited practical relevance today.

[1358] For instance, *S.p.A. Nosegno e Morando v. Bohne Friedrich und Co-Import-Export*, Corte Di Cassazione, Italy, 20 January 1977; *Jassica S.A. v. Ditta Polojaz*, Corte di Appello, Trieste, Italy, 2 July 1982; Supreme Court, Austria, 21 February 1978; Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Düsseldorf, 8 November 1971; *Trefileries & Ateliers de Commercy (T.A.C.) v. Société Philipp Brothers France et Société Derby & Co. Limited*, Court of Appeal, Nancy, France, 5 December 1980; *Minister of Public Works of the Government of the State of Kuwait v. Sir Frederick Snow & Partners*, House of Lords, England, 1 March 1984, [1984] A.C. 426.

[1359] The status of former colonies that were Contracting States to the Geneva Treaties is not clear, as some of them have not made formal announcements regarding their status. See Dirk Otto, *Article IV*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 143 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds, 2010).

Article VIII

1. This Convention shall be open until 31 December 1958 for signature on behalf of any Member of the United Nations and also on behalf of any other State which is or hereafter becomes a member of any specialized agency of the United Nations, or which is or hereafter becomes a party to the Statute of the International Court of Justice, or any other State to which an invitation has been addressed by the General Assembly of the United Nations.

2. This Convention shall be ratified and the instrument of ratification shall be deposited with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article VIII as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704 and Annex.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822, E/2822/Add.1, E/2822/Add.5, E/2822/Add.6

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF. 26/4; E/CONF.26/7; E/CONF.26/L.51.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/L.61; E/CONF.26/8.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Nineteenth, Twentieth, and Twenty-fourth Meeting of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR.19; E/CONF.26/SR.20, E/CONF.26/SR.24.
- Summary Records of the Fourth and Eighth Meetings of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/4; E/AC.42/4/Rev.1; E/AC.42/SR.8.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

Analysis

1. Article VIII is part of the final provisions of the Convention. It sets out who may become a Party to the Convention and the procedure for becoming a party to the Convention. It also determines who acts as the depositary for the Convention.

Article VIII (1)

2. The Convention, which was concluded on 10 June 1958, was open for signature until 31 December 1958. Twenty-four States signed the Convention before this deadline.[1360] Article VIII (1) provides that any other States which did not sign the Convention before the deadline, have acceded, or shall then accede to the Convention in accordance with the provisions of article IX of the Convention.

3. The Convention is open for signature by any "Member of the United Nations".[1361] Article VIII (1) further provides that the Convention is open for signature by any other State which is or becomes a member of any specialized agency of the United Nations, or which is or becomes a party to the Statute of the International Court of Justice, or any other State to which the General Assembly of the United Nations addresses an invitation.

[1360] See information on the status of the Convention on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org/uncitral/en/uncitral_texts/arbitration/NYConvention_status.html.

[1361] At the time of the adoption of the Convention in 1958, 82 States were members of the United Nations (see on the Internet: http://www.un.org/en/members/growth.shtml).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

4. During the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration convened for the preparation and adoption of the Convention, a debate arose concerning the use of the term "State" in the definition of who may become a Party to the Convention.[1362] According to some delegations, the term "State" could not be used because it had no uniform meaning.[1363] No "State" had been invited by the General Assembly to sign the Convention prior to 31 December 1958.

Article VIII (2)

A. Procedure for becoming a party

5. Article VIII (2) expressly provides for States to express their consent to be bound by the Convention by signature subject to ratification. This allows States to seek approval for the Convention at the domestic level and to enact any legislation necessary to implement the Convention domestically, prior to undertaking the legal obligations under the Convention at the international level.[1364]

6. The act by which a State expresses its consent to be bound by the Convention is distinct from the Convention's entry into force. Consent to be bound is the act whereby a State demonstrates its willingness to undertake the legal rights and obligations under the Convention through the deposit of an instrument of ratification (under article VIII (2)) or of accession (under article IX). On the other hand, entry into force is the moment the Convention becomes legally binding for a State; that is, the moment at which that State becomes Party to the Convention. That moment is defined under article XII.

[1362]Still, nowadays, the Secretary-General, as depositary, has stated on a number of occasions that it would fall outside his competence to determine whether a territory or entity falls within any "all States" formula. Pursuant to a general understanding adopted by the General Assembly on 14 December 1973, the Secretary-General will, in discharging his functions as depositary of a convention with the "all States" clause, follow the practice of the General Assembly and, whenever advisable, will request the opinion of the Assembly before receiving a signature or an instrument of ratification or accession (See *United Nations Juridical Yearbook, 1973* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.75.V.1), part two, chap. IV, sect. A.3 (at 79, note 9), and *ibid., 1974* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.76.V.1), part two, chap. VI, sect. A.9 (at 157-159)).

[1363]E/2704, p. 15 and E/2822, p. 29; E/CONF.26/7, p. 1; E/CONF.26/SR.19, p. 2.

[1364]United Nations Treaty Handbook, para. 3.3.2.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

B. Depositary

7. The Secretary-General of the United Nations is the depositary for the Convention.[1365] In practice, the Treaty Section of the United Nations Office of Legal Affairs carries out depositary functions on behalf of the Secretary-General.

[1365] The Secretary-General derives his authority as depository for multilateral treaties from: *(a)* Article 98 of the Charter of the United Nations; *(b)* provisions of the treaties themselves; *(c)* General Assembly resolution 24 (1) of 12 February 1946; and *(d)* League of Nations resolution of 18 April 1946 (see United Nations Treaty Handbook, para. 2.1).

Article IX

1. This Convention shall be open for accession to all States referred to in article VIII.

2. Accession shall be effected by the deposit of an instrument of accession with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article IX as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704 and Annex.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822; E/2822/Add.1; E/2822/Add.4.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF. 26/7; E/CONF.26/L.57.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/L.61; E/CONF.26/8; E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Twentieth and Twenty-fourth Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR20; E/CONF.26/SR.24.
- Summary Record of the Eighth Meeting of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.8.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

Analysis

1. Article IX provides that the Convention is open for accession by all States that fall within the description provided at article VIII (1).[1366]

2. A State may generally express its consent to be bound by the Convention by depositing an instrument of accession with the depositary. Accession has the same legal effect as ratification. However, unlike ratification, which is preceded by signature to create binding legal obligations under international law, accession requires only one step, namely, the deposit of an instrument of accession. The Secretary-General, as depositary, treats instruments of ratification that have not been preceded by signature as instruments of accession, and the States concerned are advised accordingly. There is no mandated form for an instrument of accession, but it must include certain information.[1367]

[1366]See information on the status of the Convention on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org/uncitral/en/uncitral_texts/arbitration/NYConvention_status.html.

[1367]See United Nations Treaty Handbook para. 3.3.5 and annex 5. The instrument of accession must include: (i) the title, date and place of conclusion of the treaty concerned; (ii) the full name and title of the person signing the instrument, i.e., Head of State, Head of Government or Minister for Foreign Affairs or any other person acting in such a position for the time being or with full powers for that purpose issued by one of the above authorities; (iii) an unambiguous expression of the intent of the Government, on behalf of the State, to consider itself bound by the treaty and to undertake faithfully to observe and implement its provisions; (iv) the date and place where the instrument was issued; and (v) the signature of the Head of State, Head of Government or Minister for Foreign Affairs (the official seal only is not adequate) or any other person acting in such a position for the time being or with full powers for that purpose issued by one of the above authorities.

Article X

1. Any State may, at the time of signature, ratification or accession, declare that this Convention shall extend to all or any of the territories for the international relations of which it is responsible. Such a declaration shall take effect when the Convention enters into force for the State concerned.

2. At any time thereafter any such extension shall be made by notification addressed to the Secretary-General of the United Nations and shall take effect as from the ninetieth day after the day of receipt by the Secretary-General of the United Nations of this notification, or as from the date of entry into force of the Convention for the State concerned, whichever is the later.

3. With respect to those territories to which this Convention is not extended at the time of signature, ratification or accession, each State concerned shall consider the possibility of taking the necessary steps in order to extend the application of this Convention to such territories, subject, where necessary for constitutional reasons, to the consent of the Governments of such territories.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article X as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822; E/2822/Add.1; E/2822/Add.6.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.57; E/CONF. 26/L.61.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/8; E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Twentieth and Twenty-fourth Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR20; E/CONF.26/SR.24.
- Summary Record of the Eighth Meeting of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.8.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

Analysis

1. Article X addresses the question of the effect of the Convention in domestic territorial units. At the time the Convention was concluded, this had a specific meaning as a number of States had colonies or territories for which they were responsible.[1368]

2. Nowadays, such a provision mainly applies to federal States (dealt with under article XI of the Convention). To date, 10 countries have made declarations in relation to matters covered by article X.[1369]

[1368] See *Travaux préparatoires*, E/2704, annex p. 4, E/CONF/SR.20, pp. 2-5.

[1369] See information on the status of the Convention on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org/uncitral/en/uncitral_texts/arbitration/NYConvention_status.html and United Nations Treaty Collection at https://treaties.un.org/.

Article XI

In the case of a federal or non-unitary State, the following provisions shall apply:

(a) With respect to those articles of this Convention that come within the legislative jurisdiction of the federal authority, the obligations of the federal Government shall to this extent be the same as those of Contracting States which are not federal States;

(b) With respect to those articles of this Convention that come within the legislative jurisdiction of constituent states or provinces which are not, under the constitutional system of the federation, bound to take legislative action, the federal Government shall bring such articles with a favourable recommendation to the notice of the appropriate authorities of constituent states or provinces at the earliest possible moment;

(c) A federal State Party to this Convention shall, at the request of any other Contracting State transmitted through the Secretary-General of the United Nations, supply a statement of the law and practice of the federation and its constituent units in regard to any particular provision of this Convention, showing the extent to which effect has been given to that provision by legislative or other action.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article XI as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822; E/2822/Add.1; E/2822/Add.5; E/2822/Add.6.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/4; E/CONF.26/L.57; E/CONF. 26/L.61. and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/8; E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Twentieth and Twenty-fourth Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International
- Eighth Meeting of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.8.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

Analysis

1. Article XI is of interest to relatively few States—namely, federal states where the central Government lacks treaty power to establish uniform law on matters covered by the Convention. It should be noted however that a State that has two or more territorial units is only entitled to make a declaration under article XI if different systems of law apply in those units in relation to matters dealt with in the Convention.

2. As shown in the *travaux préparatoires*, the text of article XI was the subject of lengthy debate. It has however not created any particular difficulty in practice. Similar provisions are commonly included in other international treaties.

3. In most of the Contracting States with a federal system (e.g., Austria, Germany, India, Switzerland, the United States) the enforcement of foreign arbitral awards is governed by federal legislation. In the United States, for instance, Congress implemented the Convention in 1970 by passing enabling legislation, making it the supreme law of the land that binds both the federal and state Governments. The Convention and its implementing legislation were subsequently codified as Chapter 2 of Title 9 of the United States Code (i.e., Chapter 2 of the Federal Arbitration Act ("FAA")). As a result, United States courts are required to enforce all foreign arbitral awards, which are governed by the Convention, pursuant to

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Chapter 2 of the FAA. The United States Supreme Court has held that the Convention, as incorporated into federal law, is intended "to encourage the recognition and enforcement in international contracts and to unify the standards by which agreements to arbitrate are observed and arbitral awards are enforced in the signatory countries".[1370] This rationale is also expressed in a decision from the United States District Court for the District of Columbia, which noted that "[b]y acting at the federal level, Congress ensured that the enforcement of foreign arbitral awards in the United States would be governed by one set of 'uniform rules of procedure,' rather than a diversity of state ones as might have occurred pursuant to article XI".[1371] In *Sedco*, the Court of Appeals for the Fifth Circuit proclaimed that since its enactment, the Convention has been "the Supreme law of the land" and therefore, "[a]ny law or decision prior in time to this express undertaking must be construed as consistent with the Convention or set aside by it".[1372]

4. In a few Contracting States, the legislative power concerning the enforcement of foreign arbitral awards is divided between the federal and provincial levels. In Canada, the New York Convention has been implemented at the federal level through the United Nations Foreign Arbitral Awards Convention Act, which stipulates that the Convention applies only to "differences arising out of commercial legal relationships, whether contractual or not". The Commercial Arbitration Act codified the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration at the federal level. In the words of the Canadian Federal Court of Appeal, this Act applies only "in relation to matters where at least one of the parties to the arbitration is Her Majesty in right of Canada, a departmental corporation or a Crown corporation or in relation to maritime or admiralty matters".[1373] The Court further explained that "[l]egislation has also been enacted to implement the New York Convention and the Model Law in each province and territory (to the exception of Quebec), which applies to most civil matters, except those falling under the jurisdiction of the Federal State. As a result, commercial disputes in Canada may be subject to either federal or provincial jurisdiction, depending on the subject matter of the dispute". The Federal Court of Appeal specified that the enforcement of a foreign arbitral award in maritime matters falls under the jurisdiction of federal courts and reminded that "Parliament had jurisdiction to give the Convention the force of law in areas within its authority such as 'navigation and shipping'".[1374]

[1370] *Scherk v. Alberto-Culver Co.*, Supreme Court, United States of America, 17 June 1974, 417 United States 506.

[1371] *Commission Import Export S.A. v. Republic of the Congo and Caisse Congolaise d'Amortissement*, District Court, District of Columbia, United States of America, 11 July 2014, 13-7004.

[1372] *Sedco Inc Mobile Drilling Uni Sedco v. Petroleos Mexicanos Mexican National Oil Co.*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 12 August 1985, 767 F.2d 1140. See also *Murphy Oil USA Inc. v. SR International Business Insurance Company Ltd*, District Court, Western District of Arkansas, United States of America, 20 September 2007, 07-CV-1071.

[1373] Commercial Arbitration Act, R.S.C., 1985, c. 17 (2nd Supp.) Section 5(2).

[1374] *Northern Sales Company Limited v. Compania Maritima Villa Nova S.A.*, Federal Court of Appeal, Winnipeg Manitoba, Canada, 20 November 1991, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 363 (1993).

Article XII

1. This Convention shall come into force on the ninetieth day following the date of deposit of the third instrument of ratification or accession.

2. For each State ratifying or acceding to this Convention after the deposit of the third instrument of ratification or accession, this Convention shall enter into force on the ninetieth day after deposit by such State of its instrument of ratification or accession.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article XII as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822; E/2822/Add.1; E/2822/Add.6.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.55.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF. 26/L.61; E/CONF.26/8; E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Twentieth, Twenty-first and Twenty-fourth Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR20; E/CONF.26/SR.21; E/CONF.26/SR.24.
- Summary Record of the Fourth Meeting of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.4.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet at http://newyorkconvention1958.org)

Analysis

1. Article XII governs the date of entry into force of the New York Convention.

2. The Convention entered into force on 7 June 1959, ninety days following the deposit of the instrument of ratification by Egypt, Israel, Morocco and the Syrian Arab Republic. In accordance with article XII, Contracting States became bound by the Convention upon its entry into force on 7 June 1959 or ninety days after the deposit of any subsequent instrument of ratification or accession.[1375]

3. In addition to being relevant for the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards under the Convention in the State concerned, the date on which the Convention becomes applicable in a given State may also be used as a point of reference when a State applies a reciprocity reservation.[1376]

4. A question often arises whether the Convention applies to the recognition and enforcement of arbitration agreements entered into, and arbitral awards rendered, before the adoption of the Convention by the State concerned.

5. As shown by the *travaux préparatoires*, that matter was discussed by the State delegations, and a proposal was made, but not adopted, that the Convention should only apply to arbitral awards rendered after the date of adoption of the

[1375]For issues relating to the date of entry into force of the convention, see Report on the survey relating to the legislative implementation of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards (New York, 1958), Note by the Secretariat, A/CN.9/656, paras. 14-17.

[1376]For a more detailed discussion on the reciprocity reservation, see the chapter of the Guide on article I.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Convention.[1377] Some States objected to this proposal on the basis that many arbitral awards would be denied the benefit of the Convention, which was intended to apply to as many awards as possible. As explained by Israel's representative, "[s]ince the purpose of the draft Convention was to make recognition and enforcement as easy as possible; it would be in accordance with sound legal practice for it to apply to awards made before the Convention's entry into force".[1378] The Swiss and French representatives further pointed out that "the Convention would apply only to unenforced awards which had not been brought before the courts. Such awards could not be many and there was no reason to exclude them. [...] The majority of such awards were voluntarily enforced and the draft Convention would therefore apply retroactively only to awards whose enforcement had been prevented by the bad faith of the losing party".[1379]

6. Since the Convention was adopted, very few States have formulated a reservation with regards to the retroactive application of the Convention.[1380]

7. In the majority of Contracting States, courts have considered that the Convention applies to (i) arbitration agreements signed before the Convention's entry into force in the enforcing State, and (ii) arbitral awards which pre-date the adoption of the Convention either by the State where the award was rendered or by the enforcing State.[1381]

8. *First*, courts have accepted to apply the Convention in situations where the contract containing the arbitration agreement had been signed before the Convention entered into force in the enforcing State.[1382] For instance, the Brazilian Superior Court of Justice held, without referring to article XII of the Convention, that the fact that the arbitration agreement was signed prior to the Arbitration Act

[1377] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Twentieth Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.20, p. 12, where the Delegation from Yugoslavia questioned whether the Convention would "apply to [foreign arbitral awards] which had become operative after entry force [of the Convention] or also to those which had become operative before". The drafting proposal to limit application of the convention to arbitral awards rendered after the coming into force of the Convention read: "This convention shall apply only to arbitral awards which acquired the force of *res judicata* and became final after the entry into force of the Convention" (see *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Twentieth Meeting, E/CONF.26/L.55).

[1378] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Twenty-first Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.21, p. 2.

[1379] *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Twenty-first Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.21, pp. 2-3.

[1380] See information on reservations under the New York convention on the internet at http://www.uncitral.org/uncitral/en/uncitral_texts/arbitration/NYConvention_status.html.

[1381] Albert Jan van den Berg, *Does the New York Arbitration Convention of 1958 apply retroactively?: decision of the House of Lords in Government of Kuwait v. Sir Frederic Snow*, 1 Arb. Int'l 103 (1985).

[1382] *Republic of Ecuador, Petroecuador (Ecuador) v. Chevron Texaco Corporation*, District Court, Southern District of New York, United States of America, 27 June 2005, 376 F. Supp. 2d 334, XXXI Y.B. Com. Arb. 1162 (2006); *Travel Automation Ltd. v. Abacus International Pvt. Ltd. and others*, High Court of Karachi, Pakistan, Suit No. 1318 of 2004, 14 February 2006, XXXII Y.B. Com. Arb. (2007).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

implementing the Convention was immaterial because procedural laws, such as the Arbitration Act, had immediate effect under Brazilian law.[1383]

9. *Second*, with few exceptions,[1384] courts have applied the Convention when an arbitral award had been rendered in a State which had not yet acceded to the Convention. For instance, the English House of Lords applied the 1975 Arbitration Act implementing the New York Convention to an arbitral award rendered in Kuwait prior to Kuwait's accession to the Convention. Without referring to article XII, the House of Lords held that the relevant time to assess whether a State was a "contracting state" was the time of enforcement, and not the time the award was made.[1385] Similarly, a German court applied the New York Convention to enforce an arbitral award rendered in London one month prior to the United Kingdom's accession to the Convention. The Court held that the Convention, having a procedural character, applies retroactively.[1386] Courts have also applied the Convention when an award was rendered before the State in which enforcement is sought had acceded to the Convention. In the United States, for instance, the Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit held that the Convention should apply retroactively to an arbitral award rendered in Japan on 18 September 1970, even though the Convention only came into force in the United States on 20 December 1970.[1387]

10. In the same vein, certain courts have applied the Convention retroactively in accordance with their national legislation implementing the Convention. For instance, the Canadian Federal Court applied the Convention with respect to an award rendered one year prior to Canada's accession pursuant to section 4(2) of the United Nations Foreign Arbitral Awards Convention Act, which provides that the Convention is to apply to "arbitral awards and arbitration agreements whether made before or after the coming into force of this Act".[1388]

[1383] *Spie Enertrans S.A. v. Inepar S.A. Industria e Construcoes*, Superior Court of Justice, Brazil, 3 October 2007, SEC 831.

[1384] See *Société Nationale pour la Recherche, le transport et la Commercialisation des Hydrocarbures (Sonatrach) v. Ford, Bacon and Davis Inc.*, Court of First Instance of Brussels, Belgium, 6 December 1988, XV Y.B. Com. Arb. 370 (1990). See also *Murmansk State Steamship Line v. Kano Oil Millers Ltd.*, Supreme Court, Nigeria, 11 December 1974, VII Y.B. Com. Arb. 349 (1982); *Commoditex S.A. v. Alexandria Commercial Co.*, Court of Justice of Geneva, Switzerland, 12 May 1967, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 199 (1976).

[1385] *Sir Frederic Snow & Partners and Others (United Kingdom) v. Minister Public Works of the Government of Kuwait*, House of Lords, England and Wales, 1 March 1984, X Y.B. Com. Arb. 508 (1985).

[1386] *German (F.R.) buyer v. English seller*, Hanseatisches Oberlandesgericht [OLG] Hamburg, Germany, 27 July 1978, IV Y.B. Com. Arb. 266 (1979). See also *German party v. Austrian party*, Oberster Gerichtshof, Austria, 17 November 1965, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 182 (1976).

[1387] *Copal Co. Ltd. v. Fotochrome Inc.*, District Court, Eastern District of New York, United States of America, 4 June 1974 and *Copal Co. Ltd. v. Fotochrome Inc.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 29 May 1975, I Y.B. Com. Arb. 202 (1976).

[1388] *Compania Maritima Villa Nova S.A. v. Northern Sales Co.*, Federal Court of Appeal, Canada, 20 November 1991.

Article XIII

1. Any Contracting State may denounce this Convention by a written notification to the Secretary-General of the United Nations. Denunciation shall take effect one year after the date of receipt of the notification by the Secretary-General.

2. Any State which has made a declaration or notification under article X may, at any time thereafter, by notification to the Secretary-General of the United Nations, declare that this Convention shall cease to extend to the territory concerned one year after the date of the receipt of the notification by the Secretary-General.

3. This Convention shall continue to be applicable to arbitral awards in respect of which recognition or enforcement proceedings have been instituted before the denunciation takes effect.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article XIII as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822; E/2822/Add.1.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.57.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF. 26/L.61; E/CONF.26/8; E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.

Summary records

- Summary Records of the Twentieth and Twenty-fourth Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR20; E/CONF.26/SR.24.
- Summary Record of the Fourth Meeting of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/AC.42/SR.4.

(Available on the Internet at http:// www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet http://www.newyorkconvention1958.org)

Analysis

1. A Contracting State may denounce the Convention in accordance with the provisions of article XIII. To date, no Contracting State has withdrawn from or denounced the Convention.

Article XIV

A Contracting State shall not be entitled to avail itself of the present Convention against other Contracting States except to the extent that it is itself bound to apply the Convention.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article XIV as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822; E/2822/Add.1; E/2822/Add.4.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/4; E/CONF.26/L.56; E/CONF.26/L.57.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/8; E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Twentieth, Twenty-first and Twenty-fourth Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR20; E/CONF.26/SR21; E/CONF.26/SR.24.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet http://www.newyorkconvention1958.org)

Analysis

1. Pursuant to article XIV, a Contracting State may only require another Contracting State to apply the Convention to the extent that it is itself bound by it. Article XIV is a general reciprocity clause that applies to obligations between Contracting States under all provisions of the Convention. This distinguishes article XIV of the Convention from article I (3), which contains a specific reciprocity provision that may be invoked by private parties in the context of enforcement proceedings.[1389]

2. As reflected in the *travaux préparatoires*, article XIV was originally drafted in almost identical wording as a second paragraph of the then article X addressing the rights and duties of federal or non-unitary contracting states (now article XI).[1390] As drafted at the time, this proposed reciprocity provision did not meet unanimous approval, as some delegations wished to clarify that it would only apply to federal states.[1391] It was not until the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration convened for the preparation and adoption of the Convention that the representative for Norway proposed an amendment for a general reciprocity clause that would stand as a separate article.[1392] A majority of the delegates accepted this amendment on the very last day of the Conference.

3. Parties opposing enforcement of an arbitration agreement or an arbitral award have rarely invoked article XIV and its reciprocity requirement. Based on available

[1389] Albert Jan van den Berg, *Consolidated Commentary Cases Reported in Volumes XXII (1997) - XXVII (2002)*, XXVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 699 (2003), para. 914. See also Patricia Nacimiento, *Article XIV*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 541, 544 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

[1390] *Travaux préparatoires*, Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards, E/2704, E/AC.42/4/Rev.1, pp. 15-16, and E/2704, E/AC.42/4/Rev.1, Annex, p. 5.

[1391] See, e.g., the comments by Yugoslavia on article X, *Travaux préparatoires*, Comments by Governments on the draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, E/2822/Add.6, Annex, pp. 2-3.

[1392] *Travaux préparatoires*, Consideration of the draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards (Item 4 of the Agenda), Norway: proposed amendment to the draft Convention, E.CONF.26/L.28; *Travaux préparatoires*, United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration, Summary Records of the Twenty-Fourth Summary Meeting, E/CONF.26/SR.24, pp. 6-7.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

case law at the time of this Guide, enforcement of an arbitral award has never been denied on the basis of article XIV.[1393]

4. One example of an unsuccessful attempt to rely on article XIV's reciprocity requirement is found in *Fertilizer Corporation of India v. IDI Management Inc.*, a decision from the United States District Court for the Southern District of Ohio. An arbitral award was rendered in India against a United States corporation, which argued before the Court that it should not be enforced in the United States on grounds that India would not have enforced the award had it been rendered in the United States in its favour, and that therefore, "the reciprocity between India and the United States as required by the Convention [article XIV] was absent".[1394] The contesting party further argued that article XIV requires courts to determine the extent to which India applies the Convention and whether India treats awards rendered in India in favour of Indian parties in a similar manner. The Court rejected this argument and enforced the award, finding that the Convention's reciprocity requirement was satisfied in that case. It noted that article XIV gave "states a defensive right to take advantage of another state's reservations with regard to territorial, federal or other provisions". The Court added that, in any event, it was satisfied that Indian courts were not engaged in a "devious policy to subvert the Convention by denying non-Indians their just awards".

5. In another case, the United States Court of Appeals for the Fifth Circuit emphasized the importance of respecting the reciprocity undertaking in article XIV. The Court reasoned that the rights of United States citizens under the Convention in other countries depend on the extent to which the United States "implements the Convention within its own borders".[1395]

6. Leading commentators have confirmed that article XIV does not allow a Contracting State which has not made any reservation, to deny enforcement of an award rendered in another Contracting State which has made reservations. Conversely, a State which formulated a reservation under article I (3) would not be permitted

[1393]See, e.g., *Union of India, and others v. Lief Hoegh & Co. and others*, High Court of Gujarat, India, 4 May 1982, AIR 1983 Guj 34; *Audi NSU Auto Union A.G. v. Overseas Motors, Inc.*, District Court, Eastern District of Michigan, Southern Division, United States of America, 9 August 1976, II Y.B. Com. Arb. 252 (1977); *M.A. Industries Inc. v. Maritime Battery Ltd.*, New Brunswick Court of Queen's Bench, Canada, 19 August 1991, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 354 (1993); *Odin Shipping Co. (Pte) Ltd. v. Aguas Industriales de Tarragona*, Supreme Court, Spain, 4 October 1983, XI Y.B. Com. Arb. 528 (1986). See also with respect to the recognition and enforcement of an arbitration agreement: *McDermott International v. Lloyds Underwriters of London*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 14 February 1992, 91-841, XVIII Y.B. Com. Arb. 472 (1993); *Ken Acosta (United States), et al. v. Master Maintenance and Construction Inc., et al.*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 8 June 2006, 05-30126.

[1394]*Fertilizer Corporation of India v. IDI Management Inc.*, District Court, Southern District of Ohio, Western Division, United States of America, 9 June 1981, C-1-79-570.

[1395]*Beiser v. Weyler*, Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, United States of America, 19 March 2002, 01-20152.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

to invoke the Convention against another Contracting State which had ratified the Convention without making any reservation.[1396]

[1396]See Angela Kolbl, *Commentary on Article XIV*, in New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958—Commentary 529, 531 (R. Wolff ed., 2012); Patricia Nacimiento, *Article XIV*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 541, 544 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

Article XV

The Secretary-General of the United Nations shall notify the States contemplated in article VIII of the following:

(a) Signatures and ratifications in accordance with article VIII;

(b) Accessions in accordance with article IX;

(c) Declarations and notifications under articles I, X and XI;

(d) The date upon which this Convention enters into force in accordance with article XII;

(e) Denunciations and notifications in accordance with article XIII.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article XV as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822; E/2822/Add.1.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.57; E/CONF.26/L.61.

- Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/8; E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.

Summary records:

- Summary Records of the Twenty-first and Twenty-fourth Meetings of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR21; E/CONF.26/SR.24.

(Available on the Internet at http:// www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet http://www.newyorkconvention1958.org)

Analysis

Article XV contains a list of notifications to be made by the Secretary-General of the United Nations as depositary for the Convention. This article is consistent with the actions to be undertaken by depositaries under international treaties.

Article XVI

1. This Convention, of which the Chinese, English, French, Russian and Spanish texts shall be equally authentic, shall be deposited in the archives of the United Nations.

2. The Secretary-General of the United Nations shall transmit a certified copy of this Convention to the States contemplated in article VIII.

Travaux préparatoires

The *travaux préparatoires* on article XVI as adopted in 1958 are contained in the following documents:

Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards and comments by Governments and Organizations:

- Report of the Committee on the Enforcement of International Arbitral Awards: E/2704.
- Comments by Governments and Organizations on the Draft Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: E/2822; E/2822/Add.1.

United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration:

- Amendments to the Draft Convention Submitted by Governmental Delegations: E/CONF.26/L.57; E/CONF.26/L.61.
- Text of the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards as Provisionally Approved by the Drafting Committee: E/CONF.26/8; E/CONF.26/8/Rev.1.

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

Summary records:

Summary Record of the Twenty-first Meeting of the United Nations Conference on International Commercial Arbitration: E/CONF.26/SR21.

(Available on the Internet at http://www.uncitral.org)

(For the *travaux préparatoires*, case law and bibliographical references, see also on the Internet http://www.newyorkconvention1958.org)

Analysis

1. Article XVI provides that Chinese, English, French, Russian and Spanish—the official languages of the United Nations at the time of the preparation of the Convention—are the authentic languages of the Convention and are to be considered equally authoritative. The Convention does not include provision on how to address situations of diverging language versions.

2. Although some commentators have identified potential differences between the authentic versions of the Convention,[1397] none of the reported cases have discussed the matter of divergent language versions.

3. In case an ambiguity would exist in one of the authentic language versions of the Convention, courts could normally apply the rules of interpretation provided in the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties of 1969. Pursuant to Articles 31 and 32 of the Vienna Convention, "[a] treaty shall be interpreted in good faith in accordance with the ordinary meaning to be given to the terms of the treaty in their context and in the light of its object and purpose" and "[r]ecourse may be had to supplementary means of interpretation, including the preparatory work of the treaty and the circumstances of its conclusion, in order to confirm the meaning resulting from the application of article 31".

4. In *Kahn Lucas Lancaster Inc. v. Lark International Ltd.*, the United States Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit relied on the versions of the Convention listed in article XVI to assist it in interpreting the meaning of article II (2). In addition to its textual analysis of the English-language version, the Court reviewed article II (2) in each of the four other languages deemed to be authentic (i.e., Chinese,

[1397] See, e.g., Dorothee Schramm, Elliott Geisinger et al., *Article XVI*, in Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention 555, 556 (H. Kronke, P. Nacimiento et al. eds., 2010).

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

French, Russian and Spanish).[1398] The Court concluded that like the English version, the French, Spanish and Chinese versions of article II (2) suggest that regardless of whether an agreement to arbitrate is found in an arbitration clause in a contract or as a separate arbitration agreement, it must be signed by the parties or contained in an exchange of letters. The Court stated that it was "reluctant to allow the seemingly contradictory Russian language version to dictate a different result. This is particularly so in light of the stated purposes of the Convention, one of which is to 'unify the standards by which agreements to arbitrate are observed and arbitral awards are enforced in the signatory countries.'" The Court's interpretation of article II (2) was confirmed by the drafting and legislative history of this provision.

[1398] *Kahn Lucas Lancaster Inc. v. Lark International Ltd.*, Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, United States of America, 29 July 1999, 97-9436, XXIV Y.B. Com. Arb. 900 (1999). On this issue, see the chapter of the Guide on article II.

500

AFSA
The Arbitration Foundation of Southern Africa
NPC

ISBN 978-92-1-133851-5

V.16-04039